

# Notes on homotopical algebra

Z.L. Low

10 November 2015



# PREFACE

## **Acknowledgements**

Thanks are due to the readers who reported numerous errors in these notes, in particular: Andrea Gagna and Aaron Mazel-Gee.



# CONTENTS

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| <b>Foundations</b>  | <b>I</b>      |
| 0.1. Set theory . . . . .   | I             |
| 0.2. Accessibility and ind-completions . . . . .                  | II            |
| 0.3. Accessible constructions . . . . .                           | 30            |
| 0.4. Change of universe . . . . .                                 | 53            |
| 0.5. Small object arguments . . . . .                             | 60            |
| <br><b>Simplicial sets</b>  | <br><b>83</b> |
| 1.1. Basics . . . . .   | 83            |
| 1.2. Nerves, skeletons, and coskeletons . . . . .                 | 91            |
| 1.3. Intrinsic homotopy . . . . .                                 | 103           |
| 1.4. Kan complexes . . . . .                                      | 119           |
| 1.5. The Kan–Quillen model structure . . . . .                    | 135           |
| 1.6. Bisimplicial sets and cosimplicial simplicial sets . . . . . | 147           |
| 1.7. Subdivision and extension . . . . .                          | 157           |
| 1.8. Bar and cobar complexes . . . . .                            | 171           |
| 1.9. Bousfield–Kan limits and colimits . . . . .                  | 202           |
| 1.10. Bousfield–Kan extensions . . . . .                          | 230           |
| 1.11. Categories as homotopy types . . . . .                      | 247           |

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
| <b>Simplicial categories</b>                             | <b>273</b>     |
| 2.1. Basics . . . . .                                    | 273            |
| 2.2. Simplicially enriched limits and colimits . . . . . | 281            |
| 2.3. Simplicial and cosimplicial objects . . . . .       | 284            |
| 2.4. Simplicial model categories . . . . .               | 297            |
| 2.5. Homotopical aspects . . . . .                       | 306            |
| 2.6. Kan-enriched categories . . . . .                   | 318            |
| 2.7. Homotopy limits and colimits . . . . .              | 333            |
| 2.8. Homotopy ends and coends . . . . .                  | 350            |
| 2.9. The Dwyer–Kan model structure . . . . .             | 378            |
| 2.10. The Bergner model structure . . . . .              | 393            |
| 2.11. Rectification of diagrams . . . . .                | 405            |
| 2.12. Simplicial localisation . . . . .                  | 416            |
| 2.13. Homotopical calculi of fractions . . . . .         | 430            |
| <br><b>Homotopical categories</b>                        | <br><b>449</b> |
| 3.1. Basics . . . . .                                    | 449            |
| 3.2. Homotopical Kan extensions . . . . .                | 455            |
| 3.3. Quillen–Verdier derived functors . . . . .          | 459            |
| 3.4. DHKS derived functors . . . . .                     | 481            |
| 3.5. Two-arrow calculi . . . . .                         | 490            |
| 3.6. Three-arrow calculi . . . . .                       | 513            |
| <br><b>Categories with fibrations</b>                    | <br><b>519</b> |
| 4.1. Basics . . . . .                                    | 519            |
| 4.2. Homotopy pullbacks . . . . .                        | 540            |
| 4.3. The homotopy category . . . . .                     | 557            |
| 4.4. Inverse diagrams . . . . .                          | 565            |
| 4.5. Calculus of correspondences . . . . .               | 579            |

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| <b>Model categories</b>                         | <b>589</b>     |
| 5.1. Basics . . . . .                           | 589            |
| 5.2. Left and right homotopy . . . . .          | 611            |
| 5.3. Quillen functors . . . . .                 | 619            |
| 5.4. The homotopy category . . . . .            | 629            |
| 5.5. Reedy diagrams . . . . .                   | 636            |
| 5.6. Reedy model structures . . . . .           | 657            |
| 5.7. Framings and resolutions . . . . .         | 670            |
| 5.8. Derived hom-spaces . . . . .               | 680            |
| 5.9. The Dwyer–Kan comparison theorem . . . . . | 703            |
| 5.10. Virtual cofibrancy and fibrancy . . . . . | 719            |
| <br><b>Topics in model categories</b>           | <br><b>731</b> |
| 6.1. Proper model categories . . . . .          | 731            |
| 6.2. Combinatorial model categories . . . . .   | 744            |
| 6.3. Algebraic model categories . . . . .       | 754            |
| 6.4. Cisinski model categories . . . . .        | 757            |
| 6.5. Monoidal model categories . . . . .        | 768            |
| 6.6. Bousfield localisation . . . . .           | 783            |
| <br><b>Quasicategories</b>                      | <br><b>791</b> |
| 7.1. Basics . . . . .                           | 791            |
| 7.2. The Joyal model structure . . . . .        | 798            |
| <br><b>Derivators</b>                           | <br><b>809</b> |
| 8.1. Basics . . . . .                           | 809            |
| 8.2. Homotopy limits and colimits . . . . .     | 824            |
| 8.3. Basic localisers . . . . .                 | 834            |
| 8.4. The minimal basic localiser . . . . .      | 839            |

## CONTENTS

---

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| <b>Homological algebra</b>                       | <b>841</b>      |
| 9.1. Basics . . . . .                            | 841             |
| 9.2. The derived category . . . . .              | 855             |
| 9.3. Double complexes . . . . .                  | 874             |
| 9.4. Filtered complexes . . . . .                | 891             |
| 9.5. Simplicial objects . . . . .                | 906             |
| <br><b>Homotopy toposes</b>                      | <br><b>913</b>  |
| 10.1. Internal Kan complexes . . . . .           | 913             |
| 10.2. Hypercovers . . . . .                      | 931             |
| 10.3. Stacks and hypersheaves . . . . .          | 944             |
| 10.4. Hypersheaf model structures . . . . .      | 954             |
| 10.5. Verdier's hypercovering theorem . . . . .  | 965             |
| <br><b>Generalities</b>                          | <br><b>973</b>  |
| A.1. Adjoints and mates . . . . .                | 973             |
| A.2. Cartesian closed categories . . . . .       | 982             |
| A.3. Factorisation systems . . . . .             | 994             |
| A.4. Relative categories . . . . .               | 1024            |
| A.5. Kan extensions . . . . .                    | 1037            |
| A.6. Ends and coends . . . . .                   | 1055            |
| A.7. Familial regularity and exactness . . . . . | 1065            |
| A.8. Abelian categories . . . . .                | 1075            |
| <br><b>Higher generalities</b>                   | <br><b>1087</b> |
| B.1. Monoidal categories . . . . .               | 1087            |
| B.2. Enriched categories . . . . .               | 1096            |
| B.3. Enriched diagrams . . . . .                 | 1111            |
| B.4. Categories with actions . . . . .           | 1129            |
| B.5. Indexed categories . . . . .                | 1139            |
| <br><b>Bibliography</b>                          | <br><b>1161</b> |
| <br><b>Index</b>                                 | <br><b>1173</b> |



## FOUNDATIONS

### 0.1 Set theory

In category theory it is often convenient to invoke a certain set-theoretic device commonly known as a ‘Grothendieck universe’, but we shall say simply ‘universe’, so as to simplify exposition and proofs by eliminating various circumlocutions involving cardinal bounds, proper classes etc.

**0.1.1** DEFINITION. A **pre-universe** is a set  $\mathbf{U}$  satisfying these axioms:

1. If  $x \in y$  and  $y \in \mathbf{U}$ , then  $x \in \mathbf{U}$ .
2. If  $x \in \mathbf{U}$  and  $y \in \mathbf{U}$  (but not necessarily distinct), then  $\{x, y\} \in \mathbf{U}$ .
3. If  $x \in \mathbf{U}$ , then  $\mathcal{P}(x) \in \mathbf{U}$ , where  $\mathcal{P}(x)$  denotes the set of all subsets of  $x$ .
4. If  $x \in \mathbf{U}$  and  $f : x \rightarrow \mathbf{U}$  is a map, then  $\bigcup_{i \in x} f(i) \in \mathbf{U}$ .

A **universe** is a pre-universe  $\mathbf{U}$  with this additional property:

5.  $\omega \in \mathbf{U}$ , where  $\omega$  is the set of all finite (von Neumann) ordinals.

**0.1.2** EXAMPLE. The empty set is a pre-universe, and with very mild assumptions, so is the set  $\mathbf{HF}$  of all hereditarily finite sets.

**0.1.3** ¶ The notion of universe makes sense in any material set theory, but their existence must be postulated. We adopt the following:

- **Grothendieck–Verdier universe axiom.** For each set  $x$ , there exists a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  with  $x \in \mathbf{U}$ .

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

For definiteness, we may take our base theory to be Mac Lane set theory, which is a weak subsystem of Zermelo–Fraenkel set theory with choice (ZFC). Readers interested in the details of Mac Lane set theory are referred to [Mathias, 2001], but in practice, as long as one is working at all times *inside some universe*, one may as well be working in ZFC. Indeed:

**0.1.4** PROPOSITION. *With the assumptions of Mac Lane set theory, any universe is a transitive model of ZFC.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. By definition,  $\mathbf{U}$  is a transitive set containing pairs, power sets, unions, and  $\omega$ , so the axioms of extensionality, empty set, pairs, power sets, unions, choice, and infinity are all automatically satisfied. We must show that the axiom schemas of separation and replacement are also satisfied, and in fact it is enough to check that replacement is valid; but this is straightforward using axioms 2 and 4. ■

**0.1.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe. A **U-set** is a member of  $\mathbf{U}$ , a **U-class** is a subset of  $\mathbf{U}$ , and a **proper U-class** is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -class that is not a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.

**0.1.6** LEMMA. *A  $\mathbf{U}$ -class  $X$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set if and only if there exists a  $\mathbf{U}$ -class  $Y$  such that  $X \in Y$ .* ■

**0.1.7** PROPOSITION. *If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a universe in Mac Lane set theory, then the collection of all  $\mathbf{U}$ -classes is a transitive model of Morse–Kelley class–set theory (MK), and so is a transitive model of von Neumann–Bernays–Gödel class–set theory (NBG) in particular.* ■

**0.1.8** DEFINITION. A **U-small category** is a category  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $\text{ob } \mathbb{C}$  and  $\text{mor } \mathbb{C}$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. A **locally U-small category** is a category  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfying these conditions:

- $\text{ob } \mathcal{D}$  and  $\text{mor } \mathcal{D}$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -classes, and
- for all objects  $x$  and  $y$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the hom-set  $\mathcal{D}(x, y)$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.

An **essentially U-small category** is a category  $\mathcal{D}$  for which there exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{C}$  and a functor  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

**0.I.9** PROPOSITION. *If  $\mathbb{D}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and  $C$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then the functor category  $[\mathbb{D}, C]$  is locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.*

*Proof.* Strictly speaking, this depends on the set-theoretic implementation of ordered pairs, categories, functors, etc., but at the very least  $[\mathbb{D}, C]$  should be isomorphic to a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.

In the context of  $[\mathbb{D}, C]$ , we may regard functors  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow C$  as being the pair consisting of the *graph* of the object map  $\text{ob } \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \text{ob } C$  and the *graph* of the morphism map  $\text{mor } \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \text{mor } C$ , and these are  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets by the  $\mathbf{U}$ -replacement axiom. Similarly, if  $F$  and  $G$  are objects in  $[\mathbb{D}, C]$ , then we may regard a natural transformation  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  as being the triple  $(F, G, A)$ , where  $A$  is the set of all pairs  $(c, \alpha_c)$ . ■

One complication introduced by having multiple universes concerns the existence of (co)limits.

**0.I.10** THEOREM (Freyd). *Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\kappa$  be a cardinal such that  $|\text{mor } C| \leq \kappa$ . If  $C$  has products for families of size  $\kappa$ , then any two parallel morphisms in  $C$  must be equal.*

*Proof.* Suppose, for a contradiction, that  $f, g : X \rightarrow Y$  are distinct morphisms in  $C$ . Let  $Z$  be the product of  $\kappa$ -many copies of  $Y$  in  $C$ . The universal property of products implies there are at least  $2^\kappa$ -many distinct morphisms  $X \rightarrow Z$ ; but  $C(X, Z) \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , so this is an absurdity. ■

**0.I.11** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe. A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -complete** (resp.  **$\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete**) **category** is a category  $C$  with the following property:

- For all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories  $\mathbb{D}$  and all diagrams  $A : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow C$ , a limit (resp. colimit) of  $A$  exists in  $C$ .

We may instead say  $C$  has all **finite limits** (resp. **finite colimits**) in the special case  $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{HF}$ .

**0.I.12** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a non-empty pre-universe. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $C$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete.
- (ii)  $C$  has all finite limits and products for all families of objects indexed by a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

(iii) For each  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{D}$ , there exists an adjunction

$$\Delta \dashv \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{D}} : [\mathbb{D}, C] \rightarrow C$$

where  $\Delta X$  is the constant functor with value  $X$ .

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $C$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete.
- (ii')  $C$  has all finite colimits and coproducts for all families of objects indexed by a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.
- (iii') For each  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{D}$ , there exists an adjunction

$$\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} \dashv \Delta : C \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, C]$$

where  $\Delta X$  is the constant functor with value  $X$ .

*Proof.* This is a standard result; but we remark that we do require a sufficiently powerful form of the axiom of choice to pass from (ii) to (iii).  $\square$

### 0.1.13 DEFINITION.

- In the **explicit universe convention**, the words ‘set’, ‘class’, etc. have their usual meanings.
- In the **one-universe convention**, the words ‘set’, ‘class’, etc. instead abbreviate ‘ $\mathbf{U}$ -set’, ‘ $\mathbf{U}$ -class’, etc. for a fixed (but arbitrary) universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . However, the word ‘category’ always refers to a category that is contained in *some* universe, which may or may not be locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, and we shall use the word ‘ensemble’ to refer to sets which may or may not be in  $\mathbf{U}$ .
- In the **two-universe convention**, we assume that there are two universes  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$ , with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , we refer to  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets,  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories, etc. as ‘small’, and we refer to  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -sets,  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small categories, etc. as ‘moderate’.

**0.1.14 ¶** In subsequent chapters, the implicit universe convention should be assumed *unless otherwise stated*.

We now recall some definitions and results about ordinal and cardinal numbers. Readers familiar with axiomatic set theory may wish to skip ahead.

**0.I.15** DEFINITION. A **von Neumann ordinal** is a set  $\alpha$  with the following properties:

- If  $x \in y$  and  $y \in \alpha$ , then  $x \in \alpha$ .
- The binary relation  $\in$  is strict total ordering of  $\alpha$ .
- If  $S$  is a subset of  $\alpha$  such that
  - $\emptyset \in S$ ,
  - If  $\beta \in S$  and  $\beta \cup \{\beta\} \in \alpha$ , then  $\beta \cup \{\beta\} \in S$ .
  - If  $T \subseteq S$ , then  $\bigcup T \in S$ .

then  $S = \alpha$ .

We identify 0 with the von Neumann ordinal  $\emptyset$ , and by induction, we identify the natural number  $n + 1$  with the von Neumann ordinal  $\{0, \dots, n\}$ .

**0.I.16** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *If  $\alpha$  is a von Neumann ordinal, then every member of  $\alpha$  is an initial segment of  $\alpha$  and is in particular a von Neumann ordinal.*
- (ii) *If  $\alpha$  is a von Neumann ordinal, so is  $\alpha \cup \{\alpha\}$ . (This is usually denoted by  $\alpha + 1$  and called the **successor** of  $\alpha$ .)*
- (iii) *The union of a set  $S$  of von Neumann ordinals is another von Neumann ordinal. (This is usually denoted by  $\sup S$  and called the **supremum** of  $S$ .)*
- (iv) *If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a pre-universe and  $\kappa(\mathbf{U})$  is the set of von Neumann ordinals in  $\mathbf{U}$ , then  $\kappa(\mathbf{U})$  a von Neumann ordinal, but  $\kappa(\mathbf{U}) \notin \mathbf{U}$ .*

*Proof.* Claims (i) – (iii) are all easy, and claim (iv) is Burali-Forti's paradox. ◆

**0.I.17** THEOREM (Classification of well-orderings).

- (i) *In Zermelo–Fraenkel set theory, every well-ordered set is isomorphic to a unique von Neumann ordinal.*
- (ii) *In Mac Lane set theory, if  $\mathbf{U}$  is a pre-universe and  $X$  is a well-ordered set in  $\mathbf{U}$ , then  $X$  is isomorphic to a unique von Neumann ordinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ .*

*Proof.* Claim (i) is a standard result in axiomatic set theory, and claim (ii) is an obvious corollary. □

**0.1.18** DEFINITION. A **transitive set** is a set  $T$  such that, given  $x \in y$ , if  $y \in T$ , then  $x \in T$  as well. The **transitive closure** of a set  $X$  is a set  $\text{tcl}(X)$  such that, for all transitive sets  $T$  with  $X \subseteq T$ , we have  $\text{tcl}(X) \subseteq T$  as well.

**0.1.19** LEMMA. *In Mac Lane set theory, every set has a unique transitive closure.*

*Proof.* One of the axioms of Mac Lane set theory states that every set  $X$  is a member of some transitive set  $T$ , and so  $X \subseteq T$ . Clearly, the intersection of any family of transitive sets containing  $X$  is again a transitive set containing  $X$ , so  $\text{tcl}(X)$  exists and is unique so long as there is at least one transitive set containing  $X$ . ■

**0.1.20** DEFINITION. A **partial rank function** from a transitive set  $T$  to a well-ordered set  $W$  is a partial function  $\rho : T \rightarrow W$  with these properties:

- If  $\emptyset \in T$ , then  $\rho(\emptyset)$  is the least element of  $W$ .
- If  $y \in T$  and  $\rho(x)$  is defined for all  $x \in y$ , then

$$\rho(y) = \min \{w \in W \mid \forall x \in y. \rho(x) < w\}$$

provided the RHS is defined.

- Otherwise  $\rho(y)$  is undefined.

A **total rank function** is a partial rank function that is defined on its entire domain. The **rank** of a set  $X$ , if it exists, the least von Neumann ordinal  $\text{rank}(X)$  for which there exists a total rank function  $\text{tcl}(X) \rightarrow \text{rank}(X)$ .

**0.1.21** PROPOSITION. *In Mac Lane set theory:*

- (i) *If  $T$  is a transitive set and  $W$  is a well-ordered set, then there is a unique partial rank function  $\rho : T \rightarrow W$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a pre-universe and  $x \in \mathbf{U}$ , then  $\text{rank}(x)$  can be defined by a  $\Delta_0$ -formula with  $\mathbf{U}$  as a parameter, and for each von Neumann ordinal  $\alpha$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ , the set*

$$\mathbf{V}_\alpha = \{x \in \mathbf{U} \mid \text{rank}(x) < \alpha\}$$

*is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.*

- (iii) *Assuming the Grothendieck–Verdier universe axiom,  $\text{rank}(x)$  is defined for all  $x$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This is a straightforward application of well-founded induction.

(ii).  $\mathbf{U}$  is a transitive set and the set  $\kappa(\mathbf{U})$  of all von Neumann ordinals in  $\mathbf{U}$  is well-ordered by inclusion, so by claim (i) there is a partial rank function  $\rho : \mathbf{U} \rightarrow \kappa(\mathbf{U})$ . ZFC proves that every set has a rank, so  $\rho$  must in fact be a total rank function; hence, for any  $x \in \mathbf{U}$ ,  $\text{rank}(x)$  is defined. It is clear that  $\rho$  can be defined by a  $\Delta_0$ -formula with only  $\mathbf{U}$  as a parameter, and the rest of the claim follows.

(iii). Obvious, assuming claim (ii). □

**0.I.22** DEFINITION. Two sets are **equinumerous** if there exists a bijection between them. A **cardinality class** in a pre-universe  $\mathbf{U}$  is an equivalence class under the relation of equinumerosity.

**0.I.23** DEFINITION. An  **$\aleph$ -number** is an infinite von Neumann ordinal  $\kappa$  such that, for any von Neumann ordinal  $\lambda$  such that  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  are equinumerous, we have  $\kappa \subseteq \lambda$ .

**0.I.24** EXAMPLE. The first infinite von Neumann ordinal, i.e.  $\omega = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ , is the  $\aleph$ -number  $\aleph_0$ .

**0.I.25** LEMMA. *If  $\kappa$  is an  $\aleph$ -number, then there exists a unique  $\aleph$ -number  $\kappa^+$  with the following property:*

- *For any  $\aleph$ -number  $\lambda$  such that  $\kappa < \lambda$ , we have  $\kappa^+ \leq \lambda$ .*

*The **cardinal successor** of  $\kappa$  is  $\kappa^+$ .*

*Proof.* The class of  $\aleph$ -numbers is well-ordered and unbounded, so the class of all  $\aleph$ -numbers  $> \kappa$  has a minimal element  $\kappa^+$ , as required. ■

**0.I.26** THEOREM (Classification of cardinalities).

- (i) *In Zermelo–Fraenkel set theory, for every well-ordered infinite set  $X$ , there exists a unique  $\aleph$ -number  $\kappa$  such that  $X$  and  $\kappa$  are equinumerous.*
- (ii) *In Zermelo–Fraenkel set theory with the axiom of choice, the same is true for any infinite set whatsoever.*
- (iii) *In Mac Lane set theory, if  $\mathbf{U}$  is a universe and  $X$  is an infinite set in  $\mathbf{U}$ , then there exists a unique  $\aleph$ -number  $\kappa$  in the cardinality class of  $X$ .*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

- (iv) *In Mac Lane set theory with the Grothendieck–Verdier universe axiom, if  $\mathbf{U}$  is a pre-universe and  $\kappa$  is an  $\aleph$ -number not in  $\mathbf{U}$ , then the cardinality of  $\mathbf{U}$  is at most  $\kappa$ .*

*Proof.* Claim (i) is a standard fact, whence claims (ii) and (iii), by the well-ordering theorem. Claim (iv) can be proven using axiom 4 for pre-universes.  $\square$

**0.I.27 ¶** Henceforth, we identify the cardinality class of a finite set with the unique von Neumann ordinal contained in that class, and similarly we identify the cardinality class of an infinite set with the unique  $\aleph$ -number in that class. These are the **cardinal numbers**.

**0.I.28** DEFINITION. A **cofinal subset** of a partially-ordered set  $X$  is a subset  $Y \subseteq X$  such that, for all  $x$  in  $X$ , there exists some  $y$  in  $Y$  such that  $x \leq y$ . A **regular cardinal number** is an  $\aleph$ -number  $\kappa$  such that any cofinal subset of  $\kappa$  has cardinality equal to  $\kappa$ . A **singular cardinal number** is an  $\aleph$ -number that is not regular.

The following helps to motivate the definition of regular cardinal numbers.

**0.I.29** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe. An **arity class** in  $\mathbf{U}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -class  $K$  of cardinal numbers satisfying the following conditions:

- $1 \in K$ .
- If  $\kappa \in K$  and  $\lambda : \kappa \rightarrow K$  is a function, then the cardinal sum  $\sum_{\alpha \in \kappa} \lambda(\alpha)$  is also in  $K$ .
- If  $\kappa \in K$  and  $\lambda : \kappa \rightarrow \mathbf{U}$  is a function such that each  $\lambda(\alpha)$  is a cardinal number and  $\sum_{\alpha \in \kappa} \lambda(\alpha) \in K$ , then  $\lambda(\alpha) \in K$  as well.

**0.I.30** THEOREM (Classification of arity classes). *In Mac Lane set theory, if  $K$  is an arity class in a pre-universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , then  $K$  must be either*

- $\{1\}$ , or
- $\{0, 1\}$ , or
- of the form  $\{\lambda \in \mathbf{U} \mid \lambda \text{ is a cardinal number and } \lambda < \kappa\}$  for some regular cardinal number  $\kappa$  (possibly not in  $\mathbf{U}$ ).

*Proof.* The notion of arity class and this result are due to Shulman [2012].  $\square$



**0.I.31** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal number. A  **$\kappa$ -small category** is a category  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $\text{mor } \mathbb{C}$  has cardinality  $< \kappa$ . A **finite category** is an  $\aleph_0$ -small category, i.e. a category  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $\text{mor } \mathbb{C}$  is finite. A **finite diagram** (resp.  **$\kappa$ -small diagram**,  **$\mathbf{U}$ -small diagram**) in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathbb{D}$  is a finite (resp.  $\kappa$ -small,  $\mathbf{U}$ -small) category.

**0.I.32** THEOREM. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be a universe with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathbf{Set}^+$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -sets.

- (i) If  $X : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagram, then there exist a limit and a colimit for  $X$  in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .
- (ii) The inclusion  $\mathbf{Set} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Set}^+$  is fully faithful and preserves limits and colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.

*Proof.* One can construct products, equalisers, coproducts, coequalisers, and hom-sets in a completely explicit way, making the preservation properties obvious. ◆

**0.I.33** COROLLARY. The inclusion  $\mathbf{Set} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Set}^+$  reflects limits and colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams. ■

**0.I.34** COROLLARY. For any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{C}$ :

- (i) The functor category  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete and  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete, with limits and colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams computed componentwise in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .
- (ii) The inclusion  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \hookrightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}^+]$  is fully faithful and both preserves and reflects limits and colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams. ■

**0.I.35** DEFINITION. An **strongly inaccessible cardinal number** is a regular cardinal number  $\kappa$  such that, for all sets  $X$  of cardinality less than  $\kappa$ , the power set  $\mathcal{P}(X)$  is also of cardinality less than  $\kappa$ .

**0.I.36** EXAMPLE.  $\aleph_0$  is a strongly inaccessible cardinal number and is the only one that can be proven to exist in ZFC. It is more conventional to exclude  $\aleph_0$  from the definition of strongly inaccessible cardinal number by demanding that they be uncountable.

**0.1.37** PROPOSITION. *In Mac Lane set theory:*

- (i) *If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a non-empty pre-universe, then there exists a strongly inaccessible cardinal number  $\kappa$  such that the members of  $\mathbf{U}$  are all the sets of rank less than  $\kappa$ . Moreover, this  $\kappa$  is the rank and the cardinality of  $\mathbf{U}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a universe and  $\kappa$  is a strongly inaccessible cardinal number such that  $\kappa \in \mathbf{U}$ , then there exists a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  whose members are all the sets of rank less than  $\kappa$ , and  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  is a pre-universe.*
- (iii) *If  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}'$  are pre-universes, then either  $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \mathbf{U}'$  or  $\mathbf{U}' \subseteq \mathbf{U}$ ; and if  $\mathbf{U} \subsetneq \mathbf{U}'$ , then  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}'$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\kappa$  be the set of all von Neumann ordinals in  $\mathbf{U}$ ; this exists by  $\Delta_0$ -separation applied to  $\mathbf{U}$ . Since  $\mathbf{U}$  is closed under power sets and internally-indexed unions,  $\kappa$  must be a strongly inaccessible cardinal.

We can construct the set all of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets of rank less than  $\kappa$  using transfinite recursion on  $\kappa$  as follows: starting with  $\mathbf{V}_0 = \emptyset$ , for each von Neumann ordinal  $\alpha$  less than  $\kappa$ , we set  $\mathbf{V}_{\alpha+1} = \mathcal{P}(\mathbf{V}_\alpha)$ , and for each ordinal  $\lambda$  that is not a successor, we set  $\mathbf{V}_\lambda = \bigcup_{\alpha < \lambda} \mathbf{V}_\alpha$ . The well-foundedness of  $\in$  (restricted to  $\mathbf{U}$ ) implies that in fact this must be all of  $\mathbf{U}$ .

Clearly, every set of rank less than  $\kappa$  is in fact a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set, and  $\mathbf{U}$  is itself a set of rank  $\kappa$ . The cardinality of  $\mathbf{U}$  is also  $\kappa$ , since  $\kappa$  is a regular cardinal number and any cardinal number less than  $\kappa$  is a member of  $\mathbf{U}$ .

(ii). We may construct  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  using the same method as in (i). By construction  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  satisfies axiom 1; since  $\kappa$  is infinite,  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  satisfies axioms 2 and 3; and since  $\kappa$  is strongly inaccessible,  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  satisfies axiom 4. Thus  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa$  is a pre-universe.

(iii). Again, let  $\kappa$  be the rank of  $\mathbf{U}$ . If  $\kappa \in \mathbf{U}'$  then we can show by transfinite induction that  $\mathbf{V}_\kappa \in \mathbf{U}'$  and so  $\mathbf{U} \subsetneq \mathbf{U}'$ ; else we must have  $\mathbf{U}' \subseteq \mathbf{V}_\kappa = \mathbf{U}$ . ■

## 0.2 Accessibility and ind-completions

### Prerequisites. §0.1.

A classical technology for controlling size problems in category theory, due to Gabriel and Ulmer [1971], Grothendieck and Verdier [SGA 4a, Exposé I, §9], and Makkai and Paré [1989], is the notion of accessibility. Though we make use of universes, accessibility remains important and is a crucial tool in verifying the stability of various universal constructions when one passes from one universe to a larger one.

**0.2.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal.

- A  **$\kappa$ -filtered category** is a category  $\mathcal{J}$  with the following property:
  - For each  $\kappa$ -small diagram  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there exist an object  $j$  and a cocone  $A \Rightarrow \Delta j$ .

A  **$\kappa$ -filtered diagram** in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\kappa$ -filtered category.

- A  **$\kappa$ -directed preorder** is a preordered set  $X$  that is  $\kappa$ -filtered when considered as a category, i.e. a preorder with the following property:
  - For each  $\kappa$ -small subset  $Y \subseteq X$ , there exists an element  $x$  of  $X$  such that  $y \leq x$  for all  $y$  in  $Y$ .

A  **$\kappa$ -directed diagram** in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  where  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\kappa$ -directed preorder (considered as a category).

In both cases, it is conventional to omit  $\kappa$  when  $\kappa = \aleph_0$ .

**0.2.2** REMARK. For any regular cardinal  $\kappa$ , the category with one object and only one non-trivial arrow  $f$  is  $\kappa$ -filtered if and only if  $f = f \circ f$ . In particular, any category that has colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams must also have splittings for idempotents.

**0.2.3** EXAMPLE. Let  $X$  be any set. The set of all finite subsets of  $X$ , partially ordered by inclusion, is a directed preorder. More generally, if  $\kappa$  is any regular cardinal, then the set of all subsets of  $X$  of cardinality  $< \kappa$  is a  $\kappa$ -directed preorder.

**0.2.4** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{J}$  is a filtered category.*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{J}$  is inhabited; for any two objects  $j$  and  $j'$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  there exist an object  $j''$  and morphisms  $j \rightarrow j''$  and  $j' \rightarrow j''$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ ; and for any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : j \rightarrow j'$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there is a morphism  $g : j' \rightarrow j''$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  such that  $g \circ f_0 = g \circ f_1$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). The conditions say precisely that  $\mathcal{J}$  has cocones for diagrams of shape  $\emptyset$ ,  $\{\bullet, \bullet\}$ , and  $\{\bullet \rightrightarrows \bullet\}$ , respectively.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). See Lemma 2.13.2 in [Borceux, 1994a]. □

**0.2.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\alpha$  be an ordinal. An  $\alpha$ -**chain** in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $\alpha \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , where we have identified  $\alpha$  with the well-ordered set of ordinals  $< \alpha$ .

**0.2.6** REMARK. If  $\alpha$  is an ordinal with cofinality  $\kappa$ , then  $\alpha$  is a  $\kappa$ -directed preorder. In particular,  $\alpha$ -chains are  $\kappa$ -directed diagrams.

**0.2.7** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be any category and let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a filtered category. Given a full functor  $F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is a cofinal functor.<sup>[1]</sup>*
- (ii) *For each object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there exist an object  $i$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  and a morphism  $j \rightarrow Fi$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Since  $F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is a cofinal functor, the comma category  $(j \downarrow F)$  is connected; in particular, it is inhabited.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). The hypothesis says that the comma category  $(j \downarrow F)$  is inhabited for all objects  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ ; it remains to be shown that each  $(j \downarrow F)$  is connected. Suppose we have morphisms  $f : j \rightarrow Fi$  and  $f' : j \rightarrow Fi'$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ . Since  $\mathcal{J}$  is a filtered category, there exist morphisms  $g : Fi \rightarrow j'$  and  $g' : Fi' \rightarrow j'$  such that  $g \circ f = g' \circ f'$ . By hypothesis, there is a morphism  $h : j' \rightarrow Fi''$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , and since  $F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is full, there exist morphisms  $k : i \rightarrow i''$  and  $k' : i' \rightarrow i''$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  such that  $Fk = h \circ g$  and  $Fk' = h \circ g'$ . Thus, we have  $Fk \circ f = Fk' \circ f'$ , so  $(j \downarrow F)$  is indeed connected. ■

---

[1] See [definition A.5.31](#).

**0.2.8** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a filtered category and let  $\mathcal{J}$  be any preorder. Given a functor  $F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is a cofinal functor.*
- (ii) *For each object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there exist an object  $i$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  such that  $j \leq Fi$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Since  $F : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is a cofinal functor, the comma category  $(j \downarrow F)$  is connected; in particular, it is inhabited.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). The hypothesis says that the comma category  $(j \downarrow F)$  is inhabited for all objects  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ ; it remains to be shown that each  $(j \downarrow F)$  is connected. Suppose we have morphisms  $j \leq Fi$  and  $j \leq Fi'$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ . Since  $\mathcal{I}$  is a filtered category, there exist an object  $i''$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  and morphisms  $i \rightarrow i''$  and  $i' \rightarrow i''$ ; thus, we have  $j \leq Fi \leq Fi''$  and  $j \leq Fi' \leq Fi''$ , so  $(j \downarrow F)$  is indeed connected. ■

**0.2.9** LEMMA. *If  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\kappa$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered category, then there exist an object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and an idempotent endomorphism  $e : j \rightarrow j$  such that the subcategory of  $\mathcal{J}$  generated by  $e$  is cofinal in  $\mathcal{J}$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $\text{id} : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is a  $\kappa$ -small diagram in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there must exist an object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and a cocone  $\lambda : \text{id} \Rightarrow \Delta j$ . Let  $e = \lambda_j : j \rightarrow j$ . Since  $\lambda$  is a cocone, we must have  $e = e \circ e$ , i.e.  $e : j \rightarrow j$  is idempotent.

Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the subcategory of  $\mathcal{J}$  generated by  $e$  and let  $j'$  be any object in  $\mathcal{J}$ . We must show that the comma category  $(j' \downarrow \mathcal{I})$  is connected. It is inhabited:  $\lambda_{j'} : j' \rightarrow j$  is an object in  $(j' \downarrow \mathcal{I})$ . Moreover, given any morphism  $f : j' \rightarrow j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , we must have  $\lambda_{j'} = \lambda_j \circ f = e \circ f$ , so  $(j' \downarrow \mathcal{I})$  is indeed connected. Thus,  $\mathcal{I}$  is a cofinal subcategory of  $\mathcal{J}$ . ■

**0.2.10** LEMMA. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal and let  $(\mathcal{J}_i \mid i \in I)$  be a set of  $\kappa$ -filtered categories.*

- (i) *The product  $\mathcal{J} = \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{J}_i$  is a  $\kappa$ -filtered category.*
- (ii) *Each projection  $\pi_i : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}_i$  is a cofinal functor.*

*Proof.* (i). We may construct cones over  $\kappa$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{J}$  componentwise.

(ii). Similarly, one can show that the comma categories  $(j_i \downarrow \pi_i)$  are connected for all  $j_i$  in  $\mathcal{J}_i$  and all  $i$  in  $I$ . ■

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

**0.2.II** THEOREM. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . If  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered category, then there exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -directed poset  $\mathcal{I}$  and a cofinal functor  $P : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$ .*

*Proof.* We follow the proof of Theorem 2.6.13 in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part B].

Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the poset (ordered by inclusion) of subcategories  $\mathcal{J}' \subseteq \mathcal{J} \times \kappa$  satisfying the following conditions:

- $\mathcal{J}'$  has a (unique) terminal object, say  $(P(\mathcal{J}'), h(\mathcal{J}'))$ .
- $\mathcal{J}'$  is  $\kappa$ -small.
- For any morphism  $(f, *) : (a, n) \rightarrow (b, m)$  in  $\mathcal{J}'$ , if  $n = m$ , then  $a = b$  and  $f = \text{id}$ .

Clearly,  $\mathcal{I}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small if  $\mathcal{J}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small. Since  $\mathcal{J} \times \kappa$  is  $\kappa$ -filtered (by lemma 0.2.10), any  $\kappa$ -small subcategory of  $\mathcal{J} \times \kappa$  that satisfies the last two conditions is contained in some subcategory of  $\mathcal{J} \times \kappa$  that is in  $\mathcal{I}$ ; in particular,  $\mathcal{I}$  is inhabited. Moreover, the union (in  $\mathcal{J} \times \kappa$ ) of any  $\kappa$ -small family of objects in  $\mathcal{I}$  is still  $\kappa$ -small (by the conjunction of the last two conditions) and thus contained in some object of  $\mathcal{I}$ . Hence,  $\mathcal{I}$  is a  $\kappa$ -directed poset.

Let  $P : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  be the functor that sends each subcategory  $\mathcal{J}'$  to the object  $P(\mathcal{J}')$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ . We must show that each comma category  $(j \downarrow P)$  is connected. It is certainly inhabited, because the subcategory  $\{(j, 0)\}$  is an object in  $\mathcal{I}$ . Consider a pair  $(\mathcal{J}', \mathcal{J}'')$  of objects in  $\mathcal{I}$  and morphisms  $f_0 : j \rightarrow P(\mathcal{J}')$  and  $f_1 : j \rightarrow P(\mathcal{J}'')$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ . Let  $\mathcal{J}'''$  be any object in  $\mathcal{I}$  containing both  $\mathcal{J}'$  and  $\mathcal{J}''$  as well as  $(f_0, *) : (j, 0) \rightarrow (P(\mathcal{J}'), h(\mathcal{J}'))$  and  $(f_1, *) : (j, 0) \rightarrow (P(\mathcal{J}''), h(\mathcal{J}''))$ . Then, the induced diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} j & \xrightarrow{f_1} & P(\mathcal{J}'') \\ f_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ P(\mathcal{J}') & \longrightarrow & P(\mathcal{J}''') \end{array}$$

commutes in  $\mathcal{J}$ , so  $(j \downarrow P)$  is indeed connected. ■

**0.2.I2** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. The following are equivalent for a category  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\aleph_0$ -filtered diagrams.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\aleph_0$ -directed diagrams.

(iii)  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for  $\alpha$ -chains for all infinite ordinals  $\alpha$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). This is implied by [theorem 0.2.11](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). See Corollary 1.7 in [\[LPAC\]](#).  $\square$

**0.2.13** THEOREM. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\kappa$  be any regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ . Given a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{J}$ , the following are equivalent:

(i)  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\kappa$ -filtered category.

(ii) The functor  $\lim_{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves limits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams.

*Proof.* The claim (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii) is very well known, and the converse is an exercise in using the Yoneda lemma and manipulating limits and colimits for diagrams of representable functors; see Satz 5.2 in [\[Gabriel and Ulmer, 1971\]](#).  $\square$

**0.2.14** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  and let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets.

- A  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -**compact object** in a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $A$  such that the representable functor  $\mathcal{C}(A, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves colimits for all  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- Let  $\mathbf{U}'$  be a universe with  $\mathbf{U}' \subseteq \mathbf{U}$ . A  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}')$ -**compact object** in a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category is an object that is  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact for all regular cardinals  $\lambda$  in  $\mathbf{U}'$ .

Though the above definition is stated using a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , the following lemma shows there is in fact no dependence on  $\mathbf{U}$ .

**0.2.15** LEMMA. Let  $A$  be an object in a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}$ . The following are equivalent:

(i)  $A$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii) For all  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams  $B : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if  $\varepsilon : B \Rightarrow \Delta C$  is a colimiting cocone, then for any morphism  $f : A \rightarrow C$ , there exist an object  $i$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and a morphism  $f' : A \rightarrow Bi$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f = \varepsilon_i \circ f'$ ; and

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

moreover if  $f = \varepsilon_j \circ f''$  for some morphism  $f'' : A \rightarrow Bj$  in  $C$ , then there exists an object  $k$  and a pair of arrows  $g : i \rightarrow k, h : i \rightarrow k$  in  $J$  such that  $Bg \circ f' = Bh \circ f''$ .

*Proof.* Use the explicit description of  $\varinjlim_J C(A, B)$  as a filtered colimit of sets; see Definition 1.1 in [LPAC], or Proposition 5.1.3 in [Borceux, 1994b].  $\square$

**0.2.16** COROLLARY. *Let  $B : J \rightarrow C$  be a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram, and let  $\lambda : B \Rightarrow \Delta C$  be a colimiting cocone in  $C$ . If  $C$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $C$ , then  $C$  is a retract of some vertex of  $B$ , i.e. there exists an object  $i$  in  $J$  such that  $\lambda_i : Bi \rightarrow C$  is a split epimorphism.*  $\blacksquare$

**0.2.17** LEMMA. *Let  $A$  be an object in a category  $C$ .*

- (i) *If  $A$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $C$  and  $\lambda'$  is any regular cardinal  $\leq \lambda$ , then  $A$  is  $(\kappa, \lambda')$ -compact as well.*
- (ii) *If  $A$  is  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact and  $\mu$  is any regular cardinal  $\geq \kappa$ , then  $A$  is also  $(\mu, \lambda)$ -compact.*

*Proof.* Obvious.  $\blacklozenge$

**0.2.18** LEMMA. *Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . If  $B : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow C$  is a  $\kappa$ -small diagram of  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact objects in a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then the colimit  $\varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} B$ , if it exists, is also a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $C$ .*

*Proof.* Use theorem 0.2.13 and the fact that  $C(-, C) : C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^+$  maps colimits in  $C$  to limits in  $\mathbf{Set}^+$ .  $\blacksquare$

**0.2.19** COROLLARY. *A retract of a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object is also a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $r : A \rightarrow B$  and  $s : B \rightarrow A$  are morphisms in  $C$  such that  $r \circ s = \text{id}_B$ . Then  $e = s \circ r$  is an idempotent morphism and the diagram below

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_A} & A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ & \xrightarrow{e} & & & \end{array}$$

is a (split) coequaliser diagram in  $C$ , so  $B$  is  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact if  $A$  is.  $\blacksquare$



**0.2.20** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe and let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. For any  $\mathbf{U}$ -set  $A$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $A$  has cardinality less than  $\kappa$ .
- (ii) The representable functor  $\mathbf{Set}(A, -) : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- (iii) The representable functor  $\mathbf{Set}(A, -) : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -directed diagrams.

*Proof.* The claim (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii) follows from [theorem 0.2.13](#), and (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii) is obvious. To see (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i), we may use [corollary 0.2.16](#) and the fact that every set is the  $\kappa$ -directed union of its subsets of cardinality  $< \kappa$ . ■

**0.2.21** COROLLARY. A  $\mathbf{U}$ -set  $X$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact if and only if  $|X| < \kappa$ . ■

**0.2.22** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . A  $\kappa$ -**accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category** is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- There exists a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set  $\mathcal{G}$  whose element are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that, for each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  whose vertices are in  $\mathcal{G}$  and whose colimit is  $B$ .

We write  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  spanned by the  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects.

**0.2.23** EXAMPLE. The category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category for any regular cardinal  $\kappa$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ .

**0.2.24** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ . There exist a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathcal{C})$  and a functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathcal{C})$  with the following properties:

- (i) The objects of  $\mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathcal{C})$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams  $B : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and  $\gamma$  sends an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  to the corresponding trivial diagram  $\mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with value  $C$ .
- (ii) The functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathcal{C})$  is fully faithful, injective on objects, preserves all limits that exist in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and preserves all  $\kappa$ -small colimits that exist in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

- (iii)  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- (iv) For every object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the object  $\gamma C$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$ , and for each  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $B : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , there is a canonical colimiting cocone  $\gamma B \Rightarrow \Delta B$  in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$ .
- (v) If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a category with colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, then for each functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , there exists a functor  $\bar{F} : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  that preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  such that  $\gamma \bar{F} = F$ , and given any functor  $\bar{G} : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  whatsoever, the induced map  $\text{Nat}(\bar{F}, \bar{G}) \rightarrow \text{Nat}(F, \gamma \bar{G})$  is a bijection.

The category  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  is called the **free  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -ind-completion** of  $\mathcal{C}$ , or the **category of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -ind-objects** in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* If  $B : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $B' : \mathbb{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  are two  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, then properties (ii) and (iii) together imply that

$$\text{Hom}(B', B) \cong \varprojlim_{\mathbb{D}'} \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} C(B', B)$$

and so, taking the RHS as the *definition* of the LHS, we need only find a suitable notion of composition to make  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  into a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. However, we observe that, if  $N : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the Yoneda embedding, then

$$\text{Hom}\left(\varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}'} NB', \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} NB\right) \cong \varprojlim_{\mathbb{D}'} \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} C(B', B)$$

and, assuming property (v), the Yoneda embedding  $N : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  must extend along  $\gamma$  to a functor  $\bar{N} : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C) \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  that preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram, so, in consideration of properties (i) and (iv), we may as well *define* the composition in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  so that  $\bar{N}$  becomes fully faithful. This completes the definition of  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  as a category.

It remains to be shown that  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(C)$  actually has properties (ii), (iii), (iv), and (v); see Corollary 6.4.14 in [Borceux, 1994a] and Theorem 2.26 in [LPAC]. Note that the fact that  $\gamma$  preserves colimits for  $\kappa$ -small diagrams essentially follows from [theorem 0.2.13](#).  $\square$

**0.2.25** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ .*

- (i)  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- (ii) Every  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  is a retract of an object of the form  $\gamma B$ , where  $\gamma : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  is the canonical embedding.
- (iii)  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B}))$  is an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.

*Proof.* (i). This claim more-or-less follows from the properties of  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  explained in the previous theorem.

(ii). Use [corollary 0.2.19](#).

(iii). Since  $\mathbb{B}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  is locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, claim (ii) implies that  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B}))$  must be essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small. ■

**0.2.26** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and let  $C$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) The comma category  $(\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \downarrow \mathcal{C})$  is an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered category.
- (ii) If  $P^C : (\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \downarrow \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is the canonical diagram, then the tautological cocone<sup>[2]</sup>  $P^C \Rightarrow \Delta C$  is a colimiting cocone in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* See Proposition 2.1.5 in [Makkai and Paré, 1989] or Proposition 2.8 in [LPAC]. □

**0.2.27** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category. For any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered category  $\mathbb{D}$ ,  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} : [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves componentwise limits for  $\kappa$ -small diagrams.*

*Proof.* The claim is certainly true when  $\mathcal{C} = [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , by [theorem 0.2.13](#). In general, choose a fully faithful functor  $R : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  that preserves limits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams and colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams; then  $R$  reflects limits for  $\kappa$ -small diagrams and colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, so we may deduce the claim from the corresponding fact for  $[\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . Note that such a functor exists: propositions [0.2.26](#) and [A.5.25](#) imply we may take  $\mathbb{B}$  to be  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  and  $R$  to be the induced Yoneda representation. ■

[2] See [definition A.5.7](#).

**0.2.28** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . A  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -**accessible functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  such that

- $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and
- $F$  preserves all colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.

We write  $\mathbf{Acc}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  for the full subcategory of the functor category  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$  spanned by the  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors. An **accessible functor** is a functor that is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor for some regular cardinal  $\kappa$  in some universe  $\mathbf{U}$ .

**0.2.29** THEOREM (Classification of accessible categories). *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- (ii) *The inclusion  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  extends along  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}))$  to a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*
- (iii) *There exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{B}$  and a functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.26 in [LPAC], or Theorem 5.3.5 in [Borceux, 1994b].

□

**0.2.30** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and  $\mathcal{D}$  is any category, then:*

- (i) *The restriction  $\mathbf{Acc}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \rightarrow [\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}), \mathcal{D}]$  is fully faithful and surjective on objects.*
- (ii) *In particular, if  $\mathcal{D}$  is also locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, then  $\mathbf{Acc}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  is equivalent to a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.*
- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{D}$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, then the inclusion  $\mathbf{Acc}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \hookrightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$  has a left adjoint.* ■

**0.2.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Given an adjunction  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if  $G$  is fully faithful and preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, then  $\mathcal{D}$  is also a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

*Proof.* Under our hypotheses, given any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , we may take  $F \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} GA$  as its colimit in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Our hypotheses also imply that  $F$  sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ ; thus if  $\mathcal{G}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small set of objects that generates  $\mathcal{C}$  under  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered colimits, then  $\{FX \mid X \in \mathcal{G}\}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small set of objects that generates  $\mathcal{D}$  in the same sense. ■

**0.2.32** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals and let  $\mathcal{P}_{\kappa}(X)$  denote the set of all  $\kappa$ -small subsets of a set  $X$ . We say  $\kappa$  is **sharply less than**  $\lambda$  if

- $\kappa < \lambda$ , and
- for all  $\lambda$ -small sets  $X$ , there exists a  $\lambda$ -small cofinal subposet of the poset  $\mathcal{P}_{\kappa}(X)$ .

We define  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$  to mean that  $\kappa$  is sharply less than  $\lambda$ .

**0.2.33** EXAMPLE. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal and let  $\kappa^+$  be its cardinal successor. Then  $\kappa \triangleleft \kappa^+$ : every  $\kappa^+$ -small set can be mapped bijectively onto an initial segment  $\alpha$  of  $\kappa$  (but possibly all of  $\kappa$ ), and it is clear that the subposet

$$\{\beta \mid \beta \leq \alpha\} \subseteq \mathcal{P}_{\kappa}(\alpha)$$

is a  $\kappa^+$ -small cofinal subposet of  $\mathcal{P}_{\kappa}(\alpha)$ : given any  $\kappa$ -small subset  $X \subseteq \alpha$ , we must have  $\sup X \leq \alpha$ , and  $X \subseteq \sup X$  by definition.

**0.2.34** THEOREM. *Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , and suppose  $\kappa < \lambda$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ .
- (ii) *For any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -directed poset  $X$  and any  $\lambda$ -small subset  $Y \subseteq X$ , there exists a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -directed subposet  $X' \subseteq X$  with  $Y \subseteq X'$ .*
- (iii) *Any  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category is also a  $\lambda$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.11 in [LPAC].

□

**0.2.35** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *The binary relation  $\triangleleft$  is transitive.*
- (ii) *If  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ , then  $\kappa \triangleleft (2^{<\lambda})^+$ , where  $2^{<\lambda} = \sup \{2^\mu \mid \mu \text{ is a cardinal } < \lambda\}$  and  $2^\mu = |\mathcal{P}(\mu)|$ , and also  $\kappa \triangleleft (2^\lambda)^+$ .*
- (iii) *For any set  $K$  of regular cardinals, there exists a regular cardinal  $\lambda$  such that  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$  for all  $\kappa$  in  $K$ .*

*Proof.* (i). See Proposition 2.3.2 in [Makkai and Paré, 1989], or [theorem 0.2.34](#).

(ii). See Proposition 2.3.5 in [Makkai and Paré, 1989], or Example 2.13(5) in [LPAC], or Proposition 5.4.7 in [Borceux, 1994b].

(iii). This follows from claim (ii). □

**0.2.36** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . A **locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category** is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category that is also  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete. A **locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category** is one that is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category for some regular cardinal  $\kappa$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ , and we often say ‘locally finitely presentable’ instead of ‘locally  $\aleph_0$ -presentable’.

**0.2.37** EXAMPLE. The category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category for any regular cardinal  $\kappa$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ .

**0.2.38** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

- (i) *For any regular cardinal  $\lambda$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ , if  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ , then  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*
- (ii) *With  $\lambda$  as above, if  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, then it is also a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.*
- (iii) *If  $\mathbf{U}^+$  is any universe with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , and  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category, then  $\mathcal{C}$  must be a preorder.*

*Proof.* (i). See the remark after Theorem 1.20 in [LPAC], or Propositions 5.3.2 and 5.2.3 in [Borceux, 1994b].

(ii). A  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram is certainly  $\kappa$ -filtered, so if  $F$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ , it must also preserve colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams.

(iii). This is a corollary of [theorem 0.1.10](#). ■

**0.2.39** COROLLARY. *A category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category for at most one universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , provided  $\mathcal{C}$  is not a preorder.*

*Proof.* Use [proposition 0.1.37](#) together with the above lemma. ■

**0.2.40** THEOREM (Classification of locally presentable categories). *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- (ii) There exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{B}$  that has colimits for  $\kappa$ -small diagrams and a functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.
- (iii) The restricted Yoneda embedding  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is fully faithful,  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, and has a left adjoint.
- (iv) There exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{A}$  and a fully faithful  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $R : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathbf{Set}]$  such that  $\mathbb{A}$  has limits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams,  $R$  has a left adjoint, and  $R$  is essentially surjective onto the full subcategory of functors  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  that preserve limits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams.
- (v) There exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{A}$  and a fully faithful functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathbf{Set}]$  that preserves colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and has a left adjoint.
- (vi)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete.

*Proof.* See Proposition 1.27, Corollary 1.28, Theorem 1.46, and Corollary 2.47 in [LPAC], or Theorems 5.2.7 and 5.5.8 in [Borceux, 1994b]. □

**0.2.41** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is equivalent to  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  for some  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{B}$  that has colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, then  $\mathbb{B}$  must be equivalent to  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  by [proposition 0.2.25](#). In other words, every locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category is, up to equivalence, the free  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -ind-completion of an essentially unique  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -cocomplete category.

**0.2.42** **EXAMPLE.** Obviously, for any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{A}$ , the functor category  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is locally finitely presentable. More generally, one may show that for any  $\kappa$ -ary algebraic theory  $\mathbf{T}$ , possibly many-sorted, the category of  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebras in  $\mathbf{U}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category. The above theorem can also be used to show that  $\mathbf{Cat}$ , the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories, is a locally finitely presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.

**0.2.43** **PROPOSITION.** *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and  $\mathbb{D}$  is any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then the functor category  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}]$  is also an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.39 in [LPAC]. □

**0.2.44** **PROPOSITION.** *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and  $\mathbb{D}$  is any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then the functor category  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}]$  is also a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

*Proof.* This can be proven using the classification theorem by noting that the 2-functor  $[\mathbb{D}, -]$  preserves reflective subcategories, but see also Corollary 1.54 in [LPAC]. □

It is commonplace to say ‘ $\lambda$ -presentable object’ instead of ‘ $\lambda$ -compact object’, especially in algebraic contexts. The following propositions justify the alternative terminology.

**0.2.45** **PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category. If  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then the following are equivalent for an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i)  $C$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) *There exists a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that each  $A_j$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $C \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} A$ .*
- (iii) *There exists a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -directed diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that each  $A_j$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $C$  is a retract of  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} A$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). See Proposition 2.3.11 in [Makkai and Paré, 1989].

(i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). See Remark 2.15 in [LPAC]. □



**0.2.46** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and let  $\lambda$  be a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  with  $\lambda \geq \kappa$ . If  $\mathcal{H}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  such that*

- *every  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  is isomorphic to an object in  $\mathcal{H}$ , and*
- *$\mathcal{H}$  is closed in  $\mathcal{C}$  under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams,*

*then every  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  is isomorphic to an object in  $\mathcal{H}$ . In particular,  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is the smallest replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  containing  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  and closed in  $\mathcal{C}$  under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams.*

*Proof.* Let  $C$  be any  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Clearly, the comma category  $(\mathcal{H} \downarrow \mathcal{C})$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered category. Let  $\mathcal{G} = \mathcal{H} \cap \mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$ . One can show that  $(\mathcal{G} \downarrow \mathcal{C})$  is a cofinal subcategory in  $(\mathcal{H} \downarrow \mathcal{C})$ , and the classification theorem (0.2.40) plus proposition A.5.25 implies that the tautological cocone on the diagram  $(\mathcal{G} \downarrow \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is colimiting, so the tautological cocone on the diagram  $(\mathcal{H} \downarrow \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is also colimiting. Now, by corollary 0.2.16,  $C$  is a retract of an object in  $\mathcal{H}$ , and hence  $C$  must be isomorphic to an object in  $\mathcal{H}$ , because  $\mathcal{H}$  is closed under coequalisers.

TODO: Simplify this argument.

For the final claim, note that  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is certainly a replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  and contained in any replete full subcategory containing  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  and closed in  $\mathcal{C}$  under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams, so we just have to show that  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is also closed in  $\mathcal{C}$  under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams; for this, we simply appeal to lemma 0.2.18. ■

**0.2.47** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small category in  $\mathbf{U}$ .*

- (i) *If  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal  $\geq \kappa$ ,  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams, and  $A : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact, then  $A$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}]$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\lambda$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and has products for  $\kappa$ -small families of objects, then every  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}]$  is componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact.*

*Proof.* (i). First, note that the Mac Lane subdivision category<sup>[3]</sup>  $\mathbb{D}^\S$  is also  $\kappa$ -small, so  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}](A, B)$  is computed as the limit of a  $\kappa$ -small diagram of hom-sets.

[3] See definition A.6.7.

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

More precisely, using end notation,<sup>[4]</sup>

$$[\mathbb{D}, C](A, B) \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} C(Ad, Bd)$$

and so if  $\kappa \leq \lambda$  and  $A$  is componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact, then  $[\mathbb{D}, C](A, -)$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams, hence  $A$  is itself  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact.

(ii). Now, suppose  $A$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[\mathbb{D}, C]$ . Let  $d$  be an object in  $\mathbb{D}$ , let  $d^* : [\mathbb{D}, C] \rightarrow C$  be evaluation at  $d$ , and let  $d_* : C \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, C]$  be the right adjoint, which is explicitly given by

$$(d_* C)(d') = \mathbb{D}(d', d) \pitchfork C$$

where  $\pitchfork$  is defined by following adjunction:

$$\mathbf{Set}(X, C(C, C')) \cong C(C, X \pitchfork C')$$

The unit  $\eta_A : A \rightarrow d_* d^* A$  is constructed using the universal property of  $\pitchfork$  in the obvious way, and the counit  $\varepsilon_C : d^* d_* C \rightarrow C$  is the projection  $\mathbb{D}(d, d) \pitchfork C \rightarrow C$  corresponding to  $\text{id}_d \in \mathbb{D}(d, d)$ . Since  $C$  is a  $\lambda$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, there exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram  $B : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow C$  consisting of  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $C$  and a colimiting cocone  $\alpha : B \Rightarrow \Delta d^* A$ , and since each  $\mathbb{D}(d', d)$  has cardinality  $< \kappa$ , the cocone  $d_* \alpha : d_* B \Rightarrow \Delta d_* d^* A$  is also colimiting, by [corollary 0.2.27](#). [Lemma 0.2.15](#) then implies  $\eta_A : A \rightarrow d_* d^* A$  factors through  $d_* \alpha_j : d_*(Bj) \rightarrow d_* d^* A$  for some  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , say

$$\eta_A = d_* \alpha_j \circ \sigma$$

for some  $\sigma : A \rightarrow d_* Bj$ . But then, by the triangle identity,

$$\text{id}_{Ad} = \varepsilon_{Ad} \circ d^* \eta_A = \varepsilon_{Ad} \circ d^* d_* \alpha_j \circ d^* \sigma = \alpha_j \circ \varepsilon_{Bj} \circ d^* \sigma$$

and so  $\alpha_j : Bj \rightarrow Ad$  is a split epimorphism, hence  $Ad$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object, by [corollary 0.2.19](#). ■

**0.2.48** REMARK. The claim in the above proposition can fail if  $\kappa > \lambda$ . For example, we could take  $C = \mathbf{Set}$ , with  $\mathbb{D}$  being the set  $\omega$  considered as a discrete category; then the terminal object in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is componentwise finite, but is not itself an  $\aleph_0$ -compact object in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .

---

[4] See §A.6.

**0.2.49** LEMMA. Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , with  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ .

- (i) If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category,  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor that preserves limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then, for any  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the comma category  $(C \downarrow G)$  has an initial object.
- (ii) If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category,  $\mathcal{D}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a functor that preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then, for any object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the comma category  $(F \downarrow D)$  has a terminal object.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\mathcal{F}$  be the full subcategory of  $(C \downarrow G)$  spanned by those  $(D, g)$  where  $D$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}$ .  $G$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams, so, by lemma 0.2.15,  $\mathcal{F}$  must be a weakly initial family in  $(C \downarrow G)$ . Proposition 0.2.25 implies  $\mathcal{F}$  is an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and since  $\mathcal{D}$  has limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams and  $G$  preserves them,  $(C \downarrow G)$  is also  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete. Thus, the inclusion  $\mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow (C \downarrow G)$  has a limit, and it can be shown that this is an initial object in  $(C \downarrow G)$ .<sup>[5]</sup>

(ii). Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be the full subcategory of  $(F \downarrow D)$  spanned by those  $(C, f)$  where  $C$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; note that proposition 0.2.25 implies  $\mathcal{G}$  is an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Since  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams and  $F$  preserves them,  $(F \downarrow D)$  is also  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete.<sup>[6]</sup> Let  $(C, f)$  be a colimit for the inclusion  $\mathcal{G} \hookrightarrow (F \downarrow D)$ . It is not hard to check that  $(C, f)$  is a weakly terminal object in  $(F \downarrow D)$ , so the formal dual of Freyd's initial object lemma<sup>[7]</sup> gives us a terminal object in  $(F \downarrow D)$ ; explicitly, it may be constructed as the joint coequaliser of all the endomorphisms of  $(C, f)$ . ■

**0.2.50** THEOREM (Accessible adjoint functor theorem). Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , with  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.

Given a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $F$  has a right adjoint  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and  $G$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.

[5] See Theorem 1 in [CWM, Ch. X, §2].

[6] See the Lemma in [CWM, Ch. V, §6].

[7] See Theorem 1 in [CWM, Ch. V, §6].

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

- (ii)  $F$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams and sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .
- (iii)  $F$  has a right adjoint and sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

On the other hand, given a functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (iv)  $G$  has a left adjoint  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , and  $F$  sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .
- (v)  $G$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor and preserves limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.
- (vi)  $G$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor and there exist a functor  $F_0 : \mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and hom-set bijections

$$\mathcal{C}(C, GD) \cong \mathcal{D}(F_0 C, D)$$

natural in  $D$  for each  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , where  $D$  varies in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

*Proof.* We will need to refer back to the details of the proof of this theorem later, so here is a sketch of the constructions involved.

(i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $F$  is a left adjoint, then  $F$  certainly preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams. Given a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram  $B : J \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D}\left(FC, \varinjlim_J B\right) &\cong \mathcal{C}\left(C, G \varinjlim_J B\right) \cong \mathcal{C}\left(C, \varinjlim_J GB\right) \\ &\cong \varinjlim_J \mathcal{C}(C, GB) \cong \varinjlim_J \mathcal{C}(FC, B) \end{aligned}$$

and thus  $FC$  is indeed a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). It is enough to show that, for each object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the comma category  $(F \downarrow D)$  has a terminal object  $(GD, \varepsilon_D)$ ; <sup>[8]</sup> but this was done in the previous lemma.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Given a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram  $B : J \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , observe that

---

[8] See Theorem 2 in [CWM, Ch. IV, § 1].

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}\left(C, G \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} B\right) &\cong \mathcal{D}\left(FC, \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} B\right) \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}(FC, B) \\ &\cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}(C, GB) \cong \mathcal{C}\left(C, \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} GB\right) \end{aligned}$$

because  $FC$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}$ ; but [theorem 0.2.40](#) says the restricted Yoneda embedding  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is fully faithful, so this is enough to conclude that  $G$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams.

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v). If  $G$  is a right adjoint, then  $G$  certainly preserves limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams; the rest of this implication is just (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i).

(v)  $\Rightarrow$  (vi). It is enough to show that, for each  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the comma category  $(C \downarrow G)$  has an initial object  $(F_0 C, \eta_C)$ ; but this was done in the previous lemma. It is clear how to make  $F_0$  into a functor  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ .

(vi)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). We use [theorems 0.2.24](#) and [0.2.40](#) to extend  $F_0 : \mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  along the inclusion  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  to get  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ . We then observe that, for any  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $A : \mathbb{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}\left(\varinjlim_{\mathbb{I}} A, GD\right) &\cong \varprojlim_{\mathbb{I}} \mathcal{C}(A, GD) \cong \varprojlim_{\mathbb{I}} \mathcal{C}(F_0 A, D) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}\left(\varinjlim_{\mathbb{I}} F A, D\right) \cong \mathcal{C}\left(F \varinjlim_{\mathbb{I}} A, D\right) \end{aligned}$$

is a series of bijections natural in  $D$ , where  $D$  varies in  $\mathcal{D}$ ; but  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, so this is enough to show that  $F$  is a left adjoint of  $G$ . The remainder of the claim is a corollary of (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii).  $\blacksquare$

**0.2.51** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories. If a functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has a left adjoint, then there exists a regular cardinal  $\mu$  in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $G$  is a  $(\mu, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category,  $\mathcal{D}$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a left adjoint for  $G$ . Since  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, recalling [lemma 0.2.17](#), there certainly exists a regular cardinal  $\mu$  in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $\mu \geq \lambda$  and  $F$  sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\mu, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ . The above theorem, plus [lemma 0.2.38](#), implies  $G$  is an  $(\mu, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.  $\blacksquare$

## 0.3 Accessible constructions

**Prerequisites.** §§0.1, 0.2, A.5

- 0.3.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor. The **U-rank** of  $F$  is the smallest regular cardinal  $\kappa$  in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $F$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, provided any such cardinal exists.
- 0.3.2** REMARK. The class of regular cardinals is well-ordered, so the definition above makes sense. Of course, every  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor has  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$ .
- 0.3.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. The **compactness U-rank** of an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is the  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank of the hom-functor  $\mathcal{C}(A, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , where  $\mathbf{Set}$  is the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets.
- 0.3.4** REMARK. Lemma 0.2.18 implies that, for each object  $A$  in an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, there exists a regular cardinal  $\lambda$  in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $A$  is  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact; in particular, every object in an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category has a compactness  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank.
- 0.3.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . A  **$(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbf{U}$ -category** is an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}$  that satisfies the following conditions:
- $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for all  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
  - Every object in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a colimit for some  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram of  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

We write  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(\mathcal{C})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  spanned by the  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact objects.

- 0.3.6** REMARK. Lemma 0.2.9 implies an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category is  $(\kappa, \kappa)$ -compactly generated if and only if it is Cauchy-complete, i.e. if and only if all idempotent endomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  are split.
- 0.3.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*
- (i)  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  is a  $(\kappa, \kappa)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and every object in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  is  $(\kappa, \kappa)$ -compact.
  - (ii) If  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact objects in  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  are precisely the  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i). This follows from lemma 0.2.17, corollary 0.2.19, and remark 0.3.6.

(ii). Combine corollary 0.2.16, lemma 0.2.18, and proposition 0.2.45. ■

**0.3.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathbb{A}$  and  $\mathbb{B}$  be  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories, and let  $F : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a fully faithful functor. Assume the following hypotheses:*

- $\kappa \leq \lambda$ .
- $\mathbb{A}$  is a Cauchy-complete category and  $\mathbb{B}$  has colimits for  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- Each  $FA$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $\mathbb{B}$ , and each object in  $\mathbb{B}$  is a colimit for a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram of objects in the image of  $F$ .

*Then:*

- (i) Every  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $\mathbb{B}$  is isomorphic to an object in the image of  $F : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$ .
- (ii) There exists a functor  $U : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  equipped with a natural bijection of the form below,

$$\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})(A, UB) \cong \mathbb{B}(FA, B)$$

*and it is unique up to unique isomorphism.*

- (iii) Moreover, the functor  $U : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective onto the full subcategory of  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$ .
- (iv)  $F : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a dense functor.
- (v) If  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then the  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $\bar{U} : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\lambda}(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  induced by  $U : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $B$  be an object in  $\mathbb{B}$ . By hypothesis, there is a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  such that each  $Yj$  is in the image of  $F$  and  $B \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} Yj$ . Thus, if  $B$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact object in  $\mathbb{B}$ , then  $B$  must be a retract of some  $Yj$  (by corollary 0.2.16). But  $\mathbb{A}$  is Cauchy-complete and  $F : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is fully faithful, so  $B$  must be isomorphic to some object in the image of  $F$ .

(ii). The assumptions imply each functor  $\mathbb{B}(F-, B) : \mathbb{A}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a colimit for a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram of functors of the form  $\mathbb{A}(-, A')$  for various  $A'$  in  $\mathbb{A}$ . Hence, for each object  $B$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , there exist an object  $UB$  in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  and bijections

$$\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})(A, UB) \cong \mathbb{B}(FA, B)$$

that are natural in  $A$ . Since the canonical embedding  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is dense, we thus obtain a functor  $U : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  with the required property.

(iii). It is clear that  $U$  is a fully faithful functor that preserves colimits for  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams. We may then apply [proposition 0.2.45](#) to deduce that every  $(\lambda, \mathbb{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is isomorphic to one in the image of  $U$ .

(iv). This follows from claim (iii) and the fact that the canonical embedding  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is dense.

(v). If  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then [theorem 0.2.34](#) says  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is a  $\lambda$ -accessible category, so we may apply the classification theorem ([0.2.29](#)) to deduce that  $\bar{U} : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\lambda}(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A})$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects. ■

**0.3.9 COROLLARY** (Classification of compactly generated categories). *Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbb{U}$ . If either  $\kappa = \lambda$  or  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then the following are equivalent for a Cauchy-complete category  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbb{U}$ -category.
- (ii)  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbb{U}}^{\lambda}(\mathcal{C})$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbb{U}$ -category.
- (iii)  $\mathcal{C}$  is equivalent to  $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{U}}(\mathcal{D})$  for some  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbb{U}$ -category  $\mathcal{D}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). See [proposition 0.3.8](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Apply [proposition 0.2.25](#).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). See [proposition 0.3.7](#). ■

**0.3.10 DEFINITION.** Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbb{U}$ . A  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -**compactly defined functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  with the following properties:

- $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbb{U}$ -category.
- $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves colimits for  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams of  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .



**0.3.11** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly defined functor, then the natural maps

$$\begin{aligned} D(FC, D) &\rightarrow [\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(C)^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](C(-, C), D(F-, D)) \\ f &\mapsto (c \mapsto f \circ Fc) \end{aligned}$$

are bijections.

*Proof.* Choose a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that each vertex is  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $C \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} X$ . We then have a natural bijection

$$C(A, C) \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} C(A, X)$$

as  $A$  varies in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(C)$ , so

$$[\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(C)^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](C(-, C), D(-, D)) \cong \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} [\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(C)^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](C(-, X), D(F-, D))$$

and by applying the Yoneda lemma, we have

$$\varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} [\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(C)^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](C(-, X), D(F-, D)) \cong \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} D(FX, D)$$

but  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves colimits for  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams of  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so:

$$\varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} D(FX, D) \cong D\left(\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} FX, D\right) \cong D(FC, D)$$

We may therefore deduce that the indicated maps are bijections. ■

**0.3.12** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories. If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly defined functor, then the induced functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(F) : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{D})$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(C)$ , let  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{C})$  and  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{D})$  be the canonical embeddings and let  $\bar{F} = \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(F)$ . Theorems 0.2.24 and A.5.15 imply  $\bar{F} : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{D})$  is (the functor part of) a pointwise left Kan extension of  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}}F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{D})$  along  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{C})$ . By proposition 0.3.8,  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{C})$  and  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\lambda(\mathcal{D})$  are  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories, and to verify that  $\bar{F}$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, it suffices to show that  $\bar{F}$  is (the functor part of) a pointwise left Kan extension of  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}}F|_{\mathcal{A}}$  along  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}}|_{\mathcal{A}}$ .

Since  $\gamma_D : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\lambda}(\mathcal{D})$  preserves colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams, the composite  $\gamma_D F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\lambda}(\mathcal{D})$  is also a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly defined functor, and so  $\gamma_D F$  is (the functor part of) a pointwise left Kan extension of  $\gamma_D F|_{\mathcal{A}}$  along the inclusion  $\mathcal{A} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  (by [lemma 0.3.11](#)). We may therefore apply [theorem A.5.20](#) to deduce that  $\bar{F}$  is indeed (the functor part of) a pointwise left Kan extension of  $\gamma_D F|_{\mathcal{A}}$  along  $\gamma_C|_{\mathcal{A}}$ . ■

**0.3.13** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . A **strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  with the following properties:

- Both  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories.
- $F$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- $F$  sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

**0.3.14** EXAMPLE. Given any functor  $F : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$ , if  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  are small categories, then the induced functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(F) : \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, by corollaries [0.2.16](#) and [0.2.19](#).

**0.3.15** PROPOSITION (Products of accessible categories). *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . If  $(\mathcal{C}_i \mid i \in I)$  is a  $\kappa$ -small family of  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories, then:*

- (i) *The product  $\mathcal{C} = \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{C}_i$  is also a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*
- (ii) *Moreover, the projection functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_i$  are strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors.*

*Proof.* It is clear that  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams: indeed, they can be computed componentwise. [Theorem 0.2.13](#) implies that an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as soon as its components are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in their respective categories. Recalling [lemma 0.2.10](#), it follows that  $\mathcal{C}$  is generated under  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered colimits by a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small family of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects, as required of a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category. ■

**0.3.16** LEMMA. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be a universe with  $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \mathbf{U}^+$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$  be an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathcal{D}$  be an accessible  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.*

- (i) *There is a regular cardinal  $\lambda$  in  $\mathbf{U}^+$  such that  $F$  sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*
- (ii) *Moreover, if  $\mu$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}^+$  such that  $\kappa \triangleleft \mu$  and  $\lambda \leq \mu$ , then  $F$  sends  $(\mu, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\mu, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Such a regular cardinal exists by [remark 0.3.4](#) and [proposition 0.2.25](#).

(ii). If  $\mu$  is not in  $\mathbf{U}$ , then the claim is trivial; otherwise, [proposition 0.2.45](#) and [lemma 0.2.18](#) imply that  $F$  sends  $(\mu, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\mu, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ , as required. ■

**0.3.17** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories. If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, then:*

- (i) *There exists a regular cardinal  $\lambda$  in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $F$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*
- (ii) *Moreover, if  $\mu$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\lambda \triangleleft \mu$ , then  $F$  is also strongly  $(\mu, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* Combine [lemma 0.3.16](#), [theorem 0.2.34](#), and [proposition 0.2.35](#). ■

**0.3.18** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a  $\kappa$ -filtered category. If  $\mathbb{A}$  is a  $\kappa$ -small category, then the functor category  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{J}]$  is also a  $\kappa$ -filtered category.*

*Proof.* There is a natural bijection between diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{J}]$  and diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \times \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$ ; but if  $\mathbb{D}$  is  $\kappa$ -small, then so is  $\mathbb{D} \times \mathbb{A}$ . Thus, every  $\kappa$ -small diagram in  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{J}]$  has a cocone, as required. ■

**0.3.19** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a  $\kappa$ -filtered category, let  $A : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small diagram, let  ${}^A/\mathcal{J}$  be the cocone category ( $A \downarrow \Delta$ ), and let  $P : {}^A/\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  be the projection functor.*

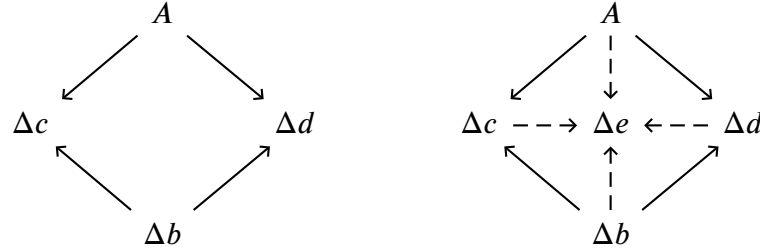
- (i) *The cocone category  ${}^A/\mathcal{J}$  is also a  $\kappa$ -filtered category.*
- (ii)  *$P : {}^A/\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is a cofinal functor.<sup>[1]</sup>*

[1] See [definition A.5.31](#).

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small category. There exists a  $\kappa$ -small category  $\tilde{\mathbb{D}}$  equipped with a functor  $L : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathbb{D}}$  and a natural bijection between diagrams  $X : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow {}^A/\mathcal{J}$  and diagrams  $\tilde{X} : \tilde{\mathbb{D}} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  such that  $\tilde{X}L = A$ , and moreover this construction is natural in  $\mathbb{D}$ . Thus, every  $\kappa$ -small diagram in  ${}^A/\mathcal{J}$  admits a cocone, as required.

(ii). We must show that the comma category  $(b \downarrow P)$  is connected for all objects  $b$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ . Since  $\mathcal{J}$  is filtered, there must exist an object  $c$ , a cocone  $A \Rightarrow \Delta c$ , and a morphism  $b \rightarrow c$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ ; thus,  $(b \downarrow P)$  is inhabited. Moreover, any diagram in  $[\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{J}]$  of the form shown below on the left can be completed to one of the form shown below on the right,



so we may conclude that  $(b \downarrow P)$  is indeed connected. ■

**0.3.20** LEMMA. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $X : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small diagram, let  $Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram, and let  $\varepsilon : Y \Rightarrow \Delta B$  be a colimiting cocone in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If each  $X_i$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then every cocone  $X \Rightarrow \Delta B$  must factor through  $\varepsilon_j : Y_j \rightarrow B$  for some  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow \Delta B$  be a cocone, and regard it as a morphism in the functor category  $[\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C}]$ . By [proposition 0.2.47](#),  $X$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C}]$ ; but  $\Delta\varepsilon : \Delta Y \Rightarrow \Delta\Delta B$  is a colimiting cocone in  $[\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C}]$ , so we may apply [lemma 0.2.15](#). ■

**0.3.21** LEMMA. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $\mathcal{E}$  be locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories with colimits of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors. Given an object  $(C, D, e)$  in the comma category  $(F \downarrow G)$ , if  $C$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $D$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $FC$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $(C, D, e)$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $(F \downarrow G)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $B = (F \downarrow G)$ , let  $P : B \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $Q : B \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be the evident projections, and let  $\varphi : FP \Rightarrow GQ$  be the canonical natural transformation.

Then, given any two objects  $B$  and  $B'$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , we have the following pullback diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{B}(B, B') & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{D}(QB, QB') \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{C}(PB, PB') & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E}(FPB, GQB') \end{array}$$

where the map  $\mathcal{C}(PB, PB') \rightarrow \mathcal{E}(FPB, GQB')$  is induced by the functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and the morphism  $\varphi_{B'} : FPB' \rightarrow GQB'$ , and the map  $\mathcal{D}(QB, QB') \rightarrow \mathcal{E}(FPB, GQB')$  is induced by the functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and the morphism  $\varphi_B : FPB \rightarrow GQB$ . Thus, by [theorem 0.2.13](#),  $B = (C, D, e)$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{B}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**0.3.22** THEOREM (Accessibility of comma categories). *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors.*

- (i) *The comma category  $(F \downarrow G)$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, created by the projection functor  $(F \downarrow G) \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $F$  and  $G$  are strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors, then  $(F \downarrow G)$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the projection functors  $P : (F \downarrow G) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $Q : (F \downarrow G) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  are strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.43 in [\[LPAC\]](#).  $\square$

**0.3.23** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and  $A$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then:*

- *The slice category  $^A/\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the projection functor  $^A/\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.*
- *The slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the projection functor  $\mathcal{C}_{/A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.*  $\blacksquare$

**0.3.24** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then so is the functor category  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , and moreover the  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  are precisely the componentwise  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects.*

*Proof.* The functor category  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  is isomorphic to the comma category  $(\mathcal{C} \downarrow \mathcal{C})$ , and  $\text{id} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is certainly a strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.  $\blacksquare$

**0.3.25** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then so is  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ .*

*Proof.* Combine lemma 0.3.21 and corollaries 0.3.9 and 0.3.24. ■

**0.3.26** LEMMA. *Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , with  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ , let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, let  $X : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams that are componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact, let  $C = \varinjlim_{\mathcal{I}} X$  and  $D = \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} Y$ , and let  $c_i : Xi \rightarrow C$  and  $d_j : Yj \rightarrow D$  be the components of the respective colimiting cocones.*

- (i) *Given any object  $i_0$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  and any morphism  $e : C \rightarrow D$ , there exist an object  $j_0$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and a morphism  $f_0 : Xi_0 \rightarrow Yj_0$  such that the following diagram commutes:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Xi_0 & \xrightarrow{c_{i_0}} & C \\ f_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow e \\ Yj_0 & \xrightarrow{d_{j_0}} & D \end{array}$$

- (ii) *Given any commutative diagram of the above form, if  $e : C \rightarrow D$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then there exist chains  $I : \kappa \rightarrow \mathcal{I}$  and  $J : \kappa \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  and a factorisation of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Xi_0 & \longrightarrow & C' & \longrightarrow & C \\ f_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow e' & & \downarrow e \\ Yj_0 & \longrightarrow & D' & \longrightarrow & D \end{array}$$

*where  $I(0) = i_0$ ,  $J(0) = j_0$ ,  $C' = \varinjlim_{\alpha < \kappa} XI(\alpha)$ ,  $D' = \varinjlim_{\alpha < \kappa} YJ(\alpha)$ ,  $e' : C' \rightarrow D'$  is an isomorphism, and the morphisms  $C' \rightarrow C$  and  $D' \rightarrow D$  are the ones induced by the evident cocones.*

*Proof.* (i). Since  $Xi_0$  is  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact and  $Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram, such a factorisation of  $e \circ c_{i_0}$  must exist, by lemma 0.2.15.

- (ii). We will construct  $I$ ,  $J$ , and  $e'$  by transfinite induction on  $\kappa$ .

- Given  $j_\alpha$  and  $f_\alpha$ , choose a morphism  $i_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1} : i_\alpha \rightarrow i_{\alpha+1}$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  and a morphism  $g_\alpha : Yj_\alpha \rightarrow Xi_{\alpha+1}$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that the diagram below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Xi_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Xi_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1}} & Xi_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{c_{i_{\alpha+1}}} & C \\
 f_\alpha \downarrow & \nearrow g_\alpha & & & \uparrow e^{-1} \\
 Yj_\alpha & \xrightarrow{d_{j_\alpha}} & D & & 
 \end{array}$$

Such  $i_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1}$  and  $g_\alpha$  exist because  $f_\alpha : Xi_\alpha \rightarrow Yj_\alpha$  defines a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in the slice category  $^{Xi_\alpha}/\mathcal{E}$  (by [lemma 0.3.21](#)) and there is an evident  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram  $^{i_\alpha}/X : i_\alpha/\mathcal{I} \rightarrow ^{Xi_\alpha}/\mathcal{E}$  with colimit defined by  $c_{i_\alpha} : Xi_\alpha \rightarrow C$  (by [lemma 0.3.19](#)).

- Given  $i_{\alpha+1}$  and  $g_\alpha$ , choose a morphism  $j_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1} : j_\alpha \rightarrow j_{\alpha+1}$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and a morphism  $f_{\alpha+1} : Xi_{\alpha+1} \rightarrow Yj_{\alpha+1}$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that the diagram below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Yj_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Yj_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1}} & Yj_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{d_{j_{\alpha+1}}} & D \\
 g_\alpha \downarrow & \nearrow f_{\alpha+1} & & & \uparrow e \\
 Xi_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{c_{i_{\alpha+1}}} & C & & 
 \end{array}$$

- Given a limit ordinal  $\beta < \kappa$  and  $i_\alpha$  for all ordinals  $\alpha < \beta$ , choose an object  $i_\beta$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  and a cocone from the chain defined by  $(i_\alpha \mid \alpha < \beta)$  to  $i_\beta$ .
- Given  $i_\beta$  for a limit ordinal  $\beta < \kappa$  and  $j_\alpha$  for all ordinals  $\alpha < \beta$ , choose an object  $j_\beta$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , a cocone from the chain defined by  $(j_\alpha \mid \alpha < \beta)$ , and a morphism  $f_\beta : Xi_\beta \rightarrow Yj_\beta$  such that the following diagram commutes for all ordinals  $\alpha < \beta$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Yj_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Yj_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}} & Yj_\beta & \xrightarrow{d_{j_\beta}} & D \\
 g_\alpha \downarrow & & \uparrow f_\beta & & \uparrow e \\
 Xi_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{Xi_{\alpha+1 \rightarrow \beta}} & Xi_\beta & \xrightarrow{c_{i_\beta}} & C
 \end{array}$$

Such data exist because the chains  $X'$  and  $Y'$  defined by  $(Xi_\alpha \mid \alpha < \beta)$  and  $(Yj_\alpha \mid \alpha < \beta)$  are  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in the category  $[\beta, \mathcal{E}]$  (by [proposition 0.2.47](#)) and there is an evident  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram in  $^{Y'}/[\beta, \mathcal{E}]$  with colimit  $\Delta D$  (by [lemma 0.3.19](#)).

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

Now take  $I : \kappa \rightarrow \mathcal{I}$  and  $J : \kappa \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  to be the chains defined by  $I(\alpha) = i_\alpha$  and  $J(\alpha) = j_\alpha$ . Let  $C' = \varinjlim_{\alpha < \kappa} Xi_\alpha$  and  $D' = \varinjlim_{\alpha < \kappa} Yj_\alpha$ . The above construction yields commutative diagrams of the form below for all ordinals  $\alpha < \beta < \kappa$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Xi_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Xi_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}} & Xi_\beta \\ f_\alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow f_\beta \\ Yj_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Yj_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}} & Yj_\beta \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} Yj_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Yj_{\alpha \rightarrow \beta}} & Yj_\beta \\ g_\alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow g_\beta \\ Xi_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{Xi_{\alpha+1 \rightarrow \beta+1}} & Xi_{\beta+1} \end{array}$$

so there are induced morphisms  $f : C' \rightarrow D'$  and  $g : D' \rightarrow C'$ ; moreover, since  $g_\alpha \circ f_\alpha = Xi_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1}$  and  $f_{\alpha+1} \circ g_\alpha = Yj_{\alpha \rightarrow \alpha+1}$ , we have  $g \circ f = \text{id}_{C'}$  and  $f \circ g = \text{id}_{D'}$ . Thus, we have the required isomorphism  $e : C' \rightarrow D'$ .  $\blacksquare$

**0.3.27 THEOREM** (Accessibility of iso-comma categories). *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $\mathcal{E}$  be categories with colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be functors of  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$ .*

- (i) *The iso-comma category  $(F \wr G)$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, created by the projection functor  $(F \wr G) \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}$ .*
- (ii) *Assuming  $F$  and  $G$  are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functors, given an object  $(C, D, e)$  in  $(F \wr G)$ , if  $C$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $D$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $(C, D, e)$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $(F \wr G)$ .*
- (iii) *If  $F$  and  $G$  are strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors and  $\kappa < \lambda$ , then  $(F \wr G)$  is a  $\lambda$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the projection functors  $P : (F \wr G) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $Q : (F \wr G) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  are strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* (i). This is a straightforward consequence of the hypothesis that both  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  preserve colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.

(ii). Since the iso-comma category  $(F \wr G)$  is a full subcategory of the comma category  $(F \downarrow G)$ , the claim is an immediate corollary of [lemma 0.3.21](#).

(iii). Let  $\mathcal{B} = (F \wr G)$ . First, we must show that there is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small set of  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{B}$  that generate  $\mathcal{B}$  under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered colimits. Let  $(C, D, e)$  be an object in  $\mathcal{B}$ . Since  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible categories, we may choose  $\mathbf{U}$ -small skeletons  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{J}$  of the comma categories  $(\mathbf{K}_\lambda^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C}) \downarrow \mathcal{C})$  and  $(\mathbf{K}_\lambda^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{D}) \downarrow \mathcal{D})$  and obtain  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams  $X : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  that are componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact and have



$C \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{I}} X$  and  $D \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} Y$  (by [proposition 0.2.26](#) and [theorem 0.2.34](#)). Let  $\mathcal{K}$  be full subcategory of the iso-comma category  $(FX \wr GY)$  spanned by those objects  $(i, j, f)$  such that the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FXi & \xrightarrow{Fc_i} & FC \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow e \\ GYj & \xrightarrow{Gd_j} & GD \end{array}$$

where  $c_i : Xi \rightarrow C$  and  $d_j : Yj \rightarrow D$  are the components of the respective colimiting cocones. Let  $P' : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{I}$  and  $Q' : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  be the projection functors, and let  $Z : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be the evident diagram with  $PZ = FXP'$  and  $QZ = GYQ'$ . It is clear that  $\mathcal{K}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and we claim  $Z : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram with  $(C, D, e)$  as its colimit.

First, we verify that  $(C, D, e)$  is a colimit for the diagram  $Z : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ . Let  $i$  be any object in  $\mathcal{I}$  and consider the comma category  $(i \downarrow P')$ . [Lemma 0.3.26](#) implies it is inhabited. Suppose we have two objects in  $(i \downarrow P')$ , i.e. two objects  $(i_0, j_0, f_0)$  and  $(i_1, j_1, f_1)$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and two morphisms  $h_0 : i \rightarrow i_0$  and  $h_1 : i \rightarrow i_1$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ . Since  $\mathcal{I}$  is a filtered category, there exist an object  $i'$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  and morphisms  $h'_0 : i_0 \rightarrow i'$  and  $h'_1 : i_1 \rightarrow i'$  such that  $h'_0 \circ h_0 = h'_1 \circ h_1$ . Similarly,  $\mathcal{J}$  is a filtered category, so there exist an object  $j_2$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and morphisms  $j_0 \rightarrow j_2$  and  $j_1 \rightarrow j_2$ . By considering a suitable diagram of shape  $j_2/\mathcal{J}$  in the category  $(GY_{j_0}, GY_{j_1})/\mathcal{E} \times \mathcal{E}$  (using the fact that  $f_0 : FXi_0 \rightarrow GYj_0$  and  $f_1 : FXi_1 \rightarrow GYj_1$  are isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ ) and applying lemmas [0.3.19](#) and [0.3.26](#), we see that there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & FXi_0 & & & FC \\ & \downarrow f_0 & \searrow FXh'_0 & \nearrow Fc_{i_0} & \downarrow e \\ FXi_1 & \xrightarrow{Fh'_1} & FXi' & \xrightarrow{Fc_{i'}} & FC \\ & \downarrow f_1 & \downarrow f' & & \downarrow e \\ & GYj_0 & \xrightarrow{Gd_{j_0}} & & GD \\ & \downarrow f_1 & \downarrow f' & & \downarrow e \\ & GYj_1 & \xrightarrow{Gd_{j_1}} & & GD \end{array}$$

More precisely, the diagram shows a commutative structure in  $\mathcal{E}$  with objects  $FXi_0, FXi_1, FXi', FC, GYj_0, GYj_1, GYj', GD$ . Solid arrows represent the original data and the colimiting cocones. Dashed arrows represent the new morphisms  $f', GYk'_0, GYk'_1$  introduced to complete the commutative diagram. The top part shows  $FXi_0 \xrightarrow{Fc_{i_0}} FC$  and  $FXi_1 \xrightarrow{Fc_{i_1}} FC$  with a mediating object  $FXi'$  and morphisms  $FXh'_0, Fh'_1, Fc_{i'}$ . The bottom part shows  $GYj_0 \xrightarrow{Gd_{j_0}} GD$  and  $GYj_1 \xrightarrow{Gd_{j_1}} GD$  with a mediating object  $GYj'$  and morphisms  $Gd_{j_0}, Gd_{j_1}, GYk'_0, GYk'_1$ . Vertical arrows  $f_0, f_1$  connect the  $FX$  and  $GY$  objects, and a vertical arrow  $e$  connects  $FC$  and  $GD$ .

and recalling [lemma 0.2.18](#), we may assume that  $f' : FXi' \rightarrow GYj'$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Thus, the comma category  $(i \downarrow P')$  is connected, and therefore  $P' : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{I}$  is a cofinal functor. The symmetric argument shows that  $Q' : \mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  is also a cofinal functor, and since  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  preserve colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams, we may deduce that the canonical cocone from  $Z$  to  $(C, D, e)$  in  $\mathcal{B}$  is a colimiting cocone.

It remains to be shown that  $\mathcal{K}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered category. Indeed, suppose  $K : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}$  is a  $\lambda$ -small diagram. Since  $\mathcal{I}$  is a  $\lambda$ -filtered category, there is an object  $i_0$  in  $\mathcal{I}$  with a cocone  $P'K \Rightarrow \Delta i_0$ , and by considering a suitable  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram in the category  ${}^{GQ'K}[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{E}]$ , we obtain an object  $j_0$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and a morphism  $f_0 : FXi_0 \rightarrow GYj_0$  such that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FXi_0 & \xrightarrow{Fc_0} & FC \\ f_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow e \\ GYj_0 & \xrightarrow{Gd_{j_0}} & GD \end{array}$$

as well as a cocone from  $K$  to  $(Xi_0, Yj_0, f_0)$  in the comma category  $(F \downarrow G)$  that is compatible with the colimiting cocone  $GY \Rightarrow \Delta GD$ . Combining [lemmas 0.2.18](#) and [0.3.26](#), we then obtain a cocone under  $P$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ , as required. This shows that every object in  $\mathcal{B}$  is a colimit for a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagram of componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{B}$ , and since  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are  $\lambda$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories, [proposition 0.2.25](#) implies the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{B}$  spanned by such componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects is essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.

Finally, observe that every  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{B}$  is a retract of a componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object (because the set of such objects generate  $\mathcal{B}$  under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams), and thus we may apply [corollary 0.2.19](#) to deduce that every  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{B}$  is itself componentwise  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact. Thus the projection functors  $P : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $Q : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  are strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible. ■

**0.3.28** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . A  **$\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory** of a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a subcategory  $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{C}$  such that  $\mathcal{B}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.

**0.3.29** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a replete and full  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) *If  $A$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $A$  is in  $\mathcal{B}$ , then  $A$  is also a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *If the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, then  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{B}) = \mathcal{B} \cap \mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This is clear, since hom-sets and colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathcal{B}$  are computed as in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii). Given claim (i), it suffices to show that every  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{B}$  is also  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact in  $\mathcal{C}$ , but this is precisely the hypothesis that the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible. ■

**0.3.30** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{E}$  be categories with colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a replete and full subcategory of  $\mathcal{E}$  that is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be a functor of  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$ , and let  $\mathcal{B}$  be the preimage of  $\mathcal{D}$  under  $F$ , so that we have the following strict pullback diagram:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{B} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{D} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathcal{E} \end{array}$$

- (i)  *$\mathcal{B}$  is a replete and full subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$  and is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and the inclusion  $\mathcal{D} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{E}$  are strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors and  $\kappa < \lambda$ , then  $\mathcal{B}$  is a  $\lambda$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  and the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is also strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* (i). This is a straightforward exercise.

(ii). Consider the iso-comma category  $(F \wr \mathcal{D})$  and the induced comparison functor  $K : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow (F \wr \mathcal{D})$ . It is clear that  $\mathcal{B}$  is fully faithful; but since  $\mathcal{D}$  is a replete subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$ , for every object  $(C, D, e)$  in  $(F \wr \mathcal{D})$ , there is a canonical

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

isomorphism  $KC \rightarrow (C, D, e)$ , namely the one corresponding to the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FC & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & FC \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow e \\ FC & \xrightarrow[e]{} & D \end{array}$$

Thus,  $K : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow (F \wr D)$  is (half of) an equivalence of categories. [Theorem 0.3.27](#) says the projection  $P : (F \wr D) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, so we may deduce that the same is true for the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . ■

**0.3.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, and let  $\mathcal{D}'$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$  spanned by the image of  $F$ .*

- (i) *Every object in  $\mathcal{D}'$  is a colimit for some  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram consisting of objects in  $\mathcal{D}'$  that are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*
- (ii) *Every  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}'$  is also  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as an object in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*
- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{D}'$  is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $\mathcal{D}'$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $D$  be any object in  $\mathcal{D}'$ . By definition, there is an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $D = FC$ , and since  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, there is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that each  $Xj$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $C \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} X$ . Since  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, each  $FXj$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}$  and we have  $D \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} FX$ .

(ii). Moreover, if  $D$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{D}'$ , then  $D$  must be a retract of  $FXj$  for some object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , and so  $D$  is also  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as an object in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

(iii). Any object in  $\mathcal{D}'$  that is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as an object in  $\mathcal{D}$  must be  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as an object in  $\mathcal{D}'$ , because  $\mathcal{D}'$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$  that is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams. ■

**0.3.32 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathbb{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small poset. If  $\mathbb{D}$  is well-founded, then:*

(i) *The  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor*

$$\mathbf{Ind}^\kappa([\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{B}]) \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]$$

*obtained by extending the canonical embedding  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{B}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

(ii) *The evaluation functors  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})] \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  are strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functors.*

*Proof.* Let  $Y : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  be a diagram, let  $\gamma : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  be the canonical embedding, and consider the following pullback diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{J} & \longrightarrow & [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]_{/Y} \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ [\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{B}] & \xrightarrow{[\mathbb{D}, \gamma]} & [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})] \end{array}$$

where the functor  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]_{/C} \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]$  is the projection. The objects of the category  $\mathcal{J}$  are diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  (regarded as diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$ ) equipped with a morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]$ , so  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Recalling corollaries 0.2.16 and 0.2.19 and proposition 0.2.47, to prove the claims, it suffices to show that  $\mathcal{J}$  is a  $\kappa$ -filtered category and that the tautological cocone is a colimiting cocone.

Let  $X : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{J}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small diagram. We can then build an object  $\tilde{X}$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  equipped with a cocone under  $X$  by well-founded induction over  $\mathbb{D}$ :

- Given  $\tilde{X}(d')$  and the cocone components for all  $d' < d$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , by considering an appropriate diagram in  $\mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  and using lemma 0.3.20, we may choose an object  $\tilde{X}(d)$  in  $\mathbb{B}$  equipped with morphisms  $\tilde{X}(d') \rightarrow \tilde{X}(d)$  for all  $d' < d$ , morphisms  $X(i)(d) \rightarrow \tilde{X}(d)$  for all  $i$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ , and a morphism  $\tilde{X}(d) \rightarrow Y(d)$ , all these making the appropriate diagrams commute.

Thus  $\mathcal{J}$  is indeed a  $\kappa$ -filtered category. To complete the proof, we must check that the tautological cocone to  $Y$  is a colimiting cocone in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_\mathbf{U}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})]$ . Let  $d$  be an object in  $\mathbb{D}$  and consider the comma category  $(\gamma \downarrow Yd)$ . There is an evident

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

functor  $P_d : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow (\gamma \downarrow Yd)$  induced by  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})]_{/Y}$ , and  $P_d$  is a cofinal functor: indeed, by modifying the construction above (at the stage where  $\tilde{X}(d)$  is chosen) in the cases  $\mathcal{I} = \emptyset$  and  $\mathcal{I} = \text{disc } 2$ , one may verify that the comma category  $((B, q) \downarrow P_d)$  is connected for each object  $(B, q)$  in  $(\gamma \downarrow Yd)$ . Thus, the tautological cocone under the canonical diagram  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})]$  is a colimiting cocone, as required. ■

**0.3.33** COROLLARY. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  and let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small well-founded poset.*

- (i) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then so is  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}]$ , and the evaluation functors  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  are strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*
- (ii) *If  $\mathbb{B}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with colimits (resp. limits) of shape  $\mathbb{D}$ , then  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  has colimits (resp. limits) of shape  $\mathbb{D}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). The classification theorem for accessible categories ([theorem 0.2.29](#)) says  $\mathcal{C}$  is equivalent to  $\mathbf{Ind}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  for some small category  $\mathbb{B}$ , so we may apply [proposition 0.3.32](#).

(ii). Recalling [proposition 0.1.12](#), this follows from claim (i) and the fact that  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(-)$  is pseudofunctorial (hence, preserves adjunctions). ■

**0.3.34** COROLLARY. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  and let  $\mathbb{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small Cauchy-complete category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\aleph_0$ -filtered diagrams.*
- (ii)  *$\mathbb{B}$  has colimits for  $\kappa$ -small  $\aleph_0$ -filtered diagrams.*
- (iii)  *$\mathbb{B}$  has colimits for  $\alpha$ -chains for all ordinals  $\alpha$  of cardinality  $< \kappa$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Use [lemma 0.2.18](#) and [proposition 0.2.25](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). By [corollary 0.3.33](#),  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  has colimits for  $\alpha$ -chains for all ordinals  $\alpha$  of cardinality  $< \kappa$  if  $\mathbb{B}$  has them; but since  $\alpha$ -chains for ordinals  $\alpha$  of cardinality  $\geq \kappa$  are  $\kappa$ -filtered, it then follows that  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small chains. We may then apply [theorem 0.2.12](#) to deduce that  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathbb{B})$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\aleph_0$ -filtered diagrams. ■

**0.3.35** THEOREM (The category of algebras for an accessible monad). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathbf{T} = (T, \eta, \mu)$  be a monad on  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}}$  be the category of algebras for  $\mathbf{T}$ . If  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, then:*

(i) *The forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  creates colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and creates limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.*

(ii)  *$\mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

*Proof.* (i). This is well-known: cf. Propositions 4.3.1 and 4.3.2 in [Borceux, 1994b].

(ii). See Theorem 2.78 and the following remark in [LPAC], or Theorem 5.5.9 in [Borceux, 1994b].  $\square$

**0.3.36** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and let  $\mathbf{T} = (T, \eta, \mu)$  be a monad on  $\mathcal{C}$ . If the forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, then so is the functor  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* The accessible adjoint functor theorem (0.2.50) says the free  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebra functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}}$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible if the forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible; but  $T = UF$ , so  $T$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible when  $U$  is.  $\blacksquare$

**0.3.37** THEOREM (The category of algebras for a strongly accessible monad). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathbf{T} = (T, \eta, \mu)$  be a monad on  $\mathcal{C}$  where  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\kappa$ , and let  $\mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}}$  be the category of algebras for  $\mathbf{T}$ . If  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor and  $\kappa < \lambda$ , then:*

(i) *Given a coequaliser diagram in  $\mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}}$  of the form below,*

$$(A, \alpha) \rightrightarrows (B, \beta) \longrightarrow (C, \gamma)$$

*if  $A$  and  $B$  are  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then so is  $C$ .*

(ii) *Given a  $\lambda$ -small family  $((A_i, \alpha_i) \mid i \in I)$  of  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebras, if each  $A_i$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then so is the underlying object of the  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebra coproduct  $\sum_{i \in I} (A_i, \alpha_i)$ .*

(iii) *The forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{\mathbf{T}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

*Proof.* (i). By referring to the explicit construction of coequalisers in  $\mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$  given in the proof of Proposition 4.3.6 in [Borceux, 1994b] and applying lemma 0.2.18, we see that  $C$  is indeed a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$  when  $A$  and  $B$  are, provided  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\kappa$  and is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.

(ii). Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$  be a left adjoint for  $U : \mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . In the proof of Proposition 4.3.4 in [Borceux, 1994b], we find that the  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebra coproduct  $\sum_{i \in I} (A_i, \alpha_i)$  may be computed by a coequaliser diagram of the following form:

$$F\left(\sum_{i \in I} T A_i\right) \rightrightarrows F\left(\sum_{i \in I} A_i\right) \longrightarrow \sum_{i \in I} (A_i, \alpha_i)$$

Since  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, the underlying objects of the  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebras  $F\left(\sum_{i \in I} T A_i\right)$  and  $F\left(\sum_{i \in I} A_i\right)$  are  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus, by claim (i), the underlying object of  $\sum_{i \in I} (A_i, \alpha_i)$  must also be a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(iii). It is shown in the proof of Theorem 5.5.9 in [Borceux, 1994b] that the full subcategory  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $\mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$  spanned by the image of  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  under  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$  is a dense subcategory. Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be the smallest replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$  that is closed under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$  and that contains  $\mathcal{F}$ . Observe that claims (i) and (ii) imply that the underlying object of every  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebra that is in  $\mathcal{G}$  must be a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . To show that the forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, it is enough to verify that every  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object is in  $\mathcal{G}$ .

It is not hard to see that the comma category  $(\mathcal{G} \downarrow (A, \alpha))$  is then an essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\lambda$ -filtered category for any  $\mathbf{T}$ -algebra  $(A, \alpha)$ , and moreover, it can be shown that the tautological cocone for the canonical diagram  $(\mathcal{G} \downarrow (A, \alpha)) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$  is a colimiting cocone. Thus, if  $(A, \alpha)$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}^\mathbf{T}$ , it must be a retract of an object in  $\mathcal{G}$ . But  $\mathcal{G}$  is closed under retracts, so  $(A, \alpha)$  is indeed in  $\mathcal{G}$ . ■

**0.3.38** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be any category.

- A **pointed endofunctor** on  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  equipped with a natural transformation  $\iota : \text{id}_\mathcal{C} \Rightarrow J$ .
- An **algebra** for a pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$  on  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a morphism  $\alpha : J A \rightarrow A$  such that  $\alpha \circ \iota_A = \text{id}_A$ .



- A **homomorphism of algebras** for a pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$  on  $C$ , say  $f : (A, \alpha) \rightarrow (B, \beta)$ , is a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} JA & \xrightarrow{Jf} & JB \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow \beta \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

We write  $C^{(J, \iota)}$  for the category of algebras for a pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$  on  $C$ .

The following result on the existence of free algebras for a pointed endofunctor is a special case of a general construction due to Kelly [1980].

**0.3.39 THEOREM** (Free algebras for a pointed endofunctor). *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal, let  $C$  be a category with joint coequalisers for  $\kappa$ -small families of parallel pairs and colimits for chains of length  $\leq \kappa$ , let  $(J, \iota)$  be a pointed endofunctor on  $C$  such that  $J : C \rightarrow C$  preserves colimits for  $\kappa$ -chains, and let  $C^{(J, \iota)}$  be the category of algebras for  $(J, \iota)$ .*

- (i) *The forgetful functor  $U : C^{(J, \iota)} \rightarrow C$  has a left adjoint, say  $F : C \rightarrow C^{(J, \iota)}$ .*
- (ii) *Let  $\lambda$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ . If  $J : C \rightarrow C$  sends  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects to  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects and  $\kappa < \lambda$ , then the functor  $UF : C \rightarrow C$  has the same property.*

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be an object in  $C$ . We define an object  $X_\alpha$  for each ordinal  $\alpha \leq \kappa$ , a morphism  $JX_\alpha \rightarrow X_{\alpha+1}$  for each ordinal  $\alpha < \kappa$ , and a morphism  $s_{\alpha, \beta} : X_\alpha \rightarrow X_\beta$  for each pair  $(\alpha, \beta)$  of ordinals such that  $\alpha < \beta \leq \kappa$  by transfinite recursion as follows:

- We define  $X_0 = X$ .
- For each ordinal  $\beta < \kappa$ , given  $X_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \leq \beta$ ,  $q_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \beta$ , and  $s_{\alpha, \beta}$  for all  $\alpha < \beta$ , we define  $q_\beta : JX_\beta \rightarrow X_{\beta+1}$  to be the joint coequaliser of the parallel pairs

$$JX_\alpha \xrightarrow[\iota_{X_\beta} \circ s_{\alpha+1, \beta} \circ q_\alpha]{Js_{\alpha, \beta}} JX_\beta$$

for all  $\alpha < \beta$ . (In particular,  $q_0 : JX_0 \rightarrow X_1$  is an isomorphism.) We define  $s_{\beta, \beta+1} = q_\beta \circ \iota_{X_\beta}$  and  $s_{\alpha, \beta+1} = s_{\beta, \beta+1} \circ s_{\alpha, \beta}$  for all  $\alpha < \beta$ , so that we obtain a chain  $X_\bullet : (\beta + 2) \rightarrow C$ .

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

- For each limit ordinal  $\lambda \leq \kappa$ , given  $X_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \lambda$  and  $s_{\alpha,\beta}$  for all  $\alpha < \beta < \lambda$ , we define  $X_\lambda = \varinjlim_{\alpha < \lambda} X_\alpha$  and we define  $s_{\alpha,\lambda}$  to be the components of the colimiting cocone.

Let  $\bar{X} = X_\kappa$ . By construction, for all  $\alpha < \beta < \kappa$ , the diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  shown below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} JX_\alpha & \xrightarrow{Js_{\alpha,\beta}} & JX_\beta \\ q_\alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow q_\beta \\ X_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{s_{\alpha+1,\beta+1}} & X_{\beta+1} \end{array}$$

and by hypothesis, the morphisms  $Js_{\alpha,\kappa} : JX_\alpha \rightarrow JX_\kappa$  constitute a colimiting cocone for the evident chain  $JX_\bullet : \kappa \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , so there is a unique morphism  $\bar{q} : J\bar{X} \rightarrow \bar{X}$  such that  $\bar{q} \circ Js_{\alpha,\kappa} = s_{\alpha+1,\kappa} \circ q_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \kappa$ . Moreover,

$$(\bar{q} \circ \iota_{X_\kappa}) \circ s_{\alpha,\kappa} = \bar{q} \circ Js_{\alpha,\kappa} \circ \iota_{X_\alpha} = s_{\alpha+1,\kappa} \circ q_\alpha \circ \iota_{X_\alpha} = s_{\alpha+1,\kappa} \circ s_{\alpha,\alpha+1} = s_{\alpha,\kappa}$$

so  $\bar{q} \circ \iota_{\bar{X}} = \text{id}_{\bar{X}}$ , i.e.  $(\bar{X}, \bar{q})$  is a  $(J, \iota)$ -algebra.

Define  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow \bar{X}$  to be  $s_{0,\kappa}$ . We will now show that  $(\bar{X}, \bar{q})$  is a *free*  $(J, \iota)$ -algebra with unit  $\eta_X$ . Let  $(Y, r)$  be any  $(J, \iota)$ -algebra and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We construct a morphism  $f_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow Y$  for each ordinal  $\alpha \leq \kappa$  by transfinite recursion:

- We define  $f_0 = f$ .
- For each ordinal  $\beta < \kappa$ , given  $f_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \leq \beta$  such that the following equations are satisfied,

$$\begin{aligned} f_\beta \circ s_{\alpha,\beta} &= f_\alpha & \text{for all } \alpha < \beta \\ f_{\alpha+1} \circ q_\alpha &= r \circ Jf_\alpha & \text{for all } \alpha < \beta \end{aligned}$$

we also have

$$\begin{aligned} (r \circ Jf_\beta) \circ (\iota_{X_\beta} \circ s_{\alpha+1,\beta} \circ q_\alpha) &= r \circ \iota_Y \circ f_\beta \circ s_{\alpha+1,\beta} \circ q_\alpha \\ &= f_\beta \circ s_{\alpha+1,\beta} \circ q_\alpha \\ &= f_{\alpha+1} \circ q_\alpha \\ &= r \circ Jf_\alpha \\ &= (r \circ Jf_\beta) \circ Js_{\alpha,\beta} & \text{for all } \alpha < \beta \end{aligned}$$

so we may define  $f_{\beta+1}$  to be the unique morphism  $X_{\beta+1} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f_{\beta+1} \circ q_\beta = r \circ Jf_\beta$ . Then,

$$f_{\beta+1} \circ s_{\beta,\beta+1} = f_{\beta+1} \circ q_\beta \circ \iota_{X_\beta} = r \circ Jf_\beta \circ \iota_{X_\beta} = r \circ \iota_Y \circ f_\beta = f_\beta$$

so we have  $f_{\beta+1} \circ s_{\alpha,\beta+1} = f_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \beta + 1$ .

- For each limit ordinal  $\lambda \leq \kappa$ , we define  $f_\lambda$  to be the unique morphism  $X_\lambda \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f_\lambda \circ s_{\alpha,\lambda} = f_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \lambda$ .

By construction, for all ordinals  $\alpha < \kappa$ ,

$$(r \circ Jf_\kappa) \circ Js_{\alpha,\kappa} = r \circ Jf_\alpha = f_{\alpha+1} \circ q_\alpha = f_\kappa \circ s_{\alpha+1,\kappa} \circ q_\alpha = (f_\kappa \circ \bar{q}) \circ Js_{\alpha,\kappa}$$

so  $r \circ Jf_\kappa = f_\kappa \circ \bar{q}$ , i.e.  $f_\kappa : X_\kappa \rightarrow Y$  is a  $(J, \iota)$ -algebra homomorphism  $(X_\kappa, \bar{q}) \rightarrow (Y, r)$ . Moreover, for any homomorphism  $\bar{f} : (X_\kappa, \bar{q}) \rightarrow (Y, r)$  and any ordinal  $\alpha < \kappa$ ,

$$(\bar{f} \circ s_{\alpha+1,\kappa}) \circ q_\alpha = \bar{f} \circ \bar{q} \circ Js_{\alpha,\kappa} = r \circ J\bar{f} \circ Js_{\alpha,\kappa}$$

so if  $\bar{f} \circ s_{\alpha,\kappa} = f_\alpha$ , then  $\bar{f} \circ s_{\alpha+1,\kappa} = f_{\alpha+1}$ ; and for any limit ordinal  $\lambda \leq \kappa$ , if  $\bar{f} \circ s_{\alpha,\kappa} = f_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \lambda$ , then  $\bar{f} \circ s_{\lambda,\kappa} = f_\lambda$  as well. In particular, if  $\bar{f} \circ \eta_X = f$ , then  $\bar{f} = f_\kappa$  by transfinite induction. Thus, there is a unique homomorphism  $\bar{f} : (X_\kappa, \bar{q}) \rightarrow (Y, r)$  such that  $\bar{f} \circ \eta_X = f$ .

The above argument shows that the comma category  $(X \downarrow U)$  has an initial object, and it is well known that  $U$  has a left adjoint if and only if each comma category  $(X \downarrow U)$  has an initial object, so this completes the proof of (i). For (ii), we simply observe that  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is closed under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$  (by lemma 0.2.18), so the above construction can be carried out entirely in  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$ . ■

**0.3.40 THEOREM** (The category of algebras for a accessible pointed endofunctor). *Let  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a functor, let  $\iota : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow J$  be a natural transformation, and let  $\mathcal{C}^{(J,\iota)}$  be the category of algebras for the pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$ .*

- (i) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves them, then the forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{(J,\iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  creates colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams; and if  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete, then  $U : \mathcal{C}^{(J,\iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  also creates limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.*
- (ii) *If  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is an accessible functor, then  $\mathcal{C}^{(J,\iota)}$  is an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

(iii) If  $\mathcal{C}$  has joint coequalisers for  $\kappa$ -small families of parallel pairs and colimits for chains of length  $\leq \kappa$ , then  $U : \mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a monadic functor.

*Proof.* (i). This is analogous to the well known fact about monads: cf. Propositions 4.3.1 and 4.3.2 in [Borceux, 1994b].

(ii). We may construct  $\mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)}$  using inserters and equifiers, as in the proof of Theorem 2.78 in [LPAC].

(iii). The hypotheses of [theorem 0.3.39](#) are satisfied (because  $\kappa$ -chains are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams), and so the forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has a left adjoint. It is not hard to check that the other hypotheses of Beck's monadicity theorem are satisfied, so  $U$  is indeed a monadic functor.  $\square$

**0.3.41** THEOREM (The category of algebras for a strongly accessible pointed endofunctor). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a functor of  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$ , let  $\iota : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow J$  be a natural transformation, let  $\mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)}$  be the category of algebras for the pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$ , and let  $\mathbf{T} = (T, \eta, \mu)$  be the induced monad on  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor and  $\kappa < \lambda$ , then:*

(i) *The functor  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$  and is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

(ii)  *$\mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)}$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

(iii) *The forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.*

*Proof.* (i). By [theorem 0.3.40](#), the forgetful functor  $U : \mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  creates colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams when  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$ , so  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  must also have  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\leq \kappa$ . Moreover, [theorem 0.3.39](#) implies  $T : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible if  $J : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is.

(ii). Since the forgetful functor  $\mathcal{C}^{(J, \iota)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is monadic, the claim reduces to [theorem 0.3.35](#).

(iii). Apply [theorem 0.3.37](#).  $\blacksquare$

## o.4 Change of universe

**Prerequisites.** §§0.1, 0.2, A.1, A.5.

Having introduced universes into our ontology, it becomes necessary to ask whether an object with some universal property retains that property when we enlarge the universe. Though it sounds inconceivable, there do exist examples of badly-behaved constructions that are not stable under change-of-universe; for example, Waterhouse [1975] defined a functor  $F : \mathbf{CRing} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^+$ , where  $\mathbf{CRing}$  is the category of commutative rings in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{Set}^+$  is the category of  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -sets for some universe  $\mathbf{U}^+$  with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , such that the value of  $F$  at any given commutative ring in  $\mathbf{U}$  does not depend on  $\mathbf{U}$ , and yet the value of the fpqc sheaf associated with  $F$  at the field  $\mathbb{Q}$  depends on the size of  $\mathbf{U}$ .

**0.4.1 DEFINITION.** Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , and let  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be a universe with  $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \mathbf{U}^+$ . A  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -**accessible extension** is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  such that

- $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category,
- $\mathcal{C}^+$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category,
- $i$  sends  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , and
- the functor  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$  so induced by  $i$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

**0.4.2 REMARK.** Let  $\mathbb{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category in which idempotents split. Then the  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\kappa(\mathbb{B}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}^+}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  obtained by extending the embedding  $\gamma^+ : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}^+}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  along  $\gamma : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension, by [proposition 0.2.25](#). The classification theorem ([0.2.29](#)) implies all examples of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extensions are essentially of this form.

**0.4.3 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension.*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category if and only if  $\mathcal{C}^+$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category.*
- (ii) *The functor  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is fully faithful.*
- (iii) *If  $B : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is any diagram (not necessarily  $\mathbf{U}$ -small) and  $\mathcal{C}$  has a limit for  $B$ , then  $i$  preserves this limit.*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

*Proof.* (i). If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  has colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, so  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$  also has colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams. The classification theorem (0.2.29) then implies  $\mathcal{C}^+$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category. Reversing this argument proves the converse.

(ii). Let  $A : \mathbb{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $B : \mathbb{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be two  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}\left(\varinjlim_{\mathbb{I}} A, \varinjlim_{\mathbb{J}} B\right) &\cong \varprojlim_{\mathbb{I}} \varinjlim_{\mathbb{J}} \mathcal{C}(A, B) \cong \varprojlim_{\mathbb{I}} \varinjlim_{\mathbb{J}} \mathcal{C}^+(iA, iB) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}^+\left(\varinjlim_{\mathbb{I}} iA, \varinjlim_{\mathbb{J}} iB\right) \cong \mathcal{C}^+\left(i \varinjlim_{\mathbb{I}} A, i \varinjlim_{\mathbb{J}} B\right) \end{aligned}$$

because  $i$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible and is fully faithful on the subcategory  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$ , and therefore  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  itself is fully faithful. Note that this hinges crucially on theorem 0.1.32.

(iii). Let  $B : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be any diagram. We observe that, for any  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}^+\left(iC, i \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} B\right) &\cong \mathcal{C}\left(C, \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} B\right) && \text{because } i \text{ is fully faithful} \\ &\cong \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}(C, B) && \text{by definition of limit} \\ &\cong \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}^+(iC, iB) && \text{because } i \text{ is fully faithful} \end{aligned}$$

but we know the restricted Yoneda embedding  $\mathcal{C}^+ \rightarrow [\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+]$  is fully faithful, so this is enough to conclude that  $i \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} B$  is the limit of  $iB$  in  $\mathcal{C}^+$ . ■

**0.4.4** REMARK. Similar methods show that any fully faithful functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  satisfying the four bulleted conditions in the definition above is necessarily  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.

**0.4.5** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be universes, with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , and let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ . Suppose:

- $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -categories.
- $\mathcal{C}^+$  and  $\mathcal{D}^+$  are locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -categories.

- $i : C \rightarrow C^+$  and  $j : D \rightarrow D^+$  are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extensions.

Given a strictly commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} D & \xrightarrow{j} & D^+ \\ G \downarrow & & \downarrow G^+ \\ C & \xrightarrow{i} & C^+ \end{array}$$

where  $G$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible,  $G^+$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible, if both have left adjoints, then the diagram satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition.

*Proof.* Let  $C$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $C$ . [Proposition 0.4.3](#) says that  $i : C \rightarrow C^+$  and  $j : D \rightarrow D^+$  preserve limits, so by inspecting the proof of [theorem 0.2.50](#), we see that the functor  $(C \downarrow G) \rightarrow (iC \downarrow G^+)$  induced by  $j$  preserves initial objects. [Lemma A.1.11](#) says the component at  $C$  of the left Beck–Chevalley natural transformation  $F^+i \Rightarrow jF$  is an isomorphism; but  $C$  is generated by  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(C)$  and the functors  $F, F^+, i, j$  all preserve colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, so in fact  $F^+i \Rightarrow jF$  is a natural isomorphism. ■

**0.4.6 PROPOSITION.** *If  $i : C \rightarrow C^+$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension and  $C$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then  $i$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams in  $C$ .*

*Proof.* It is well-known that a functor preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams if and only if it preserves coequalisers for all parallel pairs and coproducts for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small families; but coproducts for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small families can be constructed in a uniform way using coproducts for  $\kappa$ -small families and colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams, so it is enough to show that  $i : C \rightarrow C^+$  preserves all colimits for  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, since  $i$  is already  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.

Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\kappa$ -small category. Recalling [proposition 0.1.12](#), our problem amounts to showing that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{i} & C^+ \\ \Delta \downarrow & & \downarrow \Delta^+ \\ [\mathbb{D}, C] & \xrightarrow{i_*} & [\mathbb{D}, C^+] \end{array}$$

satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition. It is clear that  $i_*$  is fully faithful. Colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams in  $[\mathbb{D}, C]$  and in  $[\mathbb{D}, C^+]$  are computed componentwise, so  $\Delta$  and  $i_*$  are certainly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, and  $\Delta^+$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible.

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

Using [proposition 0.2.47](#), we see that  $i_*$  is also a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension, so we apply the lemma above to conclude that the left Beck–Chevalley condition is satisfied.  $\blacksquare$

**0.4.7** THEOREM (Stability of accessible adjoint functors). *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be universes, with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , and let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in  $\mathbf{U}$ , with  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ . Suppose:*

- $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- $\mathcal{D}$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- $\mathcal{C}^+$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category.
- $\mathcal{D}^+$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category.

*Let  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension and let  $j : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^+$  be a fully faithful functor.*

(i) *Given a strictly commutative diagram of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{j} & \mathcal{D}^+ \\ G \downarrow & & \downarrow G^+ \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{i} & \mathcal{C}^+ \end{array}$$

*where  $G$  is  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible and  $G^+$  is  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible, if both have left adjoints and  $j$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension, then the diagram satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition.*

(ii) *Given a strictly commutative diagram of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{i} & \mathcal{C}^+ \\ F \downarrow & & \downarrow F^+ \\ \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{j} & \mathcal{D}^+ \end{array}$$

*if both  $F$  and  $F^+$  have right adjoints, then the diagram satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition.*

*Proof.* (i). The proof is essentially the same as [lemma 0.4.5](#), though we have to use [proposition 0.4.6](#) to ensure that  $j$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ .



(ii). Let  $D$  be any object in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Inspecting the proof of [theorem 0.2.50](#), we see that our hypotheses, plus the fact that  $i$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ , imply that the functor  $(F \downarrow D) \rightarrow (F^+ \downarrow jD)$  induced by  $i$  preserves terminal objects. Thus, [lemma A.1.11](#) implies that the diagram satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition.  $\blacksquare$

**0.4.8 THEOREM.** *Let  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.*

- (i) *If  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\kappa \leq \lambda$ , then  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is also a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension.*
- (ii) *If  $\mu$  is the cardinality of  $\mathbf{U}$ , then  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  factors through the inclusion  $\mathbf{K}_\mu^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  as functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{K}_\mu^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$  that is (fully faithful and) essentially surjective on objects.*
- (iii) *The  $(\mu, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}^+}^\mu(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  induced by  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* (i). Since  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor, it is certainly also  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, by [lemma 0.2.38](#). It is therefore enough to show that  $i$  restricts to a functor  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$  that is (fully faithful and) essentially surjective on objects.

[Proposition 0.2.46](#) says  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is the smallest replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  that contains  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  and is closed in  $\mathcal{C}$  under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams, therefore the replete closure of the image of  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  must be the smallest replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}^+$  that contains  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$  and is closed in  $\mathcal{C}^+$  under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams, since  $i$  is fully faithful and preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams. This proves the claim.

(ii). Since every object in  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact for some regular cardinal  $\lambda < \mu$ , claim (i) implies that the image of  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is contained in  $\mathbf{K}_\mu^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$ . To show  $i$  is essentially surjective onto  $\mathbf{K}_\mu^{\mathbf{U}^+}(\mathcal{C}^+)$ , we simply have to observe that the inaccessibility of  $\mu$  ([proposition 0.1.37](#)) and [proposition 0.2.46](#) imply that, for  $\mathcal{C}'$  any  $(\mu, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , there exists a regular cardinal  $\lambda < \mu$  such that  $\mathcal{C}'$  is also a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -compact object, which reduces the question to claim (i).

(iii). This is an immediate corollary of claim (ii) and the classification theorem ([0.2.29](#)) applied to  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , considered as a  $(\mu, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible category.  $\blacksquare$

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

**0.4.9** REMARK. Although the fact  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  that preserves limits and colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a formal consequence of the theorem above (via e.g. [corollary A.5.30](#)), it is not clear whether the theorem can be proved without already knowing this.

**0.4.10** COROLLARY. If  $\mathbb{B}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and has colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, and  $\mu$  is the cardinality of  $\mathbf{U}$ , then the canonical  $(\mu, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible functor  $\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}^+}^\mu(\mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}^+}^\kappa(\mathbb{B})$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.  $\blacksquare$

**0.4.11** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be universes, with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , and let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals in  $\mathbf{U}$ . Suppose:

- $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- $\mathcal{D}$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- $\mathcal{C}^+$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category.
- $\mathcal{D}^+$  is a locally  $\lambda$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category.

Let  $F : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $G : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be functors, let  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension, and let  $j : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^+$  be a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -accessible extension. Consider the following (not necessarily commutative) diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \mathcal{A} & \xrightarrow{G} & \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{j} & \mathcal{D}^+ \\
 F \downarrow & \nearrow H & & \nearrow H^+ & \\
 \mathcal{C} & & & & \\
 i \downarrow & & & & \\
 \mathcal{C}^+ & & & & 
 \end{array}$$

- (i) If  $H$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ , then  $jH$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $F$ , and if  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ , then  $H^+$  is also a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ .
- (ii) Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, if  $H$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ , then  $jH$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $F$ , and if  $H^+$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ , then  $H^+$  is also a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ .

*Proof.* Use [theorem A.5.20](#) and the fact that  $i$  and  $j$  preserve limits for *all* diagrams ([proposition 0.4.3](#)) and colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams ([proposition 0.4.6](#)). ■

## 0.5 Small object arguments

**Prerequisites.** §§0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, A.3, A.5.

The small object argument is a recurring construction in homotopical algebra, originally due to Quillen [1967, Ch. II, §3] but refined by many authors since—notably by Garner [2009]. Roughly speaking, the small object argument shows that, under certain hypotheses, starting from a small set  $\mathcal{I}$  of morphisms in a cocomplete category  $\mathcal{C}$ , one can define the notions of ‘relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex’ and ‘ $\mathcal{I}$ -fibration’ so that every morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  factors as a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex followed by an  $\mathcal{I}$ -fibration.

In this section, we will study the small object argument with a view toward questions of stability under change-of-universe.

**0.5.1 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . A **presentation for a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex** in  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of the following data:

- An ordinal  $\alpha$ . (We say the presentation is **indexed over  $\alpha$** .)
- A colimit-preserving functor  $X_\bullet : [\alpha] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , where  $[\alpha]$  is the well-ordered set  $\{0, \dots, \alpha\}$  considered as a preorder category.
- For each ordinal  $\beta < \alpha$ , a (possibly empty) indexing set  $T_\beta$ ; and for each element  $j$  of  $T_\beta$ , a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{u_{\beta,j}} & X_\beta \\ e_{\beta,j} \downarrow & & \downarrow X_{\beta \rightarrow \beta+1} \\ V_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{v_{\beta,j}} & X_{\beta+1} \end{array}$$

where  $e_{\beta,j} : U_{\beta,j} \rightarrow V_{\beta,j}$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{I}$ .

These data are moreover required to satisfy the following condition:

- For each ordinal  $\beta < \gamma$ , the coproducts  $\coprod_{j \in T_\beta} S_{\beta,j}$  and  $\coprod_{j \in T_\beta} D_{\beta,j}$  exist in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and the induced diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \coprod_{j \in T_\beta} U_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{u_\beta} & X_\beta \\ \coprod_{j \in T_\beta} e_{\beta,j} \downarrow & & \downarrow X_{\beta \rightarrow \beta+1} \\ \coprod_{j \in T_\beta} V_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{v_\beta} & X_{\beta+1} \end{array}$$

is a pushout square in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

The presentation is said to be **U-small** (resp.  $\kappa$ -**small** for a regular cardinal  $\kappa$ ) if  $\alpha$  is an ordinal in **U** (resp.  $|\alpha| < \kappa$ ) and the disjoint union  $\coprod_{\beta < \alpha} T_\beta$  is in **U** (resp. has cardinality less than  $\kappa$ ). A **sequential presentation** is one where each  $T_\beta$  is a singleton, in which case we suppress the index  $j$  in  $e_{\beta,j}$ ,  $u_{\beta,j}$ , and  $v_{\beta,j}$ .

A **relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  for which there exists a presentation as above with  $f$  equal to  $X_0 \rightarrow X_\alpha$ . Given an initial object  $0$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , an  **$\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $Y$  for which the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow Y$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex.

**0.5.2** REMARK. For any object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and any subset  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , the morphism  $\text{id} : X \rightarrow X$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex in  $\mathcal{C}$  (with the obvious presentation indexed over  $0$ ). More generally, every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex, with a presentation indexed over  $1$  (and  $T_0 = \emptyset$ ); but in order to get a *sequential* presentation, one must assume that there is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{I}$ .

**0.5.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal, and let  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$  be the set of relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{C}$  that admit a  $\kappa$ -small presentation.*

- (i) *Every morphism in  $\mathcal{I}$  is also in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphism  $\text{id} : X \rightarrow X$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iii) *If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  are both in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$ , then so is  $g \circ f$ .*
- (iv) *Let  $\alpha$  be an ordinal and let  $X_\bullet : \alpha \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a colimit-preserving functor. If  $|\alpha| < \kappa$  and  $\lambda$  is a colimiting cocone from  $X_\bullet$  to  $Y$  and, for  $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$ , the morphism  $X_{\beta \rightarrow \gamma} : X_\beta \rightarrow X_\gamma$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$ , then each component  $\lambda_\beta : X_\beta \rightarrow Y$  is also in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (v) *Given a pushout diagram of the form below in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

*if  $g$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  has colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, then  $f$  is also in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I},\kappa} \mathcal{C}$ .*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

*Proof.* (i). Given any morphism  $e : U \rightarrow V$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ , we have the following pushout diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & U \\ e \downarrow & & \downarrow e \\ V & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & V \end{array}$$

Thus  $e : U \rightarrow V$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}} C$ .

(ii). See [remark 0.5.2](#).

(iii). It is clear that appending any  $\kappa$ -small presentation for  $g$  to any  $\kappa$ -small presentation for  $f$  yields a  $\kappa$ -small presentation of  $g \circ f$ .

(iv). The case  $\alpha = 0$  falls under claim (ii). If  $\alpha = \gamma + 1$ , then the component  $\lambda_\gamma : X_\gamma \rightarrow Y$  must be an isomorphism, and thus  $\lambda_\beta = \lambda_\gamma \circ X_{\beta \rightarrow \gamma}$  is also in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}} C$ ; and if  $\alpha$  is a positive limit ordinal, since every terminal segment of  $\alpha$  is cofinal in  $\alpha$ , it is clear that concatenating  $\kappa$ -small presentations for  $X_{\gamma \rightarrow \gamma+1}$  for  $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$  yields a  $\kappa$ -small presentation for  $\lambda_\beta : X_\beta \rightarrow Y$ .

(v). Fix a  $\kappa$ -small presentation of  $g : Z \rightarrow W$ . By the pushout pasting lemma, given a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \coprod_{j \in T_\beta} U_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{u_\beta} & Z_\beta & \longrightarrow & X_\beta \\ \coprod_{j \in T_\beta} e_{\beta,j} \downarrow & & \downarrow Z_{\beta \rightarrow \beta+1} & & \downarrow X_{\beta \rightarrow \beta+1} \\ \coprod_{j \in T_\beta} V_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{v_\beta} & Z_{\beta+1} & \longrightarrow & X_{\beta+1} \end{array}$$

if both squares are pushout diagrams, then the outer rectangle is a pushout diagram as well. Since pushout along  $z : Z \rightarrow X$  is the left adjoint of the evident functor  $z^* : X/C \rightarrow Z/C$ , it preserves all colimits, and thus we obtain a  $\kappa$ -small presentation of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ . ■

**0.5.4 DEFINITION.** Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } C$ . An  **$\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphism** in  $C$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to every morphism in  $\mathcal{I}$ .<sup>[1]</sup> An  **$\mathcal{I}$ -cofibration** in  $C$  is a morphism that has the left lifting property with respect to every  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphism.

[1] Equivalently, it is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$  that is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective object in the slice category  $C_{/Y}$ .

**0.5.5** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$ , and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$  be the set of relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes,  $\mathcal{I}$ -injections, and  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$ , respectively.

- (i) We have  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) A morphism is in  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$  if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to every  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibration.
- (iii) In particular, a morphism is in  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$  if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to every relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex.

*Proof.* (i). Follows immediately from the definition of ‘relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex’ and [proposition A.3.19](#).

(ii) and (iii). See [proposition A.3.3](#). ■

Some authors define ‘relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex’ so that every such morphism admits a *sequential* presentation. The following lemma and its corollary show that there is no loss of generality in doing so.

**0.5.6** LEMMA. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, and let  $\alpha$  be an ordinal of cardinality less than  $\kappa$ . For each ordinal  $\beta < \alpha$ , let  $e_{\beta} : U_{\beta} \rightarrow V_{\beta}$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and for each ordinal  $\beta \leq \alpha$ , let

$$C_{\beta} = \left( \coprod_{\gamma < \beta} V_{\gamma} \right) \amalg \left( \coprod_{\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha} U_{\gamma} \right)$$

be a coproduct in  $\mathcal{C}$  with coproduct insertions  $u_{\gamma, \beta} : U_{\gamma} \rightarrow C_{\beta}$  (for  $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$ ) and  $v_{\gamma, \beta} : V_{\gamma} \rightarrow C_{\beta}$  (for  $\gamma < \beta$ ).

Given ordinals  $\beta < \beta' \leq \alpha$ , there is a unique morphism  $C_{\beta} \rightarrow C_{\beta'}$  such that, for  $\zeta < \beta \leq \zeta' < \beta' \leq \zeta''$ , the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V_{\zeta} & \xrightarrow{v_{\zeta, \beta}} & C_{\beta} \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_{\zeta} & \xrightarrow{v_{\zeta, \beta'}} & C_{\beta'} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} U_{\zeta'} & \xrightarrow{u_{\zeta', \beta}} & C_{\beta} \\ e_{\zeta'} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_{\zeta'} & \xrightarrow{v_{\zeta', \beta'}} & C_{\beta'} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} U_{\zeta''} & \xrightarrow{u_{\zeta'', \beta}} & C_{\beta} \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ U_{\zeta''} & \xrightarrow{u_{\zeta'', \beta'}} & C_{\beta'} \end{array}$$

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

This yields a functor  $C_\bullet : [\alpha] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and it preserves colimits. Moreover, the diagrams below are pushout squares for all ordinals  $\beta < \alpha$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U_\beta & \xrightarrow{u_{\beta,\beta}} & C_\beta \\ e_\beta \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V_\beta & \xrightarrow{v_{\beta,\beta+1}} & C_{\beta+1} \end{array}$$

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. See Proposition 10.2.7 in [Hirschhorn, 2003].  $\square$

**0.5.7 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with colimits for  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex in  $\mathcal{C}$  that admits a  $\kappa$ -small presentation, and either*

- $X = Y$  and  $f = \text{id}_X$ , or
- $f$  is an isomorphism and  $\mathcal{I}$  contains an isomorphism, or
- $f$  is not an isomorphism,

*then  $f$  also admits a  $\kappa$ -small sequential presentation.*

*Proof.* We have already commented on the first two cases in [remark 0.5.2](#). The third case is proven by transfinite induction, where in the induction step we may assume that  $f$  is presented by just one pushout diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \coprod_{j \in T} U_j & \xrightarrow{u} & X \\ \coprod_{j \in T} e_j \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \coprod_{j \in T} V_j & \xrightarrow{v} & Y \end{array}$$

By decomposing the morphism  $\coprod_{j \in T} e_j : \coprod_{j \in T} U_j \rightarrow \coprod_{j \in T} V_j$  as in the earlier lemma and applying the pushout pasting lemma, we obtain a sequential presentation of  $f$ , which is  $\kappa$ -small precisely if  $|T| < \kappa$ .  $\blacksquare$



**0.5.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$  be the set of relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{C}$  that have a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small presentation. We say  $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is **admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument** when the following conditions are satisfied:

- $\mathcal{I}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.
- $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.
- There is a regular cardinal  $\kappa$  in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that, for every morphism  $e : U \rightarrow V$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ , every ordinal  $\alpha$  in  $\mathbf{U}$ , and every functor  $X_\bullet : \alpha \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if  $|\alpha| \geq \kappa$ , and the morphism  $X_{\beta \rightarrow \gamma} : X_\beta \rightarrow X_\gamma$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$  for all ordinals  $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$ , then the canonical comparison map  $\varinjlim_{\beta < \alpha} \mathcal{C}(U, X_\beta) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}\left(U, \varinjlim_{\beta < \alpha} X_\beta\right)$  is a bijection.

The **sequential  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank** of  $\mathcal{I}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is the least cardinal  $\kappa$  with the above property.

**0.5.9** REMARK. Notice that, if  $|\alpha| \geq \kappa$ , then  $\alpha$  is a  $\kappa$ -directed preorder. Thus, for any locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$  and any  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  whatsoever,  $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument.

**0.5.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -cofibrantly generated factorisation system** on a category  $\mathcal{C}$  on is a weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  that is cofibrantly generated by some  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .

**0.5.11** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $A$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $B$  be a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If the hom-set  $\mathcal{C}(A, A')$  is  $\mu$ -small for all  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects  $A'$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then the hom-set  $\mathcal{C}(A, B)$  has cardinality  $< \max \{\lambda, \mu\}$ .

*Proof.* By [proposition 0.2.45](#), there is a  $\lambda$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram  $Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with each vertex  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $B \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} Y$ . Since  $A$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we have

$$\mathcal{C}(A, B) \cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}(A, Y)$$

and the RHS is a set of cardinality  $< \max \{\lambda, \mu\}$  by [lemma 0.2.18](#). ■

**0.5.12** THEOREM (Quillen's small object argument). *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) *There exist a functor  $M : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and two natural transformations  $i : \text{dom} \Rightarrow M$ ,  $p : M \Rightarrow \text{codom}$  such that, for all morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphism  $i_f : X \rightarrow M(f)$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$ , and we have  $f = p_f \circ i_f$ .*
- (ii) *If  $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is moreover admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument, then we may choose  $M$ ,  $i$ , and  $p$  so that, for all morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphism  $p_f : M(f) \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iii) *In particular, if  $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument, then  $(\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}, \text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C})$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -cofibrantly generated factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  and extends to a functorial weak factorisation system.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\kappa$  be any regular cardinal, and let  $\alpha$  be the least ordinal of cardinality  $\kappa$ .<sup>[2]</sup> For each morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we construct by transfinite recursion a colimit-preserving functor  $M_{\bullet}(f) : [\alpha] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and a cocone  $p_{f, \bullet} : M_{\bullet}(f) \rightarrow Y$  satisfying the following conditions:

- $M_0(f) = X$ ,  $p_{f,0} = p$ .
- For each ordinal  $\beta < \alpha$ , if  $T_{\beta}(f)$  is the set of all commutative diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{u_{\beta,j}} & M_{\beta}(f) \\ e_{\beta,j} \downarrow & & \downarrow p_{f,\beta} \\ V_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{v_{\beta,j}} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $e_{\beta,j} : U_{\beta,j} \rightarrow V_{\beta,j}$  is in  $\mathcal{I}$ , then  $T_{\beta}(f)$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set (because  $\mathcal{I}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set and  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category), and we have a pushout square of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \coprod_{j \in T_{\beta}(f)} U_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{u_{\beta}} & M_{\beta}(f) \\ \coprod_{j \in T_{\beta}(f)} e_{\beta,j} \downarrow & & \downarrow X_{\beta \rightarrow \beta+1} \\ \coprod_{j \in T_{\beta}(f)} V_{\beta,j} & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}_{\beta}} & M_{\beta+1}(f) \end{array}$$

---

[2] In particular, we could take  $\kappa = 0$ , but then the factorisation so obtained is trivial.

where  $u_\beta : \coprod_{j \in T_\beta(f)} U_{\beta,j} \rightarrow M_\beta(f)$  is the evident morphism induced by the universal property of coproducts. Observe that there is then a unique morphism  $p_{f;\beta+1} : M_{\beta+1}(f) \rightarrow Y$  such that

$$p_{f;\beta+1} \circ M_{\beta \rightarrow \beta+1}(f) = p_\beta$$

and

$$p_{f;\beta+1} \circ \bar{v}_{\beta,j} = v_{\beta,j}$$

for all  $j$  in  $T_\beta(f)$ , where  $\bar{v}_{\beta,j} : V_{\beta,j} \rightarrow M_{\beta+1}(f)$  is the evident component of  $\bar{v}_\beta : \coprod_{j \in T_\beta(f)} V_{\beta,j} \rightarrow M_{\beta+1}(f)$ .

- For limit ordinals  $\gamma \leq \alpha$ ,  $M_\gamma(f) = \varinjlim_{\beta < \gamma} M_\beta(f)$ , and  $p_\gamma : M_\gamma(f) \rightarrow Y$  is defined by the universal property of  $X_\gamma$ .

It is not hard to see that the functor  $M_\bullet(f) : [\alpha] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  so defined is itself functorial in  $f$ ; in particular, defining  $M(f) = M_\alpha(f)$ ,  $i_f = M_{0 \rightarrow \alpha}(f)$ ,  $p_f = p_{f;\alpha}$ , we obtain a functor  $M : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with two natural transformations  $i : M \Rightarrow \text{dom}$  and  $p : M \Rightarrow \text{codom}$ ; by construction, we have  $f = p_f \circ i_f$ , and  $i_f : X \rightarrow M(f)$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{U}} \mathcal{C}$ .

(ii). Now, take  $\kappa$  to be a regular cardinal as in [definition 0.5.8](#). We wish to show that the morphism  $p_f$  constructed above has the right lifting property with respect to all morphisms in  $\mathcal{I}$ . Consider a lifting problem of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{u} & M(f) \\ e \downarrow & & \downarrow p_f \\ V & \xrightarrow{v} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $e : U \rightarrow V$  is in  $\mathcal{I}$ . Since  $\mathcal{I}$  is admissible, there must exist an ordinal  $\beta < \alpha$  and a morphism  $u' : U \rightarrow M_\beta(f)$  such that  $u = M_{\beta \rightarrow \alpha}(f) \circ u'$ . We then obtain the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{u'} & M_\beta(f) \\ e \downarrow & & \downarrow p_{f;\beta} \\ V & \xrightarrow{v} & Y \end{array}$$

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

Since this is one of the diagrams in the set  $T_\beta(f)$ , it must embed in a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 U & \xrightarrow{u'} & M_\beta(f) & \longrightarrow & M_\alpha(f) \\
 \downarrow e & & \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow p_{f;\alpha} \\
 V & \longrightarrow & M_{\beta+1}(f) & & \\
 \parallel & & & & \\
 V & \xrightarrow{\quad v \quad} & & & Y
 \end{array}$$

and thus we have the required lift  $V \rightarrow M(f)$ .

(iii). Finally, apply [proposition 0.5.5](#) and [theorem A.3.37](#). ■

**0.5.I3** COROLLARY. *With other notation in the theorem, a morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\text{cof}_I C$  if and only if there exists a commutative diagram of the following form in  $C$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z & \xrightarrow{i} & W' \\
 \downarrow g & \nearrow & \downarrow \\
 W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W
 \end{array}$$

where  $i : Z \rightarrow W'$  is in  $\text{cell}_{I,U} C$ .

*Proof.* (i). If  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\text{cof}_I C$ , then  $g$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $p_g : M(g) \rightarrow W$ , and so there exists a commutative diagram of the required form. Conversely, suppose we have  $g = p \circ i$ ,  $i = j \circ g$ , and  $\text{id}_W = p \circ j$  for some  $i : Z \rightarrow W'$  in  $\text{cell}_{I,U} C$  and some  $j : W \rightarrow W'$  in  $C$ . Then  $g$  is a retract of  $i$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z \\
 \downarrow g & & \downarrow i & & \downarrow g \\
 W & \xrightarrow{j} & W' & \xrightarrow{p} & W \\
 & \searrow & \nearrow & & \\
 & & \text{id} & & 
 \end{array}$$

but [proposition 0.5.5](#) says  $i$  is in  $\text{cof}_I C$ , so by [proposition A.3.19](#),  $g$  is also in  $\text{cof}_I C$ . ■

**0.5.14** COROLLARY. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . If the morphisms that are in  $\mathcal{I}$  are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as objects in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , then there exist a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $M : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and two natural transformations  $i : \text{dom} \Rightarrow M$  and  $p : M \Rightarrow \text{codom}$  such that, for all objects  $f$  in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ :*

- $f = p_f \circ i_f$ .
- $i_f$  is in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$ .
- $p_f$  is in  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$ .

*Moreover, if  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that every hom-set of  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{C})$  is  $\lambda$ -small,  $\mathcal{I}$  is  $\lambda$ -small, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then  $M : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is also strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* As observed in [remark 0.5.9](#), under these hypotheses,  $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument and the sequential  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank of  $\mathcal{I}$  is  $\leq \kappa$ . By tracing the construction of the functor  $M$  in [theorem 0.5.12](#), we see that  $M$  preserves colimits for  $\kappa$ -filtered  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, so we are done. Similarly, applying [proposition 0.2.47](#) and lemmas [0.2.18](#) and [0.5.11](#) shows that  $M$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible. ■

**0.5.15** COROLLARY. *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . If the morphisms that are in  $\mathcal{I}$  are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact as objects in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , then there exists a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor  $L : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  such that  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$  is the closure of the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  spanned by the image of  $L$  under the splitting of idempotent endomorphisms.*

*Proof.* Take  $L$  to be the functor that sends a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  (considered as an object in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ ) to the left half of its  $(\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \kappa} \mathcal{C}, \text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C})$ -factorisation, and then apply [theorem A.3.37](#). ■

**0.5.16** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a full subcategory of a category  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed in  $\mathcal{C}^+$  under colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, then  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \kappa} \mathcal{C} = \text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \kappa} \mathcal{C}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

**0.5.17** THEOREM (Stability of cofibrantly generated factorisation systems). *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be universes, with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ . Suppose:*

- *$\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete category.*
- *$\mathcal{C}^+$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small and  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -cocomplete category.*
- *The inclusion  $\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.*
- *$\mathcal{I}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*
- *$(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument, and  $(L, R)$  is the functorial factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  constructed by Quillen's small object argument.*
- *$(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C}^+)$  is admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small object argument, and  $(L^+, R^+)$  is the functorial factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}^+$  constructed by Quillen's small object argument.*

*Under these hypotheses, if the sequential  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank of  $\mathcal{I}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is equal to the sequential  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -rank of  $\mathcal{I}$  in  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , then:*

- (i) *For each morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we have a commutative diagram of the following form in  $\mathcal{C}^+$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & M^+(f) & & \\
 & L^+f \nearrow & \downarrow \cong & \searrow R^+f & \\
 X & & & & Y \\
 & Lf \searrow & \downarrow & \nearrow Rf & \\
 & & M(f) & & 
 \end{array}$$

*and the isomorphism  $M^+(f) \rightarrow M(f)$  is moreover canonical and natural in  $f$ .*

- (ii) *We have  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}^+ \subseteq \text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}^+} \mathcal{C}^+$ .*
- (iii)  *$(\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}^+, \text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}^+)$  is an extension of  $(\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}, \text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C})$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This can be seen by examining the explicit construction in the proof of [theorem 0.5.12](#).

(ii). This is implied by the lemma.

(iii). Since  $(\text{cof}_I C, \text{inj}^I C)$  and  $(\text{cof}_I C^+, \text{inj}^I C^+)$  are both cofibrantly generated by  $I$ , by [proposition A.3.27](#), we have  $\text{inj}^I C \subseteq \text{inj}^I C^+$  and so  $\text{cof}_I C \supseteq \text{cof}_I C^+ \cap \text{mor } C$ . It remains to be shown that  $\text{cof}_I C \subseteq \text{cof}_I C^+$ , but this is implied by [corollary 0.5.13](#) applied to claim (ii). ■

**0.5.18** REMARK. Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with colimits for all  $\kappa$ -small diagrams, let  $\mathcal{C} = \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}}^{\kappa}(\mathcal{B})$ , and let  $\mathcal{C}^+ = \mathbf{Ind}_{\mathbf{U}^+}^{\kappa}(\mathcal{B})$ . Then  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, the inclusion  $\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is an accessible  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$  extension, and any  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset  $I \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  whatsoever will satisfy the hypotheses of the theorem.

**0.5.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $F \dashv U : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an adjunction of categories, let  $I \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $J = \{Ff \mid f \in I\}$ .*

(i)  *$F$  sends relative  $I$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{C}$  to relative  $J$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*

(ii)  *$U$  sends  $J$ -injective morphisms in  $\mathcal{D}$  to  $I$ -injective morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

(iii)  *$F$  sends  $I$ -cofibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $J$ -cofibrations in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This is a corollary of the fact that  $F$  preserves all colimits.

(ii). As in the proof of [proposition A.3.28](#), a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  has the right lifting property with respect to all morphisms in  $J$  if and only if  $Uf : UX \rightarrow UY$  has the right lifting property with respect to all morphisms in  $I$ .

(iii). Similarly, a morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  has the left lifting property with respect to all morphisms of the form  $Uf : UX \rightarrow UY$  where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -injective morphism in  $\mathcal{D}$  if and only if  $Fg : FZ \rightarrow FW$  is a  $J$ -cofibration in  $\mathcal{D}$ ; but we know that  $U$  sends  $J$ -injective morphisms in  $\mathcal{D}$  to  $I$ -injective morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so  $F$  must send  $I$ -cofibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $J$ -cofibrations in  $\mathcal{D}$ . ■

**0.5.20** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, let  $\mathbb{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, let  $\mathcal{C} = [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , and let  $I$  be the subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  consisting of all monomorphisms  $e : U \rightarrow V$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  where  $V$  is a quotient of a representable presheaf.*

(i)  *$(\text{cof}_I \mathcal{C}, \text{inj}^I \mathcal{C})$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -cofibrantly generated weak factorisation system.*

(ii)  *$\text{cell}_{I, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$  is precisely the class of all monomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

(iii)  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} C = \text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}} C$ .

*Proof.* (i). Since  $\mathbb{B}$  is small and  $C$  is well-powered and well-copowered, the full subcategory of  $[2, C]$  spanned by  $\mathcal{I}$  is essentially  $\mathbf{U}$ -small. We know that  $C$  is locally finitely presentable, thus, taking a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set of representatives of the isomorphism classes in  $\mathcal{I}$ , and recalling [remark 0.5.9](#), Quillen's small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)) implies  $(\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} C, \text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} C)$  is indeed a  $\mathbf{U}$ -cofibrantly generated weak factorisation system.

(ii). It is clear that the class of injective maps is closed under pushout and transfinite composition in  $\mathbf{Set}$ , so the same must be true of monomorphisms in  $C$ , since colimits in  $C$  are computed componentwise. Thus every morphism in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}} C$  is a monomorphism.

Conversely, suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism. Fix an ordinal  $\alpha$  and a bijection  $y_{\bullet} : \alpha \rightarrow \coprod_{B \in \text{ob } \mathbb{B}} Y(B)$ , and write  $B_{\beta}$  for the object in  $\mathbb{B}$  such that  $y_{\beta} \in Y(B_{\beta})$ . We will construct a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small presentation for  $f$  by transfinite recursion on  $\alpha$ .

- To begin, put  $X_0 = X$  and  $f_0 = f$ .
- For each ordinal  $\beta < \alpha$ , the Yoneda lemma implies there is a unique morphism  $a_{\beta} : h_{B_{\beta}} \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$  such that  $a_{\beta}(\text{id}_{B_{\beta}}) = y_{\beta}$ ; let  $\bar{v}_{\beta} : V_{\beta} \rightarrow Y$  be the image of  $a_{\beta}$ , and let  $e_{\beta} : U_{\beta} \rightarrow V_{\beta}$  and  $u_{\beta} : U_{\beta} \rightarrow X_{\beta}$  be defined by the pullback square shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U_{\beta} & \xrightarrow{u_{\beta}} & X_{\beta} \\ e_{\beta} \downarrow & & \downarrow f_{\beta} \\ V_{\beta} & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}_{\beta}} & Y \end{array}$$

Since  $f_{\beta}$  is a monomorphism,  $e_{\beta}$  must also be a monomorphism and hence is in  $\mathcal{I}$ . There is then a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U_{\beta} & \xrightarrow{u_{\beta}} & X_{\beta} & & \\ e_{\beta} \downarrow & & \downarrow & \searrow f_{\beta} & \\ V_{\beta} & \xrightarrow{v_{\beta}} & X_{\beta+1} & & \\ & \searrow \bar{v}_{\beta} & \downarrow f_{\beta+1} & \searrow & \\ & & & & Y \end{array}$$



where  $f_{\beta+1} : X_{\beta+1} \rightarrow Y$  is the union of  $f_\beta : X_\beta \rightarrow Y$  and  $\bar{v}_\beta : V_\beta \rightarrow Y$  considered as subobjects of  $Y$ ; note that the inner square of the diagram is then a pushout square.

- Finally, for limit ordinals  $\gamma < \alpha$ , we take  $f_\gamma : X_\gamma \rightarrow Y$  to be the union  $\bigcup_{\beta < \gamma} f_\beta$ .

This completes the presentation of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  as a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and it is clearly  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.

(iii). [Corollary 0.5.13](#) implies that each morphism in  $\text{cof}_\mathcal{I} \mathcal{C}$  is a retract of some morphism in  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$ , but the class of monomorphisms is closed under retracts, so in this case we must have  $\text{cof}_\mathcal{I} \mathcal{C} = \text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C}$ . Since  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{cell}_\mathcal{I} \mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{cof}_\mathcal{I} \mathcal{C}$ , we also deduce that  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}, \mathbf{U}} \mathcal{C} = \text{cell}_\mathcal{I} \mathcal{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

We now turn our attention to Garner's small object argument.

**0.5.21** **LEMMA.** *Let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, let  $F : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a functor, and let  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be (the functor part of) a pointwise left Kan extension of  $F$  along itself. If each  $FA$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then:*

- (i)  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.
- (ii) *In addition, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category,  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that every hom-set of  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(\mathcal{C})$  is  $\lambda$ -small,  $\mathcal{A}$  is a  $\lambda$ -small category, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* (i). [Theorem A.5.15](#) says there is a natural bijection of the form below:

$$\mathcal{C}(GX, C) \cong [\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](\mathcal{C}(F-, X), \mathcal{C}(F-, C))$$

Since colimits are computed componentwise in  $[\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , the hypothesis implies  $\mathcal{C}(F, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams. By the Yoneda lemma, the functors  $\mathcal{C}(-, C) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  jointly reflect limits, so it follows that  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams.

(ii). Now suppose  $X$  is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . [Lemma 0.5.11](#) then says each hom-set  $\mathcal{C}(FA, X)$  is  $\lambda$ -small, and since  $\mathcal{A}$  is a  $\lambda$ -small category, this shows

that the comma category  $(F \downarrow X)$  is also  $\lambda$ -small. Thus,  $GX$  is a colimit for a  $\lambda$ -small diagram of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and so we may use [lemma 0.2.18](#) to deduce that it is a  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**0.5.22 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with pushouts and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  be a functor. Suppose a pointwise left Kan extension of  $U$  along itself exists.*

- (i) **RLP**( $U$ ) is isomorphic as a category over  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  to the category of algebras for a pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$  on  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ .
- (ii) Moreover, if (the functor part of) the pointwise left Kan extension of  $U$  along itself is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor (resp. strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor), then so is  $J$ .

*Proof.* Let  $G : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  be (the functor part of) a pointwise left Kan extension of  $U$  along itself and let  $\alpha : U \Rightarrow GU$  be the unit. Then there is a unique natural transformation  $\varepsilon : G \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[2, \mathcal{C}]}$  such that  $\varepsilon U \cdot \alpha = \text{id}_{[2, \mathcal{C}]}$ . Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By [theorem A.5.15](#), there is a natural bijection of the form below:

$$[2, \mathcal{C}](Gf, g) \cong [\mathcal{I}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]( [2, \mathcal{C}](U-, f), [2, \mathcal{C}](U-, g) )$$

It is not hard to see that a coherent choice  $\Phi$  of right liftings for  $f$  with respect to  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is the same thing as a natural transformation  $[2, \mathcal{C}](U-, f) \Rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}](U-, \text{id}_X)$  making the following diagram commute for all objects  $e$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & [2, \mathcal{C}](Ue, \text{id}_X) & \\ & \searrow \text{dashed} & \downarrow \\ [2, \mathcal{C}](Ue, f) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & [2, \mathcal{C}](Ue, f) \end{array}$$

where the map  $[2, \mathcal{C}](Ue, \text{id}_X) \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}](Ue, f)$  is the one induced by the morphism  $(\text{id}_X, f) : \text{id}_X \rightarrow f$  in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ . We may therefore identify choices  $\Phi$  with morphisms  $l : d_0(Gf) \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$(*) \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(\varepsilon_f)} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ Gf \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id} & & \downarrow f \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{l} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ & & \searrow & \nearrow & \\ & & d_0(\varepsilon_f) & & \end{array}$$

Now, define functors  $J, K : [2, C] \rightarrow [2, C]$  so the square in the following diagram is a natural pushout square in  $C$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(\varepsilon_f)} & X \\
 Gf \downarrow & & \downarrow Kf \\
 \bullet & \longrightarrow & Mf \\
 & \searrow d_0(\varepsilon_f) & \downarrow Jf \\
 & & Y
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow f \\
 \searrow f
 \end{array}$$

We then have a natural transformation  $\iota : \text{id}_{[2, C]} \Rightarrow J$  where  $\iota_f = (\text{id}_X, Kf)$ , and the universal property of pushouts yields a natural bijection between morphisms  $l : d_0(Gf) \rightarrow X$  making the diagram  $(*)$  commute and morphisms  $\tilde{l} : Mf \rightarrow X$  such that  $\tilde{l} \circ Kf = \text{id}_X$  and  $Jf = f \circ \tilde{l}$ , i.e. coalgebra structures on  $f$  for the pointed endofunctor  $(J, \iota)$ . The naturality of these identifications then ensures that  $\mathbf{RLP}(U)$  is indeed isomorphic to  $[2, C]^{(J, \iota)}$  as categories over  $[2, C]$ . This proves claim (i).

For claim (ii), simply observe that pushouts preserve all colimits, so  $J : [2, C] \rightarrow [2, C]$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible if  $G : [2, C] \rightarrow [2, C]$  is, and lemmas 0.2.18 and 0.3.21 imply  $J$  is strongly  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible if  $G$  is.  $\blacksquare$

**0.5.23 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  be a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, C]$  be a functor. If each  $Ue$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[2, C]$ , then:*

- (i) *The forgetful functor  $\mathbf{RLP}(U) \rightarrow [2, C]$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible and monadic.*
- (ii) *In addition, if  $\lambda$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that each hom-set in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\mathbf{U}(C)$  is  $\lambda$ -small,  $\mathcal{I}$  is a  $\lambda$ -small category, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ , then the forgetful functor  $\mathbf{RLP}(U) \rightarrow [2, C]$  is strongly  $(\lambda, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible.*

*Proof.* Use theorems 0.3.40 and 0.3.41, lemma 0.5.21, and proposition 0.5.22.  $\blacksquare$

**0.5.24 THEOREM** (Garner's small object argument). *Let  $C$  be a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, C]$  be a functor.*

- (i) *There exists a free algebraic factorisation system  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  on  $C$  cofibrantly generated by  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, C]$ .*

## 0. FOUNDATIONS

---

- (ii)  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  is (part of) an algebraically free natural weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  cofibrantly generated by  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$ .
- (iii) In particular, if  $\mathcal{I}$  is discrete, then there exists a functorial weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  cofibrantly generated by the image of  $\text{ob } \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i). See Theorem 4.4 in [Garner, 2009].

(ii). See Theorem 5.4 in [Garner, 2009].

(iii). This is [proposition A.3.5I](#). □

**0.5.25** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . If  $\kappa$  is a regular cardinal in a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  such that the domains of morphisms in  $\mathcal{I}$  are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the class of  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered category and let  $X : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a diagram such that each  $Xd$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Suppose  $\bar{X}$  is a colimit for  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with colimiting cocone  $\lambda : X \Rightarrow \Delta \bar{X}$ . Let  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be in  $\mathcal{I}$ , and consider the induced hom-set map  $g^* : \mathcal{C}(W, \bar{X}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(Z, \bar{X})$ ; we must show that it is surjective. Since  $Z$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the canonical comparison  $\varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} \mathcal{C}(Z, Xd) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(Z, \bar{X})$  is a bijection, and so every morphism  $Z \rightarrow \bar{X}$  factors through  $\lambda_d : Xd \rightarrow \bar{X}$  for some  $d$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ . By hypothesis  $Xd$  is  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective, so we obtain an extension of  $Z \rightarrow Xd$  along  $g : Z \rightarrow W$ , and hence, an extension of  $Z \rightarrow \bar{X}$  along  $g$ . Thus  $X$  is also  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective. ■

**0.5.26** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . A morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $g$  if and only if  $f$  is injective as an object in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  with respect to the singleton set  $\{(g, \text{id}_W) : g \rightarrow \text{id}_W\}$ .* ■

**0.5.27** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . If the domains and codomains of morphisms in  $\mathcal{I}$  are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$  is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 0.2.47](#) and the two lemmas above. ■

**0.5.28** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $(L, R)$  be a functorial weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\lambda : \text{id}_{[2, \mathcal{C}]} \Rightarrow R$  be the natural transformation whose component at an object  $f$  in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  corresponds to the following commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{Lf} & \bullet \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ \bullet & \xlongequal{\quad} & \bullet \end{array}$$

Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  spanned by the morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  that are in the right class of the induced weak factorisation system.

- (i)  $\mathcal{R}$  is also the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  spanned by the image of the forgetful functor  $[2, \mathcal{C}]^{(R, \lambda)} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$ , where  $[2, \mathcal{C}]^{(R, \lambda)}$  is the category of algebras for the pointed endofunctor  $(R, \lambda)$ .
- (ii) If  $R : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is an accessible functor, then  $[2, \mathcal{C}]^{(R, \lambda)}$  is a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the forgetful functor  $[2, \mathcal{C}]^{(R, \lambda)} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is monadic.
- (iii) If  $R : [2, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is strongly  $(\pi, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible and has  $\mathbf{U}$ -rank  $\kappa < \pi$ , and  $\mathcal{R}$  is closed under colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\pi$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , then  $\mathcal{R}$  is a  $\pi$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ .

*Proof.* (i). This is [proposition A.3.39](#).

(ii). Apply [theorem 0.3.40](#).

(iii). By [theorem 0.3.41](#),  $[2, \mathcal{C}]^{(R, \lambda)}$  is a locally  $\pi$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the forgetful functor  $[2, \mathcal{C}]^{(R, \lambda)} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is moreover strongly  $(\pi, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible. Thus, we may apply [proposition 0.3.31](#) to claim (i) and deduce that  $\mathcal{R}$  is a  $\pi$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory. ■

**0.5.29** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}$ , considered as a full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , is an accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -subcategory.

*Proof.* Combine [corollary 0.5.14](#) and [proposition 0.5.28](#). ■

**0.5.30** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and let  $\mathcal{R}$  be a  $\kappa$ -accessible full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ . If  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  where  $Z$  and  $W$  are  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then:

- (i) Given a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  that is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , any morphism  $g \rightarrow f$  in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  admits a factorisation of the form  $g \rightarrow f' \rightarrow f$  where  $f'$  is in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{R})$ .
- (ii) The morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $\mathcal{R}$  if and only if it has the left lifting property with respect to  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{R})$ .

*Proof.* (i). [Proposition 0.2.47](#) says that  $g$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ ; but every object in  $\mathcal{R}$  is the colimit of a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagram of  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact objects in  $\mathcal{R}$ , and the inclusion  $\mathcal{R} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, so any morphism  $g \rightarrow f$  must factor through some  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $\mathcal{R}$ .

(ii). If  $g$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $\mathcal{R}$ , then it certainly has the left lifting property with respect to  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{R})$ . Conversely, by factorising morphisms  $g \rightarrow f$  as in claim (i), we see that  $g$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $\mathcal{R}$  as soon as it has the left lifting property with respect to  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^{\mathbf{U}}(\mathcal{R})$ .  $\blacksquare$

**0.5.31** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, let  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and suppose we have a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & W \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow j_1 \\ W & \xrightarrow{j_0} & W \cup^Z W \end{array}$$

Let  $e : W \cup^Z W \rightarrow W$  be the unique morphism such that  $e \circ j_0 = e \circ j_1 = \text{id}_W$ . The following are equivalent for a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

- (i)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is right orthogonal to  $g : Z \rightarrow W$ .
- (ii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  and  $e : W \cup^Z W \rightarrow W$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{R} = \{g\}^\perp$  and let  $\mathcal{L} = {}^\perp \mathcal{R}$ .

(i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By [proposition A.3.19](#),  $j_1 : W \rightarrow W \cup^Z W$  and  $\text{id} : W \rightarrow W$  are in  $\mathcal{L}$ ; so by [proposition A.3.20](#),  $e : W \cup^Z W \rightarrow W$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ . But [proposition A.3.3](#)

says that  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{L}^\perp$  and  $\mathcal{L}^\perp \subseteq \mathcal{L}^\square$ , so if  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is right orthogonal to  $g : Z \rightarrow W$ , then  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  indeed has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  and  $e : W \cup^Z W \rightarrow W$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  and  $e : W \cup^Z W \rightarrow W$ . Consider a lifting problem in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

By hypothesis, there is at least one  $h : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $h \circ g = z$  and  $f \circ h = w$ . Suppose  $k : W \rightarrow X$  is another. Then there is a unique morphism  $l : W \cup^Z W \rightarrow X$  such that  $l \circ j_0 = h$  and  $l \circ j_1 = k$ , and by construction,  $f \circ l = w \circ e$ , so there is at least one morphism  $m : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $m \circ e = l$  (and  $f \circ m = w$ ). But that implies  $m = h = k$ , so  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is indeed right orthogonal to  $g : W \rightarrow Z$ .  $\blacksquare$

**0.5.32 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, and let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) *There is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  such that  $\mathcal{I}^\square = \mathcal{J}^\perp$ .*
- (ii) *If  $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{C})$  is admissible for the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small object argument, then  $(\text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}} \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{J}^\perp)$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -cofibrantly generated orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Apply [lemma 0.5.31](#).

(ii). This is a special case of Quillen's small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)).  $\blacksquare$

**0.5.33 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  spanned by those objects  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is right orthogonal to  $\mathcal{J}$ .*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{D}$  is a reflective subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{D}$  is a locally presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and the inclusion  $\mathcal{D} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is an accessible functor.*

- (iii) If  $\kappa$  is a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and every morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$  has  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact domain and codomain, then  $\mathcal{D}$  is also a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and the inclusion  $\mathcal{D} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible functor.

*Proof.* (i). We must show that the inclusion  $\mathcal{C} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{D}$  admits a left adjoint, so it suffices to verify the following: for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the functor

$$\mathcal{C}(X, -) : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

is representable in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Let  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{J}^\perp$  and  $\mathcal{L} = {}^\perp\mathcal{R}$ . By [theorem 0.5.12](#), there exists a morphism  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  such that  $\hat{X}$  is in  $\mathcal{D}$  and  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ ; but if  $D$  is an object in  $\mathcal{D}$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then

$$\mathcal{C}(g, D) : \mathcal{C}(W, D) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(Z, D)$$

is a bijection, so we deduce that  $\hat{X}$  represents  $\mathcal{C}(X, -) : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

(ii) and (iii). By [corollary 0.5.14](#), the endofunctor  $X \mapsto \hat{X}$  is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible, so  $\mathcal{D}$  is isomorphic to the category of algebras for a monad on  $\mathcal{C}$  whose underlying endofunctor is  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -accessible. We may then apply [theorem 0.3.35](#). ■

**0.5.34 THEOREM.** Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, let  $\mathcal{A}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, let  $\kappa$  be a regular cardinal in  $\mathbf{U}$ , let  $\mathcal{K}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set of cocones under  $\kappa$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be the full subcategory of  $[\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  spanned by those  $M : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  that send the cocones that are in  $\mathcal{K}$  to limiting cones in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a reflective subcategory of  $[\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .
- (ii)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- (iii) For each object  $a$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  defined by  $M \mapsto Ma$  is representable, say by  $Fa$ , and the resulting functor  $F : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  sends cocones that are in  $\mathcal{K}$  to colimiting cocones.

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). For each cocone  $k : A \Rightarrow \Delta a$  that is in  $\mathcal{K}$ , let  $f_k : \varinjlim h_A \rightarrow h_a$  be the induced morphism in  $[\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . The Yoneda lemma then implies that a functor  $M : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends the cocone  $k : A \Rightarrow \Delta a$  to a limiting cone in  $\mathbf{Set}$  if and only if the induced map

$$[\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](f_k, M) : [\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](h_a, M) \rightarrow [\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](\varinjlim h_A, M)$$



is a bijection, and by [lemma A.3.2](#), this happens if and only if the unique morphism  $M \rightarrow 1$  is right orthogonal with respect to  $f_k : \varinjlim h_A \rightarrow h_a$ . Moreover, each  $A$  is a  $\kappa$ -small diagram, so by [proposition 0.2.46](#),  $\varinjlim h_A$  is a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U})$ -compact object in  $[\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . Thus we may apply [corollary 0.5.33](#).

(iii). By the Yoneda lemma, we may take  $Fa$  to be the reflection of  $h_a$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $k : A \Rightarrow \Delta a$  be a cocone that is in  $\mathcal{K}$  and let  $M$  be any object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then,

$$C(Fa, M) \cong Ma \cong \varprojlim MA \cong \varprojlim C(FA, M)$$

so  $Fk : FA \Rightarrow \Delta Fa$  is indeed a colimiting cocone in  $\mathcal{C}$ . ■



## SIMPLICIAL SETS

Simplicial sets, like simplicial complexes, are combinatorial models for spaces built up by gluing standard  $n$ -simplices together; unlike simplicial complexes, an  $n$ -simplex in a simplicial set need not be uniquely determined by its vertices. It is for this reason that simplicial sets were once known by the unwieldy name ‘complete semi-simplicial (c.s.s.) complex’.

In the 1960s, it was discovered that one can mimic the definitions and constructions of classical homotopy theory by combinatorial means using simplicial sets, and that the resulting theory is moreover equivalent to the classical theory in a natural, functorial way. More recently, it has been shown that the homotopy theory of simplicial sets is *universal* in a precise sense,<sup>[1]</sup> so it seems fitting that we begin here.

### I.1 Basics

**I.1.1** DEFINITION. The **simplex category** is the category  $\Delta$  whose objects are the positive finite ordinals and whose morphisms are the monotone maps. We use the geometer’s convention:  $[n]$  denotes the ordinal  $\{0, 1, \dots, n\}$ .

**I.1.2** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a category.

- A **simplicial object** in  $C$  is a functor  $\Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$ .
- A **morphism of simplicial objects** in  $C$  is a natural transformation of such functors.

---

[1] See [Dugger, 2001b].

The **category of simplicial objects** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is the functor category  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{C}]$  and is denoted by  $\mathbf{sC}$ .

**1.1.3** DEFINITION. The **coface maps** in  $\Delta$  are the morphisms  $\delta_n^i : [n-1] \rightarrow [n]$ , where  $\delta_n^i$  is the unique injective monotone map that misses  $i$ ; and the **codegeneracy maps** in  $\Delta$  are the morphisms  $\sigma_n^i : [n+1] \rightarrow [n]$ , where  $\sigma_n^i$  is the unique surjective monotone map with  $\sigma_n^i(i) = \sigma_n^i(i+1) = i$ .

**1.1.4** THEOREM (Cosimplicial identities). *The following equations hold in  $\Delta$ :*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \delta_{n+1}^{j+1} \circ \delta_n^i &= \delta_{n+1}^i \circ \delta_n^j && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n \\
 \sigma_n^j \circ \sigma_{n+1}^i &= \sigma_n^i \circ \sigma_{n+1}^{j+1} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n \\
 \sigma_n^{j+1} \circ \delta_{n+1}^i &= \delta_n^i \circ \sigma_{n-1}^j && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j < n \\
 \delta_n^{j+1} \circ \sigma_{n-1}^i &= \sigma_n^i \circ \delta_{n+1}^{j+2} && \text{if } 0 \leq i < j < n \\
 \sigma_n^i \circ \delta_{n+1}^i &= \text{id}_{[n]} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 \sigma_n^i \circ \delta_{n+1}^{i+1} &= \text{id}_{[n]} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n
 \end{aligned}$$

*Equivalently, the following diagrams commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [n-1] & \xrightarrow{\delta^i} & [n] \\
 \delta^j \downarrow & & \downarrow \delta^{j+1} \\
 [n] & \xrightarrow{\delta^i} & [n+1]
 \end{array} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [n+1] & \xrightarrow{\sigma^i} & [n] \\
 \sigma^{j+1} \downarrow & & \downarrow \sigma^j \\
 [n] & \xrightarrow{\sigma^i} & [n-1]
 \end{array} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [n] & \xrightarrow{\delta^i} & [n+1] \\
 \sigma^j \downarrow & & \downarrow \sigma^{j+1} \\
 [n-1] & \xrightarrow{\delta^i} & [n]
 \end{array} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [n] & \xrightarrow{\sigma^i} & [n-1] \\
 \delta^{j+2} \downarrow & & \downarrow \delta^{j+1} \\
 [n+1] & \xrightarrow{\sigma^i} & [n]
 \end{array} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < j < n$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [n] & \xrightarrow{\delta^i} & [n+1] \\
 \delta^{i+1} \downarrow & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow \sigma^i \\
 [n+1] & \xrightarrow{\sigma^i} & [n]
 \end{array} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i \leq n$$

Moreover, every morphism  $[n] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$  is uniquely a composite of the form

$$\delta_m^{j_1} \circ \dots \circ \delta_k^{j_{m-k}} \circ \sigma_k^{i_{n-k}} \circ \dots \circ \sigma_n^{i_1}$$

where  $k \leq \min\{n, m\}$ , and

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &\leq i_{n-k} \leq \dots \leq i_1 \leq n \\
 0 &\leq j_{m-k} \leq \dots \leq j_1 \leq m
 \end{aligned}$$

The category  $\Delta$  is uniquely characterised by these properties.

*Proof.* See [May, 1967, §2], [GZ, Ch. II, §2], or [Weibel, 1994, §8.1].  $\square$

**I.I.5** DEFINITION. Let  $A$  be a simplicial object in a category  $C$ . A **face operator** for  $A$  is a morphism of the form  $A(\delta_n^i) : A([n]) \rightarrow A([n-1])$ , and a **degeneracy operator** for  $A$  is a morphism of the form  $A(\sigma_n^i) : A([n]) \rightarrow A([n+1])$ . For brevity, we will usually write  $A_n$  instead of  $A([n])$ ,  $d_i^n$  instead of  $A(\delta_n^i)$ , and  $s_i^n$  instead of  $A(\sigma_n^i)$ .

**I.I.6** COROLLARY (Simplicial identities). *The face and degeneracy operators of a simplicial object satisfy the formal duals of the equations in theorem 1.1.4, i.e.:*

$$\begin{aligned}
 d_i^n \circ d_{j+1}^{n+1} &= d_j^n \circ d_i^{n+1} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n \\
 s_i^{n+1} \circ s_j^n &= s_{j+1}^{n+1} \circ s_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n \\
 d_i^{n+1} \circ s_{j+1}^n &= s_j^{n-1} \circ d_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j < n \\
 s_i^{n-1} \circ d_{j+1}^n &= d_{j+2}^{n+1} \circ s_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i < j < n \\
 d_i^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= \text{id} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 d_{i+1}^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= \text{id} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n
 \end{aligned}$$

**I.I.7** COROLLARY. *A simplicial object  $A$  is uniquely determined by the sequence of objects  $A_0, A_1, A_2, \dots$  together with the face and degeneracy operators. Conversely, any sequence of objects equipped with face and degeneracy operators satisfying the simplicial identities defined a simplicial object.*  $\blacksquare$

Observe that there is an identity-on-objects automorphism  $(-)^{\text{op}} : \Delta \rightarrow \Delta$  that sends coface maps  $\delta_n^i : [n-1] \rightarrow [n]$  to  $\delta_n^{n-i} : [n-1] \rightarrow [n]$  and codegeneracy maps  $\sigma_n^i : [n] \rightarrow [n+1]$  to  $\sigma_n^{n-i} : [n] \rightarrow [n+1]$  for all  $n \geq 0$  and  $0 \leq i \leq n$ . This in turn induces an automorphism on the category of simplicial objects.

**I.I.8** DEFINITION. The **opposite** of a simplicial object  $A$  in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is the simplicial object  $A^{\text{op}}$  obtained by composing  $A : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with  $(-)^{\text{op}} : \Delta \rightarrow \Delta$ .

**I.I.9** REMARK. Although  $(-)^{\text{op}} : \Delta \rightarrow \Delta$  acts as the identity on objects, the functor  $(-)^{\text{op}}$  is *not* isomorphic to  $\text{id}_{\Delta}$ . More generally, a simplicial object  $A$  *may* be isomorphic to its opposite  $A^{\text{op}}$ , but the functor  $(-)^{\text{op}} : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{C}$  is usually *not* isomorphic to  $\text{id} : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{C}$ .

**I.I.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\Delta_{\rightarrow}$  be the subcategory of  $\Delta$  consisting of the injective maps and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- A **semisimplicial object** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $(\Delta_{\rightarrow})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .
- A **morphism of semisimplicial objects** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a natural transformation of such functors.

**I.I.11** REMARK. Of course, as with simplicial objects, a semisimplicial object is determined by its components and its face operators.

**I.I.12** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with finite coproducts, let  $j : \Delta_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow \Delta$  be the inclusion, let  $j^* : [(\Delta_{\rightarrow})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{C}]$  be the induced functor, let  $A$  be a semisimplicial object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $j_!A$  be the simplicial object defined as follows:

- For each natural number  $n$ ,

$$(j_!A)_n = \sum_{m \leq n} D_m^n \odot A_m$$

where  $D_m^n$  is the set of surjections  $[n] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ .

- For  $0 \leq i \leq n$ , the degeneracy operator  $s_i^n : (j_!A)_n \rightarrow (j_!A)_{n+1}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  making the diagram below commute for every surjection  $\alpha : [n] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\alpha\} \odot A_m & \longrightarrow & K(\mathcal{C})_n \\ \downarrow \scriptstyle !\odot \text{id} & & \downarrow \scriptstyle !s_i^n \\ \{\alpha \circ \sigma_n^i\} \odot A_m & \longrightarrow & K(\mathcal{C})_{n+1} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the evident coproduct insertions and the left vertical arrow is induced by  $\text{id}_{A_m}$ .

- For  $0 \leq i \leq n$ , the face operator  $d_i^n : (j_! A)_n \rightarrow (j_! A)_{n-1}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  making the diagram below commute for every surjection  $\alpha : [n] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\alpha\} \odot A_m & \longrightarrow & K(C)_n \\ \downarrow !\odot \gamma^* & & \downarrow !s_i^n \\ \{\beta\} \odot A_l & \longrightarrow & K(C)_{n+1} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the evident coproduct insertions,  $\beta : [n+1] \rightarrow [l]$  is a surjection in  $\Delta$ ,  $\gamma : [l] \rightarrow [m]$  is an injection in  $\Delta$ , and  $\alpha = \gamma \circ \beta$ .

Then, for each simplicial object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we have a bijection of the form below,

$$[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{C}](j_! A, B) \cong [(\Delta_{\rightarrow})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{C}](A, j^* B)$$

and it is natural in  $B$ .

*Proof.* Consider the simplicial identities (corollary 1.1.6) and the formula for left Kan extension given in theorem A.5.15. ■

**1.1.13** DEFINITION. A **simplicial set** is a simplicial object in **Set**, and the **category of simplicial sets** is denoted by **sSet**.

**1.1.14** LEMMA.

- (i) Limits (resp. colimits) in **sSet** are constructed degreewise: a cone (resp. cocone) in **sSet** over a diagram is limiting (resp. colimiting) if and only if it is so in every degree.
- (ii) A morphism of **sSet** is monic (resp. epic) if and only if it is degreewise injective (resp. surjective).

*Proof.* These are standard facts about functor categories. □

**1.1.15** DEFINITION. The **standard  $n$ -simplex** in **sSet**, denoted by  $\Delta^n$ , is the representable presheaf  $\Delta(-, [n])$ .

**I.I.16** THEOREM. Let  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor  $[n] \mapsto \Delta^n$ .

- (i) For any simplicial set  $X$ , the map  $\mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, X) \rightarrow X_n$  defined by  $f \mapsto f_n(\text{id}_{[n]})$  is a bijection and is moreover natural in  $[n]$  and  $X$ .
- (ii)  $\mathbf{sSet}$  has limits and colimits for all small diagrams, every epimorphism is effective, and for all morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , the pullback functor  $f^* : \mathbf{sSet}_{/Y} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}_{/X}$  preserves colimits.
- (iii)  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a dense functor, i.e. for any simplicial set  $X$ , the tautological cocone<sup>[1]</sup> from the canonical diagram  $(\Delta^\bullet \downarrow X) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  to  $X$  is colimiting.
- (iv) Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a locally small category with colimits for all small diagrams. If  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is a functor that preserves small colimits, then it is left adjoint to the functor  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  defined by  $E \mapsto \mathcal{E}(F\Delta^\bullet, E)$ .
- (v) With  $\mathcal{E}$  as above, the functor  $F \mapsto F\Delta^\bullet$  from the category of colimit-preserving functors  $\mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  to the category of all functors  $\Delta \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

*Proof.* Claim (i) is just the Yoneda lemma, claim (ii) follows from the lemma above, and claims (iii)–(v) are just facts about dense functors, pointwise left Kan extensions, weighted colimits: see [proposition A.5.25](#), [theorem A.5.15](#), and [proposition A.6.15](#). ■

**I.I.17** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. An  **$n$ -simplex** of  $X$  is an element of  $X_n$ ; a **vertex** is a 0-simplex, and an **edge** is a 1-simplex. This is justified by statement (i) in the above theorem. Given an edge  $f$  of  $X$ , the **source** of  $f$  is the vertex  $d_1(f)$ , and the **target** of  $f$  is the vertex  $d_0(f)$ ; we write  $f : x \rightarrow y$  to mean  $d_1(f) = x$  and  $d_0(f) = y$ .

**I.I.18** DEFINITION. A **degenerate  $n$ -simplex** of a simplicial set  $X$  is an  $n$ -simplex  $\alpha$  for which there exist an  $(n-1)$ -simplex  $\beta$  and  $0 \leq i < n$  such that  $s_i(\beta) = \alpha$ . A **non-degenerate  $n$ -simplex** of  $X$  is an  $n$ -simplex that is not degenerate.

**I.I.19** REMARK. An  $n$ -simplex of  $X$  can be non-degenerate even when the corresponding morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow X$  is not a monomorphism! Similarly, it is possible for all the proper faces of a non-degenerate simplex to be degenerate.

---

[1] See [definition A.5.7](#).



**I.I.20** DEFINITION. A **finite simplicial set** is a simplicial set that has only finitely many *non-degenerate* simplices.

**I.I.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $X$  is a finite simplicial set.
- (ii)  $X$  is an  $\aleph_0$ -compact object in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .<sup>[2]</sup>
- (iii)  $X$  is in the smallest full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  that contains the standard simplices and is closed in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  under (isomorphisms and) colimits for finite diagrams.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). A morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is determined uniquely by the images of the non-degenerate simplices of  $X$ , and the faces of any particular simplex can only satisfy finitely many equations, so if  $X$  is a finite simplicial set and  $Y$  is a colimit for a small filtered diagram of simplicial sets, then  $f$  must factor through one of the components of the colimiting cocone. It is straightforward to check that the factorisation of  $f$  is unique up to the appropriate equivalence relation, and we may then deduce that  $X$  is an  $\aleph_0$ -compact object.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Let  $\mathcal{K}$  be the indicated full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and consider the comma category  $(\mathcal{K} \downarrow X)$ . Let  $P : (\mathcal{K} \downarrow X) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the projection, and let  $\lambda : P \Rightarrow \Delta X$  be the tautological cocone.<sup>[3]</sup> It is not hard to check that  $\lambda$  is a colimiting cocone. Since  $\mathcal{K}$  has colimits for finite diagrams,  $(\mathcal{K} \downarrow X)$  is filtered; and it is clear that  $\mathcal{K}$  is essentially small, so we deduce that  $X$  is a retract of an object in  $\mathcal{K}$  if  $X$  is  $\aleph_0$ -compact. Noting that  $\mathcal{K}$  is closed under retracts, we conclude that  $X$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$  if it is  $\aleph_0$ -compact.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Now, let  $\mathcal{K}'$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  spanned by the finite simplicial sets. It is easy to see that  $\mathcal{K}'$  is closed in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  under (isomorphisms and) finite colimits, and the standard simplices are all in  $\mathcal{K}'$ , so we must have  $\mathcal{K} \subseteq \mathcal{K}'$ , as required. ■

---

[2] See [definition 0.2.14](#).

[3] See [definition A.5.7](#).

**I.I.22** DEFINITION. The **standard  $n$ -simplex** in **Top**, denoted by  $|\Delta^n|$ , is the topological space

$$|\Delta^n| = \{(x_0, \dots, x_n) \in [0, 1]^{n+1} \mid x_0 + \dots + x_n = 1\}$$

where  $[0, 1]$  is the closed unit interval with the standard metric. The functor  $|\Delta^\bullet| : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$  sends  $[n]$  to  $|\Delta^n|$  and is defined on morphisms by linearly interpolating the obvious map of vertices.

**I.I.23** COROLLARY. *There exists an adjunction*

$$|-| \dashv S : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

*extending the functor  $|\Delta^\bullet| : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$  defined above, and this adjunction is unique up to unique isomorphism. Explicitly, we may take*

$$S(Y)_n = \mathbf{Top}(|\Delta^n|, Y)$$

*with the evident face and degeneracy operators induced by the coface and codegeneracy maps in  $\Delta$ .* ■

**I.I.24** DEFINITION. The **geometric realisation** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the topological space  $|X|$ , and the **singular set** of a topological space  $Y$  is the simplicial set  $S(Y)$ .

**I.I.25** REMARK. The geometric realisation  $|X|$  is stable under universe enlargement, by [theorem A.5.20](#).

**I.I.26** THEOREM. *Let **CGHaus** be the category of compactly generated Hausdorff spaces<sup>[4]</sup> and continuous maps.*

- (i) *The topological standard  $n$ -simplex  $|\Delta^n|$  is a compact Hausdorff space.*
- (ii) *For any simplicial set  $X$ , the geometric realisation  $|X|$  is a compactly generated Hausdorff space.*
- (iii) *The previously-constructed adjunction  $|-| \dashv S : \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  restricts to an adjunction between **CGHaus** and **sSet**, and moreover the functor  $|-| : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{CGHaus}$  preserves finite limits and reflects isomorphisms.*

*Proof.* Claim (i) is a standard fact, while claims (ii) and (iii) are proven in [\[GZ, Ch. III, §3\]](#). □

---

[4] See [definition A.2.26](#).

## I.2 Nerves, skeletons, and coskeletons

**Prerequisites.** §§ I.1, A.2, A.3.

**I.2.1** **DEFINITION.** The **nerve** of a small category  $\mathbb{C}$  is the simplicial set  $N(\mathbb{C})$  defined by the following formula,

$$N(\mathbb{C})_n = \text{Fun}([n], \mathbb{C})$$

where  $[n]$  here denotes the preorder category  $\{0 \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow n\}$ .

**I.2.2** **PROPOSITION.** Let  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the nerve functor.

- (i)  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a left adjoint  $\tau_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  such that  $\tau_1 \Delta^n = [n]$ .
- (ii) The functor  $N$  is fully faithful and exhibits  $\mathbf{Cat}$  as a reflective subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (iii)  $N(-)^{\text{op}}$  and  $N((-)^{\text{op}})$  are isomorphic as functors  $\mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (iv)  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a cartesian closed functor.
- (v) The functor  $\tau_1$  preserves finite products.

*Proof.* (i). Apply [theorem I.1.16](#).

(ii). A functor is entirely determined by its action on objects, arrows, and composable strings of arrows, so  $N$  is fully faithful.

(iii). It is clear that there is a canonical isomorphism  $N(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}$  and  $N(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$  for all small categories  $\mathbb{C}$ , and it is straightforward to verify naturality.

(iv).  $N$  preserves binary products, so we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, N([\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{D}])) &\cong \text{Fun}([n], [\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{D}]) \\ &\cong \text{Fun}([n] \times \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{D}) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(N([n] \times \mathbb{C}), N(\mathbb{D})) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(N([n]) \times N(\mathbb{C}), N(\mathbb{D})) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(N([n]), [N(\mathbb{C}), N(\mathbb{D})]) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, [N(\mathbb{C}), N(\mathbb{D})]) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, by the Yoneda lemma, the canonical morphism  $N([\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{D}]) \rightarrow [N(\mathbb{C}), N(\mathbb{D})]$  is an isomorphism.

(v). It is clear that  $\tau_1$  preserves terminal objects. Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be simplicial sets. We wish to show that the canonical morphism  $\tau_1(X \times Y) \rightarrow \tau_1 X \times \tau_1 Y$  is an isomorphism; but since  $\tau_1$  is a left adjoint and both **sSet** and **Cat** are cartesian closed, it is enough to check the claim for  $Y = \Delta^n$ , because **sSet** is generated under colimits by  $\{\Delta^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ . We have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Fun}(\tau_1(X \times \Delta^n), \mathbb{C}) &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(X \times \Delta^n, N(\mathbb{C})) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, N(\mathbb{C})^{\Delta^n}) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, N([n], \mathbb{C})) \\ &\cong \text{Fun}(\tau_1 X, [n], \mathbb{C}) \\ &\cong \text{Fun}(\tau_1 X \times [n], \mathbb{C}) \\ &\cong \text{Fun}(\tau_1 X \times \tau_1 \Delta^n, \mathbb{C}) \end{aligned}$$

The claim follows by the Yoneda lemma. ■

**I.2.3** DEFINITION. The **fundamental category** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the small category  $\tau_1 X$ .

**I.2.4** REMARK. Given a simplicial set  $X$ , the fundamental category  $\tau_1 X$  admits the following presentation by generators and relations: the objects are the vertices of  $X$ , and the arrows are generated by the edges of  $X$ , modulo the relation  $d_0(\alpha) \bullet d_2(\alpha) = d_1(\alpha)$  for all 2-simplices  $\alpha$  in  $X$ . This shows that  $\tau_1 X$  is stable under universe enlargement.

**I.2.5** DEFINITION. A **strongly finite category** is a category  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is a finite simplicial set.

**I.2.6** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a strongly finite category.
- (ii)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a finite category and the only endomorphisms and isomorphisms in  $\mathbb{C}$  are the identities.
- (iii)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a finite category and the only directed cycles (considered as a directed graph) are trivial.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). It is clear that strongly finite categories are finite. Moreover, if  $e : a \rightarrow a$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathbb{C}$ , then

$$a \xrightarrow{e} a \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow a \xrightarrow{e} a$$

defines an  $n$ -simplex in  $N(\mathbb{C})$  which is degenerate if and only if  $e = \text{id}_a$ . Thus, if  $\mathbb{C}$  is strongly finite, then every endomorphism in  $\mathbb{C}$  must be an identity morphism. A similar argument shows that the only isomorphisms in  $\mathbb{C}$  are the identity morphisms.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Consider a directed cycle in  $\mathbb{C}$ , say:

$$c_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} c_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow c_{n-1} \xrightarrow{f_n} c_0$$

Then  $f_n \circ \cdots \circ f_1 = \text{id}_{c_0}$  and  $f_1 \circ f_n \circ \cdots \circ f_2 = \text{id}_{c_1}$  by the hypothesis on endomorphisms, so  $c_0 = c_1$  and  $f_1 = \text{id}_{c_0}$  by the hypothesis on isomorphisms. By induction, we deduce that  $c_0 = \cdots = c_n$  and  $f_1 = \cdots = f_n = \text{id}_{c_0}$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Consider an  $n$ -simplex of  $N(\mathbb{C})$ , say:

$$c_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} c_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow c_{n-1} \xrightarrow{f_n} c_n$$

For  $0 \leq i < j \leq n$ , if  $c_i = c_j$ , then  $c_i = \cdots = c_j$  and  $f_{i+1} = \cdots = f_j = \text{id}_{c_i}$  by the hypothesis on directed cycles. As  $\mathbb{C}$  has only finitely many objects, this implies that there is a natural number  $N$  such that all  $n$ -simplices of  $N(\mathbb{C})$  are degenerate for  $n > N$ , and since  $\mathbb{C}$  has only finitely many morphisms, it follows that  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is a finite simplicial set.  $\blacksquare$

**1.2.7** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small preorder category. The following are equivalent:*

(i)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a strongly finite category.

(ii)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a finite poset.  $\blacksquare$

**1.2.8** REMARK. If  $X$  is a finite simplicial set, then  $\tau_1 X$  is an  $\aleph_0$ -compact category, by the accessible adjoint functor theorem (0.2.50) and proposition 1.1.21. However,  $\tau_1 X$  fails to be a finite category in general.

**1.2.9** DEFINITION. An **inner horn** is a simplicial subset of the form  $\Lambda_k^n \subseteq \Delta^n$ , where  $n \geq 2$  and  $0 < k < n$ , where  $\Lambda_k^n$  is the union of the faces of  $\Delta^n$  that include the  $k$ -th vertex. (See also definition 1.3.26.)

**1.2.10** LEMMA. *If  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is an inner horn inclusion, then its image under  $\tau_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* By the Yoneda lemma and [proposition 1.2.2](#), it suffices to verify that the induced maps

$$\mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, \mathbf{N}(\mathbb{C})) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}(\Lambda_k^n, \mathbf{N}(\mathbb{C}))$$

are bijections for all small categories  $\mathbb{C}$ . The claim is clear for  $n = 2$ : this is simply the assertion that for any morphisms  $f : x \rightarrow y$  and  $g : y \rightarrow z$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , there is *unique* commutative diagram in  $\mathbb{C}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & y & \\ f \nearrow & & \searrow g \\ x & \dashrightarrow & z \end{array}$$

More generally, we observe that a morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \mathbf{N}(\mathbb{C})$  is the same thing as a composable sequence of morphisms in  $\mathbb{C}$  of length  $n$ , so the claim for  $n > 2$  follows by an inductive argument. ■

**1.2.11** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor defined by the formula*

$$(\text{disc } Y)_n = Y$$

*with  $\text{id}_Y$  for all the face and degeneracy maps.*

- (i)  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a left adjoint  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  such that  $\pi_0 \Delta^n = 1$ .
- (ii) The functor  $\text{disc}$  is fully faithful and exhibits  $\mathbf{Set}$  as a reflective subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (iii) The functor  $\pi_0$  preserves products.
- (iv)  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a cartesian closed functor.

*Proof.* (i). We could apply [theorem 1.1.16](#), but it is also fairly straightforward to check that this explicit construction works: for each simplicial set  $X$ , we define  $\pi_0 X$  by the coequaliser diagram in  $\mathbf{Set}$  shown below,

$$X_1 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{d_0} \\ \xrightarrow{d_1} \end{array} X_0 \longrightarrow \pi_0 X$$

and for each morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , we define  $\pi_0 f$  to be the unique morphism making the evident diagram commute.

(ii). It is clear that  $\text{disc}$  is fully faithful.

(iii). By [remark A.5.35](#),  $\Delta^{\text{op}}$  is a sifted category, and  $\pi_0 \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$ , so we may apply [theorem A.5.36](#).

(iv). Use [proposition A.2.13](#). ■

**1.2.12** DEFINITION. The **set of connected components** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the set  $\pi_0 X$ , and a **discrete simplicial set** is one that is isomorphic to  $\text{disc } Y$  for some set  $Y$ .

**1.2.13** ¶ We will usually not distinguish between  $Y$  and  $\text{disc } Y$  notationally.

**1.2.14** PROPOSITION. Let  $N : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor defined by the formula

$$N(\mathbb{G})_n = \text{Fun}(\mathbf{I}[n], \mathbb{G})$$

where  $\mathbf{I}[n]$  here denotes the groupoid obtained by freely inverting the arrows in the preorder category  $[n]$ .

- (i) For any groupoid  $\mathbb{G}$ , the nerve  $N(\mathbb{G})$  is the same (up to isomorphism) whether computed for  $\mathbb{G}$  as a groupoid or  $\mathbb{G}$  as a category.
- (ii)  $N : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a left adjoint  $\pi_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$  such that  $\pi_1 \Delta^n = \mathbf{I}[n]$ .
- (iii) The functor  $N$  is fully faithful and exhibits  $\mathbf{Grpd}$  as a reflective subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (iv)  $N : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a cartesian closed functor.
- (v) The functor  $\pi_1$  preserves finite products.

*Proof.* (i). By the universal property of  $\mathbf{I}[n]$ , there is a natural bijection

$$\text{Fun}(\mathbf{I}[n], \mathbb{G}) \cong \text{Fun}([n], \mathbb{G})$$

for all groupoids  $\mathbb{G}$ , so the two nerve constructions do indeed agree.

(ii) and (iii). These are proven in exactly the same way as in [proposition 1.2.2](#).

(iv) and (v). These are proven in exactly the same way as in [proposition 1.2.11](#). ■

**I.2.I5** DEFINITION. The **fundamental groupoid** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the small groupoid  $\pi_1 X$ .

**I.2.I6** REMARK. Given a simplicial set  $X$ , the fundamental groupoid  $\pi_1 X$  admits a presentation of the same kind as the fundamental category  $\tau_1 X$ , and in fact  $\pi_1 X$  is isomorphic to the groupoid obtained by freely inverting the arrows in  $\tau_1 X$ :

$$\mathrm{Fun}(\pi_1 X, \mathbb{G}) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, N(\mathbb{G})) \cong \mathrm{Fun}(\tau_1 X, \mathbb{G})$$

This shows that  $\pi_1 X$  is stable under universe enlargement.

**I.2.I7** DEFINITION. Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $\Delta_{\leq n}$  be the full subcategory of  $\Delta$  spanned by the objects  $[0], \dots, [n]$ . An  **$n$ -truncated simplicial set** is a functor  $\Delta_{\leq n}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , and we write  $\mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n}$  for the category of  $n$ -truncated simplicial sets. The **brutal  $n$ -truncation** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the  $n$ -truncated simplicial set  $X_{\leq n}$  defined by the evident reduct:

$$X_{\leq n}([m]) = X([m])$$

**I.2.I8** PROPOSITION. Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $j : \Delta_{\leq n} \rightarrow \Delta$  be the inclusion.

- (i) The functor  $j^* : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n}$  has a left adjoint  $\mathrm{Lan}_j : \mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (ii) The unit  $\mathrm{id} \Rightarrow j^* \mathrm{Lan}_j$  is a natural isomorphism.
- (iii)  $\mathrm{Lan}_j : \mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a fully faithful functor.
- (i') The functor  $j^* : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n}$  has a right adjoint  $\mathrm{Ran}_j : \mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (ii') The counit  $j^* \mathrm{Ran}_j \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}$  is a natural isomorphism.
- (iii')  $\mathrm{Ran}_j : \mathbf{sSet}_{\leq n} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a fully faithful functor.

*Proof.* (i) and (i'). Use [theorem A.5.15](#).

(ii) and (ii'). The inclusion  $j : \Delta_{\leq n} \rightarrow \Delta$  is fully faithful, so the unit  $\mathrm{id} \Rightarrow j^* \mathrm{Lan}_j$  and the counit  $j^* \mathrm{Ran}_j \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}$  are natural isomorphisms, by [corollary A.5.19](#).

(iii) and (iii'). Use [proposition A.1.3](#). ■



**1.2.19** DEFINITION. For each natural number  $n$ , with notation as above, let  $\text{sk}_n : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the composite  $\text{Lan}_j j^*$ , and let  $\text{cosk}_n : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the composite  $\text{Ran}_j j^*$ .

- The  **$n$ -skeleton** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the simplicial set  $\text{sk}_n(X)$ .
- The  **$n$ -coskeleton** of a simplicial set is the simplicial set  $\text{cosk}_n(X)$ .
- An  **$n$ -skeletal simplicial set** is one that is isomorphic to the  $n$ -skeleton of some simplicial set.
- An  **$n$ -coskeletal simplicial set** is one that is isomorphic to the  $n$ -coskeleton of some simplicial set.

**1.2.20** REMARK. In the special case  $n = 0$ ,  $\text{Lan}_j$  may be identified with the functor  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  defined in [proposition 1.2.11](#). Thus, 0-skeletal simplicial sets are precisely the discrete simplicial sets. On the other hand, given a set  $X$ ,  $\text{Ran}_j X$  can be identified with the simplicial set whose  $m$ -simplices are  $(m + 1)$ -tuples of elements of  $X$ , with face and degeneracy maps induced by the appropriate projections.

**1.2.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $n$  be a natural number.*

- (i) *The full subcategory of  $n$ -skeletal simplicial sets is a coreflective subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , with coreflector  $\text{sk}_n$ .*
- (ii)  *$\text{sk}_n$  is the underlying endofunctor of an idempotent comonad on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*
- (iii) *A simplicial set  $X$  is  $n$ -skeletal if and only if the counit  $\text{sk}_n(X) \rightarrow X$  is an isomorphism.*
- (iv) *If  $m \geq n$ , then any  $n$ -skeletal simplicial set is also  $m$ -skeletal.*
- (i') *The full subcategory of  $n$ -coskeletal simplicial sets is a reflective subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , with reflector  $\text{cosk}_n$ .*
- (ii')  *$\text{cosk}_n$  is the underlying endofunctor of an idempotent monad on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*
- (iii') *A simplicial set  $X$  is  $n$ -coskeletal if and only if the unit  $X \rightarrow \text{cosk}_n(X)$  is an isomorphism.*
- (iv') *If  $m \geq n$ , then any  $n$ -coskeletal simplicial set is also  $m$ -coskeletal.*

*Proof.* All straightforward from the definitions. ◆

**I.2.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $X$  be a simplicial set.*

(i) *We have the following adjunction:*

$$\mathrm{sk}_n \dashv \mathrm{cosk}_n : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

(ii) *The counit  $\mathrm{sk}_n(X) \rightarrow X$  is a monomorphism, and  $X$  is  $n$ -skeletal if and only if all  $m$ -simplices of  $X$  are degenerate for  $m > n$ .*

(iii)  *$X$  is  $n$ -coskeletal if and only if, for all natural numbers  $m$ , the map*

$$X_m \cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^m, X) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}(\mathrm{sk}_n(\Delta^m), X)$$

*induced by the counit  $\mathrm{sk}_n(\Delta^m) \rightarrow \Delta^m$  is a bijection.*

*Proof.* (i). Immediate from the definition of  $\mathrm{sk}_n$  and  $\mathrm{cosk}_n$ .

(ii). The most straightforward way of seeing this is to construct  $\mathrm{sk}_n(X)$  explicitly as the smallest simplicial subset of  $X$  containing all of its  $n$ -simplices.

(iii). Apply the Yoneda lemma in conjunction with claim (i). ■

**I.2.23** COROLLARY. *For any small category  $\mathbb{C}$ , the nerve  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is a 2-coskeletal simplicial set.*

*Proof.* By definition, an  $m$ -simplex of  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is just a functor  $[m] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , but the property of being a functor can be detected by only inspecting the vertices, edges, and 2-cells; thus, the claim follows as an application of [proposition 1.2.22](#). ■

**I.2.24** PROPOSITION. *The following full subcategories are exponential ideals of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :*

- (i) *Discrete simplicial sets.*
- (ii) *Simplicial sets isomorphic to the nerve of some category.*
- (iii) *Simplicial sets isomorphic to the nerve of some groupoid.*
- (iv)  *$n$ -coskeletal simplicial sets for some natural number  $n$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.2.13](#) to propositions [1.2.11](#), [1.2.2](#), [1.2.14](#), and [1.2.21](#). ■

**I.2.25** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be a simplicial set.

- We say  $X$  has **free degeneracies** if every face of every non-degenerate simplex of  $X$  is a non-degenerate simplex.
- We say  $X$  is **locally polyhedral** if, for every natural number  $n$ , every morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow X$  corresponding to a non-degenerate  $n$ -simplex of  $X$  is a monomorphism.
- We say  $X$  is **concrete** if the unit  $X \rightarrow \text{cosk}_0(X)$  is a monomorphism.
- We say  $X$  is **polyhedral** if there exist a poset  $P$  and a monomorphism  $X \rightarrow N(P)$ .

**I.2.26** REMARK. The four properties defined above are inherited by simplicial subsets.

**I.2.27** EXAMPLE. For every natural number  $n$ , the standard simplex  $\Delta^n$  is a polyhedral simplicial set.

**I.2.28** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $X$  has free degeneracies.
- (ii) *Let  $X'$  be the semisimplicial subset of non-degenerate simplices of  $X$ . Then the inclusion  $X' \hookrightarrow X$  (of semisimplicial sets) exhibits  $X$  as the left Kan extension of  $X'$  along the inclusion  $\Delta_{\rightarrow} \hookrightarrow \Delta$ .*
- (iii) *There exist a semisimplicial set  $X'$  and a morphism  $X' \rightarrow X$  (of semisimplicial sets) exhibiting  $X$  as the left Kan extension of  $X'$  along the inclusion  $\Delta_{\rightarrow} \hookrightarrow \Delta$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Since  $X$  has free degeneracies,  $X'$  is a well-defined semisimplicial subset of  $X$ . We may then apply [proposition I.1.12](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). It is not hard to see that any simplicial set obtained by left Kan extension of a semisimplicial set along the inclusion  $\Delta_{\rightarrow} \hookrightarrow \Delta$  must have free degeneracies. ■

**I.2.29** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- (i)  $N(\mathbb{C})$  has free degeneracies if and only if  $\mathbb{C}$  has the following property: for any morphisms  $f : a \rightarrow b$  and  $g : b \rightarrow a$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , if  $g \circ f = \text{id}_a$ , then  $a = b$  and  $f = g = \text{id}_a$ .
- (ii)  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is locally polyhedral if and only if the only endomorphisms and isomorphisms in  $\mathbb{C}$  are the identities.
- (iii)  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is concrete if and only if  $\mathbb{C}$  is a preorder, i.e. for any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : a \rightarrow b$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , we have  $f_0 = f_1$ .
- (iv)  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is polyhedral if and only if  $\mathbb{C}$  is a poset, i.e.  $\mathbb{C}$  is a preorder and the only isomorphisms are the identities.

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**I.2.30** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a strongly finite category.
- (ii)  $\mathbb{C}$  is a finite category and  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is locally polyhedral.

*Proof.* Combine lemma 1.2.6 and proposition 1.2.29. ■

**I.2.31** PROPOSITION.

- (i) Polyhedral simplicial sets are concrete.
- (ii) Concrete simplicial sets are locally polyhedral.
- (iii) Locally polyhedral simplicial sets have free degeneracies.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $X$  be a polyhedral simplicial set. By definition, there exist a poset  $P$  and a monomorphism  $X \rightarrow N(P)$ ; and by replacing  $P$  with a subposet if necessary, we may assume that  $X \rightarrow N(P)$  is bijective on vertices. We then have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \text{cosk}_0(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ N(P) & \longrightarrow & \text{cosk}_0(N(P)) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the adjunction units. Since  $X \rightarrow N(P)$  is bijective on vertices, the induced morphism  $\text{cosk}_0(X) \rightarrow \text{cosk}_0(P)$  is an isomorphism. Thus, it suffices to verify that  $N(P) \rightarrow \text{cosk}_0(N(P))$  is a monomorphism, but this is straightforward.

(ii). It suffices to show that nerves of posets are locally polyhedral, which was done in [proposition 1.2.29](#).

(iii). It is clear that  $\Delta^n$  has free degeneracies, so the same is true of any locally polyhedral simplicial set. ■

**1.2.32** DEFINITION. The **boundary** of  $\Delta^n$  is the simplicial subset  $\partial\Delta^n \subseteq \Delta^n$  generated by the images of  $\delta_n^0, \dots, \delta_n^n : \Delta^{n-1} \rightarrow \Delta^n$ .

**1.2.33** REMARK. The boundary  $\partial\Delta^n$  may be identified with  $\text{sk}_{n-1}\Delta^n$ .

**1.2.34** PROPOSITION (Relative skeletal filtration). *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a monomorphism in **sSet**. There exist simplicial sets  $Y^{(0)}, Y^{(1)}, Y^{(2)}, \dots$  and a chain of monomorphisms*

$$X = Y^{(-1)} \xrightarrow{i^{(0)}} Y^{(0)} \xrightarrow{i^{(1)}} Y^{(1)} \xrightarrow{i^{(2)}} Y^{(2)} \longrightarrow \dots$$

*such that the following conditions are satisfied:*

- *There is a colimiting cocone from the above chain to  $Y$  where the component  $Y^{(-1)} \rightarrow Y$  is  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ .*
- *For each natural number  $n$ , there is a pushout diagram of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} I_n \odot \partial\Delta^n & \hookrightarrow & I_n \odot \Delta^n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y^{(n-1)} & \xrightarrow{i^{(n)}} & Y^{(n)} \end{array}$$

*where  $I_n \subseteq Y_n$  is the set of non-degenerate  $n$ -simplices of  $Y$  that are not in the image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $I_n \odot \partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow I_n \odot \Delta^n$  is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , and  $I_n \odot \Delta^n \rightarrow Y^{(n)}$  is the tautological morphism induced by the inclusion  $I_n \hookrightarrow Y_n$ .*

*In particular, if  $Y$  is a finite simplicial set, then there is a natural number  $d$  such that  $i^{(n)} : Y^{(n-1)} \rightarrow Y^{(n)}$  is an isomorphism for all  $n > d$ .*

*Proof.* We may assume without loss of generality that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is the inclusion of a simplicial subset of  $Y$ . Let  $Y^{(n)}$  be the union of  $X$  and the image of  $\text{count}_n(Y) \rightarrow Y$ , i.e. the smallest simplicial subset of  $Y$  containing  $X$  and all the  $n$ -simplices of  $Y$ , and let  $i^{(n)} : Y^{(n-1)} \rightarrow Y^{(n)}$  be the inclusion. Then  $I_n$  is precisely the set of  $n$ -simplices of  $Y^{(n)}$  that are *not* in  $Y^{(n-1)}$ , so we have the desired pushout diagram for each  $n$ . It is clear that the inclusions  $Y^{(n-1)} \hookrightarrow Y$  define the required colimiting cocone. ■

In the language of §0.5, what we have shown is that every monomorphism in **sSet** is a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex, where  $\mathcal{I} = \{\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \mid n \geq 0\}$ . Since the class of monomorphisms is closed under retracts, the following definition is justified:

**I.2.35** DEFINITION. A **cofibration of simplicial sets** is a monomorphism in **sSet**.

**I.2.36** REMARK. Cofibrations of simplicial sets have a homotopy extension property, albeit one that is weaker than what one might expect from the homotopy theory of topological spaces: see [theorem 1.3.27](#).

## I.3 Intrinsic homotopy

**Prerequisites.** §§ I.2, 3.I, A.4.

**I.3.1** **DEFINITION.** Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in **sSet**. An **intrinsic homotopy**  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  is an edge of the exponential object  $[X, Y]$  such that  $d_1(\alpha) = f_0$  and  $d_0(\alpha) = f_1$ . (Note the subscripts!) We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **intrinsically homotopic** if there is a zigzag of intrinsic homotopies connecting  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ , and we write  $f_0 \sim f_1$  in this case.

**I.3.2** **REMARK.** By the Yoneda lemma,

$$[X, Y]_1 \cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^1, [X, Y]) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^1 \times X, Y)$$

so an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  is essentially the same thing as a morphism  $\tilde{\alpha} : \Delta^1 \times X \rightarrow Y$  such that  $\tilde{\alpha} \circ (\delta^1 \times \text{id}_X) = f_0$  and  $\tilde{\alpha} \circ (\delta^0 \times \text{id}_X) = f_1$  (where we have suppressed the canonical isomorphism  $X \cong \Delta^0 \times X$ ), just as in classical homotopy theory. Also,

$$\mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^1 \times X, Y) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, [\Delta^1, Y])$$

so intrinsic homotopies  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  correspond to morphisms  $\hat{\alpha} : X \rightarrow [\Delta^1, Y]$  such that  $[\delta^1, Y] \circ \hat{\alpha} = f_0$  and  $[\delta^0, Y] \circ \hat{\alpha} = f_1$  (where we have suppressed the canonical isomorphism  $[\Delta^0, Y] \cong Y$ ).

**I.3.3** **REMARK.** The notion of intrinsic homotopy is not well behaved for general simplicial sets  $Y$ . For example, the existence of an intrinsic homotopy  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  does not guarantee the existence of an “inverse” intrinsic homotopy  $f_1 \Rightarrow f_0$ , and even if we have intrinsic homotopies  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  and  $f_1 \Rightarrow f_2$ , there need not be an intrinsic homotopy  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_2$ .

**I.3.4** **¶** Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms and let  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  be an intrinsic homotopy.

- Given a morphism  $g : W \rightarrow X$ , the intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha g : f_0 \circ g \Rightarrow f_1 \circ g$  is the image of  $\alpha$  under the induced morphism  $[g, Y] : [X, Y] \rightarrow [W, X]$ .
- Given a morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , the intrinsic homotopy  $g\alpha : g \circ f_0 \Rightarrow g \circ f_1$  is the image of  $\alpha$  under the induced morphism  $[X, g] : [X, Y] \rightarrow [X, Z]$ .

**I.3.5** LEMMA. *The relation of intrinsic homotopy is a congruence on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , i.e. given morphisms  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g_0, g_1 : Y \rightarrow Z$ , if  $f_0 \sim f_1$  and  $g_0 \sim g_1$ , then  $g_0 \circ f_0 \sim g_1 \circ f_1$ . ■*

**I.3.6** DEFINITION. The **intrinsic homotopy category of simplicial sets** is the category  $\mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$  obtained by taking the quotient of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  with respect to the congruence of intrinsic homotopy.

**I.3.7** REMARK. A parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  are intrinsically homotopic if and only if they are in the same connected component of  $[X, Y]$ . In particular, we have a bijection of the form below,

$$\mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}(X, Y) \cong \pi_0[X, Y]$$

and it is natural as  $X$  and  $Y$  vary in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

**I.3.8** REMARK. The set  $\pi_0[X, Y]$  can be very far from what one expects geometrically. For instance,  $\pi_0[\partial\Delta^2, \partial\Delta^2]$  contains only two elements, while the set of homotopy classes of continuous endomaps of the circle is countably infinite!

**I.3.9** LEMMA. *Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . Given an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ , for each simplicial set  $Z$ , there is an induced intrinsic homotopy  $[\alpha, Z] : [f_0, Z] \Rightarrow [f_1, Z]$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{\alpha} : \Delta^1 \times X \rightarrow Y$  be the morphism corresponding to  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ . Then we have a morphism  $[\tilde{\alpha}, Z] : [Y, Z] \rightarrow [\Delta^1 \times X, Z]$ . [Proposition A.2.11](#) says there is a natural isomorphism

$$[\Delta^1 \times X, Z] \cong [\Delta^1, [X, Z]]$$

so  $[\tilde{\alpha}, Z]$  corresponds to an intrinsic homotopy  $[\alpha, Z]$  between two morphisms of type  $[Y, Z] \rightarrow [X, Z]$ ; it is not hard to check that it is an intrinsic homotopy of type  $[f_0, Z] \Rightarrow [f_1, Z]$ . ■

**I.3.10** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set, let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a small category, let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow \mathbf{N}(\mathbb{D})$  be a parallel pair of morphisms, and let  $F_0, F_1 : \tau_1 X \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be their left adjoint transposes. Then there is a natural bijection between intrinsic homotopies  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  and natural transformations  $F_0 \Rightarrow F_1$ .*

*Proof.* Propositions [1.2.2](#) and [A.2.13](#) give a natural isomorphism  $[X, \mathbf{N}(\mathbb{D})] \cong \mathbf{N}([\tau_1 X, \mathbb{D}])$ , and the claim is an immediate consequence. ■



**I.3.II** COROLLARY. *If  $F \dashv G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is an adjunction of small categories, then the induced morphisms in  $\mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$  are mutually inverse.* ■

**I.3.I2** DEFINITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

- An **intrinsic homotopy left inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $g \circ f$  and  $\mathrm{id}_X$  are intrinsically homotopic.
- An **intrinsic homotopy right inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $f \circ g$  and  $\mathrm{id}_Y$  are intrinsically homotopic.

**I.3.I3** DEFINITION. An **intrinsic homotopy equivalence** in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a pair  $(f, g)$  where  $g$  (resp.  $f$ ) is both an intrinsic homotopy left inverse and an intrinsic homotopy right inverse for  $f$  (resp.  $g$ ).

**I.3.I4** REMARK. The pair  $(\sigma_0^0, \delta_1^0)$  is an intrinsic homotopy equivalence between the standard simplices  $\Delta^0$  and  $\Delta^1$ . Multiplying by  $\mathrm{id}_X$ , we deduce that  $X$  and  $\Delta^1 \times X$  are naturally isomorphic in  $\mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$ .

**I.3.I5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\gamma : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor that sends each morphism to its intrinsic homotopy class. For any functor  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $F(\delta_1^0 \times \mathrm{id}_X) : F(\Delta^0 \times X) \rightarrow F(\Delta^1 \times X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $F(\delta_1^1 \times \mathrm{id}_X) : F(\Delta^0 \times X) \rightarrow F(\Delta^1 \times X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iii) *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $F(\sigma_0^0 \times \mathrm{id}_X) : F(\Delta^1 \times X) \rightarrow F(\Delta^0 \times X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iv) *For all parallel pairs  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , if  $f_0 \sim f_1$ , then  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ .*
- (v)  *$F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  factors through  $\gamma : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$ .*

*Moreover, the factorisation is unique if it exists.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii), (ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Let  $e \in \{0, 1\}$ . The simplicial identity  $\sigma_0^0 \circ \delta_1^e = \mathrm{id}$  implies that  $F(\sigma_0^0 \times \mathrm{id}_X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $F(\delta_1^e \times \mathrm{id}_X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). It suffices to show that  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$  whenever there is an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ , where  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  are an arbitrary parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . Let  $\tilde{\alpha} : \Delta^1 \times X \rightarrow Y$  be the morphism corresponding to  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ . Since  $F(\sigma_0^0 \times \text{id}_X)$  is an isomorphism, the uniqueness of inverses implies  $F(\delta_1^0 \times \text{id}_X) = F(\delta_1^1 \times \text{id}_X)$ ; so, suppressing the canonical isomorphism  $\Delta^0 \times X \cong X$ , we obtain the required equation:

$$Ff_0 = F\tilde{\alpha} \circ F(\delta_1^1 \times \text{id}_X) = F\tilde{\alpha} \circ F(\delta_1^0 \times \text{id}_X) = Ff_1$$

(iv)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (v). This is the universal property of the quotient by the congruence of intrinsic homotopy.

(v)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Since  $\sigma_0^0 \times \text{id}_X : \Delta^1 \times X \rightarrow \Delta^0 \times X$  is (half of) an intrinsic homotopy equivalence,  $\gamma(\sigma_0^0 \times \text{id}_X)$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$ . Hence, if the functor  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  factors through  $\gamma : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $F(\sigma_0^0 \times \text{id}_X)$  must be an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**1.3.16** COROLLARY. The functor  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  factors through  $\gamma : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$ .

*Proof.* By [proposition 1.2.11](#),  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products; but  $\pi_0 \Delta^1 \cong \pi_0 \Delta^0 \cong 1$ , so  $\pi_0(\sigma_0^0 \times \text{id}_X) : \pi_0(\Delta^1 \times X) \rightarrow \pi_0(\Delta^0 \times X)$  is a bijection for any simplicial set  $X$ .  $\blacksquare$

**1.3.17** DEFINITION. A **contractible simplicial set** is a simplicial set that is isomorphic to  $\Delta^0$  in  $\text{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$ .

**1.3.18** EXAMPLE. It is not hard to verify that each  $\Delta^n$  is a contractible simplicial set: indeed, we may apply [corollary 1.3.11](#).

**1.3.19** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be a simplicial set.

- The **left cone** on  $X$  is the simplicial set  $X^{\triangleleft}$  defined by the following push-out diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta^0 \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta^0 \\ \delta^1 \times \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^1 \times X & \longrightarrow & X^{\triangleleft} \end{array}$$

The **cone point** of  $X^{\triangleleft}$  is the vertex corresponding to the right vertical arrow in the diagram above.

- The **right cone** on  $X$  is the simplicial set  $X^\triangleright$  defined by the following pushout diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta^0 \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta^0 \\ \delta^0 \times \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^1 \times X & \longrightarrow & X^\triangleright \end{array}$$

The **cone point** of  $X^\triangleright$  is the vertex corresponding to the right vertical arrow in the diagram above.

**1.3.20 LEMMA.** *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set.*

- *The left cone  $X^\triangleleft$  is a contractible simplicial set.*
- *The right cone  $X^\triangleright$  is a contractible simplicial set.*

*Proof.* The proofs of the two claims are similar; we will prove the first version.

Let  $c : \Delta^0 \rightarrow X^\triangleleft$  be the morphism corresponding to the cone point of  $X^\triangleleft$  and let  $p : X^\triangleleft \rightarrow \Delta^0$  be the unique morphism. Clearly,  $p \circ c = \text{id}_{\Delta^0}$ . We will now construct an intrinsic homotopy  $c \circ p \Rightarrow \text{id}_{X^\triangleleft}$ . Since  $\Delta^1 \times (-) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves colimits, the following diagram is a pushout diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta^1 \times \Delta^0 \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta^1 \times \Delta^0 \\ \text{id}_{\Delta^1} \times \delta^1 \times \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\Delta^1} \times c \\ \Delta^1 \times \Delta^1 \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta^1 \times X^\triangleleft \end{array}$$

Let  $\mu : \Delta^1 \times \Delta^1 \rightarrow \Delta^1$  be the morphism defined by sending the vertex  $(a, b)$  to  $\min\{a, b\}$ . There is then a unique morphism  $H : \Delta^1 \times X^\triangleleft \rightarrow X^\triangleleft$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Delta^1 \times \Delta^0 \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta^1 \times \Delta^0 & & \\ \text{id}_{\Delta^1} \times \delta^1 \times \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\Delta^1} \times c & \searrow & \\ \Delta^1 \times \Delta^1 \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta^1 \times X^\triangleleft & \xrightarrow{H} & \Delta^0 \\ & \searrow \mu \times \text{id}_X & & \swarrow & \downarrow c \\ & & \Delta^1 \times X & \longrightarrow & X^\triangleleft \end{array}$$

and it is straightforward to see that  $H \circ (\delta^1 \times \text{id}_{X^\triangleleft})$  can be identified with  $c \circ p$ , while  $H \circ (\delta^0 \times \text{id}_{X^\triangleleft})$  can be identified with  $\text{id}_{X^\triangleleft}$ . This completes the proof. ■

**I.3.21** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be a simplicial set.

- A **forward contracting homotopy** for  $X$  consists of a set  $X_{-1}$  and maps  $r : X_0 \rightarrow X_{-1}$ ,  $s : X_{-1} \rightarrow X_0$ , and  $h^n : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1}$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r \circ d_1^1 &= r \circ d_0^1 \\
 r \circ s &= \text{id} \\
 d_0^1 \circ h^0 &= s \circ r \\
 d_1^1 \circ h^0 &= \text{id} \\
 d_i^{n+1} \circ h^n &= h^{n-1} \circ d_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 d_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n &= \text{id} \\
 h^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= s_i^{n+1} \circ h^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 h^{n+1} \circ h^n &= s_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n
 \end{aligned}$$

- A **backward contracting homotopy** for  $X$  consists of a set  $X_{-1}$  and maps  $r : X_0 \rightarrow X_{-1}$ ,  $s : X_{-1} \rightarrow X_0$ , and  $h^n : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1}$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r \circ d_1^1 &= r \circ d_0^1 \\
 r \circ s &= \text{id} \\
 d_0^1 \circ h^0 &= \text{id} \\
 d_1^1 \circ h^0 &= s \circ r \\
 d_0^{n+1} \circ h^n &= \text{id} \\
 d_{i+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n &= h^{n-1} \circ d_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 h^{n+1} \circ h^n &= s_0^{n+1} \circ h^n \\
 h^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= s_{i+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n
 \end{aligned}$$

**I.3.22** PROPOSITION. Let  $X$  be a simplicial set.

- Given a forward contracting homotopy for  $X$ , say  $r : X_0 \rightarrow X_{-1}$ ,  $s : X_{-1} \rightarrow X_0$ , and  $h^n : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1}$ , there are unique morphisms  $\tilde{r} : X \rightarrow \text{disc } X_{-1}$  and  $\tilde{s} : \text{disc } X_{-1} \rightarrow X$  defined in degree 0 by  $r$  and  $s$  respectively, and we have  $\tilde{r} \circ \tilde{s} = \text{id}_{\text{disc } X_{-1}}$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\text{id}_X \Rightarrow \tilde{s} \circ \tilde{r}$ ; moreover, the canonical map  $\pi_0 X \rightarrow X_{-1}$  is a bijection.

- Given a backward contracting homotopy for  $X$ , say  $r : X_0 \rightarrow X_{-1}$ ,  $s : X_{-1} \rightarrow X_0$ , and  $h^n : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1}$ , there are unique morphisms  $\tilde{r} : X \rightarrow \text{disc } X_{-1}$  and  $\tilde{s} : \text{disc } X_{-1} \rightarrow X$  defined in degree 0 by  $r$  and  $s$  respectively, and we have  $\tilde{r} \circ \tilde{s} = \text{id}_{\text{disc } X_{-1}}$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\tilde{s} \circ \tilde{r} \Rightarrow \text{id}_X$ ; moreover, the canonical map  $\pi_0 X \rightarrow X_{-1}$  is a bijection.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Observe that the definition implies that we have the following absolute co-equaliser diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1^1} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{r} & X_{-1} \\ & \searrow \scriptstyle d_0^1 & \swarrow \scriptstyle s & & \\ & & h^0 & & \end{array}$$

Thus, as remarked in the proof of [proposition 1.2.11](#),  $\pi_0 X \cong X_{-1}$ . As always, there is a unique morphism  $\tilde{s} : \text{disc } X_{-1} \rightarrow X$  whose degree 0 component is  $s : X_{-1} \rightarrow X_0$ , and the above observation ensures that there also exists a unique morphism  $\tilde{r} : X \rightarrow \text{disc } X_{-1}$  whose degree 0 component is  $r : X_0 \rightarrow X_{-1}$ .

Clearly,  $\tilde{r} \circ \tilde{s} = \text{id}_{\text{disc } X_{-1}}$ ; we must show that  $\tilde{s} \circ \tilde{r} \sim \text{id}_X$ . Let  $\chi_n^i : [n] \rightarrow [1]$  denote the map in  $\Delta$  defined below:

$$\chi_n^i(j) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } j < i \\ 1 & \text{if } j \geq i \end{cases}$$

It is not hard to see that  $\Delta([n], [1]) = \{\chi_n^i \mid 0 \leq i \leq n+1\}$ , and moreover we have the following identities:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \chi_{n+1}^i \circ \delta_{n+1}^j = \chi_n^i & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n+1 \\ \chi_{n+1}^j \circ \delta_{n+1}^i = \chi_n^{j-1} & \text{if } 0 \leq i < j \leq n+2 \\ \chi_n^i \circ \sigma_n^j = \chi_{n+1}^i & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n \\ \chi_n^j \circ \sigma_n^i = \chi_{n+1}^{j+1} & \text{if } 0 \leq i < j \leq n+1 \end{array}$$

We construct by recursion a sequence of maps  $H_n : X_n \times \Delta([n], [1]) \rightarrow X_n$ :

- For all  $x$  in  $X_0$ :

$$\begin{aligned} H_0(x, \chi_0^1) &= x \\ H_0(x, \chi_0^0) &= s(r(x)) \end{aligned}$$

- For each  $x$  in  $X_{n+1}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^{n+2}) &= x \\ H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^{n+1}) &= h^n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x)) \\ H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^j) &= s_n^n(H_n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j)) \quad \text{for } 0 \leq j \leq n \end{aligned}$$

It is straightforward to check that these equations hold,

$$d_0^1 \circ H_1 = H_0 \circ d_0^1 \quad d_1^1 \circ H_1 = H_0 \circ d_1^1 \quad s_0^0 \circ H_0 = H_1 \circ s_0^0$$

so we assume for induction that these identities hold for some  $n > 0$ :

$$\begin{aligned} d_i^k \circ H_k &= H_{k-1} \circ d_i^k & \text{for } 0 < k \leq n, 0 \leq i \leq k \\ s_i^k \circ H_k &= H_{k+1} \circ s_i^k & \text{for } 0 \leq k < n, 0 \leq i \leq k \end{aligned}$$

Then, for  $0 \leq i \leq n+1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} d_i^{n+1}(H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^{n+2})) &= d_i^{n+1}(x) \\ &= H_n(d_i^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^{n+1}) = H_n(d_i^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n+1}^{n+2} \circ \delta_{n+1}^i) \end{aligned}$$

and, for  $0 \leq i \leq n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} d_i^{n+1}(H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^{n+1})) &= d_i^{n+1}(h^n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x))) \\ &= h^{n-1}(d_i^n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x))) = h^{n-1}(d_n^n(d_i^{n+1}(x))) \\ &= H_n(d_i^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^n) = H_n(d_i^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^n \circ \delta_{n+1}^i) \end{aligned}$$

while, for  $i = n+1$ :

$$\begin{aligned} d_{n+1}^{n+1}(H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^{n+1})) &= d_{n+1}^{n+1}(h^n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x))) \\ &= d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x) = H_n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^{n+1}) = H_n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ \delta_{n+1}^{n+1}) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, for  $0 \leq j < n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} d_{n+1}^{n+1}(H_{n+1}(x, \chi_{n+1}^j)) &= d_{n+1}^{n+1}(s_n^n(H_n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j))) \\ &= H_n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j) H_n(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n+1}^j \circ \delta_{n+1}^{n+1}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 d_n^{n+1}\left(H_{n+1}\left(x, \chi_{n+1}^j\right)\right) &= d_n^{n+1}\left(s_n^n\left(H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j\right)\right)\right) = H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j\right) \\
 &= s_{n-1}^{n-1}\left(H_{n-1}\left(d_n^n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n-1}^j\right)\right)\right) = s_{n-1}^{n-1}\left(H_{n-1}\left(d_n^n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n-1}^j\right)\right)\right) \\
 &= H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j\right) = H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n+1}^j \circ \delta_{n+1}^n\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

and for  $0 \leq i < n$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 d_i^{n+1}\left(H_{n+1}\left(x, \chi_{n+1}^j\right)\right) &= d_i^{n+1}\left(s_n^n\left(H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j\right)\right)\right) \\
 &= s_{n-1}^{n-1}\left(d_i^n\left(H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j\right)\right)\right) = s_{n-1}^{n-1}\left(H_{n-1}\left(d_i^n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j \circ \delta_n^i\right)\right)\right) \\
 &= s_{n-1}^{n-1}\left(H_{n-1}\left(d_n^n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}(x), \chi_n^j \circ \delta_n^i\right)\right)\right) = H_n\left(d_i^{n+1}(x), \chi_{n+1}^j \circ \delta_{n+1}^i\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, for  $0 \leq i \leq n$ ,

$$s_i^n\left(H_n\left(x, \chi_n^{n+1}\right)\right) = s_i^n(x) = H_{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x), \chi_{n+1}^{n+2}\right) = H_{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x), \chi_n^{n+1} \circ \sigma_n^i\right)$$

and for  $0 \leq i < n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_i^n\left(H_n\left(x, \chi_n^n\right)\right) &= s_i^n\left(h^{n-1}\left(d_n^n(x)\right)\right) \\
 &= h^n\left(s_i^{n-1}\left(d_n^n(x)\right)\right) = h^n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x)\right)\right) \\
 &= H_{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x), \chi_{n+1}^{n+1}\right) = H_{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x), \chi_n^n \circ \sigma_n^i\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

while for  $i = n$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_n^n\left(H_n\left(x, \chi_n^n\right)\right) &= s_n^n\left(H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}\left(s_n^n(x)\right), \chi_n^n\right)\right) \\
 &= H_{n+1}\left(s_n^n(x), \chi_{n+1}^n\right) = H_{n+1}\left(s_n^n(x), \chi_n^n \circ \sigma_n^n\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Finally, for  $0 \leq i \leq n$  and  $0 \leq j < n$ :

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_i^n\left(H_n\left(x, \chi_n^j\right)\right) &= s_i^n\left(s_{n-1}^{n-1}\left(H_{n-1}\left(d_n^n(x), \chi_{n-1}^j\right)\right)\right) \\
 &= s_i^n\left(s_i^{n-1}\left(H_{n-1}\left(d_n^n(x), \chi_{n-1}^j\right)\right)\right) = s_i^n\left(H_n\left(s_i^{n-1}\left(d_n^n(x)\right), \chi_{n-1}^j \circ \sigma_{n-1}^i\right)\right) \\
 &= s_i^n\left(H_n\left(d_{n+1}^{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x)\right), \chi_{n-1}^j \circ \sigma_{n-1}^i\right)\right) = H_{n+1}\left(s_i^n(x), \chi_n^j \circ \sigma_n^i\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

We therefore have a morphism  $H : X \times \Delta^1 \rightarrow X$  such that  $H \circ (\text{id}_X \times \delta_1^0) = \tilde{s} \circ \tilde{r}$  and  $H \circ (\text{id}_X \times \delta_1^1) = \text{id}_X$ . By [remark 1.3.2](#), this is the required intrinsic homotopy. ■

**I.3.23** COROLLARY. *A simplicial set  $X$  is contractible if the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow \Delta^0$  admits a forward or backward contracting homotopy.* ■

**I.3.24** DEFINITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in **sSet**.

- $f$  has the **forward homotopy lifting property** with respect to  $g$  if, for every commutative diagram of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z_0} & X \\ g \downarrow & \nearrow h_0 & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w_0} & Y \end{array}$$

given intrinsic homotopies  $\alpha : w_0 \Rightarrow w_1$  and  $\beta : z_0 \Rightarrow z_1$  such that  $\alpha g = f \beta$ , there exist a morphism  $h_1 : W \rightarrow X$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\gamma : h_0 \Rightarrow h_1$  such that  $f \circ h_1 = w_1$ ,  $h_1 \circ g = z_1$ ,  $f \gamma = \alpha$ , and  $\gamma g = \beta$ .

- $f$  has the **backward homotopy lifting property** with respect to  $g$  if, for every commutative diagram of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z_1} & X \\ g \downarrow & \nearrow h_1 & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w_1} & Y \end{array}$$

given intrinsic homotopies  $\alpha : w_0 \Rightarrow w_1$  and  $\beta : z_0 \Rightarrow z_1$  such that  $\alpha \circ \text{id}_g = \text{id}_f \circ \beta$ , there exist a morphism  $h_0 : W \rightarrow X$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\gamma : h_0 \Rightarrow h_1$  such that  $f \circ h_0 = w_0$ ,  $h_0 \circ g = z_0$ ,  $f \gamma = \alpha$ , and  $\gamma g = \beta$ .

- $f$  has the **intrinsic homotopy lifting property** with respect to  $g$  if  $f$  has *both* the forward and backward homotopy lifting properties with respect to  $g$ .
- $f$  has the **forward** (resp. **backward**, **intrinsic**) **homotopy lifting property** with respect to the object  $W$  if  $f$  has the forward (resp. backward, intrinsic) homotopy lifting property with respect to the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow W$ .
- $g$  has the **forward** (resp. **backward**, **intrinsic**) **homotopy extension property** with respect to  $f$  if  $f$  has the forward (resp. backward, intrinsic) homotopy lifting property with respect to  $g$ .



- $g$  has the **forward** (resp. **backward**, **intrinsic**) **homotopy extension property** with respect to the object  $X$  if  $g$  has the forward (resp. backward, intrinsic) homotopy extension property with respect to the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$ .

**I.3.25** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and suppose we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [W, X] & \xrightarrow{[g, X]} & [Z, X] \\
 \searrow \scriptstyle q & \downarrow \scriptstyle L(g, f) & \downarrow \scriptstyle [Z, f] \\
 & [W, Y] & \xrightarrow{[g, Y]} [Z, Y] \\
 \swarrow \scriptstyle [W, f] & & 
 \end{array}$$

where the square in the lower right is a pullback square. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $f$  has the forward homotopy lifting property with respect to  $g$ .
- (ii) The morphism  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(g, f)$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_0^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ .
- (iii) Suppose we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \Lambda_0^1 \times Z & \hookrightarrow & \Delta^1 \times Z \\
 \text{id}_{\Lambda_0^1} \times g \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \Lambda_0^1 \times W & \longrightarrow & V_0(g) \\
 & \searrow \scriptstyle j & \downarrow \scriptstyle \text{id}_{\Delta^1} \times g \\
 & & \Delta^1 \times W
 \end{array}$$

where the square in the upper left is a pushout square. Then the morphism  $j : V_0(g) \rightarrow \Delta^1 \times W$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ .

Symmetrically, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $f$  has the backward homotopy lifting property with respect to  $g$ .
- (ii') The morphism  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(g, f)$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ .

(iii') Suppose we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \Lambda_1^1 \times Z & \hookrightarrow & \Delta^1 \times Z \\
 \text{id}_{\Lambda_1^1} \times g \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \Lambda_1^1 \times W & \longrightarrow & V_1(g) \\
 & \searrow & \downarrow j \\
 & & \Delta^1 \times W
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A curved arrow labeled  $\text{id}_{\Delta^1} \times g$  goes from  $\Delta^1 \times Z$  to  $\Delta^1 \times W$ , and a curved arrow goes from  $\Lambda_1^1 \times W$  to  $\Delta^1 \times W$ .)

where the square in the upper left is a pushout square. Then the morphism  $j : V_1(g) \rightarrow \Delta^1 \times W$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ .

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 6.5.1](#): use [remark 1.3.2](#) and the exponential adjunction. ■

**1.3.26** DEFINITION. A **horn** is a simplicial subset of the form  $\Lambda_k^n \subseteq \Delta^n$ , where  $\Lambda_k^n$  is the union of the images of  $\delta_n^0, \dots, \delta_n^{k-1}, \delta_n^{k+1}, \dots, \delta_n^n : \Delta^{n-1} \rightarrow \Delta^n$  in **sSet**. In other words,  $\Lambda_k^n$  is the union of all the faces of  $\Delta^n$  that include the  $k$ -th vertex.

**1.3.27** THEOREM. Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in **sSet**. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  (for all  $n \geq 1$  and  $0 \leq k \leq n$ ).
- (ii)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the intrinsic homotopy lifting property with respect to the boundary inclusions  $\partial \Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  (for all  $n \geq 0$ ).
- (iii)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the intrinsic homotopy lifting property with respect to any monomorphism in **sSet**.

*Proof.* Combine [propositions 1.3.25](#) and [A.3.19](#) with either Theorem 2.1 in [\[GZ, Ch. IV\]](#) or Proposition 4.2 in [\[GJ, Ch. I\]](#). □

REMARK. The analogous theorem for cubical sets was announced as Theorem 2 in [\[Kan, 1955\]](#).

**1.3.28** REMARK. Let  $B^n$  be the closed unit ball in the euclidean space  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , let  $\partial B^n$  be its boundary, and let  $I$  be the closed unit interval  $[0, 1]$ . It is not hard to see that the inclusion  $B^n \times \{0\} \hookrightarrow B^n \times I$  is isomorphic to the inclusion  $B^n \times \{0\} \cup \partial B^n \times I \hookrightarrow B^n \times I$ . Thus, a continuous map  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the homotopy lifting property with respect to all  $B^n$  if and only if it has the homotopy lifting property with respect to all boundary inclusions  $\partial B^n \hookrightarrow B^n$ .

Unfortunately,  $\mathbf{sSet}$  does not have the analogous property. Indeed, for any simplicial set  $X$ , the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the intrinsic homotopy lifting property with respect to the  $n$ -simplices  $\Delta^n$ , but it need not have the intrinsic right lifting property with respect to all boundary inclusions  $\partial \Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .

**1.3.29** LEMMA. *Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*

- (i) *If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to the boundary inclusion  $\partial \Delta^0 \hookrightarrow \Delta^0$ , then  $p_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  is surjective.*
- (ii) *If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to the boundary inclusions  $\partial \Delta^0 \hookrightarrow \Delta^0$  and  $\partial \Delta^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ , then  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the intrinsic homotopy lifting property with respect to  $\Delta^0$ , and  $\pi_0 p : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a bijection.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $y$  be a vertex of  $Y$ . Then the right lifting property of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  with respect to the boundary inclusion  $\partial \Delta^0 \hookrightarrow \Delta^0$  yields a vertex  $x$  of  $X$  such that  $p_0(x) = y$ , as required.

(ii). By [proposition 1.3.25](#),  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the intrinsic homotopy lifting property with respect to  $\Delta^0$  if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_0^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  and  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ . Since  $\Delta^1$  is 1-skeletal, we may apply [propositions 1.2.34](#) and [A.3.19](#) to deduce that  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  does indeed have the aforementioned right lifting properties.

It remains to be shown that  $\pi_0 : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a bijection. We already know that  $\pi_0 p : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a surjection, so it suffices to show that it is also injective. Let  $x_0$  and  $x_1$  be vertices of  $X$  such that  $y_0 = p(x_0)$  and  $y_1 = p(x_1)$  are in the same connected component. We proceed by induction on the length of the shortest path (i.e. zigzag of edges) in  $Y$  connecting  $y_0$  and  $y_1$ .

If  $y_0$  and  $y_1$  are connected by an edge of  $Y$ , then we may use the right lifting property of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  with respect to the boundary inclusion  $\partial \Delta^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  to find an edge of  $X$  connecting  $x_0$  and  $x_1$ . Otherwise, we use the intrinsic homotopy

lifting property of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  with respect to  $\Delta^0$  to reduce to the case where  $y_0$  and  $y_1$  are connected by a strictly shorter path.  $\blacksquare$

**1.3.30 DEFINITION.** An **anodyne extension of simplicial sets** is a member of the smallest class  $\mathcal{A} \subset \text{mor sSet}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- Every horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under pushout, i.e. given a pushout diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z' & \longrightarrow & Z \\ g' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ W' & \longrightarrow & W \end{array}$$

if  $g' : Z' \rightarrow W'$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ , then so is  $g : Z \rightarrow W$ .

- $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition, i.e. given an ordinal  $\alpha$  and a colimit-preserving functor  $X : \alpha \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  such that the morphisms  $X(\beta) \rightarrow X(\gamma)$  are in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the induced morphism  $X(0) \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\beta < \alpha} X(\beta)$  is also in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under retracts, i.e. given a commutative diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{id} & & \\ & \nearrow & & \searrow & \\ Z' & \xrightarrow{i_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{r_Z} & Z' \\ g' \downarrow & & g \downarrow & & \downarrow g' \\ W' & \xrightarrow{i_W} & W & \xrightarrow{r_W} & W' \\ & \searrow & & \nearrow & \\ & & \text{id} & & \end{array}$$

if  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ , then so is  $g' : Z' \rightarrow W'$ .

**1.3.31 LEMMA.** Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be monomorphisms in **sSet**. Suppose the square in the diagram below is a pushout square in **sSet**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_X \times g} & X \times W \\ f \times \text{id}_Z \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y \times Z & \longrightarrow & (X \times W) \cup^{X \times Z} (Y \times Z) \end{array}$$

$\xrightarrow{f \times \text{id}_W} Y \times W$   
 $\xrightarrow{\text{id}_Y \times g} Y \times W$   
 $\xrightarrow{f \sqcup g} Y \times W$

- (i) The morphism  $f \sqcup g : (X \times W) \cup^{X \times Z} (Y \times Z) \rightarrow Y \times W$  is a monomorphism.
- (ii) If at least one of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  or  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension, then so is  $f \sqcup g : (X \times W) \cup^{X \times Z} (Y \times Z) \rightarrow Y \times W$ .

*Proof.* (i). Using the fact that limits and colimits in **sSet** can be calculated degreewise, this reduces to a well-known fact about **Set**.

(ii). See Proposition 2.2 in [GZ, Ch. IV], or Corollary 4.6 in [GJ, Ch. I].  $\square$

**1.3.32** DEFINITION. Let  $L$  be any simplicial set, let  $K$  be a simplicial subset of  $L$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : L \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in **sSet**. An **intrinsic homotopy**  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  relative to  $K$  is an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  such that the image of  $\alpha$  under morphism  $[L, Y] \rightarrow [K, Y]$  (induced by the inclusion  $K \hookrightarrow L$ ) is a degenerate edge. (In particular, the restrictions of  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  along  $K \hookrightarrow L$  must be equal.) We write  $\pi_{(L,K)}(Y, y)$  for the set of morphisms  $L \rightarrow Y$  whose restriction along  $K \hookrightarrow L$  is  $y : K \rightarrow Y$ , modulo the equivalence relation generated by intrinsic homotopy relative to  $K$ .

**1.3.33** REMARK. For fixed  $L$  and  $K$ , the assignment  $(Y, y) \mapsto \pi_{(L,K)}(Y, y)$  is clearly the object part of a functor  ${}^K/\mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ . Indeed, we may construct it as follows: given  $y : K \rightarrow Y$ , form the following pullback square in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [L, Y]_y & \longrightarrow & [L, Y] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & [K, Y] \end{array}$$

where the morphism  $[L, Y] \rightarrow [K, Y]$  is induced by the inclusion  $K \hookrightarrow L$  and the morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow [K, Y]$  corresponds to  $y$  (considered as a vertex of  $[K, Y]$ ); then  $\pi_{(L,K)}(Y, y)$  can be identified with  $\pi_0[L, Y]_y$ .

**1.3.34** DEFINITION. Let  $L$  be any simplicial set and let  $K$  be a simplicial subset of  $L$ . The **relative cylinder** on  $(L, K)$  is the simplicial set  $C(L, K)$  defined by the following pushout diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K \times \Delta^1 & \hookrightarrow & L \times \Delta^1 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\ K & \longrightarrow & C(L, K) \end{array}$$

where  $K \times \Delta^1 \rightarrow K$  is the projection and  $K \times \Delta^1 \hookrightarrow L \times \Delta^1$  is induced by the inclusion  $K \hookrightarrow L$ .

**I.3.35** REMARK. Let  $j_0, j_1 : L \rightarrow C(L, K)$  be the morphisms obtained by composing with  $q : L \times \Delta^1 \rightarrow C(L, K)$  the two morphisms  $L \rightarrow L \times \Delta^1$  induced by the two vertex inclusions  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$ . There is a natural bijection between the set of intrinsic homotopies  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  relative to  $K$  and the set of morphisms  $h : C(L, K) \rightarrow Y$  such that  $h \circ j_0 = f_0$  and  $h \circ j_1 = f_1$ .

**I.3.36** DEFINITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in **sSet**. With other notation as above, we say that  $f$  has the **homotopical right lifting property** with respect to  $K \hookrightarrow L$  if, for each commutative diagram the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ L & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

there exist a morphism  $x : L \rightarrow X$  and a homotopy  $\alpha : y \Rightarrow f \circ x$  relative to  $K$ , or equivalently, morphisms  $x : L \rightarrow X$  and  $h : C(L, K) \rightarrow Y$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \partial x & & \\ & \curvearrowright & & \curvearrowleft & \\ K & \longrightarrow & L & \overset{x}{\dashrightarrow} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow j_1 & & \downarrow f \\ L & \longrightarrow & C(L, K) & \overset{h}{\dashrightarrow} & Y \\ & \curvearrowleft & & \curvearrowright & \\ & & j_0 & & y \end{array}$$

**I.3.37** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in **sSet** and let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the class of pairs  $(L, K)$  such that  $f$  has the homotopical right lifting property with respect to  $K \hookrightarrow L$ .

- (i)  $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under coproducts for small families.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under pushout.
- (iii)  $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under retracts.

*Proof.* See Lemma 3.4 in [Dugger and Isaksen, 2004]. □

## I.4 Kan complexes

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.3, 3.1, 4.1, A.4.

We have seen in the previous section that the notion of intrinsic homotopy is not well behaved for general simplicial sets. To remedy this, we shall (temporarily) restrict our attention to Kan complexes. These are simplicial sets with the so-called “extension property”, and they are named in honour of Kan [1955], who first observed the importance of the aforementioned property.

**I.4.1** DEFINITION. A **Kan fibration** is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in **sSet** that has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , where  $n \geq 1$  and  $0 \leq k \leq n$ . A **Kan complex** is a simplicial set  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is a Kan fibration.

**I.4.2** REMARK. In other words, a Kan complex is a simplicial set  $X$  satisfying the **Kan condition**: every horn  $\alpha' : \Lambda_k^n \rightarrow X$  has a **filler**, i.e. a morphism  $\alpha : \Delta^n \rightarrow X$  (equivalently, an  $n$ -simplex of  $X$ ) such that  $\alpha'$  is the restriction along the inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .

**I.4.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $X$  is a Kan complex.
- (ii)  $X$  has the intrinsic homotopy extension property with respect to the boundary inclusions  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .
- (iii)  $X$  has the intrinsic homotopy extension property with respect to any monomorphism in **sSet**.

*Proof.* This is a special case of theorem 1.3.27. ■

**I.4.4** LEMMA. *If  $X$  is a Kan complex, then the fundamental category  $\tau_1 X$  is a groupoid, and the unit  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow N(\tau_1 X)$  is an epimorphism.*

*Proof.* Let  $x, y$ , and  $z$  be vertices in  $X$ , and let  $f : x \rightarrow y$  and  $g : y \rightarrow z$  be edges in  $X$ .<sup>[1]</sup> Then the pair  $(f, g)$  defines a horn  $\Lambda_1^2 \rightarrow X$ , and so by the Kan condition, there exists a 2-simplex  $\alpha$  of  $X$  such that  $d_2(\alpha) = f$  and  $d_0(\alpha) = g$ . By remark 1.2.4, the composite  $g \bullet f$  defined in  $\tau_1 X$  must correspond to the edge  $d_1(\alpha)$ . Since the arrows in  $\tau_1 X$  are generated by the edges of  $X$ , we

[1] Recall definition 1.1.17.

conclude by induction that  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow N(\tau_1 X)$  is a surjection on vertices and edges.

Similarly, given an edge  $f : x \rightarrow y$ , the Kan condition ensures that there exist two 2-simplices  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  such that

$$\begin{array}{ll} d_2(\alpha) = f & d_1(\alpha) = \text{id}_x \\ d_0(\alpha) = f & d_1(\alpha) = \text{id}_y \end{array}$$

where  $\text{id}_x : x \rightarrow x$  is the edge  $s_0(x)$ , and  $\text{id}_y : y \rightarrow y$  is the edge  $s_0(y)$ . Together with the argument in the previous paragraph, this shows that  $\tau_1 X$  is a groupoid.

Finally, to show that  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow N(\tau_1 X)$  is a surjection on  $n$ -simplices for  $n \geq 2$ , we simply observe that an  $n$ -simplex of  $N(\tau_1 X)$  is just a string of  $n$  composable edges of  $X$ , so we may appeal to the Kan condition again to obtain the corresponding  $n$ -simplex of  $X$ . ■

**I.4.5** COROLLARY. *If  $X$  is a Kan complex, then the unit  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow N(\pi_1 X)$  is an epimorphism.*

*Proof.* Since  $\tau_1 X$  is already a groupoid, the canonical functor  $\tau_1 X \rightarrow \pi_1 X$  must be an isomorphism. (See [remark 1.2.16](#).) ■

**I.4.6** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be a Kan complex and let  $\alpha_0, \alpha_1 : x_0 \rightarrow x_1$  be edges in  $X$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\alpha_0 = \alpha_1$  in the fundamental groupoid  $\pi_1 X$ .
- (ii) *There exists a 2-simplex  $\sigma$  of  $X$  such that  $d_0(\sigma) = s_0(x_1)$ ,  $d_1(\sigma) = \alpha_1$ , and  $d_2(\sigma) = \alpha_0$ .*
- (iii) *There exists an edge  $\beta : \alpha_0 \rightarrow \alpha_1$  in the exponential object  $[\Delta^1, X]$  such that  $[\delta^1, X](\beta) = s_0(x_0)$  and  $[\delta^0, X](\beta) = s_0(x_1)$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). See Proposition 1.2.3.9 in [\[HTT\]](#).

(i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). See paragraph 5.2 in [\[GZ\]](#). □



**I.4.7** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  be the following subsets of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\mathcal{I} = \{\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \mid n \geq 0\}$$

$$\mathcal{I}' = \{\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \mid n \geq 1, 0 \leq k \leq n\}$$

- (i) There exist a pair of functorial factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , one inducing a weak factorisation system cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}$ , and the other inducing a weak factorisation system cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}'$ .
- (ii) A morphism is  $\mathcal{I}'$ -injective if and only if it is a Kan fibration, and every  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cofibration is a monomorphism (but not vice versa).
- (iii) A morphism is a  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibration if and only if it is a monomorphism, and every  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphism is a Kan fibration (but not vice versa).

*Proof.* (i). Since  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a locally finitely presentable category, we may apply Quillen's small object argument (theorem 0.5.12).

(ii). The definition of 'Kan fibration' is exactly the definition of ' $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphism'; on the other hand, the class of monomorphisms is closed under pushout, transfinite composition, and retracts in  $\mathbf{Set}$ , so the same is true for  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and thus, by corollary 0.5.13, every  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibration must be a monomorphism.

(iii). To prove that  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}} C \supseteq \text{inj}^{\mathcal{I}'} C$ , it is enough to check that  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{cof}_{\mathcal{I}'} C$ . Since every morphism in  $\mathcal{I}$  is a monomorphism, it will suffice to show that  $\text{cell}_{\mathcal{I}'} C$  contains all monomorphisms; but this is an immediate corollary of proposition 1.2.34. ■

**I.4.8** COROLLARY. Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension.
- (ii)  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  has the left lifting property with respect to any Kan fibration.
- (iii)  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a retract of a relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complex.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Apply proposition A.3.19.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). This is a special case of corollary 0.5.13.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). By definition, the class of anodyne extensions is closed under pushout, transfinite composition, and retracts. ■

**I.4.9** DEFINITION. A **trivial Kan fibration** is a morphism in **sSet** that has the right lifting property with respect to the boundary inclusions  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , where  $n \geq 0$ .

**I.4.10** REMARK. [Proposition 1.4.7](#) implies that a trivial Kan fibration is the same thing as a morphism in **sSet** that has the right lifting property with respect to any monomorphism. In particular, trivial Kan fibrations are Kan fibrations.

**I.4.11** PROPOSITION. *If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial Kan fibration, then  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is fibrewise contractible, i.e. there exist a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : \text{id}_X \Rightarrow s \circ p$  satisfying the following conditions:*

- $p \circ s = \text{id}_Y$ .
- $\alpha s$  is the trivial homotopy  $s \Rightarrow s$ .
- $p\alpha$  is the trivial homotopy  $p \Rightarrow p$ .

Moreover, given a monomorphism  $i : Y' \rightarrow Y$  and any morphism  $s' : Y' \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s' = i$ , the morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  given above may be chosen so that  $s \circ i = s'$ .

*Proof.* Since  $i : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism, the right lifting property of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  yields a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s = \text{id}_Y$  and  $s \circ i = s'$ . We then obtain a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \cup^Y X & \xrightarrow{(\text{id}_X, s \circ p)} & X \\ (j_0, j_1) \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ C(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{p \circ r} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $C(X, Y)$  is the relative cylinder,  $X \cup^Y X$  is the pushout of  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  along itself, the morphisms  $j_0, j_1 : X \rightarrow C(X, Y)$  are defined as in [remark 1.3.35](#), and  $r : C(X, Y) \rightarrow X$  is defined by the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y \times \Delta^1 & \xrightarrow{s \times \text{id}_{\Delta^1}} & X \times \Delta^1 & & \\ \text{proj} \downarrow & & \downarrow & \searrow \text{proj} & \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & X \\ & \searrow s & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \nearrow r & \\ & & & & \end{array}$$

It is not hard to see that  $(j_0, j_1) : X \cup^Y X \rightarrow C(X, Y)$  is a monomorphism, so there must exist  $h : C(X, Y) \rightarrow Y$  making the evident triangles commute. The corresponding intrinsic homotopy  $\text{id}_X \Rightarrow s \circ p$  is then the desired  $\alpha$ . ■

**I.4.12 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{K}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  spanned by the finite simplicial sets.*

- (i) *The class of monomorphisms that are in  $\mathcal{K}$  is the smallest class containing the boundary inclusions  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  that is closed under composition and pushouts.*
- (ii) *The class of anodyne extensions that are in  $\mathcal{K}$  is the smallest class containing the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  that is closed under composition, pushouts, and retracts.*

*Proof.* (i). This is a corollary of [proposition I.2.34](#).

(ii). [Corollary I.4.8](#) says that every anodyne extension in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a retract of a relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complex, where  $\mathcal{I}'$  is the set of all horn inclusions. More precisely, if  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension, then there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z \\
 g \downarrow & & i \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
 W & \xrightarrow{i_W} & W' & \xrightarrow{r_W} & W \\
 & \searrow & \text{id} & \nearrow & \\
 & & & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $i : Z \rightarrow W'$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complex. Suppose  $W$  is a finite simplicial set. [Proposition I.1.21](#) says that finite simplicial sets are  $\aleph_0$ -compact objects in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , so by considering a sequential presentation for  $i : Z \rightarrow W'$ , we see that  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is a retract of some relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complex that admits an  $\aleph_0$ -small presentation. In particular, if  $Z$  is a finite simplicial set, then so is  $W'$  (by [lemma 0.2.18](#)). Hence, the class of anodyne extensions in  $\mathcal{K}$  is the smallest class containing  $\mathcal{I}'$  that is closed under composition, pushouts, and retracts. ■

**I.4.I3** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in **sSet** and, for each  $n$ -simplex  $\alpha : \Delta^n \rightarrow Y$ , let  $f_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow \Delta^n$  be defined by the pullback diagram in **sSet** shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_\alpha & \longrightarrow & X \\ f_\alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & Y \end{array}$$

- (i)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a Kan fibration if and only if each  $f_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow \Delta^n$  is a Kan fibration.
- (ii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial Kan fibration if and only if each  $f_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow \Delta^n$  is a trivial Kan fibration.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**I.4.I4** COROLLARY.

- (i) Let  $(X_i \mid i \in I)$  be a small family of simplicial sets. The coproduct  $\coprod_{i \in I} X_i$  is a Kan complex if and only if each  $X_i$  is a Kan complex.
- (ii) Let  $(f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i \mid i \in I)$  be a small family of morphisms of simplicial sets. The coproduct  $\coprod_{i \in I} f_i : \coprod_{i \in I} X_i \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} Y_i$  is a Kan fibration if and only if each  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is a Kan fibration.
- (iii) Let  $(f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i \mid i \in I)$  be a small family of morphisms of simplicial sets. The coproduct  $\coprod_{i \in I} f_i : \coprod_{i \in I} X_i \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} Y_i$  is a trivial Kan fibration if and only if each  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is a trivial Kan fibration.

*Proof.* Given the previous proposition and the fact that coproducts in **sSet** are disjoint and stable under pullback, it suffices to observe that any  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} Y_i$  must factor through one of the coproduct insertions  $Y_j \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} Y_i$ . ■

**I.4.I5** PROPOSITION. Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a cofibration in **sSet and let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a Kan fibration. Suppose we have a commutative diagram**

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} [W, X] & & \xrightarrow{[i, X]} & & [Z, X] \\ & \searrow \text{dashed } q & & & \downarrow [Z, p] \\ & & L(i, p) & \longrightarrow & [Z, X] \\ & \searrow [W, p] & \downarrow & & \downarrow [Z, p] \\ & & [W, Y] & \xrightarrow{[i, Y]} & [Z, Y] \end{array}$$

where the square in the lower right is a pullback square.

- (i) The unique morphism  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, p)$  making the diagram commute is a Kan fibration.
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension, then  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, p)$  is a trivial Kan fibration.
- (iii) If  $p : Z \rightarrow W$  is a trivial Kan fibration, then so is  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, p)$ .

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 6.5.1](#): use [lemma 1.3.31](#) and the exponential adjunction. ■

**I.4.16 COROLLARY.**

- (i) If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration), then for all simplicial sets  $W$ , the morphism  $[W, p] : [W, X] \rightarrow [W, Y]$  is also a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism (resp. anodyne extension) of simplicial sets and  $X$  is a Kan complex, then the morphism  $[i, X] : [W, X] \rightarrow [Z, X]$  is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).
- (iii) If  $W$  is any simplicial set and  $X$  is a Kan complex, then  $[W, X]$  is also a Kan complex.

*Proof.* (i). Take  $Z = \emptyset$ ; noting that the canonical morphism  $\emptyset \rightarrow W$  is a cofibration, and that  $[\emptyset, p] : [\emptyset, X] \rightarrow [\emptyset, Y]$  is an isomorphism, the proposition above then implies  $[W, p] : [W, X] \rightarrow [W, Y]$  is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).

(ii). Take  $Y = 1$ ; since  $[W, 1] \rightarrow [Z, 1]$  is an isomorphism, the proposition above implies  $[i, X] : [W, X] \rightarrow [Z, X]$  is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).

(iii). Noting that  $[\emptyset, X]$  is a terminal object in **sSet**, we apply claim (ii) to the case  $Z = \emptyset$  to obtain the desired conclusion. ■

**I.4.17** PROPOSITION. *For any simplicial set  $X$  and any Kan complex  $Y$ , the relation  $\rightsquigarrow$  on  $\mathbf{sSet}(X, Y)$  defined by*

$$f_0 \rightsquigarrow f_1 \text{ if and only if there exists an intrinsic homotopy } f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$$

*is an equivalence relation.*

*Proof.* The relation  $\rightsquigarrow$  is certainly reflexive whether or not  $Y$  is a Kan complex. By [corollary I.4.16](#), the exponential object  $[X, Y]$  is a Kan complex; so recalling [lemma I.4.4](#), the transitivity of  $\rightsquigarrow$  may be deduced from the fact that the unit  $\eta_{[X, Y]} : [X, Y] \rightarrow N(\tau_1[X, Y])$  is an epimorphism, and the symmetry of  $\rightsquigarrow$  corresponds to the fact that  $\tau_1[X, Y]$  is a groupoid. ■

**I.4.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Kan complexes. If  $i : X \rightarrow Y$  is an anodyne extension, then there exist a morphism  $r : Y \rightarrow X$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : \text{id}_Y \Rightarrow i \circ r$  satisfying the the following conditions:*

- $r \circ i = \text{id}_X$ .
- $\alpha i$  is the trivial homotopy  $i \Rightarrow i$ .

*Proof.* By hypothesis, the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is a Kan fibration, so [corollary I.4.8](#) implies there is a morphism  $r : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $r \circ i = \text{id}_X$ . We then obtain the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{c \circ i} & [\Delta^1, Y] \\ i \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\langle \text{id}_Y, i \circ r \rangle} & Y \times Y \end{array}$$

where  $p_0, p_1 : [\Delta^1, Y] \rightarrow Y$  are the morphisms induced by the coface morphisms  $\delta_0^1, \delta_0^0 : \Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$  (respectively) and  $c : Y \rightarrow [\Delta^1, Y]$  is induced by the codegeneracy morphism  $\sigma_0^0 : \Delta^1 \rightarrow \Delta^0$ . Suppressing a canonical isomorphism  $[\partial \Delta^1, Y] \cong Y \times Y$ , we see that [corollary I.4.16](#) implies  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle : [\Delta^1, Y] \rightarrow Y \times Y$  is a Kan fibration. Thus, there exists a morphism  $h : Y \rightarrow [\Delta^1, Y]$  making the evident triangles commute, and the corresponding intrinsic homotopy  $\text{id}_Y \Rightarrow i \circ r$  is then the desired  $\alpha$ . ■

We will now define the homotopy groups of a Kan complex.

**I.4.19** DEFINITION. Let  $n$  be a positive integer and let  $X$  be a Kan complex.

- The **based  $n$ -loop fibration** on  $X$  is the Kan fibration  $\Omega^n(X) \rightarrow X$  defined by the following pullback diagram in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^n(X) & \longrightarrow & [\Delta^n, X] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & [\partial\Delta^n, X] \end{array}$$

where  $[\Delta^n, X] \rightarrow [\partial\Delta^n, X]$  is the Kan fibration induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  and  $X \rightarrow [\partial\Delta^n, X]$  is the morphism induced by  $\partial\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$ .

- Let  $x$  be a vertex of  $X$ . The **based  $n$ -loop space** of  $(X, x)$  is the Kan complex  $\Omega^n(X, x)$  defined by the following pullback diagram in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^n(X, x) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^n(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & X \end{array}$$

where  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow X$  is the morphism corresponding to the vertex  $x$ . The  **$n$ -th homotopy group** of  $(X, x)$  is defined by  $\pi_n(X, x) = \pi_0\Omega^n(X, x)$ .

**I.4.20** REMARK. In other words,  $\pi_n(X, x)$  is the set of morphisms  $\Delta^n \rightarrow X$  whose restriction along  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  factors through the morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow X$  corresponding to  $x$ , modulo the equivalence relation that identifies two morphisms  $\Delta^n \rightarrow X$  if they are intrinsically homotopic relative to  $\partial\Delta^n$ .

**I.4.21** PROPOSITION. Let  $n$  be a positive integer.

- (i) The assignment  $(X, x) \mapsto \pi_n(X, x)$  extends to a functor  $\pi_n : \Delta^0/\mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grp}$ , and  $\pi_n(X, x)$  is abelian for  $n > 1$ .
- (ii) The functor  $\pi_n : \Delta^0/\mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grp}$  preserves finite products and colimits for small filtered diagrams.
- (iii) Let  $(X, x)$  and  $(Y, y)$  be pointed Kan complexes. If  $f_0, f_1 : (X, x) \rightarrow (Y, y)$  are a parallel pair of morphisms for which there exists an intrinsic homotopy  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  relative to  $x$  (considered as a subcomplex of  $X$ ), then  $\pi_n f_0 = \pi_n f_1$ .

*Proof.* (i). See Lemma 7.1 and Theorem 7.2 in [GJ, Ch. I]. Functoriality is straightforward.

(ii). It is not hard to check that the functor  $\Omega^n : \Delta^0/\mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves all limits and colimits for small filtered diagrams, and  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products and all colimits by proposition 1.2.11, so  $\pi_n : \Delta^0/\mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products and colimits for small filtered diagrams. But the forgetful functor  $\mathbf{Grp} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  creates finite products and colimits for small filtered diagrams, so the claim follows.

(iii). Use paragraph 1.3.4 and remark 1.4.20. □

**1.4.22** DEFINITION. The **homotopy category of Kan complexes** is the full subcategory  $\mathbf{H} \subseteq \mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$  spanned by the Kan complexes.

**1.4.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{Kan}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  spanned by the Kan complexes and let  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  be the functor that sends each morphism to its intrinsic homotopy class. For any functor  $F : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *For all Kan complexes  $X$ ,  $F[\delta_1^0, X] : F[\Delta^1, X] \rightarrow F[\Delta^0, X]$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For all Kan complexes  $X$ ,  $F[\delta_1^1, X] : F[\Delta^1, X] \rightarrow F[\Delta^0, X]$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iii) *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $F[\sigma_0^0, X] : F[\Delta^1, X] \rightarrow F[\Delta^0, X]$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iv) *For all parallel pairs  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{Kan}$ , if  $f_0 \sim f_1$ , then  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ .*
- (v)  *$F : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  factors through  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$ .*

*Moreover, the factorisation is unique if it exists.*

*Proof.* The proof is similar to that of proposition 1.3.15. (Use corollary 1.4.16 to deduce that  $[\Delta^1, X]$  is a Kan complex if  $X$  is.) ◇



**1.4.24** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  be the functor that sends a morphism of Kan complexes to its intrinsic homotopy class.*

- (i) *The functor  $\pi$  is full, surjective on objects, and preserves finite products and finite coproducts.*
- (ii)  *$\mathbf{Kan}$  is closed under products for all small families in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and  $\mathbf{H}$  has products for finite families.*
- (iii)  *$\mathbf{Kan}$  and  $\mathbf{H}$  are cartesian closed categories, and  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  is a cartesian closed functor.*
- (iv) *A morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{Kan}$  admits an intrinsic homotopy inverse if and only if  $\pi f : \pi X \rightarrow \pi Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{H}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). The construction of  $\mathbf{H}$  as  $\pi_0[\mathbf{Kan}]$  ensures that  $\pi$  is indeed a functor. It is clear from the construction of  $\pi_0 Z$  as a coequaliser that  $\chi_Z : Z_0 \rightarrow \pi_0 Z$  is a surjection; thus  $\pi$  is a full functor. It is obviously surjective on objects, and it preserves finite products and finite coproducts because  $\pi_0$  preserves finite products.

(ii). By [proposition A.3.19](#), the class of Kan fibrations is closed under products for small families, so  $\mathbf{Kan}$  is as well. By claim (ii),  $\mathbf{H}$  inherits finite products from  $\mathbf{Kan}$ .

(iii). By [proposition 1.4.15](#),  $[Y, K]$  is a Kan complex whenever  $K$  is, which combined with claim (iii) implies  $\mathbf{Kan}$  is cartesian closed. [Proposition A.2.11](#) says we have natural isomorphisms  $[X \times Y, K] \cong [X, [Y, K]]$ , so it follows that we have natural bijections

$$\pi_0[X \times Y, K] \cong \pi_0[X, [Y, K]]$$

for all  $X, Y$ , and  $K$  in  $\mathbf{Kan}$ , and this descends along  $\pi$  to make  $\mathbf{H}$  cartesian closed.

(iv). The definition says  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\pi_0[f, K] : \pi_0[Y, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[X, K]$  is a bijection for all Kan complexes  $K$ ; but this is natural in  $K$ , so the Yoneda lemma implies this happens if and only if  $\pi f : \pi X \rightarrow \pi Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{H}$ . ■

**I.4.25** DEFINITION. Let  $n$  be an integer,  $n \geq -2$ . An  $n$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , where  $X$  and  $Y$  are Kan complexes, such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- If  $n \geq -1$ , then  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a surjection.
- If  $n \geq 0$ , then  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a bijection and, for all vertices  $x$  of  $X$ , the homomorphism  $\pi_1 f : \pi_1(X, x) \rightarrow \pi_1(Y, f(x))$  is a surjection.
- If  $n \geq 1$ , then for all  $1 \leq m \leq n$  and all vertices  $x$  of  $X$ , the homomorphism  $\pi_m f : \pi_m(X, x) \rightarrow \pi_m(Y, f(x))$  is an isomorphism, and  $\pi_n f : \pi_n(X, x) \rightarrow \pi_n(Y, f(x))$  is a surjection.

An  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes is one that is  $n$ -connected for all  $n \geq -2$ .

**I.4.26** PROPOSITION. *The class of  $\infty$ -connected morphisms of Kan complexes has the 2-out-of-3 and 2-out-of-6 properties.*<sup>[2]</sup>

*Proof.* This is a straightforward check (using [lemma A.4.14](#)). ◆

**I.4.27** THEOREM. *Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a Kan fibration. If  $X$  and  $Y$  are Kan complexes, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial Kan fibration.
- (ii)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). [Lemma 1.3.29](#) says  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a bijection. Fix a positive integer  $n$  and a vertex  $x$  of  $X$ . Then [proposition 1.4.11](#) implies that there exist a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s = \text{id}_Y$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : \text{id}_X \Rightarrow s \circ p$  relative to  $x$  (considered as a subcomplex of  $X$ ), so we may apply [proposition 1.4.21](#) to deduce that  $\pi_n p : \pi_n(X, x) \rightarrow \pi_n(Y, p(x))$  is an isomorphism.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). See Theorem 7.10 in [\[GJ, Ch. I\]](#). □

---

[2] See [definition A.4.13](#).

**I.4.28** COROLLARY. *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Kan complexes. If  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  are intrinsically homotopic, then for all positive integers  $n$  and all vertices  $x$ , there exists a commutative diagram of the form below:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi_n(X, x) & \xrightarrow{\pi_n f_0} & \pi_n(Y, f_0(x)) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \cong \\ \pi_n(X, x) & \xrightarrow{\pi_n f_1} & \pi_n(Y, f_1(x)) \end{array}$$

*Proof.* We may assume without loss of generality that there is an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ . Let  $h : X \rightarrow [\Delta^1, Y]$  be the corresponding morphism. It is clear that the coface morphisms  $\delta_0^e : \Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$  are isomorphic to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  (where  $k = 0$  if  $e = 1$  and  $k = 1$  if  $e = 0$ ), so by [corollary I.4.16](#), the morphisms  $[\delta_0^e, X] : [\Delta^1, Y] \rightarrow [\Delta^0, Y]$  are trivial Kan fibrations. Thus, we have the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi_n(X, x) & \xrightarrow{\pi_n f_0} & \pi_n(Y, f_0(x)) \\ \parallel & & \uparrow \pi_n p_0 \\ \pi_n(X, x) & \xrightarrow{\pi_n h} & \pi_n([\Delta^1, Y], h(x)) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \pi_n p_1 \\ \pi_n(X, x) & \xrightarrow{\pi_n f_1} & \pi_n(Y, f_1(x)) \end{array}$$

where  $p_0, p_1 : [\Delta^1, Y] \rightarrow Y$  are the morphisms induced by  $\delta_0^1, \delta_0^0 : \Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$  (respectively). But [theorem I.4.27](#) implies that  $\pi_n p_0$  and  $\pi_n p_1$  are isomorphisms, so we are done. ■

The homotopy groups of a Kan complex are a complete homotopy invariant. More precisely, we have the following analogue of a theorem of Whitehead [1949]:

**I.4.29** THEOREM (Whitehead). *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be Kan complexes. For any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  admits an intrinsic homotopy inverse.
- (ii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes.

(iii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  admits a factorisation of the form  $q \circ j$ , where  $j$  is an anodyne extension and  $q$  is a trivial Kan fibration.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By [corollary 1.3.16](#),  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is a bijection, and using [corollary 1.4.28](#), it is not hard to see that  $\pi_n f : \pi_n(X, x) \rightarrow \pi_n(Y, f(x))$  is an isomorphism for all positive integers  $n$  and all vertices  $x$  of  $X$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). [Proposition 1.4.7](#) says we may factor  $f$  as  $p \circ j$ , where  $j$  is an anodyne extension and  $p$  is a Kan fibration; note that the domain of  $p$  is automatically a Kan complex. By [proposition 1.4.18](#), anodyne extensions of Kan complexes admit homotopy inverses, so  $i$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes; hence, applying [proposition 1.4.26](#), we may deduce that  $p$  is  $\infty$ -connected morphism if (and only if)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is  $\infty$ -connected. But [theorem 1.4.27](#) says  $p$  is  $\infty$ -connected if and only if it is a trivial Kan fibration, so we are done.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). [Propositions 1.4.11](#) and [1.4.18](#) say that both  $p$  and  $i$  admits intrinsic homotopy inverses, so the same is true for  $f = p \circ i$ . ■

**1.4.30** COROLLARY. *Let  $i : X \rightarrow Y$  be a monomorphism. If  $X$  and  $Y$  are Kan complexes, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $i : X \rightarrow Y$  is an anodyne extension.
- (ii)  $i : X \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Apply [theorem 1.4.29](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). If  $i$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes, then  $i$  admits a factorisation of the form  $q \circ j$ , where  $j$  is an anodyne extension and  $q$  is a trivial Kan fibration. The right lifting property of  $q$  implies there is a morphism  $h$  such that  $p \circ h = \text{id}_Y$  and  $h \circ i = j$ ; in particular,  $i$  is a retract of  $j$ . Thus,  $i$  is an anodyne extension. ■

**1.4.31** THEOREM. *Let **Kan** be the category of Kan complexes. Then **Kan** is a category of fibrant objects, where*

- the weak equivalences are the  $\infty$ -connected morphisms,
- the fibrations are the Kan fibrations, and

- the trivial fibrations are the trivial Kan fibrations.

Moreover, this makes **Kan** a saturated homotopical category.

*Proof.* First, note that [theorem 1.4.27](#) and Whitehead's theorem ([1.4.29](#)) imply that the fibrations that are weak equivalences are precisely the trivial Kan fibrations. Thus, we may apply [proposition A.3.19](#) to deduce that axioms B and C are satisfied. Axiom E is satisfied by definition. Axiom A is [proposition 1.4.26](#); moreover, **Kan** is a saturated homotopical category, by [proposition 1.4.24](#) and [lemma 3.1.8](#). Finally, using [corollary 1.4.16](#), it is not hard to see that  $[\Delta^1, X]$  is (the object part of) a path object for  $X$  (provided  $X$  is a Kan complex), so axiom D is also satisfied.  $\blacksquare$

**I.4.32** PROPOSITION. Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $p' : X' \rightarrow Y'$  be Kan fibrations. Given a pullback diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\ p' \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Y' & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \end{array}$$

if  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes, then so is  $f : X' \rightarrow X$ .

*Proof.* In view of [theorem 1.4.31](#), this is a special case of [proposition 4.2.7](#).  $\blacksquare$

**I.4.33** LEMMA. Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a monomorphism of simplicial sets and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of Kan complexes. Consider the following commutative diagram in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} [W, X] & & \xrightarrow{[i, X]} & & [Z, X] \\ & \searrow q & & \searrow & \\ & & L(i, f) & \longrightarrow & [Z, X] \\ & \searrow [W, f] & \downarrow & & \downarrow [Z, f] \\ & & [W, Y] & \xrightarrow{[i, Y]} & [Z, Y] \end{array}$$

where the square in the lower right is a pullback square.

- (i) If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes, then so is  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, f)$ .

- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension of simplicial sets, then  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, f)$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes.

*Proof.* Since  $X$  and  $Y$  are Kan complexes, [proposition 1.4.15](#) (plus [proposition A.3.19](#)) implies that every object in the commutative diagram is a Kan complex and that  $[i, X] : [W, X] \rightarrow [Z, X]$  and  $[i, Y] : [W, Y] \rightarrow [Z, Y]$  are Kan fibrations.

(i). Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes. Recalling paragraph [1.3.4](#), we see that [theorem 1.4.27](#) and Whitehead's theorem ([1.4.29](#)) imply that  $[W, f] : [W, X] \rightarrow [W, Y]$  and  $[Z, f] : [Z, X] \rightarrow [Z, Y]$  are also  $\infty$ -connected. [Proposition 1.4.32](#) then says that the morphism  $L(i, f) \rightarrow [W, Y]$  is also  $\infty$ -connected, so we may use the 2-out-of-3 property ([proposition 1.4.26](#)) to deduce that  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, f)$  is indeed  $\infty$ -connected.

(ii). Suppose  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension of simplicial sets. Then [proposition 1.4.15](#) says  $[i, X] : [W, X] \rightarrow [Z, X]$  and  $[i, Y] : [W, Y] \rightarrow [Z, Y]$  are trivial Kan fibrations, and [proposition A.3.19](#) says that the morphism  $L(i, f) \rightarrow [Z, X]$  is also a trivial Kan fibration. Thus, [theorem 1.4.27](#) and [proposition 1.4.26](#) imply that  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, f)$  is indeed  $\infty$ -connected. ■

**1.4.34** LEMMA. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , let  $L$  be a simplicial set, and let  $K \subseteq L$  and  $J \subseteq K$  be simplicial subsets. If  $Y$  is a Kan complex and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the homotopical right lifting property with respect to both  $J \hookrightarrow K$  and  $K \hookrightarrow L$ , then  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  also has the homotopical right lifting property with respect to  $J \hookrightarrow L$ .

*Proof.* See Lemma 3.4 in [Dugger and Isaksen, 2004]. □

**1.4.35** THEOREM. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of Kan complexes. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an  $\infty$ -connected morphism of Kan complexes.
- (ii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the homotopical right lifting property with respect to all monomorphisms between finite simplicial sets.
- (iii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the homotopical right lifting property with respect to all boundary inclusions  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .

*Proof.* See Proposition 4.1 in [Dugger and Isaksen, 2004]. □

## 1.5 The Kan–Quillen model structure

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.3, 1.4, 4.1, 5.1, 6.2, A.3.

In [1967], Quillen constructed an axiomatic framework for doing homotopy theory in abstract categories, which he called ‘closed model categories’, and showed that **sSet** can be endowed with a model structure such that the resulting homotopy theory is equivalent in a strong sense to the homotopy theory of topological spaces.

The following characterisation of weak homotopy equivalences appears in [Quillen, 1967, Ch. II, §3]; we follow Joyal and Tierney [2008] in taking it as our definition. Recalling that  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  from proposition 1.2.11 is the functor sending a simplicial set  $X$  to the set  $\pi_0$  of its connected components,

**1.5.1** DEFINITION. A **weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets** is a morphism  $f : W \rightarrow Z$  such that, for every Kan complex  $K$ , the induced map

$$\pi_0[f, K] : \pi_0[Z, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[W, K]$$

is a bijection of sets.

**1.5.2** LEMMA. **sSet**, with the class of weak homotopy equivalences, is a saturated homotopical category. In particular, the class of weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts.

*Proof.* Apply lemma 3.1.8. ■

**1.5.3** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be morphisms in **sSet**. Assuming  $f_0 \sim f_1$ ,  $f_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $f_1$  is a weak equivalence.

*Proof.* If  $f_0 \sim f_1$ , then  $[f_0, K] \sim [f_1, K]$  (by lemma 1.3.9), so  $\pi_0[f_0, K] = \pi_0[f_1, K]$  (by corollary 1.3.16), and therefore one is a bijection if and only if the other is. ■

**1.5.4** PROPOSITION (Formal Whitehead theorem).

- (i) If a morphism in **sSet** admits an intrinsic homotopy left inverse and an intrinsic homotopy right inverse, then it is a weak homotopy equivalence.
- (ii) A morphism in **Kan** is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if it admits an intrinsic homotopy inverse.

*Proof.* (i). If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  admits an intrinsic homotopy left inverse (resp. an intrinsic homotopy right inverse), then  $\pi_0[f, K] : \pi_0[Y, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[X, K]$  is injective (resp. surjective) for all simplicial sets  $K$ . In particular,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence as soon as it has both an intrinsic homotopy left inverse and an intrinsic homotopy right inverse.

(ii). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes. The definition says  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\pi_0[f, K] : \pi_0[Y, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[X, K]$  is a bijection for all Kan complexes  $K$ , so (recalling [remark 1.3.7](#)) we may obtain an intrinsic homotopy left inverse for  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  by taking  $K = X$ , say  $g : Y \rightarrow X$ . By naturality, the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \pi_0[Y, Y] & \xrightarrow{\pi_0[f, Y]} & \pi_0[X, Y] \\
 \pi_0[Y, g] \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_0[Y, g] \\
 \pi_0[Y, X] & \xrightarrow{\pi_0[f, X]} & \pi_0[X, X] \\
 \pi_0[Y, f] \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_0[X, f] \\
 \pi_0[Y, Y] & \xrightarrow{\pi_0[f, Y]} & \pi_0[X, Y]
 \end{array}$$

Thus, by chasing the homotopy class of  $\text{id}_Y$ , we deduce that  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  is also an intrinsic homotopy right inverse for  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , as required. ■

**1.5.5** COROLLARY. *Let  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a functor. If  $F$  sends weak homotopy equivalences to isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then for any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $f_0 \sim f_1$  implies  $Ff_0 \sim Ff_1$ .*

*Proof.* Apply propositions [1.3.15](#) and [1.5.4](#) to [remark 1.3.14](#). ■

**1.5.6** LEMMA. *Anodyne extensions are weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* If  $i : X \rightarrow Y$  is an anodyne extension, then  $[i, K] : [Y, K] \rightarrow [X, K]$  is a trivial Kan fibration for all Kan complexes  $K$ , by [corollary 1.4.16](#). Applying [lemma 1.3.29](#), we then deduce that  $i : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■



**1.5.7** PROPOSITION. *There exist a functor  $R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a natural transformation  $i : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow R$  satisfying the following condition:*

- *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $RX$  is a Kan complex and  $i_X : X \rightarrow RX$  is an anodyne extension.*

*Moreover, any such functor  $R$  preserves and reflects weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* Such  $(R, i)$  can be constructed using Quillen’s small object argument (theorem 0.5.12); see also proposition 5.1.24. Given any such  $(R, i)$ , consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{i_X} & RX \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ Y & \xrightarrow{i_Y} & RY \end{array}$$

Using proposition 1.5.12 and the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences, we see that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**1.5.8** DEFINITION. A **weakly contractible simplicial set** is a simplicial set  $X$  for which the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow \Delta^0$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

**1.5.9** REMARK. Proposition 1.5.4 implies that every contractible simplicial set is also weakly contractible.

**1.5.10** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be a Kan complex. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$X$  is contractible (as a simplicial set).*
- (ii)  *$X$  is weakly contractible (as a simplicial set).*
- (iii)  *$X \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is a trivial Kan fibration.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Apply proposition 1.5.4.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Use theorem 1.4.27.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). This is a special case of proposition 1.4.11. ■

**1.5.11** REMARK. Not all weak homotopy equivalences admit an intrinsic homotopy inverse. For instance, if  $X$  is the nerve of the following category,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \dots$$

then every morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow X$  is an anodyne extension (because the class of anodyne extensions is closed under pushout and transfinite composition), but none of them admit an intrinsic homotopy right inverse. In particular,  $X$  is weakly contractible but not contractible.

**1.5.12** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *A Kan fibration  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is trivial if and only if it is a weak homotopy equivalence.*
- (ii) *A monomorphism  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension if and only if it is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i). See Proposition 3.4.1 in [Joyal and Tierney, 2008].

(ii). See Lemma 7 in [Quillen, 1967, Ch. II, §3] or Proposition 3.4.2 in [Joyal and Tierney, 2008].  $\square$

**1.5.13** THEOREM. **sSet**, regarded as a **sSet**-enriched category via its cartesian closed structure, is a simplicial<sup>[1]</sup> strongly  $(\aleph_0, \aleph_1)$ -combinatorial model category where

- *the cofibrations are the monomorphisms in **sSet**,*
- *the fibrations are the Kan fibrations, and*
- *the weak equivalences are the weak homotopy equivalences.*

*This is the **Kan–Quillen model structure on simplicial sets**.*

*Proof.* It is clear that there exist countable sets of generating cofibrations and generating trivial cofibrations whose domains and codomains are finite simplicial sets, and it is not hard to see that there are only finitely many morphisms between any two finite simplicial sets. Thus it suffices to verify that **sSet** is a simplicial model category.

We know **sSet** has limits and colimits for all small diagrams and is a cartesian closed category, so it satisfies axioms CM1 and SM0. Using the definition of

---

[1] See definition 2.4.1.

weak homotopy equivalence given above, [lemma 1.5.2](#) implies axiom CM2 is satisfied. [Proposition 1.4.7](#) plus [theorem 5.1.12](#) then shows that the announced cofibrations, fibrations, and weak equivalences do indeed constitute a model structure on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . Finally, we note that [proposition 1.4.15](#) is precisely the condition required by axiom SM7. ■

**1.5.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$  spanned by the weak homotopy equivalences. Then  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under colimits for small filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a strongly  $(\aleph_0, \aleph_1)$ -combinatorial model category, we may apply [corollary 6.2.16](#). ■

**1.5.15** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$  spanned by the anodyne extensions. Then  $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under colimits for small filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* [Theorem 0.2.13](#) implies that the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$  spanned by the monomorphisms is closed under colimits for small filtered diagrams, so the claim is a consequence of [propositions 1.5.12](#) and [1.5.14](#). ■

**1.5.16** PROPOSITION. *Let  $(f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i \mid i \in I)$  be a small family of morphisms of simplicial sets. The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *Each  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*
- (ii) *The coproduct  $\coprod_{i \in I} f_i : \coprod_{i \in I} X_i \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} Y_i$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* [Proposition 1.4.7](#) says we can factor each  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  as an anodyne extension followed by a Kan fibration, and since the class of anodyne extensions is closed under coproducts, by [lemma 1.5.2](#) and [proposition 1.5.12](#), it suffices to prove the claim in the special case where each  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  is a Kan fibration; but this was shown by [corollary 1.4.14](#). ■

**1.5.17** PROPOSITION. *Let  $f : W \rightarrow Z$  be a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets and let  $X$  be any simplicial set.*

- (i) *The morphism  $f \times \text{id}_X : W \times X \rightarrow Z \times X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*
- (ii) *If  $X$  is a Kan complex, then  $[f, X] : [Z, X] \rightarrow [W, X]$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

(iii) If  $W$  and  $Z$  are Kan complexes, then  $[X, f] : [X, W] \rightarrow [X, Z]$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* (i). We must show that, for all Kan complexes  $K$ , the induced map

$$\pi_0[f \times \text{id}_X, K] : \pi_0[Z \times X, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[W \times X, K]$$

is a bijection. However, we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi_0[Z \times X, K] & \xrightarrow{\pi_0[\text{id}_X \times f, K]} & \pi_0[W \times X, K] \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \pi_0[Z, [X, K]] & \xrightarrow{\pi_0[f, [X, K]]} & \pi_0[W, [X, K]] \end{array}$$

and (by [corollary 1.4.16](#))  $[X, K]$  is a Kan complex, so  $\pi_0[f, [X, K]]$  is a bijection; hence,  $\pi_0[f \times \text{id}_X, K]$  is indeed a bijection for all Kan complexes  $K$ .

(ii). If  $X$  is a Kan complex, then [corollary 1.4.16](#) says that  $[-, X]$  is a right Quillen functor; but every simplicial set is cofibrant, so Ken Brown's lemma ([5.3.6](#)) implies  $[-, X]$  preserves weak homotopy equivalences.

(iii). Similarly, for any simplicial set  $X$ ,  $[X, -]$  is a right Quillen functor, and so Ken Brown's lemma implies  $[X, -]$  preserves weak homotopy equivalences between Kan complexes. ■

**1.5.18** THEOREM.  $\mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}}$  is a category of fibrant objects, where

- the weak equivalences are the weak homotopy equivalences,
- the fibrations are the monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and
- the trivial fibrations are anodyne extensions.

*Proof.* Recall that [proposition 1.5.4](#) says the anodyne extensions are precisely the monomorphisms (in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ) that are weak homotopy equivalences. Thus, we may apply [proposition A.3.19](#) to deduce that axioms B and C are satisfied. It is easy to verify axiom E. Axiom A is [lemma 1.5.2](#). Finally, using [proposition 1.5.17](#), it is not hard to see that  $\Delta^1 \times X$  (in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ) is (the object part of) a path object for  $X$  (in  $\mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}}$ ), so axiom D is also satisfied. ■

**1.5.19** LEMMA. Given a commutative diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y_0 & \xleftarrow{i_0} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{t_0} & T_0 \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow h \\ Y_1 & \xleftarrow{i_1} & X_1 & \xrightarrow{t_1} & T_1 \end{array}$$

if  $i_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  and  $i_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  are monomorphisms and  $f : X_0 \rightarrow X_1, g : Y_0 \rightarrow Y_1$ , and  $h : T_0 \rightarrow T_1$  are weak homotopy equivalences, then the induced morphism

$$T_0 \cup^{X_0} Y_0 \rightarrow T_1 \cup^{X_1} Y_1$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* In view of [theorem 1.5.18](#), this is (the formal dual of) [lemma 4.2.11](#). ■

**1.5.20** PROPOSITION.

(i) Equipping **Set** with the discrete model structure,<sup>[2]</sup> the adjunction

$$\pi_0 \dashv \text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is a Quillen adjunction.<sup>[3]</sup>

(ii) For every map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , the morphism  $\text{disc } f : \text{disc } X \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  is a Kan fibration.

(iii) The functor  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends weak homotopy equivalences to bijections.

*Proof.* (i). Since every map is a cofibration in the discrete model structure on **Set**, it is enough (by [proposition 5.3.2](#)) to show that  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends anodyne extensions in **sSet** to bijections; and by [proposition 1.4.12](#), it suffices to show that the maps  $\pi_0 \Lambda_k^n \rightarrow \pi_0 \Delta^n$  induced by the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ . But this is an immediate consequence of the fact that each  $\Lambda_k^n$  and  $\Delta^n$  is connected.

(ii). Every map is a fibration in the discrete model structure on **Set**, and  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a right Quillen functor, so each  $\text{disc } f : \text{disc } X \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  is indeed a Kan fibration.

(iii). Every simplicial set is cofibrant, so this is a consequence of Ken Brown's lemma ([5.3.6](#)). ■

[2] See [example 5.1.5](#).

[3] See [definition 5.3.1](#).

**I.5.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  that satisfies these conditions:*

- *Every identity morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- *$\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*
- *For every simplicial set  $X$ , the projection  $p_X : X \times \Delta^1 \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Then:*

- (i) *Given a parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  and an intrinsic homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ , the morphism  $f_0$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  if and only if  $f_1$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{W}$  has the special 2-out-of-4 property, then every trivial Kan fibration is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts or has the 2-out-of-6 property in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , then every trivial Kan fibration is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This follows from [remark 1.3.2](#).

(ii). This is a special case of [proposition 6.4.34](#).

(iii). Apply [lemma A.4.17](#). ■

**I.5.22** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  that satisfies these conditions:*

- (a) *The class of monomorphisms that are in  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under pushout and composition.*
- (b)  *$\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and for all finite simplicial sets  $X$ , the morphism  $\text{id} : X \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (c) *For all natural numbers  $n$ , the unique morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Then every horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Proof.* We proceed by induction on  $n$ . For  $n = 1$ , observe that conditions (a) and (b) together imply that every isomorphism of finite simplicial sets is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and so we may use the 2-out-of-3 property to deduce that the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_0^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  and  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

Now, suppose that the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^m \hookrightarrow \Delta^m$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$  for all  $m < n$ . It is not hard to see that the horn  $\Lambda_l^n$  can be constructed by adjoining  $m$  copies

of  $\Delta^m$  along various horn inclusions (for  $0 < m < n$ ), so conditions (a) and (b) imply that the  $l$ -th vertex  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow \Lambda_l^n$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Condition (c) says that the unique morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , so we can then use the 2-out-of-3 property to deduce that the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_l^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . ■

**1.5.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  that satisfies these conditions:*

- (a) *The class of monomorphisms that are in  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under pushout, transfinite composition, and retracts.*
- (b)  *$\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and for all simplicial sets  $X$ , the morphism  $\text{id} : X \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (c) *For all natural numbers  $n$ , the unique morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Then every weak homotopy equivalence is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Proof.* Lemma 1.5.22 says that the horn inclusions are in  $\mathcal{W}$ , so condition (a) implies that all anodyne extensions are in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Notice that, if  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial Kan fibration, then there is a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s = \text{id}_Y$ , and by proposition 1.5.12,  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  is an anodyne extension. Hence, condition (b) implies that all trivial Kan fibrations are in  $\mathcal{W}$  as well. But every weak homotopy equivalence factors as an anodyne extension followed by a trivial Kan fibration (by proposition 1.5.12), so every weak homotopy equivalence is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . ■

**1.5.24** COROLLARY. *The subcategory of weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is the smallest subcategory satisfying the conditions in the proposition.*

*Proof.* Proposition 1.5.12 says that the class of monomorphisms that are weak homotopy equivalences is precisely the class of anodyne extensions, which has the required closure properties by definition. Thus, the class of weak homotopy equivalences satisfies condition (a), and the remaining conditions are easily verified. ■

**1.5.25** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. If  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a functor that preserves cofibrations and colimits for small diagrams, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves trivial cofibrations.*
- (ii)  *$F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves weak equivalences.*

- (iii) *For each natural number  $n$ , the morphism  $F(\Delta^n) \rightarrow F(\Delta^0)$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). The unique morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, so its image under  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  must be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  consisting of those morphisms that are sent to weak equivalences by  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ . Since monomorphisms are sent to cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , proposition A.3.19 implies that the class of monomorphisms that are in  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under pushout, transfinite composition, and retracts. Axiom CM2 (for  $\mathcal{M}$ ) and lemma A.4.14 imply that  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property, and it is clear that every isomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is also in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Thus, the conditions of proposition 1.5.23 are satisfied.  $\blacksquare$

**1.5.26 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathbf{H}$  be the homotopy category of Kan complexes.*

- (i) *For each simplicial set  $X$ , the functor  $\pi_0[X, -] : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  factors through  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  as a representable functor on  $\mathbf{H}$ .*
- (ii) *The functor  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  extends to a functor  $\pi : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  that sends weak homotopy equivalences to isomorphisms, and this extension is unique up to unique isomorphism.*

*Proof.* (i). Given  $i : X \rightarrow RX$  as in proposition 1.5.7, the maps  $\pi_0[i, K] : \pi_0[RX, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[X, K]$  are bijections (natural in  $K$ ), so we may as well assume  $X$  is a Kan complex. Proposition 1.4.23 and remark 1.3.7 then imply that the functor  $\pi_0[X, -] : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  factors through  $\pi : \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  and the resulting functor  $\mathbf{H} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathbf{H}(\pi X, -)$ .

(ii). Formally, what we seek is a functor  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  such that, for all Kan complexes  $Y$  and  $K$ ,

$$\mathbf{H}(FY, \pi K) = \pi_0[Y, K]$$

and, for all weak homotopy equivalences  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , the induced hom-set map  $\mathbf{H}(Ff, \pi K) : \mathbf{H}(FY, \pi K) \rightarrow \mathbf{H}(FX, \pi K)$  is a bijection for all Kan complexes  $K$ . Clearly, for any such  $F$  and any simplicial set  $X$ , there must be bijections

$$\mathbf{H}(FX, \pi K) \cong \pi_0[X, K]$$



that are natural in  $K$ , but by claim (i), this is representable as a functor  $\mathbf{H} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  for each  $X$ , so we can certainly construct such a functor  $F$ , and it is unique up to unique isomorphism.

(iii). This is a special case of [proposition 6.5.16](#); but see also [proposition 1.7.20](#). ■

**1.5.27** COROLLARY. *The inclusion  $\mathbf{H} \hookrightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_{\Delta^1} \mathbf{sSet}$  admits a left adjoint.* ■

**1.5.28** REMARK. Fixing a fibrant replacement functor  $R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  as in [proposition 1.5.7](#), we have the following explicit construction of  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$  (i.e. the localisation of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  with respect to weak homotopy equivalences):

- The objects are simplicial sets.
- For any two simplicial sets  $X$  and  $Y$ ,  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}(X, Y) = \pi_0[RX, RY]$ .
- Composition and identity morphisms are constructed as in  $\mathbf{H}$ .
- The localising functor  $\gamma : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$  inverting weak homotopy equivalences is the one sending  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  to the homotopy class of  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$ .

The **homotopy category of simplicial sets** is the category  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ . Of course, it is equivalent to  $\mathbf{H}$ .

**1.5.29** DEFINITION. Two simplicial sets have the **same weak homotopy type** if they are isomorphic in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ .

**1.5.30** REMARK. Freyd [1970] proved that  $\mathbf{H}$  is not a concrete category, i.e. that there does not exist a faithful functor  $\mathbf{H} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ ; in particular,  $\mathbf{H}$  cannot be an accessible category. Nonetheless, the notion of weak homotopy type is stable under universe enlargement in the following sense:

- (i) The property of being a weak homotopy equivalence is universe-independent: indeed, it is clear that the property of being a trivial Kan fibration is universe-independent, so we may apply [remark 0.5.18](#) to the (trivial cofibration, Kan fibration) factorisation system to test whether or not a morphism is a weak homotopy equivalence in a universe-independent way.

- (ii) Moreover, the property of being a Kan complex is universe-independent, and  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a left adjoint between locally presentable categories, so the hom-set  $\mathbf{H}(K, L)$  depends only on the choice of Kan complexes  $K$  and  $L$  and does not depend on the choice of universe. Similarly, whether or not  $K$  and  $L$  have the same homotopy type is universe-independent.
- (iii) Thus, for any two simplicial sets  $X$  and  $Y$ , the hom-set  $\mathbf{Ho\,sSet}(X, Y)$  is well-defined up to natural bijection independently of the choice of universe, and whether or not  $X$  and  $Y$  have the same weak homotopy type is also universe-independent.

## I.6 Bisimplicial sets and cosimplicial simplicial sets

**Prerequisites.** §§ [I.1](#), [I.3](#), [I.5](#), [5.3](#), [5.6](#), [6.2](#), [A.5](#), [A.6](#).

**I.6.1** DEFINITION. A **bisimplicial set** is a simplicial object in **sSet**, i.e. a functor  $\Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , and a **morphism of bisimplicial sets** is a natural transformation of such functors. We write **ssSet** for the **category of bisimplicial sets**.

**I.6.2** DEFINITION. Let  $X_{\bullet}$  be a bisimplicial set and let  $n$  be a natural number. The  **$n$ -th column** of  $X_{\bullet}$  is the simplicial set  $(X_n)_{\bullet}$ , and the  **$m$ -th row** of  $X_{\bullet}$  is the simplicial set  $(X_{\bullet})_m$ .

**I.6.3** DEFINITION. A **Reedy weak homotopy equivalence of bisimplicial sets** is a morphism in **ssSet** that is a weak homotopy equivalence in each column, i.e.  $f_{\bullet} : X_{\bullet} \rightarrow Y_{\bullet}$  such that each  $f_n : X_n \rightarrow Y_n$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.

**I.6.4** THEOREM. **ssSet** is a combinatorial model category where

- the cofibrations are the monomorphisms in **ssSet**,
- the fibrations are the Reedy fibrations, and
- the weak equivalences are the Reedy weak homotopy equivalences.

This is the **Reedy model structure on bisimplicial sets**.

*Proof.* Given [theorem 5.6.15](#), it suffices to verify the following:

- (i) The Reedy model structure is cofibrantly generated.
- (ii) The Reedy cofibrations are precisely the monomorphisms in **ssSet**.

For this, see Theorems [I5.7.6](#) and [I5.8.7](#) in [Hirschhorn, [2003](#)]. □

**I.6.5** COROLLARY. The Reedy model structure on **ssSet** is the injective model structure on the functor category  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ . ■

**I.6.6** DEFINITION. The **realisation** of a bisimplicial set  $X_{\bullet}$  is the simplicial set  $|X_{\bullet}|$  defined by the following coend in **sSet**:

$$|X_{\bullet}| = \int^{[n]:\Delta} \Delta^n \times X_n$$

**I.6.7** LEMMA. *Let  $X_\bullet$  be a bisimplicial set. There is a canonical comparison morphism*

$$|X_\bullet| \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} X_\bullet$$

*and it is natural in  $X_\bullet$ .*

*Proof.* The unique natural transformation  $\Delta^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  induces a natural morphism

$$\int^{[n]:\Delta} \Delta^n \times X_n \rightarrow \int^{[n]:\Delta} 1 \times X_n$$

and it is not hard to verify that there is a natural isomorphism

$$\int^{[n]:\Delta} 1 \times X_n \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} X_\bullet$$

so we are done. ■

**I.6.8** LEMMA. *Let  $X_\bullet$  be a bisimplicial set.*

(i) *There is an isomorphism*

$$|X_\bullet| \cong \text{diag } X$$

*where  $\text{diag } X$  is the simplicial set defined by  $(\text{diag } X)_n = (X_n)_n$ , and this isomorphism is natural in  $X_\bullet$ .*

(ii) *In particular, there is a canonical morphism*

$$X_0 \rightarrow |X_\bullet|$$

*and this is natural in  $X_\bullet$ .*

*Proof.* The Yoneda lemma for coends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) yields natural bijections of the form below:

$$\int^{[n]:\Delta} \Delta([m], [n]) \times (X_n)_m \cong (X_m)_m$$

Thus,  $|X_\bullet| \cong \text{diag } X$ . ■

**1.6.9 COROLLARY.**

- (i) If  $X_\bullet$  is a bisimplicial set whose columns are discrete,<sup>[1]</sup> then the realisation  $|X_\bullet|$  is naturally isomorphic to the simplicial set  $(X_\bullet)_0$ .
- (ii) If  $X_\bullet$  is a bisimplicial set whose rows are discrete, then the realisation  $|X_\bullet|$  is naturally isomorphic to the simplicial set  $(X_0)_\bullet$ . ■

**1.6.10 THEOREM.**

- (i) The functor  $|-| : \mathbf{ssSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has left and right adjoints.
- (ii)  $|-|$  sends Reedy weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$  to weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (iii) Equipping  $\mathbf{ssSet}$  with the Reedy model structure and  $\mathbf{sSet}$  with the Kan–Quillen model structure,  $|-| : \mathbf{ssSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a left Quillen functor.

*Proof.* (i). Using the isomorphism  $\mathbf{ssSet} \cong [\Delta^{\text{op}} \times \Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  and lemma 1.6.8, we may identify  $|-|$  as the functor  $\delta^*$  induced by the diagonal embedding  $\delta : \Delta \rightarrow \Delta \times \Delta$ , and corollary A.5.17 says  $\delta^*$  has left and right adjoints.

(ii). See Theorem 15.11.11 in [Hirschhorn, 2003], or Proposition 1.7 in [GJ, Ch. IV].

(iii). From claims (i) and (ii) it follows that  $|-|$  is a left Quillen functor; alternatively, see Proposition 3.6 in [GJ, Ch. VII]. □

**1.6.11 COROLLARY.** *If  $X_\bullet$  is a bisimplicial set such that every face and degeneracy operator is a weak homotopy equivalence, then the canonical morphism  $X_0 \rightarrow |X_\bullet|$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $T_\bullet$  be the bisimplicial set defined by  $T_\bullet = X_0$ , so that the rows of  $T_\bullet$  are discrete simplicial sets. Then there is a unique morphism  $T_\bullet \rightarrow X_\bullet$  whose component in degree 0 is  $\text{id} : X_0 \rightarrow X_0$ , and the hypothesis (plus the 2-out-of-3 property) implies that it is a weak homotopy equivalence. We then apply corollary 1.6.9 and theorem 1.6.10. ■

The following result is useful for constructing subdivision functors.

[1] Recall definition 1.2.12.

**I.6.12 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $D^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, let  $\rho^\bullet : D^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  be a natural transformation, let  $E : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor defined by  $E(X)_n = \mathbf{sSet}(D^n, X)$ , and let  $i_X : X \rightarrow E(X)$  be the natural morphism defined by  $(i_X)_n = \mathbf{sSet}(\rho^n, X)$  (where we have identified  $\mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, X)$  with  $X_n$  via the Yoneda lemma).*

- (i) *Given a parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  of morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , if  $f_0 \sim f_1$ , then  $E(f_0) \sim E(f_1)$  as well.*
- (ii) *If each  $D^n$  is a contractible simplicial set, then  $i : \text{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow E$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i). We may assume (by induction) that we have an intrinsic homotopy  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$ : let  $h : \Delta^1 \times X \rightarrow Y$  be any morphism such that  $h \circ (\delta_1^1 \times \text{id}_X) = f_0$  and  $h \circ (\delta_0^1 \times \text{id}_X) = f_1$  (suppressing comparison isomorphisms). Since  $\rho^\bullet : D^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  is a natural transformation, the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 D^0 & \xrightarrow{\rho^0} & \Delta^0 \\
 \delta_1^1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \delta_1^1 \\
 D^1 & \xrightarrow{\rho^1} & \Delta^1 \\
 \delta_1^0 \uparrow & & \uparrow \delta_1^0 \\
 D^0 & \xrightarrow{\rho^0} & \Delta^0
 \end{array}$$

Thus,  $E(\Delta^1)$  has an edge connecting the vertices  $\delta_1^1 \circ \rho^0 : D^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$  and  $\delta_0^1 \circ \rho^0 : D^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$ . It is not hard to see that  $E : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves products, so by considering  $E(h) : E(\Delta^1) \times E(X) \rightarrow E(Y)$ , we see that there is an intrinsic homotopy  $E(f_0) \Rightarrow E(f_1)$ , as required.

(ii). The following is a generalisation of the proof of Proposition 2.3.19 in [Cisinski, 2006].

Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Set}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times \Delta^m, X) & \longleftarrow & \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^m, X) \\
 (*) \quad \parallel & & \downarrow \mathbf{sSet}(\text{id}_{\Delta^n} \times \rho^m) & & \downarrow \mathbf{sSet}(\rho^m, X) \\
 \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, X) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times D^m, X) & \longleftarrow & \mathbf{sSet}(D^m, X)
 \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by the evident projections. The diagram is natural in  $n$  and  $m$ , so defines a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ , which (by

the Yoneda lemma) in the  $n$ -th column can be identified with the commutative diagram in **sSet** shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \text{disc } X_n & \longrightarrow & [\Delta^n, X] & \longleftarrow & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow i_{[\Delta^n, X]} & & \downarrow i_X \\ \text{disc } X_n & \longrightarrow & E([\Delta^n, X]) & \longleftarrow & E(X) \end{array}$$

and in the  $m$ -th row can be identified with the following commutative diagram in **sSet**:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \longrightarrow & [\Delta^m, X] & \longleftarrow & \text{disc } X_m \\ \parallel & & \downarrow [\rho^m, X] & & \downarrow \text{disc}(i_X)_m \\ X & \longrightarrow & [D^m, X] & \longleftarrow & \text{disc } E(X)_m \end{array}$$

Since  $\Delta^m$  (resp.  $D^m$ ) is contractible by [corollary 1.3.11](#) (resp. by hypothesis) and the functor  $[-, X] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves intrinsic homotopy equivalences, the horizontal arrows in the left half of (\*) define row-wise weak homotopy equivalences of bisimplicial sets. Similarly, since  $E : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  respects intrinsic homotopy, the horizontal arrows in the right half of (\*) are column-wise weak homotopy equivalences of bisimplicial sets.

Now, apply the realisation functor  $|-| : \mathbf{ssSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  to the diagram in **ssSet** defined by (\*). By [lemma 1.6.8](#), we obtain a commutative diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \longrightarrow & Y & \longleftarrow & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow i_X \\ X & \longrightarrow & Z & \longleftarrow & E(X) \end{array}$$

and by [theorem 1.6.10](#), every horizontal arrow in the above diagram is a weak homotopy equivalence. We may then use the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences to deduce that  $i_X : X \rightarrow E(X)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**1.6.13** DEFINITION. A **cosimplicial simplicial set** is a cosimplicial object in **sSet**, i.e. a functor  $\Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , and a morphism of cosimplicial simplicial sets is a natural transformation of such functors. We write **csSet** for the **category of cosimplicial simplicial sets**.

**1.6.14** DEFINITION. Let  $X^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial simplicial set and let  $n$  be a natural number. The  $n$ -th column of  $X^\bullet$  is the simplicial set  $(X^n)_\bullet$ , and the  $n$ -th row of  $X^\bullet$  is the cosimplicial set  $(X^\bullet)_n$ .

**1.6.15** DEFINITION. A **Reedy weak homotopy equivalence of cosimplicial simplicial sets** is a morphism in **csSet** that is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets in each column, i.e. a morphism  $f^\bullet : X^\bullet \rightarrow Y^\bullet$  such that each  $f^n : X^n \rightarrow Y^n$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

**1.6.16** LEMMA. Let  $X^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial simplicial set. The limit  $\lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} X^\bullet$  in **sSet** can be computed as the equaliser of the coface operators  $\delta^0, \delta^1 : X^0 \rightarrow X^1$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**1.6.17** DEFINITION. The **maximal augmentation** of a cosimplicial simplicial set  $X^\bullet$  is the limit  $\lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} X^\bullet$ .

**1.6.18** THEOREM. **csSet** is a combinatorial model category where

- the cofibrations are the monomorphisms in **csSet** that induce isomorphisms of maximal augmentations,
- the fibrations are the Reedy fibrations, and
- the weak equivalences are the Reedy weak homotopy equivalences.

This is the **Reedy model structure on cosimplicial simplicial sets**.

*Proof.* Given [theorem 5.6.15](#), it suffices to verify the following:

- (i) The Reedy model structure is cofibrantly generated.
- (ii) The Reedy cofibrations are precisely the announced ones.

For this, see Theorems 15.7.6 and 15.9.9 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

**1.6.19** COROLLARY. The standard simplex functor  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant cosimplicial simplicial set.

*Proof.* The maximal augmentation of  $\Delta^\bullet$  is empty, so by [theorem 1.6.18](#),  $\Delta^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant. ■



**1.6.20** DEFINITION. The **totalisation** of a cosimplicial simplicial set  $X^\bullet$  is the simplicial set  $\text{Tot } X^\bullet$  defined by the following end in **sSet**:

$$\text{Tot } X^\bullet = \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, X^n]$$

**1.6.21** LEMMA. Let  $X^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial simplicial set. There is a canonical comparison morphism

$$\varprojlim_{\Delta} X^\bullet \rightarrow \text{Tot } X^\bullet$$

and it is natural in  $X^\bullet$ .

*Proof.* The unique natural transformation  $\Delta^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  induces a natural morphism

$$\int_{[n]:\Delta} [1, X^n] \rightarrow \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, X^n]$$

and it is not hard to verify that there is a natural isomorphism

$$\int_{[n]:\Delta} [1, X^n] \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} X^\bullet$$

so we are done. ■

**1.6.22** LEMMA. Let  $Y^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial simplicial set. There is a bijection

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, \text{Tot } Y^\bullet) \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, (Y^m)_m)$$

for each simplicial set  $X$ , and this bijection is natural in  $X$  and  $Y$ .

*Proof.* Using [remark A.6.5](#), the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)), and Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)), we obtain the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{sSet}\left(X, \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, Y^n]\right) &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(X, [\Delta^n, Y^n]) \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(X \times \Delta^n, Y^n) \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m \times \Delta_m^n, (Y^n)_m) \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^n)_m)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set} \left( X_m, \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^n)_m) \right) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, (Y^m)_m) \end{aligned} \quad \blacksquare$$

**I.6.23** LEMMA. *Let  $Y^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial simplicial set. If the coface and codegeneracy operators of  $Y^\bullet$  are isomorphisms (of simplicial sets), then*

$$\mathrm{Tot} Y^\bullet \cong Y^0$$

*naturally in  $Y^\bullet$ .*

*Proof.* Recalling [lemma I.6.22](#),

$$(\mathrm{Tot} Y^\bullet)_n \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^m)_m)$$

and since the coface and codegeneracy operators of  $Y^\bullet$  are isomorphisms, we may as well replace  $(Y^m)_m$  with  $(Y^0)_m$ ; but then the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) gives a natural bijection

$$\int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^0)_m) \cong (Y^0)_n$$

so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**I.6.24** LEMMA. *Let  $Y^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial simplicial set. If each  $Y^n$  is discrete as a simplicial set, then  $\mathrm{Tot} Y^\bullet$  is also discrete.*

*Proof.* Recalling [remark A.6.5](#), it suffices to verify that the sets

$$H_n = \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^m)_m)$$

do not depend on  $n$  (in the evident sense). Since each  $Y^m$  is discrete, we may as well replace  $(Y^m)_m$  with  $(Y^m)_0$ ; but

$$\int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^m)_0) \cong \varprojlim_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^m)_0)$$

and  $\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}$  is sifted (by [remark A.5.35](#)), so [theorem A.5.36](#) implies that the diagonal functor  $\Delta : \Delta \rightarrow \Delta \times \Delta$  is coinitial, thus:

$$H_n \cong \varprojlim_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^m)_0)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\cong \varprojlim_{[l]:\Delta} \varprojlim_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, (Y^l)_0) \\ &\cong \varprojlim_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(\varinjlim_{[m]:\Delta^{\text{op}}} \Delta_m^n, (Y^l)_0\right) \end{aligned}$$

Hence, by [proposition 1.2.11](#),

$$H_n \cong \varprojlim_{[l]:\Delta} (Y^l)_0$$

and this is natural in  $n$ , so  $\text{Tot } Y^\bullet$  is indeed discrete. ■

**1.6.25** LEMMA. Let  $X_\bullet$  be a bisimplicial set and let  $Y$  be a simplicial set. Then there is a canonical isomorphism

$$[|X_\bullet|, Y] \cong \text{Tot}[X_\bullet, Y]$$

and it is natural in  $X_\bullet$  and  $Y$ .

*Proof.* By [proposition A.6.11](#), we have the following natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} [|X_\bullet|, Y] &= \left[ \int^{[n]:\Delta} \Delta^n \times X_n, Y \right] \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n \times X_n, Y] \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, [X_n, Y]] \\ &= \text{Tot}[X_\bullet, Y] \end{aligned} \quad \blacksquare$$

**1.6.26** LEMMA. Let  $X^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a bicosimplicial simplicial set, i.e. a functor  $\Delta \times \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . We have a natural isomorphism of the following type,

$$\text{Tot Tot } Y^{\bullet,\bullet} \cong \text{Tot diag } Y^{\bullet,\bullet}$$

where  $\text{diag } Y^{\bullet,\bullet}$  is the bisimplicial set defined by the formula below:

$$(\text{diag } Y^{\bullet,\bullet})^n = Y^{n,n}$$

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be any simplicial set. By [proposition A.6.11](#),

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, \text{Tot Tot } Y^{\bullet,\bullet}) \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(X \times \Delta^m \times \Delta^n, Y^{m,n})$$

and recalling [remark A.6.5](#),

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X \times \Delta^m \times \Delta^n, Y^{m,n}) \cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_l \times \Delta_l^m \times \Delta_l^n, (Y^{m,n})_l)$$

but by applying Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) twice,

$$\int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_l \times \Delta_l^m \times \Delta_l^n, (Y^{m,n})_l) \cong \mathbf{Set}(X_l, (Y^{l,l})_l)$$

so by the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)),

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathrm{Tot} \mathrm{Tot} Y^{\bullet,\bullet}) \cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_l, (Y^{l,l})_l)$$

and the claim follows by [lemma 1.6.22](#). ■

**1.6.27** THEOREM.

- (i) *The functor  $\mathrm{Tot} : \mathbf{csSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a left adjoint.*
- (ii) *For each simplicial set  $X$  and each cosimplicial simplicial set  $Y^\bullet$ , the canonical comparison morphism  $\mathrm{Tot}[X, Y^\bullet] \rightarrow [X, \mathrm{Tot} Y^\bullet]$  is an isomorphism.*
- (iii) *Equipping  $\mathbf{csSet}$  with the Reedy model structure and  $\mathbf{sSet}$  with the Kan–Quillen model structure,  $\mathrm{Tot} : \mathbf{csSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a right Quillen functor.*

*Proof.* (i). It is straightforward to check that the functor sending a simplicial set  $X$  to the cosimplicial simplicial set  $\Delta^\bullet \times X$  is a left adjoint for  $\mathrm{Tot}$ ; see also [proposition A.6.15](#).

(ii). By [proposition A.6.11](#), we have the following natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} [X, \mathrm{Tot} Y^\bullet] &= \left[ X, \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, Y^n] \right] \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} [X, [\Delta^n, Y^n]] \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, [X, Y^n]] \\ &= \mathrm{Tot}[X, Y^\bullet] \end{aligned}$$

(iii). See Theorem 18.6.7 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

## 1.7 Subdivision and extension

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6.

**1.7.1 ¶** Let  $P^n$  be the partially ordered set of non-empty subsets of  $[n]$  and, for each monotone map  $f : [n] \rightarrow [m]$ , let  $f_* : P^n \rightarrow P^m$  be the map induced by taking images. Taking nerves, this defines a functor  $N(P^\bullet) : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . Note that there is a natural surjective monotone map  $\max : P^n \rightarrow [n]$ , each with a canonical (but not natural!) splitting, so we get a natural transformation  $N(\max) : N(P^\bullet) \Rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  whose components are split epimorphisms.

**1.7.2** **DEFINITION.** The **extension** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the simplicial set  $\mathrm{Ex}(X)$  defined by the formula below:

$$\mathrm{Ex}(X)_n = \mathbf{sSet}(N(P^n), X)$$

The **canonical embedding** is the morphism  $i_X : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}(X)$  induced by  $N(\max) : N(P^\bullet) \Rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$ ; note that  $i_X$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

**1.7.3** **REMARK.** Every simplex of  $N(P^n)$  is uniquely determined by its vertices and  $P^n$  has only finitely many elements, so  $N(P^n)$  is a finite simplicial set. In particular, each  $\mathrm{Ex}(X)_n$  is a finite weighted limit of the diagram  $X : \Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

**1.7.4 ¶** Let  $\mathrm{Sd} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be (the functor part of) a left Kan extension of  $N(P^\bullet) : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . Using the formulas of [theorem A.5.15](#), we see there is a natural bijection of the form below:

$$\mathbf{sSet}(\mathrm{Sd}(X), Y) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathrm{Ex}(Y))$$

In other words, we have the following adjunction:

$$\mathrm{Sd} \dashv \mathrm{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

**1.7.5** **DEFINITION.** The **subdivision** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the simplicial set  $\mathrm{Sd}(X)$  defined above. The **last vertex projection** is the left adjoint transpose  $\lambda_X : \mathrm{Sd}(X) \rightarrow X$  of the canonical embedding  $i_X : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}(X)$ .

**I.7.6 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $X$  be a finite simplicial set.*

- (i) *If  $X$  is a finite simplicial set, then  $\text{Sd}(X)$  is also a finite simplicial set.*
- (ii) *If  $X$  has free degeneracies, then  $\text{Sd}(X)$  is locally polyhedral and (isomorphic to) the nerve of a category.*
- (iii) *If  $X$  is locally polyhedral, then  $\text{Sd}(X)$  is (isomorphic to) the nerve of a poset.*

*Proof.* (i). Since  $\text{Sd} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves colimits, by [proposition 0.2.46](#), it suffices to show that each  $\text{Sd}(\Delta^n)$  is a finite simplicial set, which is straightforward.

(ii). Suppose  $X$  has free degeneracies. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be the category of non-degenerate simplices of  $X$ , i.e. the comma category  $(\Delta^\bullet \downarrow X')$  where  $X'$  is the semisimplicial subset of non-degenerate simplices of  $X$  and  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta_\rightarrow \rightarrow [(\Delta_\rightarrow)^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the Yoneda embedding. We claim  $\text{Sd}(X) \cong \text{N}(\mathcal{J})$ .

Indeed, let  $n$  be a natural number and consider  $\text{Sd}(X)_n$ . By [proposition 1.2.28](#), [theorem A.5.15](#), and [proposition A.6.6](#),  $\text{Sd}(X)_n$  can be identified with the set of connected components of the category  $C_n$  described below:

- The objects of  $C_n$  are the tuples  $(x, m, y)$  where  $m$  is a natural number,  $x : \Delta^m \rightarrow X$  corresponds to some non-degenerate  $m$ -simplex of  $X$ , and  $y : \Delta^n \rightarrow \text{N}(P^m)$  is any morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .
- A morphism  $(x_0, m_0, y_0) \rightarrow (x_1, m_1, y_1)$  in  $C_n$  is a morphism  $\alpha : [m_0] \rightarrow [m_1]$  in  $\Delta_\rightarrow$  such that the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta^{m_0} & \xrightarrow{\Delta^\alpha} & \Delta^{m_1} \\ x_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow x_1 \\ X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} \Delta^n & \xlongequal{\quad} & \Delta^n \\ y_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_1 \\ \text{N}(P^{m_0}) & \xrightarrow{\text{N}(P^\alpha)} & \text{N}(P^{m_1}) \end{array}$$

- Composition and identities in  $C_n$  are inherited from  $\Delta_\rightarrow$ .

It is not hard to see that any connected component of  $C_n$  contains a *unique* object  $(x, m, y)$  with the property that  $y : \Delta^n \rightarrow \text{N}(P^m)$  does not factor through  $\text{N}(P^\alpha) : \text{N}(P^r) \rightarrow \text{N}(P^m)$  for any  $\alpha : [r] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta_\rightarrow$ . Thus, for example,  $\text{Sd}(X)_0$  can be identified with the set of non-degenerate simplices of  $X$ , and in general,  $\text{Sd}(X)_n$

can be identified with the set of non-degenerate  $m$ -simplices of  $X$  together with a string of  $n$  composable morphisms  $\cdots \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta_{\rightarrow}$ .

Thus,  $\text{Sd}(X)$  is isomorphic to  $N(\mathcal{J})$ . It is clear that the only endomorphisms and isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{J}$  are the identities, so by [proposition 1.2.29](#),  $\text{Sd}(X)$  is locally polyhedral.

(iii). Now, suppose  $X$  is locally polyhedral. Then  $X$  has free degeneracies, so  $\text{Sd}(X) \cong N(\mathcal{J})$  as above and it suffices to verify that  $\mathcal{J}$  is a poset. But  $X$  is locally polyhedral (if and) only if  $\mathcal{J}$  is a poset, so we are done. ■

**1.7.7** COROLLARY. *If  $X$  is a simplicial set with free degeneracies, then  $\text{Sd}^2(X)$  is a polyhedral simplicial set.*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 1.2.29](#) to [proposition 1.7.6](#). ■

**1.7.8** LEMMA.  $\text{Sd} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves monomorphisms.

*Proof.* Since  $\text{Sd} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves colimits, by [proposition 1.2.34](#), it suffices to verify that the morphism  $\text{Sd}(\partial\Delta^n) \rightarrow \text{Sd}(\Delta^n)$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^n$  is a monomorphism. But it is straightforward to see that  $\text{Sd}(\partial\Delta^n) \rightarrow \text{Sd}(\Delta^n)$  can be identified with  $N(\partial P^n) \rightarrow N(P^n)$ , where  $\partial P^n$  is the maximal subposet of  $P^n$  not containing the top element, so we are done. ■

**1.7.9** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. For each morphism  $z : \Lambda_k^n \rightarrow \text{Ex}(X)$ , there exists a morphism  $w : \Delta_k^n \rightarrow \text{Ex}(\text{Ex}(X))$  making the diagram below commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda_k^n & \xrightarrow{z} & \text{Ex}(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow i_{\text{Ex}(X)} \\ \Delta_k^n & \xrightarrow{w} & \text{Ex}(\text{Ex}(X)) \end{array}$$

*Proof.* See Lemma 3.2 in [Kan, 1957], or Lemma 4.7 in [GJ, Ch. III]. □

**1.7.10** LEMMA. *The functor  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves Kan fibrations. In particular, if  $X$  is a Kan complex, then so is  $\text{Ex}(X)$ .*

*Proof.* See Lemma 3.4 in [Kan, 1957], or Lemma 4.5 in [GJ, Ch. III], or Corollary 2.1.27 in [Cisinski, 2006]. □

**1.7.11** LEMMA. *The functor  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves trivial Kan fibrations. In particular, if  $X$  is a contractible Kan complex, then so is  $\text{Ex}(X)$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.3.28](#) to [lemma 1.7.8](#). ■

**1.7.12** LEMMA. *For any simplicial set  $X$ , the canonical embedding  $i_X : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}(X)$  is bijective on vertices.*

*Proof.* It is clear that  $\max : P^0 \rightarrow [0]$  is an isomorphism of partially ordered sets; thus  $i_X : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}(X)$  is bijective on vertices. ■

**1.7.13** LEMMA. *For any simplicial set  $X$ , the canonical embedding  $i_X : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}(X)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* By [corollary 1.3.11](#), each  $\text{Sd}(\Delta^n)$  is contractible, so the claim is a special case of [proposition 1.6.12](#). ■

**1.7.14** COROLLARY. *We have the following Quillen equivalence:*

$$\text{Sd} \dashv \text{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

*Proof.* [Lemma 1.7.10](#) and [lemma 1.7.11](#) say  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a right Quillen functor, so (by [proposition 5.3.2](#)) the indicated adjunction is indeed a Quillen adjunction. Consider the derived adjunction:

$$\text{LSd} \dashv \text{REx} : \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$$

By [proposition 1.5.12](#) and [lemma 1.7.13](#),  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopical functor, so  $\text{Ho } \text{Ex} : \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$  is well defined and isomorphic to both  $\text{id}$  and  $\text{REx}$ . Hence,  $\text{LSd}$  is also isomorphic to  $\text{id}$ , and (recalling [lemma 1.5.2](#)) we may apply [theorem 5.3.13](#) to deduce that we have a Quillen equivalence. ■

**1.7.15** LEMMA. *For any simplicial set  $X$ , the last vertex projection  $\lambda_X : \text{Sd}(X) \rightarrow X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* By [proposition 1.5.7](#), we may choose an anodyne extension  $j : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  be any anodyne extension where  $\hat{X}$  is a Kan complex. [Lemma 1.7.13](#) says that  $i_{\hat{X}} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \text{Ex}(\hat{X})$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence, so by [corollary 1.7.14](#), its left adjoint transpose  $\lambda_{\hat{X}} : \text{Sd}(\hat{X}) \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is also a weak homotopy



equivalence. But the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Sd}(X) & \xrightarrow{\lambda_X} & X \\ \mathrm{Sd}(j) \downarrow & & \downarrow j \\ \mathrm{Sd}(\hat{X}) & \xrightarrow{\lambda_{\hat{X}}} & \hat{X} \end{array}$$

and  $\mathrm{Sd} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves anodyne extensions, so by the 2-out-of-3 property (lemma 1.5.2) and lemma 1.5.6,  $\lambda_X : \mathrm{Sd}(X) \rightarrow X$  is also a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**1.7.16** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *There is a unique natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Sd}(\Delta^\bullet) \cong \mathrm{Sd}((\Delta^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}})$ .*
- (ii) *There is a unique natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Sd}(-) \cong \mathrm{Sd}((-)^{\mathrm{op}})$ .*
- (iii) *For each simplicial set  $X$ , there is a diagram of the form below,*

$$X \longleftarrow \mathrm{Sd}(X) \longrightarrow X^{\mathrm{op}}$$

*where the arrows are weak homotopy equivalences that are natural in  $X$ .*

- (iv) *There is a Quillen equivalence of the following form:*

$$(-)^{\mathrm{op}} \dashv (-)^{\mathrm{op}} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

- (v) *The induced automorphism  $\mathrm{Ho}(-)^{\mathrm{op}} : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). It is not hard to see that there is a unique isomorphism  $\Delta^n \cong (\Delta^n)^{\mathrm{op}}$ , namely the one that sends the  $k$ -th vertex to the  $(n - k)$ -th vertex. These isomorphisms are *not* natural, in the sense that they are incompatible with the coface and codegeneracy maps; nonetheless, these isomorphisms enable us to identify each  $\mathrm{Sd}((\Delta^n)^{\mathrm{op}})$  with  $N(P^n)$  as objects. In turn, we may identify each  $\mathrm{Sd}((\delta_n^i)^{\mathrm{op}}) : \mathrm{Sd}((\Delta^{n-1})^{\mathrm{op}}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Sd}((\Delta^n)^{\mathrm{op}})$  with the morphism  $\delta_n^{n-i} : N(P^{n-1}) \rightarrow N(P^n)$ , and similarly for the codegeneracy maps. It is then clear that there is a unique natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Sd}(\Delta^\bullet) \cong \mathrm{Sd}((\Delta^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}})$ .

- (ii). Since  $(-)^{\mathrm{op}} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $\mathrm{Sd} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  both preserve colimits, theorem 1.1.16 implies that there is a unique natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Sd}(-) \cong$

$\mathrm{Sd}((-)^{\mathrm{op}})$  extending the (unique) natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Sd}(\Delta^\bullet) \cong \mathrm{Sd}((\Delta^\bullet)^{\mathrm{op}})$  discussed above.

(iii). Given the (unique) natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Sd}(-) \cong \mathrm{Sd}((-)^{\mathrm{op}})$ , it suffices to give a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\mathrm{Sd} \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}}$ ; but this was done in [lemma 1.7.15](#).

(iv). Since  $(-)^{\mathrm{op}} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is an automorphism, we have an adjunction of the required form. It is clear that  $(-)^{\mathrm{op}}$  preserves monomorphisms, anodyne extensions, Kan fibrations, and trivial Kan fibrations, so the adjunction is a Quillen adjunction. We may also deduce that  $(-)^{\mathrm{op}}$  preserves weak homotopy equivalences, and hence that the Quillen equivalence condition is satisfied.

(v). We have a zigzag of natural weak homotopy equivalences connecting  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}}$  to  $(-)^{\mathrm{op}}$ , and it immediately follows that  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathrm{Ho}(-)^{\mathrm{op}}$ . ■

**1.7.17 ¶** For each simplicial set  $X$ , we define  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$  to be the colimit of the diagram below:

$$X \xrightarrow{i_X} \mathrm{Ex}(X) \xrightarrow{i_{\mathrm{Ex}(X)}} \mathrm{Ex}^2(X) \xrightarrow{i_{\mathrm{Ex}^2(X)}} \mathrm{Ex}^3(X) \longrightarrow \dots$$

The above defines a functor  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a natural transformation  $i^\infty : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty$ .

**1.7.18 THEOREM.**

- (i) For all simplicial sets  $X$ , the morphism  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is an anodyne extension and bijective on vertices.
- (ii) For all simplicial sets  $X$ , the simplicial set  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a Kan complex.
- (iii) The functor  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves Kan fibrations, trivial Kan fibrations, and finite limits.

*Proof.* (i). Recalling [proposition 1.5.12](#) and [lemma 1.7.13](#), we see that the canonical embedding  $i_X : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}(X)$  is an anodyne extension for all simplicial sets  $X$ ; but [proposition A.3.19](#) implies that the class of anodyne extensions is closed under transfinite composition, and  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a transfinite composite of these canonical embeddings, so  $i_X^\infty$  is also an anodyne extension. A similar argument using [lemma 1.7.12](#) shows that  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is bijective on vertices.

(ii). Since horns are finite simplicial sets, any horn  $\Lambda_k^n \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  must factor as  $\Lambda_k^n \rightarrow \text{Ex}^m(X) \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  for some  $m$ . We then apply [lemma 1.7.9](#) to deduce that  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a Kan complex.

(iii). Similar reasoning applied to [lemma 1.7.10](#) (resp. [lemma 1.7.11](#)) shows that  $\text{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves Kan fibrations (resp. trivial Kan fibrations). On the other hand, since  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves finite limits and  $\text{Ex}^\infty$  is a filtered colimit of iterations of  $\text{Ex}$ , [corollary 0.2.27](#) implies  $\text{Ex}^\infty$  also preserves finite limits.  $\blacksquare$

**1.7.19** REMARK. Neither  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  nor  $\text{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserve infinite products. Indeed, let  $X$  the simplicial set defined in [remark 1.5.11](#). We know  $X$  is weakly contractible, so the unique morphism  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X) \rightarrow \Delta^0$  must be a trivial Kan fibration (by [theorem 1.4.27](#)). However, for any infinite set  $I$ , the simplicial set  $X^I$  is *not* connected, i.e.  $\pi_0(X^I)$  is *not* a singleton. Nonetheless,  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)^I \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is a trivial Kan fibration (because the class of trivial Kan fibrations is closed under products); so the canonical morphism  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X^I) \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)^I$  cannot be a weak homotopy equivalence, let alone an isomorphism!

**1.7.20** PROPOSITION. *There exist a functor  $R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a natural transformation  $i : \text{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow R$  satisfying the following conditions:*

- *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $RX$  is a Kan complex and  $i_X : X \rightarrow RX$  is an anodyne extension.*
- *$R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves Kan fibrations and trivial Kan fibrations.*
- *$R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves finite limits.*

*Moreover, any such functor  $R$  preserves and reflects weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* By [theorem 1.7.18](#), we may take  $(R, i)$  to be  $(\text{Ex}^\infty, i^\infty)$ . Given any such  $(R, i)$ , consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{i_X} & RX \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ Y & \xrightarrow{i_Y} & RY \end{array}$$

Using [proposition 1.5.12](#) and the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences, we see that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**1.7.21** REMARK. We may construct a different functor satisfying the conditions of the above proposition by using an appropriate geometric realisation functor: see Proposition 2.4 and Proposition 10.10 in [GJ, Ch. I].

**1.7.22** THEOREM. *The Kan–Quillen model structure on  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is proper.*

*Proof.* Since every simplicial set is cofibrant, we may apply [proposition 6.1.7](#) to deduce that  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a left proper model category. On the other hand, by [proposition 1.7.20](#), the right properness of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  can be reduced to the right properness of  $\mathbf{Kan}$ , which was established by [proposition 1.4.32](#). ■

**1.7.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a Kan fibration. The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial Kan fibration.*
- (ii) *For every  $n$ -simplex  $\alpha : \Delta^n \rightarrow Y$  and any pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_\alpha & \longrightarrow & X \\ p_\alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & Y \end{array}$$

*the simplicial set  $X_\alpha$  is weakly contractible.*

- (iii) *For every vertex  $y$  of  $Y$ , the fibre of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  over  $y$  is a contractible Kan complex.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Recalling [lemma 1.5.2](#) and [proposition 1.5.12](#), this is just [proposition 1.4.13](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). The class of Kan fibrations is closed under pullback (by [proposition A.3.19](#)), so the fibre of a Kan fibration over a vertex of the base is indeed a Kan complex. Thus, we may apply [proposition 1.5.10](#).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Fix an  $n$ -simplex  $\alpha : \Delta^n \rightarrow Y$ , a pullback diagram as above, and a vertex  $y$  of  $Y$  that is contained in  $\alpha$ . We then have the following pullback square

in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_y & \longrightarrow & X_\alpha \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow p_\alpha \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & \Delta^n \end{array}$$

where  $p_\alpha : X_\alpha \rightarrow \Delta^n$  is a Kan fibration. Since  $\Delta^0$  and  $\Delta^n$  are both contractible, the 2-out-of-3 property implies that every morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^n$  is a weak homotopy equivalence; thus, by [theorem 1.7.22](#), the top horizontal arrow in the diagram above is also a weak homotopy equivalence. Hence,  $X_\alpha$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set.  $\blacksquare$

**1.7.24** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category, let  $Y$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{i''} & W'' \\ i' \downarrow & & \downarrow f'' \\ W' & \xrightarrow{f'} & W \end{array}$$

where  $i' : Z \rightarrow W'$  and  $i'' : Z \rightarrow W''$  are cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $f' : W' \rightarrow W$  and  $f'' : W'' \rightarrow W$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(i) *There is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{i''} & W'' \\ i' \downarrow & & \downarrow j'' \\ W' & \xrightarrow{j'} & \tilde{W} \end{array}$$

where  $j' : W' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  and  $j'' : W'' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  are trivial cofibrations.

(ii)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $i' : K \rightarrow L'$  if and only if  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $i'' : K \rightarrow L''$ .

*Proof.* (i). First, form the pushout  $W' \cup^Z W''$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . By hypothesis, there is a unique morphism  $W' \cup^Z W'' \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  making the evident diagram commute, and we may factor it as a cofibration  $W' \cup^Z W'' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  followed by a trivial fibration  $\tilde{W} \rightarrow W$ . Thus, by ([theorem 5.1.12](#) and) [proposition A.3.19](#) and

axiom CM2, we obtain trivial cofibrations  $j' : W' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  and  $j'' : W'' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  of the required form.

(ii). The two directions of the claim are symmetric; we will prove the ‘only if’ direction.

Suppose  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $i' : Z \rightarrow W'$ . Consider a lifting problem in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i'' \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ W'' & \xrightarrow{w''} & Y \end{array}$$

Since  $j'' : W'' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  is a trivial cofibration and  $Y$  is a fibrant object, there is a morphism  $\tilde{w} : \tilde{W} \rightarrow Y$  such that  $\tilde{w} \circ j'' = w''$ . Let  $w' = \tilde{w} \circ j'$ . Then, there is a morphism  $h' : W' \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i' \downarrow & \nearrow h' & \downarrow p \\ W' & \xrightarrow{w'} & Y \end{array}$$

In addition,  $j' : W' \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  is a trivial cofibration, so there is a morphism  $\tilde{h} : \tilde{W} \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W' & \xrightarrow{h'} & X \\ j' \downarrow & \nearrow \tilde{h} & \downarrow p \\ \tilde{W} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{w}} & Y \end{array}$$

Let  $h'' = \tilde{h} \circ j''$ . Then,

$$h'' \circ i'' = \tilde{h} \circ j'' \circ i'' = \tilde{h} \circ j' \circ i' = h' \circ i' = z$$

$$p \circ h'' = p \circ \tilde{h} \circ j'' = \tilde{w} \circ j'' = w''$$

so  $\tilde{h} : \tilde{W} \rightarrow X$  solves our original lifting problem. Thus  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  indeed has the right lifting property with respect to  $i'' : Z \rightarrow W''$ . ■

**1.7.25** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a Kan complex. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $X$  is contractible.
- (ii)  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to every monomorphism of simplicial sets.
- (iii)  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to every monomorphism of finite simplicial sets.
- (iv)  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to every boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .
- (v) For any natural number  $n$  and any morphism  $\partial x : \partial\Delta^n \rightarrow X$ , there is a commutative diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ i \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ L & & \end{array}$$

where  $L$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set and  $i : \partial\Delta^n \rightarrow L$  is a monomorphism.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii), (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Apply [remark 1.4.10](#) and [proposition 1.5.10](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii), (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv), (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (v). Immediate.

(v)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). Let  $\partial x : \partial\Delta^n \rightarrow X$  be a morphism. Suppose we are given the following commutative diagram in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ i \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ L & & \end{array}$$

where  $L$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set and  $i : \partial\Delta^n \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism. By [theorem 1.5.13](#) and [lemma 1.7.24](#), there is a commutative diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n & \xrightarrow{i} & L \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^n & \longrightarrow & \tilde{W} \end{array}$$

where  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  and  $L \rightarrow \tilde{W}$  are anodyne extensions. It is then straightforward to see that there is a morphism  $x : \Delta^n \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow x & \\ \Delta^n & & \end{array}$$

Thus,  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to every boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^n$ . ■

**I.7.26 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $X$  is weakly contractible.
- (ii)  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is contractible.
- (iii) *For any finite simplicial set  $K$  and any morphism  $k : K \rightarrow X$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ L & & \end{array}$$

*where  $L$  is a weakly contractible finite simplicial set and  $K \rightarrow L$  is a monomorphism.*

- (iv) *For any strongly finite category  $\mathbb{C}$  and any morphism  $k : N(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow X$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(\mathbb{C}) & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ L & & \end{array}$$

*where  $L$  is a weakly contractible finite simplicial set and  $N(P) \rightarrow L$  is a monomorphism.*

- (v) *For any finite poset  $P$  and any morphism  $k : N(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow X$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(P) & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ L & & \end{array}$$



where  $L$  is a weakly contractible finite simplicial set and  $N(P) \rightarrow L$  is a monomorphism.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Apply (proposition 1.5.10 and) theorem 1.7.18.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Let  $K$  be a finite simplicial set and let  $k : K \rightarrow X$  be a morphism. We then have an inclusion  $K \hookrightarrow K^\triangleright$ , where  $K^\triangleright$  is a contractible finite simplicial set (by lemma 1.3.20). Since  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a contractible Kan complex, by remark 1.4.10, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow i_X^\infty \\ K^\triangleright & \dashrightarrow & \text{Ex}^\infty(X) \end{array}$$

Moreover, since  $K^\triangleright$  is a finite simplicial set, the bottom horizontal arrow factors through the canonical inclusion  $\text{Ex}^n(X) \hookrightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  for some natural number  $n$ , yielding the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow i_X^n \\ K^\triangleright & \xrightarrow{\bar{k}} & \text{Ex}^n(X) \end{array}$$

Thus, by corollary 1.7.14, we have a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Sd}^n(K) & \xrightarrow{\lambda_K^n} & K \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow k \\ \text{Sd}^n(K^\triangleright) & \xrightarrow{w} & X \end{array}$$

where  $\lambda_K^n : \text{Sd}^n(K) \rightarrow K$  is the  $n$ -fold iterated last vertex projection. Note that  $\text{Sd}^n(K) \rightarrow \text{Sd}^n(K^\triangleright)$  is indeed a monomorphism, by lemma 1.7.8. Now consider the following pushout diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Sd}^n(K) & \xrightarrow{\lambda_K^n} & K \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{Sd}^n(K^\triangleright) & \longrightarrow & L \end{array}$$

By lemma 1.7.15,  $\lambda_K^n : \text{Sd}^n(K) \rightarrow K$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, so theorem 1.7.22 implies that  $\text{Sd}^n(K^\triangleright) \rightarrow L$  is also a weak homotopy equivalence. Hence,  $L$  is a weakly contractible finite simplicial set, and by the universal property of pushouts, we obtain a morphism  $L \rightarrow X$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ L & & \end{array}$$

as required.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv), (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v). Immediate.

(v)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $m$  be a natural number and consider a morphism  $\partial\Delta^m \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  be a morphism. Since  $\partial\Delta^n$  is a finite simplicial set,  $\partial\Delta^m \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  must factor through the canonical inclusion  $\text{Ex}^n(X) \hookrightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  for some  $n \geq 1$ , say as a morphism  $\partial x : \partial\Delta^m \rightarrow \text{Ex}^n(X)$ . Let  $k : \text{Sd}^n(\partial\Delta^m) \rightarrow X$  be the adjoint transpose. Proposition 1.7.6 implies that  $\text{Sd}^n(\partial\Delta^m)$  is (isomorphic to) the nerve of a poset, so by hypothesis, there is a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Sd}^n(\partial\Delta^m) & \xrightarrow{k} & X \\ i \downarrow & \nearrow l & \\ L & & \end{array}$$

where  $L$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set and  $i : \text{Sd}^n(\partial\Delta^m) \rightarrow L$  is a monomorphism. Then, the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \partial\Delta^m & \xrightarrow{\quad \partial x \quad} & \text{Ex}^n(X) & \hookrightarrow & \text{Ex}^\infty(X) \\ & \searrow \eta_{\partial\Delta^m} & \uparrow \text{Ex}^n(k) & & \\ & \text{Ex}^n(\text{Sd}^n(\partial\Delta^m)) & & & \\ & \downarrow \text{Ex}^n(i) & \nearrow \text{Ex}^n(l) & & \\ & \text{Ex}^n(L) & & & \end{array}$$

where  $\eta_{\partial\Delta^m} : \partial\Delta^m \rightarrow \text{Ex}^n(\text{Sd}^n(\partial\Delta^m))$  is the adjunction unit, and by lemma 1.7.13,  $\text{Ex}^n(L)$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set. By factoring  $\partial\Delta^m \rightarrow \text{Ex}^n(L)$  as a monomorphism followed by a weak equivalence if necessary, we may apply lemma 1.7.25 to deduce that  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is contractible.  $\blacksquare$

## I.8 Bar and cobar complexes

**Prerequisites.** §§ I.1, I.3, I.6, 5.5, A.5, A.6.

**I.8.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

The **bar complex** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the simplicial set  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ , where

$$B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) = \coprod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} (Gc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_{n-1}, c_n) \times \cdots \times \mathbb{C}(c_0, c_1) \times Fc_0)$$

with  $(c_0, \dots, c_n)$  ranging over  $(n+1)$ -tuples of objects in  $\mathbb{C}$ , face maps defined by the following formulae,

$$\begin{aligned} d_0^n(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) &= (y, f_n, \dots, f_2, F(f_1)(x)) \\ d_i^n(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) &= (y, f_n, \dots, f_{i+1} \circ f_i, \dots, f_1, x) \\ d_n^n(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) &= (G(f_n)(y), f_{n-1}, \dots, f_1, x) \end{aligned}$$

and degeneracy maps defined as below:

$$\begin{aligned} s_0^n(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) &= (y, f_n, \dots, f_1, \text{id}_{c_0}, x) \\ s_i^n(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) &= (y, f_n, \dots, f_{i+1}, \text{id}_{c_i}, f_i, \dots, f_1, x) \\ s_n^n(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) &= (y, \text{id}_{c_n}, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) \end{aligned}$$

The **cobar complex** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the cosimplicial set  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ , where

$$C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) = \prod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} [Gc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \cdots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0]$$

with  $(c_0, \dots, c_n)$  ranging over  $(n+1)$ -tuples of objects in  $\mathbb{C}$ , coface maps defined by the following formulae,

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_n^0(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} &= \left( (y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto F(f_1) \left( x_{(c_1, \dots, c_n)}(y, f_n, \dots, f_2) \right) \right) \\ \delta_n^i(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} &= \left( (y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto x_{(\dots, \hat{c}_i, \dots)}(y, f_n, \dots, f_i \circ f_{i+1}, \dots, f_1) \right) \\ \delta_n^n(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} &= \left( (y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto x_{(c_0, \dots, c_{n-1})}(G(f_n)(y), f_{n-1}, \dots, f_1) \right) \end{aligned}$$

and codegeneracy maps defined as below:

$$\sigma_n^0(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} = \left( (y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto x_{c_0, c_0, \dots, c_n}(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, \text{id}_{c_0}) \right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_n^i(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} &= ((y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto x_{\dots, c_i, c_i, \dots}(y, f_n, \dots, f_{i+1}, \text{id}_{c_i}, f_i, \dots, f_1)) \\ \sigma_n^n(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} &= ((y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto x_{c_0, \dots, c_n, c_n}(y, \text{id}_{c_n}, f_n, \dots, f_1))\end{aligned}$$

**I.8.2** REMARK. It is clear that  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is covariantly functorial in both  $F$  and  $G$ , while  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is contravariantly functorial in  $G$  and covariantly functorial in  $F$ . One may also verify that there are bijections

$$\mathbf{Set}(B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), X) \cong C^n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(F, X))$$

that are natural in  $n$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $X$ : this is one sense in which the bar complex and cobar complex are formally dual.

**I.8.3** REMARK. There is another duality principle for bar complexes, namely the following natural isomorphism:

$$B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)^{\text{op}} \cong B_\bullet(F, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, G)$$

Unfortunately, there is no such statement for cobar complexes.

**I.8.4** REMARK. The nerve  $N(\mathbb{C})$  of a small category  $\mathbb{C}$  is isomorphic to the bar complex  $B_\bullet(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1)$ , so there is a canonical morphism  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{C})$  for any  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and any  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

**I.8.5** REMARK. More generally, the bar complex  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is isomorphic to the nerve of the following category  $\mathbf{G}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ :

- The objects are tuples  $(y, c, x)$ , where  $c$  is an object in  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $x$  is an element of  $Fc$ , and  $y$  is an element of  $Gc$ .
- The morphisms  $(y, c, x) \rightarrow (y', c', x')$  are morphisms  $f : c \rightarrow c'$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $F(f)(x) = x'$  and  $G(f)(y) = y'$ .
- Composition and identities are inherited from  $\mathbb{C}$ .

In particular, given a functor  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ ,  $B_\bullet(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, U^* h^d)$  may be identified with the nerve of the comma category  $(d \downarrow U)$ , and  $B_\bullet(U^* h_d, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1)$  with the nerve of the comma category  $(U \downarrow d)$ .

**I.8.6** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.

- A **bar complex** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a simplicial object  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  with bijections

$$\mathcal{M}(B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong C^n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M))$$

that are natural in both  $n$  and  $M$ .

- A **cobar complex** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a cosimplicial object  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  with bijections

$$\mathcal{M}(M, C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}(M, F))$$

that are natural in both  $n$  and  $M$ .

**I.8.7** REMARK. Of course, this definition agrees with the previous one (up to isomorphism) in the special case  $\mathcal{M} = \mathbf{Set}$ , and it is clear that a cobar complex in  $\mathcal{M}$  for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  becomes a bar complex in  $\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}$  for  $F^{\text{op}} : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}$  weighted by the same  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , and vice versa.

**I.8.8** REMARK. By general considerations about the representability of limits, we see that bar complexes exist for all small diagrams and weights if  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for small families of objects, while cobar complexes exist for all small diagrams and weights if  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for small families of objects.

**I.8.9** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , we have a bijection

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}](G, F) \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

that is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .

*Proof.* It is not hard to see that the (non-full) subcategory  $\{[0] \rightrightarrows [1]\}$  is coinital in  $\Delta$ , so it suffices to show that there is an equaliser diagram of the following form,

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}](G, F) \longrightarrow C^0(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\delta^0} \\ \xleftarrow{\delta^1} \end{array} C^1(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

However, if we take the map  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}](G, F) \rightarrow C^0(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  to be the one sending a natural transformation  $\alpha : G \Rightarrow F$  to its underlying family of maps  $(\alpha_c : Gc \rightarrow Fc \mid c \in \text{ob } \mathbb{C})$ , then it is clear that the diagram is indeed an equaliser. ■

**I.8.I0** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.*

- *Given a bar complex  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the colimit  $\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the weighted colimit  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the two are isomorphic:*

$$G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

- *Given a cobar complex  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the limit  $\varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the weighted limit  $\{G, F\}^{\mathbb{C}}$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the two are isomorphic:*

$$\{G, F\}^{\mathbb{C}} \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $M$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Using [lemma A.5.12](#), [proposition A.5.13](#), and [lemma I.8.9](#), we obtain the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \{G, \mathcal{M}(F, M)\}^{\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}} &\cong [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](G, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\ &\cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\ &\cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} \mathcal{M}(B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \end{aligned}$$

It follows by the Yoneda lemma that  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ . ■

**I.8.II** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- (i) *For each natural number  $n$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves limits, weighted limits, and ends.*
- (ii) *For each natural number  $n$  and each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $C^n(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends colimits to limits, weighted colimits to weighted limits, and coends to ends.*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**I.8.I2** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for small families of objects, then:*

- (i) *For each natural number  $n$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves colimits, weighted colimits, and coends.*
- (ii) *For each natural number  $n$  and each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , the functor  $B_n(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves colimits, weighted colimits, and coends.*

*Dually, if  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for small families of objects, then:*

- (i) *For each natural number  $n$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves limits, weighted limits, and ends.*
- (ii) *For each natural number  $n$  and each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $C^n(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends colimits to limits, weighted colimits to weighted limits, and coends to ends.*

*Proof.* We may use the Yoneda lemma to reduce the claims to the case in the previous lemma. ■

**I.8.I3** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a diagram and let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a weight. For all sets  $X$ , we have bijections*

$$B_n(G \times X, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong X \times B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, X \times F)$$

*that are natural in  $X$ ,  $F$ , and  $G$ .*

- *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a diagram and let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a weight. For all sets  $X$ , we have bijections*

$$C^n(X \times G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong [X, C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F)] \cong C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])$$

*that are natural in  $X$ ,  $F$ , and  $G$ .*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**I.8.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for small families of objects, then:*

- (i) *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a weight and let  $M$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . We then have bijections*

$$\mathcal{M}(B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \int_{(c', c) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h_c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M))$$

*that are natural in  $n$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $M$ .*

- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is cotensored, then for each natural number  $n$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has a right adjoint, namely the functor that sends an object  $M$  to the diagram  $c \mapsto B_n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c) \pitchfork M$ .*
- (iii) *For each natural number  $n$  and each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , the functor  $B_n(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has a right adjoint, namely the functor that sends an object  $M$  to the weight  $c \mapsto C^n(h_c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M))$ .*

*Dually, if  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for small families of objects, then:*

- (i') *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a weight, and let  $M$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . We then have bijections*

$$\mathcal{M}(M, C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \int_{(c', c) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h_c), \mathcal{M}(M, Gc' \pitchfork Fc))$$

*that are natural in  $n$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $M$ .*

- (ii') *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is tensored, then for each natural number  $n$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the functor  $C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has a left adjoint, namely the functor that sends an object  $M$  to the diagram  $c \mapsto B_n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c) \odot M$ .*
- (iii') *For each natural number  $n$  and each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , the functor  $C^n(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has a left adjoint, namely the functor that sends an object  $M$  to the weight  $c \mapsto C^n(h_c, \mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}(M, F))$ .*

*Proof.* The two sets of claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

- (i). Using the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)), the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)), and [proposition I.8.12](#), we obtain the following



natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \int_{(c',c):\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbf{B}_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M)) \\
 & \cong \int_{(c',c):\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(h^c, \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M))) \\
 & \cong \int_{c':\mathbb{C}} \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(h^c, \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M))) \\
 & \cong \int_{c':\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(h^c, \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M))) \\
 & \cong \int_{c':\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot F, M)) \\
 & \cong \int_{c':\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(Gc' \times h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\
 & \cong \mathbf{C}^n\left(\int_{c':\mathbb{C}} Gc' \times h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)\right) \\
 & \cong \mathbf{C}^n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\
 & \cong \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{B}_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M)
 \end{aligned}$$

(ii). Similarly, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{B}_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) & \cong \mathbf{C}^n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\
 & \cong \mathbf{C}^n\left(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(h^c, \mathcal{M}(Fc, M))\right) \\
 & \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(h^c, \mathcal{M}(Fc, M))) \\
 & \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbf{B}_n(G, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(Fc, M)) \\
 & \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{M}(Fc, \mathbf{B}_n(G, \mathbb{C}, h^c) \pitchfork M)
 \end{aligned}$$

Now apply [remark A.6.5](#).

(iii). Along the same lines:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{B}_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) & \cong \mathbf{C}^n(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\
 & \cong \mathbf{C}^n\left(\int_{c:\mathbb{C}} Gc \times h_c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(Gc \times h_c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\
&\cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{C}^n(Gc \times h_c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)) \\
&\cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(Gc, \mathbf{C}^n(h_c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}(F, M)))
\end{aligned}$$

Note that in the last step we are appealing to [lemma 1.8.13](#). ■

**1.8.15** REMARK. The above proposition shows that bar complexes are a certain kind of weighted colimit, while cobar complexes are a certain kind of weighted limit.

**1.8.16** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $\mathcal{A}$  be any category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.

- Given  $\odot : \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , a **bar complex** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is a simplicial object  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  equipped with bijections

$$\mathcal{M}(B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \int_{(c', c) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M))$$

that are natural in both  $n$  and  $M$ .

- Given  $\pitchfork : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , a **cobar complex** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  weighted by  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is a cosimplicial object  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  equipped with bijections

$$\mathcal{M}(M, C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \int_{(c', c) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(M, Gc' \pitchfork Fc))$$

that are natural in both  $n$  and  $M$ .

**1.8.17** REMARK. Although the definition given here is stated using an end, one can also state a version that only uses products. Thus these generalised bar (resp. cobar) complexes exist in a locally small category  $\mathcal{M}$  as soon as  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts (resp. products) for small families of objects.

**1.8.18** REMARK. In the case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{M} = \mathbf{sSet}$ , we will almost always take  $A \odot M = A \times M$  and  $A \pitchfork M = [A, M]$ . With this choice, the formulae of [definition 1.8.1](#) (understood appropriately) can be applied verbatim.

**I.8.19** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $\mathcal{A}$  be any category, and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.

- Given  $\odot : \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , a weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ , and a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , if  $B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is a bar complex in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then

$$\int^{c:\mathbb{C}} Gc \odot Fc \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

where the LHS coend exists in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the RHS colimit exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Given  $\pitchfork : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , a weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ , and a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , if  $C^{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is a cobar complex in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then

$$\int_{c:\mathbb{C}} Gc \pitchfork Fc \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

where the LHS end exists in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the RHS limit exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $M$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \varprojlim_{\Delta} \mathcal{M}(B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) &\cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} \int_{(c',c):\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_{\bullet}(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M)) \\ &\cong \int_{(c',c):\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}\left(\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M)\right) \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we have used [proposition A.6.11](#). By [proposition I.8.10](#),

$$\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c) \cong \mathbb{C}(c, c')$$

and the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)) implies

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{(c',c):\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{C}(c', c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M)) \\ \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \int_{c':\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{C}(c', c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M)) \end{aligned}$$

but by the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)),

$$\int_{c':\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{C}(c', c), \mathcal{M}(Gc' \odot Fc, M)) \cong \mathcal{M}(Gc \odot Fc, M)$$

so we deduce that

$$\lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{B}_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathcal{M}(Gc \odot Fc, M)$$

naturally in  $M$ . Hence,

$$\int^{c:\mathbb{C}} Gc \odot Fc \cong \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{B}_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

where the LHS exists in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the RHS exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**I.8.20** LEMMA. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories. There is a natural transformation  $\mathbf{C}^\bullet(-, \mathbb{D}, -) \Rightarrow \mathbf{C}^\bullet(-U, \mathbb{C}, -U)$  such that the following diagram of cosimplicial sets commutes for all weights  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{disc } [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}](G, F) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{C}^\bullet(G, \mathbb{D}, F) \\ U^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{disc } [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}](GU, FU) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{C}^\bullet(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the maximal augmentations.<sup>[1]</sup>

*Proof.* By definition,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{C}^n(G, \mathbb{D}, F) &= \prod_{(d_0, \dots, d_n)} [Gd_n \times \mathbb{D}(d_n, d_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{D}(d_1, d_0), Fd_0] \\ \mathbf{C}^n(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU) &= \prod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} [GUc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), FUc_0] \end{aligned}$$

so the maps  $U : \mathbb{C}(c, c') \rightarrow \mathbb{D}(Uc, Uc')$  induce a morphism of cobar complexes with the required properties. ■

**I.8.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.*

- *Let  $\odot : \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be given and assume  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for small families of objects. There is a natural transformation*

$$\mathbf{B}_\bullet(-U, \mathbb{C}, -U) \Rightarrow \mathbf{B}_\bullet(-, \mathbb{D}, -)$$

[1] Recall [definition I.6.17](#) and [lemma I.8.9](#).

of functors  $[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{A}] \times [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathbf{cM}$ , and when  $\mathcal{M}$  is cocomplete, the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  commutes for all weights  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  and all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} GUc \odot FUc \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{D}, F) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \int^{d:\mathbb{D}} Gd \odot Fd \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical isomorphisms<sup>[2]</sup> and the right vertical arrow is the canonical comparison morphism.

- Let  $\pitchfork : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be given and assume  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for small families of objects. There is a natural transformation

$$C^{\bullet}(-, \mathbb{D}, -) \Rightarrow C^{\bullet}(-U, \mathbb{C}, -U)$$

of functors  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{A}]^{\text{op}} \times [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathbf{cM}$ , and when  $\mathcal{M}$  is complete, the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  commutes for all weights  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  and all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} Gd \pitchfork Fd & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} C^{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{D}, F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} GUc \pitchfork FUc & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} C^{\bullet}(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical isomorphisms and the left vertical arrow is the canonical comparison morphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Recalling [proposition 1.8.14](#), it not hard to see that

$$B_{\bullet}(U^* h_{d'}, \mathbb{C}, U^* h^d) \cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbb{D}(Uc', d') \times B_{\bullet}(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c) \times \mathbb{D}(d, Uc)$$

and thus, applying the interchange law ([theorem A.6.17](#)) and the Yoneda lemma for coends ([proposition A.6.18](#)):

[2] See [proposition 1.8.19](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}(\mathbf{B}_\bullet(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU), M) \\ \cong \int_{(d', d): \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbf{B}_\bullet(U^* h_{d'}, \mathbb{C}, U^* h^d), \mathcal{M}(Gd' \odot Fd, M)) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}\left(\int^{c: \mathbb{C}} GUc \odot FUc, M\right) \\ \cong \int_{(d', d): \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D}} \mathbf{Set}(U^* h_{d'} \star_{\mathbb{C}} U^* h^d, \mathcal{M}(Gd' \odot Fd, M)) \end{aligned}$$

so it suffices to verify that there is a natural commutative diagram of the form below in **Set**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{B}_\bullet(U^* h_{d'}, \mathbb{C}, U^* h^d) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & U^* h_{d'} \star_{\mathbb{C}} U^* h^d \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{B}_\bullet(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & h_{d'} \star_{\mathbb{D}} h^d \end{array}$$

In particular, it is enough to prove the original claim in the special case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{M} = \mathbf{Set}$  and  $\odot = \times$ ; but this can in turn be reduced to [lemma 1.8.20](#) by considering the Yoneda embedding  $\mathbf{Set}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\mathbf{Set}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**1.8.22** LEMMA. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories, let  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a weight. Then we have the following pullback diagram in **sSet**,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{B}_\bullet(G \circ U, \mathbb{C}, F \circ U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}_\bullet(G, \mathbb{D}, F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{B}_\bullet(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{B}_\bullet(\Delta 1, \mathbb{D}, \Delta 1) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the unique natural transformations  $F \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  and  $G \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  and the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparison morphisms of [proposition 1.8.21](#).

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**1.8.23** COROLLARY. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories, let  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight. Then we have the following pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B(G \circ U, \mathbb{C}, F \circ U) & \longrightarrow & B(G, \mathbb{D}, F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{D}, \Delta 1) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the unique natural transformations  $F \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  and  $G \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  and the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparison morphisms of [proposition 1.8.21](#).

*Proof.* By [lemma 1.6.8](#), it suffices to verify that the corresponding diagram of bar complexes is a pullback square in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , but that follows by applying [lemma 1.8.22](#) degreeewise.  $\blacksquare$

**1.8.24** THEOREM. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$  be two small categories, let  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{M}$  be two locally small categories, and let  $\otimes : \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ ,  $\odot : \mathcal{A} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ ,  $\lrcorner : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and  $\underline{\mathcal{M}} : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be functors. Suppose  $\mathcal{A}$  has coproducts for small families of objects, that there are bijections

$$\mathcal{M}(A \odot M, N) \cong \mathcal{A}(A, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(M, N)) \cong \mathcal{M}(M, A \lrcorner N)$$

that are natural in  $A$ ,  $M$ , and  $N$ , and that there are isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} (A \otimes B) \odot M &\cong A \odot (B \odot M) \\ (A \otimes B) \lrcorner M &\cong A \lrcorner (B \lrcorner M) \end{aligned}$$

that are natural in  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $M$ .

- Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be a weight, and let  $H : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be a functor. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for small families of objects, then there is an isomorphism

$$B_m(B_n(G, \mathbb{D}, H), \mathbb{C}, F) \cong B_n(G, \mathbb{D}, B_m(H, \mathbb{C}, F))$$

that is natural in  $m$ ,  $n$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ .

## I. SIMPLICIAL SETS

---

- Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be a weight, and let  $H : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be a functor. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for small families of objects, then there is an isomorphism

$$\mathbb{C}^m(\mathbb{B}_n(G, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, H), \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \mathbb{C}^n(G, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}^m(H, \mathbb{C}, F))$$

that is natural in  $m, n, F, G$ , and  $H$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $M$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $K : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \times \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be the functor defined below:

$$K(d', c', d, c) = \mathcal{A}(Gd' \otimes H(c', d), \underline{\mathcal{M}}(Fc, M))$$

Notice that we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} K(d', c', d, c) &\cong \mathcal{M}((Gd' \otimes H(c', d)) \odot Fc, M) \\ &\cong \mathcal{M}(Gd' \odot (H(c', d) \odot Fc), M) \\ &\cong \mathcal{M}(H(c', d) \odot Fc, Gd' \pitchfork M) \end{aligned}$$

Now, using the definition of the generalised bar complex, we obtain the natural bijections shown below:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{B}_m(\mathbb{B}_n(G, \mathbb{D}, H), \mathbb{C}, F), M) &\cong \int_{(c', c)} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{B}_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{B}_m(G, \mathbb{D}, H(c', -)) \odot Fc, M)) \\ &\cong \int_{(c', c)} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{B}_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathcal{A}(\mathbb{B}_m(G, \mathbb{D}, H(c', -)), \underline{\mathcal{M}}(Fc, M))) \\ &\cong \int_{(c', c)} \mathbf{Set}\left(\mathbb{B}_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \int_{(d', d)} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{B}_m(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d), K(d', c', d, c))\right) \\ &\cong \int_{(c', c)} \int_{(d', d)} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{B}_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c) \times \mathbb{B}_m(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d), K(d', c', d, c)) \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{B}_n(G, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{B}_m(H, \mathbb{C}, F)), M) &\cong \int_{(d', d)} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{B}_n(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d), \mathcal{M}(Gd' \odot \mathbb{B}_m(H(-, d), \mathbb{C}, F), M)) \\ &\cong \int_{(d', d)} \mathbf{Set}(\mathbb{B}_n(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d), \mathcal{M}(\mathbb{B}_m(H(-, d), \mathbb{C}, F), Gd' \pitchfork M)) \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} &\cong \int_{(d',d)} \mathbf{Set} \left( B_n(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d), \int_{(c',c)} \mathbf{Set} (B_m(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), K(d', c', d, c)) \right) \\ &\cong \int_{(d',d)} \int_{(c',c)} \mathbf{Set} (B_n(h_{d'}, \mathbb{D}, h^d) \times B_m(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), K(d', c', d, c)) \end{aligned}$$

and so, applying the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)), we obtain a natural bijection

$$\mathcal{M}(B_m(B_n(G, \mathbb{D}, H), \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \mathcal{M}(B_n(G, \mathbb{D}, B_m(H, \mathbb{C}, F)), M)$$

and the claim follows by the Yoneda lemma.  $\blacksquare$

**I.8.25** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- Given  $\odot : \mathcal{A} \times \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the **bar construction** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  weighted by a functor  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is the following coend:

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, F) = \int^{[n]:\Delta} \Delta^n \times B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

In other words,  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is the realisation  $|B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)|$ .

- Given  $\pitchfork : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the **cobar construction** for a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  weighted by a functor  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is the following end:

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, F) = \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F)]$$

In other words,  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is the totalisation  $\text{Tot } C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ .

**I.8.26** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight. We then have bijections

$$(B(G, \mathbb{C}, F))_n \cong B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)$$

that are natural in  $n$ .

*Proof.* Apply [lemma 1.6.8](#) to [remark 1.8.18](#).  $\blacksquare$

**I.8.27** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be weight. Then the bar construction  $B(\text{disc } G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } F)$  is isomorphic to the bar complex  $B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ .  $\blacksquare$

**I.8.28** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be weight. Then the bar construction  $B(F, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, G)$  is isomorphic to  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, F)^{\text{op}}$ .* ■

**I.8.29** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight. We then have bijections*

$$(C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F))_m \cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, C^n(G_l, \mathbb{C}, F_l))$$

*that are natural in  $n$ ,  $m$ ,  $F$ , and  $G$ .*

*Proof.* By [remark I.8.18](#),

$$C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \prod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} [Gc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0]$$

so (by the Yoneda lemma) we have the following natural bijection in degree  $m$ :

$$(C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F))_m \cong \prod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^m \times Gc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0)$$

Moreover, by [remark A.6.5](#),

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^m \times Gc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0) \\ & \cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m \times G_lc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), F_lc_0) \\ & \cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathbf{Set}(G_lc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), F_lc_0)) \end{aligned}$$

and the claim follows. ■

**I.8.30** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight. We then have bijections*

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))$$

*that are natural in  $X$ .*

*Proof.* [Lemma I.6.22](#) says,

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, C^m(G, \mathbb{C}, F)_m)$$

and by lemma 1.8.29,

$$C^m(G, \mathbb{C}, F)_m \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, C^m(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))$$

so the interchange law for ends (theorem A.6.17) and the Yoneda lemma for ends (proposition A.6.18), we obtain the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(X_m, \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, C^m(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))\right) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, C^m(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, C^m(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))) \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, C^m(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))) \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)) \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**I.8.31** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. For any diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , any weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , and any simplicial set  $Y$ , there is an isomorphism

$$[B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y] \cong C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y])$$

and it is natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $Y$ .

*Proof.* The Yoneda lemma implies it is enough to show that there is a bijection

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, [B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y]) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]))$$

that is natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $X$ , and  $Y$ . Now,

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, [B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y]) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X \times B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y)$$

and by remark A.6.5 and lemma 1.8.26:

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X \times B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y) \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m \times B_m(G_m, \mathbb{C}, F_m), Y_m)$$

On the other hand, by lemma 1.8.30:

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y])) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]_n))$$

and by the Yoneda lemma,

$$[Fc, Y]_n \cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times Fc, Y) \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times F_m c, Y_m)$$

thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]_n)) \\ \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times F_m, Y_m))) \end{aligned}$$

but we know that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times F_m, Y_m))) \\ \cong \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(F_m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, Y_m)))) \\ \cong \mathbf{Set}(X_n, \mathbf{Set}(B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_m), \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, Y_m))) \\ \cong \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathbf{Set}(X_n \times B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_m), Y_m)) \end{aligned}$$

and so, by the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)),

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times F_m, Y_m))) \\ \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathbf{Set}(X_n \times B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_m), Y_m)) \\ \cong \mathbf{Set}(X_m \times B_n(G_m, \mathbb{C}, F_m), Y_m) \end{aligned}$$

thus an application of the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)) completes the proof. ■

**1.8.32** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. For any diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , any weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , and any simplicial set  $Y$ , there is an isomorphism*

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(F_n, Y_n))$$

and it is natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $Y$ .

*Proof.* The Yoneda lemma implies

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y) \cong [B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y]_0$$

and by lemma 1.8.31,

$$[B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), Y]_0 \cong (C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]))_0$$

but lemma 1.8.30 implies

$$(C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]))_0 \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]_m)$$

and using remark A.6.5 and the fact that  $C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, -)$  preserves limits, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{[m]:\Delta} C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y]_m) &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^m \times F, Y)) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m \times F_n, Y_n)) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}(F_n, Y_n))) \end{aligned}$$

Applying the interchange law (theorem A.6.17) and the Yoneda lemma for ends (proposition A.6.18) then yields the required natural bijection.  $\blacksquare$

**I.8.33** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $\mathcal{A}$  be any category.*

- *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be a weight, and let  $M$  be a simplicial set. Given  $\odot : \mathcal{A} \times \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , we have bijections*

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(B_{\bullet}(\hbar_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, \hbar^c), [Gc' \odot Fc, M])$$

*that are natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $M$ .*

- *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be a weight, and let  $M$  be a simplicial set. Given  $\pitchfork : \mathcal{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , we have bijections*

$$\mathbf{sSet}(M, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(B_{\bullet}(\hbar_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, \hbar^c), [M, Gc' \pitchfork Fc])$$

*that are natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $M$ .*

*Proof.* We will prove the first claim; the second can be proved in a similar way.

By definition, we have the natural bijection

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M)$$

and furthermore, we also have the following:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F), [\Delta^n, M]) \\
 &\cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathbf{sSet}(Gc' \odot Fc, [\Delta^n, M])) \\
 &\cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, [Gc' \odot Fc, M])) \\
 &\cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(\text{disc } B_n(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c) \times \Delta^n, [Gc' \odot Fc, M])
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, applying the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)) and [corollary 1.6.9](#), we obtain

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, F), M) \cong \int_{(c', c): \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(B_\bullet(h_{c'}, \mathbb{C}, h^c), [Gc' \odot Fc, M])$$

as required. ■

**1.8.34** PROPOSITION. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

- *There is a natural transformation*

$$B(-U, \mathbb{C}, -U) \Rightarrow B(-, \mathbb{D}, -)$$

*of functors  $[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \times [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  such that the following diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  commutes for all weights  $G : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU) & \longrightarrow & \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} GUc \times FUc \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 B(G, \mathbb{D}, F) & \longrightarrow & \int^{d:\mathbb{D}} Gd \times Fd
 \end{array}$$

*where the horizontal arrows and the right vertical arrow are the canonical comparison morphisms.* <sup>[3]</sup>

- *There is a natural transformation*

$$C(-, \mathbb{D}, -) \Rightarrow C(-U, \mathbb{C}, -U)$$

---

[3] See [lemma 1.6.7](#).

of functors  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \times [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  such that the following diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  commutes for all weights  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} [Gd, Fd] & \longrightarrow & C(G, \mathbb{D}, F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [GUc, FUc] & \longrightarrow & C(GU, \mathbb{C}, FU) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows and the right vertical arrow are the canonical comparison morphisms.<sup>[4]</sup>

*Proof.* In view of the functoriality of  $|-|$  (resp.  $\text{Tot}(-)$ ), this is an immediate consequence of [proposition 1.8.19](#). ■

**I.8.35** ¶ Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. Extending the notation used previously, we make the following definitions:

- Given a functor  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the functor defined by  $c \mapsto B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c)$ .
- Given a functor  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F) : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the functor defined by  $c \mapsto B(\text{disc } h_c, \mathbb{C}, F)$ .
- Given a functor  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the functor defined by  $c \mapsto C(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c)$ .
- Given a functor  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F) : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the functor defined by  $c \mapsto C(\text{disc } h^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$ .

**I.8.36** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- (i) For each weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , we have an adjunction of the form below:

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, -) \dashv [B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

- (ii) For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , we have an adjunction of the form below:

$$B(-, \mathbb{C}, F) \dashv C(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, -]) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

[4] See [lemma 1.6.21](#).

## I. SIMPLICIAL SETS

---

(iii) For each simplicial set  $X$ , there are isomorphisms

$$B(X \times G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong X \times B(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong B(G, \mathbb{C}, X \times F)$$

that are natural in  $X$ ,  $F$ , and  $G$ .

Dually:

(i') For each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , we have an adjunction of the form below:

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times (-) \dashv C(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

(ii') For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , we have an adjunction of the form below:

$$C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, [-, F]) \dashv C(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

(iii') For each simplicial set  $X$ , there are isomorphisms

$$C(X \times G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong [X, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)] \cong C(G, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])$$

that are natural in  $X$ ,  $F$ , and  $G$ .

*Proof.* (i). Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram and let  $Y$  be a simplicial set. By [remark A.6.5](#), we have the following natural bijection,

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](F, [B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), Y]) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(Fc, [B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c), Y])$$

and by definition,

$$\mathbf{sSet}(Fc, [B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c), Y]) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(Fc \times B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c), Y)$$

so it suffices to show that there is a natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} Fc \times B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h^c)$$

Since limits and colimits in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  can be computed degree-wise, by [lemma 1.8.26](#), this amounts to showing that there are natural bijections

$$B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} F_n c \times B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c)$$



and (after expanding the definition of  $B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c)$ ) this is a straightforward consequence of the Yoneda lemma for coends ([proposition A.6.18](#)).

(ii). [Corollary 1.8.28](#) then implies we have an adjunction of the form below,

$$B(-, \mathbb{C}, F) \dashv [B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F), -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

but [lemma 1.8.31](#) says there is a natural isomorphism

$$[B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F), Y] \cong C(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, Y])$$

so we are done.

(iii). This is an immediate consequence of lemmas [1.8.13](#) and [1.8.26](#).

(i'). Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram and let  $X$  be a simplicial set. By [remark A.6.5](#), we have the following natural bijection,

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times X, F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_c) \times X, Fc)$$

and furthermore, by [lemma 1.8.26](#):

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_c) \times X, Fc) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c) \times X_n, F_n c)$$

Now, we have

$$\mathbf{Set}(B_n(G_n, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c), F_n c) \cong C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}(h_c, F_n c))$$

and since  $C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, -)$  preserves limits,

$$\int_{c:\mathbb{C}} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}(h_c, F_n c)) \cong C^n\left(G_n, \mathbb{C}, \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{Set}(h_c, F_n c)\right) \cong C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)$$

where in the last step we used the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)).

Thus, by the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)),

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times X, F) & \\ & \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(X_n, \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}(h_c, F_n c))\right) \\ & \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)) \end{aligned}$$

so [lemma 1.8.30](#) yields the required natural bijection:

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times X, F) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F))$$

(ii'). Let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight and let  $X$  be a simplicial set. We wish to construct a natural bijection of the following form:

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, C(G, \mathbb{C}, F))$$

To begin, by [remark A.6.5](#),

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(Gc, C(\text{disc } \mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]))$$

and by [lemma 1.8.30](#),

$$\mathbf{sSet}(Gc, C(\text{disc } \mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(G_n c, C^n(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n))$$

but clearly,

$$\mathbf{Set}(G_n c, C^n(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n)) \cong C^n(G_n c \times \mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n)$$

and since  $C(-, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n)$  takes colimits to limits, the Yoneda lemma for coends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) implies

$$\int_{c:\mathbb{C}} C^n(G_n c \times \mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n) \cong C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n)$$

so by using the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)):

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])) &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} C^n(G_n c \times \mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n) \\ &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n) \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, the Yoneda lemma implies  $[X, Fc]_n \cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times X, Fc)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n) &\cong C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times X, F)) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, F_m)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_m)))$$

and using the interchange law and Yoneda lemma for ends again,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{[n]:\Delta} C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, [X, F]_n) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, C^n(G_n, \mathbb{C}, F_m))) \\ &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, C^m(G_m, \mathbb{C}, F_m)) \end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof.

(iii'). It is not hard to see that we have the following natural isomorphisms of cosimplicial simplicial sets:

$$C^\bullet(X \times G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong [X, C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)] \cong C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, [X, F])$$

We then apply [theorem 1.6.27](#) to obtain the corresponding natural isomorphisms of simplicial sets. ■

**1.8.37** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$  be two small categories.*

- *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight, and let  $H : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a functor. There is then an isomorphism*

$$B(B(G, \mathbb{D}, H), \mathbb{C}, F) \cong B(G, \mathbb{D}, B(H, \mathbb{C}, F))$$

*that is natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ .*

- *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, let  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight, and let  $H : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a functor. There is then an isomorphism*

$$C(B(G, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, H), \mathbb{C}, F) \cong C(G, \mathbb{D}, C(H, \mathbb{C}, F))$$

*that is natural in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ .*

*Proof.* The first claim is a straightforward consequence of [theorem 1.8.24](#) and [lemma 1.8.26](#). We will now prove the second claim.

To prove the claim, the Yoneda lemma implies it is enough to construct a bijection

$$\mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, H), \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{C}^m(H, \mathbb{C}, F)))$$

that is natural in  $X$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ . By [lemma 1.8.26](#) and [lemma 1.8.30](#),

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathbf{C}(\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, H), \mathbb{C}, F)) \\ \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, \mathbf{C}^n(\mathbf{B}_n(G_n, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, H_n), \mathbb{C}, F_n)) \end{aligned}$$

and similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{C}(H, \mathbb{C}, F))) \\ \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{C}^m(G_m, \mathbb{D}, (\mathbf{C}(H, \mathbb{C}, F))_m)) \\ \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{C}^m(G_m, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, \mathbf{C}^n(H_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)))) \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we used the Yoneda lemma and the fact that  $\mathbf{C}^m(G_m, \mathbb{D}, -)$  preserves limits. Furthermore,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{C}^m(G_m, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, \mathbf{C}^n(H_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)))) \\ \cong \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{C}^m(G_m, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{C}^n(H_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)))) \end{aligned}$$

and by using the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)) and the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)),

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_n^m, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{C}^m(G_m, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{C}^n(H_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)))) \\ \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_n, \mathbf{C}^n(G_n, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{C}^n(H_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n))) \end{aligned}$$

but (by [theorem 1.8.24](#) again),

$$\mathbf{C}^n(G_n, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{C}^n(H_n, \mathbb{C}, F_n)) \cong \mathbf{C}^n(\mathbf{B}_n(G_n, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, H_n), \mathbb{C}, F_n)$$

so we are done. ■

**I.8.38** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- *For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and each functor  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , there is a morphism  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F$ , and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*
- *For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and each functor  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , there is a morphism  $\{G, F\}^{\mathbb{C}} \rightarrow C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ , and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*

*Proof.* By [theorem A.6.14](#) and [proposition 1.8.10](#), we have the following natural isomorphisms:

$$\int^{[n]:\Delta} B_n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \Delta 1 \star_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F$$

$$\int_{[n]:\Delta} C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \{\Delta 1, C^{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\Delta} \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \{G, F\}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

The claim then follows from the existence of a (unique) natural transformation  $\Delta^{\bullet} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ . ■

**I.8.39** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram.

- The **bar resolution** of  $F$  is the diagram  $B_{\bullet}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F) : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]$  defined by the following formula,

$$c \mapsto B_{\bullet}(\mathcal{h}_c, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

where  $\mathcal{h}_c : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the representable functor  $\mathbb{C}(-, c)$ .

- The **cobar resolution** of  $F$  is the diagram  $C^{\bullet}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F) : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow [\Delta, \mathcal{M}]$  defined by the following formula,

$$c \mapsto C^{\bullet}(\mathcal{h}^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

where  $\mathcal{h}^c : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the representable functor  $\mathbb{C}(c, -)$ .

**1.8.40** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a diagram.

(i) There is an isomorphism

$$F \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} \circ C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

and it is natural in  $F$ .

(ii) For each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , there is an isomorphism

$$\{G, C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \cong C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .

(iii) For each object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , there exist maps  $\eta_c : Fc \rightarrow C^0(h^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$ ,  $\varepsilon_c : C^0(h^c, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow Fc$ , and  $h_{n,c} : C^{n+1}(h^c, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow C^n(h^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_1^1 \circ \eta_c &= \delta_1^0 \circ \eta_c \\ \varepsilon_c \circ \eta_c &= \text{id} \\ h_{0,c} \circ \delta_1^0 &= \eta_c \circ \varepsilon_c \\ h_{n,c} \circ \delta_{n+1}^i &= \delta_n^i \circ h_{n-1,c} & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_{n,c} \circ \delta_{n+1}^{n+1} &= \text{id} \\ \sigma_n^i \circ h_{n+1,c} &= h_{n,c} \circ \sigma_{n+1}^i & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_{n,c} \circ h_{n+1,c} &= h_{n,c} \circ \sigma_{n+1}^{n+1} \end{aligned}$$

These maps are moreover natural in  $F$ , and  $\eta_c$  is also natural in  $c$ .

*Proof.* (i). By lemma 1.8.9, there are bijections

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}](h^c, F) \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(h^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

that are natural in  $c$  and  $F$ , so the Yoneda lemma implies  $F \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} \circ C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$ , naturally in  $F$ .

(ii). Applying the Yoneda lemma for ends (proposition A.6.18), we obtain the following natural bijections:

$$\int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [Gc, [\mathbb{C}(c, c_n) \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \cdots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0]]$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbb{C}(c, c_n), [Gc \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \cdots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0]] \\ &\cong [Gc_n \times \mathbb{C}(c_n, c_{n-1}) \times \cdots \times \mathbb{C}(c_1, c_0), Fc_0] \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem A.6.14** implies that there is a natural isomorphism

$$\{G, C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [Gc, C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}^c, \mathbb{C}, F)]$$

and it is now clear that the claim holds.

(iii). Let  $\eta_c$ ,  $\varepsilon_c$ , and  $h_{n,c}$  be the maps defined below:

$$\begin{aligned} \eta_c(x)_{(c_0)} &= (y \mapsto F(y)(x)) \\ \varepsilon_c(x) &= x_{(c)}(\text{id}_c) \\ h_{n,c}(x)_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} &= \left( (y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \mapsto x_{(c_0, \dots, c_n, c)}(\text{id}_c, y, f_n, \dots, f_1) \right) \end{aligned}$$

By construction, we have  $\varepsilon_c \circ \eta_c = \text{id}_{F_c}$ , and it is not hard to check that the other identities are satisfied. For naturality of  $\eta_c$  in  $c$ , observe that, given  $f : c \rightarrow c'$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \eta_{c'}(F(f)(x))_{(c_0)} &= (y \mapsto F(y)(F(f)(x))) \\ &= (y \mapsto F(y \circ f)(x)) \\ &= (y \mapsto F(\mathbb{C}^f(y))(x)) \\ &= C^0(\mathbb{C}^f, \mathbb{C}, F)(\eta_c(x))_{(c_0)} \end{aligned}$$

and so  $\eta_{c'} \circ F(f) = C^0(\mathbb{C}^f, \mathbb{C}, F) \circ \eta_c$ , as required. ■

**I.8.4I PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram. If the bar resolution  $B_\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  exists, then:*

(i) *There is an isomorphism*

$$F \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

*and it is natural in  $F$ .*

(ii) *For each weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , there is an isomorphism*

$$G \star_{\mathbb{C}} B_\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong B_\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

*and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*

## I. SIMPLICIAL SETS

---

- (iii) For each object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , there exist morphisms  $\eta_c : Fc \rightarrow B_0(\mathcal{H}_c, \mathbb{C}, F)$ ,  $\varepsilon_c : B_0(\mathcal{H}_c, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow Fc$ , and  $h_c^n : B_n(\mathcal{H}_c, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow B_{n+1}(\mathcal{H}_c, \mathbb{C}, F)$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon_c \circ d_1^1 &= \varepsilon_c \circ d_0^1 \\ \varepsilon_c \circ \eta_c &= \text{id} \\ d_0^1 \circ h_c^0 &= s \circ r \\ d_i^{n+1} \circ h_c^n &= h_c^{n-1} \circ d_i^n & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ d_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ h_c^n &= \text{id} \\ h_c^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= s_i^{n+1} \circ h_c^n & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_c^{n+1} \circ h_c^n &= s_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ h_c^n \end{aligned}$$

These morphisms are moreover natural in  $F$ , and  $\varepsilon_c$  is also natural in  $c$ .

Dually, if the cobar resolution  $C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  exists, then:

- (i) There is an isomorphism

$$F \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

and it is natural in  $F$ .

- (ii) For each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , there is an isomorphism

$$\{G, C^\bullet(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \cong C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .

- (iii) For each object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , there exist morphisms  $\eta_c : Fc \rightarrow C^0(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$ ,  $\varepsilon_c : C^0(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow Fc$ , and  $h_{n,c} : C^{n+1}(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow C^n(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}, F)$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_1^1 \circ \eta_c &= \delta_1^0 \circ \eta_c \\ \varepsilon_c \circ \eta_c &= \text{id} \\ h_{0,c} \circ \delta_1^0 &= \eta_c \circ \varepsilon_c \\ h_{n,c} \circ \delta_{n+1}^i &= \delta_n^i \circ h_{n-1,c} & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_{n,c} \circ \delta_{n+1}^{n+1} &= \text{id} \\ \sigma_n^i \circ h_{n+1,c} &= h_{n,c} \circ \sigma_{n+1}^i & \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_{n,c} \circ h_{n+1,c} &= h_{n,c} \circ \sigma_{n+1}^{n+1} \end{aligned}$$

These morphisms are moreover natural in  $F$ , and  $\eta_c$  is also natural in  $c$ .



*Proof.* We may use the Yoneda lemma to reduce the claims to the case in the previous lemma. ■

**1.8.42** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight. If each  $Fc$  is a Kan complex, then  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is a Reedy-fibrant cosimplicial simplicial set.*

*Proof.* We must show that, for each natural number  $n$ , the matching morphism  $C^n(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow M_n(C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F))$  is a Kan fibration. Consider the matching category  $\partial([n] \downarrow \Delta_\leftarrow)$ : it is (isomorphic to) the full subcategory of the coslice category  $^{[n]}/\Delta$  spanned by the non-trivial quotients of  $[n]$ . If we make the identification

$$C^m(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \prod_{c_m \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow c_0} [Gc_m, Fc_0]$$

where the product is taken over the set of all  $m$ -simplices of  $N(\mathbb{C})$ , then it is not hard to see that every codegeneracy operator is the evident product projection. One may then directly verify that

$$M_n(C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \prod_{c_n \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow c_0} [Gc_n, Fc_0]$$

where now the product is taken over the set of *degenerate*  $n$ -simplices of  $N(\mathbb{C})$ , and that the  $n$ -th matching morphism is again the evident product projection. But [corollary 1.4.16](#) implies that every product projection in question is a Kan fibration, so  $C^\bullet(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is indeed Reedy-fibrant. ■

**1.8.43** REMARK. The lemma is true in greater generality: see Example 23.8 in [Shulman, 2009].

## I.9 Bousfield–Kan limits and colimits

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.5, 1.6, 1.8, 2.4, 3.3, 3.4, 5.3, A.6

There are many definitions of ‘homotopy limit/colimit’, of varying abstractness and complexity. In this section, we will study the theory of Bousfield and Kan [1972] and compare it with some of the other definitions of ‘homotopy limit/colimit’.

**I.9.1** **REMARK.** It is important to stress that there is an asymmetry between the theory of homotopy colimits and the theory of homotopy limits in **sSet** because not all simplicial sets are fibrant. As such, it will often be necessary to restrict our attention to Kan complexes when working with homotopy limits.

**I.9.2** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- The **Bousfield–Kan limit** of  $F$  is defined by the following end in **sSet**:

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F = \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{H}_c), Fc]$$

- The **Bousfield–Kan colimit** of  $F$  is defined by the following coend in **sSet**:

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F = \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathcal{H}^c) \times Fc$$

- The **reversed Bousfield–Kan limit** of  $F$  is defined by the following end in **sSet**:

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} F = \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(\mathcal{H}_c, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1), Fc]$$

- The **reversed Bousfield–Kan colimit** of  $F$  is defined by the following coend in **sSet**:

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} F = \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{B}(\mathcal{H}^c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1) \times Fc$$

**1.9.3** REMARK. In other words:

- The Bousfield–Kan limit of  $F$  is the simplicially enriched limit of  $F$  weighted by  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$ .
- The Bousfield–Kan colimit of  $F$  is the simplicially enriched colimit of  $F$  weighted by  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C})$ .
- The reversed Bousfield–Kan limit of  $F$  is the simplicially enriched limit of  $F$  weighted by  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1)$ .
- The reversed Bousfield–Kan colimit of  $F$  is the simplicially enriched colimit of  $F$  weighted by  $B(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1)$ .

REMARK. There are various definitions of ‘homotopy (co)limit’ in the literature:

- The definition of ‘homotopy limit’ (resp. ‘homotopy colimit’) appearing in [Bousfield and Kan, 1972, Ch. XI, resp. Ch. XII] is what we call the ‘Bousfield–Kan limit’ (resp. ‘reversed Bousfield–Kan colimit’): but beware that what they call the ‘underlying space of  $\mathbb{C}$ ’ is actually  $N(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$ .
- The definition of ‘homotopy limit’ (resp. ‘homotopy colimit’) appearing in [Hirschhorn, 2003, Ch. 18] is what we call ‘reversed Bousfield–Kan limit’ (resp. ‘reversed Bousfield–Kan colimit’).

Our conventions have been chosen to make both [remark 1.9.4](#) and [corollary 1.9.6](#) true.

**1.9.4** REMARK. Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram. By [remark 1.8.3](#), we have the following natural isomorphisms,

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F^{\text{op}} &\cong \left( \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} F \right)^{\text{op}} \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F^{\text{op}} &\cong \left( \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} F \right)^{\text{op}} \end{aligned}$$

and for every simplicial set  $Y$ , we have the following natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} [F, Y] &\cong \left[ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} F, Y \right] \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} [F, Y] &\cong \left[ \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} F, Y \right] \end{aligned}$$

These should be regarded as duality principles.

**1.9.5** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set and let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. Then the Bousfield–Kan limit of the constant diagram  $\Delta X : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (isomorphic to) the simplicial set  $[N(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), X]$  (naturally in  $X$ ).*

*Proof.* By definition,

$$\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \Delta X \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c), X]$$

and it is not hard to verify that

$$\int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c), X] \cong \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), X]$$

but  $[-, X]$  sends colimits in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  to limits in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and

$$\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} \mathbb{C}(c', -) \cong 1$$

for all objects  $c'$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , so by [proposition 1.8.36](#),

$$\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} \mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \cong \mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1)$$

which can be identified with  $N(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$ , by [remark 1.8.4](#). ■

**1.9.6** COROLLARY. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set and let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. Then the Bousfield–Kan colimit of the constant diagram  $\Delta X : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (isomorphic to) the simplicial set  $N(\mathbb{C}) \times X$  (naturally in  $X$ ).*

*Proof.* By [remark 1.9.4](#),

$$\left[ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \Delta X, Y \right] \cong \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} [\Delta X, Y]$$

and by [lemma 1.9.5](#),

$$\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} [\Delta X, Y] \cong [N(\mathbb{C}), [X, Y]] \cong [N(\mathbb{C}) \times X, Y]$$

so an application of the Yoneda lemma yields the claim. ■

**1.9.7 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

- (i) *For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an isomorphism*

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, FU) \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} [B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } U^* h_d), Fd]$$

*and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*

- (ii) *For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an isomorphism*

$$C(GU, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} [Gd, C(\text{disc } U^* h^d, \mathbb{C}, F)]$$

*and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*

*Dually:*

- (i') *For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an isomorphism*

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, FU) \cong \int^{d:\mathbb{D}} B(G, \mathbb{D}, \text{disc } U^* h^d) \times Fd$$

*and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*

- (ii') *For each diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and each weight  $G : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an isomorphism*

$$B(GU, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int^{d:\mathbb{D}} Gd \times B(\text{disc } U^* h_d, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

*and it is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ .*

*Proof.* We will prove the first set of claims; the second can be proved in a similar way.

- (i). By [lemma 1.8.31](#),

$$[B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } U^* h_d), Fd] \cong C(G, \mathbb{C}, [\text{disc } U^* h_d, Fd])$$

and since  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, -)$  preserves limits (by [proposition 1.8.36](#)), it is enough to construct a natural isomorphism of the following form:

$$F U c \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} [\text{disc } \mathbb{D}(U c, d), F d]$$

However, it is clear that

$$[\text{disc } \mathbb{D}(U c, d), F d] \cong \mathbb{D}(U c, d) \pitchfork F d$$

so we may apply the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) to complete the proof.

(ii). By [proposition 1.8.36](#),

$$[G d, C(\text{disc } U^* \mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}, F)] \cong C(G d \times \text{disc } U^* \mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

and since  $C(-, \mathbb{C}, F)$  sends colimits to limits, it is enough to construct a natural isomorphism of the following form:

$$G U c \cong \int^{d:\mathbb{D}} G d \times \text{disc } \mathbb{D}(d, U c)$$

However, it is clear that

$$G d \times \text{disc } \mathbb{D}(d, U c) \cong \mathbb{D}(d, U c) \odot G d$$

so we may apply the Yoneda lemma for coends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) to complete the proof. ■

**I.9.8** REMARK. Thus, we should regard the cobar construction  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  (resp. the bar construction  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ ) as being the Bousfield–Kan analogue of the simplicially enriched weighted limit  $\{G, F\}^{\mathbb{C}}$  (resp. the simplicially enriched colimit  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F$ ).

**I.9.9** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$  be small categories.*

- Given weights  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $H : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, C(H, \mathbb{D}, F)) \cong C(G \boxtimes H, \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}, F)$$

*naturally in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ , where  $G \boxtimes H : \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the functor defined by  $(c, d) \mapsto G c \times H c$ .*

- Given weights  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $H : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{B}(H, \mathbb{D}, F)) \cong \mathbf{B}(G \boxtimes H, \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}, F)$$

naturally in  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $H$ , where  $G \boxtimes H : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the functor defined by  $(c, d) \mapsto Gc \times Hc$ .

*Proof.* We will prove the first claim; the second can be proved in a similar way. By [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$\mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{C}(H, \mathbb{D}, F)) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_c), \mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{D}, Fc)]$$

and by [propositions 1.8.36](#) and [A.6.11](#),

$$\begin{aligned} & [\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_c), \mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{D}, Fc)] \\ & \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} [\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_c) \times \mathbf{B}(H, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_d), F(c, d)] \end{aligned}$$

but it is easy to see that

$$\mathbf{B}_{\bullet}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c) \times \mathbf{B}_{\bullet}(H, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, h_d) \cong \mathbf{B}_{\bullet}(G \boxtimes H, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, h_c \boxtimes h_d)$$

so by the interchange law for ends ([A.6.17](#)),

$$\mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbf{C}(H, \mathbb{D}, F)) \cong \mathbf{C}(G \boxtimes H, \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}, F)$$

as claimed. ■

The homotopical significance of Bousfield–Kan limits/colimits (and more generally, bar/cobar constructions) is best expressed in terms of certain model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

**1.9.10 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $F, F' : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be functors. A **natural weak homotopy equivalence**  $F \Rightarrow F'$  is a natural transformation whose components are weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.

**I.9.II** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- An **injective cofibration** in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a natural transformation of functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  whose components are monomorphisms.
- An **injective trivial cofibration** in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is an injective cofibration that is also a natural weak homotopy equivalence.
- A **projective fibration** in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a natural transformation of functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  whose components are Kan fibrations.
- A **projective trivial fibration** in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a projective fibration that is also a natural weak homotopy equivalence.

**I.9.I2** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- An **injective fibration** in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to all injective trivial cofibrations.
- An **injective trivial fibration** in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to all injective cofibrations.
- A **projective cofibration** in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a morphism with the left lifting property with respect to all projective trivial fibrations.
- A **projective trivial cofibration** in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a morphism with the left lifting property with respect to all projective fibrations.

**I.9.I3** THEOREM (Bousfield and Kan). *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated simplicial model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the natural weak homotopy equivalences.*
- *The fibrations are the projective fibrations, i.e. the componentwise Kan fibrations.*
- *The cofibrations are the projective cofibrations, i.e. the morphisms with the left lifting property with respect to componentwise trivial Kan fibrations.*

*This model structure is called the **Bousfield–Kan model structure** or the **projective model structure** on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*



*Proof.* See the proof of Proposition 8.1 in [Bousfield and Kan, 1972, Ch. XI], or apply [theorem 6.2.7](#) and [proposition 2.4.17](#). ■

**1.9.14** THEOREM (Heller). *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated simplicial model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the natural weak homotopy equivalences.*
- *The fibrations are the injective cofibrations, i.e. the (componentwise) monomorphisms.*
- *The cofibrations are the injective fibrations, i.e. the morphisms with the right lifting property with respect to componentwise anodyne extensions.*

*This model structure is called the **Heller model structure** or the **injective model structure** on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 4.5 in [Heller, 1988, Ch. II], or apply [theorem 10.4.9](#) and [proposition 2.4.17](#). ■

**1.9.15** PROPOSITION. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

- *For any functor  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the bar construction  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^\bullet)$  is a cofibrant object in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , where  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the functor induced by composition.*
- *For any functor  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the bar construction  $B(\text{disc } U^* h_\bullet, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is a cofibrant object in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , where  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the functor induced by composition.*
- *For any functor  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the bar construction  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } U^* h_\bullet)$  is a cofibrant object in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , where  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the functor induced by composition.*
- *For any functor  $F : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the bar construction  $B(\text{disc } U^* h^\bullet, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, F)$  is a cofibrant object in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , where  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the functor induced by composition.*

*Proof.* The four claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\mathcal{I} = \{\partial \Delta^n \odot h_d \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_d \mid n \geq 0, d \in \text{ob } \mathbb{D}\}$ . Using the Yoneda lemma and [proposition A.3.28](#), we see that each element of  $\mathcal{I}$  is a projective cofibration;

so by [proposition A.3.19](#), it suffices to prove that  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^\bullet)$  is a  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex in the sense of [§0.5](#).

We proceed inductively. As usual, we define  $\text{sk}_{-1}(Y) = \emptyset$  for all simplicial sets  $Y$ . Suppose we have shown that the (componentwise)  $(n-1)$ -skeleton of  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^\bullet)$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex. Let  $I_n(d) \subseteq (B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^d))_n$  be the subset of non-degenerate  $n$ -simplices of  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^d)$ . By [proposition 1.2.34](#), there is a canonical pushout diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot I_n(d) & \hookrightarrow & \Delta^n \odot I_n(d) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{sk}_{n-1}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^d)) & \longrightarrow & \text{sk}_n(B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^d)) \end{array}$$

By [lemma 1.8.26](#), an  $n$ -simplex of  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^d)$  is a tuple

$$(y, f_n, \dots, f_1, x) \in \coprod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} G_n(c_n) \times \mathbb{C}(c_{n-1}, c_n) \times \dots \times \mathbb{C}(c_0, c_1) \times \mathbb{D}(d, U c_0)$$

where  $(c_0, \dots, c_n)$  ranges over  $(n+1)$ -tuples of objects in  $\mathbb{C}$ , and (for  $n > 0$ ) this  $n$ -simplex is degenerate if and only if  $y$  is a degenerate  $n$ -simplex in  $G(c_n)$  and at least one  $f_i : c_{i-1} \rightarrow c_i$  is an identity morphism in  $\mathbb{C}$ . Thus,  $I_n$  is a coproduct of representable functors  $\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and is a subfunctor of  $(B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^d))_n$ , so we have a pushout diagram of the form below in  $[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot I_n & \hookrightarrow & \Delta^n \odot I_n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{sk}_{n-1}(B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^\bullet)) & \longrightarrow & \text{sk}_n(B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^\bullet)) \end{array}$$

We may now conclude that  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } U^* h^\bullet)$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex. ■

**1.9.16 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- *For each functor  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}) \Rightarrow G$ , and it is also natural in  $G$ .*
- *For each functor  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F) \Rightarrow F$ , and it is also natural in  $F$ .*
- *For each functor  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \Rightarrow G$ , and it is also natural in  $G$ .*

- For each functor  $F : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $B(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, F) \Rightarrow F$ , and it is also natural in  $F$ .

*Proof.* The four claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $K_{\bullet}, L_{\bullet} : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{ssSet}$  be the functors defined below:

$$\begin{aligned} K_{n,m}(c) &= G_n(c) \\ L_{n,m}(c) &= B_m(G_n, \mathbb{C}, h^c) \end{aligned}$$

Observe that, by lemma 1.6.8, we have a natural isomorphism  $|K_{\bullet}(c)| \cong G(c)$ ; and by lemma 1.8.26,  $|L_{\bullet}(c)| \cong B(G, \mathbb{C}, h^c)$ . On the other hand, recalling proposition 1.7.16 and corollary 1.8.28, we see that proposition 1.8.41 implies that there is a natural Reedy weak equivalence  $L_{\bullet}(c) \rightarrow K_{\bullet}(c)$ . Thus, by theorem 1.6.10, the induced natural transformation  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}) \Rightarrow G$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence, and it is clearly also natural in  $G$ . ■

**1.9.17** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. For any weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends natural weak homotopy equivalences between projective-fibrant diagrams to weak homotopy equivalences of Kan complexes.*

*Proof.* Apply Ken Brown’s lemma (5.3.6) to proposition 1.9.19. ■

**1.9.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. For any weight  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an adjunction of the form below,*

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times (-) \dashv C(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

*and it is a Quillen adjunction with respect to both the Heller and Bousfield–Kan model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* The existence of the adjunction has been shown in proposition 1.8.36, so by proposition 5.3.2, it suffices to show that

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times (-) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

is a left Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure and that

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure.

It is clear that the induced natural transformation  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times Z \Rightarrow B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times W$  is an injective cofibration in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  if  $Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . Moreover, the 2-out-of-3 property and [proposition 1.5.17](#) imply that  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times (-)$  preserves weak equivalences. Thus  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \times (-)$  is indeed a left Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure.

Now, [proposition 1.9.7](#) says that

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c), Fc]$$

naturally in both  $F$  and  $G$ ; but by [remark 2.1.24](#),

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c), Fc]$$

and [proposition 1.9.15](#) says  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$  is cofibrant in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , so by ([theorem 1.9.13](#) and) [proposition 2.4.7](#),  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, -)$  is indeed a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure. ■

**1.9.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- *For any weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an adjunction of the form below,*

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, -) \dashv [B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

*and it is a Quillen adjunction with respect to both the Bousfield–Kan and Heller model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

- *For any diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an adjunction of the form below,*

$$B(-, \mathbb{C}, F) \dashv C(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [F, -]) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

*and it is a Quillen adjunction with respect to both the Bousfield–Kan and Heller model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual;<sup>[1]</sup> we will prove the first version.

The existence of the adjunction has been shown in [proposition 1.8.36](#), so by [proposition 5.3.2](#), it suffices to show that

$$[B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

[1] Recall [proposition 1.7.16](#) and [corollary 1.8.28](#).

is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure and that

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is a left Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure.

By [corollary 1.4.16](#), the induced natural transformation  $[B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), X] \Rightarrow [B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), Y]$  is a projective fibration (resp. projective trivial fibration) if  $X \rightarrow Y$  is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration). Thus  $[B(G, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -]$  is indeed a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure.

On the other hand, the cofibrations in the Heller model structure are the (componentwise) monomorphisms, [lemma 1.8.26](#) implies that  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, -)$  preserves cofibrations. To complete the proof, it is enough to show that  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, -)$  preserves weak equivalences. Let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural weak homotopy equivalence of diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . To show that  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, \varphi) : B(G, \mathbb{C}, X) \rightarrow B(G, \mathbb{C}, Y)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, it is enough to verify that the induced morphism

$$[B(G, \mathbb{C}, \varphi), K] : [B(G, \mathbb{C}, Y), K] \rightarrow [B(G, \mathbb{C}, X), K]$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence for all Kan complexes  $K$ . But by [lemma 1.8.31](#), this is the same as showing that

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [\varphi, K]) : C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [Y, K]) \rightarrow C(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [X, K])$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence for all Kan complexes  $K$ ; and [corollary 1.4.16](#) implies that  $[\varphi, K]$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence between projective-fibrant diagrams, so we may apply [corollary 1.9.17](#). ■

**1.9.20 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- *For any weight  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves weak equivalences.*
- *For any diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $B(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* Apply Ken Brown’s lemma ([5.3.6](#)) to [proposition 1.9.19](#) and the fact that every object is cofibrant in the Heller model structure. ■

**I.9.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. Then*

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \simeq \lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}}$$

*as functors  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , i.e. there is a zigzag of natural weak homotopy equivalences connecting them.*

*Proof.* By [proposition 1.7.16](#) and [corollary 1.9.20](#), we have the following zigzag of natural weak homotopy equivalences,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & \lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \text{Sd}(-) & & \text{Sd}\left(\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} (-)^{\text{op}}\right) & \\ & \swarrow \quad \searrow & & \swarrow \quad \searrow & \\ \lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} (-) & & \lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} (-)^{\text{op}} & & \left(\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} (-)^{\text{op}}\right)^{\text{op}} \end{array}$$

and by [remark 1.9.4](#), the claim follows. ■

**I.9.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. For any diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is an adjunction of the form below,*

$$\mathbf{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, [-, F]) \dashv \mathbf{C}(-, \mathbb{C}, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

*and moreover:*

- (i) *If  $F$  is projective-fibrant, then the adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*
- (ii) *If  $F$  is injective-fibrant, then the adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Heller model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* The existence of the adjunction was shown in [proposition 1.8.36](#); it remains to be shown that it is a Quillen adjunction under the appropriate hypotheses.

(i). Suppose  $F$  is projective-fibrant. [Proposition 1.9.7](#) says that

$$\mathbf{C}(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [Gc, \mathbf{C}(\text{disc } h^c, \mathbb{C}, F)]$$

naturally in both  $F$  and  $G$ ; but by [remark 2.1.24](#),

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](G, \mathbf{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [Gc, \mathbf{C}(\text{disc } h^c, \mathbb{C}, F)]$$

and [proposition 1.9.18](#) implies that  $C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is projective-fibrant if  $F$  is, so by ([theorem 1.9.13](#) and) [proposition 2.4.7](#),

$$[\mathbb{C}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](-, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is indeed a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure.

(ii). Suppose  $F$  is injective-fibrant. [Proposition 1.9.7](#) says that

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_c), Fc]$$

naturally in both  $F$  and  $G$ ; but by [remark 2.1.24](#),

$$[\mathbb{C}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), F) \cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [\mathbf{B}(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_c), Fc]$$

and ([theorem 1.9.14](#) plus) [proposition 2.4.7](#) says

$$[\mathbb{C}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](-, F) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure; on the other hand, [proposition 1.9.19](#) says

$$\mathbf{B}(-, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

is a left Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure, so (by [propositions 5.3.2](#) and [5.3.5](#))  $C(-, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is indeed a right Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure. ■

**1.9.23** LEMMA. Consider a span in **Kan**, say:

$$Y \xleftarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

Let  $\mathbb{C} = \{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}$  and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be the functor corresponding to the above diagram. Then there exists a commutative diagram in **Kan** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow i & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{p} & C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F) & \xrightarrow{q} & Z \end{array}$$

which is natural in  $F$  and moreover has the following properties:

- $i : X \rightarrow C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F)$  is an anodyne extension.
- $\langle p, q \rangle : C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow Y \times Z$  is a Kan fibration.

*Proof.* Since  $\mathbb{C}$  has an initial object, the weight  $\Delta 1 : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is representable, hence projective-cofibrant *a fortiori*. Thus, by axiom SM7 (and [theorem 1.9.13](#)), the morphism

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](\Delta 1, F) \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), F)$$

induced by the natural weak homotopy equivalence  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  (of [proposition 1.9.16](#)) is a weak homotopy equivalence. Moreover, the natural transformation  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  is a split epimorphism in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , so by [proposition 1.5.12](#), the induced morphism is an anodyne extension. A further calculation using [proposition 1.9.7](#) and the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#)) shows that the domain and codomain of this anodyne extension can be identified with  $X$  and  $C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F)$ , so we have obtained a morphism  $i : X \rightarrow C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F)$  of the required form.

On the other hand, it is not hard to see that the cobar construction  $C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F)$  can be identified with the limit of the following diagram in **Kan**:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & [\Delta^1, Y] & & [\Delta^0, X] & & [\Delta^1, Z] \\
 & \swarrow [\delta^1, Y] & & \searrow [\delta^0, Y] & \swarrow [\Delta^0, f] & \searrow [\Delta^0, g] & \swarrow [\delta^0, Z] \\
 [\Delta^0, Y] & & & [\Delta^0, Y] & & [\Delta^0, Z] & & [\Delta^0, Z] \\
 & & & & & & \searrow [\delta^1, Z] & \\
 & & & & & & & [\Delta^0, Z]
 \end{array}$$

Thus, we have a pullback diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F) & \longrightarrow & [\Delta^1, Y] \times [\Delta^1, Z] \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 (Y \times Z) \times X & \longrightarrow & [\partial \Delta^1, Y] \times [\partial \Delta^1, Z]
 \end{array}$$

where the right vertical arrow is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial \Delta^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ . [Corollary 1.4.16](#) and [proposition A.3.19](#) then imply that the vertical arrows are Kan fibrations, and the projection  $(Y \times Z) \times X \rightarrow Y \times Z$  is also a Kan fibration, so by composition we obtain a Kan fibration  $\langle p, q \rangle : C(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F) \rightarrow Y \times Z$ . It is straightforward to verify that  $p \circ i = f$  and  $q \circ i = g$ , and naturality is clear, so we are done. ■



The homotopical universal property of the bar/cobar constructions is traditionally stated in terms of derived functors.

**1.9.24** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- A **homotopy limit functor** for diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopical right approximation for the functor  $\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- A **homotopy colimit functor** for diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopical left approximation for the functor  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

**1.9.25** REMARK. Homotopy limit/colimit functors are *not* well defined up to isomorphism, but by [remark 3.4.7](#), they are *homotopically* unique. By definition, each homotopy limit functor (resp. homotopy colimit functor) is equipped with a natural transformation from  $\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}$  (resp. to  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}$ ); and for general reasons (cf. [proposition 5.3.17](#)), the component at an injective-fibrant (resp. projective-cofibrant) diagram is a weak homotopy equivalence. However, we can do slightly better with homotopy limit functors.

Since there is no more difficulty in doing so, we will also consider generalised homotopy limits/colimits:

**1.9.26** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- Let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight and let  $\{G, -\}^{\mathbb{C}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor defined below,

$$\{G, F\}^{\mathbb{C}} = \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} [Gc, Fc]$$

A **homotopy  $G$ -weighted limit functor** is a homotopical right approximation for  $\{G, -\}^{\mathbb{C}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

- Let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight and let  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor defined below:

$$G \star_{\mathbb{C}} F = \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} Gc \times Fc$$

A **homotopy  $G$ -weighted colimit functor** is a homotopical left approximation for  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

**1.9.27 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category, let  $G : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight, and let  $R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be (the functor part of) any functorial fibrant replacement in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*

- (i)  $\{G, -\}^{\mathbb{C}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  *sends natural weak homotopy equivalences between diagrams of the form  $C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  where every  $Fc$  is a Kan complex to weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.*
- (ii)  $C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  *is (the functor part of) a functorial right deformation retract for  $\{G, -\}^{\mathbb{C}}$ .*
- (iii)  $C(G, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  *is (the functor part of) a homotopy  $G$ -weighted limit functor.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $X, Y : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be diagrams and let  $\varphi : C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, X) \Rightarrow C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, Y)$  be a natural weak homotopy equivalence. We have the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, X)\}^{\mathbb{C}} & \longrightarrow & \{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, X)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, Y)\}^{\mathbb{C}} & \longrightarrow & \{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, Y)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by the natural weak homotopy equivalence of [proposition 1.9.16](#) and the vertical arrows are induced by  $\varphi$ ; but by [remark 2.1.24](#),

$$\{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), -\}^{\mathbb{C}} \cong [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), -)$$

and  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$  is projective-cofibrant by [proposition 1.9.15](#), and since both  $C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, X)$  and  $C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, Y)$  are projective-fibrant by [proposition 1.9.18](#), we may use [corollary 1.9.17](#) to deduce that

$$\{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, X)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \rightarrow \{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, Y)\}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes. On the other hand, the following diagram commutes for all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}} & \longrightarrow & \{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), F\}^{\mathbb{C}} & \longrightarrow & \{B(B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), F\}^{\mathbb{C}} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by the natural weak homotopy equivalence  $B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \Rightarrow G$  (from [proposition 1.9.16](#)), and the vertical arrows are the isomorphisms given by [proposition 1.9.7](#). Moreover, by [corollary 1.9.20](#),

$$B(B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \rightarrow B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$$

is a natural weak homotopy equivalence, so if  $F$  is projective-fibrant, then

$$\{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \rightarrow \{B(G, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)\}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes; hence, by the 2-out-of-3 property,

$$\{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, X)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \rightarrow \{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, Y)\}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

is also a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes.

(ii). It remains to be shown that there is a natural weak equivalence  $\text{id}_{[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]} \Rightarrow C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -)$ . Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram. By (the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#) and) the arguments above, we have a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$RFc \cong \{\text{disc } h^c, RF\}^{\mathbb{C}} \rightarrow \{B(\text{disc } h^c, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}), F\}^{\mathbb{C}} \cong C(\text{disc } h^c, \mathbb{C}, RF)$$

and we have a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $Fc \rightarrow RFc$  by definition, so do indeed have a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $F \Rightarrow C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$ , as required.

(iii). Thus, by [theorem 3.4.11](#),  $\{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -)\}^{\mathbb{C}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (the functor part of) a homotopical right approximation for  $\{G, -\}^{\mathbb{C}}$ , and by [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$C(G, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) \cong \{G, C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -)\}^{\mathbb{C}}$$

so we are done. ■

**1.9.28 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight.*

- (i)  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends natural weak homotopy equivalences between diagrams of the form  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  to weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.
- (ii)  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part of) a functorial left deformation retract for  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-)$ .

(iii)  $B(G, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (the functor part of) a homotopy  $G$ -weighted colimit functor.

*Proof.* (i). An analogue of [proposition A.6.15](#) says that we have an adjunction of the following form:

$$G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-) \dashv [G, -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

By [corollary 1.4.16](#),  $[G, -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure, so by [proposition 5.3.2](#),  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a left Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure. But [proposition 1.9.15](#) says diagrams of the form  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  are projective-cofibrant, so the claim is a consequence of Ken Brown’s lemma ([5.3.6](#)).

(ii). It remains to be shown that there is a natural weak equivalence  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]}$ , but this was done in [proposition 1.9.16](#).

(iii). Thus, by [theorem 3.4.11](#),  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (the functor part of) a homotopical left approximation for  $G \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-)$ , and by [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$B(G, \mathbb{C}, -) \cong G \star_{\mathbb{C}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -)$$

so we are done. ■

The following comparison results are often useful.

**1.9.29** LEMMA.

- There is a morphism  $N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^{\bullet}$  in  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .
- There is a morphism  $N(\Delta_{/\bullet}) \rightarrow \Delta^{\bullet}$  in  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

*Proof.* Apply  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  to the functors  $(\Delta_{/[n]})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [n]$  (resp.  $\Delta_{/[n]} \rightarrow [n]$ ) that send an object  $\alpha : [m] \rightarrow [n]$  in  $\Delta_{/[n]}$  to  $\alpha(0)$  (resp.  $\alpha(m)$ ) in  $[n]$ . ■

**1.9.30** THEOREM.

- (i) There is an adjunction of the form below,

$$|-| \dashv [\Delta^{\bullet}, -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

and it is a Quillen adjunction with respect to both the Bousfield–Kan and Heller model structures on  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

(ii) *There is a conjugate pair of natural transformations*

$$\varphi : |-| \Rightarrow \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \quad \psi : \Delta(-) \Rightarrow [\Delta^{\bullet}, -]$$

where  $\psi$  is induced by the unique natural transformation  $\Delta^{\bullet} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ , and the derived natural transformations

$$\mathbf{L}\varphi : \mathbf{L}|-| \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \quad \mathbf{R}\psi : \mathbf{R}\Delta(-) \Rightarrow \mathbf{R}[\Delta^{\bullet}, -]$$

constitute a conjugate pair of natural isomorphisms.

(iii) *For any projective-cofibrant diagram  $F : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the natural morphism  $\varphi_F : |-| \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} F$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. In particular, the realisation functor  $|-| : [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (the functor part of) a homotopy colimit functor for diagrams  $\Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). The existence of the adjunction is a special case of [theorem B.3.19](#). [Theorem 1.6.4](#) says that the Reedy model structure on  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  coincides with the Heller model structure, so by [theorem 1.6.10](#), the indicated adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Heller model structure.

It remains to be shown that the adjunction in question is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure; by [proposition 5.3.2](#), it suffices to show that

$$[\Delta^{\bullet}, -] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

is a right Quillen functor (with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure); but this is an immediate consequence of [corollary 1.4.16](#), so we are done.

(ii). Since the standard simplices  $\Delta^n$  are contractible, the unique natural transformation  $\Delta^{\bullet} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence. Thus, for any Kan complex  $K$ , the natural morphism  $\psi_K : \Delta K \rightarrow [\Delta^{\bullet}, K]$  is a weak homotopy equivalence (by [proposition 1.5.17](#)). Thus, considering the explicit description of  $\mathbf{R}\psi$  afforded by [theorems 3.3.17](#) and [5.3.12](#), we see that  $\mathbf{R}\psi$  is a natural isomorphism; but  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  and  $\mathbf{R}\psi$  are conjugate by [theorem 3.3.24](#), so we deduce that  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  is also a natural isomorphism.

(iii). Since  $\mathbf{L}\varphi : \mathbf{L}|-| \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$  is a natural isomorphism, the natural morphism  $\varphi_F : |-| \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} F$  must be a weak homotopy equivalence for every projective-cofibrant diagram  $F : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

We claim that  $|-| : [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $\varphi : |-| \Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \circ Q$  constitute a homotopical left approximation for  $\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} : [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . Let  $(Q, p)$  be a functorial projective-cofibrant replacement for  $[-]$ ; such exists, by Quillen's small object argument (theorem 0.5.12) and theorem 1.9.13. Then theorem 3.4.11 says that  $(\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \circ Q, \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} p)$  homotopical left approximation for  $\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$ . But the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} |-| & \xleftarrow{|p|} & |Q|-| & \xrightarrow{\varphi Q} & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \circ Q \\ \varphi \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} p \\ \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \end{array}$$

and by Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6), both arrows in the top row are natural weak homotopy equivalences, so by proposition 3.2.2,  $(|-|, \varphi)$  is also a homotopical left approximation for  $\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$ , as claimed.  $\blacksquare$

**1.9.3I** COROLLARY. *Given any morphism  $\theta_{\bullet} : N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^{\bullet}$  in  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- (i) *There is an induced natural transformation  $\theta_* : \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \Rightarrow |-|$  making the diagram below commute,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \\ \theta_* \downarrow & & \parallel \\ |-| & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \end{array}$$

*where the horizontal arrows are the counits of the respective homotopical right Kan extensions.*

- (ii) *For any diagram  $X_{\bullet} : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism*

$$\theta_* : \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} X_{\bullet} \rightarrow |X_{\bullet}|$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Dually, given any morphism  $\theta_{\bullet} : N(\Delta_{/\bullet}) \rightarrow \Delta^{\bullet}$  in  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- (i) *There is an induced natural transformation  $\theta_* : \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \Rightarrow |-|$  making the diagram below commute,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \\ \theta_* \downarrow & & \parallel \\ |-| & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the counits of the respective homotopical right Kan extensions.

- (ii) *For any diagram  $X_\bullet : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism*

$$\theta_* : \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} X_\bullet \rightarrow |X_\bullet|$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i). Each  $N(\Delta_{/[n]})$  and each  $\Delta^n$  is contractible, by [corollary 1.3.11](#), so  $\theta_\bullet : N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence. [Remark 1.8.4](#) says that  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta^{\text{op}}, h_{[n]}) \cong N(\Delta_{/[n]})^{\text{op}}$ , so [proposition 1.9.7](#) implies that  $\theta : N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  induces a natural transformation

$$\int^{[n]:\Delta} B(\Delta 1, \Delta^{\text{op}}, h_{[n]}) \times (-)_n \Rightarrow \int^{[n]:\Delta} \Delta^n \times (-)_n$$

i.e. a natural transformation  $\theta_* : \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \Rightarrow |-|$ . Similarly, the unique natural transformation  $N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\text{op}} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  (resp.  $\Delta^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ ) induces the canonical comparison  $\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$  (resp.  $|-| \Rightarrow \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$ ), so we have a commutative diagram of the required form.

- (ii). This is a corollary of [lemma 3.2.5](#). ■

**1.9.32 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C$  be a locally small category.*

- *For each cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $C$  and each object  $B$  in  $C$ , there is a weak homotopy equivalence*

$$N((A \downarrow B)) \rightarrow C(A^\bullet, B)$$

*and it is natural in  $A^\bullet$  and  $B$ .*

## I. SIMPLICIAL SETS

---

- For each object  $A$  in  $C$  and each simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $C$ , there is a weak homotopy equivalence

$$N((A \downarrow B)) \rightarrow C(A, B_\bullet)$$

and it is natural in  $A$  and  $B_\bullet$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [remark 1.8.5](#) and [proposition 1.9.7](#), we have natural isomorphisms

$$N((A \downarrow B)) \cong B(\Delta 1, \Delta^{\text{op}}, A^* \hbar^B) \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } C(A^\bullet, B)$$

and by ([lemma 1.9.29](#) and) [corollary 1.9.31](#), we have a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } C(A^\bullet, B) \rightarrow |\text{disc } C(A^\bullet, B)|$$

but by [corollary 1.6.9](#),

$$|\text{disc } C(A^\bullet, B)| \cong C(A^\bullet, B)$$

so we are done. ■

### 1.9.33 THEOREM.

- (i) There is an adjunction of the form below,

$$\Delta^\bullet \times (-) \dashv \text{Tot} : [\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

and it is a Quillen adjunction with respect to both the Reedy and Heller model structures on  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

- (ii) There is a conjugate pair of natural transformations

$$\varphi : \Delta^\bullet \times (-) \Rightarrow \Delta(-) \qquad \psi : \varprojlim_{\Delta} \Rightarrow \text{Tot}$$

where  $\psi$  is induced by the unique natural transformation  $\Delta^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ , and the derived natural transformations

$$\mathbf{L}\varphi : \mathbf{L}(\Delta^\bullet \times (-)) \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}\Delta(-) \qquad \mathbf{R}\psi : \mathbf{R}\varprojlim_{\Delta} \Rightarrow \mathbf{R}\text{Tot}$$

constitute a conjugate pair of natural isomorphisms.



- (iii) For any injective-fibrant diagram  $F : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the natural morphism  $\psi_F : \varprojlim_{\Delta} F \Rightarrow \mathrm{Tot} F$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. In particular, given any Reedy-fibrant replacement functor  $R : [\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , the composite  $\mathrm{Tot} \circ R : [\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is (the functor part of) a homotopy limit functor for diagrams  $\Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

*Proof.* (i). The existence of the adjunction is a special case of [theorem B.3.18](#), and it is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Reedy model structure by [theorem 1.6.27](#).

It remains to be shown that the adjunction in question is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the injective model structure; by [proposition 5.3.2](#), it suffices to show that

$$\Delta^\bullet \times (-) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

is a left Quillen functor (with respect to the injective model structure). Clearly, each  $\Delta^n \times (-)$  preserves monomorphisms, and by [proposition 1.5.17](#), it also preserves weak homotopy equivalences; thus,  $\Delta^\bullet \times (-)$  sends monomorphisms to injective cofibrations and (by [proposition 1.5.12](#)) anodyne extensions to injective trivial cofibrations, as required.

(ii). Since the standard simplices  $\Delta^n$  are contractible, the unique natural transformation  $\Delta^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence. Thus, for any simplicial set  $X$ , the natural morphism  $\varphi_X : \Delta^\bullet \times X \rightarrow \Delta X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence (by [proposition 1.5.17](#)). Thus, considering the explicit description of  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  afforded by [theorems 3.3.17](#) and [5.3.12](#), we see that  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  is a natural isomorphism; but  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  and  $\mathbf{R}\psi$  are conjugate by [theorem 3.3.24](#), so we deduce that  $\mathbf{R}\psi$  is also a natural isomorphism.

(iii). Since  $\mathbf{R}\psi : \mathbf{R}\varprojlim_{\Delta} \Rightarrow \mathbf{RTot}$  is a natural isomorphism, the natural morphism  $\psi_F : \varprojlim_{\Delta} F \rightarrow \mathrm{Tot} F$  must be a weak homotopy equivalence for every injective-fibrant diagram  $F : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

Let  $(R, i)$  be any functorial Reedy-fibrant replacement for  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ . We claim that  $\mathrm{Tot} \circ R : [\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $\psi \circ i : \varprojlim_{\Delta} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Tot} \circ R$  constitute a homotopical right approximation for  $\varprojlim_{\Delta} : [\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . Let  $(\hat{R}, \hat{i})$  be a functorial injective-fibrant replacement for  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ ; such exists, by Quillen’s small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)) and [theorem 1.9.14](#). Then [theorem 3.4.11](#) says that  $(\varprojlim_{\Delta} \circ \hat{R}, \varprojlim_{\Delta} \hat{i})$  homotopical right approximation for

$\lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}$ . But the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} \\
 \psi \circ i \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} \hat{i} \\
 \text{Tot} \circ R & \xrightarrow[\text{Tot } R \hat{i}]{} & \text{Tot} \circ R \circ \hat{R} & \xleftarrow[(\psi \circ i) R]{} & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} \circ R
 \end{array}$$

and by Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6), both arrows in the bottom row are natural weak homotopy equivalences, so by proposition 3.2.2,  $(\text{Tot} \circ R, \psi \circ i)$  is also a homotopical right approximation for  $\lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}$ , as claimed.  $\blacksquare$

**I.9.34** COROLLARY. *Given any morphism  $\theta_{\bullet} : N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^{\bullet}$  in  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- (i) *There is an induced natural transformation  $\theta^* : \text{Tot} \Rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}^{\text{BK}}$  making the diagram below commute,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} & \longrightarrow & \text{Tot} \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \theta^* \\
 \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}^{\text{BK}}
 \end{array}$$

*where the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparisons.*

- (ii) *For any Reedy-fibrant diagram  $X^{\bullet} : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism*

$$\theta^* : \text{Tot } X^{\bullet} \rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}^{\text{BK}} X^{\bullet}$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Dually, given any morphism  $\theta_{\bullet} : N(\Delta_{/\bullet}) \rightarrow \Delta^{\bullet}$  in  $[\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- (i) *There is an induced natural transformation  $\theta^* : \text{Tot} \Rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}^{\text{KB}}$  making the diagram below commute,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} & \longrightarrow & \text{Tot} \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \theta^* \\
 \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta} & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\leftarrow \Delta}^{\text{KB}}
 \end{array}$$

*where the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparisons.*

(ii) For any Reedy-fibrant diagram  $X^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism

$$\theta^* : \mathrm{Tot} X^\bullet \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\Delta}^{\mathrm{KB}} X^\bullet$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* (i). Each  $N(\Delta_{/[n]})$  and each  $\Delta^n$  is contractible, by [corollary 1.3.11](#), so  $\theta_\bullet : N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence. [Remark 1.8.4](#) says that  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, h_{[n]}) \cong N(\Delta_{/[n]})^{\mathrm{op}}$ , so [proposition 1.9.7](#) implies that  $\theta : N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \Delta^\bullet$  induces a natural transformation

$$\int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, (-)^n] \Rightarrow \int_{[n]:\Delta} [B(\Delta 1, \Delta^{\mathrm{op}}, h_{[n]}), (-)^n]$$

i.e. a natural transformation  $\theta^* : \mathrm{Tot} \Rightarrow \varprojlim_{\Delta}^{\mathrm{BK}}$ . Similarly, the unique natural transformation  $N(\Delta_{/\bullet})^{\mathrm{op}} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  (resp.  $\Delta^\bullet \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ ) induces the canonical comparison  $\varprojlim_{\Delta} \Rightarrow \varprojlim_{\Delta}^{\mathrm{BK}}$  (resp.  $\varprojlim_{\Delta} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Tot}$ ), so we have a commutative diagram of the required form.

(ii). Let  $X^\bullet : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a Reedy-fibrant diagram. If  $X^\bullet$  is injective-fibrant, then by applying [theorem 5.3.12](#) to [propositions 1.9.18](#) and [5.3.17](#) and using the 2-out-of-3 property, we may deduce that  $\theta^* : \mathrm{Tot} X^\bullet \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\Delta}^{\mathrm{BK}} X^\bullet$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. However:

- By [theorem 1.9.14](#) and [proposition 5.1.24](#), we may replace an arbitrary  $X^\bullet$  with a naturally weakly homotopy equivalent injective-fibrant diagram.
- By [proposition 5.6.17](#), every injective-fibrant diagram is Reedy-fibrant, and every Reedy-fibrant diagram is projective-fibrant.
- By [theorem 1.6.27](#) (resp. [proposition 1.9.18](#)) and Ken Brown’s lemma ([5.3.6](#)), the functor  $\mathrm{Tot}$  (resp.  $\varprojlim_{\Delta}^{\mathrm{BK}}$ ) sends natural weak homotopy equivalences between Reedy-fibrant (resp. projective-fibrant) diagrams  $\Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  to weak homotopy equivalences.

Thus, applying the 2-out-of-3 property again,  $\theta^* : \mathrm{Tot} X^\bullet \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\Delta}^{\mathrm{BK}} X^\bullet$  is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence for all Reedy-fibrant diagrams  $X^\bullet$ .  $\blacksquare$

The following result is essentially due to Quillen [[1973](#), § 1].

**1.9.35** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram.

(i) There is a natural pullback diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Fc & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbb{C}) \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is the morphism corresponding to the vertex  $c$  of  $N(\mathbb{C})$  and  $p : \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F \rightarrow N(\mathbb{C})$  is the morphism induced by [remark 1.8.5](#) and the unique natural transformation  $F \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ .

(ii) Assuming  $Ff : Fc' \rightarrow Fc$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for every morphism  $f : c' \rightarrow c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , for any commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X' & \xrightarrow{u'} & Y' & \xrightarrow{v'} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ X & \xrightarrow{u} & Y & \xrightarrow{v} & N(\mathbb{C}) \end{array}$$

if  $u : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence and the two squares are pullback squares in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , then  $u' : X' \rightarrow Y'$  is also a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* We follow the proof of Lemma 5.7 in [GJ, Ch. IV].

(i). The diagram in question is obtained by applying  $\text{diag} : \mathbf{ssSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  to the following diagram in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Fc & \longrightarrow & B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & \text{disc } B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are defined by the evident coproduct inclusions. Recalling [remark 1.8.18](#), it is not hard to see that this is a pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ , so the same is true of its image under  $\text{diag} : \mathbf{ssSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

(ii). Now suppose  $Ff : Fc' \rightarrow Fc$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for every morphism  $f : c' \rightarrow c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ . The pullback functor  $p^* : \mathbf{sSet}_{/N(\mathbb{C})} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}_{/\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} F}$

has a right adjoint (by [theorem A.2.22](#)), so in particular it preserves transfinite compositions. Thus, in view of [proposition 1.5.12](#), [lemma 5.1.10](#), and [proposition A.3.19](#), it suffices to prove the claim in the special case where  $u : X \rightarrow Y$  is a horn inclusion, say  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .

Identifying  $\Delta^n$  with  $N([n])$ , by [proposition 1.2.2](#), there is a unique functor  $V : [n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  such that  $N(V) = v$ . We then have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, [n], FV) & \longrightarrow & B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, F) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, [n], \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparison morphisms of [proposition 1.8.21](#) and the vertical arrows are induced by the unique natural transformation to  $\Delta 1$ , and by [lemma 1.8.22](#), it is a pullback square in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ . Furthermore, there is an evident natural transformation  $\Delta FV[0] \Rightarrow FV$  of diagrams  $[n] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , so we have the following diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\Lambda_k^n)_{\bullet} \times FV[0] & \longrightarrow & (\Delta^n)_{\bullet} \times FV[0] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ (\Lambda_k^n)_{\bullet} \times_{(\Delta^n)_{\bullet}} B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, [n], FV) & \longrightarrow & B_{\bullet}(\Delta 1, [n], FV) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ (\Lambda_k^n)_{\bullet} & \longleftarrow & (\Delta^n)_{\bullet} \end{array}$$

where both squares are pullback squares in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ , and (recalling [proposition 1.5.16](#)) the hypothesis implies that the vertical arrows in the upper square are Reedy weak homotopy equivalences. Thus, by [lemma 1.6.8](#) and [theorem 1.6.10](#), in the induced diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda_k^n \times FV[0] & \longrightarrow & \Delta^n \times FV[0] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Lambda_k^n \times_{\Delta^n} \lim_{\longrightarrow [n]}^{\text{BK}} FV & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\longrightarrow [n]}^{\text{BK}} FV \end{array}$$

both vertical arrows are weak homotopy equivalences; but the top horizontal arrow is a weak homotopy equivalence by [proposition 1.5.17](#), so the bottom horizontal arrow must also be a weak homotopy equivalence, by the 2-out-of-3 property.  $\blacksquare$

## I.10 Bousfield–Kan extensions

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.5, 1.6, 1.8, 2.4, 3.3, 3.4, 5.3, A.5, A.6.

In this section, we study a homotopy-theoretic version of Kan extensions.

**I.10.1** DEFINITION. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.

- The **left Bousfield–Kan extension** of a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is the diagram  $\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  defined by the following formula:

$$(\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F)d = B(U^* h_d, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

- The **right Bousfield–Kan extension** of a diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is the diagram  $\mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  defined by the following formula:

$$(\mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F)d = C(U^* h^d, \mathbb{C}, F)$$

**I.10.2** REMARK. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. If  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is the unique functor, then  $\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}}$  (resp.  $\mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}}$ ) can be identified with  $\varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}}$  (resp.  $\varprojlim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}}$ ).

**I.10.3** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$  be small categories and let  $W : \mathbb{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a functor.

(i) There is an adjunction of the form below:

$$B(W, \mathbb{C}, -) \dashv [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(W, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -) : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

(ii) There is an adjunction of the form below:

$$B(W, \mathbb{D}^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathbb{D}^{\mathrm{op}}) \star_{\mathbb{C}} (-) \dashv C(W, \mathbb{D}, -) : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

*Proof.* Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be diagrams. For convenience, we write  $W_d^c$  for the value of  $W : \mathbb{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  at  $(c, d)$ .

(i). By [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$B(W_d, \mathbb{C}, F) \cong \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} B(W_d, \mathbb{C}, \mathrm{disc} h^c) \times Fc$$

and thus, by [remark A.6.5](#), [proposition A.6.11](#), and the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)), we have the following natural bijections,

$$[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(W, \mathbb{C}, F), G) \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(B(W_d, \mathbb{C}, \mathrm{disc} h^c) \times Fc, Gd)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \mathbf{sSet}(Fc, [\mathbf{B}(W_d, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c), Gd]) \\ &\cong [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](F, [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](\mathbf{B}(W, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), G)) \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we have used [remark 2.1.24](#).

(ii). Similarly,

$$\mathbf{C}(W^c, \mathbb{D}, G) \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} [\mathbf{B}(W_c, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_d), Gd]$$

and thus, we have the following natural bijections,

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}](F, \mathbf{C}(W, \mathbb{D}, G)) &\cong \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \mathbf{sSet}(Fc, [\mathbf{B}(W^c, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_d), Gd]) \\ &\cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \int_{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{sSet}(\mathbf{B}(W^c, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } h_d) \times Fc, Gd) \\ &\cong [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](\mathbf{B}(W, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}) \star_{\mathbb{C}} F, G) \end{aligned}$$

where in the last step we have used the coend formula for simplicially enriched weighted colimits:

TODO: Add a reference for this.

$$\mathbf{B}(W, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}) \star_{\mathbb{C}} F \cong \int^{c:\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{B}(W^c, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}) \times Fc \quad \blacksquare$$

**I.10.4 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

(i) *There is an adjunction of the form below:*

$$\text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}} \dashv [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](\mathbf{B}(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -) : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

(ii) *The adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  and  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

(iii) *The adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Heller model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  and  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Apply [lemma 1.10.3](#) with  $W = \mathbb{D}(U-, -)$ .

(ii). By [proposition 1.9.15](#), for each object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c)$  is a cofibrant object in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ . The Bousfield–Kan model structure is a simplicial model structure (by [theorem 1.9.13](#)), thus

each  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \text{disc } h^c), -) : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure; but fibrations and trivial fibrations are componentwise in the Bousfield–Kan model structure, so we conclude that  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}), -) : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a right Quillen functor. The claim is then a consequence of [proposition 5.3.2](#).

(iii). [Proposition 1.9.19](#) says that each  $B(U^*h_d, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a left Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , and since cofibrations and trivial cofibrations in the Heller model structure are componentwise, we conclude that  $B(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a left Quillen functor. As before, it follows that we have a Quillen adjunction. ■

**I.10.5** COROLLARY. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories. Then  $\text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  preserves natural weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* Apply Ken Brown’s lemma ([5.3.6](#)) to [proposition 1.10.4](#). ■

**I.10.6** PROPOSITION. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

(i) *There is an adjunction of the form below:*

$$B(U^*(-), \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \dashv \text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

(ii) *The adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  and  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

(iii) *The adjunction is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Heller model structures on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  and  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* (i). By [lemma 1.10.3](#) (with  $W = \mathbb{D}(-, U-)$ ), we obtain the following adjunction:

$$B(U^*\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \star_{\mathbb{D}} (-) \dashv C(U^*\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

The right adjoint is (by definition)  $\text{Ran}^{\text{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , and by [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$B(U^*\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \star_{\mathbb{D}} (-) \cong B(U^*(-), \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$$

so we indeed have an adjunction of the desired form.



(ii). [Proposition 1.9.18](#) says that each  $C(U^*h^d, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ , and since fibrations and trivial fibrations are componentwise in the Bousfield–Kan model structure are componentwise, we conclude that  $C(U^*\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a left Quillen functor. The claim is then a consequence of [proposition 5.3.2](#).

(iii). Since cofibrations and trivial cofibrations are componentwise in the Heller model structure,  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a left Quillen functor (with respect to the Heller model structure), and by [proposition 1.9.19](#), so is  $B(-, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ . Thus,  $B(U^*(-), \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a left Quillen functor (by [proposition 5.3.5](#)), and as before, it follows that we have a Quillen adjunction. ■

**I.10.7** COROLLARY. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories. Then  $\text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  preserves natural weak homotopy equivalences between projective-fibrant diagrams.*

*Proof.* Apply Ken Brown’s lemma ([5.3.6](#)) to [proposition 1.10.6](#). ■

The homotopical universal property of Bousfield–Kan extensions is traditionally stated in terms of derived functors.

**I.10.8** DEFINITION. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.

- A **homotopy left Kan extension functor** for diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a homotopical left approximation for the functor  $\text{Lan}_U : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .
- A **homotopy right Kan extension functor** for diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a homotopical right approximation for the functor  $\text{Ran}_U : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

**I.10.9** THEOREM. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

- (i)  $\text{Lan}_U : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  sends natural weak homotopy equivalences between diagrams of the form  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  to natural weak homotopy equivalences of diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (ii)  $B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part) of a functorial left deformation retract for  $\text{Lan}_U : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

- (iii)  $\text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part of) a homotopy left Kan extension functor for diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ .

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). Recalling [theorem A.5.15](#), this is a straightforward consequence of [theorem 1.9.28](#).

- (iii). Thus, by [theorem 3.4.11](#),  $\text{Lan}_U B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part of) a homotopical left approximation for  $\text{Lan}_U$ , and by [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$\text{Lan}_U B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) \cong U^* \mathbb{D} \star_{\mathbb{C}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -) \cong B(U^* \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, -) = \text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}}(-)$$

so we are done. ■

**1.10.10 THEOREM.** *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories and let  $R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be (the functor part of) any functorial fibrant replacement in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*

- (i)  $\text{Ran}_U : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  sends natural weak homotopy equivalences between diagrams of the form  $\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F)$  where every  $Fc$  is a Kan complex to natural weak homotopy equivalences of diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (ii)  $\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part) of a functorial right deformation retract for  $\text{Ran}_U : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .
- (iii)  $\text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}}(R \circ -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part of) a homotopy right Kan extension functor for diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  along  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ .

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). Recalling [theorem A.5.15](#), this is a straightforward consequence of [theorem 1.9.27](#).

- (iii). Thus, by [theorem 3.4.11](#),  $\text{Ran}_U \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is (the functor part of) a homotopical right approximation for  $\text{Lan}_U$ , and by [proposition 1.9.7](#),

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ran}_U \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) &\cong \{U^* \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -)\}^{\mathbb{C}} \\ &\cong \mathbb{C}(U^* \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbb{C}, R \circ -) = \text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}}(R \circ -) \end{aligned}$$

so we are done. ■

**I.10.11** LEMMA. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories.

(i) There is a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$B(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}) \Rightarrow \text{disc } \mathbb{D}(U-, -)$$

of functors  $\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

(ii) There is a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$U^*B(V^*\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{D}) \Rightarrow \text{disc } \mathbb{E}(VU-, -)$$

of functors  $\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

(iii) There is a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$B(V^*\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, B(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C})) \Rightarrow U^*B(V^*\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{D})$$

of functors  $\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

*Proof.* (i). This is a special case of [proposition 1.9.16](#).

(ii). As above, there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$B(V^*\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{D}) \Rightarrow \text{disc } \mathbb{E}(V-, -)$$

of functors  $\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , and  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, [\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, [\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]]$  preserves weak equivalences, so the claim follows.

(iii). We may apply [corollary 1.10.5](#) to obtain a natural weak homotopy equivalence of the required form. ■

**I.10.12** PROPOSITION.

(i) Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. There is a natural weak equivalence  $\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\mathbb{C}}}^{\text{BK}} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]}$ .

(ii) Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories. There is a natural weak equivalence  $\text{Lan}_V^{\text{BK}} \circ \text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}} \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}}$ .

*Dually:*

(i') Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category. There is a natural weak equivalence  $\mathrm{id}_{[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{C}}}^{\mathrm{BK}}$ .

(ii') Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories. There is a natural weak equivalence  $\mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} \circ \mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}}$ .

*Proof.* (i). By definition,  $\mathrm{Lan}_{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{C}}}^{\mathrm{BK}} = \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, -)$ , so this is a consequence of [proposition 1.9.16](#).

(ii). By definition,

$$\mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} \circ \mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} = \mathbf{B}(V^* \mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{B}(U^* \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, -))$$

and by [theorem 1.8.37](#),

$$\mathbf{B}(V^* \mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbf{B}(U^* \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, -)) \cong \mathbf{B}(U^* \mathbf{B}(V^* \mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{D}), \mathbb{C}, -)$$

so by [corollary 1.9.20](#), to prove the claim, it is enough to produce a natural weak homotopy equivalence of the following form,

$$U^* \mathbf{B}(V^* \mathbb{E}, \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{D}) \Rightarrow \mathrm{disc}(VU)^* \mathbb{E} = \mathrm{disc} \mathbb{E}(VU -, -)$$

but this was done in [lemma 1.10.11](#). ■

**1.10.13** ¶ Henceforth, for any functor  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  between small categories, we write

$$\mathbb{R}^{\mathrm{BK}} U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

for the right adjoint of  $\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  and

$$\mathbb{L}^{\mathrm{BK}} U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

for the left adjoint of  $\mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} : [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

**1.10.14** PROPOSITION. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.

- There is an adjunction of the form

$$\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_U \dashv \mathrm{Ho} U^* : \mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

where  $\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_U F = \mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F$  for all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

- There is an adjunction of the form

$$\mathrm{Ho} U^* \dashv \mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_U : \mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

where  $\mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_U F = \mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F$  for all diagrams  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ .

*Proof.* Apply [theorem 3.3.24](#) to theorems [1.10.9](#) and [1.10.10](#). ■

**1.10.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.

- There exist a conjugate pair of natural transformations

$$\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_U \qquad U^* \Rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{\mathrm{BK}} U^*$$

that satisfy the following conditions:

- $\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_U F$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence for every projective-cofibrant diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , and in particular, for every diagram of the form  $F = \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F')$  for any diagram  $F' : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- $U^* G \Rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{\mathrm{BK}} U^* G$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence for every projective-fibrant diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

- There exist a conjugate pair of natural transformations

$$\mathbb{L}^{\mathrm{BK}} U^* \Rightarrow U^* \qquad \mathrm{Ran}_U \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}}$$

that satisfy the following conditions:

- $\mathbb{L}^{\mathrm{BK}} U^* G \Rightarrow U^* G$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence for every (injective-cofibrant) diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- $\mathrm{Ran}_U F \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} F$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence for every injective-fibrant diagram  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and also for every diagram of the form  $F = \mathbf{C}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F')$  for any projective-fibrant diagram  $F' : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [theorem 1.10.9](#),<sup>[1]</sup> there is a natural transformation  $\mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_U$  whose components at diagrams of the form  $\mathbf{B}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, F')$  are natural weak homotopy equivalences (of diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ).

[1] In the dual version, use [theorem 1.10.10](#) instead.

On the other hand, it is not hard to see that  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a right Quillen functor with respect to the Bousfield–Kan model structure,<sup>[2]</sup> so by combining lemmas 1.5.2 and 3.1.11, propositions 3.3.10, 3.3.13, and 5.3.2, and theorem 5.3.12, we see that the components of the natural transformation at projective-cofibrant diagrams are also natural weak homotopy equivalences.

Finally, we may apply theorem 3.3.24 to deduce that the conjugate natural transformation  $U^* \Rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{\text{BK}} U^*$  has the property that its components at projective-fibrant diagrams  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  are natural weak homotopy equivalences (of diagrams  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ).  $\blacksquare$

**1.10.16** LEMMA. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories and let  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a functor. Consider the following diagram in  $[\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) & \longrightarrow & \text{Lan}_{VU} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \\ \text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} p_{GU} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Lan}_{VU} p_{GU} \\ \text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} GU & \longrightarrow & \text{Lan}_{VU} GU \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Lan}_V \varepsilon_G \\ \text{Lan}_V^{\text{BK}} G & \longrightarrow & \text{Lan}_V G \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparisons of proposition 1.10.15,  $p_{GU} : B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \Rightarrow GU$  is the natural weak homotopy equivalence of proposition 1.9.16,  $\varepsilon_G : \text{Lan}_U GU \Rightarrow G$  is the counit, and  $\text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} GU \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_V^{\text{BK}} G$  is the canonical comparison of proposition 1.8.34.

(i) *The diagram commutes and is functorial in  $G$ .*

(ii) *The canonical comparison*

$$\text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_{VU} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)$$

*and the natural transformation*

$$\text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} p_{GU} : \text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \Rightarrow \text{Lan}_{VU}^{\text{BK}} GU$$

*are natural weak homotopy equivalences, and the image in  $\text{Ho} [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  of*

$$\varepsilon_G \circ \text{Lan}_U p_{GU} : \text{Lan}_U B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \Rightarrow G$$

*can be identified with the derived counit  $\mathbb{L}\text{Lan}_U(\text{Ho } U^*)G \rightarrow G$ .*

[2] In the dual version, use the fact that  $U^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  is a left Quillen functor with respect to the Heller model structure.

- (iii) If  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is projective-cofibrant, then the canonical comparison  $\mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V G$  is also a natural weak homotopy equivalence, so the canonical comparison

$$\mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G$$

is a natural weak homotopy equivalence if and only if

$$\mathrm{Lan}_V \varepsilon_G \circ \mathrm{Lan}_{VU} p_{GU} : \mathrm{Lan}_{VU} \mathbf{B}(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V G$$

is a natural weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* (i). The top square commutes by naturality, and the bottom square commutes by [proposition 1.8.34](#) (applied componentwise). Every arrow appearing in the diagram is natural in  $G$ , so the diagram itself is functorial in  $G$ .

(ii). The first subclaim was proved in [proposition 1.10.15](#), the second subclaim is a consequence of [corollary 1.10.5](#), and the third subclaim is an application of [theorem 3.3.24](#) to [theorem 1.10.9](#).

(iii). We know that  $\mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V G$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence when  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is projective-cofibrant, and the rest of the claim is a simple application of the 2-out-of-3 property.  $\blacksquare$

**1.10.17** COROLLARY. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories. For any diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i) The canonical comparison  $\mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G$  of [proposition 1.8.34](#) is a natural weak homotopy equivalence of diagrams  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (ii) The morphism  $\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_V \varepsilon_G : \mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_V \mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_U (\mathrm{Ho} U^*)G \rightarrow \mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_V G$  is an isomorphism (in  $\mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ ).

*Proof.* By [theorem 1.9.13](#) and [proposition 5.1.17](#), there is a projective-cofibrant replacement  $(\tilde{G}, q)$  for  $G$ ; but the following diagram in  $[\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} \tilde{G}U & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} \tilde{G} \\ \mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} qU \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} q \\ \mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \end{array}$$

and the vertical arrows are natural weak homotopy equivalences by [corollary 1.10.5](#), so the claim is a consequence of [lemma 1.10.16](#) (plus [lemmas 1.5.2](#) and [3.1.11](#)).  $\blacksquare$

**1.10.18** LEMMA. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories and let  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a diagram. Consider the following diagram in  $[\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathrm{Ran}_V G & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \\
 \mathrm{Ran}_V \eta_G \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathrm{Ran}_{VU} GU & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \\
 \mathrm{Ran}_{VU} i_{GU} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} i_{GU} \\
 \mathrm{Ran}_{VU} C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)
 \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparisons of [proposition 1.10.15](#),  $i_{GU} : GU \Rightarrow C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)$  is the natural weak homotopy equivalence of [proposition 1.9.16](#),  $\eta_G : G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_U GU$  is the unit, and  $\mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU$  is the canonical comparison of [proposition 1.8.34](#).

(i) The diagram commutes and is functorial in  $G$ .

(ii) If  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is projective-fibrant, then the canonical comparison

$$\mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)$$

and the natural transformation

$$\mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} i_{GU} : \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)$$

are natural weak homotopy equivalences, and the image in  $\mathrm{Ho}[\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  of

$$\mathrm{Ran}_U i_{GU} \circ \eta_G : G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_U B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)$$

can be identified with the derived unit  $G \rightarrow \mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_U(\mathrm{Ho} U^*)G$ .

(iii) If  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is injective-fibrant, then the canonical comparison  $\mathrm{Ran}_V G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G$  is also a natural weak homotopy equivalence, so the canonical comparison

$$\mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU$$

is a natural weak homotopy equivalence if and only if

$$\mathrm{Ran}_{VU} i_{GU} \circ \mathrm{Ran}_V \eta_G : \mathrm{Ran}_V G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU} C(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU)$$

is a natural weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as that of [lemma 1.10.16](#). ■



**1.10.19** COROLLARY. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories. For any diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The canonical comparison  $\mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU$  of [proposition 1.8.34](#) is a natural weak homotopy equivalence of diagrams  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*
- (ii) *The morphism  $\mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_V \eta_G : \mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_V G \rightarrow \mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_V \mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_U(\mathrm{Ho} U^*)G$  is an isomorphism (in  $\mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ ).*

*Proof.* By [theorem 1.9.14](#) and [proposition 5.1.17](#), there is an injective-fibrant replacement  $(\hat{G}, j)$  for  $G$ ; but the following diagram in  $[\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} \tilde{G}U & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} \tilde{G} \\ \mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} qU \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} q \\ \mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Lan}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} G \end{array}$$

and since (by [corollary 5.3.21](#)) both  $\hat{G}$  and  $G$  are projective-fibrant diagrams, the vertical arrows are natural weak homotopy equivalences by [corollary 1.10.5](#); thus the claim is a consequence of [lemma 1.10.18](#) (plus lemmas [1.5.2](#) and [3.1.11](#)). ■

**1.10.20** LEMMA. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  and  $V : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be functors between small categories. The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the canonical comparison (of [proposition 1.8.34](#))*

$$\mathrm{Lan}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \Rightarrow \mathrm{Lan}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G$$

*is a natural weak homotopy equivalence of diagrams  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*

- (ii) *For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism*

$$\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_V \varepsilon_G : \mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_V \mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_U(\mathrm{Ho} U^*)G \rightarrow \mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_V G$$

*is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

- (iii) *For every diagram  $H : \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism*

$$\eta_{(\mathrm{Ho} V^*)H} : (\mathrm{Ho} V^*)H \rightarrow \mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_U(\mathrm{Ho} U^*)(\mathrm{Ho} V^*)H$$

*is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i') For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , the canonical comparison (of [proposition 1.8.34](#))

$$\mathrm{Ran}_V^{\mathrm{BK}} G \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{VU}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU$$

is a natural weak homotopy equivalence of diagrams  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

- (ii') For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism

$$\mathbf{RRan}_V \eta_G : \mathbf{RRan}_V G \Rightarrow \mathbf{RRan}_V \mathbf{RRan}_U (\mathrm{Ho} U^*) G$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{E}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

- (iii') For every diagram  $H : \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the morphism

$$\varepsilon_{(\mathrm{Ho} V^*)H} : \mathbf{LLan}_U (\mathrm{Ho} U^*) (\mathrm{Ho} V^*) H \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Ho} V^*) H$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii), (i')  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii'). See corollaries [1.10.17](#) and [1.10.19](#)

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii), (ii')  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii'). This is a special case of [proposition A.1.13](#). ■

**1.10.21** COROLLARY. Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories and let  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a projective-cofibrant diagram. If  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is cofinal, then the following are equivalent:

- (i) The canonical comparison  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}}^{\mathrm{BK}} G$  of [proposition 1.8.34](#) is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.
- (ii) The canonical comparison  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}} GU \rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} GU$  of [proposition 1.10.15](#) is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.
- (iii) The canonical comparison  $\mathbf{Llim}_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} (\mathrm{Ho} U^*) G \rightarrow \mathbf{Llim}_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} G$  is an isomorphism (in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ ).

*Proof.* With notation as in [lemma 1.10.16](#), consider the following commutative diagram in **sSet**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} B(\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}, GU) \\
 \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} p_{GU} \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \text{Lan}_{VU} p_{GU} \\
 \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} GU & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} GU \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} \varepsilon_G \\
 \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}}^{\text{BK}} G & \xrightarrow{\simeq} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} G
 \end{array}$$

The lemma says that the marked arrows are weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets, and the cofinality hypothesis says  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} \varepsilon_G : \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} GU \rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} G$  is an isomorphism of simplicial sets. Thus, equivalence of (i) and (ii) is a consequence of the 2-out-of-3 property, and the equivalence of (i) and (iii) is a special case of [corollary 1.10.17](#). ■

**I.10.22** COROLLARY. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories and let  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be an injective-fibrant diagram. If  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is coinital, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The canonical comparison  $\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{D}}^{\text{BK}} G \rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} GU$  of [proposition 1.8.34](#) is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.*
- (ii) *The canonical comparison  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} GU \rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} GU$  of [proposition 1.10.15](#) is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.*
- (iii) *The canonical comparison  $\mathbf{R}\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{D}} G \rightarrow \mathbf{R}\lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{C}} (\text{Ho } U^*)G$  is an isomorphism (in  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$ ).*

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as that of [corollary 1.10.21](#). ■

**I.10.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$  be small categories.

- A **homotopy coinital functor**  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a functor such that, for all objects  $d$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , the nerve  $N((U \downarrow d))$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set.
- A **homotopy cofinal functor**  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a functor such that, for all objects  $d$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , the nerve  $N((d \downarrow U))$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set.

**I.10.24** REMARK. By [proposition 1.7.16](#),  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a homotopy coinitial functor if and only if  $U^{\text{op}} : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}$  is a homotopy cofinal functor.

**I.10.25** REMARK. Every homotopy coinitial (resp. homotopy cofinal) functor is a coinitial (resp. cofinal) functor, but the converse is false.

**I.10.26** THEOREM. *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories. The following are equivalent:*

(i)  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a homotopy coinitial functor.

(ii) For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the canonical comparison morphism

$$\varprojlim_{\mathbb{D}} G \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\mathbb{C}} GU$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ .

(iii) For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , the canonical comparison morphism

$$\varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}}^{\text{BK}} G \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} GU$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). By [lemmas 1.10.20](#) and [lemma 1.10.16](#) and [corollary 1.10.17](#), it is equivalent to show that  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a homotopy coinitial functor if and only if

$$\text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}} \Delta X \Rightarrow \Delta X$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence for every simplicial set  $X$ . By definition,

$$(\text{Lan}_U^{\text{BK}} \Delta X)_d = B(U^* h_d, \mathbb{C}, \Delta X)$$

and by [proposition 1.8.36](#),

$$B(U^* h_d, \mathbb{C}, \Delta X) \cong B(U^* h_d, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1) \times X$$

but it is not hard to see that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}} \Delta X & \longrightarrow & \Delta X \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ B(U^* \mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \times X & \longrightarrow & \Delta 1 \times X \end{array}$$

where the bottom arrow is the morphism induced by the unique natural transformation  $B(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \Delta 1$ , so by [proposition 1.5.17](#),  $B(U^*\mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1)$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set if and only if every  $\text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}} \Delta X \Rightarrow \Delta X$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence. [Remark 1.8.5](#) says,

$$B(U^*\mathcal{H}_d, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \cong N((U \downarrow d))$$

so the claim follows.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). This is [corollary 1.10.17](#). ■

**I.10.27 THEOREM.** *Let  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories. The following are equivalent:*

(i)  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a homotopy cofinal functor.

(ii) For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the canonical comparison morphism

$$\varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}} GU \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} G$$

is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$ .

(iii) For every diagram  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the canonical comparison morphism

$$\varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} GU \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}}^{\text{BK}} G$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). By lemmas [1.10.20](#) and [1.10.18](#) and [corollary 1.10.19](#), it is equivalent to show that  $U : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  if and only if the canonical comparison

$$\Delta X \Rightarrow \text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}} \Delta X$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence for every Kan complex  $X$ . By definition,

$$(\text{Ran}_U^{\text{BK}} \Delta X)d = C(U^*\mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}, \Delta X)$$

and by [proposition 1.8.36](#),

$$C(U^*\mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}, \Delta X) \cong [B(U^*\mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \Delta 1), X]$$

but it is not hard to see that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \Delta X & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} \Delta X \\
 \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\
 [\Delta 1, X] & \longrightarrow & [\mathrm{B}(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1), X]
 \end{array}$$

where the bottom arrow is the morphism induced by the unique natural transformation  $\mathrm{B}(U^*\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \Delta 1$ , so by [proposition 1.5.17](#),  $\Delta X \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_U^{\mathrm{BK}} \Delta X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for all Kan complexes  $X$  if and only if every  $\mathrm{B}(U^*\mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \Delta 1)$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set. [Remark 1.8.5](#) says,

$$\mathrm{B}(U^*\mathcal{H}^d, \mathbb{C}^{\mathrm{op}}, \Delta 1) \cong \mathrm{N}((d \downarrow U)^{\mathrm{op}}) \cong \mathrm{N}((d \downarrow U))^{\mathrm{op}}$$

so (recalling [proposition 1.7.16](#)) the claim follows.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). This is [corollary 1.10.17](#). ■

## I.II Categories as homotopy types

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.2, 1.3, 1.5, 1.7, 1.9, 3.1, 5.3, 6.1, B.5.

Although nerves of categories are not usually Kan complexes, they still possess enough structure to have a good theory of weak homotopy equivalences: a surprising number of category-theoretic constructions have homotopical meaning when interpreted through the lens of the nerve functor. Most of these ideas were introduced by Quillen [1973] for the purpose of studying higher algebraic  $K$ -theory.

**I.II.1 ¶** In this section, categories are small unless otherwise stated.

**I.II.2 DEFINITION.** A **weak homotopy equivalence of categories** is a functor  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  such that the induced morphism  $N(f) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.

**REMARK.** Weak homotopy equivalences of categories are also called  **$\infty$ -equivalences**, but we should avoid this term as it conflicts with the terminology of higher category theory.

**I.II.3 LEMMA.** ***Cat**, with the class of weak homotopy equivalences, is a saturated homotopical category. In particular, the class of weak homotopy equivalences of categories has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts.*

*Proof.* Apply lemma 3.1.8 to lemma 1.5.2. ■

**I.II.4 REMARK.** A functor  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $f^{\text{op}} : \mathbb{A}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, by propositions 1.2.2 and 1.7.16.

**I.II.5 LEMMA.** *Let  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a functor. Then  $N(f) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  is right orthogonal to every inner horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ .*

*Proof.* Apply lemma A.3.12 and proposition A.3.28 to lemma 1.2.10. ■

**I.II.6 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a functor. The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  and is right orthogonal to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  for  $n > 1$  and  $0 < k \leq n$ .*

- (ii) Every morphism in  $\mathbb{A}$  is  $p$ -prone, and  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration.
- (iii) The functor  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration and every fibre of  $p$  is a groupoid.

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i) The morphism  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_0^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  and is right orthogonal to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  for  $n > 1$  and  $0 \leq k < n$ .
- (ii) Every morphism in  $\mathbb{A}$  is  $p$ -supine, and  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration.
- (iii) The functor  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration and every fibre of  $p$  is a groupoid.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By unfolding definitions, one sees that every morphism in  $\mathbb{A}$  is  $p$ -prone if and only if  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  is right orthogonal to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_2^2 \hookrightarrow \Delta^2$ ; and if every morphism in  $\mathbb{A}$  is  $p$ -prone, then  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration if and only if  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ .

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). See [proposition B.5.32](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). We begin with the following observations:

- [Lemma 1.11.5](#) says  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  is right orthogonal to every inner horn inclusion.
- Since every morphism in  $\mathbb{A}$  is  $p$ -prone,  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  is right orthogonal to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_2^2 \hookrightarrow \Delta^2$ .
- Since  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration,  $N(p) : N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{B})$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ .

Thus, it is enough to verify that  $N(p)$  is right orthogonal to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_n^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  for  $n \geq 3$ . This is straightforward for  $n = 3$ , and for  $n > 3$ , it is a consequence of [proposition 1.2.22](#) and [corollary 1.2.23](#). ■



**I.II.7** COROLLARY. *For any category  $\mathbb{A}$ , the nerve  $N(\mathbb{A})$  is a Kan complex if and only if  $\mathbb{A}$  is a groupoid.*

*Proof.* The unique functor  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is automatically both a Grothendieck fibration and a Grothendieck opfibration, so the claim is a special case of [proposition I.II.6](#). ■

**I.II.8** REMARK. The above shows that one cannot transfer the Kan–Quillen model structure along the functor  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  by defining the weak equivalences and the fibrations to be the morphisms that  $N$  sends to weak equivalences and fibrations in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

**I.II.9** DEFINITION. An **aspherical category** is a category whose nerve is weakly contractible, i.e. a category  $\mathbb{A}$  such that the unique functor  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

**I.II.10** REMARK. If  $\mathbb{A}$  has an initial object (resp. terminal object), then  $N(\mathbb{A})$  is contractible: indeed, then the unique functor  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  has a left adjoint (resp. right adjoint), and by [corollary I.3.11](#), we deduce that  $N(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{1})$  is an intrinsic homotopy equivalence. In particular, such an  $\mathbb{A}$  is aspherical.

**I.II.11** LEMMA (Cisinski’s asphericity criterion). *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a category with the following property:*

- *For every finite poset  $\mathbb{A}$  (considered as a category) and any functor  $a : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , there exist an object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  and a zigzag of natural transformations connecting  $a$  and  $\Delta c$ .*

*Then  $\mathbb{C}$  is an aspherical category.*

*Proof.* It is not hard to see that the hypothesis implies that  $\mathbb{C}$  has the following property:

- For every finite poset  $\mathbb{A}$  (considered as a category) and any functor  $a : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , there is a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{a} & \mathbb{C} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \\ \mathbb{B} & & \end{array}$$

where  $\mathbb{B}$  is a finite poset and an aspherical category and  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a monomorphism.

We may then apply [proposition 1.2.2](#), [corollary 1.2.7](#), and [proposition 1.7.26](#) to deduce that  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set.  $\blacksquare$

**I.II.I2** LEMMA. *Let  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a functor and let  $P : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagram defined by  $P(c) = N((p \downarrow c))$ .*

(i) *The projections  $(p \downarrow c) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  induce a colimiting cocone  $P \Rightarrow \Delta N(\mathbb{A})$ .*

(ii) *The canonical comparison morphism<sup>[1]</sup>*

$$\varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} P \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}} P \cong N(\mathbb{A})$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

Dually, let  $q : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a functor and let  $Q : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagram defined by  $Q(c) = N((c \downarrow q))$ .

(i') *The projections  $(c \downarrow q) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  induce a colimiting cocone  $Q \Rightarrow \Delta N(\mathbb{A})$ .*

(ii') *The canonical comparison morphism*

$$\varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} Q \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}} Q \cong N(\mathbb{A})$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i). It is clear that the projections  $(p \downarrow c) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  define a cocone, i.e.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (p \downarrow c_0) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A} \\ \downarrow & & \parallel \\ (p \downarrow c_1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A} \end{array}$$

commutes for every morphism  $c_0 \rightarrow c_1$ ; we must show that the corresponding cocone  $P \Rightarrow \Delta N(\mathbb{A})$  is a colimiting cocone.

By [remark 1.8.5](#),  $N((f \downarrow b)) \cong B(p^* \hat{h}_c, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)$ , and under this identification, the forgetful functor  $(p \downarrow c) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  corresponds to the morphism

$$B(p^* \hat{h}_c, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)$$

---

[1] See [proposition 1.8.38](#).

induced by the unique natural transformation  $p^*h_c \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ . [Proposition 1.8.36](#) implies that  $B(-, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)$  preserves colimiting cocones, so it suffices to show that  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}} p^*h_{\bullet} \cong \Delta 1$ ; and since colimits in  $[\mathbb{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  can be calculated component-wise, it is enough to verify that  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}} h^c \cong 1$  for all objects  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ . But the Yoneda lemma yields a bijection

$$[\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Set}](h^c, \Delta X) \cong \mathbf{Set}(1, X)$$

that is natural in  $X$ , so we are done.

(ii). Let  $H : \mathbb{A}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor given by  $H(a, c) = \text{disc } \mathbb{B}(p(a), c)$ . Then  $P \cong B(H, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)$ , and by [theorem 1.8.37](#) (and [proposition 1.9.7](#)),

$$\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} P \cong B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, B(H, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)) \cong B(B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, H), \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)$$

but  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, H) \cong N(p^{\bullet}/\mathbb{C})$ , so (by [remark 1.11.10](#)) the unique natural transformation  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, H) \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence; moreover, the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, B(H, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)) & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbb{A}) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ B(B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, H), \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1) \end{array}$$

so [theorem 1.9.28](#) (plus the 2-out-of-3 property) implies that the horizontal arrows in the diagram are weak homotopy equivalences. In particular, the morphism  $B(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, P) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{A})$  in question is a weak homotopy equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**I.II.I3** LEMMA. Let  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a functor and let  $\mathbb{F} : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be the diagram defined by  $\mathbb{F}(c) = (p \downarrow c)$ .

(i) There is a natural transformation fitting into the following diagram in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A} \\ \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow p \\ \mathbb{C} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is the canonical projection and the top horizontal arrow is the functor  $\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  defined by  $(c, (a, u)) \mapsto a$ .

- (ii) *The induced comparison functor  $\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow (p \downarrow \mathbb{C})$  is an isomorphism.*
- (iii) *The projection  $d_1 : (p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

Dually, let  $q : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be a functor and let  $\mathbb{E} : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be the diagram defined by  $\mathbb{E}(c) = (c \downarrow q)$ .

- (i) *There is a natural transformation fitting into the following diagram in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow q \\ \mathbb{C} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is the canonical projection and the top horizontal arrow is the functor  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  defined by  $((a, u), c) \mapsto a$ .

- (ii) *The induced comparison functor  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow (\mathbb{C} \downarrow q)$  is an isomorphism.*
- (iii) *The projection  $d_0 : (\mathbb{C} \downarrow q) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* (i). The required natural transformation is the one whose component at an object  $((a, u), c)$  in  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1)$  is the morphism  $u : pa \rightarrow c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ .

(ii). By unfolding the definitions, it is easy to see that the induced comparison functor  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow (\mathbb{C} \downarrow q)$  is bijective on objects and fully faithful.

(iii). The projection  $d_1 : (p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  has an evident section  $s : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow (p \downarrow \mathbb{C})$ , namely the functor defined by  $a \mapsto (a, pa, \text{id}_{pa})$ , and there is an evident natural transformation  $s \circ d_1 \Rightarrow \text{id}_{(p \downarrow \mathbb{C})}$ ; so (by applying [lemma 1.3.10](#))  $N(d_1) : N((p \downarrow \mathbb{C})) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{A})$  is half of an intrinsic homotopy equivalence, hence is a weak homotopy equivalence (by [proposition 1.5.4](#)). ■

**I.II.I4** DEFINITION.

- A **right aspherical functor** is a functor  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  with the following property: for all objects  $b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , the comma category  $(f \downarrow b)$  is aspherical.
- A **left aspherical functor** is a functor  $g : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  with the following property: for all objects  $a$  in  $\mathbb{A}$ , the comma category  $(a \downarrow g)$  is aspherical.

**I.II.I5** REMARK. A right aspherical (resp. left aspherical) functor is the same thing as a homotopy coinitial (resp. homotopy cofinal) functor: see [definition 1.10.23](#). In particular, right aspherical (resp. left aspherical) functors are coinitial (resp. cofinal) functors, but not vice versa.

**I.II.I6** LEMMA.

- Let  $f : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a functor and let  $\mathbb{A}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbb{B}$  spanned by the image of  $f$ . If there is a natural transformation  $\varepsilon : f \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbb{A}}$ , then the inclusion  $\mathbb{A} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is right aspherical.
- If  $g : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  be a functor and let  $\mathbb{B}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbb{A}$  spanned by the image of  $g$ . If there is a natural transformation  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathbb{A}} \Rightarrow g$ , then the inclusion  $\mathbb{B} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is left aspherical.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $c : fa \rightarrow b$  be a morphism in  $\mathbb{B}$ . By naturality, the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 fa & \xleftarrow{\varepsilon_{fa}} & ffa & \xrightarrow{fc} & fb \\
 c \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \varepsilon_b \\
 b & \xlongequal{\quad} & b & \xlongequal{\quad} & b
 \end{array}$$

Thus, the morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow N((\mathbb{A} \downarrow b))$  corresponding to the object  $(fb, \varepsilon_b)$  is half of an intrinsic homotopy equivalence and hence (by [proposition 1.5.4](#)) a weak homotopy equivalence *a fortiori*. ■

**I.II.I7** LEMMA. Let  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  and  $g : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  be functors and let  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathbb{A}} \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and  $\varepsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbb{B}}$  be natural transformations.

- If  $\varepsilon f \bullet f \eta = \text{id}_f$ , then  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a right aspherical functor.
- If  $g \varepsilon \bullet \eta g = \text{id}_g$ , then  $g : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is a left aspherical functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $c : f(a) \rightarrow b$  be a morphism in  $\mathbb{B}$ . By naturality, the following diagram in  $\mathbb{B}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f(g(f(a))) & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_{f(a)}} & f(a) \\ f(g(c)) \downarrow & & \downarrow c \\ f(g(b)) & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_b} & b \end{array}$$

and since  $\varepsilon_{f(a)} \circ f(\eta_a) = \text{id}_{f(a)}$ , we obtain a the diagram in  $\mathbb{B}$  shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f(a) & \xrightarrow{f(g(c) \circ \eta_a)} & f(g(b)) \\ c \downarrow & & \downarrow \varepsilon_b \\ b & \xlongequal{\quad} & b \end{array}$$

Thus, the morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow N((f \downarrow b))$  corresponding to the object  $(g(b), \varepsilon_b)$  is half of an intrinsic homotopy equivalence and hence (by [proposition 1.5.4](#)) a weak homotopy equivalence *a fortiori*. ■

**I.II.18** COROLLARY.

- If  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a functor that admits a right adjoint, then  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is right aspherical.
- If  $g : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is a functor that admits a left adjoint, then  $g : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is left aspherical. ■

**I.II.19** COROLLARY. If  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a functor that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects, then  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is both left and right aspherical. ■

**I.II.20** PROPOSITION. Let  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  and  $v : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be functors.

- If  $v \circ u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is right aspherical and  $v : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is fully faithful, then  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is also right aspherical.
- If  $v \circ u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is left aspherical and  $v : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is fully faithful, then  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is also left aspherical.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose  $v \circ u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is right aspherical and  $v : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is fully faithful. Then, for any object  $b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , the comma category  $(u \downarrow b)$  is naturally isomorphic to the comma category  $(v \circ u \downarrow v(b))$ , so  $(u \downarrow b)$  is an aspherical category. Thus,  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is indeed right aspherical. ■

The following result is due to Grothendieck [1983, §40].

**I.II.2I** THEOREM. *Consider a commutative triangle of categories and functors:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \\ & \searrow p & \swarrow q \\ & \mathbb{C} & \end{array}$$

- If, for every object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , the functor  $u_c : (p \downarrow c) \rightarrow (q \downarrow c)$  induced by  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, then the functor  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  itself is a weak homotopy equivalence.
- If, for every object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , the functor  ${}^c u : (c \downarrow p) \rightarrow (c \downarrow q)$  induced by  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, then the functor  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  itself is a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version, following the proof of Théorème 2.I.13 in [Cisinski, 2004].

Let  $P, Q : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagrams defined by  $P(c) = N((p \downarrow c))$  and  $Q(c) = N((q \downarrow c))$ , respectively. Then  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  induces a natural transformation  $\theta : P \Rightarrow Q$  with components  $\theta_u = N(u_c)$ , and by hypothesis,  $\theta : P \Rightarrow Q$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence. Lemma 1.II.12 says we have a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}} P & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbb{A}) \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \theta \downarrow & & \downarrow N(u) \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}} Q & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbb{B}) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are weak homotopy equivalences; but corollary 1.9.20 implies  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \theta$  is also a weak homotopy equivalence, so (using the 2-out-of-3 property) we may deduce that  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence of categories. ■

As a corollary, we obtain a famous result of Quillen [1973, §1]:

**I.II.22** COROLLARY (Quillen's Theorem A).

- *Right aspherical functors are weak homotopy equivalences of categories.*
- *Left aspherical functors are weak homotopy equivalences of categories.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a right aspherical functor. Consider the following commutative triangle:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{f} & \mathbb{B} \\ & \searrow f & \swarrow \text{id} \\ & \mathbb{B} & \end{array}$$

[Remark 1.11.10](#) implies that the slice categories  $\mathbb{B}_{/b}$  are aspherical, so the 2-out-of-3 property ([lemma 1.11.3](#)) plus right asphericity implies that the functors  $f_b : (f \downarrow b) \rightarrow \mathbb{B}_{/b}$  are weak homotopy equivalences for all objects  $b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ . Thus, by [theorem 1.11.21](#),  $f : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  itself is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**I.II.23** REMARK. In view of remarks [1.8.5](#) and [1.11.15](#), Quillen's Theorem A is also a corollary of [theorem 1.10.27](#).

We may now prove a useful result of Thomason [[1977](#), [1979](#)].

**I.II.24** THEOREM (Thomason's homotopy colimit theorem). *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a category, let  $\mathbb{F} : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be a diagram, let  $\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F})$  be the Grothendieck construction, and let  $p : \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the canonical projection.*

- (i) *There is a natural weak homotopy equivalence*

$$\mathbb{F}(-) \Rightarrow (p \downarrow -)$$

*and it is natural in  $\mathbb{F}$ .*

- (ii) *There is a weak homotopy equivalence*

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} (\mathbf{N} \circ \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}))$$

*and it is natural in  $\mathbb{F}$ .*



Dually, let  $\mathbb{E} : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be a diagram, let  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1)$  be the Grothendieck construction and let  $q : \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the canonical projection.

(i) There is a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\mathbb{E}(-) \Rightarrow (- \downarrow q)$$

and it is natural in  $\mathbb{E}$ .

(ii) There is a weak homotopy equivalence

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{KB}} (\mathbf{N} \circ \mathbb{E}) \rightarrow \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1))$$

and it is natural in  $\mathbb{E}$ .

*Proof.* (i). By construction, the fibre  $p^{-1}\{c\}$  is naturally isomorphic to  $\mathbb{F}(c)$ , and  $p : \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a Grothendieck (pre-)opfibration by [proposition B.5.37](#) (and [proposition B.5.31](#)), so [proposition B.5.23](#) says that the canonical comparison functor  $p^{-1}\{c\} \rightarrow (p \downarrow c)$  has a left adjoint; but [corollary I.II.18](#) says that such functors are left aspherical, and hence by Quillen's Theorem A ([corollary I.II.22](#)), weak homotopy equivalences *a fortiori*. Thus, we have a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\mathbb{F}(-) \Rightarrow (p \downarrow -)$ .

(ii). [Lemma I.II.12](#) says that there exist a canonical isomorphism

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{N}((p \downarrow -)) \cong \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}))$$

and a canonical weak homotopy equivalence

$$\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbf{N}((p \downarrow -)) \rightarrow \lim_{\mathbb{C}} \mathbf{N}((p \downarrow -))$$

so the claim is a consequence of the fact that  $\lim_{\mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}}$  preserves natural weak homotopy equivalences ([corollary I.9.20](#)). ■

**I.II.25** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a category. Then the functor

$$\mathbf{G}(-, \mathbb{C}, -) : [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}] \times [\mathbb{C}, \mathbf{Cat}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

defined by the Grothendieck construction sends natural weak homotopy equivalences to weak homotopy equivalences (in each variable and jointly).

*Proof.* Let  $\varphi : \mathbb{E}' \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be a natural weak homotopy equivalence of functors  $\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  and let  $\psi : \mathbb{F}' \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  be a natural weak homotopy equivalence of functors  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ . Clearly,

$$\mathbf{G}(\varphi, \mathbb{C}, \psi) = \mathbf{G}(\varphi, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \circ \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}', \mathbb{C}, \psi)$$

and since the class of weak homotopy equivalences is closed under composition (by lemma 1.11.3), so it suffices to prove the claim for each variable separately; and by duality, it suffices to prove it for just one variable, say the second variable. But by proposition B.5.40, there is a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}') & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1), \mathbb{F}') \\ \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \psi) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1), \psi) \\ \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta 1), \mathbb{F}) \end{array}$$

so (by the 2-out-of-3 property) the claim is a consequence of corollary 1.9.20 and Thomason's homotopy colimit theorem (1.11.24). ■

**1.11.26** DEFINITION.

- A **right-locally weakly constant functor** is a functor  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  with the following property: for every morphism  $b' \rightarrow b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , the induced functor  $(p \downarrow b') \rightarrow (p \downarrow b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.
- A **left-locally weakly constant functor** is a functor  $q : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  with the following property: for every morphism  $b \rightarrow b'$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , the induced functor  $(b' \downarrow q) \rightarrow (b \downarrow q)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

**1.11.27** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{B}$  be a category.*

- *Let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a  $\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category (with small fibres). The induced Grothendieck opfibration*

$$p : \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{B}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$$

*is a right-locally weakly constant functor if and only if the reindexing functor  $\mathbb{F}(b') \rightarrow \mathbb{F}(b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for every morphism  $b' \rightarrow b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ .*

- *Let  $\mathbb{E}$  be a  $\mathbb{B}$ -indexed category (with small fibres). The induced Grothendieck fibration*

$$q : \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{B}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$$

is a left-locally weakly constant functor if and only if the reindexing functor  $\mathbb{E}(b') \rightarrow \mathbb{E}(b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for every morphism  $b \rightarrow b'$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider a morphism  $a : b' \rightarrow b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ . We then have the following diagram in **Cat**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{F}(b') & \longrightarrow & (p \downarrow b') \\ \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{F}(b) & \longrightarrow & (p \downarrow b) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the right adjoint functors of (the formal dual of) [proposition B.5.23](#) and the vertical arrows are induced by  $a : b' \rightarrow b$  and the component of the natural transformation at an object  $f'$  in  $\mathbb{F}(b')$  corresponds to the  $p$ -supine morphism  $(a, \text{id}_{a_* f'})$ . Thus, by [lemmas 1.3.10](#) and [1.5.3](#), [corollary 1.11.18](#), and Quillen's Theorem A ([corollary 1.11.22](#)),  $\mathbb{F}(b') \rightarrow \mathbb{F}(b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $(p \downarrow b') \rightarrow (p \downarrow b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**I.II.28** DEFINITION. A **homotopy derived pullback diagram** in **Cat** is a commutative square in **Cat** whose image under  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a derived pullback diagram in **sSet**.

**I.II.29** LEMMA. Let  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a functor.

- Let  $\mathbb{F} : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be a diagram. If the reindexing functor  $\mathbb{F}(b') \rightarrow \mathbb{F}(b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for every morphism  $b' \rightarrow b$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , then the pullback diagram in **Cat** of [lemma B.5.39](#)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F} \circ u) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{B}, \mathbb{F}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \end{array}$$

is a homotopy derived pullback diagram.

- Let  $\mathbb{E} : \mathbb{B}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be a diagram. If the reindexing functor  $\mathbb{E}(b') \rightarrow \mathbb{E}(b)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for every morphism  $b \rightarrow b'$  in  $\mathbb{B}$ , then the

pullback diagram in **Cat** of [lemma B.5.39](#)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E} \circ u, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{B}, \Delta 1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \end{array}$$

is a homotopy derived pullback diagram.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

We have the following commutative cube in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}^{\text{BK}} N \circ \mathbb{F} \circ u & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F} \circ u)) & & \\ \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}}^{\text{BK}} N \circ \mathbb{F} & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{B}, \mathbb{F})) & \\ \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}^{\text{BK}} \Delta 1 & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1)) & \searrow & \\ & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \\ & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}}^{\text{BK}} \Delta 1 & \longrightarrow & N(\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{B}, \Delta 1)) & \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the unique natural transformation  $\mathbb{F} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ , the horizontal arrows are the weak homotopy equivalences of Thomason's homotopy colimit theorem ([I.1.1.24](#)), and the diagonal arrows are as in [corollary 1.8.23](#) and [lemma B.5.39](#); note that the projections  $\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{A}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  and  $\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{B}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  are isomorphisms. In particular, we have the following pullback diagram in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}^{\text{BK}} N \circ \mathbb{F} \circ u & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}}^{\text{BK}} N \circ \mathbb{F} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}^{\text{BK}} \Delta 1 & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}}^{\text{BK}} \Delta 1 \end{array}$$

but the right vertical arrow is homotopically quadrable by [proposition 1.9.35](#), so by [theorem 1.7.22](#) and [proposition 6.1.23](#), the pullback diagram is a derived pullback diagram. The claim is then a consequence of [proposition 6.1.21](#).  $\blacksquare$

**I.II.30** PROPOSITION. Let  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be a functor.

- Suppose we have a pullback diagram in **Cat**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} \times_{\mathbb{B}} \mathbb{F} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{F} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \end{array}$$

If  $q : \mathbb{F} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a right-locally weakly constant Grothendieck opfibration, then the diagram is also a homotopy derived pullback diagram.

- Suppose we have a pullback diagram in **Cat**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} \times_{\mathbb{B}} \mathbb{E} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{E} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \end{array}$$

If  $p : \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a left-locally weakly constant Grothendieck fibration, then the diagram is also a homotopy derived pullback diagram.

*Proof.* Apply lemmas 6.1.19 and 6.1.20 (plus lemma 1.3.10 and proposition 1.5.4) to lemma 1.11.29 and theorem B.5.51. ■

The following is also due to Quillen [1973, § 1].

**I.II.31** THEOREM (Quillen's Theorem B).

- If  $p : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a right-locally weakly constant functor, then for every object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , we have the following homotopy derived pullback square in **Cat**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (p \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \mathbb{C}_{/c} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by the evident projection functors.

- If  $q : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a left-locally weakly constant functor, then for every object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , we have the following derived pullback square in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (c \downarrow q) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\ {}^c\mathbb{C} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by the evident projection functors.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider the following commutative diagram in **Cat**,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 (p \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & (p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \mathbb{A} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
 \mathbb{C}_{/c} & \longrightarrow & [2, \mathbb{C}] & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \mathbb{C} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow d_0 & & \\
 1 & \xrightarrow{\Gamma_{c^\top}} & \mathbb{C} & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $d_1 : (p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  and  $d_1 : [2, \mathbb{C}] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  are the domain projections,  $d_0 : [2, \mathbb{C}] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the codomain projection,  $(p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow [2, \mathbb{C}]$  is the functor defined by  $(a, c, u) \mapsto u$ ,  $\Gamma_{c^\top} : 1 \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the functor corresponding to the object  $c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$ , and every square is a pullback diagram. By lemmas 1.11.13 and 1.11.29,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 (p \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & (p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow d_0 \\
 1 & \xrightarrow{\Gamma_{c^\top}} & \mathbb{C}
 \end{array}$$

is a homotopy derived pullback diagram, and by lemma 6.1.19,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbb{C}_{/c} & \longrightarrow & [2, \mathbb{C}] \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow d_0 \\
 1 & \xrightarrow{\Gamma_{c^\top}} & \mathbb{C}
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 (p \downarrow \mathbb{C}) & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \mathbb{A} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
 [2, \mathbb{C}] & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \mathbb{C}
 \end{array}$$

are homotopy derived pullback diagrams, so by applying lemma 6.1.20 (twice), the claim follows. ■

**1.11.32** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a category.*

- *Let  $\mathbb{F} : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be a functor. If the induced Grothendieck opfibration*

$$p : \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

*is a right-locally weakly constant functor, then it is a homotopically quadrable morphism in **Cat** (with respect to weak homotopy equivalences).*

- Let  $\mathbb{E} : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be a functor. If the induced Grothendieck fibration

$$q : \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathbb{C}, \Delta \mathbb{1}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$$

is a left-locally weakly constant functor, then it is a homotopically quadrable morphism in  $\mathbf{Cat}$  (with respect to weak homotopy equivalences).

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  and  $v : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be functors. By [lemma B.5.39](#), we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F} \circ v \circ u) & \xrightarrow{\bar{u}} & \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{B}, \mathbb{F} \circ v) & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} & \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} & \xrightarrow{v} & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

where both squares are pullback squares. Moreover, by [lemma 1.II.27](#), if  $p : \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is right-locally weakly constant, then so are the other vertical arrows in the above diagram. We wish to show that the functor

$$\bar{u} : \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F} \circ v \circ u) \rightarrow \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{B}, \mathbb{F} \circ v)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence if  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence and  $p : \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is right-locally weakly constant.

Recalling Thomason's homotopy colimit theorem ([1.II.24](#)), we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbb{N} \circ \mathbb{F} \circ v \circ u & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbb{N} \circ \mathbb{F} \circ v & \xrightarrow{\bar{u}} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbb{N} \circ \mathbb{F} \\ \simeq \downarrow & & \simeq \downarrow & & \downarrow \simeq \\ \mathbb{N}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F} \circ v \circ u)) & \xrightarrow{N(\bar{u})} & \mathbb{N}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{B}, \mathbb{F} \circ v)) & \xrightarrow{N(\bar{v})} & \mathbb{N}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{F})) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are weak homotopy equivalences, and by [corollary 1.8.23](#), we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbb{N} \circ \mathbb{F} \circ v \circ u & \xrightarrow{\bar{u}} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{B}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbb{N} \circ \mathbb{F} \circ v & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} & \lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{C}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbb{N} \circ \mathbb{F} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{N}(\mathbb{A}) & \xrightarrow{N(u)} & \mathbb{N}(\mathbb{B}) & \xrightarrow{N(v)} & \mathbb{N}(\mathbb{C}) \end{array}$$

where the two squares are pullback squares, so by [proposition 1.9.35](#),  $\tilde{v}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets if  $u$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories; but by the 2-out-of-3 property,  $\tilde{u}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets if and only if  $\bar{u}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**I.II.33** PROPOSITION.

- *Right-locally weakly constant Grothendieck opfibrations are homotopically quadrable morphisms in **Cat** (with respect to weak homotopy equivalences).*
- *Left-locally weakly constant Grothendieck fibrations are homotopically quadrable morphisms in **Cat** (with respect to weak homotopy equivalences).*

*Proof.* Apply lemmas [6.1.19](#) and [6.1.20](#) (plus [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [proposition 1.5.4](#)) to [lemma 1.11.32](#) and [theorem B.5.51](#).  $\blacksquare$

**I.II.34** PROPOSITION. *Consider a pullback diagram in **Cat**:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{E} & \xrightarrow{v} & \mathbb{F} \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \end{array}$$

- *If  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is left aspherical and  $q : \mathbb{F} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration, then  $v : \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is also left aspherical.*
- *If  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is right aspherical and  $q : \mathbb{F} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, then  $v : \mathbb{E} \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  is also right aspherical.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $f$  be an object in  $\mathbb{F}$  and let  $b = q(f)$ . Observe that we have the following pullback diagrams in **Cat**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (f \downarrow v) & \longrightarrow & f/\mathbb{F} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{E} & \xrightarrow{v} & \mathbb{F} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} (b \downarrow u) & \longrightarrow & b/\mathbb{B} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{B} \end{array}$$



where the vertical arrows are the evident projections, so by the pullback pasting lemma,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (f \downarrow v) & \longrightarrow & f/\mathbb{F} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f_q \\ (b \downarrow u) & \longrightarrow & b/\mathbb{B} \end{array}$$

is also a pullback diagram in **Cat**. But (recalling [remark B.5.45](#) and [lemma B.5.46](#)) by [remark I.II.10](#) and lemmas [I.II.27](#) and [B.5.34](#),  $f_q : f/\mathbb{F} \rightarrow b/\mathbb{B}$  is a right-locally weakly constant Grothendieck opfibration, so [proposition I.II.33](#) implies that  $(f \downarrow v) \rightarrow f/\mathbb{F}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. Thus,  $(f \downarrow v)$  is aspherical, as required. ■

**I.II.35** DEFINITION. The **category of simplices** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the category  $\Delta(X)$  defined below:

- The objects are simplices of  $X$ .
- For  $x \in X_n$  and  $x' \in X_{n'}$ , the morphisms  $x \rightarrow x'$  are the morphisms  $\varphi : [n] \rightarrow [n']$  in  $\Delta$  such that  $X(\varphi)(x') = x$ .
- Composition and identities are the obvious ones.

We write  $\pi_\Delta : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \Delta$  for the evident projection functor that sends an  $n$ -simplex of  $X$  to the object  $[n]$  in  $\Delta$ .

**I.II.36** ¶ For brevity, if  $\mathbb{A}$  is a small category, then we write  $\Delta(\mathbb{A})$  instead of  $\Delta(N(\mathbb{A}))$ . This is consistent with the notation of [§5.10](#). We will also use the left and right projection functors of [definition 5.10.9](#).

**I.II.37** REMARK. Of course,  $\Delta(X)$  is (naturally isomorphic to) the comma category  $(\Delta^\bullet \downarrow X)$ .

**I.II.38** DEFINITION. The **Quillen subdivision** of a simplicial set  $X$  is the simplicial set  $\text{Sd}_Q(X) = N(\Delta(X))$ .

**I.II.39** LEMMA. The functor  $\text{Sd}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  admits a right adjoint, namely the functor  $\text{Ex}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  defined by the following formula:

$$\text{Ex}_Q(Y)_n = \mathbf{sSet}\left(\text{Sd}_Q(\Delta^n), Y\right)$$

*Proof.* Let  $F : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagram defined by  $F([n]) = \mathrm{Sd}_Q(\Delta^n)$  and let  $P : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagram defined by  $P(x) = N(\Delta(X)_{/x})$ . Note that if  $x$  is an  $n$ -simplex of  $X$ , then  $\pi_\Delta : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \Delta$  induces an isomorphism  $\Delta(X)_{/x} \rightarrow \Delta_{/[n]}$ ; but there is a natural isomorphism  $\Delta_{/[n]} \cong \Delta(\Delta^n)$ , so  $P \cong F\pi_\Delta$ . On the other hand, lemma 1.11.12 says that  $\lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)} P$  can be identified with  $N(\Delta(X)) = \mathrm{Sd}_Q(X)$ , so using the formula of theorem A.5.15, we deduce that  $\mathrm{Sd}_Q(X) \cong X \star_\Delta F$  (naturally in  $X$ ). The claim is then an instance of proposition A.6.15. ■

**1.11.40** LEMMA. *The functor  $\Delta(-) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  admits a right adjoint, namely the functor  $\mathrm{Ex}_Q(N(-)) : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*

*Proof.* By proposition 1.2.2, we have an adjunction

$$\tau_1 \dashv N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

and by lemma 1.11.39, we also have

$$\mathrm{Sd}_Q \dashv \mathrm{Ex}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

so by composition, we have the following adjunction:

$$\tau_1 \mathrm{Sd}_Q \dashv \mathrm{Ex}_Q(N(-)) : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

We also know that  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is fully faithful, so by proposition A.1.3, the counit  $\tau_1 N \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$  is a natural isomorphism; in particular,  $\tau_1 \mathrm{Sd}_Q \cong \Delta(-)$ . Thus we have an adjunction of the required form. ■

**1.11.41** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial set.*

(i) *There is a natural isomorphism*

$$\mathrm{Sd}_Q(X) \cong \lim_{\Delta^{\mathrm{op}}}^{\mathrm{KB}} \mathrm{disc} X.$$

*where on the RHS we regard  $X$  as a diagram  $\Delta^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .*

(ii) *There is a weak homotopy equivalence  $\lambda_X : \mathrm{Sd}_Q(X) \rightarrow X$ , and it is natural in  $X$ .*

(iii) *If  $X = N(\mathbb{C})$  for some category  $\mathbb{C}$ , then  $\lambda_X = N(\pi_R)$  as morphisms  $\mathrm{Sd}_Q(N(\mathbb{C})) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{C})$ . In particular,  $\pi_R : \Delta(N(\mathbb{C})) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* (i). This is straightforward.

(ii). We follow the proof of Lemme 2.1.15 in [Cisinski, 2004].

Let  $P, Q : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagrams defined by  $P(x) = N(\Delta(X)_{/x})$  and  $Q(x) = \Delta^{\pi_\Delta(x)}$ . Note that if  $x$  is an  $n$ -simplex of  $X$ , then  $\pi_\Delta : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \Delta$  induces an isomorphism  $\Delta(X)_{/x} \rightarrow \Delta_{/[n]}$ ; but there is a natural isomorphism  $\Delta_{/[n]} \cong \Delta(\Delta^n)$ , so the right projection  $\pi_R : \Delta(N(-)) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$  induces a natural transformation  $\theta : P \Rightarrow Q$ . Moreover, by [remark 1.11.10](#), each  $P(x)$  and  $Q(x)$  is contractible, so  $\theta : P \Rightarrow Q$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence.

Now, by [proposition 1.8.38](#), we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)}^{\text{BK}} P & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)} P \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)}^{\text{BK}} \theta \downarrow & & \downarrow \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)} \theta \\ \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)}^{\text{BK}} Q & \longrightarrow & \lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)} Q \end{array}$$

[Lemma 1.11.12](#) says that  $\lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)} P$  can be identified with  $N(\Delta(X)) \cong \text{Sd}_Q(X)$  and that the morphism  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P) \rightarrow \text{Sd}_Q(X)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. On the other hand, [theorem A.5.15](#) implies that  $\lim_{\rightarrow \Delta(X)} Q$  can be identified with  $X$ , so  $\theta : P \Rightarrow Q$  defines a natural morphism  $\lambda_X : \text{Sd}_Q(X) \rightarrow X$ .

We claim that  $\lambda_X : \text{Sd}_Q(X) \rightarrow X$  is the desired natural weak homotopy equivalence. Indeed, [corollary 1.9.20](#) that the left vertical arrow in the diagram is a weak homotopy equivalence, so to prove the claim, it suffices to show that  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q) \rightarrow X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. It is not hard to see that

$$B_n(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q) \cong \coprod_{(k_0, \dots, k_n)} X_{k_n} \times \Delta_{k_{n-1}}^{k_n} \times \dots \times \Delta_{k_0}^{k_1} \times \Delta^{k_0} \cong B_n(X, \Delta, \Delta)$$

naturally in  $n$ , where  $(k_0, \dots, k_n)$  varies over  $n$ -tuples of natural numbers. The morphism  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q) \rightarrow X$  can then be identified with the realisation of the morphism  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q_\bullet) \rightarrow \text{disc } X_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$  defined by

$$(x, \varphi_n, \dots, \varphi_1, \varphi_0) \mapsto X(\varphi_n \circ \dots \circ \varphi_0)(x)$$

which is a degreewise weak homotopy equivalence, by [proposition 1.9.16](#); hence,  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q) \rightarrow X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, by [theorem 1.6.10](#).

(iii). Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a category and let  $X = N(\mathbb{C})$ . Since a functor is uniquely determined by its action on objects and morphisms, it suffices to show that  $\lambda_X :$

$N(\Delta(X)) \rightarrow X$  agrees with  $N(\pi_R) : N(\Delta(N(\mathbb{C}))) \rightarrow N(\mathbb{C})$  on vertices and edges. For convenience, we make the following identifications,

$$\begin{aligned} (B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P))_0 &\cong \coprod_k X_k \times \text{ob } \Delta_{/[k]} \\ (B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P))_1 &\cong \coprod_{(k_0, k_1)} X_{k_1} \times \Delta_{k_0}^{k_1} \times \text{mor } \Delta_{/[k_0]} \\ (B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q))_0 &\cong \coprod_k X_k \times \text{ob } [k] \\ (B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), Q))_1 &\cong \coprod_{(k_0, k_1)} X_{k_1} \times \Delta_{k_0}^{k_1} \times \text{mor } [k_0] \end{aligned}$$

so that a vertex of  $(B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P))$  is a pair  $(x, \varphi)$  where  $x$  is a  $k$ -simplex of  $X$  and  $\varphi$  is a morphism in  $\Delta$  with codomain  $[k]$ , etc.

Let  $x$  be a vertex of  $N(\Delta(X))$ , i.e. an  $n$ -simplex of  $X$ . It is the image of an evident vertex of  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P)$ , namely  $(x, \text{id}_{[n]})$ . An  $n$ -simplex of  $X$  is a functor  $[n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ , and by definition,  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), \theta)$  sends  $(x, \text{id}_{[n]})$  to  $(x, n)$ . The image of  $(x, n)$  under the morphism  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P) \rightarrow X$  is  $x(n)$ , so  $\lambda_X$  indeed agrees with  $N(\pi_R)$  on vertices.

Now let  $f : x_0 \rightarrow x_1$  be an edge of  $N(\Delta(X))$ , i.e. a morphism  $\alpha : [n_0] \rightarrow [n_1]$  in  $\Delta$  such that  $X(\alpha)(x_1) = x_0$ . It is the image of the edge  $(x_1, \alpha, \text{id}_{\text{id}_{[n_0]}})$  in  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P)$  and by definition,  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), \theta)$  sends it to  $(x_1, \alpha, \text{id}_{n_0})$ . It can be verified that the image of  $(x_1, \alpha, \text{id}_{n_0})$  under  $B(\Delta 1, \Delta(X), P) \rightarrow X$  is  $X(\beta)(x_1)$ , where  $\beta : [1] \rightarrow [n_1]$  is the morphism in  $\Delta$  defined by  $\beta(0) = \alpha(n_0)$  and  $\beta(1) = n_1$ , and this is precisely the image of  $f : x_0 \rightarrow x_1$  under  $\pi_R$ . Thus  $\lambda_X$  also agrees with  $N(\pi_L)$  on edges.  $\blacksquare$

**I.II.42** LEMMA. *For any simplicial set  $X$ , there is an anodyne extension  $i_X : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}_Q(X)$ , and it is natural in  $X$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\rho^n = \lambda_{\Delta^n} : \text{Sd}_Q(\Delta^n) \rightarrow \Delta^n$ , where  $\lambda : \text{Sd}_Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{sSet}}$  is the natural weak homotopy equivalence of lemma I.II.41. It is not hard to check that  $\Delta^n$  is naturally isomorphic to  $N([n])$ , so we can identify  $\rho^n : \text{Sd}_Q(\Delta^n) \rightarrow \Delta^n$  with  $N(\pi_R) : N(\Delta(N([n]))) \rightarrow N([n])$ . It is then straightforward to verify that  $\rho^n : \text{Sd}_Q(\Delta^n) \rightarrow \Delta^n$  is an epimorphism. Thus, noting that each  $\text{Sd}_Q(\Delta^n)$  is contractible (by corollary I.3.11), we may apply proposition I.6.12 to obtain the required natural anodyne extension  $i : \text{id}_{\text{sSet}} \Rightarrow \text{Ex}_Q$ .  $\blacksquare$

**I.11.43** THEOREM.

- (i) *The functors  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and  $\Delta(-) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  constitute a homotopically mutually inverse pair of homotopical functors.*
- (ii) *We have the following Quillen equivalence:*

$$\mathrm{Sd}_Q \dashv \mathrm{Ex}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

- (iii) *We have an adjunction of the form below,*

$$\Delta(-) \dashv \mathrm{Ex}_Q(N(-)) : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

*and these constitute an adjoint homotopical equivalence of homotopical categories.*

*Proof.* (i). By definition,  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves and reflects weak homotopy equivalences, and lemma 1.11.41 says there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\lambda : \mathrm{Sd}_Q \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}}$ , so (using the 2-out-of-3 property)  $\Delta(-) : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  also preserves and reflects weak homotopy equivalences. Moreover, the same lemma implies that  $\pi_R : \Delta(N(-)) \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$  is a natural weak homotopy equivalence, so we indeed have a homotopically mutually inverse pair of homotopical functors.

(ii). First, we must show that the indicated adjunction is a Quillen adjunction, and by proposition 5.3.2, it suffices to show that  $\mathrm{Sd}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a left Quillen functor. We already know that it preserves weak homotopy equivalences, so we need only verify that it preserves monomorphisms; but it is clear that  $\Delta : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  and  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  both preserve monomorphisms, so the same must be true of  $\mathrm{Sd}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .

Now, consider the derived adjunction:

$$\mathbf{LSd}_Q \dashv \mathbf{REx}_Q : \mathbf{Ho\,sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho\,sSet}$$

Since every simplicial set is cofibrant, we may take  $\mathbf{LSd}_Q = \mathbf{Ho\,Sd}_Q$ ; and since  $\mathrm{Sd}_Q \simeq \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}}$ , we have  $\mathbf{Ho\,Sd}_Q \cong \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Ho\,sSet}}$ . Thus, we must also have  $\mathbf{REx}_Q \cong \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Ho\,sSet}}$ , and (recalling lemma 1.5.2) we may apply theorem 5.3.13 to deduce that we have a Quillen equivalence.

(iii). Lemma 1.11.42 (and the 2-out-of-3 property) implies that the functor  $\mathrm{Ex}_Q : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves weak homotopy equivalences, and  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$

preserves weak homotopy equivalences by definition, so the same is true of the composite  $\text{Ex}_Q(N(-)) : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . Thus, we have an induced adjoint equivalence of categories:

$$\text{Ho } \Delta(-) \dashv \text{Ho } \text{Ex}_Q(N(-)) : \text{Ho } \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$$

Since  $\mathbf{Cat}$  and  $\mathbf{sSet}$  are both saturated homotopical categories, it follows that the unit  $\text{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow \text{Ex}_Q(N(\Delta(-)))$  and the counit  $\Delta(\text{Ex}_Q(N(-))) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$  are natural weak homotopy equivalences, as required.  $\blacksquare$

We can say a little bit more about the (weak) homotopy type of the fundamental category of a (reflexive) graph (i.e. a 1-skeletal simplicial set).

**I.II.44** DEFINITION. Let  $n$  be a positive integer.

- A **principal edge** of the standard simplex  $\Delta^n$  is an edge corresponding to a map  $[1] \rightarrow [n]$  that sends 0 to  $i$  and 1 to  $i + 1$ .
- The **spine** of the standard simplex  $\Delta^n$  is the smallest simplicial subset of  $\Delta^n$  containing its principal edges.

**I.II.45** REMARK. A simplex of  $N(\mathbf{C})$  is degenerate if and only if (at least) one of its principal edges is degenerate. However, a non-degenerate simplex of  $N(\mathbf{C})$  may still have degenerate edges!

**I.II.46** PROPOSITION. Let  $G$  be a 1-skeletal simplicial set. For each positive integer  $k$ , let  $X^{(k)}$  be the smallest simplicial subset of  $N(\tau_1 G)$  containing all  $k$ -simplices whose principal edges are in the image of the unit  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\tau_1 G)$ , i.e. the  $k$ -simplices corresponding to diagrams in  $\tau_1 G$  of the form below,

$$x_0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow x_k$$

where the arrows are either identity morphisms or non-degenerate edges of  $G$ .

- For each positive integer  $k$ ,  $X^{(k)} \subseteq X^{(k+1)}$ , and the inclusion  $X^{(k)} \hookrightarrow X^{(k+1)}$  is an anodyne extension.
- We have  $N(\tau_1 G) = \bigcup_{k \geq 1} X^{(k)}$ .
- The unit  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\tau_1 G)$  is an anodyne extension.

*Proof.* (i). The definition of  $X^{(k+1)}$  ensures that  $X^{(k)} \subseteq X^{(k+1)}$ . Let  $\alpha$  be a non-degenerate  $(k+1)$ -simplex of  $X^{(k+1)}$ . Then  $\alpha$  corresponds to a diagram in  $\tau_1 G$  of the form below,

$$x_0 \xrightarrow{g_1} x_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow x_k \xrightarrow{g_{k+1}} x_{k+1}$$

where each  $g_i$  is a non-degenerate edge of  $G$ . Clearly, a face  $d_i(\alpha)$  is in  $X^{(k)}$  if and only if  $i = 0$  or  $i = k+1$ . Let  $V^{k+1}$  be the smallest simplicial subset of  $\Delta^{k+1}$  containing the 0-th and  $(k+1)$ -th faces. It is not hard to verify that the inclusion  $V^{k+1} \hookrightarrow \Delta^{k+1}$  is an anodyne extension and that the evident commutative diagram

$$(*) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} V^{k+1} & \longrightarrow & X^{(k)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^{k+1} & \longrightarrow & X^{(k+1)} \end{array}$$

is a pullback square in **sSet**. Moreover, since  $G$  is 1-skeletal,  $\tau_1 G$  is *freely* generated by the non-degenerate edges of  $G$ , so the canonical pushout comparison morphism  $\Delta^{k+1} \cup^{V^{k+1}} X^{(k)} \rightarrow X^{(k+1)}$  is a monomorphism.

Now, let  $I_{k+1}$  be the set of all non-degenerate  $(k+1)$ -simplices of  $X^{(k+1)}$ . By amalgamating diagrams of the form  $(*)$ , we obtain a commutative diagram

$$(**) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} I_{k+1} \odot V^{k+1} & \longrightarrow & X^{(k)} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ I_{k+1} \odot \Delta^{k+1} & \longrightarrow & X^{(k+1)} \end{array}$$

and as before,  $(**)$  is a pullback square in **sSet**. Noting that every degenerate  $(k+1)$ -simplex of  $X^{(k+1)}$  is already in  $X^{(k)}$ , we deduce that  $I_{k+1} \odot \Delta^{k+1} \rightarrow X^{(k+1)}$  and  $X^{(k)} \hookrightarrow X^{(k+1)}$  are jointly epimorphic; but the canonical pushout comparison morphism is again a monomorphism, so  $(**)$  is also a pushout square. In particular,  $X^{(k)} \hookrightarrow X^{(k+1)}$  is an anodyne extension.

(ii). Let  $\alpha$  be an  $n$ -simplex of  $N(\tau_1 G)$ . By factoring the edges of  $\alpha$  in terms of the generators, we can find a positive integer  $m$  and an  $m$ -simplex  $\beta$  of  $X^{(m)}$  such that  $\alpha$  occurs as a subsimplex of  $\beta$ . In particular,  $\alpha$  is an  $n$ -simplex of  $X^{(m)}$ . Thus,  $N(\tau_1 G) = \bigcup_{k \geq 1} X^{(k)}$ .

(iii). It is clear that the unit  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\tau_1 G)$  is a monomorphism and that its image is precisely  $X^{(1)}$ . It thus suffices to verify that  $X^{(1)} \hookrightarrow N(\tau_1 G)$  is an

anodyne extension; but the class of anodyne extensions is closed under transfinite composition, so the claim is a consequence of (i) and (ii). ■

**I.II.47** LEMMA. *Let  $G$  be a 1-skeletal simplicial set and let  $G'$  and  $G''$  be simplicial subsets of  $G$  such that  $G = G' \cup G''$ . Then the induced commutative diagram in **Cat***

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tau_1(G' \cap G'') & \longrightarrow & \tau_1 G'' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \tau_1 G' & \longrightarrow & \tau_1 G \end{array}$$

*is a pushout diagram where all the arrows are monomorphisms, and the induced morphism*

$$N(\tau_1 G') \cup N(\tau_1 G'') \rightarrow N(\tau_1 G)$$

*is an anodyne extension.*

*Proof.* It is clear that the evident commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G' \cap G'' & \hookrightarrow & G'' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ G' & \hookrightarrow & G \end{array}$$

is a pushout diagram in **sSet**, and since  $\tau_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is a left adjoint (by definition), the corresponding diagram in **Cat** is also pushout diagram. Moreover, one may directly verify that  $\tau_1$  sends monomorphisms between 1-skeletal simplicial sets in **sSet** to monomorphisms in **Cat**. It then follows (using the fact that  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a right adjoint) that the induced morphism  $N(\tau_1 G') \cup N(\tau_1 G'') \rightarrow N(\tau_1 G)$  is indeed a monomorphism in **sSet**; thus, by [proposition I.5.12](#), it suffices to show that it is a weak homotopy equivalence. But the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G' \cup G'' & \xrightarrow{\eta_{G'} \cup \eta_{G''}} & N(\tau_1 G') \cup N(\tau_1 G'') \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \\ G & \xrightarrow{\eta_G} & N(\tau_1 G) \end{array}$$

and by [proposition I.II.46](#) (plus the fact that the class of anodyne extensions is closed under pushout and composition), the horizontal arrows are weak homotopy equivalences, so the claim is a consequence of the 2-out-of-3 property. ■



## SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

### 2.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §§0.2, 1.1, 1.2, A.2, B.2.

In this section, we use the explicit universe convention.

**2.1.1** DEFINITION. A **simplicial category**  $C_\bullet$  consists of the following data:

- For each natural number  $n$ , a category  $C_n$ .
- For each natural number  $n$  and  $0 \leq i \leq n$ , a functor  $d_i^n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$  and a functor  $s_i^n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$ .

These functors are moreover required to satisfy the simplicial identities. The **underlying category** of  $C_\bullet$  is the category  $C_0$ .

**2.1.2** REMARK. In short, a simplicial category is a simplicial object in the metacategory of all categories. Thus, we may refer to the functors  $d_i^n$  and  $s_i^n$  as **face operators** and **degeneracy operators**, just as in the general case.

**2.1.3** DEFINITION. Given two simplicial categories  $C_\bullet$  and  $D_\bullet$ , a **simplicial functor**  $F_\bullet : C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$  consists of a functor  $F_n : C_n \rightarrow D_n$  for each natural number  $n$ , such that the functors  $F_n$  are compatible with the face and degeneracy operators in the obvious sense:

$$d_i^n F_n = F_{n-1} d_i^n \qquad s_i^n F_n = F_{n+1} s_i^n$$

- 2.I.4** DEFINITION. Given two simplicial functors  $F_\bullet, F'_\bullet : C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ , a **simplicial natural transformation**  $\varphi_\bullet : F_\bullet \Rightarrow F'_\bullet$  consists of a natural transformation  $\varphi_n : F_n \Rightarrow F'_n$  for each natural number  $n$ , such that the natural transformations  $\varphi_n$  are compatible with the face and degeneracy operators in the obvious sense:

$$d_i^n \varphi_n = \varphi_{n-1} d_i^n \quad s_i^n \varphi_n = \varphi_{n+1} s_i^n$$

- 2.I.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -small** (resp. **locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small**) **simplicial category** is a simplicial category  $C_\bullet$  such that each  $C_n$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small (resp. locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small).

- 2.I.6** EXAMPLE. If  $C$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then we have a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small constant simplicial category  $C_\bullet$ , where  $C_n = C$  for all  $n$ , with the trivial face and degeneracy operators.

- 2.I.7** DEFINITION. The **bisimplicial nerve** of a simplicial category  $C_\bullet$  is the bisimplicial set  $N^{\text{ss}}(C_\bullet)$  defined by the following formula:

$$(N^{\text{ss}}(C_\bullet)_n)_m = N(C_m)_n$$

In other words, the  $m$ -simplices of the  $n$ -th level of  $N^{\text{ss}}(C_\bullet)$  are the composable strings of morphisms in  $C_m$  of length  $n$ .

- 2.I.8** EXAMPLE. Let  $C$  be an ordinary category, and consider the simplicial category  $C_\bullet$  defined by  $C_n = [\mathbf{I}[n], C]$ , where  $\mathbf{I}[n]$  denotes the groupoid obtained by freely inverting the arrows in  $[n]$ . The bisimplicial nerve  $N^{\text{ss}}(C_\bullet)$  is then (isomorphic to) the **classifying diagram** of  $C$ , in the sense of Rezk [2001].

- 2.I.9** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}]$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicial categories, and let  $\mathbf{ssSet}$  be the category of bisimplicial sets.

- (i)  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}]$  is a locally finitely presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.
- (ii)  $N^{\text{ss}} : [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}] \rightarrow \mathbf{ssSet}$  is a fully faithful  $\aleph_0$ -accessible functor.
- (iii)  $N^{\text{ss}}$  has a left adjoint.

*Proof.* (i). This is an instance of [proposition 0.2.44](#).

(ii). That  $N^{\text{ss}} : [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}] \rightarrow \mathbf{ssSet}$  is a fully faithful  $\aleph_0$ -accessible functor essentially follows from the fact that  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is so: see [proposition 1.2.2](#) and the accessible adjoint functor theorem ([0.2.50](#)).

(iii). It is also clear that  $N^{\text{ss}}$  preserves limits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, so we may apply the accessible adjoint functor theorem to construct a left adjoint for  $N^{\text{ss}}$ . ■

**2.1.10** DEFINITION. A **simplicially enriched category**  $\underline{C}$  consists of the following data:

- A set of objects,  $\text{ob } C$ .
- A simplicial set of morphisms,  $\text{mor } \underline{C}$ .
- A pair of simplicial maps  $\text{dom}, \text{codom} : \text{mor } \underline{C} \rightarrow \text{disc ob } C$ .
- For each element  $C$  of  $\text{ob } C$ , a vertex  $\text{id}_C$  in  $\text{mor } \underline{C}$  such that  $\text{dom } \text{id}_C = C$  and  $\text{codom } \text{id}_C = C$ .
- A simplicial map  $\underline{C}^{[2]} \rightarrow \text{mor } \underline{C}$ , written as  $(\beta, \alpha) \mapsto \beta \circ \alpha$ , where  $\underline{C}^{[2]}$  is the simplicial set defined by the following pullback diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}^{[2]} & \longrightarrow & \text{mor } \underline{C} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{codom} \\ \text{mor } \underline{C} & \xrightarrow{\text{dom}} & \text{disc ob } C \end{array}$$

These are moreover required to satisfy the following condition:

- For each natural number  $n$ , the given identities and binary operation induce a category with  $\text{ob } C$  for its object-set and  $(\text{mor } \underline{C})_n$  for its morphism-set.

As usual, we write  $\underline{C}(C, C')$  for the simplicial subset of  $\text{mor } \underline{C}$  consisting of those simplices  $\alpha$  such that  $\text{dom } \alpha = C$  and  $\text{codom } \alpha = C'$ .

The **underlying category** of a simplicial category  $\underline{C}$  is the category  $C$  obtained by taking  $C(C', C) = \underline{C}(C', C)_0$ , with the evident identity morphisms and induced composition. By **object** or **morphism** in  $\underline{C}$ , we shall always mean an object or morphism in the underlying category  $C$ .

**2.1.11** REMARK. It is clear from the definition that a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  induces a simplicial category  $C_\bullet$ , but not every simplicial category arises in this fashion: simplicially enriched categories correspond to the simplicial categories  $C_\bullet$  where  $\text{ob } C_\bullet$  is a constant simplicial set.

**2.I.12** DEFINITION. Given two simplicially enriched categories  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ , a **simplicially enriched functor**  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  consists of a map  $\text{ob } F : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \text{ob } D$  and a simplicial map  $\text{mor } \underline{F} : \text{mor } \underline{C} \rightarrow \text{mor } \underline{D}$  that respect the structure of simplicially enriched categories in the obvious sense.

**2.I.13** REMARK. There is a natural bijection between simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  and simplicial functors  $C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$ , where  $C_\bullet$  and  $D_\bullet$  are the simplicial categories associated with  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$ .

Of course, just as in the simplicial case, a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  has a underlying functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  between the underlying categories.

**2.I.14** DEFINITION. Given two simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{F}, \underline{F}' : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ , a **simplicially enriched natural transformation**  $\varphi : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{F}'$  consists of a morphism  $\varphi_C : FC \rightarrow F'C$  in  $D$  for each object  $C$  in  $C$ , such that the following diagram commutes for all pairs  $(C, C')$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \underline{D}(FC, FC') & \\
 \text{mor } \underline{F} \nearrow & & \searrow \underline{D}(FC, \varphi_{C'}) \\
 \underline{C}(C, C') & & \underline{D}(FC, F'C') \\
 \text{mor } \underline{F}' \searrow & & \nearrow \underline{D}(\varphi_C, F'C') \\
 & \underline{D}(F'C, F'C') &
 \end{array}$$

**2.I.15** REMARK. It is not hard to see that any simplicially enriched natural transformation has an underlying natural transformation; but unlike simplicially enriched functors, being a simplicially enriched natural transformation merely a property, rather than an extra structure.

Less obviously, the bijection between simplicially enriched functors and simplicial functors also extends to a bijection between simplicially enriched natural transformations and simplicial natural transformations. In particular, to check whether a natural transformation is simplicially enriched, it is enough to check whether it is levelwise natural.

**2.I.16** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category** is a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that  $\text{ob } C$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set and  $\text{mor } \underline{C}$  is a simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -set. A **locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category** is a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that  $\text{ob } C$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -class and, for each pair  $(C', C)$  of elements of  $\text{ob } C$ , the simplicial set  $\underline{C}(C', C)$  is a simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.

**2.1.17** REMARK. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe and let  $\mathbf{sSet}$  be the category of simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. Then a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category is essentially the same thing as a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\mathbf{sSet}$ -enriched category, where we regard  $\mathbf{sSet}$  as a symmetric monoidal closed category via its cartesian closed structure; and under this identification, simplicially enriched functors (resp. natural transformations) are the same thing as  $\mathbf{sSet}$ -enriched functors (resp. natural transformations).

**2.1.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe and let  $\mathbf{sSet}$  be the category of simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. Then  $\mathbf{sSet}$  admits a simplicial enrichment, with*

$$\underline{\mathbf{sSet}}(X, Y) = [X, Y]$$

where  $[X, Y]$  denotes the exponential object.

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition B.2.5](#). ■

**2.1.19** DEFINITION. A **discrete simplicially enriched category** is a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that  $\text{mor } \underline{C}$  is a constant simplicial set.

**2.1.20** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. If  $C$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then there exists a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small discrete simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  whose underlying category is  $C$  such that, for all simplicially enriched categories  $\underline{D}$ , the map sending a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  to its underlying ordinary functor  $C \rightarrow D$  is a bijection.*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**2.1.21** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category and let  $C$  be an object in  $C$ . The **simplicially enriched slice category**  $\underline{C}_{/C}$  is defined as follows:

- The objects are morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow C$  in  $C$ .
- The simplicial set of morphisms from  $f : X \rightarrow C$  to  $g : Y \rightarrow C$  is defined by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}_{/C}(f, g) & \longrightarrow & \underline{C}(X, Y) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow g_* \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & \underline{C}(X, C) \end{array}$$

where  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow \underline{C}(X, C)$  is the morphism corresponding to  $f$  (considered as a vertex of  $\underline{C}(X, C)$ ).

- Composition and identities are inherited from  $\underline{C}$ .

**2.I.22** REMARK. It is straightforward to check that the above indeed defines a simplicially enriched category. The morphism  $\underline{C}_{/C}(f, g) \rightarrow \underline{C}(X, Y)$  is monic, so we may regard  $\underline{C}_{/C}(f, g)$  as a simplicial subset of  $\underline{C}(X, Y)$ ; however, note that it is not a “full” simplicial subset in general: for  $n > 0$ , the  $n$ -simplices that are in  $\underline{C}_{/C}(f, g)$  must become degenerate after applying  $g_* : \underline{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{C}(X, C)$ .

**2.I.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe.*

- (i) *If  $\underline{D}$  and  $\underline{E}$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched categories, then there exist a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{D} \times \underline{E}$  and simplicially enriched functors  $p_1 : \underline{D} \times \underline{E} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  and  $p_2 : \underline{D} \times \underline{E} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  such that  $(p_1, p_2)$  induce a bijection between simplicially enriched functors  $\langle \underline{F}, \underline{G} \rangle : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D} \times \underline{E}$  and pairs  $(\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  of simplicially enriched functors, where  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  and  $\underline{G} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{E}$ , where  $\underline{C}$  varies over all simplicially enriched categories.*
- (ii) *If  $\underline{D}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category and  $\underline{E}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category, then there exist a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category  $[\underline{D}, \underline{E}]$  and a simplicially enriched functor  $\text{ev} : [\underline{D}, \underline{E}] \times \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  such that  $\text{ev}$  induces a bijection between simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C} \times \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  and simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow [\underline{D}, \underline{E}]$ , where  $\underline{C}$  varies over all simplicially enriched categories.*
- (iii) *If  $\underline{D}$  and  $\underline{E}$  are both  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched categories, then  $[\underline{D}, \underline{E}]$  is also  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.*

*Proof.* This is a special case of [theorem B.3.7](#). ■

**2.I.24** REMARK. Let  $C$  be an ordinary category and let  $\underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched category. Then all functors  $C \rightarrow D$  are automatically simplicially enriched (by [proposition 2.I.20](#)), and as in [remark A.6.5](#), we have an isomorphism

$$[C, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{F}') \cong \int_{C:c} \underline{D}(Fc, F'c)$$

and this is simplicially natural in both  $\underline{F}$  and  $\underline{F}'$ . More generally, see [corollary B.3.22](#).

**2.1.25** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{SCat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched categories, and let  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}]$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicial categories.

- (i)  $\mathbf{SCat}$ , regarded as a full subcategory of  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}]$ , is closed under limits and colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.
- (ii)  $\mathbf{SCat}$  is a cartesian closed category.
- (iii) The inclusion  $\mathbf{SCat} \hookrightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}]$  has a left adjoint, and  $\mathbf{SCat}$  is a locally finitely presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category.

*Proof.* (i). The functor  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{ob}] : [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a left adjoint and a right adjoint, so it follows that a limit or colimit for diagrams of simplicially enriched categories, computed as a simplicial category, will have object-space a discrete simplicial set and thus be isomorphic to a simplicially enriched category.

(ii). This is implied by [proposition 2.1.23](#).

(iii). It is not hard to directly construct a left adjoint for the inclusion  $\mathbf{SCat} \hookrightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Cat}]$ , and once this is done, we may apply the classification theorem for locally presentable categories ([0.2.40](#)) to deduce (from [proposition 2.1.9](#)) that  $\mathbf{SCat}$  is also locally finitely presentable. Alternatively, one may instead first show that  $\mathbf{SCat}$  is locally finitely presentable and then use the accessible adjoint functor theorem ([0.2.50](#)) to construct a left adjoint for the inclusion.  $\diamond$

**2.1.26** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathbb{S}^{[\bullet]} = (S^{[\bullet]}, \epsilon^{[\bullet]}, \delta^{[\bullet]})$  be a cosimplicial object in the category of comonads on  $C$ . If  $\mathbb{S}^{[0]} = (\text{id}, \text{id}, \text{id})$ , then  $C$  is the underlying ordinary category of a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  where the hom-spaces are given by the formula below,

$$\underline{C}(A, B) \cong C(S^{[1]}A, B)$$

with composition in level  $n$  induced by the comultiplication  $\delta^{[n]} : S^{[n]} \Rightarrow S^{[n]}S^{[n]}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $C_n$  be the Kleisli category associated with the comonad  $\mathbb{S}^{[n]}$ . Clearly, these fit together to form a simplicial category  $C_\bullet$  such that  $\text{ob } C_\bullet$  is a constant simplicial set; so by [remark 2.1.11](#), we have the required simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**2.I.27** LEMMA (Weak Yoneda lemma). *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{sSet}$  be the simplicially enriched category of simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category. For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and each simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the map  $\varphi \mapsto \varphi_A(\mathrm{id}_A)$  is a bijection between the set of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\varphi : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  and the set of vertices of  $\underline{F} A$ .*

*Proof.* This is a special case of [lemma B.2.15](#). ■



## 2.2 Simplicially enriched limits and colimits

**Prerequisites.** §§ 2.1, A.5, A.6, B.2, B.3, B.4.

In this section, we use the explicit universe convention.

**2.2.1** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category, let  $X$  be a simplicial set, and let  $C$  be an object in  $\underline{C}$ .

- A **tensor product** of  $X$  and  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$  is pair  $(X \odot C, \lambda)$  where  $X \odot C$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a morphism  $X \rightarrow \underline{C}(C, X \odot C)$  such that the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(X \odot C, -) \Rightarrow [X, \underline{C}(C, -)]$$

induced by the corresponding vertex of  $[X, \underline{C}(C, X \odot C)]$  is a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism. We may also refer to  $(X \odot C, \lambda)$  as a **simplicial copower** of  $A$  by  $X$ .

- A **cotensor product** of  $X$  and  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a pair  $(X \pitchfork C, \lambda)$  where  $X \pitchfork C$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a morphism  $X \rightarrow \underline{C}(X \pitchfork C, C)$  such that the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(-, X \pitchfork C) \Rightarrow [X, \underline{C}(-, C)]$$

induced by the corresponding vertex of  $[X, \underline{C}(X \pitchfork C, C)]$  is a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism. We may also refer to  $(X \pitchfork C, \lambda)$  as a **simplicial power** of  $A$  by  $X$ .

**2.2.2** **REMARK.** If  $\underline{C}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category, then the above definition coincides with the definition of tensor/cotensor product in a **sSet**-enriched category, where **sSet** is the category of simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets.

**2.2.3** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category and let  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a diagram in  $\underline{C}$ .

- A **conical colimit** for  $F$  in  $\underline{C}$  is an object  $A$  and a cocone  $\lambda : F \Rightarrow \Delta A$  such that, for all objects  $B$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the hom-functor  $\underline{C}(-, B) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends  $\lambda$  to a limiting cone in **sSet**.
- A **conical limit** for  $F$  in  $\underline{C}$  is an object  $B$  and a cone  $\lambda : \Delta B \Rightarrow F$  such that, for all objects  $A$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the hom-functor  $\underline{C}(A, -) : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends  $\lambda$  to a limiting cone in **sSet**.

**2.2.4** REMARK. Every conical colimit (resp. limit) for  $F$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a colimit (resp. limit) for  $F$  in the underlying category  $C$ , but the converse is not true in general.

**2.2.5** REMARK. When  $\mathbb{D}$  is an ordinary category  $\mathbb{D}$ , ordinary cocones (resp. cones) on diagrams  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow C$  are automatically simplicially enriched, and thus conical colimits (resp. limits) for  $F$  are the same thing as  $\Delta 1$ -weighted colimits (resp. limits) for  $\underline{F}$ , where  $\Delta 1$  denotes the constant functor with value 1 in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

**2.2.6** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category and let  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow C$  be a diagram in  $C$ . If  $\underline{C}$  has cotensor products with the standard simplices, then the following are equivalent for any cocone  $\lambda : F \Rightarrow \Delta A$ :*

- (i)  $\lambda$  is a conical colimit for  $F$  in the simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$ .
- (ii)  $\lambda$  is a colimit for  $F$  in the underlying category  $C$ .

*Dually, if  $\underline{C}$  has tensor products with the standard simplices, then the following are equivalent for any cone  $\lambda : \Delta B \Rightarrow F$ :*

- (i')  $\lambda$  is a conical limit for  $F$  in the simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$ .
- (ii')  $\lambda$  is a limit for  $F$  in the underlying category  $C$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Immediate.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). It suffices to show that, for each natural number  $n$ , the canonical comparison map

$$\underline{C}\left(\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{D}} F, T\right)_n \rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{D}} \underline{C}(F, T)_n$$

is a bijection; but by the Yoneda lemma,

$$\underline{C}(S, T)_n \cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, \underline{C}(S, T))$$

and the definition of  $\Delta^n \pitchfork (-)$  implies there is a natural bijection of the form below,

$$\mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n, \underline{C}(S, T)) \cong C(S, \Delta^n \pitchfork T)$$

therefore the functor  $\underline{C}(-, T)_n : C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is representable. ■

**2.2.7** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be universes, with  $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \mathbf{U}^+$ .

- A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete simplicially enriched category** is a locally  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  such that, for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathbb{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small weights  $\underline{W} : \underline{\mathbb{D}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$ ,  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has a  $\underline{W}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{F}$ .
- A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -complete simplicially enriched category** is a locally  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  such that, for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathbb{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small weights  $\underline{W} : \underline{\mathbb{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$ ,  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has a  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{F}$ .

**2.2.8** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small simplicially enriched category.

- $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete if and only if  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is simplicially tensored and has conical colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.
- $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete if and only if  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is simplicially cotensored and conical limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams.
- $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is both  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete and  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete if and only if  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is both simplicially tensored and cotensored and the underlying category  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete and  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete.

*Proof.* See [???].

□

## 2.3 Simplicial and cosimplicial objects

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 2.1, 2.2, A.6.

**2.3.1 ¶** Recall that a **simplicial object** in a category is a diagram of shape  $\Delta^{\text{op}}$ , and dually, a **cosimplicial object** is a diagram of shape  $\Delta$ . Let us write  $\mathbf{sM}$  for the category of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $\mathbf{cM}$  for the category of cosimplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**2.3.2 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category. Let  $\underline{\text{Hom}} : (\mathbf{sM})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{sM} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the functor defined by*

$$\underline{\text{Hom}}(A, B) \cong \text{Tot } \mathcal{M}(A_{\bullet}, B_{\bullet})$$

where we regard  $\mathcal{M}(A_{\bullet}, B_{\bullet})$  as a cosimplicial simplicial set. Then  $\mathbf{sM}$  is a locally small simplicially enriched category with hom-spaces given by  $\underline{\text{Hom}}$ .

*Proof.* By lemma 1.6.22, we have the following end formula:

$$\underline{\text{Hom}}(A, B)_n \cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathcal{M}(A_m, B_m))$$

Concretely, an element  $f$  of  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(A, B)_n$  is a  $\coprod_{[m]:\Delta} \Delta([m], [n])$ -indexed family of morphisms  $f_{\varphi} : A_m \rightarrow B_m$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , such that for any two morphisms  $\varphi : [m] \rightarrow [n]$ ,  $\psi : [l] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ , the diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  shown below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_m & \xrightarrow{f_{\varphi}} & B_m \\ \psi^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi^* \\ A_l & \xrightarrow{f_{\varphi \circ \psi}} & B_l \end{array}$$

Decomposing an element  $g$  of  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_n$  the same way, we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A_m & \xrightarrow{f_{\varphi}} & B_m & \xrightarrow{g_{\varphi}} & C_m \\ \psi^* \downarrow & & \psi^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi^* \\ A_l & \xrightarrow{f_{\varphi \circ \psi}} & B_l & \xrightarrow{g_{\varphi \circ \psi}} & C_l \end{array}$$

and thus we have an element of  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(A, C)_n$ . This is certainly natural in  $n$ , and this is clearly the required associative composition with identity.

It remains to be shown that there is a natural bijection of the form below:

$$\mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^0, \underline{\mathbf{Hom}}(A, B)) \cong \mathbf{sM}(A, B)$$

Given a morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$ , we define an element  $f[n]$  of  $\underline{\mathbf{Hom}}(A, B)_n$  for each object  $[n]$  in  $\Delta^{\text{op}}$  as follows: given  $\varphi : [m] \rightarrow [n]$ , we set  $(f[n])_\varphi = f_m$  and naturality of  $f_m$  makes the diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  shown below commute for every morphism  $\psi : [l] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_m & \xrightarrow{(f[n])_\varphi} & B_m \\ \psi^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi^* \\ A_l & \xrightarrow{(f[n])_{\varphi \circ \psi}} & B_l \end{array}$$

Thus, we have a morphism  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Hom}}(A, B)$ . Conversely, given a family of elements  $f[-]$  such that  $\theta^*(f[n]) = f[n']$  for all  $\theta : [n'] \rightarrow [n]$ , we discover

$$(f[n])_\varphi = (f[n])_{\varphi \circ \text{id}_{[m]}} = (\varphi^*(f[n]))_{\text{id}_{[m]}} = (f[m])_{\text{id}_{[m]}}$$

for all morphisms  $\varphi : [m] \rightarrow [n]$  in  $\Delta$ , so we get a morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  by setting  $f_m = (f[m])_{\text{id}_{[m]}}$ . This establishes the required natural bijection. ■

**2.3.3 DEFINITION.** A **constant simplicial object** in a category  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  whose face and degeneracy operators are isomorphisms.

**2.3.4 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category. The following are equivalent for a simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

- (i)  $B_\bullet$  is a constant simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (ii) For all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the simplicial set  $\mathcal{M}(A, B_\bullet)$  is discrete.
- (iii) For all simplicial objects  $A_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the simplicial set  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, B)$  is discrete.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Use the fact that the Yoneda embedding  $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is fully faithful.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Apply lemma 1.6.24.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $A$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If we regard  $A$  as a constant simplicial object in the obvious way, then lemma 1.6.23 says there is a natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, B) \cong \mathcal{M}(A, B_\bullet)$$

so  $\mathcal{M}(A, B_\bullet)$  is indeed discrete. ■

**2.3.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category and let  $X$  be a finite simplicial set.*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite colimits, then for any cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exists an object  $X \star A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with bijections*

$$\mathcal{M}(X \star A, B) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathcal{M}(A^\bullet, B))$$

*that are natural in  $B$ .*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite limits, then for any simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exists an object  $\{X, B\}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with bijections*

$$\mathcal{M}(A, \{X, B\}) \cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, \mathcal{M}(A, B_\bullet))$$

*that are natural in  $A$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Applying the Yoneda lemma, we see that  $\Delta^n \star A$  must be (isomorphic to)  $A^n$ . It is not hard to see that, if  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a diagram such that  $Xj \star A$  exists for all  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then  $\left(\lim_{j \in \mathcal{J}} Xj\right) \star A$  must be (isomorphic to)  $\lim_{j \in \mathcal{J}} (Xj \star A)$  when the latter exists; thus, the class of simplicial sets  $X$  for which  $X \star A$  exists must be closed under finite colimits (because  $\mathcal{M}$  has colimits for finite diagrams). We may then use [proposition 1.1.21](#) to deduce that  $X \star A$  exists if  $X$  is a finite simplicial set. ■

**2.3.6** REMARK. The same is true for a general simplicial set  $X$  when  $\mathcal{M}$  has limits and colimits for all small diagrams: see [theorem A.6.14](#).

**2.3.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category and let  $X$  be a finite simplicial set.*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite colimits, then for any cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the tensor product  $(X \odot A)^\bullet$  exists in  $\underline{\mathbf{cM}}$ .*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite limits, then for any simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the cotensor product  $(X \pitchfork B)_\bullet$  exists in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is clear that  $\Delta^n \times X$  is a finite simplicial set for all  $n \geq 0$  when  $X$  is a finite simplicial set, so the objects  $(\Delta^n \times X) \star A$  exist in  $\mathcal{M}$  (by [proposition 2.3.5](#)).

We then define  $(X \odot A)^\bullet$  by taking  $(X \odot A)^n = (\Delta^n \times X) \star A$ . Let  $B^\bullet$  be any cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Using the calculus of ends, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \underline{\mathbf{cM}}(X \odot A, B)_n &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathcal{M}((\Delta^m \times X) \star A, B^m)) \\
 &\quad \text{by lemma 1.6.22} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(\Delta_m^n, \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^m))\right) \\
 &\quad \text{by definition and remark A.6.5} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^m))) \\
 &\quad \text{by proposition A.6.11} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^m))) \\
 &\quad \text{by exponential adjunction (twice)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^m))) \\
 &\quad \text{by the interchange law (theorem A.6.17)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^n \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^l)) \\
 &\quad \text{by the Yoneda lemma for ends (proposition A.6.18)}
 \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand:

$$\begin{aligned}
 [X, \underline{\mathbf{cM}}(A, B)]_n &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times X, \underline{\mathbf{cM}}(A, B)) \\
 &\quad \text{by remark A.2.23} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^l))\right) \\
 &\quad \text{by lemma 1.6.22 and remark A.6.5} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^l))) \\
 &\quad \text{by proposition A.6.11}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^l))) \\
 &\quad \text{by exponential adjunction (twice)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^l))) \\
 &\quad \text{by the interchange law (theorem A.6.17)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^n \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A^l, B^l)) \\
 &\quad \text{by the Yoneda lemma for ends (proposition A.6.18)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathbf{cM}}(X \odot A, B) \cong [X, \underline{\mathbf{cM}}(A, B)]$$

that are natural in  $B^\bullet$ . Moreover,

$$[\underline{\mathbf{cM}}(X \odot A, B), \underline{\mathbf{cM}}(X \odot A, C)] \cong [\underline{\mathbf{cM}}(X \odot A, B) \times X, \underline{\mathbf{cM}}(A, C)]$$

and so a similar calculation may be used to verify *simplicial* naturality in  $B^\bullet$ .  $\blacksquare$

**2.3.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category and let  $X$  be a finite simplicial set (resp. any simplicial set).*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite copowers (resp. small copowers), then for any simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the simplicial object  $(X \odot A)_\bullet$  defined by*

$$(X \odot A)_n = X_n \odot A_n$$

*is (the object part of) a tensor product of  $X$  and  $A_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}$ .*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite powers (resp. small powers), then for any cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the cosimplicial object  $(X \pitchfork B)^\bullet$  defined by*

$$(X \pitchfork B)^n = X^n \pitchfork B^n$$

*is (the object part of) a tensor product of  $X$  and  $B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{cM}}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.



Let  $B_\bullet$  be any simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . By the calculus of ends, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(X \odot A, B)_n &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathcal{M}(X_m \odot A_m, B_m)) \\
 &\quad \text{by lemma 1.6.22} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathcal{M}(A_m, B_m))) \\
 &\quad \text{by definition} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathcal{M}(A_m, B_m)) \\
 &\quad \text{by exponential adjunction}
 \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand:

$$\begin{aligned}
 [X, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, B)]_n &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^n \times X, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, B)) \\
 &\quad \text{by remark A.2.23} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^l, \mathcal{M}(A_l, B_l))\right) \\
 &\quad \text{by lemma 1.6.22 and remark A.6.5} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^l, \mathcal{M}(A_l, B_l))) \\
 &\quad \text{by proposition A.6.11} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^l, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathcal{M}(A_l, B_l))) \\
 &\quad \text{by exponential adjunction (twice)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^l, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n \times X_m, \mathcal{M}(A_l, B_l))) \\
 &\quad \text{by the interchange law (theorem A.6.17)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[l]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_l^n \times X_l, \mathcal{M}(A_l, B_l)) \\
 &\quad \text{by the Yoneda lemma for ends (proposition A.6.18)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(X \odot A, B) \cong [X, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, B)]$$

that are natural in  $B_\bullet$ . Moreover,

$$[\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(X \odot A, B), \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(X \odot A, C)] \cong [\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(X \odot A, B) \times X, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, C)]$$

so a similar calculation may be used to verify *simplicial* naturality in  $B_\bullet$ . ■

**2.3.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- A **realisation** of a simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is an object  $|A_\bullet|$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  with a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$\underline{\mathcal{M}}(|A_\bullet|, -) \cong [\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_\bullet, -))$$

- A **totalisation** of a cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is an object  $\text{Tot } B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  with a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, \text{Tot } B^\bullet) \cong [\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, B^\bullet))$$

**2.3.10** REMARK. In other words,  $|A_\bullet|$  is the simplicially enriched weighted colimit  $\Delta^\bullet \star_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} A_\bullet$ , and  $\text{Tot } B^\bullet$  is the simplicially enriched weighted limit  $\{\Delta^\bullet, B^\bullet\}^{\Delta^{\text{op}}}$ .

**2.3.11** REMARK. By [remark 2.1.24](#) and theorems [B.3.18](#) and [B.3.19](#), the above definitions agree with the ones given in § 1.6. In particular, we have simplicially enriched natural isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathcal{M}}(|A_\bullet|, -) &\cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_\bullet, -) \\ \underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, \text{Tot } B^\bullet) &\cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, B_\bullet) \end{aligned}$$

for a simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  and a cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , respectively.

**2.3.12** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small category.

- Let  $A_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a bisimplicial object in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  and consider it as a simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}$ . The simplicial object  $(\text{diag } A)_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  defined by

$$(\text{diag } A)_n = A_{n,n}$$

is (the object part of) a realisation of  $A_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}$ .

- Let  $B^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a bicosimplicial object in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  and consider it as a cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{cM}}$ . The cosimplicial object  $(\text{diag } B)^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  defined by

$$(\text{diag } B)^n = B^{n,n}$$

is (the object part of) a totalisation of  $B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{cM}}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $B_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . By [remark 2.1.24](#), we have the following simplicially enriched natural isomorphism,

$$[\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_\bullet, B)) \cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_n, B)]$$

and by definition,

$$\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_n, B) = \int_{[m]:\Delta} [\Delta^m, \mathcal{M}(A_{n,m}, B)]$$

so  $[\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_\bullet, B))$  is the iterated totalisation of the bicosimplicial simplicial set  $\mathcal{M}(A_{\bullet,\bullet}, B_\bullet)$ . Thus, by [lemma 1.6.26](#), we have the following natural isomorphism:

$$\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(\text{diag } A, -) \cong [\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_\bullet, -))$$

To see that it is a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism, it suffices to verify that the following diagram commutes for all simplicial objects  $B_\bullet$  and  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(B, C) \times \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(\text{diag } A, B) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(B, C) \times [\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_\bullet, B)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(\text{diag } A, C) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & [\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A_\bullet, C)) \end{array}$$

where the vertical morphisms are induced by composition in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}$ , but this is straightforward. ■

**2.3.13** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- Let  $X$  be a simplicial set and let  $A_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ . If  $\mathcal{M}$  is cocomplete and  $X \boxtimes A_\bullet$  is the simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  defined below,

$$(X \boxtimes A_\bullet)_n = X_n \odot A_n$$

then there is an isomorphism

$$|X \boxtimes A_\bullet| \cong X \odot |A_\bullet|$$

and it is natural in both  $X$  and  $A_\bullet$ .

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

- Let  $X$  be a simplicial set and let  $B^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial object in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ . If  $\mathcal{M}$  is complete and  $X \boxtimes G^\bullet$  is the cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  defined below,

$$(X \boxtimes B^\bullet)^n = X_n \boxtimes B^n$$

then there is an isomorphism

$$\mathrm{Tot}(X \boxtimes B^\bullet) \cong X \boxtimes \mathrm{Tot} B^\bullet$$

and it is natural in both  $X$  and  $B^\bullet$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Using the calculus of ends, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{M}(X \odot |A_\bullet|, B) &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(X, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(|A_\bullet|, B)) \\
 &\quad \text{by definition} \\
 &\cong \mathbf{sSet}\left(X, \int_{[n]:\Delta} [\Delta^n, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_n, B)]\right) \\
 &\quad \text{by [remark 2.1.24](#)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(X, [\Delta^n, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_n, B)]) \\
 &\quad \text{by [proposition A.6.11](#)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(X \times \Delta^n, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_n, B)) \\
 &\quad \text{by exponential adjunction} \\
 &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m \times \Delta_m^n, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_n, B)_m) \\
 &\quad \text{by [remark A.6.5](#)} \\
 &\cong \int_{[n]:\Delta} \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_n, B)_m)) \\
 &\quad \text{by exponential adjunction} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}\left(X_m, \int_{[n]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(\Delta_m^n, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_n, B)_m)\right) \\
 &\quad \text{by the interchange law ([theorem A.6.17](#))} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{Set}(X_m, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_m, B)_m) \\
 &\quad \text{by the Yoneda lemma for ends ([proposition A.6.18](#))}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathcal{M}(X_m \odot A_m, B)_m \\
 &\quad \text{by definition} \\
 &\cong \int_{[m]:\Delta} \mathbf{sSet}(\Delta^m, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(X_m \odot A_m, B)) \\
 &\quad \text{by the ordinary Yoneda lemma} \\
 &\cong \mathcal{M}(|X \square A_\bullet|, B)
 \end{aligned}$$

Applying the Yoneda lemma once more, we deduce that  $|X \square A_\bullet|$  is naturally isomorphic to  $X \odot |A_\bullet|$ .  $\blacksquare$

**2.3.I4** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- Let  $f_\bullet, f'_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathbf{sM}$ . If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is cocomplete as a simplicially enriched category and there exists a morphism  $H : \Delta^1 \square A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \Delta^0 \square A_\bullet & \xleftarrow{\cong} & A_\bullet \\
 \delta^1 \square \text{id}_{A_\bullet} \downarrow & & \downarrow f_\bullet \\
 \Delta^1 \square A_\bullet & \xrightarrow{H} & B_\bullet \\
 \delta^0 \square \text{id}_{A_\bullet} \uparrow & & \uparrow f'_\bullet \\
 \Delta^0 \square A_\bullet & \xleftarrow{\cong} & A_\bullet
 \end{array}$$

then there is an edge  $\alpha : |f| \Rightarrow |f'|$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(|A_\bullet|, |B_\bullet|)$ .

- Let  $f^\bullet, f'^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathbf{cM}$ . If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is complete as a simplicially enriched category and there exists a morphism  $H : A^\bullet \rightarrow \Delta^1 \boxtimes B^\bullet$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B^\bullet & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \Delta^0 \boxtimes B^\bullet \\
 f^\bullet \uparrow & & \uparrow \delta^1 \boxtimes \text{id}_{B^\bullet} \\
 A^\bullet & \xrightarrow{H} & \Delta^1 \boxtimes B^\bullet \\
 f'^\bullet \downarrow & & \downarrow \delta^0 \boxtimes \text{id}_{B^\bullet} \\
 B^\bullet & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \Delta^0 \boxtimes B^\bullet
 \end{array}$$

then there is an edge  $\alpha : \text{Tot } f \Rightarrow \text{Tot } f'$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(\text{Tot } A^\bullet, \text{Tot } B^\bullet)$ .

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

*Proof.* The Yoneda lemma implies there are natural bijections

$$\mathcal{M}(\Delta^1 \odot A, B) \cong \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)_1 \cong \mathcal{M}(A, \Delta^1 \pitchfork B)$$

so the required edge is obtained by applying realisation (resp. totalisation) to the displayed diagrams. ■

**2.3.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is cocomplete and cotensored, then we have the following adjunction of ordinary categories:

$$|-| \dashv \Delta^\bullet \pitchfork (-) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$$

- If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is complete and tensored, then we have the following adjunction of ordinary categories:

$$\Delta^\bullet \odot (-) \dashv \text{Tot} : \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

*Proof.* By definition, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\mathcal{M}(|A_\bullet|, B) \cong [\Delta, \mathbf{s}\mathbf{Set}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A_\bullet, B)) \cong [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}](A_\bullet, \Delta^\bullet \pitchfork B)$$

$$\mathcal{M}(A, \text{Tot } B^\bullet) \cong [\Delta, \mathbf{s}\mathbf{Set}](\Delta^\bullet, \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B^\bullet)) \cong [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}](\Delta^\bullet \odot A, B^\bullet) \quad \blacksquare$$

TODO: Replace this with the enriched version.

**2.3.16** DEFINITION. Let  $(W, \varepsilon, \delta)$  be a comonad on a category  $\mathcal{M}$ . The **standard resolution** of an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  (with respect to this comonad) is the simplicial object  $\mathbf{S}(A)_\bullet$  defined by the following formulae,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{S}(A)_n &= W^{n+1} A \\ d_i^n &= W^{n-i} \varepsilon_{W^i A} \\ s_i^n &= W^{n-i} \delta_{W^i A} \end{aligned}$$

together with the **standard augmentation**, which is defined to be the unique morphism  $(\tilde{\varepsilon}_A)_\bullet : \mathbf{S}(A)_\bullet \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  given in degree 0 by the counit  $\varepsilon_A : WA \rightarrow A$ .

**2.3.17** REMARK. One does have to verify that the above really does define a simplicial object and a morphism thereof, but this is straightforward.

**2.3.18** DEFINITION. Let  $A_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in a category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A **forward contracting homotopy** for  $A_\bullet$  consists of an object  $A_{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and morphisms  $r : A_0 \rightarrow A_{-1}$ ,  $s : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_0$ , and  $h^n : A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r \circ d_1^1 &= r \circ d_0^1 \\
 r \circ s &= \text{id} \\
 d_0^1 \circ h^0 &= s \circ r \\
 d_1^1 \circ h^0 &= \text{id} \\
 d_i^{n+1} \circ h^n &= h^{n-1} \circ d_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 d_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n &= \text{id} \\
 h^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= s_i^{n+1} \circ h^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 h^{n+1} \circ h^n &= s_{n+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n
 \end{aligned}$$

- A **backward contracting homotopy** for  $A_\bullet$  consists of an object  $A_{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and morphisms  $r : A_0 \rightarrow A_{-1}$ ,  $s : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_0$ , and  $h^n : A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfying these identities:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r \circ d_1^1 &= r \circ d_0^1 \\
 r \circ s &= \text{id} \\
 d_0^1 \circ h^0 &= \text{id} \\
 d_1^1 \circ h^0 &= s \circ r \\
 d_0^{n+1} \circ h^n &= \text{id} \\
 d_{i+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n &= h^{n-1} \circ d_i^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\
 h^{n+1} \circ h^n &= s_0^{n+1} \circ h^n \\
 h^{n+1} \circ s_i^n &= s_{i+1}^{n+1} \circ h^n && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n
 \end{aligned}$$

**2.3.19** REMARK. The above definition agrees with [definition 1.3.21](#) in the case  $\mathcal{M} = \mathbf{Set}$ .

**2.3.20** PROPOSITION. Let  $A_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in a locally small category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Given a forward contracting homotopy for  $A_\bullet$ , say  $r : A_0 \rightarrow A_{-1}$ ,  $s : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_0$ , and  $h^n : A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$ , there are unique morphisms  $\tilde{r}_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow A_{-1}$  and  $\tilde{s}_\bullet : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{sM}$  defined in degree 0 by  $r$  and  $s$  respectively, and we have  $\tilde{r}_\bullet \circ \tilde{s}_\bullet = \text{id}_{A_{-1}}$  and an edge  $\text{id}_{A_\bullet} \Rightarrow \tilde{s}_\bullet \circ \tilde{r}_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, A)$ .

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

- Given a backward contracting homotopy for  $A_\bullet$ , say  $r : A_0 \rightarrow A_{-1}$ ,  $s : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_0$ , and  $h^n : A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$ , there are unique morphisms  $\tilde{r}_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow A_{-1}$  and  $\tilde{s}_\bullet : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{sM}$  defined in degree 0 by  $r$  and  $s$  respectively, and we have  $\tilde{r}_\bullet \circ \tilde{s}_\bullet = \text{id}_{A_{-1}}$  and an edge  $\text{id}_{A_\bullet} \Rightarrow \tilde{s}_\bullet \circ \tilde{r}_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, A)$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By adjointness, there is a unique morphism  $\tilde{s}_\bullet : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{sM}$  such that  $\tilde{s}_0 = s$ . It is clear that there is at most one morphism  $\tilde{r}_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow A_{-1}$  in  $\mathbf{sM}$  such that  $\tilde{r}_0 = r$ , and since  $r \circ d_1^1 = r \circ d_0^1$ , the simplicial identities imply there is indeed such a morphism in  $\mathbf{sM}$ . Similarly, to verify the equation  $\tilde{r}_\bullet \circ \tilde{s}_\bullet = \text{id}_{A_{-1}}$ , it suffices to verify the claim in degree 0; but this is just the hypothesis that  $r \circ s = \text{id}_{A_{-1}}$ .

Now, let  $T$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and consider the simplicial set  $\mathcal{M}(T, A_\bullet)$ . Then we have a natural forward contracting homotopy for each  $\mathcal{M}(T, A_\bullet)$ ; so by [proposition 1.3.22](#), for each morphism  $f_\bullet : T \rightarrow A_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{sM}$ , there is a natural edge  $f_\bullet \Rightarrow \tilde{s}_\bullet \circ \tilde{r}_\bullet \circ f_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}(T, A_\bullet)$ . But  $\text{Tot} : [\Delta, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a simplicially enriched functor (by [proposition B.3.16](#)), so this implies there is an edge  $\text{id}_{A_\bullet} \Rightarrow \tilde{s}_\bullet \circ \tilde{r}_\bullet$  in  $\underline{\mathbf{sM}}(A, A)$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

**2.3.21** COROLLARY. Let  $A_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in a locally small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ . Assuming  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  has finite coproducts and realisations:

- If  $A_\bullet$  admits a forward contracting homotopy, say  $r : A_0 \rightarrow A_{-1}$ ,  $s : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_0$ , and  $h^n : A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$ , then  $r$  (resp.  $s$ ) induce weak simplicial homotopy equivalences  $|A_\bullet| \rightarrow A_{-1}$  (resp.  $A_{-1} \rightarrow |A_\bullet|$ ) in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .
- If  $A_\bullet$  admits a backward contracting homotopy, say  $r : A_0 \rightarrow A_{-1}$ ,  $s : A_{-1} \rightarrow A_0$ , and  $h^n : A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$ , then  $r$  (resp.  $s$ ) induce weak simplicial homotopy equivalences  $|A_\bullet| \rightarrow A_{-1}$  (resp.  $A_{-1} \rightarrow |A_\bullet|$ ) in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .

*Proof.* Combine [proposition 2.3.8](#), [corollary 2.3.14](#), and [proposition 2.3.20](#).  $\blacksquare$

**2.3.22** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  be locally small categories, let

$$F \dashv U : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$$

be an adjunction with unit  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{N}} \Rightarrow UF$  and counit  $\varepsilon : FU \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$ , and let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Taking  $US(A)_{-1} = UA$ ,  $r = U\varepsilon_A$ ,  $s = \eta_{UA}$ , and  $h^n = \eta_{U(FU)^{n+1}A}$ , we have a forward contracting homotopy for  $US(A)_\bullet$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise in using the triangle identities.  $\blacklozenge$



## 2.4 Simplicial model categories

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.5, 2.1, 5.1, 5.3, 5.7, 5.8.

**2.4.I** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category. A **simplicial model structure** on  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is a model structure on the underlying model category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies the following axiom:<sup>[1]</sup>

**SM7.** If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \underline{\mathcal{M}}(W, X) & \xrightarrow{\quad \underline{\mathcal{M}}(W, p) \quad} & \underline{\mathcal{M}}(W, Y) \\
 \downarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}(i, X) & \searrow i^* \square p_* & \downarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}(i, Y) \\
 \underline{\mathcal{M}}(Z, X) \times_{\underline{\mathcal{M}}(Z, Y)} \underline{\mathcal{M}}(W, Y) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{M}}(W, Y) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}(i, Y) \\
 \underline{\mathcal{M}}(Z, X) & \xrightarrow{\quad \underline{\mathcal{M}}(Z, p) \quad} & \underline{\mathcal{M}}(Z, Y)
 \end{array}$$

then the unique morphism  $i^* \square p_*$  making the diagram commute is a Kan fibration; moreover, if either  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  or  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence, then  $i^* \square p_*$  is a trivial Kan fibration.

A **simplicial model category** is a locally small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  that is equipped with a simplicial model structure and satisfies the additional axioms below:

**SM0.** For each finite simplicial set  $K$  and each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the tensor product  $K \odot X$  and the cotensor product  $K \pitchfork X$  exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .

**CM1.**  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite limits and finite colimits.

A **simplicial derivable category** is a locally small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  that is equipped with a simplicial model structure and satisfies the additional axioms below:

- If  $W$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(W, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves fibrant objects, fibrations, and trivial fibrations; and if  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, X) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends cofibrant objects (resp. cofibrations, trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$  to Kan complexes (resp. Kan fibrations, trivial Kan fibrations) in **sSet**.

[1] This presentation is due to Quillen [1967].

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

- The underlying ordinary category  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with the given model structure is a derivable category.

**2.4.2** REMARK. [Proposition 2.2.6](#) implies that limits and colimits in a simplicial model category are automatically conical (i.e. limits and colimits in the simplicially enriched sense).

**2.4.3** REMARK. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category equipped whose underlying ordinary category is equipped with a model structure. Then  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is a simplicial model category if and only if  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}^{\text{op}}$  is a simplicial model category.

**2.4.4** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category whose underlying ordinary category is equipped with a model structure. If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  satisfies axioms SM0 and CM1, then the following are equivalent:

- (i) Axiom SM7 is satisfied.
- (ii) For all fibrations (resp. trivial fibrations)  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 W \pitchfork X & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_W \pitchfork p \quad} & W \pitchfork Y \\
 \downarrow \text{dashed } i \pitchfork p & \searrow & \downarrow i \pitchfork \text{id}_Y \\
 (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & W \pitchfork Y \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow i \pitchfork \text{id}_Y \\
 Z \pitchfork X & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_Z \pitchfork p \quad} & Z \pitchfork Y
 \end{array}$$

$\text{id}_W \pitchfork p$  (top arrow),  $i \pitchfork p$  (dashed arrow),  $i \pitchfork \text{id}_Y$  (right arrow),  $\text{id}_Z \pitchfork p$  (bottom arrow),  $i \pitchfork \text{id}_X$  (left arrow),  $(Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y)$  (middle left),  $Z \pitchfork X$  (bottom left),  $Z \pitchfork Y$  (bottom right).

then the unique morphism  $i \pitchfork p$  making the diagram commute is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration); and for all fibrations  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , then the morphism  $i \pitchfork p$  defined as above is a trivial fibration.

- (iii) For all cofibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations)  $j : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  and the square in the diagram below

is a pushout square in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z \odot X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_Z \odot j} & Z \odot Y \\
 i \odot \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 W \odot X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & (W \odot X) \cup^{Z \odot X} (Z \odot Y) \\
 & \searrow \text{id}_W \odot j & \nearrow i \odot \text{id}_Y \\
 & & W \odot Y
 \end{array}$$

$\xrightarrow{\quad} (W \odot X) \cup^{Z \odot X} (Z \odot Y) \xrightarrow{i \sqcup j} W \odot Y$

then the unique morphism  $i \sqcup j$  making the diagram commute is a cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration); and for all cofibrations  $j : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , then the morphism  $i \sqcup j$  defined as above is a trivial cofibration.

*Proof.* This is (essentially) a special case of [proposition 6.5.1](#). ■

**2.4.5** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be simplicial derivable category that has tensors for finite (resp. all) simplicial sets and colimits for finite (resp. small) diagrams.

- (i) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism of finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial sets and  $Y$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the morphism  $i \odot \text{id}_Y : Z \odot Y \rightarrow W \odot Y$  is a cofibration.
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension of finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial sets and  $Y$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the morphism  $i \odot \text{id}_Y : Z \odot Y \rightarrow W \odot Y$  is a trivial cofibration.
- (iii) If  $W$  is any finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial set and  $Y$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $W \odot Y$  is also a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). [Proposition 2.4.4](#) implies the claims in the special cases where  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a boundary inclusion or horn inclusion, and by [proposition 1.4.12](#) (resp. [corollary 0.5.13](#)) and [proposition A.3.19](#), this is enough to deduce the claim for the general case.

(iii). Take  $Z = \emptyset$ . ■

**2.4.6** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be simplicial derivable category that has cotensors for finite (resp. all) simplicial sets and limits for finite (resp. small) diagrams.

- (i) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism of finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial sets and  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the morphism  $i \pitchfork \text{id}_X : W \pitchfork X \rightarrow Z \pitchfork X$  is a fibration.
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension of finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial sets and  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the morphism  $i \pitchfork \text{id}_X : W \pitchfork X \rightarrow Z \pitchfork X$  is a trivial cofibration.
- (iii) If  $W$  is any finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial set and  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $W \pitchfork X$  is also a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* These claims are formally dual to the ones in [corollary 2.4.5](#). ■

**2.4.7** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category with an initial object  $0$  and a terminal object  $1$  (in the simplicially enriched sense) and suppose  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is equipped with a simplicial model structure.

- If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves weighted limits, fibrant objects, fibrations, and trivial fibrations.
- If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves weighted limits, fibrant objects, fibrations, and trivial fibrations.

In particular, every simplicial model category is a simplicial derivable category.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Essentially by definition, the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves any weighted limits that exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ . [Lemma 5.1.16](#) says the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow A$  is a cofibration if and only if  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so we may then apply axiom SM7 to deduce that  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, -)$  preserves fibrant objects, fibrations, and trivial fibrations.

To conclude, we need only apply [remark 2.4.2](#) and [proposition 5.1.17](#). ■

**2.4.8** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial derivable category, let  $\mathcal{M}_c$  be the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopical functor.
- If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : \mathcal{M}_c^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopical functor.

In particular,  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, -) : \mathcal{M}_c^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopical functor.

*Proof.* By definition,  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, -)$  sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  to trivial Kan fibrations when  $A$  is cofibrant, and  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, B)$  sends trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  to trivial Kan fibrations when  $B$  is fibrant, we may apply lemma 5.1.33. ■

**2.4.9** THEOREM. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial derivable category, let  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  be a left Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $(\mathcal{M}_f, R, i)$  be a right Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- (i)  $(\mathcal{M}_c^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M}_f, Q \times R, (p, i))$  is a right deformation retract for the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, -) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .
- (ii)  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, -) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a total right derived functor; furthermore, if  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  and  $(\mathcal{M}_f, R, i)$  are functorial deformation retracts, then  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, -)$  also has a homotopical right approximation.

*Proof.* (i). This is lemma 2.4.8.

(ii). Apply theorems 3.3.17 and 3.4.II. ■

**2.4.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial derivable category. A **derived hom-space functor** for  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is a total right derived functor for the functor  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(-, -) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ . We write  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\underline{\mathcal{M}}} : (\text{Ho } \mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \text{Ho } \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$  for (the functor part of) a derived hom-space functor for  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .

**2.4.II** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial model category.

- If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the cosimplicial object  $\Delta^\bullet \odot A$  is (the object part of) a left frame on  $A$ .
- If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the simplicial object  $\Delta^\bullet \pitchfork B$  is (the object part of) a right frame on  $B$ .

*Proof.* See Remark 5.2.10 in [Hovey, 1999]. □

**2.4.I2** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial model category. If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then:

- The hom-space  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is (the object part of) a left homotopy function complex from  $A$  to  $B$ .
- The hom-space  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is (the object part of) a right homotopy function complex from  $A$  to  $B$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 2.4.II](#), the cosimplicial object  $\tilde{A}^\bullet = \Delta^\bullet \odot A$  is (the object part of) a left frame on  $A$ ; but there is a natural isomorphism between the left hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$  and the hom-space  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$ , and  $B$  is fibrant by hypothesis, so we are done. ■

**2.4.I3** REMARK. In particular, the derived hom-spaces of the simplicial model category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  agree with the derived hom-spaces of the underlying model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**2.4.I4** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial model category.

- If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $(\Delta^1 \odot A, \delta^1 \odot \text{id}_A, \delta^0 \odot \text{id}_A, \sigma^0 \odot \text{id}_A)$  is a cylinder object for  $\Delta^0 \odot A$  (and hence, isomorphic to a cylinder object for  $A$ ).
- If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $(\Delta^1 \pitchfork B, \delta^1 \pitchfork \text{id}_B, \delta^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_B, \sigma^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_B)$  is a path object for  $\Delta^0 \pitchfork B$  (and hence, isomorphic to a path object for  $B$ ).

*Proof.* Apply [propositions 2.4.II](#) and [5.7.2I](#); but see also Lemma 3.5 in [GJ], or Lemma 9.5.4 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. ■

**2.4.15** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial model category. If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the canonical map

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(A, B) \rightarrow \pi_0 \underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$$

is a natural bijection.

*Proof.* Proposition 2.4.14 says that  $(\Delta^1 \odot A, \delta^1 \odot \mathrm{id}_A, \delta^0 \odot \mathrm{id}_A, \sigma^0 \odot \mathrm{id}_A)$  is a cylinder object for  $\Delta^0 \odot A$ , so if  $B$  is fibrant, we may apply lemma 5.2.14 and theorem 5.4.1 to deduce that the connected components of  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  are in natural bijection with the homotopy classes of morphisms  $A \rightarrow B$ . ■

**2.4.16** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : A \rightarrow B$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a simplicial model category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .

- If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are in the same connected component of  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$ , then  $f_0$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $f_1$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are in the same connected component of  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$ , then  $f_0$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $f_1$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By induction, we may assume that there is an edge  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$ . Let  $h : \Delta^1 \odot A \rightarrow B$  be the corresponding morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . We then have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta^0 \odot A & \xleftarrow{\cong} & A \\ \delta^1 \odot \mathrm{id}_A \downarrow & & \downarrow f_0 \\ \Delta^1 \boxed{\cdot} A & \xrightarrow{h} & B \\ \delta^0 \odot \mathrm{id}_A \uparrow & & \uparrow f_1 \\ \Delta^0 \boxed{\cdot} A & \xleftarrow{\cong} & A \end{array}$$

Since  $A$  is cofibrant, corollary 2.4.5 implies that the morphisms  $\delta^0 \odot \mathrm{id}_A, \delta^1 \odot \mathrm{id}_A : \Delta^0 \odot A \rightarrow \Delta^1 \odot A$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, by axiom CM2,  $f_0$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $f_1$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**2.4.17** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial model category and let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category.

- If the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  exists, then  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  (with the projective model structure) is a simplicial model category.
- If the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  exists, then  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  (with the injective model structure) is a simplicial model category.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is straightforward to check that  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  is indeed a locally small simplicially enriched category with finite weighted limits and colimits (which may be computed componentwise). It remains to be shown that the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  satisfies axiom SM7. But fibrations, weak equivalences, and weighted limits in  $[\mathbb{A}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  are defined componentwise, so [proposition 2.4.4](#) implies that the property is indeed inherited from  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ . ■

The following lemma is useful in the construction of simplicial model structures.

**2.4.18** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{N}}$  be a simplicial model category, and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{M}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{N}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. Given a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{i_A} & \hat{A} \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{f} \\ B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & \hat{B} \end{array}$$

the morphism  $Uf : UA \rightarrow UB$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{N}$  if the following conditions are satisfied:

- The cotensor products  $\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  and  $\partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  and are preserved by  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{M}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{N}}$ .
- $Ui_A : UA \rightarrow U\hat{A}$  and  $Ui_B : UB \rightarrow U\hat{B}$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- There is a morphism  $g : B \rightarrow \hat{A}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $g \circ f = i_A$ , and  $U\hat{B}$  is fibrant in  $\mathcal{N}$ .



- $f : A \rightarrow B$  has the left lifting property with respect to all morphisms  $p : C \rightarrow D$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $Up : UC \rightarrow UD$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

*Proof.* The following is a generalisation of the proof of Theorem 1 in [Quillen, 1967, Ch. II, §4].

Let  $p : \Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B} \rightarrow \partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  be the morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ , let  $a : A \rightarrow \Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  be the composite

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{i_B} \hat{B} \xrightarrow{\cong} \Delta^0 \pitchfork \hat{B} \rightarrow \Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$$

where  $\Delta^0 \pitchfork \hat{B} \rightarrow \Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  is induced by the unique morphism  $\Delta^1 \rightarrow \Delta^0$ , and let  $b : B \rightarrow \partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  be the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{B} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \Delta^0 \pitchfork \hat{B} \\ i_B \uparrow & & \uparrow \delta^1 \pitchfork \text{id}_{\hat{B}} \\ B & \xrightarrow{b} & \partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B} \\ \hat{f} \circ g \downarrow & & \downarrow \delta^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_{\hat{B}} \\ \hat{B} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \Delta^0 \pitchfork \hat{B} \end{array}$$

We then have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{a} & \Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B} \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ B & \xrightarrow{b} & \partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B} \end{array}$$

By [corollary 2.4.6](#) (and the hypothesis on  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{M}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{N}}$ ),  $Up : U(\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}) \rightarrow U(\partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B})$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{N}$ , so (by the hypothesis on  $f : A \rightarrow B$ ) there is a morphism  $h : B \rightarrow \Delta^1 \pitchfork \hat{B}$  such that  $h \circ f = a$  and  $p \circ h = b$ .

In particular, there is an edge  $Ui_B \Rightarrow U(\hat{f} \circ g)$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{N}}(UA, U\hat{B})$ , so by [lemma 2.4.16](#),  $U(\hat{f} \circ g)$  is a weak equivalence. But the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & & \\ & \searrow i_A & \downarrow g & \searrow \hat{f} \circ g & \\ & & \hat{A} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{B} \end{array}$$

so using [theorem 5.4.1](#) and the 2-out-of-6 property of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{N}$ , we may deduce that  $Uf : UA \rightarrow UB$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{N}$ . ■

## 2.5 Homotopical aspects

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 2.1, A.4.

**2.5.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a category with finite products and let  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$  be a functor that preserves finite products. The  **$F$ -localisation** of a locally small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  is the following  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $F[\underline{C}]$ :

- The objects in  $F[\underline{C}]$  are the objects in  $\underline{C}$ .
- For each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ , the hom-object  $F[\underline{C}](X, Y)$  is the object  $F(\underline{C}(X, Y))$ .
- Identities and composition in  $F[\underline{C}]$  are inherited from  $\underline{C}$  via  $F$ .

**2.5.2** REMARK. It is clear that  $F$ -localisation is 2-functorial and moreover preserves finite products of simplicially enriched categories; unlike localisation of relative categories,  $F$ -localisation may or may not have a universal property. Nonetheless, there is always a localising functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow F[\underline{C}]$  between the underlying categories.

**2.5.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category. A parallel pair of morphisms  $g_0, g_1 : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$  are  **$F$ -homotopic** if their images under the localising functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow F[\underline{C}]$  are equal, in which case we write  $g_0 \stackrel{F}{\sim} g_1$ .

**2.5.4** EXAMPLE. The notion of intrinsic homotopy in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is obtained as the special case where  $F$  is the connected components functor  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .<sup>[1]</sup>

**2.5.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- A **weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence** in  $\underline{C}$  is a morphism in  $\underline{C}$  whose image in  $F[\underline{C}]$  is an isomorphism.
- An  **$F$ -homotopy equivalence** in  $\underline{C}$  is a pair  $(f, g)$ , where  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow A$  are morphisms in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $g \circ f \stackrel{F}{\sim} \text{id}_A$  and  $f \circ g \stackrel{F}{\sim} \text{id}_B$ .
- Two morphisms  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow A$  are **mutual  $F$ -homotopy inverses** when  $(f, g)$  constitute an  $F$ -homotopy equivalence.

---

[1] Recall [proposition 1.2.11](#) and [remark 1.3.7](#).

**2.5.6** REMARK. By lemma A.4.14, the class of weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$  automatically has the 2-out-of-6 property in  $C$ .

**2.5.7** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category, let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a cartesian closed category, and let  $F : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$  be a functor that preserves finite products.

- If  $\underline{C}$  is tensored over  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and  $g : A \rightarrow B$  is a weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ , then the morphism  $f \odot g : X \odot A \rightarrow Y \odot B$  is a weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .
- If  $\underline{C}$  is cotensored over  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , and  $g : A \rightarrow B$  is a weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ , then the morphism  $f \pitchfork g : Y \pitchfork A \rightarrow X \pitchfork B$  is a weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\odot$  (resp.  $\pitchfork$ ) is a simplicially enriched functor  $\mathbf{sSet} \times \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  (resp.  $\mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ ), it induces a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $F[\mathbf{sSet}] \times F[\underline{C}] \rightarrow F[\underline{C}]$  (resp.  $F[\mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \times F[\underline{C}] \rightarrow F[\underline{C}]$ ) and so *a fortiori* must preserve weak  $F$ -homotopy equivalences. ■

**2.5.8** DEFINITION. A **simplicial homotopy**  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  in a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  is an edge  $\alpha$  in  $\text{mor } \underline{C}$  such that  $d_0(\alpha) = f_1$  and  $d_1(\alpha) = f_0$ . For each morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ , we define  $\text{id}_f : f \Rightarrow f$  to be the simplicial homotopy  $s_0(f)$ .

**2.5.9** REMARK. Because  $\text{ob } \underline{C}$  is a discrete set, we must have  $\text{dom } f_0 = \text{dom } f_1$  and  $\text{codom } f_0 = \text{codom } f_1$ .

**2.5.10** DEFINITION. A parallel pair  $g_0, g_1 : A \rightarrow B$  of morphisms in a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  are **simplicially homotopic** if they are in the same connected component of  $\underline{C}(A, B)$ , in which case we write  $g_0 \sim g_1$ .

**2.5.11** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category, and let  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  be an intrinsic homotopy of morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

- If  $\underline{C}$  is tensored over  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , then for any morphism  $g : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$ ,  $\alpha \odot \text{id}_g : f_0 \odot g \Rightarrow f_1 \odot g$  is a simplicial homotopy of morphisms in  $\underline{C}$ .
- If  $\underline{C}$  is cotensored over  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , then for any morphism  $g : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$ ,  $\alpha \pitchfork \text{id}_g : f_0 \pitchfork g \Rightarrow f_1 \pitchfork g$  is a simplicial homotopy of morphisms in  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* This is an immediate consequence of the fact that  $\odot$  (resp.  $\pitchfork$ ) is a simplicially enriched functor  $\mathbf{sSet} \times \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  (resp.  $\mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ ).  $\blacksquare$

Recall the weak homotopy type functor  $\pi : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$ , as defined in [proposition 1.5.26](#).

**2.5.12** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- A **simplicial homotopy equivalence** in  $\underline{C}$  is a  $\pi_0$ -homotopy equivalence.
- The **simplicial homotopy category** of  $\underline{C}$  is the locally small category  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$ .
- The **enriched simplicial homotopy category** of  $\underline{C}$  is the  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched category  $\pi[\underline{C}]$ .

**2.5.13** REMARK. It is sometimes convenient to consider other localisations; for example, if  $\pi_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$  is the fundamental groupoid functor,<sup>[2]</sup> then the 2-category  $\pi_1[\underline{C}]$  has the following properties:

- (i) The underlying category of  $\pi_1[\underline{C}]$  is naturally isomorphic to the underlying category of  $\underline{C}$  itself.
- (ii) Given a parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$ , there exists a 2-cell  $f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  if and only if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are  $\pi$ -homotopic in  $\underline{C}$ .
- (iii) A morphism is a simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$  if and only if it is an equivalence in the 2-category  $\pi_1[\underline{C}]$ .

However, if  $\tau_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is the fundamental category functor,<sup>[3]</sup> then the 2-category  $\tau_1[\underline{C}]$  in general only enjoys the first of the above properties.

**2.5.14** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- (i) A morphism in  $\underline{C}$  is a weak  $\pi_0$ -homotopy equivalence if and only if it is a weak  $\pi$ -homotopy equivalence.
- (ii) The localising functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{C}]$  induces a bijection between simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  and ordinary functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ , where  $\underline{D}$  is an ordinary category (regarded as a simplicially enriched category via [proposition 2.1.20](#)).

---

[2] Recall [proposition 1.2.14](#).

[3] Recall [proposition 1.2.2](#).

- (iii) If  $\underline{C}$  is moreover tensored or cotensored over  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , then  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$  is the localisation of  $\mathcal{C}$  at the weak  $\pi_0$ -equivalences.

*Proof.* (i). The underlying category of the  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched category  $\pi[\underline{C}]$  is naturally isomorphic to the category  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$ , since  $\mathbf{H}(1, \pi X) \cong \pi_0 X$ , and the property of being an isomorphism in a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched category depends only on the underlying category.

- (ii). By [proposition 1.2.11](#), a morphism from a simplicial set  $X$  to a discrete set  $Y$  must factor through  $\pi_0 X$  in a unique way, so a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  must factor through  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$ .

- (iii). Simplicially tensored categories and simplicially cotensored categories are formally dual; we will prove the claim for case where  $\underline{C}$  is tensored over  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

First, consider a simplicial homotopy  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  of morphisms  $A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$ . Transposing across the tensor–hom adjunction yields  $H : \Delta^1 \odot A \rightarrow B$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \Delta^0 \odot A & \xleftarrow{\eta_A} & A \\
 \delta^1 \odot \text{id}_A \downarrow & & \downarrow f_0 \\
 \Delta^1 \odot A & \xrightarrow{H} & B \\
 \delta^0 \odot \text{id}_A \uparrow & & \uparrow f_1 \\
 \Delta^0 \odot A & \xleftarrow{\eta_A} & A
 \end{array}$$

Using [lemma 2.5.7](#), it is not hard to see that  $\delta^0 \odot \text{id}_A$  and  $\delta^1 \odot \text{id}_A$  are  $\pi_0$ -homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$  with common  $\pi_0$ -homotopy inverse  $\sigma^0 \odot \text{id}_A$ , so any functor that sends weak  $\pi_0$ -homotopy equivalences to isomorphisms must also identify  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ , and hence, must factor through  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$ .  $\blacksquare$

**2.5.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category.

- (i) The localising functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{C}]$  is full and bijective on objects.
- (ii) A morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a weak  $\pi_0$ -homotopy equivalence if and only if it has a  $\pi_0$ -homotopy inverse.
- (iii) Two objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  are isomorphic in  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$  if and only if there is a simplicial homotopy equivalence between them in  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* Claim (i) is just the observation that the canonical map  $X_0 \rightarrow \pi_0 X$  is surjective, and the rest follows straightforwardly.  $\blacklozenge$

**2.5.16** DEFINITION.

- A **homotopically fully faithful simplicially enriched functor** is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  such that the induced  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor  $\pi[\underline{F}] : \pi[\underline{C}] \rightarrow \pi[\underline{D}]$  is fully faithful.
- A **homotopically essentially surjective on objects simplicially enriched functor** is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  such that the induced  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor  $\pi[\underline{F}] : \pi[\underline{C}] \rightarrow \pi[\underline{D}]$  is essentially surjective on objects.
- A **Dwyer–Kan equivalence of simplicially enriched categories** is a simplicially enriched functor that is both homotopically fully faithful and homotopically essentially surjective on objects.

**2.5.17** REMARK. Strictly speaking, the above definition only applies to locally small simplicially enriched categories; but it is clear how to extend the definition to handle general simplicially enriched categories.

**2.5.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.
- (ii) For each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $C$ , the hom-space morphism

$$\underline{F} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, FB)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets, and the induced functor  $\pi_0[\underline{F}] : \pi_0[\underline{C}] \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{D}]$  is essentially surjective on objects.*

- (iii) For each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $C$ , the hom-space morphism

$$\underline{F} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, FB)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets, and for each object  $D$  in  $D$ , there exist an object  $C$  in  $C$  and a simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{D}$  between  $FC$  and  $D$ .*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward corollary of [proposition 2.5.15](#).  $\blacksquare$

**2.5.19** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  and  $\underline{G}, \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be simplicially enriched functors, and let  $\varphi : \underline{G} \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  be a simplicially enriched natural transformation. If  $\underline{U}$  is homotopically essentially surjective on objects, then the following are equivalent:

- For each object  $j$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ ,  $\varphi_j : G_j \rightarrow F_j$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .
- For each object  $i$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ ,  $\varphi_{Ui} : GU_i \rightarrow FU_i$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Immediate.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $j$  be an object in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ . By hypothesis, there exist an object  $i$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $h : Ui \rightarrow j$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ . The following diagram commutes in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} GU_i & \xrightarrow{\theta_{Ui}} & FU_i \\ Fh \downarrow & & \downarrow Gh \\ Gj & \xrightarrow{\theta_j} & Fj \end{array}$$

and the vertical arrows are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , so by the 2-out-of-3 property,  $\theta_{Ui} : GU_i \rightarrow FU_i$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\theta_j : Gj \rightarrow Fj$  is. ■

**2.5.20** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{F}_0 : \underline{\mathcal{C}}_0 \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1 : \underline{\mathcal{C}}_1 \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}_1$  be simplicially enriched functors and let  $\underline{F}_0 \times \underline{F}_1 : \underline{\mathcal{C}}_0 \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}_1 \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}_0 \times \underline{\mathcal{D}}_1$  be their binary product.

- (i) If  $\underline{F}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1$  are homotopically fully faithful, then so is  $\underline{F}_0 \times \underline{F}_1$ .
- (ii) If  $\underline{F}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1$  are homotopically essentially surjective on objects, then so is  $\underline{F}_0 \times \underline{F}_1$ .
- (iii) If  $\underline{F}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1$  are Dwyer–Kan equivalences, then so is  $\underline{F}_0 \times \underline{F}_1$ .

*Proof.* (i). This is a consequence of [proposition 1.5.17](#).

(ii). For the same reason, a morphism in  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}_0 \times \underline{\mathcal{D}}_1$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if its components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}_0$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}_1$ ; the claim is a straightforward consequence.

(iii). Combine (i) and (ii). ■

**2.5.21** LEMMA. **SCat**, with the class of Dwyer–Kan equivalences, is a saturated homotopical category. In particular, the class of Dwyer–Kan equivalences of (small) simplicially enriched categories has the 2-out-of-3 property, the 2-out-of-6 property, and is closed under retracts.

*Proof.* By lemma 3.1.8, it suffices to verify that the class of **H**-enriched functors that are fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects makes the category of small **H**-enriched categories a saturated homotopical category, and this is straightforward. ■

TODO: Prove the general case for enriched categories.

**2.5.22** DEFINITION. The **bisimplicial nerve** of a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  is the bisimplicial nerve of the corresponding simplicial category  $C_\bullet$ .

**2.5.23** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be small simplicially enriched categories and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a bijective-on-objects Dwyer–Kan equivalence.
- (ii) The morphism  $N^{ss}(\underline{F})_\bullet : N^{ss}(\underline{C})_\bullet \rightarrow N^{ss}(\underline{D})_\bullet$  is a degreewise weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* It is clear that  $N^{ss}(\underline{F})_0 : N^{ss}(\underline{C})_0 \rightarrow N^{ss}(\underline{D})_0$  is an isomorphism if and only if  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is bijective on objects. For each positive integer  $n$ , we have an isomorphism

$$N^{ss}(\underline{C})_n \cong \coprod_{(c_0, \dots, c_n)} \underline{C}(c_{n-1}, c_n) \times \cdots \times \underline{C}(c_0, c_1)$$

and it is natural as  $\underline{C}$  varies along bijective-on-objects simplicially enriched functors, so by proposition 1.5.16, each  $N^{ss}(\underline{F})_n : N^{ss}(\underline{C})_n \rightarrow N^{ss}(\underline{D})_n$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a bijective-on-objects Dwyer–Kan equivalence. ■

**2.5.24** DEFINITION. A **simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence** is a simplicially enriched natural transformation of simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  whose components are weak homotopy equivalences.



**2.5.25** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category, let  $A$  be an object in  $C$ , and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. For any simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\psi : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{C}(A, -)$ , there is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\varphi : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  such that the composite  $\psi \bullet \varphi$  is in the connected component of  $\text{id} : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{C}(A, -)$ .

*Proof.* Consider the component  $\psi_A : FA \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, A)$ . It is a weak homotopy equivalence, so there must be a vertex  $x$  in  $FA$  such that  $\psi_A(x) \sim \text{id}_A$  in  $\underline{C}(A, A)$ . By the weak Yoneda lemma (B.2.15), there is a unique simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  such that  $\varphi_A(\text{id}_A) = x$ ; and by the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9), the composite  $\psi \bullet \varphi$  is in the connected component of  $\text{id} : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{C}(A, -)$ , so lemma 1.5.3 implies that the components of  $\varphi$  are weak homotopy equivalences, as required. ■

**2.5.26** DEFINITION.

- Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category. A **homotopical representation** (resp. **fibrant representation**) of a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is pair  $(A, x)$  where  $A$  is an object in  $C$  and  $x$  is a vertex of  $FA$  such that the components of the corresponding simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  (as in the weak Yoneda lemma) are weak homotopy equivalences (resp. trivial Kan fibrations).
- A **homotopically representable** (resp. **fibrantly representable**) **simplicially enriched functor** is one that admits a homotopical representation (resp. fibrant representation).

**2.5.27** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a homotopically representable simplicially enriched functor.
- (ii)  $\pi[\underline{F}] : \pi[\underline{C}] \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$  is a representable  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Immediate.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). The weak Yoneda lemma (B.2.15) implies that the map  $\varphi \mapsto \pi[\varphi]$  is a surjection from the ensemble of simplicially enriched natural transformations  $\underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  onto the ensemble of  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\pi\underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \pi[\underline{F}]$ ; and it is not hard to see this restricts to a surjection from the

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

ensemble of simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalences onto the ensemble of  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms. Thus, if  $\pi[\underline{F}]$  is representable, then  $\underline{F}$  is homotopically representable.  $\blacksquare$

**2.5.28** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. Given any two representations of  $\underline{F}$ , say  $(A, x)$  and  $(B, y)$ :*

- (i) *There is a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $F(f)(x) \sim y$  in  $FB$ , and it is unique up to simplicial homotopy in  $\underline{C}$ .*
- (ii) *In particular, every such morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is (half of) a simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .*
- (iii) *If the component  $\underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow FB$  of the simplicially enriched natural transformation corresponding to  $x$  is a trivial Kan fibration, then the largest simplicial subset of  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  whose vertices are the morphisms  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $F(f)(x) = y$  is a contractible Kan complex.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\varphi : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  and  $\psi : \underline{C}(B, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  be the simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalences such that  $\varphi_A(\text{id}_A) = x$  and  $\psi_B(\text{id}_B) = y$ ; such exist and are unique by the weak Yoneda lemma (2.1.27). By proposition 1.5.20,  $\pi_0\varphi_B : \pi_0\underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \pi_0FB$  is a bijection, so there is a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $\varphi_B(f) \sim y$  in  $FB$ , and it is unique up to simplicial homotopy in  $\underline{C}$ . But the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_A} & FA \\ \underline{C}(A, f) \downarrow & & \downarrow Ff \\ \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_B} & FB \end{array}$$

so  $F(f)(x) = \varphi_B(f) \sim y$  as required.

(ii). Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow A$  be morphisms in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $F(f)(x) \sim y$  and  $F(g)(y) \sim x$ . Then  $F(g \circ f)(x) \sim x$  and  $F(f \circ g)(y) \sim y$ , so we must have  $g \circ f \sim \text{id}_A$  and  $f \circ g \sim \text{id}_B$ , i.e.  $(f, g)$  is a simplicial homotopy equivalence.

(iii). The indicated simplicial subset  $X \subseteq \underline{C}(A, B)$  fits into a pullback diagram of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \longrightarrow & \underline{C}(A, B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \varphi_B \\ \Delta^0 & \xrightarrow{\lceil y \rceil} & FB \end{array}$$

where  $\lceil y \rceil : \Delta^0 \rightarrow FB$  is the morphism corresponding to the vertex  $y$ ; so if  $\varphi_B : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow FB$  is a trivial Kan fibration, then (by [proposition A.3.19](#))  $X \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is also a trivial Kan fibration, and therefore  $X$  is a contractible Kan complex (by [proposition 1.5.10](#)). ■

**2.5.29** DEFINITION. A **Dwyer–Kan contractible category** is a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that the unique simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

**2.5.30** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\underline{C}$  is Dwyer–Kan contractible.
- (ii) For every pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ , the hom-space  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  is weakly contractible.
- (iii) There is an object  $A$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that, for every object  $B$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the hom-space  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  is weakly contractible and  $A$  is simplicially homotopy equivalent to  $B$ .

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**2.5.31** DEFINITION. A **Dwyer–Kan adjunction of simplicially enriched categories** consists of the following data:

- A simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ , called the **left adjoint**.
- A simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , called the **right adjoint**.
- A simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\eta : \text{id}_{\underline{C}} \Rightarrow \underline{GF}$ , called the **unit**.
- A simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\varepsilon : \underline{FG} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\underline{D}}$ , called the **counit**.

These are moreover required to satisfy the following condition: for all objects  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$  and  $D$  in  $\underline{D}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\pi(\underline{D}(FC, \varepsilon_D) \circ \underline{F}_{C, GD}) : \pi \underline{C}(C, GD) &\rightarrow \pi \underline{D}(FC, D) \\ \pi(\underline{C}(\eta_C, GD) \circ \underline{G}_{FC, D}) : \pi \underline{D}(FC, D) &\rightarrow \pi \underline{C}(C, GD)\end{aligned}$$

are mutually inverse.

**2.5.32** REMARK. Note that the data  $(\underline{F}, \underline{G}, \eta, \varepsilon)$  constitute a Dwyer–Kan adjunction if and only if  $(\pi[\underline{F}], \pi[\underline{G}], \pi[\eta], \pi[\varepsilon])$  constitute a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched adjunction (at least when the simplicially enriched categories are locally small). In particular, any simplicially enriched adjunction is also a Dwyer–Kan adjunction, but not vice versa.

Unfortunately, we do not have an analogue of [corollary B.2.28](#); instead, we make the following definitions.

**2.5.33** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be locally small simplicially enriched categories.

- A **Dwyer–Kan left pre-adjoint functor**  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a simplicially enriched functor with the following property: for each object  $D$  in  $\underline{D}$ , the simplicially enriched functor

$$\underline{D}(\underline{F}-, D) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is homotopically representable in  $\underline{C}$ .

- A **Dwyer–Kan right pre-adjoint functor**  $\underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched functor with the following property: for each object  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the simplicially enriched functor

$$\underline{C}(C, \underline{G}-) : \underline{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is homotopically representable in  $\underline{D}$ .

**2.5.34** EXAMPLE. The inclusion  $\mathbf{Kan} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a Dwyer–Kan right pre-adjoint functor: indeed, by [corollary 1.4.16](#) and [theorem 1.7.18](#),

$$\mathbf{sSet}(i_X^\infty, -) : \mathbf{sSet}(\text{Ex}^\infty(X), -) \Rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}(X, -)$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence of simplicially enriched functors  $\mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , and  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a Kan complex, as required.

**2.5.35** REMARK. Of course, any Dwyer–Kan equivalence of simplicially enriched categories is both a Dwyer–Kan left pre-adjoint functor and a Dwyer–Kan right pre-adjoint functor.

**2.5.36** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be locally small simplicially enriched categories. The following are equivalent for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$ :*

- (i)  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan left pre-adjoint functor.
- (ii)  $\pi[\underline{F}] : \pi[\underline{\mathcal{C}}] \rightarrow \pi[\underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched right adjoint.

*Dually, the following are equivalent for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ :*

- (i')  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan right pre-adjoint functor.
- (ii')  $\pi[\underline{G}] : \pi[\underline{\mathcal{D}}] \rightarrow \pi[\underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched left adjoint.

*Proof.* Apply lemma 2.5.27 to corollary B.2.28. ■

## 2.6 Kan-enriched categories

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.7, 2.1, 2.5, 4.1.

**2.6.1** DEFINITION. A **fibrant simplicially enriched category** is a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that the hom-spaces  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  are Kan complexes for all pairs  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ .

For the sake of brevity, we also make the following definition:

**2.6.2** DEFINITION. A **Kan-enriched category** is a fibrant locally small simplicially enriched category.

**2.6.3** THEOREM. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.*

- (i)  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{C}]$  is a Kan-enriched category.
- (ii) *The canonical functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{C}]$  is a natural isomorphism of (ordinary) categories.*
- (iii) *The canonical functor admits a simplicial enrichment  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{C}]$  that is a natural Dwyer–Kan equivalence of simplicially enriched categories.*

*Proof.* The claims are immediate consequences of [theorem 1.7.18](#): the functor  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves finite limits, sends simplicial sets to Kan complexes, and is equipped with a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $i : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty$  that is bijective on vertices. ■

**2.6.4** REMARK. In other words, every simplicial enrichment of a category can be replaced with a Dwyer–Kan equivalent *fibrant* simplicial enrichment. However, this procedure tends to destroy the good properties of the original simplicial enrichment: for instance, [remark 1.7.19](#) implies that the fibrant replacement may fail to have simplicially enriched infinite products even when the original does.

**2.6.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{D}$  be the simplicially enriched full subcategory of the slice category  $[\underline{C}, \mathbf{sSet}]_{/\underline{F}}$  spanned by the fibrant representations of  $\underline{F}$ . If  $\underline{F}$  is fibrantly representable, then  $\underline{D}$  is fibrant and Dwyer–Kan contractible.*

*Proof.* Let  $(A, x)$  be a fibrant representation of  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$ . By lemma 2.5.28 and the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9), for any fibrant representation  $(B, y)$  of  $\underline{F}$ , the hom-space  $\underline{D}((B, y), (A, x))$  is a contractible Kan complex. Thus,  $\underline{D}$  is a fibrant simplicially enriched category, and by lemma 2.5.30, it is Dwyer–Kan contractible. ■

**2.6.6 DEFINITION.** A **local fibration of simplicially enriched categories** is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{P} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  with the following property:

- For all pairs  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $C$ ,  $\underline{P}_{A,B} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{D}(PA, PB)$  is a Kan fibration.

**2.6.7 LEMMA.** Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category, let  $f_0, f_1 : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g_0, g_1 : B \rightarrow C$  be parallel pairs of morphism in  $C$ , and let  $\varphi : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  and  $\psi : g_0 \Rightarrow g_1$  be simplicial homotopies in  $\underline{C}$ . Then there exist 2-simplices in  $\underline{C}(A, C)$  as in the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} g_0 \circ f_0 & \xrightarrow{\psi f_0} & g_1 \circ f_0 \\ g_0 \varphi \downarrow & \searrow \psi \circ \varphi & \downarrow g_1 \varphi \\ g_0 \circ f_1 & \xrightarrow{\psi f_1} & g_1 \circ f_1 \end{array}$$

and moreover these are natural with respect to  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* Recall that composition is a morphism  $\underline{C}(B, C) \times \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, C)$ . Consider the 2-simplex  $\tau = s_1(\psi) \circ s_0(\varphi)$  in  $\underline{C}(A, C)$ . We have:

$$\begin{aligned} d_0(\tau) &= d_0(s_1(\psi)) \circ d_0(s_0(\varphi)) & d_2(\tau) &= d_2(s_1(\psi)) \circ d_2(s_0(\varphi)) \\ &= s_0(d_0(\psi)) \circ \varphi & &= \psi \circ s_0(d_1(\varphi)) \\ &= g_1 \varphi & &= \psi f_0 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,  $d_1(\tau) = \psi \circ \varphi$ , so we have a 2-simplex in  $\underline{C}(A, C)$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} g_0 \circ f_0 & \xrightarrow{\psi f_0} & g_1 \circ f_0 \\ & \searrow \psi \circ \varphi & \downarrow g_1 \varphi \\ & & g_1 \circ f_1 \end{array}$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

An analogous calculation with  $s_0(\psi) \circ s_1(\varphi)$  shows that it is a 2-simplex of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} g_0 \circ f_0 & & \\ g_0 \varphi \downarrow & \searrow \psi \circ \varphi & \\ g_0 \circ f_1 & \xrightarrow{\psi f_1} & g_1 \circ f_1 \end{array}$$

so we are done. ■

**2.6.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category.

- An **left half-adjoint simplicial homotopy equivalence** in  $\underline{C}$  is a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  together with a tuple  $(g, \eta, \epsilon, \tau)$ , where  $g : B \rightarrow A$  is a morphism in  $C$ ,  $\eta : \text{id}_A \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_B$  are simplicial homotopies in  $\underline{C}$ , and  $\tau$  is a 2-simplex in  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f & \xrightarrow{f\eta} & f \circ g \circ f \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow \epsilon f \\ & & f \end{array}$$

- A **right half-adjoint simplicial homotopy equivalence** in  $\underline{C}$  is a morphism  $g : B \rightarrow A$  in  $C$  together with a tuple  $(f, \eta, \epsilon, v)$ , where  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a morphism in  $C$ ,  $\eta : \text{id}_A \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_B$  are simplicial homotopies in  $\underline{C}$ , and  $v$  is a 2-simplex in  $\underline{C}(B, A)$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} g & \xrightarrow{\eta g} & g \circ f \circ g \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow g\epsilon \\ & & g \end{array}$$

**2.6.9** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a fibrant simplicially enriched category, let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow A$  be morphisms in  $C$ , and let  $\eta : \text{id}_A \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_B$  be simplicial homotopies in  $\underline{C}$ . The following are equivalent:

- There is a 2-simplex  $\tau$  in  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  such that  $f : A \rightarrow B$  together with  $(g, \eta, \epsilon, \tau)$  is a left half-adjoint simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- There is a 2-simplex  $v$  in  $\underline{C}(B, A)$  such that  $g : B \rightarrow A$  together with  $(f, \eta, \epsilon, v)$  is a right half-adjoint simplicial homotopy equivalence.



*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By lemma 2.6.7, we have 2-simplices in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(B, A)$  as in the following diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 g & \xrightarrow{\eta g} & g \circ f \circ g & & \\
 \eta g \downarrow & \searrow \eta \circ \eta g & \downarrow g f \eta g & & \\
 g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{\eta g f g} & g \circ f \circ g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{g \epsilon f g} & g \circ f \circ g \\
 g \epsilon \downarrow & \searrow \eta \circ g \epsilon & \downarrow g f g \epsilon & \searrow g \epsilon \circ \epsilon & \downarrow g \epsilon \\
 g & \xrightarrow{\eta g} & g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{g \epsilon} & g
 \end{array}$$

and the hypothesis implies we have a 2-simplex of the form below,

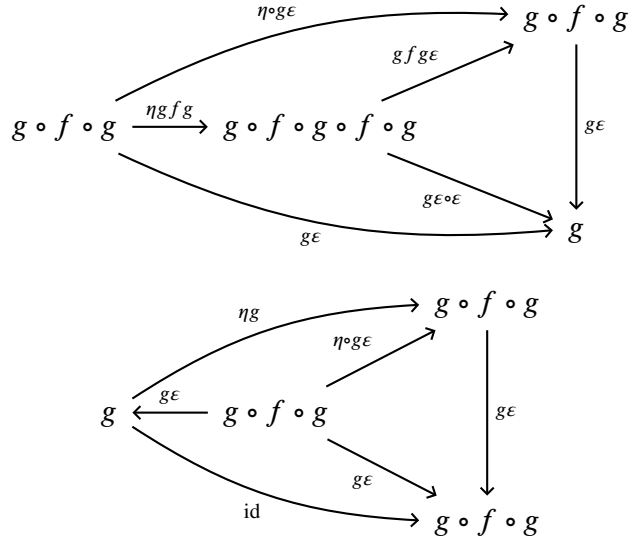
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 g \circ f \circ g & & \\
 g f \eta g \downarrow & \searrow \text{id} & \\
 g \circ f \circ g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{g \epsilon f g} & g \circ f \circ g
 \end{array}$$

so by filling the following  $\Lambda_k^3$ -horns in turn,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \eta \circ \eta g & \searrow & g \circ f \circ g \circ f \circ g \\
 & & \eta g & \searrow & \downarrow g \epsilon f g \\
 g & \xrightarrow{\eta g} & g \circ f \circ g & \searrow \text{id} & g \circ f \circ g \\
 & \searrow \eta g & & & 
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \eta g f g & \searrow & g \circ f \circ g \circ f \circ g \\
 & & \eta \circ \eta g & \searrow & \downarrow g \epsilon f g \\
 g \circ f \circ g & \xleftarrow{\eta g} & g & \searrow \eta g & g \circ f \circ g \\
 & \searrow \text{id} & & & 
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \eta g f g & \searrow & g \circ f \circ g \circ f \circ g \\
 & & g \epsilon f g & \searrow & \downarrow g \epsilon \circ \epsilon \\
 g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & g \circ f \circ g & \searrow g \epsilon & g \\
 & \searrow g \epsilon & & & 
 \end{array}$$

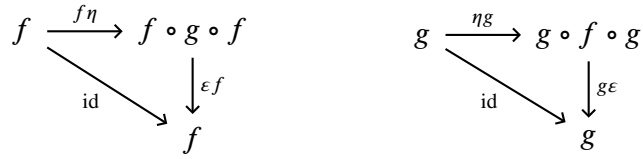


we obtain a 2-simplex of the required form.

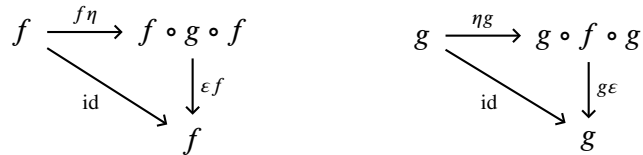
(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). This is formally dual. ■

**2.6.10 LEMMA.** *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a fibrant simplicially enriched category and let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow A$  be morphisms in  $\underline{C}$ . If  $(f, g)$  is a simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ , then:*

- Given any  $\eta : id_A \Rightarrow g \circ f$ , we can choose  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow id_B$  and 2-simplices as in the diagram below:



- Given any  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow id_B$ , we can choose  $\eta : id_A \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and 2-simplices as in the diagram below:



*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\eta : \text{id}_A \Rightarrow g \circ f$  be given. Since  $(f, g)$  is a simplicial homotopy equivalence, [proposition 1.4.17](#) implies there is a simplicial homotopy  $\beta : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_B$ . By filling in a  $\Lambda_1^2$ -horn and a  $\Lambda_0^2$ -horn, we obtain a pair of 2-simplices in  $\underline{C}(B, B)$  as in the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 f \circ g \circ f \circ g & \xleftarrow{f\eta g} & f \circ g \\
 f g \beta \downarrow & \swarrow \xi & \downarrow \beta \\
 f \circ g & \xrightarrow{\epsilon} & \text{id}_B
 \end{array}$$

By [lemma 2.6.7](#), we have 2-simplices in  $\underline{C}(A, A)$  as in the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{id}_A & \xrightarrow{\eta} & g \circ f \\
 \eta \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow g f \eta \\
 g \circ f & \xrightarrow{\eta g f} & g \circ f \circ g \circ f
 \end{array}$$

and by filling in a  $\Lambda_0^3$ -horn, we obtain a 2-simplex of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & g \circ f \\
 & \nearrow \text{id} & \downarrow g f \eta \\
 g \circ f & \xrightarrow{\eta g f} & g \circ f \circ g \circ f
 \end{array}$$

Similarly, we have 2-simplices in  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  as in the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{\eta g f g} & g \circ f \circ g \circ g \circ f \\
 g \beta \downarrow & \searrow \eta \circ g \beta & \downarrow g f g \beta \\
 g & \xrightarrow{\eta g} & g \circ f \circ g
 \end{array}$$

so we may form a  $\Lambda_2^3$ -horn in  $\underline{C}(B, A)$  of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & g \circ f \circ g \\
 g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{\eta g f g} & g \circ f \circ g \circ g \circ f \\
 & \searrow \eta \circ g \beta & \downarrow g f g \beta \\
 & & g \circ f \circ g
 \end{array}$$

$\nearrow g f \eta g$   
 $\nearrow g \xi$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

and in particular, there is a 2-simplex of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & g \circ f \circ g \\
 \eta \circ g \beta \downarrow & \swarrow g \xi & \\
 g \circ f \circ g & & 
 \end{array}$$

Then, by filling in a  $\Lambda_1^3$ -horn, we get a 2-simplex of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 g \circ f \circ g & & \\
 \eta \circ g \beta \downarrow & \searrow g \beta & \\
 g \circ f \circ g & \xrightarrow{g \epsilon} & g
 \end{array}$$

and finally, by filling in a  $\Lambda_0^3$ -horn, we obtain the required 2-simplex:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 g & \xrightarrow{\eta g} & g \circ f \circ g \\
 & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow g \epsilon \\
 & & g
 \end{array}$$

To complete the proof, we apply [lemma 2.6.9](#). ■

**2.6.II** LEMMA. Consider a pullback diagram in **SCat**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \underline{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \underline{C} \\
 \underline{p} \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{q} \\
 \underline{B} & \xrightarrow{\underline{v}} & \underline{D}
 \end{array}$$

Let  $a : x \rightarrow y$  be a morphism in  $\underline{A}$ . Assuming  $\underline{q} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a local fibration:

- If there exist a morphism  $b' : u(y) \rightarrow u(x)$  and simplicial homotopy  $\beta : b' \circ p(a) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{p(x)}$  in  $\underline{B}$  and data  $(c', \eta, \epsilon, v)$  making  $u(a) : u(x) \rightarrow u(y)$  a right half-adjoint simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ , then there exist a morphism  $a' : y \rightarrow x$  and a simplicial homotopy  $\alpha : a' \circ a \Rightarrow \text{id}_x$ .
- If there exist a morphism  $b' : u(y) \rightarrow u(x)$  and simplicial homotopy  $\beta : \text{id}_{p(x)} \Rightarrow p(a) \circ b'$  in  $\underline{B}$  and data  $(c', \eta, \epsilon, \tau)$  making  $u(a) : u(x) \rightarrow u(y)$  a left half-adjoint simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ , then there exist a morphism  $a' : y \rightarrow x$  and a simplicial homotopy  $\alpha : \text{id}_x \Rightarrow a \circ a'$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $b = p(a)$  and  $c = u(a)$ . To begin, choose a morphism  $e : u(x) \rightarrow u(x)$  and a simplicial homotopy  $\varphi : e \Rightarrow \text{id}_{u(x)}$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  such that  $q(e) = v(b' \circ b)$  and  $\underline{q}(\varphi) = \underline{v}(\beta)$ . (We may do this because  $\underline{q}_{u(x), u(x)} : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(u(x), u(x)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}(q(u(x)), q(u(x)))$  has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_1^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ .) Then choose a morphism  $c'' : u(y) \rightarrow u(x)$  and a simplicial homotopy  $\psi : c'' \Rightarrow e \circ c'$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  such that  $q(c'') = v(b')$  and  $\underline{q}(\psi) = v(b')\underline{q}(\eta)$ . By definition,  $v(b')\underline{q}(\eta)$  is a 2-simplex in  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}(q(u(x)), q(u(x)))$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} q(c'' \circ c) & \xrightarrow{\underline{q}(\psi c)} & q(e \circ c' \circ c) \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow \underline{q}(e\epsilon) \\ & & q(e) \end{array}$$

Thus, by lifting with respect to the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_1^2 \hookrightarrow \Delta^2$ , we may obtain a simplicial homotopy  $\xi : c'' \circ c \Rightarrow e$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  such that  $\underline{q}(\xi) = \text{id}_{q(e)}$ ; similarly, by considering the following degenerate 2-simplex in  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}(q(u(x)), q(u(x)))$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} q(c' \circ c) & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & q(e) \\ & \searrow \underline{v}(\beta) & \downarrow \underline{v}(\beta) \\ & & q(\text{id}_{u(x)}) \end{array}$$

we see that there is a simplicial homotopy  $\gamma : c'' \circ c \Rightarrow \text{id}_{u(x)}$  such that  $\underline{q}(\gamma) = \underline{v}(\beta)$ . Hence, by the universal property of pullbacks, there exist a (unique) morphism  $a' : y \rightarrow x$  and a (unique) simplicial homotopy  $\alpha : a' \circ a \Rightarrow \text{id}_x$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{A}}$  such that  $p(a') = b'$ ,  $\underline{p}(\alpha) = \beta$ ,  $u(a') = c''$ , and  $\underline{u}(\alpha) = \gamma$ .  $\blacksquare$

**2.6.12 PROPOSITION.** *Consider a pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{SCat}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{A}} & \xrightarrow{u} & \underline{\mathcal{C}} \\ \underline{p} \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{q} \\ \underline{\mathcal{B}} & \xrightarrow{v} & \underline{\mathcal{D}} \end{array}$$

*Let  $a : x \rightarrow y$  be a morphism in  $\underline{\mathcal{A}}$ . Assuming  $\underline{q} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  is a local fibration, if both  $\underline{p}(a) : p(x) \rightarrow p(y)$  and  $\underline{u}(a) : u(x) \rightarrow u(y)$  are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences, then so is  $a : x \rightarrow y$ .*

*Proof.* Theorem 1.7.18 implies that the following is also a pullback diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{A}}] & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{u}]} & \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{C}}] \\ \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{p}] \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{q}] \\ \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{B}}] & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{v}]} & \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{D}}] \end{array}$$

with  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{q}] : \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{C}}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  also being a local fibration, and by theorem 2.6.3, a morphism in  $\underline{\mathcal{A}}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if its image in  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{\mathcal{A}}]$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence; thus the problem reduces to lemma 2.6.11.  $\blacksquare$

**2.6.13** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a (locally small) simplicially enriched category.

- A  **$K$ -fibration** (resp. **trivial  $K$ -fibration**) in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with the following property: for every object  $T$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the induced morphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, f) : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, X) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, Y)$$

is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).

- A  **$K$ -cofibration** (resp. **trivial  $K$ -cofibration**) in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with the following property: for every object  $T$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the induced morphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(g, T) : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(W, T) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(Z, T)$$

is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).

**2.6.14** EXAMPLE. By corollary 1.4.16, a morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a  $K$ -fibration (resp. trivial  $K$ -fibration) if and only if it is a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).

**2.6.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a (locally small) simplicially enriched category.

- A morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a trivial  $K$ -fibration if and only if it is both a  $K$ -fibration and a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- A morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a trivial  $K$ -cofibration if and only if it is both a  $K$ -cofibration and a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* Combine propositions 1.5.12 and 2.5.14.  $\blacksquare$

**2.6.I6** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a simplicial derivable category.<sup>[1]</sup>

- Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_c$  be the simplicially enriched full subcategory spanned by the cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Every fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_c$  is a  $K$ -fibration (resp. trivial  $K$ -fibration).
- Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f$  be the simplicially enriched full subcategory spanned by the fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Every cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f$  is a  $K$ -cofibration (resp. trivial  $K$ -cofibration).

*Proof.* This is an immediate consequence of the definition of ‘simplicial derivable category’. ■

**2.6.I7** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a (locally small) simplicially enriched category.

- Every trivial  $K$ -fibration is a split epimorphism.
- Every trivial  $K$ -cofibration is a split monomorphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a trivial  $K$ -fibration. Then the induced morphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(Y, f) : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(Y, Y)$$

is a trivial Kan fibration, so it is a split epimorphism in particular. Thus,  $\text{id}_Y$  must be in the image of  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(Y, f)$ , i.e. there is a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $f \circ s = \text{id}_Y$ . ■

**2.6.I8** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a (locally small) simplicially enriched category.

- Every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $K$ -fibration (resp. trivial  $K$ -fibration).
- The class of  $K$ -fibrations (resp. trivial  $K$ -fibrations) is closed under composition.
- The class of  $K$ -fibrations (resp. trivial  $K$ -fibrations) is closed under simplicially enriched pullback in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .
- The class of  $K$ -fibrations (resp. trivial  $K$ -fibrations) is closed under retracts in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

[1] See [definition 2.4.I](#).

*Dually:*

- (i) *Every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $K$ -cofibration (resp. trivial  $K$ -cofibration).*
- (ii) *The class of  $K$ -cofibrations (resp. trivial  $K$ -cofibrations) is closed under composition.*
- (iii) *The class of  $K$ -cofibrations (resp. trivial  $K$ -cofibrations) is closed under simplicially enriched pushout in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .*
- (iv) *The class of  $K$ -cofibrations (resp. trivial  $K$ -cofibrations) is closed under retracts in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.3.19](#). ■

**2.6.19** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a (locally small) simplicially enriched category.

- A  **$K$ -fibrant span** in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$Y \xleftarrow{p} X \xrightarrow{q} Z$$

such that the following conditions are satisfied for every object  $T$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

- $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, Y)$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, Z)$  are Kan complexes.
- The induced morphism

$$\langle \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, p), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, q) \rangle : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, X) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, Y) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(T, Z)$$

is a Kan fibration.

- A  **$K$ -cofibrant cospan** in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$Y \xrightarrow{i} X \xleftarrow{j} Z$$

such that the following conditions are satisfied for every object  $T$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

- $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(Y, T)$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(Z, T)$  are Kan complexes.
- The induced morphism

$$\langle \underline{\mathcal{C}}(i, T), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(j, T) \rangle : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, T) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(Y, T) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(Z, T)$$

is a Kan fibration.



**2.6.20** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a (locally small) simplicially enriched category.

- The simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, \underline{C}]$  spanned by the  $K$ -fibrant spans in  $\underline{C}$  is a fibrant (locally small) simplicially enriched category, and the projection functor  $[\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C} \times \underline{C}$  defined by sending a span  $Y \leftarrow X \rightarrow Z$  to the pair  $(Y, Z)$  is a local fibration.
- The simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}, \underline{C}]$  spanned by the  $K$ -fibrant spans is a fibrant (locally small) simplicially enriched category, and the projection functor  $[\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C} \times \underline{C}$  defined by sending a cospan  $Y \rightarrow X \leftarrow Z$  to the pair  $(Y, Z)$  is a local fibration.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $Y_0 \xleftarrow{p_0} X_0 \xrightarrow{q_0} Z_0$  and  $Y_1 \xleftarrow{p_1} X_1 \xrightarrow{q_1} Z_1$  be spans in  $\underline{C}$ . Then we have the following pullback diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\text{Hom}}(Y_0 \leftarrow X_0 \rightarrow Z_0, Y_1 \leftarrow X_1 \rightarrow Z_1) & \longrightarrow & \underline{C}(X_0, X_1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{C}(Y_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(Z_0, Z_1) & \longrightarrow & \underline{C}(X_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(X_0, Z_1) \end{array}$$

where  $\underline{C}(X_0, X_1) \rightarrow \underline{C}(X_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(X_0, Z_1)$  is induced by  $p_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  and  $q_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Z_1$ , and  $\underline{C}(Y_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(Z_0, Z_1) \rightarrow \underline{C}(X_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(X_0, Z_1)$  is induced by  $p_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  and  $q_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Z_0$ . If  $Y_1 \leftarrow X_1 \rightarrow Z_1$  is a  $K$ -fibrant span in  $\underline{C}$ , then by [proposition A.3.19](#),

$$\underline{\text{Hom}}(Y_0 \leftarrow X_0 \rightarrow Z_0, Y_1 \leftarrow X_1 \rightarrow Z_1) \rightarrow \underline{C}(Y_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(Z_0, Z_1)$$

is a Kan fibration, as required; and by [proposition 1.4.24](#),  $\underline{C}(Y_0, Y_1) \times \underline{C}(Z_0, Z_1)$  is a Kan complex, so it follows that  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(Y_0 \leftarrow X_0 \rightarrow Z_0, Y_1 \leftarrow X_1 \rightarrow Z_1)$  is also a Kan complex. ■

**2.6.21** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be an object in a (locally small) simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$ .

- A **path  $K$ -fibration** for  $X$  is a tuple  $(\text{Path}(X), i, p_0, p_1)$  where  $\text{Path}(X)$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$ ,  $i : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(X)$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ ,  $p_0$  and  $p_1$  are retractions of  $i$ , and for every object  $T$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the induced morphism

$$\langle \underline{C}(T, p_0), \underline{C}(T, p_1) \rangle : \underline{C}(T, \text{Path}(X)) \rightarrow \underline{C}(T, X) \times \underline{C}(T, X)$$

is a Kan fibration.

- A **cylinder  $K$ -cofibration** for  $X$  is a tuple  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  where  $\text{Cyl}(X)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $p : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow X$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ ,  $i_0$  and  $i_1$  are sections of  $p$ , and for every object  $T$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the induced morphism

$$\langle \underline{\mathcal{C}}(i_0, T), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(i_1, T) \rangle : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\text{Cyl}(X), T) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, T) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, T)$$

is a Kan fibration.

**2.6.22 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a (locally small) simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ . Given a path  $K$ -fibration  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphisms  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are simplicially homotopic in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .*
- (ii) *There is a morphism  $h : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $p_0 \circ h = f_0$  and  $p_1 \circ h = f_1$ .*

*Dually, given a cylinder  $K$ -cofibration  $(\text{Path}(X), i, p_0, p_1)$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i') *The morphisms  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are simplicially homotopic in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .*
- (ii') *There is a morphism  $h : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $h \circ i_0 = f_0$  and  $h \circ i_1 = f_1$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are simplicially homotopic, then there must be a zigzag from  $(f_0, f_0)$  to  $(f_0, f_1)$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$ . Since  $p_0 \circ i = p_1 \circ i = \text{id}_Y$ , the vertex  $(f_0, f_0)$  is in the image of the Kan fibration  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, \text{Path}(Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X, Y)$ , and thus (by induction on the length of the zigzag) so too is the vertex  $(f_0, f_1)$ , as required.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Since  $i$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence and  $p_0 \circ i = \text{id}_Y$ , we must have  $i \circ p_0 \sim \text{id}_{\text{Path}(Y)}$ . Hence,

$$f_0 = p_0 \circ h = p_1 \circ i \circ p_0 \circ h \sim p_1 \circ h = f_1$$

as required. ■

**2.6.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be an object in a fibrant (locally small) simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$ .*

- *If the cotensor product  $\Delta^1 \pitchfork X$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ , then*

$$(\Delta^1 \pitchfork X, \sigma^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X, \delta^1 \pitchfork \text{id}_X, \delta^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X)$$

*is a path  $K$ -fibration for  $\Delta^0 \pitchfork X$  in  $\underline{C}$ .*

- *If the tensor product  $\Delta^1 \odot X$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ , then*

$$(\Delta^1 \odot X, \delta^1 \odot \text{id}_X, \delta^0 \odot \text{id}_X, \sigma^0 \odot \text{id}_X)$$

*is a cylinder  $K$ -cofibration for  $\Delta^0 \odot X$  in  $\underline{C}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By definition, there is a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism

$$\underline{C}(-, \Delta^1 \pitchfork X) \cong [\Delta^1, \underline{C}(-, X)]$$

so by [corollary 1.4.16](#), the induced morphism

$$\underline{C}(T, \Delta^1 \pitchfork X) \rightarrow \underline{C}(T, \Delta^0 \pitchfork X) \times \underline{C}(T, \Delta^0 \pitchfork X)$$

is a Kan fibration. It is straightforward to verify that  $\sigma^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence, and the cosimplicial identities imply that  $\delta^1 \pitchfork \text{id}_X$  and  $\delta^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X$  are retractions of  $\sigma^0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X$ , so we do indeed have a path  $K$ -fibration for  $\Delta^0 \pitchfork X$ . ■

**2.6.24** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a fibrant (locally small) simplicially enriched category. Suppose  $\underline{C}$  satisfies the following axioms:*

- *$\underline{C}$  has simplicially enriched finite products.*
- *$\underline{C}$  has simplicially enriched pullbacks along  $K$ -fibrations.*
- *For every object  $X$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the cotensor product  $\Delta^1 \pitchfork X$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .*

*Then  $\underline{C}$  admits the structure of a category of fibrant objects where the weak equivalences are the weak simplicial homotopy equivalences and the fibrations are the  $K$ -fibrations; moreover,  $\underline{C}$  has functorial path objects.*

*Proof.*  $\underline{C}$  satisfies axiom A, by [lemma 3.1.8](#), and it satisfies axioms B and C by [proposition 2.6.18](#). For axioms D and E, we use [proposition 2.6.23](#) and the fact that  $\underline{C}$  is fibrant. ■

**2.6.25** COROLLARY. *Under the hypotheses of [proposition 2.6.24](#), every morphism in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a simplicially enriched functorial factorisation as a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence followed by a  $K$ -fibration.*

*Proof.* Apply [lemma 4.1.35](#). ■

## 2.7 Homotopy limits and colimits

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.6, 1.9, 1.7, 1.11, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.5, 2.6, A.6.

In this section, we define homotopy-theoretic limits and colimits in Kan-enriched categories. In principle, one could extend these definitions to (locally small) simplicially enriched categories by applying [theorem 2.6.3](#), but we will avoid this because one often requires a more serious “correction” than just fibrant replacement of the hom-spaces.

First, let us extend the definitions of ‘(co)bar complex’ to allow for simplicial enrichment.

**2.7.1 DEFINITION.** Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category. The **bar complex** for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  weighted by  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is the bisimplicial set  $B_{\bullet}(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$  defined by the following formula,

$$B_n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}) = \coprod_{(j_0, \dots, j_n)} G(j_n) \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_{n-1}, j_n) \times \dots \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_0, j_1) \times F(j_0)$$

where  $(j_0, \dots, j_n)$  ranging over  $(n+1)$ -tuples of objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ , with face and degeneracy operators defined by analogy with the usual bar complex.

**2.7.2 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category. The functor  $B_{\bullet}(-, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, -) : [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \times [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow [\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  admits a simplicial enrichment.

*Proof.* It is straightforward to verify that  $B_{\bullet}(-, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$  and  $B_{\bullet}(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, -)$  admit strengths. Thus, by [theorem B.4.17](#),  $B_{\bullet}(-, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$  and  $B_{\bullet}(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, -)$  admit simplicial enrichments, and using [proposition B.2.19](#), it is not hard to verify that  $B_{\bullet}(-, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, -)$  itself admits a simplicial enrichment. ■

**2.7.3 DEFINITION.** Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- A **bar complex** for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  weighted by  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a simplicial object  $B_{\bullet}(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(B_n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}), C) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}](B_n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{F}, C))$$

that are natural in  $n$  and simplicially natural in  $C$ .

- A **cobar complex** for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  weighted by  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  is a cosimplicial object  $\mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{C}, \mathbf{C}^n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\mathbf{B}_n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{C}, \underline{F}))$$

that are natural in  $n$  and simplicially natural in  $\underline{C}$ .

**2.7.4** REMARK. A straightforward calculation using [remark 2.1.24](#) and the calculus of ends shows that the above definition agrees with the old one when  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  is an ordinary category regarded as a simplicially enriched category.

**2.7.5** REMARK. By the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)), we have the following explicit formulae when  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has simplicially enriched coproducts and tensors (resp. simplicially enriched products and cotensors):

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{B}_n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}) &\cong \coprod_{(j_0, \dots, j_n)} (G(j_n) \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_n, j_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_1, j_0)) \odot F(j_0) \\ \mathbf{C}^n(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}) &\cong \prod_{(j_0, \dots, j_n)} (G(j_n) \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_n, j_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_1, j_0)) \pitchfork F(j_0) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, bar complexes and cobar complexes represent certain cosimplicial functors:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\mathbf{B}_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}), -) &\cong \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{F}, -)) \\ \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})) &\cong \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F})) \end{aligned}$$

**2.7.6** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{F}, \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  be simplicially enriched functors. We have the following simplicially enriched natural isomorphism:

$$[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}) \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$$

*Proof.* It is not hard to see that the (non-full) subcategory  $\{[0] \rightrightarrows [1]\}$  is coinital in  $\Delta$ , and one may verify that there is a simplicially enriched natural equaliser diagram

$$[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{C}^0(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}) \xrightleftharpoons[d^1]{d^0} \mathbf{C}^1(\underline{G}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$$

by using [remarks 2.7.5](#) and [B.3.4](#). ■

The following is a generalisation of [proposition 1.8.10](#).

**2.7.7** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- Given a bar complex  $B_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the simplicially enriched colimit  $\varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  if and only if the simplicially enriched weighted colimit  $\underline{G} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ , and the two are isomorphic:

$$\underline{G} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F} \cong \varinjlim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}} B_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

- Given a cobar complex  $C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the simplicially enriched limit  $\varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  if and only if the simplicially enriched weighted limit  $\{ \underline{G}, \underline{F} \}^{\underline{J}}$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ , and the two are isomorphic:

$$\{ \underline{G}, \underline{F} \}^{\underline{J}} \cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} B_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $C$  be any object in  $\underline{C}$ . By [remark 2.7.5](#) and [lemma 1.8.9](#), we obtain the following simplicially enriched natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\underline{G}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, C)) &\cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, C)) \\ &\cong \varprojlim_{\Delta} \underline{C}(B_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}), C) \end{aligned}$$

The claim follows by the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)). ■

The following is a generalisation of [lemma 1.8.42](#).

**2.7.8** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{F}, \underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  be simplicially enriched functors. If each  $F(j)$  is a Kan complex, then the cobar complex  $C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is a Reedy-fibrant cosimplicial simplicial set. In particular, it is a projective-fibrant cosimplicial simplicial set.

*Proof.* Recalling [remark 2.7.5](#), one may directly verify that the  $n$ -th matching object is

$$M_n(C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})) \cong \prod_{(j_0, \dots, j_n)} [G(j_n) \times D(j_0, \dots, j_n), F(j_0)]$$

where  $D(j_0, \dots, j_n)$  is the simplicial subset of  $\underline{J}(j_n, j_{n-1}) \times \dots \times \underline{J}(j_1, j_0)$  whose  $m$ -simplices are the  $(n+1)$ -tuples with at least one component being (the degenerate  $m$ -simplex corresponding to) an identity morphism in  $\underline{J}$ . Moreover, the

$n$ -th matching morphism  $C^n(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow M_n(C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}))$  is the morphism induced by the evident inclusion, so by [corollary 1.4.16](#), it is a Kan fibration. Thus  $C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is indeed Reedy-fibrant. ■

**2.7.9** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category.

- (i) For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , the cobar complex functor  $C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -) : [\underline{J}, \mathbf{Kan}] \rightarrow [\Delta, \mathbf{Kan}]$  sends componentwise weak homotopy equivalences to degreewise weak homotopy equivalences.
- (ii) For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , the cobar complex functor  $C^\bullet(-, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) : [\underline{J}, \mathbf{sSet}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\Delta, \mathbf{Kan}]$  sends componentwise weak homotopy equivalences to degreewise weak homotopy equivalences.

*Proof.* Recalling [remark 2.7.5](#), this is a straightforward consequence of [proposition 1.5.17](#) and [corollary 5.3.19](#). ■

**2.7.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- A **bar construction** for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  weighted by  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is an object  $B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  in  $\underline{C}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{C}(B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}), C) \cong \underline{\text{Tot}} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, C))$$

that are simplicially natural in  $C$ .

- A **cobar construction** for a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  weighted by  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is an object  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  in  $\underline{C}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{C}(C, C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})) \cong \underline{\text{Tot}} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(C, \underline{F}))$$

that are simplicially natural in  $C$ .

**2.7.11** REMARK. By [remark 2.3.11](#), we also have the following simplicially enriched natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{J}), \underline{C}(\underline{F}, C)) &\cong \underline{\text{Tot}} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, C)) \\ [\underline{J}, \mathbf{sSet}](B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}), \underline{C}(C, \underline{F})) &\cong \underline{\text{Tot}} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(C, \underline{F})) \end{aligned}$$



Here, we have used the fact that enriched weighted colimits in enriched functor categories can be computed componentwise ([proposition B.3.23](#)). Thus, bar constructions (resp. cobar constructions) are special simplicially enriched weighted colimits (resp. limits), and therefore:

$$\begin{aligned}\underline{C}(\underline{B}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}), C) &\cong C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, C)) \\ \underline{C}(C, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})) &\cong C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(C, \underline{F}))\end{aligned}$$

**2.7.12** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram, and let  $j$  be an object in  $\underline{J}$ . There is a weak homotopy equivalence*

$$\underline{F}j \rightarrow C(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

*in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  and it is simplicially natural in both  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ .*

*Proof.* Recalling [remark 2.7.5](#), let  $r : C^0(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow \underline{F}j$  and

$$h_n : C^{n+1}(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow C^n(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

be the morphisms induced by the morphism  $e_j : \Delta^0 \rightarrow \underline{J}(j, j)$  corresponding to the vertex  $\text{id}_j$  and let  $s : \underline{F}j \rightarrow C^0(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  be the morphism induced by the action of  $\underline{J}$  on  $\underline{F}$ . It is straightforward to verify the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned}d_1^1 \circ s &= d_1^0 \circ s \\ r \circ s &= \text{id} \\ h_0 \circ d_1^0 &= s \circ r \\ h_0 \circ d_1^1 &= \text{id} \\ h_n \circ d_{n+1}^i &= d_n^i \circ h_{n-1} && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_n \circ d_{n+1}^{n+1} &= \text{id} \\ s_n^i \circ h_{n+1} &= h_n \circ s_{n+1}^i && \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ h_n \circ h_{n+1} &= h_n \circ s_{n+1}^{n+1}\end{aligned}$$

Thus, by [corollary 2.3.21](#), the morphism  $\underline{F}j \rightarrow C(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  induced by  $s : \underline{F}j \rightarrow C^0(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

For simplicially enriched naturality, we observe that  $s : \underline{F}j \rightarrow C^0(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is precisely the morphism inducing the isomorphism of [lemma 2.7.6](#), so it must be simplicially natural in  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ ; we then use the fact that totalisation is a simplicially enriched functor. ■

**2.7.13** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category, let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram, and let  $j$  be an object in  $\underline{J}$ .

- There is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence

$$B(\underline{h}_j, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow \underline{F}j$$

in  $\underline{C}$  and it is simplicially natural in both  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ .

- There is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{F}j \rightarrow C(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

in  $\underline{C}$  and it is simplicially natural in both  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ .

*Proof.* Use the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9) and remark 2.7.11 to reduce to lemma 2.7.12. ■

**2.7.14** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category.

- For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$ , the cobar construction functor  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -) : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}$  sends componentwise weak homotopy equivalences to weak homotopy equivalences.
- For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}$ , the cobar construction functor  $C(-, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}$  sends componentwise weak homotopy equivalences to weak homotopy equivalences.

*Proof.* Recalling theorem 1.6.27 and Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6), this is a consequence of lemmas 2.7.8 and 2.7.9. ■

**2.7.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  and any simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{F}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{F}_1$  of simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , assuming the cobar constructions  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_0)$  and  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_1)$  exist in  $\underline{C}$ , if the components of  $\varphi$  are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ , then the induced morphism

$$C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \varphi) : C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_0) \rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_1)$$

is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .

- (ii) For any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and any simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\psi : \underline{G}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{G}_1$  of simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , assuming the cobar constructions  $C(\underline{G}_0, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  and  $C(\underline{G}_1, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exist in  $\underline{C}$ , if the components of  $\psi$  are weak homotopy equivalences, then the induced morphism

$$C(\psi, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) : C(\underline{G}_1, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow C(\underline{G}_0, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .

Dually:

- (i') For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and any simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{F}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{F}_1$  of simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , assuming the bar constructions  $B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_0)$  and  $B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_1)$  exist in  $\underline{C}$ , if the components of  $\varphi$  are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ , then the induced morphism

$$B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \varphi) : B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_0) \rightarrow B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}_1)$$

is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .

- (ii') For any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and any simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\psi : \underline{G}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{G}_1$  of simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , assuming the bar constructions  $B(\underline{G}_0, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  and  $B(\underline{G}_1, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exist in  $\underline{C}$ , if the components of  $\psi$  are weak homotopy equivalences, then the induced morphism

$$B(\psi, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) : B(\underline{G}_0, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow B(\underline{G}_1, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* Use [remark 2.7.11](#) to reduce the claim to [lemma 2.7.14](#). ■

**2.7.16** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Consider a span in  $\underline{C}$ , say:

$$Y \xleftarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

Let  $\mathcal{J} = \{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}$  and let  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be the functor corresponding to the above diagram. Then there exists a commutative diagram in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow i & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{p} & C(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F) & \xrightarrow{q} & Z \end{array}$$

which is simplicially natural in  $F$  and moreover has the following properties:

- $i : X \rightarrow C(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F)$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- $Y \xleftarrow{p} C(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F) \xrightarrow{q} Z$  is a  $K$ -fibrant span in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .
- Consider a cospan in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say:

$$Y \xrightarrow{f} X \xleftarrow{g} Z$$

Let  $\mathcal{J} = \{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}$  and let  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be the functor corresponding to the above diagram. Then there exists a commutative diagram in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xrightarrow{i} & B(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F) & \xleftarrow{j} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow p & & \parallel \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f} & X & \xleftarrow{g} & Z \end{array}$$

which is simplicially natural in  $F$  and moreover has the following properties:

- $p : B(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F) \rightarrow X$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- $Y \xrightarrow{i} B(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F) \xleftarrow{j} Z$  is a  $K$ -cofibrant cospan in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is straightforward to verify that everything in [lemma 1.9.23](#) is simplicially natural. We may then use [remark 2.7.11](#) and the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)) to reduce the problem at hand to the cited lemma. ■

Unfortunately, the notion of (co)bar construction is not stable under Dwyer–Kan equivalence. To resolve this, we need a homotopy-invariant notion:

**2.7.17** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. A **homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit** in  $\underline{C}$  for a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a homotopical representation of the simplicially enriched functor

$$C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{F})) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

i.e. a pair  $(\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}, \lambda)$  where  $\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a vertex of  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}, \underline{F}))$  such that the induced simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(-, \text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}) \Rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{F}))$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence.

We will omit mention of the weight  $\underline{G}$  when it is the constant functor  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  with value 1 (or  $\Delta^0$ ).

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. A **homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimit** in  $\underline{C}$  for a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a homotopical representation of the simplicially enriched functor

$$C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, -)) : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

i.e. a pair  $(\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}, \lambda)$  where  $\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a vertex of  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, \text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}))$  such that the induced simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}, -) \Rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, -))$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence.

We will omit mention of the weight  $\underline{G}$  when it is the constant functor  $\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  with value 1 (or  $\Delta^0$ ).

**2.7.18** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. A **homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit functor** for  $\underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched functor

$$\mathrm{holim}_{\leftarrow \underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$$

equipped with a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{C}\left(-, \mathrm{holim}_{\leftarrow \underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} -\right) \Rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, -))$$

of simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \times [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ .

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. A **homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimit functor** for  $\underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched functor

$$\mathrm{holim}_{\rightarrow \underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$$

equipped with a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{C}\left(\mathrm{holim}_{\rightarrow \underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} -, -\right) \Rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{C}(-, -))$$

of simplicially enriched functors  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ .

**2.7.19** REMARK. By [lemma 2.5.28](#), homotopy limits/colimits are unique up to simplicial homotopy equivalence. Unfortunately, this is not enough to guarantee functoriality in the sense above.

**2.7.20** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. If  $\underline{C}$  has cobar constructions  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  for all simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then there is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit functor for  $\underline{C}$ .
- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. If  $\underline{C}$  has bar constructions  $B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  for all simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then there is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimit functor for  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [remark 2.7.11](#) and [proposition B.3.16](#), there exist a simplicially enriched functor that sends simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  to the cobar construction  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  and a simplicially enriched natural *isomorphism*

$$\underline{C}(-, C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -)) \cong C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, -))$$

which is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence *a fortiori*. ■

**2.7.21** PROPOSITION. *The functor  $\text{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  admits a unique simplicial enrichment making the canonical embedding  $i^\infty : \text{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty$  a simplicially enriched natural transformation.*

*Proof.* By [theorem 1.7.18](#),  $\text{Ex}^\infty$  preserves finite products, so we may apply Lemmas 2.1.4 and 2.1.6 in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part B]. □

**2.7.22** COROLLARY. *There exist a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{R} : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $i : \text{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow \underline{R}$  satisfying the following condition:*

- *For all simplicial sets  $X$ ,  $RX$  is a Kan complex and  $i_X : X \rightarrow RX$  is an anodyne extension.* ■

**2.7.23** THEOREM. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category.*

- (i) **Kan** *has cobar constructions for all simplicially enriched diagrams and weights of shape  $\underline{J}$ ; in particular, for any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit functor for  $\underline{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For any simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , there is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimit functor for **Kan**.*

*Proof.* (i). This is an immediate consequence of lemmas [2.7.8](#) and [2.7.20](#).

(ii). By [remark 2.7.11](#) and [proposition B.3.16](#), there exist a simplicially enriched functor that sends simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  to the cobar construction  $C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  and a simplicially enriched natural *isomorphism*

$$\mathbf{sSet}(B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -), -) \cong C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}(-, -))$$

but  $B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  may fail to be a Kan complex even when  $\underline{F}$  is a diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}$ . To fix this, consider  $\underline{R} : \underline{\mathbf{sSet}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  and  $i : \text{id}_{\underline{\mathbf{sSet}}} \Rightarrow \underline{R}$  as in [corollary 2.7.22](#). Then we have a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{RB}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -) : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}$ , and by [corollary 1.4.16](#),  $i : \text{id}_{\underline{\mathbf{sSet}}} \Rightarrow \underline{R}$  induces a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{\mathbf{sSet}}(\underline{RB}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -), -) \Rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}(B(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -), -)$$

of functors  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}]^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathbf{Kan}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Kan}}$ , so we have a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{\mathbf{sSet}}(\underline{RB}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, -), -) \Rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}(-, -))$$

of the required form. ■

**2.7.24** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- A **homotopy descent object** for a cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopy limit for  $B^\bullet$  (considered as a diagram  $\Delta \rightarrow C$ ).
- A **homotopy codescent object** for a simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopy colimit for  $A_\bullet$  (considered as a diagram  $\Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$ ).

The following lemma describes the homotopy analogue of the product–equaliser formula for limits.

**2.7.25** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a small simplicially enriched diagram.

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. If the homotopy cobar complex  $C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ , i.e. the cosimplicial simplicially enriched functor

$$C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{F})) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\Delta, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}]$$

admits a homotopical representation by a cosimplicial object in  $\underline{C}$ , then we have

$$\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F} \simeq \text{holim}_{\Delta} C^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

provided the homotopy limit on the LHS and the homotopy descent object on the RHS both exist.



- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. If the homotopy bar complex  $\mathbf{B}_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exists in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , i.e. the cosimplicial simplicially enriched functor

$$\mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{F}, -)) : \underline{\mathcal{C}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\underline{\Delta}, \mathbf{sSet}]$$

admits a homotopical representation by a simplicial object in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , then we have

$$\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F} \simeq \text{holim}_{\underline{\Delta}} \mathbf{B}_\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

provided the homotopy colimit on the LHS and the homotopy descent object on the RHS both exist.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

For convenience, we will work in  $\mathbf{H}$  instead of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . By (definition and) [proposition 1.9.7](#), we have the following natural isomorphism;

$$\pi \underline{\mathcal{C}}\left(-, \text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}\right) \cong \pi \mathbf{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F}))$$

but recalling the definition of cobar constructions,

$$\mathbf{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F})) \cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F}))$$

and by [lemma 2.7.8](#) and [corollary 1.9.34](#):

$$\pi(\underline{\text{Tot}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F}))) \cong \pi\left(\varprojlim_{\underline{\Delta}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F}))\right)$$

On the other hand,

$$\pi \underline{\mathcal{C}}\left(-, \text{holim}_{\underline{\Delta}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})\right) \cong \pi\left(\varprojlim_{\underline{\Delta}}^{\text{BK}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{F}))\right)$$

so we have the following natural isomorphism:

$$\pi \underline{\mathcal{C}}\left(-, \text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F}\right) \cong \pi \underline{\mathcal{C}}\left(-, \text{holim}_{\underline{\Delta}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})\right)$$

Thus, applying the (ordinary) Yoneda lemma, we deduce that

$$\text{holim}_{\underline{J}}^{\underline{G}} \underline{F} \cong \text{holim}_{\underline{\Delta}} \mathbf{C}^\bullet(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$$

in  $\pi_0[\underline{\mathcal{C}}]$ , which implies the claim. ■

**2.7.26** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a small simplicially enriched diagram.

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. We say  $\underline{U}$  **preserves homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limits for  $\underline{F}$**  if, for every homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{F}$ , say  $(L, \lambda)$ , the pair  $(UL, \underline{U}_* \lambda)$  is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{UF}$ , where  $\underline{U}_* \lambda$  is the image of the vertex  $\lambda$  under the morphism

$$C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(L, \underline{F})) \rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{D}(UL, \underline{UF}))$$

induced by  $\underline{U} : \underline{C}(-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{U}-, \underline{U}-)$ .

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. We say  $\underline{U}$  **preserves homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimits for  $\underline{U}$**  if, for every homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{F}$ , say  $(L, \lambda)$ , the pair  $(UL, \underline{U}_* \lambda)$  is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{UF}$ , where  $\underline{U}_* \lambda$  is the image of the vertex  $\lambda$  under the morphism

$$C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, L)) \rightarrow C(\underline{G}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{D}(\underline{UF}, UL))$$

induced by  $\underline{U} : \underline{C}(-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{U}-, \underline{U}-)$ .

**2.7.27** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories.

- If  $\underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a Dwyer–Kan right pre-adjoint, then it preserves homotopy limits for all small diagrams and weights.
- If  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan left pre-adjoint, then it preserves homotopy colimits for all small diagrams and weights.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{D} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a small simplicially enriched diagram, let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a weight, and let  $(L, \lambda)$  be a homotopy  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{D}$  in  $\underline{D}$ . We wish to prove that  $(GL, \underline{G}_* \lambda)$  is a homotopy  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{GD}$  in  $\underline{C}$ . For each object  $A$  in  $\underline{C}$ , let  $(FA, \eta_A)$  be a homotopical representation for  $\underline{C}(A, \underline{G}-) : \underline{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , and consider the following diagram in  $\mathbf{H}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \pi \underline{D}(FA, L) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \pi C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{D}(FA, \underline{D})) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \pi \underline{C}(A, GL) & \longrightarrow & \pi C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(A, \underline{GD})) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{D}(FA, -) \Rightarrow \underline{C}(A, \underline{G}-)$$

corresponding to the vertex  $\eta_A$  in  $\underline{C}(A, \underline{G}FA)$ , the top horizontal arrow is induced by the component of the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{D}(-, L) \Rightarrow C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{D}(-, \underline{D}))$$

corresponding to the vertex  $\lambda$  in  $C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{D}(L, \underline{D}))$ , and the bottom horizontal arrow is induced by the component of the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(-, GL) \Rightarrow C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{G}D))$$

corresponding to the vertex  $\underline{G}_*\lambda$  in  $C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(GL, \underline{G}D))$ . To prove the claim, we must show that the  $\underline{G}_*\lambda$  corresponds to a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence; and (using the 2-out-of-3 property) it is enough to verify that the diagram above commutes (in  $\mathbf{H}$ ).

Now, lemma 2.5.36 says that  $\pi[\underline{G}] : \pi[\underline{D}] \rightarrow \pi[\underline{C}]$  admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched left adjoint, say  $\underline{F} : \pi[\underline{C}] \rightarrow \pi[\underline{D}]$ ; and moreover, we may choose  $\underline{F}$  so that it agrees with our earlier choices of  $(FA, \eta_A)$ . By the weak Yoneda lemma (B.2.15) for  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functors, it then suffices to show that the composite

$$\begin{aligned} \pi_0 \underline{C}(GL, GL) &\rightarrow \pi_0 \underline{D}(FGL, L) \\ &\rightarrow \pi_0 C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{D}(FGL, \underline{D})) \rightarrow \pi_0 C(\underline{W}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(GL, \underline{G}D)) \end{aligned}$$

sends (the connected component of) the vertex  $\text{id}_{GL}$  to (the connected component of) the vertex  $\underline{G}_*\lambda$ ; but this is a straightforward exercise in using naturality and the (right) triangle identity.  $\blacksquare$

**2.7.28** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category, let  $X$  be a simplicial set, and let  $C$  be an object  $C$ .

- A **homotopy power** of  $C$  by  $X$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopical representation of the simplicially enriched functor

$$[X, \underline{C}(-, C)] : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$$

i.e. a pair  $(X \pitchfork C, \lambda)$  where  $X \pitchfork C$  is an object in  $C$  and  $\lambda$  is a morphism  $X \rightarrow \underline{C}(X \pitchfork C, C)$  such that the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(X \odot C, -) \Rightarrow [X, \underline{C}(-, C)]$$

induced by the corresponding vertex of  $[X, \underline{C}(X \pitchfork C, C)]$  is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence.

- A **homotopy copower** of  $C$  by  $X$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopical representation of the simplicially enriched functor

$$[X, \underline{C}(C, -)] : \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$$

i.e. a pair  $(X \odot C, \lambda)$  where  $X \odot C$  is an object in  $C$  and  $\lambda$  is a morphism  $X \rightarrow \underline{C}(C, X \odot C)$  such that the simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(X \odot C, -) \Rightarrow [X, \underline{C}(C, -)]$$

induced by the corresponding vertex of  $[X, \underline{C}(C, X \odot C)]$  is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence.

**2.7.29** REMARK. In other words, a homotopy power (resp. copower) of  $C$  by  $X$  in  $\underline{C}$  is an  $X$ -weighted limit (resp. colimit) of  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$ , where we identify  $X$  and  $C$  with the obvious functors with domain  $\mathbf{1}$ .

**2.7.30** LEMMA. *Let  $J$  be a small category. Then there is a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism*

$$\lim_{\leftarrow J}^{\mathbf{BK}} \Delta(-) \cong [N(J), -]$$

*of simplicially enriched functors  $\mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , where  $\Delta : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow [J, \mathbf{sSet}]$  sends simplicial sets  $X$  to constant diagrams  $\Delta X : J \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*

*Proof.* Lemma 1.9.5 says that there is a natural isomorphism of the underlying ordinary functors, and it is straightforward to verify that it is a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism. ■

**2.7.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category, let  $J$  be a small category, and let  $C$  be an object in  $C$ .*

- *Any homotopy limit in  $\underline{C}$  for the constant diagram  $\Delta C : J \rightarrow C$  is a homotopy power of  $C$  by  $N(J)$ .*
- *Any homotopy colimit in  $\underline{C}$  for the constant diagram  $\Delta C : J \rightarrow C$  is a homotopy copower of  $C$  by  $N(J)$ .*

*Proof.* This is an immediate consequence of the definitions and lemma 2.7.30. ■

**2.7.32** THEOREM. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- If  $\underline{C}$  has homotopy limits for all small constant diagrams, then the enriched simplicial homotopy category  $\pi[\underline{C}]$  is a cotensored  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched category.
- If  $\underline{C}$  has homotopy colimits for all small constant diagrams, then the enriched simplicial homotopy category  $\pi[\underline{C}]$  is a tensored  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched category.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $C$  be an object in  $\underline{C}$  and let  $X$  be a simplicial set. We wish to show that the  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor

$$[\pi X, \pi \underline{C}(-, C)] : \pi[\underline{C}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$$

is representable in  $\pi[\underline{C}]$ . By (lemma 2.5.27 and) proposition 2.7.31, the homotopy limit of the constant diagram  $\Delta C : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \underline{C}$  yields a representation of the  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor

$$\pi\left(\underline{\text{sSet}}\left(\text{Sd}_Q(X), \underline{C}(-, C)\right)\right) : \pi[\underline{C}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}$$

but by lemma 1.11.41, there is a weak homotopy equivalence  $\lambda_X : \text{Sd}_Q(X) \rightarrow X$ , and by proposition 1.4.24 and corollary 1.5.27, there is a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$[\pi X, \pi \underline{C}(-, C)] \cong \pi(\underline{\text{sSet}}(X, \underline{C}(-, C)))$$

so we may conclude that the homotopy power of  $C$  by  $\text{Sd}_Q(X)$  in  $\underline{C}$  defines a cotensor product of  $X$  and  $C$  in  $\pi[\underline{C}]$ . ■

## 2.8 Homotopy ends and coends

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.6, 1.9, 1.7, 1.11, 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7.

**2.8.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category, and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- A **Hochschild bar complex** for  $\underline{M}$  is a simplicial object  $\text{HB}_\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(\text{HB}_\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M}), C) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}](B_n(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{M}, C))$$

that are natural in  $n$  and simplicially natural in  $C$ .

- A **Hochschild cobar complex** for  $\underline{M}$  is a cosimplicial object  $\text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \mathbf{sSet}](B_n(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \underline{M}))$$

that are natural in  $n$  and simplicially natural in  $C$ .

**2.8.2** REMARK. This is a special case of Definition 4.1 in [Meyer, 1984].

**2.8.3** REMARK. By remark 2.7.5, the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9), and corollary B.3.22, we have the following explicit formulae when  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has simplicially enriched coproducts and tensors (resp. simplicially enriched products and cotensors):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{HB}_n(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M}) &\cong \coprod_{(j_0, \dots, j_n)} (\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_{n-1}, j_n) \times \cdots \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_0, j_1)) \odot \underline{M}(j_n, j_0) \\ \text{HC}^n(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M}) &\cong \prod_{(j_0, \dots, j_n)} (\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_n, j_{n-1}) \times \cdots \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j_1, j_0)) \pitchfork \underline{M}(j_n, j_0) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, Hochschild bar and cobar complexes represent certain simplicial functors:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\text{HB}_\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M}), -) &\cong \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{M}, -)) \\ \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})) &\cong \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{M})) \end{aligned}$$

**2.8.4** REMARK. In particular, if  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has tensors (resp. cotensors), then the bar (resp. cobar) complexes of the previous section are special cases of Hochschild bar (resp. cobar) complexes,

$$\begin{aligned} B_{\bullet}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) &\cong \text{HB}_{\bullet}(\underline{J}, \underline{G} \square \underline{F}) \\ C^{\bullet}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) &\cong \text{HC}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}, \underline{G} \pitchfork \underline{F}) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\underline{G} \square \underline{F}$  (resp.  $\underline{G} \pitchfork \underline{F}$ ) is the simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  defined below:

$$\begin{aligned} (\underline{G} \square \underline{F})(j', j) &= \underline{G}(j') \odot \underline{F}(j) \\ (\underline{G} \pitchfork \underline{F})(j', j) &= \underline{G}(j') \pitchfork \underline{F}(j) \end{aligned}$$

**2.8.5** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. Then there is an isomorphism

$$C^n(\underline{J}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{M}) \cong \text{HC}^n(\underline{J}, C^n(\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{M}))$$

and it is natural in  $n$  and simplicially natural in  $\underline{M}$ .

*Proof.* This is straightforward application of remarks 2.7.5 and 2.8.3. ■

The following is a generalisation of lemma 2.7.8.

**2.8.6** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. If each  $\underline{M}(j', j)$  is a Kan complex, then the cobar complex  $\text{HC}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}, \underline{M})$  is a Reedy-fibrant cosimplicial simplicial set. In particular, it is a projective-fibrant cosimplicial simplicial set.

*Proof.* The argument used in the proof of lemma 2.7.8 also works here. ■

**2.8.7** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category. The Hochschild cobar complex functor  $\text{HC}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}, -) : [\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J}, \mathbf{Kan}] \rightarrow [\Delta, \mathbf{Kan}]$  sends component-wise weak homotopy equivalences to degreewise weak homotopy equivalences.

*Proof.* Recalling remark 2.8.3, this is a straightforward consequence of proposition 1.5.17 and corollary 5.3.19. ■

**2.8.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category, and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- A **Hochschild bar construction** for  $\underline{M}$  is an object  $\text{HB}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(\text{HB}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M}), C) \cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{M}, C))$$

that are simplicially natural in  $C$ .

- A **Hochschild cobar construction** for  $\underline{M}$  is an object  $\text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})) \cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \underline{M}))$$

that are simplicially natural in  $C$ .

**2.8.9** REMARK. By [remark 2.3.11](#), we also have the following simplicially enriched natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} [\underline{\mathcal{J}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}](\text{B}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{M}, C)) &\cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{M}, C)) \\ [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \mathbf{sSet}](\text{B}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \underline{M})) &\cong \underline{\text{Tot}} \text{HC}^\bullet(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \underline{M})) \end{aligned}$$

Here, we have used the fact that enriched weighted colimits in enriched functor categories can be computed componentwise ([proposition B.3.23](#)). Thus, bar constructions (resp. cobar constructions) are special simplicially enriched weighted colimits (resp. limits), and therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\text{HB}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M}), C) &\cong \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{M}, C)) \\ \underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})) &\cong \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(C, \underline{M})) \end{aligned}$$

**2.8.10** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. There is a canonical comparison morphism

$$\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{M}(j, j) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{M})$$

and it is simplicially natural in  $\underline{M}$ .

*Proof.* By [remark 2.8.9](#), it suffices to construct a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\text{B}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}) \Rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$ , but this is just a special case of [proposition 2.7.13](#). ■



**2.8.II** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category. The Hochschild cobar construction functor  $\mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, -) : [\underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{J}, \mathbf{Kan}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  sends componentwise weak homotopy equivalences to weak homotopy equivalences.

*Proof.* Recalling theorem 1.6.27 and Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6), this is a consequence of lemmas 2.8.6 and 2.8.7.  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.I2** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. Then there is an weak homotopy equivalence

$$\mathrm{C}(\underline{J}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{M}) \rightarrow \mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{M})$$

and it is simplicially natural in  $\underline{M}$ .

*Proof.* By lemmas 1.6.26 and 2.8.5,

$$\mathrm{C}(\underline{J}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{M}) \cong \mathrm{Tot} \mathrm{Tot} \mathrm{HC}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}, \mathrm{C}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{M}))$$

and since totalisation preserves enriched weighted limits,

$$\mathrm{Tot} \mathrm{Tot} \mathrm{HC}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}, \mathrm{C}^{\bullet}(\underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{M})) \cong \mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, \mathrm{C}(\underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{M}))$$

but by lemma 2.7.12, we have a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\mathrm{C}(\underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{M}) \Rightarrow \underline{M}$$

so the claim follows, by lemma 2.8.II.  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.I3** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $j$  be an object in  $\underline{J}$ , let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{F} \boxminus \underline{h}_j : \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be the simplicially enriched functor defined by the following formula:

$$(\underline{F} \boxminus \underline{h}_j)(j'', j') = [\underline{J}(j', j), \underline{F}j'']$$

Then there is a weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{F}j \rightarrow \mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{F} \boxminus \underline{h}_j)$$

and it is simplicially natural in  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ .

*Proof.* By lemma 2.8.10, there is a canonical comparison morphism

$$\int_{j': \underline{J}} [\underline{J}(j', j), \underline{F}j'] \rightarrow \mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{F} \boxtimes \underline{h}_j)$$

that is simplicially natural in  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ , and by the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9) and corollary B.3.22,

$$\int_{j': \underline{J}} [\underline{J}(j', j), \underline{F}j'] \cong \underline{F}j$$

simplicially naturally in  $j$  and  $\underline{F}$ , so it suffices to show that the canonical comparison morphism is a weak homotopy equivalence; this can be done using the same argument as (in the proof of) lemma 2.7.12. ■

As with (co)bar constructions, the notion of Hochschild (co)bar construction is not stable under Dwyer–Kan equivalence. Instead, we define the following homotopy-invariant notion:

**2.8.14** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category, and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- A **homotopy end** for  $\underline{M}$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopical representation of the simplicially enriched functor

$$\mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{M})) : \underline{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$$

i.e. a pair  $\left( \mathrm{hof}_{j: \underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j), \lambda \right)$  where  $\mathrm{hof}_{j: \underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j)$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a vertex of  $\mathrm{HC}\left(\underline{J}, \underline{C}\left(\mathrm{hof}_{j: \underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j), \underline{M}\right)\right)$  such that the induced simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}\left(-, \mathrm{hof}_{j: \underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j)\right) \Rightarrow \mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{M}))$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence.

- A **homotopy coend** for  $\underline{M}$  in  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopical representation of the simplicially enriched functor

$$\mathrm{HC}(\underline{J}^{\mathrm{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{M}, -)) : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}$$

i.e. a pair  $(\operatorname{hof}^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j), \lambda)$  where  $\operatorname{hof}^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j)$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a vertex of  $\operatorname{HC}(\underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{M}, \operatorname{hof}^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j)))$  such that the induced simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(\operatorname{hof}^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{M}(j, j), -) \Rightarrow \operatorname{HC}(\underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}}, \underline{C}(\underline{M}, -))$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence.

**2.8.15** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category, and let  $\underline{M} : \underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.*

- *Any homotopy  $\underline{J}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{M}$  in  $\underline{C}$  is also a homotopy end for  $\underline{M}$ .*
- *Any homotopy  $\underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{M}$  in  $\underline{C}$  is also a homotopy coend for  $\underline{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\operatorname{holim}_{\leftarrow \underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}} \times \underline{J}}^{\underline{J}} \underline{M}$  be (the object part of) a homotopy  $\underline{J}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{M}$  in  $\underline{C}$ . By definition, there is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{C}\left(-, \operatorname{holim}_{\leftarrow \underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}} \times \underline{J}}^{\underline{J}} \underline{M}\right) \Rightarrow \operatorname{C}(\underline{J}, \underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{M}))$$

and by lemma 2.8.12, there is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\operatorname{C}(\underline{J}, \underline{J}^{\operatorname{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{M})) \Rightarrow \operatorname{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{M}))$$

so the claim follows. ■

**2.8.16** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *If  $\underline{C}$  has homotopy ends and functorial homotopy powers, then  $\underline{C}$  has homotopy weighted limits for all small simplicially enriched diagrams and weights.*
- *If  $\underline{C}$  has homotopy coends and functorial homotopy copowers, then  $\underline{C}$  has homotopy weighted colimits for all small simplicially enriched diagrams and weights.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram, and let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. By hypothesis, there is a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} \boxtimes \underline{F} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  with a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\underline{C}(-, \underline{G} \boxtimes \underline{F}) \Rightarrow [\underline{G}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{F})]$$

of simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{C}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , and by [remark 2.8.4](#) and [lemma 2.8.11](#), this induces a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{G} \boxtimes \underline{F})) \Rightarrow \text{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{J}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{F}))$$

hence  $\text{ho} \int_{j:\underline{J}} \underline{G}j \boxtimes \underline{F}j$  is a homotopy  $\underline{G}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{F}$  in  $\underline{C}$ . ■

An important application of Hochschild cobar complexes (or homotopy ends) is the computation of homotopically correct hom-spaces for functor categories.

**2.8.17** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- A **left ample diagram**  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched diagram with the following property: for all simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , the hom-space  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F})$  is a Kan complex and the canonical comparison morphism<sup>[1]</sup>

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}))$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

We write  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$  for the simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  spanned by the left ample diagrams.

- A **right ample diagram**  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched diagram with the following property: for all simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , the hom-space  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F})$  is a Kan complex and the canonical comparison morphism

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}))$$

[1] Recall [lemma 2.8.10](#) and [corollary B.3.22](#).

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

We write  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathbf{R}}$  for the simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  spanned by the right ample diagrams.

**2.8.18** REMARK. It is worth thinking about  $\mathrm{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}))$  concretely. For simplicity, let us replace  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  with a small ordinary category  $\mathcal{J}$ . Then a vertex in  $\mathrm{HC}(\mathcal{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}))$  consists of the following data:

- For each object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , a morphism  $\alpha_j : Gj \rightarrow Fj$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- For each morphism  $h : j_1 \rightarrow j_0$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , an edge  $\alpha_{j_0} \circ Gh \Rightarrow Fh \circ \alpha_{j_1}$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(Gj_1, Fj_0)$ .
- For each composable pair  $h_2 : j_2 \rightarrow j_1$  and  $h_1 : j_1 \rightarrow j_0$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , a 2-simplex in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}(Gj_2, Fj_0)$  satisfying a certain compatibility condition.
- etc.

Thus it is reasonable to believe that  $\mathrm{HC}(\mathcal{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}))$  is the space of *homotopy-coherent* natural transformations  $G \Rightarrow F$ .

The key feature of ample diagrams is the following:

**2.8.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

(i) *If  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a left ample diagram, then the hom-space functor*

$$[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](\underline{G}, -) : [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$$

*sends componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalences to weak homotopy equivalences.*

(ii) *For any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , the hom-space functor*

$$[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](-, \underline{F}) : [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

*sends componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalences between left ample diagrams to weak homotopy equivalences (of Kan complexes).*

*Dually:*

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

(i') If  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a right ample diagram, then the hom-space functor

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](-, \underline{F}) : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$$

sends componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalences to weak homotopy equivalences.

(ii') For any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , the hom-space functor

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, -) : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

sends componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalences between right ample diagrams to weak homotopy equivalences (of Kan complexes).

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\varphi : \underline{F}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{F}_1$  be a morphism in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$ . By naturality, the following diagram in  $\mathbf{Kan}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}_0) & \longrightarrow & \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}_0)) \\ \downarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \varphi) & & \downarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \varphi)) \\ [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}_1) & \longrightarrow & \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}_1)) \end{array}$$

and since  $\underline{G}$  is left ample, the horizontal arrows are weak homotopy equivalences, so the claim is a consequence of [lemma 2.8.11](#) and the 2-out-of-3 property.

(ii). A similar argument works. ■

**2.8.20 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *Let  $\underline{G}_0, \underline{G}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be left ample diagrams. Then a morphism  $\underline{G}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{G}_1$  in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if its components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ .*
- *Let  $\underline{F}_0, \underline{F}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be right ample diagrams. Then a morphism  $\underline{F}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{F}_1$  in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if its components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since the evaluation functors  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  are simplicially enriched, a morphism in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence only if its components

are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ . On the other hand, suppose  $\psi : \underline{G}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{G}_1$  is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence. Then a straightforward calculation using [proposition 2.8.19](#) shows that  $\psi$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$ , so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.21** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories, and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched fully faithful functor.*

- *Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If  $\underline{UG} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a left ample diagram, then so is  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .*
- *Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If  $\underline{UF} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a right ample diagram, then so is  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Straightforward.  $\blacklozenge$

**2.8.22** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small simplicially enriched categories and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{I}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor and let  $\underline{G} : \underline{I} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the bar construction  $\text{B}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}, \underline{G}(-)j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for every object  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , then the evident simplicially enriched diagram  $\text{B}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}, \underline{G}) : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is left ample and has the appropriate universal property.*
- *Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be a simplicially enriched functor and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the cobar construction  $\text{C}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}, \underline{F}(-)j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for every object  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , then the evident simplicially enriched diagram  $\text{C}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}, \underline{F}) : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is right ample and has the appropriate universal property.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be any simplicially enriched diagram. By definition, for each object  $i$  in  $\underline{I}$ , the canonical comparison morphism

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}(i), \underline{F}) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}(i), \underline{F}))$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes, so by [lemma 2.7.14](#), the induced morphism

$$\text{C}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}^{\text{op}}, [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F})) \rightarrow \text{C}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}^{\text{op}}, \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F})))$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

is also a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes. Recalling [remark 2.7.11](#) and [proposition B.3.23](#), there are simplicially enriched natural isomorphisms making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(\underline{W}, \underline{I}^{\text{op}}, [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F})) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & C(\underline{W}, \underline{I}^{\text{op}}, \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}))) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\text{B}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}, \underline{G}), \underline{F}) & \longrightarrow & \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\text{B}(\underline{W}, \underline{I}, \underline{G}), \underline{F})) \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is the canonical comparison morphism, so the claim follows. ■

**2.8.23** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{C}$  be a locally small simplicially enriched category.

- The **left Bousfield–Kan extension** of a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  along  $\underline{U} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  is a simplicially enriched functor  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{C}((\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G})j, C) \cong C(\underline{U}^* \underline{h}_j, \underline{I}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, C))$$

that are simplicially enriched in  $j$  and  $C$ .

- The **right Bousfield–Kan extension** of a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  along  $\underline{U} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  is a simplicially enriched functor  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  with isomorphisms

$$\underline{C}(C, (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})j) \cong C(\underline{U}^* \underline{h}^j, \underline{I}, \underline{C}(C, \underline{F}))$$

that are simplicially enriched in  $j$  and  $C$ .

**2.8.24** **REMARK.** We have the following simplicially enriched natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{C}(\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G}, C) &\cong \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{C}(\underline{G}, C) \\ \underline{C}(C, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}) &\cong \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{C}(C, \underline{F}) \end{aligned}$$



**2.8.25** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists, then for any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , we have an isomorphism

$$\text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{GU}, \underline{F})) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})$$

that is simplicially natural in  $\underline{G}$ .

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists, then for any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , we have an isomorphism

$$\text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}, \underline{FU})) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G}, \underline{F})$$

that is simplicially natural in  $\underline{F}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{H} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  be the simplicially enriched functor defined by the formula below:

$$\underline{H}j = \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}-)$$

By [corollary B.3.22](#),

$$[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}) \cong \int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})$$

and by definition,

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})j) \cong \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{H}j, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \underline{F}))$$

but by [remark 2.8.4](#),

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{H}j, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \underline{F})) \cong \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{H}j \boxtimes \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \underline{F}))$$

and simplicially enriched ends preserve simplicially enriched weighted limits, so [remark 2.8.9](#) implies:

$$\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \text{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{H}j \boxtimes \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \underline{F})) \cong \text{HC}\left(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{H}j \boxtimes \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \underline{F})\right)$$

But for each pair  $(i', i)$  of objects in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ ,

$$\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}i'), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j, \underline{F}i)] \cong \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{GU}i', \underline{F}i)$$

by the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)), so the claim follows. ■

**2.8.26** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- If the right Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exist for every right ample diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then the induced  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor

$$\pi[\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}}] : \pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}} \rightarrow \pi[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}}$$

admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched left adjoint, namely:

$$\pi[\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \circ \underline{U}^*] : \pi[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}} \rightarrow \pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}}$$

- If the left Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\underline{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exist for every left ample diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then the induced  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor

$$\pi[\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}}] : \pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}} \rightarrow \pi[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$$

admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched right adjoint, namely:

$$\pi[\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\underline{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \circ \underline{U}^*] : \pi[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}} \rightarrow \pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$$

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be right ample diagrams. By propositions 2.7.13 and 2.8.19, there is a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$\pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}](\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{C}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU}, \underline{F}) \cong \pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}](\underline{GU}, \underline{F})$$

and since  $\underline{F}$  is right ample,

$$\pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}](\underline{GU}, \underline{F}) \cong \pi\text{HC}(\underline{I}, \underline{C}(\underline{GU}, \underline{F}))$$

so by lemma 2.8.25,

$$\pi[\underline{I}, \underline{C}](\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{C}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU}, \underline{F}) \cong \pi[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})$$

as required. ■

**2.8.27** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- A **left ample replacement** for a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a pair  $(\tilde{G}, p)$  where  $\tilde{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a left ample diagram and  $p : \tilde{G} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$  is a simplicially enriched natural transformation whose components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ .
- A **right ample replacement** for a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a pair  $(\hat{F}, i)$  where  $\hat{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a right ample diagram and  $i : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \hat{F}$  is a simplicially enriched natural transformation whose components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ .

**2.8.28** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- If every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a left ample replacement, then the inclusion  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a Dwyer–Kan left pre-adjoint functor.
- If every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a right ample replacement, then the inclusion  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a Dwyer–Kan right pre-adjoint functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram and let  $(\tilde{F}, p)$  be a left ample replacement for  $\underline{F}$ . We must show that the simplicially enriched functor

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](-, \underline{F}) : ([\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$$

is homotopically representable in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$ ; but the induced simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](-, p) : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](-, \tilde{F}) \Rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](-, \underline{F})$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence of simplicially enriched functors  $([\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$ , so we are done. ■

**2.8.29** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F}_0, \underline{F}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be simplicially enriched diagrams that admit left ample replacements. Then a morphism  $\varphi : \underline{F}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{F}_1$  in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if, for every left ample diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , the induced morphism

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \varphi) : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}_0) \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \underline{F}_1)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

- Let  $\underline{G}_0, \underline{G}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be simplicially enriched diagrams that admit right ample replacements. Then a morphism  $\psi : \underline{G}_0 \Rightarrow \underline{G}_1$  in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if, for every right ample diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , the induced morphism

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\psi, \underline{F}) : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}_0, \underline{F}) \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}_1, \underline{F})$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $(\tilde{\underline{F}}_0, p_0)$  and  $(\tilde{\underline{F}}_1, p_1)$  be left ample replacements for  $\underline{F}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1$ , respectively. By [proposition 2.8.19](#), the map

$$\pi_0[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\tilde{\underline{F}}_0, p_1) : \pi_0[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\tilde{\underline{F}}_0, \tilde{\underline{F}}_1) \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\tilde{\underline{F}}_0, \underline{F}_1)$$

is a bijection, so (recalling [proposition 2.5.15](#)) there must exist a morphism  $\tilde{\varphi} : \tilde{\underline{F}}_0 \Rightarrow \tilde{\underline{F}}_1$  in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  making the following diagram commute in  $\pi_0[[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]]$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{\underline{F}}_0 & \xrightarrow{p_0} & \underline{F}_0 \\ \tilde{\varphi} \downarrow & & \downarrow \varphi \\ \tilde{\underline{F}}_1 & \xrightarrow{p_1} & \underline{F}_1 \end{array}$$

Thus, by the 2-out-of-3 property (applied in  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$ ),  $\varphi$  is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\tilde{\varphi}$  is. But the hypothesis implies that the induced map

$$\pi_0[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \tilde{\varphi}) : \pi_0[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \tilde{\underline{F}}_0) \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \tilde{\underline{F}}_1)$$

is a bijection for every left ample diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , so  $\tilde{\varphi}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  and is therefore a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence *a fortiori*. ■

**2.8.30** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be simplicially enriched categories. The **homotopy category** of  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  is the category  $\mathrm{Ho} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  obtained from  $\pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]]$  by freely inverting (the simplicial homotopy classes of) all simplicially enriched weak simplicial homotopy equivalences.

**2.8.31** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Assuming every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a left ample replacement, the  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor  $\pi[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathrm{L}}] \hookrightarrow \pi[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]]$  admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched right adjoint, and a morphism in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if its coreflection in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathrm{L}}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- Assuming every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a right ample replacement, the  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functor  $\pi[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathrm{R}}] \hookrightarrow \pi[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]]$  admits a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched left adjoint, and a morphism in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if its reflection in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathrm{L}}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* Combine lemmas 2.5.36, 2.8.28, and 2.8.29. ■

**2.8.32** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Assuming every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a left ample replacement, the composite  $\pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathrm{L}}] \hookrightarrow \pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.
- Assuming every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a right ample replacement, the composite  $\pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\mathrm{R}}] \hookrightarrow \pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

*Proof.* In view of proposition 2.8.31, this is a consequence of theorem 3.5.27. ■

**2.8.33** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F}_0, \underline{F}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be left ample diagrams. Assuming every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a left ample replacement, there exists a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences (in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$ ) connecting  $\underline{F}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1$  if and only if there exists a simplicial homotopy equivalence between  $\underline{F}_0$  and  $\underline{F}_1$  (in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_L$ ).
- Let  $\underline{G}_0, \underline{G}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be right ample diagrams. Assuming every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a right ample replacement, there exists a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences (in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$ ) connecting  $\underline{G}_0$  and  $\underline{G}_1$  if and only if there exists a simplicial homotopy equivalence between  $\underline{G}_0$  and  $\underline{G}_1$  (in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_R$ ).

*Proof.* Combine [corollary 2.8.20](#) and [proposition 2.8.31](#). ■

**2.8.34** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists, then it is a right ample diagram.
- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists, then it is a left ample diagram.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\hat{\underline{F}} = \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}$ , let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be any simplicially enriched diagram, and let  $\underline{H} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\underline{I}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}]$  be the simplicially enriched functor defined by the formula below:

$$\underline{H}j = \underline{J}(j, \underline{U}-)$$

Recalling (the proof of) [lemma 2.8.10](#), we must show that the morphism

$$[\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \hat{\underline{F}})) \rightarrow [\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}](\text{B}(\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}), \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \hat{\underline{F}}))$$

induced by  $\text{B}(\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}) \Rightarrow \underline{J}$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes. By [corollary B.3.22](#), it is isomorphic to the morphism

$$\int_{(j', j) : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{J}} [\underline{J}(j', j), \underline{C}(\underline{G}j', (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})j)]$$

$$\rightarrow \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \left[ \mathbf{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})j) \right]$$

and by definition, this is isomorphic to

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \mathbf{C}(\underline{H}j, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F})]) \\ & \rightarrow \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \mathbf{C}(\underline{H}j, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, [\mathbf{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F})]) \end{aligned}$$

which by [remark 2.8.4](#) is isomorphic to

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \mathbf{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{H}j \boxtimes [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F})]) \\ & \rightarrow \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \mathbf{HC}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{H}j \boxtimes [\mathbf{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F})]) \end{aligned}$$

and simplicially enriched ends preserve simplicially enriched weighted colimits, so [remark 2.8.9](#) implies that the morphism in question is isomorphic to

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{HC}\left(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{H}j \boxtimes [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F})]\right) \\ & \rightarrow \mathbf{HC}\left(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{H}j \boxtimes [\mathbf{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F})]\right) \end{aligned}$$

so by [2.8.11](#) it suffices to prove that the morphism

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}i'), [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F}i)]] \\ & \rightarrow \int_{(j',j):\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}i'), [\mathbf{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F}i)]] \end{aligned}$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes for every pair  $(i', i)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{I}$ . By [theorem B.3.25](#), this morphism is isomorphic to

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_{j':\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}} \int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}i'), [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F}i)]] \\ & \rightarrow \int_{j':\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}} \int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}i'), [\mathbf{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_j), \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F}i)]] \end{aligned}$$

and by the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9), this is isomorphic to

$$\int_{j': \underline{J}^{\text{op}}} [\underline{J}(j', \underline{U}i'), \underline{C}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F}i)] \rightarrow \int_{j': \underline{J}^{\text{op}}} \left[ \underline{B}(\underline{h}^{j'}, \underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{h}_{\underline{U}i'}), \underline{C}(\underline{G}j', \underline{F}i) \right]$$

but this can in turn be identified with the canonical comparison morphism

$$\underline{C}(\underline{G}\underline{U}i', \underline{F}i) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{F}i) \boxtimes \underline{h}_{\underline{U}i'})$$

of lemma 2.8.13, which is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes, as required.  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.35** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- A **left ample replacement functor** for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{Q} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  and a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $p : \underline{Q} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]}$  such that, for each simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ ,  $\underline{Q}(\underline{G})$  is a left ample diagram and  $p_{\underline{G}} : \underline{Q}(\underline{G}) \Rightarrow \underline{G}$  is a simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- A **right ample replacement functor** for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{R} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  and a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $i : \text{id}_{[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]} \Rightarrow \underline{R}$  such that, for each simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ ,  $\underline{R}(\underline{F})$  is a right ample diagram and  $i_{\underline{F}} : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{R}(\underline{F})$  is a simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.

**2.8.36** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the cobar construction  $\underline{C}(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all objects  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , then  $\underline{C}(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is the diagram part of a right ample replacement for  $\underline{F}$ .
- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the bar construction  $\underline{B}(\underline{h}_j, \underline{J}, \underline{G})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all objects  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , then  $\underline{B}(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{G})$  is the diagram part of a left ample replacement for  $\underline{G}$ .



*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\hat{F} = \text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{J}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} = C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  and let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be any simplicially enriched diagram. By [proposition 2.7.13](#), we have a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \hat{F}$  whose components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ . It remains to be shown that  $\hat{F}$  is a right ample diagram, but this is a special case of [lemma 2.8.34](#). ■

**2.8.37** COROLLARY. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *If the cobar construction  $C(\underline{h}^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and all objects  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , then  $C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, -)$  is the functor part of a right ample replacement functor for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .*
- *If the bar construction  $B(\underline{h}_j, \underline{J}, \underline{G})$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and all objects  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , then  $B(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, -)$  is the functor part of a right ample replacement functor for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .* ■

**2.8.38** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories, and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- A **left  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagram**  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a left ample diagram such that  $\underline{UG} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is also left ample.

We write  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}, \underline{U}}$  for the full subcategory of  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$  spanned by the left  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagrams.

- A **right  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagram**  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a right ample diagram such that  $\underline{UF} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is also right ample.

We write  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}, \underline{U}}$  for the full subcategory of  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}}$  spanned by the right  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagrams.

**2.8.39** REMARK. The definition ensures that we have the following pullback diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}, \underline{U}} & \dashrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\text{L}} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}} & \xrightarrow{[\underline{J}, \underline{U}]} & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\text{L}}
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}, \underline{U}} & \dashrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\text{R}} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}} & \xrightarrow{[\underline{J}, \underline{U}]} & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\text{R}}
 \end{array}$$

**2.8.40** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories, and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- A **left  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement** for a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a pair  $(\tilde{\underline{G}}, p)$  where  $\tilde{\underline{G}} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a left  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagram and  $p : \tilde{\underline{G}} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$  is a simplicially enriched natural transformation whose components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ .
- A **right  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement** for a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a pair  $(\hat{\underline{F}}, i)$  where  $\hat{\underline{F}} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a right  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagram and  $i : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \hat{\underline{F}}$  is a simplicially enriched natural transformation whose components are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{C}$ .

**2.8.41** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories, and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- Every left ample diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a left  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement if and only if inclusion  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{L, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_L$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.
- Every right ample diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a right  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement if and only if the inclusion  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{R, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_R$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since the inclusion  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{L, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_L$  is (homotopically) fully faithful by construction, it suffices to verify that it is homotopically essentially surjective on objects if and only if every left ample diagram admits a left  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement; but this is an immediate consequence of [corollary 2.8.20](#).  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.42** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be Kan-enriched categories, and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the cobar constructions  $C(\underline{h}_j^j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exist in  $\underline{C}$  for all objects  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$  and  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  preserves these cobar constructions, then  $C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is the diagram part of a right  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement for  $\underline{F}$ .
- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the bar constructions  $B(\underline{h}_j, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  exist in  $\underline{C}$  for all objects  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$  and  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  preserves these bar constructions, then  $B(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F}) : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is the diagram part of a left  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement for  $\underline{F}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 2.8.36](#),  $C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is a right ample diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ ; but  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  preserves such cobar constructions by hypothesis, so  $\underline{U}C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is a right ample diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ , and therefore  $C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is a right  $\underline{U}$ -ample diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ . [Corollary 2.8.20](#) implies that the canonical simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow C(\underline{J}, \underline{J}, \underline{F})$  is itself a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}}$ , so we are done. ■

**2.8.43** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists, then for any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a weak homotopy equivalence*

$$\text{HC}(\underline{I}, \underline{C}(\underline{GU}, \underline{F})) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}))$$

*that is simplicially natural in  $\underline{G}$ .*

- *Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists, then for any simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a weak homotopy equivalence*

$$\text{HC}(\underline{I}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \underline{FU})) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G}, \underline{F}))$$

*that is simplicially natural in  $\underline{F}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [lemma 2.8.25](#), we have a simplicially enriched natural isomorphism

$$\text{HC}(\underline{I}, \underline{C}(\underline{GU}, \underline{F})) \cong [\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})$$

and by [lemma 2.8.34](#), the canonical comparison morphism

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}](\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}) \rightarrow \text{HC}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}(\underline{G}, \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}))$$

is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence, so we are done. ■

**2.8.44** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. Then there is a simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\varepsilon_{\underline{F}} : (\mathrm{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{F}) \underline{U} \Rightarrow \mathrm{C}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F})$$

that is also simplicially natural in  $\underline{F}$ , and it is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence if  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  is homotopically fully faithful.

*Proof.* Let  $\underline{H} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  be the simplicially enriched functor defined by the formula below:

$$\underline{H}j = \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, \underline{U}-)$$

Then by definition,  $\mathrm{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{F} \cong \mathrm{C}(\underline{H}, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F})$ ; but  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  defines a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}(-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{H}\underline{U}$  whose components are weak homotopy equivalences if (and only if)  $\underline{U}$  is homotopically fully faithful, so the claim is a consequence of lemma 2.7.9.  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.45** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the right Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\mathrm{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\mathrm{Ran}_{\mathrm{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exist, then there is a simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\varepsilon_{\underline{F}} : (\mathrm{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{F}) \underline{U} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ran}_{\mathrm{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{F}$$

that is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence if  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  is homotopically fully faithful.

Moreover, assuming the relevant right Bousfield–Kan extensions exist,  $\varepsilon_{\underline{F}}$  is also simplicially natural in  $\underline{F}$ .

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the left Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\mathrm{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\mathrm{Lan}_{\mathrm{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exist, then there is a simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\eta_{\underline{G}} : \mathrm{Lan}_{\mathrm{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{G} \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} \underline{G}) \underline{U}$$

that is a simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence if  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  is homotopically fully faithful.

Moreover, assuming the relevant left Bousfield–Kan extensions exist,  $\eta_{\underline{G}}$  is also simplicially natural in  $\underline{G}$ .

*Proof.* Recalling [remark 2.8.24](#), we can apply the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)) to reduce the claim to [lemma 2.8.44](#). ■

**2.8.46** COROLLARY. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a homotopically fully faithful simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *If the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every right ample diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , then the induced simplicially enriched functor*

$$\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} : [\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}}$$

*is homotopically fully faithful.*

- *If the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every left ample diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , then the induced simplicially enriched functor*

$$\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} : [\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{L}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{L}}$$

*is homotopically fully faithful.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 2.7.13](#), we have a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$\text{id} \cong \pi \left[ \text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \right]$$

of  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched functors  $\pi[\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}} \rightarrow \pi[\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}}$ , and by [proposition 2.8.45](#),

$$\pi \left[ \text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \circ \underline{U}^* \circ \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \right] \cong \pi \left[ \text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \right]$$

but by [proposition 2.8.26](#),  $\pi[\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}}] : \pi[\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}} \rightarrow \pi[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}}$  is a  $\mathbf{H}$ -enriched right adjoint, so the claim follows, by [proposition A.1.4](#). ■

**2.8.47** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. Then there is a simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\eta_{\underline{F}} : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}\underline{U}$$

that is also simplicially natural in  $\underline{F}$  and makes the following diagram commute for every object  $i$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{F}\underline{U}i & \xrightarrow{(\eta_{\underline{F}})_{Ui}} & (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}\underline{U})Ui \\ & \searrow \simeq & \downarrow (\varepsilon_{\underline{F}\underline{U}})_i \\ & & \mathcal{C}(\underline{h}^i, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F}\underline{U}) \end{array}$$

where the diagonal arrow is the weak homotopy equivalence of lemma 2.7.12 and the right vertical arrow is the simplicially enriched natural transformation of lemma 2.8.44.

*Proof.* Recalling remark 2.7.5, the functor  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  induces an evident morphism of cobar complexes

$$\mathcal{C}^\bullet(\underline{h}^{\underline{U}i}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^\bullet(\underline{U}^* \underline{h}^{\underline{U}i}, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F}\underline{U})$$

that is simplicially natural in  $i$  and  $\underline{F}$ , so by applying Tot and composing with the simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\underline{F}\underline{U} \Rightarrow \underline{U}^* \mathcal{C}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{F})$ , we obtain a simplicially enriched natural transformation  $\eta_{\underline{F}}$  of the appropriate type. On the other hand, it is clear that  $(\varepsilon_{\underline{F}\underline{U}})_i$  is equal to the totalisation of the morphism

$$\mathcal{C}^\bullet(\underline{U}^* \underline{h}^{\underline{U}i}, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F}\underline{U}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^\bullet(\underline{h}^i, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F}\underline{U})$$

induced by  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}}(i, -) \Rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}(\underline{U}i, \underline{U}-)$ , and thus it is straightforward to verify that the composite  $(\varepsilon_{\underline{F}\underline{U}})_i \circ (\eta_{\underline{F}})_{Ui}$  is indeed equal to the weak homotopy equivalence  $\underline{F}\underline{U}i \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(\underline{h}^i, \underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{F}\underline{U})$ .  $\blacksquare$

**2.8.48** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a simplicially enriched functor, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists, then there is a simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\eta_{\underline{F}} : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F}\underline{U}$$

and if the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{FU} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  also exists, then the following diagram commutes for every object  $i$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FU i & \xrightarrow{(\eta_F)_{U i}} & (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{FU}) U i \\ & \searrow \simeq & \downarrow (\epsilon_{FU})_i \\ & & \text{Ran}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{FU} \end{array}$$

where the diagonal arrow is the weak simplicial homotopy equivalence of [proposition 2.7.13](#) and the right vertical arrow is the simplicially enriched natural transformation of [proposition 2.8.45](#).

Moreover, assuming the relevant right Bousfield–Kan extensions exist,  $\eta_F$  is simplicially natural in  $\underline{F}$ .

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists, then there is a simplicially enriched natural transformation

$$\epsilon_{\underline{G}} : \text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$$

and if the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  also exists, then the following diagram commutes for every object  $i$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Lan}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU} & \xrightarrow{(\eta_{GU})_i} & (\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{GU}) U i \\ & \searrow \simeq & \downarrow (\epsilon_{\underline{G}})_{U i} \\ & & GU i \end{array}$$

where the diagonal arrow is the weak simplicial homotopy equivalence of [proposition 2.7.13](#) and the top horizontal arrow is the simplicially enriched natural transformation of [proposition 2.8.45](#).

Moreover, assuming the relevant left Bousfield–Kan extensions exist,  $\epsilon_{\underline{G}}$  is simplicially natural in  $\underline{G}$ .

*Proof.* Recalling [remark 2.8.24](#), we can apply the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)) to reduce the claim to [lemma 2.8.47](#). ■

**2.8.49** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the right Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exist, then for every object  $j$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ ,

$$(\eta_{\underline{F}})_j : Fj \rightarrow (\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})j$$

is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

- Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a simplicially enriched diagram. If the left Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exist, then for every object  $j$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ ,

$$(\epsilon_{\underline{F}})_j : (\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F})j \rightarrow Fj$$

is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  is homotopically essentially surjective on objects, by lemma 2.5.19, it suffices to show that  $(\eta_{\underline{F}})_{U_i}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  for every object  $i$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ . But  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  is also homotopically fully faithful, so by proposition 2.8.45,  $(\epsilon_{\underline{F}U})_i$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence, and the claim follows by proposition 2.8.48. ■

**2.8.50** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- If the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every right ample diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and the right Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , then the induced simplicially enriched functor

$$\text{Ran}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} : [\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{\text{R}}$$

is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

- If the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exists for every left ample diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and the left Bousfield–Kan extension  $\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{I}}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$



$\underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{G} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then the induced simplicially enriched functor

$$\mathrm{Lan}_{\underline{U}}^{\mathrm{BK}} : [\underline{I}, \underline{C}]_{\mathrm{L}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathrm{L}}$$

is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* Recalling [corollary 2.8.20](#), this is a consequence of [corollaries 2.8.46](#) and [2.8.49](#). ■

## 2.9 The Dwyer–Kan model structure

**Prerequisites.** §§0.2, 1.5, 1.6, 2.1, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.7, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2.

In this section, we follow Dwyer and Kan [1980a] to construct a “local” model structure on the category of small simplicially enriched categories with a fixed set of objects.

**2.9.1** DEFINITION. Let  $O$  be an ensemble.

- A **category over  $O$**  is a category  $C$  where  $\text{ob } C = O$ .
- A **functor over  $O$**  is a functor  $C \rightarrow D$  where the map  $\text{ob } C \rightarrow \text{ob } D$  is  $\text{id} : O \rightarrow O$ .
- A **simplicially enriched** (resp. **Kan-enriched**) **category over  $O$**  is a simplicially enriched (resp. Kan-enriched) category  $\underline{C}$  where  $\text{ob } C = O$ .
- A **simplicially enriched functor over  $O$**  is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  where the map  $\text{ob } C \rightarrow \text{ob } D$  is  $\text{id} : O \rightarrow O$ .

When  $O$  is a set, we write  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$  for the category of small categories over  $O$  and  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  for the category of small simplicially enriched categories over  $O$ .

**2.9.2** REMARK. A simplicially enriched category over  $O$  is the essentially same thing as a simplicial category over  $O$ ; so by proposition 2.3.2, 2.3.7, and 2.3.8,  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  admits a simplicial enrichment that is cotensored and tensored. There is an evident forgetful functor  $\mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  sending a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{C}$  over  $O$  to the  $(O \times O)$ -indexed family of simplicial sets  $\underline{C}(-, -)$ , and it is not hard to see that this functor admits a compatible simplicial enrichment.

**2.9.3** DEFINITION. Let  $O$  be a set.

- A **reflexive graph over  $O$**  is a  $(O \times O)$ -indexed set  $E$  (i.e. an object in  $\mathbf{Set}^{O \times O}$ ) together with a distinguished element of  $E(a, a)$  for each element  $a$  of  $O$ .
- A **morphism of reflexive graphs over  $O$**  is a morphism of the underlying  $(O \times O)$ -indexed sets that preserves the distinguished elements.
- A **simplicially enriched reflexive graph over  $O$**  is an  $(O \times O)$ -indexed simplicial set  $E$  (i.e. an object in  $\mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$ ) together with a distinguished vertex of  $E(a, a)$  for each element  $a$  of  $O$ .

- A **morphism of simplicially enriched reflexive graphs over  $O$**  is a morphism of the underlying  $(O \times O)$ -indexed simplicial sets that preserves the distinguished vertices.

We write  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$  for the category of reflexive graphs over  $O$  and  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  for the category of simplicially enriched reflexive graphs over  $O$ .

**2.9.4** REMARK. A simplicially enriched reflexive graph over  $O$  is the essentially same thing as a simplicial reflexive graph over  $O$ ; so by proposition 2.3.2, 2.3.7, and 2.3.8,  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  admits a simplicial enrichment that is cotensored and tensored. There are evident forgetful functors  $\mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  and  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  and each one admits a compatible simplicial enrichment.

**2.9.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  be a set.*

- (i)  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  is a locally finitely presentable category.
- (ii) The forgetful functor  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  is  $\aleph_0$ -accessible and monadic.
- (iii) The simplicially enriched forgetful functor  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  creates cotensor products.

*Proof.* (i). We have remarked that  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  is equivalent to the category of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ , and it is not hard to see that the latter is a locally finitely presentable category. We may then apply proposition 0.2.44.

(ii). It is clear that the forgetful functor  $U : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  preserves colimits for small filtered diagrams and limits for small diagrams, so we may use the accessible adjoint functor theorem (0.2.50) to construct a left adjoint. We must then verify that  $U : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  creates coequalisers for  $U$ -split parallel pairs; once that is done, we may apply the well-known theorem of Beck to deduce that  $U : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}^{O \times O}$  is monadic.<sup>[1]</sup>

(iii). Again, by regarding simplicially enriched reflexive graphs over  $O$  as simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ , we may use the formula for cotensor products given in the proof of proposition 2.3.7 to deduce that  $\underline{U} : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  creates cotensor products. ■

[1] See e.g. Theorem I in [CWM, Ch. VI, § 7].

**2.9.6 THEOREM.** *Let  $O$  be a set. The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated simplicial model structure on  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the componentwise weak homotopy equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the componentwise monomorphisms.*
- *The fibrations are the componentwise Kan fibrations.*

*This model structure is called the **componentwise model structure**, and with respect to this model structure, we have a Quillen adjunction*

$$F \dashv U : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$$

*where  $U : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  is the evident forgetful functor.*

*Proof.* It is not hard to see that there is an isomorphism of categories

$$\mathbf{sGrph}_O \cong \left( \prod_{a \in O} \Delta^0 / \mathbf{sSet} \right) \times \prod_{\substack{(a,b) \in O \times O \\ a \neq b}} \mathbf{sSet}$$

and the componentwise model structure so induced indeed has the required weak equivalences, cofibrations, and fibrations. Thus, the free–forgetful adjunction is indeed a Quillen adjunction. Moreover, by [remark 2.9.4](#), the forgetful functor  $U : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  admits a simplicial enrichment that preserves cotensor products, so using ([proposition 1.4.15](#) and) [proposition 2.4.4](#), we see that the componentwise model structure satisfies axiom SM7.

We still have to show that the componentwise model structure on  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  is cofibrantly generated. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $\mathcal{J}'$  be the following subsets of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{J} &= \{ \partial \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \mid n \geq 0, (a,b) \in O \times O \} \\ \mathcal{J}' &= \{ \Lambda_k^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \mid n \geq 1, 0 \leq k \leq n, (a,b) \in O \times O \} \end{aligned}$$

where  $h_{(a,b)}$  is the  $(O \times O)$ -indexed set that is 1 at  $(a,b)$  and  $\emptyset$  otherwise, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{I}'$ ) be the image of  $\mathcal{J}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{J}'$ ) under  $F : \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O} \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$ . By adjointness (and the Yoneda lemma), an  $\mathcal{I}$ -fibration (resp.  $\mathcal{I}'$ -fibration) is precisely a componentwise Kan fibration (resp. componentwise trivial Kan fibration). Thus,  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  cofibrantly generate the componentwise model structure on  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$ . ■

**2.9.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  be a set.*

- (i)  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a locally finitely presentable category.
- (ii) The forgetful functor  $\mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  is  $\aleph_0$ -accessible and monadic.
- (iii) The simplicially enriched forgetful functor  $\underline{\mathbf{SCat}}_O \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sGrph}}_O$  creates cotensor products.
- (iv) The forgetful functor  $\mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  is  $\aleph_0$ -accessible and monadic.
- (v) The simplicially enriched forgetful functor  $\underline{\mathbf{SCat}}_O \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}^{O \times O}$  creates cotensor products.

*Proof.* (i). We have remarked that  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is equivalent to the category of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ , and it is not hard to see that the latter is a locally finitely presentable category. We may then apply [proposition 0.2.44](#).

(ii). It is clear that the forgetful functor  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  preserves colimits for small filtered diagrams and limits for small diagrams, so we may use the accessible adjoint functor theorem ([0.2.50](#)) to construct a left adjoint. We must then verify that  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  creates coequalisers for  $U$ -split parallel pairs; once that is done, we may apply the well-known theorem of Beck to deduce that  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  is monadic.<sup>[2]</sup>

(iii). Again, by regarding small simplicially enriched categories over  $O$  as simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ , we may use the formula for cotensor products given in the proof of [proposition 2.3.7](#) to deduce that  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathbf{SCat}}_O \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sGrph}}_O$  creates cotensor products.

(iv) and (v). Similar arguments work. ■

**2.9.8** DEFINITION. Let  $O$  be an ensemble. A **fibration of simplicially enriched categories over  $O$**  is a simplicially enriched functor over  $O$  that is also a local fibration of simplicially enriched categories.<sup>[3]</sup>

[2] See e.g. Theorem 1 in [\[CWM, Ch. VI, § 7\]](#).

[3] See [definition 2.6.6](#).

**2.9.9 THEOREM** (Dwyer and Kan). *Let  $O$  be a set. The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated simplicial model structure on  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the Dwyer–Kan equivalences.*
- *The fibrations are the fibrations of simplicially enriched categories over  $O$ .*
- *The cofibrations are the morphisms that have the left lifting property with respect to the fibrations.*

*This model structure is called the **Dwyer–Kan model structure**, and the fibrant objects are the Kan-enriched categories over  $O$ . With respect to this model structure, we have a Quillen adjunction*

$$F \dashv U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$$

where  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  is the evident forgetful functor.

*Proof.* First, we will use Kan’s lifting theorem (6.2.5) to verify that the data indeed constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  compatible with the indicated free–forgetful adjunction.

By [proposition 2.9.7](#), the forgetful functor admits a simplicial enrichment that preserves cotensor products. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $\mathcal{J}'$  be the following subsets of  $\mathbf{mor} \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{J} &= \{ \partial \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \mid n \geq 0, (a, b) \in O \times O \} \\ \mathcal{J}' &= \{ \Lambda_k^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)} \mid n \geq 1, 0 \leq k \leq n, (a, b) \in O \times O \} \end{aligned}$$

where  $h_{(a,b)}$  is the  $(O \times O)$ -indexed set that is 1 at  $(a, b)$  and  $\emptyset$  otherwise, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{I}'$ ) be the image of  $\mathcal{J}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{J}'$ ) under  $F : \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O} \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$ . Since  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is locally finitely presentable, by [remark 0.5.9](#) and Quillen’s small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)), there exist functorial weak factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$ ; and by adjointness (and the Yoneda lemma), an  $\mathcal{I}$ -fibration (resp.  $\mathcal{I}'$ -fibration) is precisely a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) of simplicially enriched categories over  $O$ . It remains to be shown that  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cofibrations are Dwyer–Kan equivalences; but this is a straightforward application of [lemma 2.4.18](#) to [theorem 2.6.3](#).

To complete the proof, we must verify that the above model structure satisfies axiom SM7. But  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathbf{SCat}}_O \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sSet}}^{O \times O}$  preserves cotensor products, so

by [proposition 2.4.4](#), this is an immediate consequence of the fact that  $\mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  satisfies axiom SM7. ■

**2.9.I0** COROLLARY. *Let  $O$  be a set. There is a Quillen adjunction*

$$F \dashv U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$$

where  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  is the evident forgetful functor.

*Proof.* Clearly,  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  preserves fibrations and trivial fibrations, so by [proposition 5.3.2](#), we have a Quillen adjunction. ■

**2.9.I1** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  be a set and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{SCat}_O]$  spanned by the Dwyer–Kan equivalences. Then  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under colimits for small filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathbf{SCat}_O]$ .*

*Proof.* The forgetful functor  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$  preserves weak equivalences and colimits for small filtered diagrams and also reflects weak equivalences, so this is a corollary of [proposition 1.5.14](#). ■

**2.9.I2** DEFINITION. Let  $O$  be a set and let  $F : \mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O} \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$  be the free simplicially enriched category over  $O$  functor. A **standard cofibration** in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a monomorphism  $\underline{f} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  for which there exist a chain of monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$

$$\underline{C} = \underline{D}^{(-1)} \xrightarrow{i^{(0)}} \underline{D}^{(0)} \xrightarrow{i^{(1)}} \underline{D}^{(1)} \xrightarrow{i^{(2)}} \underline{D}^{(2)} \longrightarrow \dots$$

such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- There is a colimiting cocone from the above chain to  $\underline{D}$  where the component  $\underline{D}^{(-1)} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is  $\underline{f} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ .
- For each natural number  $n$ , there is a pushout diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(\partial \Delta^n \odot I_n) & \hookrightarrow & F(\Delta^n \odot I_n) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{D}^{(n-1)} & \xrightarrow{i^{(n)}} & \underline{D}^{(n)} \end{array}$$

where  $I_n$  is an  $(O \times O)$ -indexed subset of  $\underline{D}(-, -)_n$  not meeting the image of  $\underline{f} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ ,  $F(\partial \Delta^n \odot I_n) \hookrightarrow F(\Delta^n \odot I_n)$  is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial \Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , and  $F(\Delta^n \odot I_n) \rightarrow \underline{D}^{(n)}$  is the tautological simplicially enriched functor induced by the inclusion  $I_n \hookrightarrow \underline{D}(-, -)_n$ .

The following lemma implies that every instance of the word ‘monomorphism’ in the above definition can be replaced by ‘morphism’.

**2.9.13** LEMMA. *Let  $O$  be a set, let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}^{O \times O}$ . Given a pushout diagram in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FX & \xrightarrow{Ff} & FY \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{C} & \xrightarrow{\underline{i}} & \underline{D} \end{array}$$

*the simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{i} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ .*

*Proof.* It is enough to show that each  $(i_{a,b})_n : \underline{C}(a, b)_n \rightarrow \underline{D}(a, b)_n$  is injective, and since colimits in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  can be computed degreewise, it suffices to prove the analogous claim for categories over  $O$ . But every  $(O \times O)$ -indexed injective map is (isomorphic to) a coproduct insertion, and the free category over  $O$  functor  $\mathbf{Set}^{O \times O} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}_O$  preserves coproducts, so it suffices to show that coproduct insertions in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$  are monic. This is clear if we think in terms of generators and relations. ■

**2.9.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  be a set.*

- (i) *Every standard cofibration in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a cofibration in the Dwyer–Kan model structure.*
- (ii) *Every morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  can be factored as a standard cofibration followed by a trivial fibration.*
- (iii) *Every cofibration in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a retract of a standard cofibration.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the following subset of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{SCat}_O$ :

$$\mathcal{I} = \{ F(\partial \Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)}) \hookrightarrow F(\Delta^n \odot h_{(a,b)}) \mid n \geq 0, (a, b) \in O \times O \}$$

It is clear that standard cofibrations in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  are relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes. We previously saw that the  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphisms are precisely the trivial fibrations in the Dwyer–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ , so relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes are cofibrations.

(ii). A variation on Quillen’s small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)) applied to  $\mathcal{I}$  can be used here.



(iii). Let  $\underline{f} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a cofibration. There is a factorisation of the form  $\underline{f} = \underline{p} \circ \underline{i}$  where  $\underline{p}$  is a trivial fibration and  $\underline{i}$  is a standard cofibration; but  $\underline{f}$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $\underline{p}$ , so  $\underline{f}$  is a retract of  $\underline{i}$ . ■

**2.9.15** COROLLARY. *Let  $O$  be a set. Every cofibration in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  in the Dwyer–Kan model structure is a monomorphism.* ■

**2.9.16** ¶ Let us write  $\Delta_O$  for the reflexive graph over  $O$  defined by the following formula:

$$\Delta_O(a, b) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } a = b \\ \emptyset & \text{if } a \neq b \end{cases}$$

Clearly,  $\Delta_O$  is an initial object in  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ . It admits the structure of a category over  $O$  in a unique way and is also an initial object in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ . As there is no danger of confusion, we will also write  $\Delta_O$  for the initial objects in  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  and  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ .

**2.9.17** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $O = \text{ob } C$ . Then the unique morphism  $\Delta_O \rightarrow \underline{C}$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a standard cofibration if there exist  $(O \times O)$ -indexed subsets  $J_n \subseteq \underline{C}(-, -)_n$  satisfying the following conditions:*

- *Regarding  $\underline{C}$  as a simplicial category  $C_\bullet$ , the tautological functor  $F(J_n) \rightarrow C_n$  induced by the inclusion  $J_n \hookrightarrow \underline{C}(-, -)_n$  is an isomorphism (in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ ).*
- *For  $0 \leq k \leq n$ , the degeneracy operator  $s_k : \underline{C}(-, -)_n \rightarrow \underline{C}(-, -)_{n+1}$  sends elements of  $J_n$  into  $J_{n+1}$ .*

*In particular, for any object  $X$  in  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$ , the unique morphism  $\Delta_O \rightarrow F(X)$  is a standard cofibration.*

*Proof.* Let  $I_n$  be the intersection of  $J_n$  and the set of non-degenerate  $n$ -simplices of  $\underline{C}(-, -)$  and let  $\underline{C}^{(n)}$  be the simplicially enriched subcategory of  $\underline{C}$  generated by (all) the  $n$ -simplices. Let  $\underline{C}^{(-1)} = \Delta_O$ . There is an evident commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(\partial \Delta^n \odot I_n) & \hookrightarrow & F(\Delta^n \odot I_n) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{C}^{(n-1)} & \hookrightarrow & \underline{C}^{(n)} \end{array}$$

and it is not hard to see that it is a pushout diagram. Clearly,  $\bigcup_{n \geq 0} \underline{C}^{(n)} = \underline{C}$ , so the unique morphism  $\underline{C}^{(-1)} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is indeed a standard cofibration, as claimed.

Finally, if  $\underline{C} = F(X)$ , then we can take  $J_n = X_n \setminus \Delta_O$ , so the unique morphism  $\Delta_O \rightarrow F(X)$  is a standard cofibration. ■

Recalling [lemma 1.6.8](#), we see that the realisation functor  $|-| : \mathbf{ssSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves finite products. In particular, the following definition makes sense:

**2.9.18** DEFINITION. Let  $O$  be a set and let  $\underline{C}_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ . The **realisation** of  $\underline{C}_\bullet$  is the simplicially enriched category  $\underline{D}$  defined by the following formula:

$$\underline{D}(a, b) = |\underline{C}_\bullet(a, b)|$$

In other words,  $\underline{D}$  is  $||[\underline{C}_\bullet]|$  where we regard  $\underline{C}_\bullet$  as a category enriched over  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ .

**2.9.19** REMARK. In view of [proposition 2.3.12](#), this is consistent with general definition of realisations of simplicial objects in simplicially enriched categories.

**2.9.20** PROPOSITION. Let  $O$  be a set and let  $\underline{f}_\bullet : \underline{C}_\bullet \rightarrow \underline{D}_\bullet$  be a morphism of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ . If each  $\underline{f}_n : \underline{C}_n \rightarrow \underline{D}_n$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, then  $||[\underline{f}_\bullet]| : ||[\underline{C}_\bullet]| \rightarrow ||[\underline{D}_\bullet]|$  is also a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward corollary of [theorem 1.6.10](#). ■

**2.9.21** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $O = \text{ob } C$ . The **standard resolution** of  $C$  is the standard resolution of  $C$  (as an object in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ ) with respect to the comonad induced by the free–forgetful adjunction between  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$  and  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ .

**2.9.22** REMARK. The fact that the standard resolution of  $C$  is stable under universe enlargement is an instance of the stability of accessible adjunctions.

**2.9.23** REMARK. Although the standard resolution  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet$  of a category  $C$  is most naturally defined as a simplicial category, the fact that  $\text{ob } \mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet$  is a constant simplicial set enables us to view it as a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathbf{S}(C)}$ , per [remark 2.1.11](#).

**2.9.24** PROPOSITION. For any small category  $C$ , the standard augmentation  $\varepsilon_C : \mathbf{S}(C) \rightarrow C$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence of simplicially enriched categories.

*Proof.* Recalling [proposition 1.3.22](#) (and [proposition 1.5.4](#)), this is a special case of [proposition 2.3.22](#). ■

**2.9.25** COROLLARY. *The functor  $\pi_0[\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbb{C})] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  induced by the standard augmentation is an isomorphism of categories.* ■

**2.9.26** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $O = \text{ob } \mathcal{C}$ .

- The **standard resolution** of  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is the standard resolution of  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  (as an object in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ ) with respect to the comonad induced by the free–forgetful adjunction between  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  and  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$ .
- The **degreewise standard resolution** of  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}_\bullet)$  together with the evident augmentation, where  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}_\bullet$  is  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  considered as a simplicial category and  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}_n)$  is the standard resolution of  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}_n$  (as an object in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ , with respect to the comonad induced by the free–forgetful adjunction between  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$  and  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ ) considered as a simplicially enriched category.

**2.9.27** REMARK. The standard resolution and the degreewise standard resolution are related as follows (up to natural bijection):

$$\mathbf{S}(\underline{\mathcal{C}})_n(a, b)_m = \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}_m)(a, b)_n$$

In particular, [lemma 1.6.8](#) implies that their realisations are naturally isomorphic.

**2.9.28** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $O = \text{ob } \mathcal{C}$ .*

- The degreewise standard augmentation  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}_\bullet) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}_\bullet$  is a degreewise Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*
- The realisation of the standard augmentation is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence  $||\mathbf{S}(\underline{\mathcal{C}})_\bullet|| \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .*
- For each natural number  $n$ , the unique morphism  $\Delta_O \rightarrow \mathbf{S}(\underline{\mathcal{C}})_n$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a standard cofibration.*
- For each natural number  $n$ , the unique morphism  $\Delta_O \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}_n)$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a standard cofibration.*
- The unique morphism  $\Delta_O \rightarrow ||\mathbf{S}(\underline{\mathcal{C}})_\bullet||$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a standard cofibration.*

*Proof.* (i). See [proposition 2.9.24](#).

(ii). Thus, by [proposition 2.9.20](#) and [remark 2.9.27](#), the induced morphisms

$$|\mathbf{S}(\underline{\mathcal{C}})_\bullet(a, b)| \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a, b)$$

are weak homotopy equivalences.

(iii)–(v). This is a straightforward application of [lemma 2.9.17](#). ■

**2.9.29** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  be a set. For any Dwyer–Kan equivalence  $\underline{f} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ , the morphism  $\mathbf{S}(\underline{f})_\bullet : \mathbf{S}(\underline{C})_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbf{S}(\underline{D})_\bullet$  of standard resolutions is a degreewise Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* [Corollary 2.9.10](#) says that  $F : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$  is a left Quillen functor, and since all objects in  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$  are cofibrant, Ken Brown’s lemma ([5.3.6](#)) implies that  $F : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$  preserves weak equivalences. On the other hand,  $U : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{sGrph}_O$  preserves weak equivalences by definition. Thus, the morphism  $\mathbf{S}(\underline{f})_\bullet : \mathbf{S}(\underline{C})_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbf{S}(\underline{D})_\bullet$  is a degreewise Dwyer–Kan equivalence. ■

**2.9.30** LEMMA. *Let  $O$  be a set.*

- (i) *The forgetful functor  $U : \mathbf{Cat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{Grph}_O$  preserves and reflects monomorphisms.*
- (ii) *The coproduct functor  $(-) +^O (-) : \mathbf{Cat}_O \times \mathbf{Cat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}_O$  preserves monomorphisms.*
- (iii) *Let  $\mathbf{Cat}_{O,m}$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Grph}_{O,m}$ ) be the subcategory of  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ ) consisting of the monomorphisms. There exists a functor*

$$(-) +^O (-) : \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} \times \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m}$$

*making the following diagram commute up to isomorphism:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Cat}_{O,m} \times \mathbf{Cat}_{O,m} & \xrightarrow{(-) +^O (-)} & \mathbf{Cat}_{O,m} \\ U \times U \downarrow & & \downarrow U \\ \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} \times \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} & \xrightarrow[(-) +^O (-)]{\quad \quad \quad} & \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} \end{array}$$

*Moreover, this functor is equipped with natural monomorphisms  $X \rightarrow X +^O Y$  and  $Y \rightarrow X +^O Y$ , and these are compatible with the coproduct insertions in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ .*

*Proof.* (i). By (the proof of) [proposition 2.9.7](#),  $U : \mathbf{Cat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{Grph}_O$  is monadic, and any monadic functor preserves and reflects monomorphisms.

(ii). Let  $C$  and  $D$  be objects in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ . It is not hard to see that morphisms in the coproduct  $C +^O D$  admit a *unique* factorisation of the form

$$o_0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow o_k$$

where  $k$  is a natural number (possibly zero!), each arrow is a *non-identity* morphism in  $C$  or  $D$ , and no two adjacent arrows are in the same category. (The coproduct insertions  $C \rightarrow C +^O D$  and  $D \rightarrow C +^O D$  are monic, so by abuse of notation, we identify  $C$  and  $D$  with their images in  $C +^O D$ .) It is clear what the action of  $(-) +^O (-)$  on morphisms is, and by considering the factorisations discussed above, it is easy to see that  $(-) +^O (-)$  preserves monomorphisms.

(iii). Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ . In view of the above description of  $C +^O D$ , let us define  $X +^O Y$  to be the reflexive graph whose edges are (finite) paths

$$o_0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow o_k$$

where  $k$  is a natural number (possibly zero!), each arrow is a *non-distinguished* edge of  $X$  or  $Y$ , and no two adjacent arrows are in the same graph. It is then clear how to extend  $(-) +^O (-)$  to a functor  $\mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} \times \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grph}_{O,m}$  of the required form, and there are evident natural monomorphisms  $X \rightarrow X +^O Y$  and  $Y \rightarrow X +^O Y$  compatible with the coproduct insertions in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ . ■

**2.9.31 LEMMA.** *Let  $O$  be a set and let  $C$  and  $D$  be objects in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ . If  $\underline{g} : \underline{\mathbf{S}}(D) \rightarrow \text{disc}[D]$  is the standard augmentation (regarded as a morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ ), then the coproduct morphism  $\text{id}_{\text{disc}[C]} +^O \underline{g} : \text{disc}[C] +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(D) \rightarrow \text{disc}[C] +^O \text{disc}[D]$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $U : \mathbf{Cat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{Grph}_O$  be the forgetful functor and let  $r = U g_0 : U\mathbf{S}(D)_0 \rightarrow UD$ . By [proposition 2.3.22](#), there exist morphisms  $s : UD \rightarrow U\mathbf{S}(D)_0$  and  $h^n : U\mathbf{S}(D)_n \rightarrow U\mathbf{S}(D)_{n+1}$  constituting a forward contracting homotopy for  $U\mathbf{S}(D)_\bullet$ . To prove the claim, (by [propositions 1.3.22](#) and [1.5.4](#)) it suffices to show that  $C +^O \mathbf{S}(D)_\bullet$  admits a forward contracting homotopy corresponding to the morphism  $U(\text{id}_C +^O \underline{g}_\bullet) : U(C +^O \mathbf{S}(D)_\bullet) \rightarrow U(C +^O D)$ .

By definition, the morphisms  $s : UD \rightarrow U\mathbf{S}(D)_0$  and  $h^n : U\mathbf{S}(D)_n \rightarrow U\mathbf{S}(D)_{n+1}$  are (split) monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Grph}_O$ , so by [lemma 2.9.30](#), we may

apply  $\text{id}_{UC} +^O (-)$  to them. If we identify  $UC +^O US(\mathcal{D})_\bullet$  with  $U(C +^O S(\mathcal{D})_\bullet)$ , then we get the following identities for free:

$$\begin{aligned} U(\text{id}_C +^O g_0) \circ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_1^1) &= U(\text{id}_C +^O g_0) \circ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_0^1) \\ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^{n+1}) \circ U(\text{id}_C +^O s_i^n) &= U(\text{id}_C +^O s_i^{n+1}) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^n) \quad \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^{n+1}) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^n) &= U(\text{id}_C +^O s_{n+1}^{n+1}) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^n) \end{aligned}$$

To complete the proof, we must verify the equations shown below:

$$\begin{aligned} U(\text{id}_C +^O g_0) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O s) &= \text{id} \\ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_0^1) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^0) &= (\text{id}_{UC} +^O s) \circ U(\text{id}_C +^O g_0) \\ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_1^1) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^0) &= \text{id} \\ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_i^{n+1}) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^n) &= (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^{n-1}) \circ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_i^n) \quad \text{if } 0 \leq i \leq n \\ U(\text{id}_C +^O d_{n+1}^{n+1}) \circ (\text{id}_{UC} +^O h^n) &= \text{id} \end{aligned}$$

The verification is straightforward and is omitted. ■

**2.9.32** LEMMA. *Let  $O$  be a set. The coproduct functor*

$$(-) +^O (-) : \mathbf{SCat}_O \times \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$$

*preserves weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* Since the class of Dwyer–Kan equivalences is closed under composition, by symmetry, it suffices to verify that  $\underline{C} +^O (-) : \mathbf{SCat}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$  preserves Dwyer–Kan equivalences for an arbitrary object  $\underline{C}$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ .

First, suppose that  $\underline{C} = F(\text{disc } X)$  for some  $(O \times O)$ -indexed set  $X$ . Then, for any object  $\underline{D}$  in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ , we have the following formula,

$$(F(\text{disc } X) +^O \underline{D})(a, b) = \coprod_{k \geq 0} Y^{(k)}(a, b)$$

where  $Y^{(0)}(a, b) = \underline{D}(a, b)$  and in general:

$$Y^{(k+1)}(a, b) = \coprod_{(a', b') \in O \times O} Y^{(k)}(a, a') \times \text{disc } X(a', b') \times \underline{D}(b', b)$$

In other words, every  $n$ -simplex of  $(F(\text{disc } X) +^O \underline{D})(a, b)$  admits a *unique* factorisation of the form

$$a \xrightarrow{f_1} \bullet \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{f_{2k+1}} b$$

where  $f_j$  is in  $\underline{D}$  when  $j$  is odd and in  $X$  if  $j$  is even. It is then clear that  $F(\text{disc } X) +^O (-)$  preserves Dwyer–Kan equivalences.

Now, suppose  $\underline{C}$  is degreewise free, i.e. regarded as a simplicial category  $\mathbf{C}_\bullet$ , for each natural number  $n$ , there is an  $(X \times X)$ -indexed set  $X_n$  such that  $C_n = F(X_n)$ . Let  $\underline{g} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ . The above argument shows that, for each natural number  $n$ ,

$$\text{id}_{F(\text{disc } X_n)} +^O \underline{g} : F(\text{disc } X_n) +^O \underline{D} \rightarrow F(\text{disc } X_n) +^O \underline{E}$$

But  $\underline{C}$  is (isomorphic to) the realisation of the simplicial object  $\text{disc}[C_\bullet]$ , so by [proposition 2.9.20](#), the simplicially enriched functor

$$\text{id}_{\underline{C}} +^O \underline{g} : \underline{C} +^O \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C} +^O \underline{E}$$

is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

Next, let  $\underline{C}$  be any object in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ . Let  $\underline{D}$  be any object in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ , and consider the degreewise standard augmentation  $\underline{g}_\bullet : \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{D}_\bullet) \rightarrow \text{disc}[\underline{D}_\bullet]$ . By [lemma 2.9.31](#),

$$\text{id}_{\text{disc}[C_\bullet]} +^O \underline{g}_\bullet : \text{disc}[C_\bullet] +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{D}_\bullet) \rightarrow \text{disc}[C_\bullet] +^O \text{disc}[\underline{D}_\bullet]$$

is a degreewise Dwyer–Kan equivalence, so applying [proposition 2.9.20](#) again, we deduce that

$$\text{id}_{\underline{C}} +^O \llbracket \underline{g}_\bullet \rrbracket : \underline{C} +^O \llbracket \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{D})_\bullet \rrbracket \rightarrow \underline{C} +^O \underline{D}$$

is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

Finally, let  $\underline{g} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  be any Dwyer–Kan equivalence in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ . Consider the standard resolution of  $\underline{g}$  and the *degreewise* standard resolution of  $\underline{C}$ . We have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbf{S}}(C_n) +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{D})_n & \longrightarrow & \text{disc}[C_n] +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{D})_n \\ \text{id}_{\underline{\mathbf{S}}(C_n)} +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{g})_n \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\text{disc}[C_n]} +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{g})_n \\ \underline{\mathbf{S}}(C_n) +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{E})_n & \longrightarrow & \text{disc}[C_n] +^O \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{E})_n \end{array}$$

The simplicially enriched categories  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{D})_n$  and  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{E})_n$  are degreewise free, so by [proposition 2.9.28](#) and our earlier argument, the horizontal arrows in the diagram are Dwyer–Kan equivalences. On the other hand, by [proposition 2.9.29](#),  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{g})_n :$

$\mathbf{S}(\underline{D})_n \rightarrow \mathbf{S}(\underline{E})_n$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence; and  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(C_n)$  is degreewise free, so by the same argument again, the left vertical arrow in the diagram is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence. Thus, using the 2-out-of-3 property, we deduce that the right vertical arrow is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, so we have a degreewise Dwyer–Kan equivalence

$$\mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{disc}[C_\bullet]} +^O \mathbf{S}(\underline{g})_\bullet : \mathrm{disc}[C_\bullet] +^O \mathbf{S}(\underline{D})_\bullet \rightarrow \mathrm{disc}[C_\bullet] +^O \mathbf{S}(\underline{E})_\bullet$$

and applying [proposition 2.9.20](#), we deduce that

$$\mathrm{id}_{\underline{C}} +^O \llbracket \mathbf{S}(\underline{g})_\bullet \rrbracket : \underline{C} +^O \llbracket \mathbf{S}(\underline{D})_\bullet \rrbracket \rightarrow \underline{C} +^O \llbracket \mathbf{S}(\underline{E})_\bullet \rrbracket$$

is also a Dwyer–Kan equivalence. But the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C} +^O \llbracket \mathbf{S}(\underline{D})_\bullet \rrbracket & \longrightarrow & \underline{C} +^O \underline{D} \\ \mathrm{id}_{\underline{C}} +^O \llbracket \mathbf{S}(\underline{g})_\bullet \rrbracket \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{id}_{\underline{C}} +^O \underline{g} \\ \underline{C} +^O \llbracket \mathbf{S}(\underline{E})_\bullet \rrbracket & \longrightarrow & \underline{C} +^O \underline{E} \end{array}$$

and we know that the horizontal arrows are Dwyer–Kan equivalences, so (using the 2-out-of-3 property) we conclude that

$$\mathrm{id}_{\underline{C}} +^O \underline{g} : \underline{C} +^O \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C} +^O \underline{E}$$

is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, as required. ■

**2.9.33** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  and  $I$  be sets. The coproduct functor*

$$\sum_I^O (-) : (\mathbf{SCat}_O)^I \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$$

*preserves weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* It is well known that coproducts can be constructed using filtered colimits and finite coproducts, so this is a corollary of [proposition 2.9.11](#) and [lemma 2.9.32](#). ■

**2.9.34** PROPOSITION. *Let  $O$  be a set. The Dwyer–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is proper.*<sup>[4]</sup>

*Proof.* See Proposition 7.3 in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980a]. □

---

[4] See [definition 6.1.5](#).



## 2.10 The Bergner model structure

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.5, 2.1, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 2.9, 5.1, 6.2.

In this section, we follow Bergner [2007] in constructing a “global” model structure on the category of all small simplicially enriched categories.

**2.10.1 DEFINITION.** Let  $X$  be a simplicial set. The **categorical suspension** of  $X$  is the simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\diamond}(X)$  defined below:

- The objects are 0 and 1.
- The hom-spaces are as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \underline{\diamond}(X)(0, 0) = \{\mathrm{id}_0\} & \underline{\diamond}(X)(0, 1) = X \\ \underline{\diamond}(X)(1, 1) = \{\mathrm{id}_1\} & \underline{\diamond}(X)(1, 0) = \emptyset \end{array}$$

- The only compositions are trivial.

**2.10.2 REMARK.** Clearly,  $\underline{\diamond}(-)$  defines a functor  $\mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}$ . Moreover, it sends weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets to Dwyer–Kan equivalences of simplicially enriched categories.

**2.10.3 DEFINITION.** A **Dwyer–Kan isofibration of simplicially enriched categories** is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  with the following properties:

- $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a local fibration of simplicially enriched categories.
- If  $g : p(c) \rightarrow d$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{D}$ , then there is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $f : c \rightarrow \tilde{d}$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $p(\tilde{d}) = d$  and  $p(f) = g$ .

**2.10.4 LEMMA.** Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category and let  $\underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{C}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i) The inclusion  $\underline{D} \hookrightarrow \underline{C}$  is a Dwyer–Kan isofibration.
- (ii)  $\underline{D}$  is a homotopically replete subcategory<sup>[1]</sup> of  $\underline{C}$  (where the weak equivalences are the weak simplicial homotopy equivalences).

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

---

[1] See definition 3.1.14.

**2.10.5** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category, let  $\underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{C}$ , and let  $\underline{E}$  be the smallest homotopically replete simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{C}$  that contains  $\underline{D}$ . Then the inclusion  $\underline{D} \hookrightarrow \underline{E}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* The inclusion  $\underline{D} \hookrightarrow \underline{E}$  is certainly (homotopically) fully faithful, and by construction it is homotopically essentially surjective on objects. ■

**2.10.6** LEMMA. Let  $p : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a local fibration of simplicially enriched categories, let  $f : a \rightarrow b$  be a morphism in  $\underline{C}$ , and let  $g : p(a) \rightarrow p(b)$  be a morphism in  $\underline{D}$ . If  $p(f)$  and  $g$  are simplicially homotopic, then there exist a morphism  $\tilde{g} : a \rightarrow b$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $f \sim \tilde{g}$  in  $\underline{C}$  and  $p(\tilde{g}) = g$  in  $\underline{D}$ .

*Proof.* By definition, the morphism  $\underline{p} : \underline{C}(a, b) \rightarrow \underline{D}(p(a), p(b))$  is a Kan fibration and in particular has the right lifting property with respect to the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ . Thus, the claim follows by induction on the length of the shortest zigzag connecting  $p(f)$  and  $g$  in  $\underline{D}(p(a), p(b))$ . ■

**2.10.7** DEFINITION. A **Bergner cofibration** is a member of the smallest class  $\mathcal{B} \subset \text{mor } \mathbf{SCat}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- For every boundary inclusion  $\partial \Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , the induced simplicially enriched functor  $\diamond(\partial \Delta^n) \hookrightarrow \diamond(\Delta^n)$  is in  $\mathcal{B}$ .
- The unique simplicially enriched functor  $\emptyset \rightarrow \underline{1}$  is in  $\mathcal{B}$ , where  $\underline{1}$  is the terminal simplicially enriched category.
- $\mathcal{B}$  is closed under pushout.
- $\mathcal{B}$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.
- $\mathcal{B}$  is closed under retracts.

**2.10.8** LEMMA. Let  $p : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i) The morphism  $p : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  has the right lifting property with respect to all Bergner cofibrations.
- (ii) For each pair  $(a, b)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ ,  $\underline{p}_{a,b} : \underline{C}(a, b) \rightarrow \underline{D}(p(a), p(b))$  is a trivial Kan fibration, and  $\text{ob } p : \text{ob } \underline{C} \rightarrow \text{ob } \underline{D}$  is surjective.

(iii) *The simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan isofibration and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Apply [proposition A.3.19](#).

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Apply [proposition 1.5.12](#). ■

**2.10.9** DEFINITION. A **special trivial Bergner cofibration** is a member of the smallest class  $\mathcal{B}'' \subset \text{mor } \mathbf{SCat}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- For every horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , the induced simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{\diamond}(\Lambda_k^n) \hookrightarrow \underline{\diamond}(\Delta^n)$  is in  $\mathcal{B}''$ .
- $\mathcal{B}''$  is closed under pushout.
- $\mathcal{B}''$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.
- $\mathcal{B}''$  is closed under retracts.

**2.10.10** LEMMA. *Every special trivial Bergner cofibration is bijective on objects.*

*Proof.* The class of bijective-on-objects simplicially enriched functors is closed under pushout, (finite and) transfinite composition, and retracts, so the claim follows by induction. ■

**2.10.11** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  has the right lifting property with respect to all special trivial Bergner cofibrations.*
- (ii) *The simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  is a local fibration.*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.3.19](#). ■

**2.10.12** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{O}$  be a set and let  $\underline{i} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}_{\mathcal{O}}$ . If  $\underline{i}$  (considered as a morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}$ ) is a special trivial Bergner cofibration, then  $\underline{i}$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathbf{SCat}_{\mathcal{O}}$ .*

*Proof.* The forgetful functor  $\mathbf{SCat}_{\mathcal{O}} \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}$  is an orthogonality-reflecting functor,<sup>[2]</sup> so [lemma 2.10.11](#) implies that  $\underline{i}$  has the left lifting property with respect to all fibrations in  $\mathbf{SCat}_{\mathcal{O}}$ , hence is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathbf{SCat}_{\mathcal{O}}$  by [theorem 5.1.12](#). ■

[2] See [definition A.3.5](#).

**2.10.13** LEMMA. *Every special trivial Bergner cofibration is a Bergner cofibration and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* Lemma 2.10.11 implies that special trivial Bergner cofibrations have the left lifting property with respect to all Dwyer–Kan isofibrations, so Quillen’s small object argument (theorem 0.5.12) implies that every special trivial Bergner cofibration is indeed a Bergner cofibration. On the other hand, lemma 2.10.10 and corollary 2.10.12 imply that every special trivial Bergner cofibration is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, so we are done. ■

**2.10.14** DEFINITION. A **Bergner interval** is a simplicially enriched category  $\mathbb{I}$  with the following properties:

- $\mathbb{I}$  has exactly two objects.
- Each hom-space of  $\mathbb{I}$  is a weakly contractible simplicial set.
- The inclusion  $\text{ob } \mathbb{I} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{I}$  is a Bergner cofibration.

A **countable Bergner interval** is one whose hom-spaces are countable.

**2.10.15** REMARK. A simplicially enriched category  $\mathbb{I}$  is a (countable) Bergner interval if and only if  $\mathbb{I}^{\text{op}}$  is a (countable) Bergner interval.

**2.10.16** REMARK. Any morphism in any Bergner interval must be a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.

**2.10.17** REMARK. Any simplicially enriched functor between Bergner intervals must be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

**2.10.18** REMARK. If  $\mathbb{I}$  is a Bergner interval, then the unique functor  $\emptyset \rightarrow \mathbb{I}$  is a Bergner cofibration.

**2.10.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category and let  $f : a \rightarrow b$  be a morphism in  $\underline{C}$ . If  $f : a \rightarrow b$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{C}$ , then the functor  $m : \mathbb{2} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  corresponding to  $f : a \rightarrow b$  must factor through a countable Bergner interval.*

*Proof.* See [Bergner, 2007, §4]. ■

**2.10.20** DEFINITION. A **trivial Bergner cofibration** is a member of the smallest class  $B' \subset \text{mor } \mathbf{SCat}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- For every horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , the induced simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{\diamond}(\Lambda_k^n) \hookrightarrow \underline{\diamond}(\Delta^n)$  is in  $B'$ .
- For every countable Bergner interval  $\mathbb{I}$ , both of the possible functors  $\mathbb{I} \rightarrow \mathbb{I}$  are in  $B'$ .
- $B'$  is closed under pushout.
- $B'$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.
- $B'$  is closed under retracts.

**2.10.21** REMARK. In particular, every special trivial Bergner cofibration is a trivial Bergner cofibration.

**2.10.22** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i) The morphism  $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  has the right lifting property with respect to all trivial Bergner cofibrations.
- (ii) The simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan isofibration.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By lemma 2.10.11,  $\underline{p}$  must be a local fibration, so it suffices to verify the lifting condition on weak simplicial homotopy equivalences; but this is a straightforward consequence of proposition 2.10.19.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Recalling lemma 2.10.11, we see that  $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  has the right lifting property with respect to all special trivial Bergner cofibrations. Thus, to prove the claim, it suffices to verify that  $\underline{p}$  has the right lifting property with respect to any functor  $\mathbb{I} \rightarrow \mathbb{I}$  where  $\mathbb{I}$  is a Bergner interval.

Let  $\mathbb{I}$  be a Bergner interval and let  $v : \mathbb{I} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a simplicially enriched functor. We may assume without loss of generality that  $\text{ob } \mathbb{I} = \{0, 1\}$ . Let  $h : 0 \rightarrow 1$  be a morphism in  $\mathbb{I}$ . By remark 2.10.16,  $h : 0 \rightarrow 1$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\mathbb{I}$ , so  $v(h) : v(0) \rightarrow v \arg 1$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{D}$ ; hence if  $v(0) = p(x)$  for some object  $x$  in  $\underline{C}$ , then there must be a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $f : x \rightarrow y$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $p(y) = v(1)$  and  $p(f) = v(h)$ .

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

Consider the following pullback diagram in **SCat**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{B} & \xrightarrow{u} & \underline{C} \\ \underline{q} \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{p} \\ \underline{\mathbb{I}} & \xrightarrow{\underline{v}} & \underline{D} \end{array}$$

Then there is a unique morphism  $\tilde{h} : \tilde{x} \rightarrow \tilde{y}$  in  $\underline{B}$  such that  $q(\tilde{h}) = h$  and  $u(\tilde{h}) = f$ , and by [proposition 2.6.12](#),  $\tilde{h} : \tilde{x} \rightarrow \tilde{y}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence in  $\underline{B}$ . Applying [proposition 2.10.19](#), it follows that the functor  $\underline{2} \rightarrow \underline{B}$  corresponding to  $\tilde{h}$  factors through a (countable) Bergner interval  $\underline{\mathbb{I}}'$ . Thus, we have a commutative diagram in **SCat** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbb{I}}' & \xrightarrow{\underline{v}'} & \underline{C} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{p} \\ \underline{\mathbb{I}} & \xrightarrow{\underline{v}} & \underline{D} \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence (by [remark 2.10.17](#)).

Now, using Quillen’s small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)), factor  $\underline{\mathbb{I}}' \rightarrow \underline{\mathbb{I}}$  as a special trivial Bergner cofibration  $\underline{j} : \underline{\mathbb{I}}' \rightarrow \hat{\underline{\mathbb{I}}}'$  followed by a local fibration  $\underline{q} : \hat{\underline{\mathbb{I}}}' \rightarrow \underline{\mathbb{I}}$ . As remarked, there is then a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{\tilde{v}} : \underline{\mathbb{I}}' \rightarrow \underline{C}$  such that  $\underline{p}\underline{\tilde{v}} = \underline{v}\underline{q}$ . On the other hand,  $\underline{j}$  and  $\underline{q}$  are bijective on objects, so using [lemma 2.10.13](#) and the 2-out-of-3 property, we deduce that  $\underline{q}$  is a Dwyer–Kan isofibration and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence; hence, by [remark 2.10.18](#), there is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{s} : \underline{\mathbb{I}} \rightarrow \hat{\underline{\mathbb{I}}}'$  such that  $\underline{q}\underline{s} = \text{id}$ . It is straightforward to verify that the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{0\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \underline{C} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow \underline{\tilde{v}s} & \downarrow \underline{p} \\ \underline{\mathbb{I}} & \xrightarrow{\underline{v}} & \underline{D} \end{array}$$

so we conclude that  $\underline{p} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  indeed has the right lifting property with respect to  $\{0\} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathbb{I}}$ . ■

**2.10.23 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\underline{i} : \underline{A} \rightarrow \underline{B}$  be a morphism in **SCat**. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\underline{i} : \underline{A} \rightarrow \underline{B}$  is a trivial Bergner cofibration.

(ii)  $\underline{i} : \underline{A} \rightarrow \underline{B}$  is a Bergner cofibration and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* See Proposition 3.3 in [Bergner, 2007].  $\square$

**2.10.24** THEOREM (Bergner). *The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on **SCat**:*

- *The weak equivalences are the Dwyer–Kan equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the Bergner cofibrations.*
- *The fibrations are the Dwyer–Kan isofibrations.*

*This model structure is called the **Bergner model structure**, and the fibrant objects are the small Kan-enriched categories.*

*Proof.* We have the following facts:

- The class of Dwyer–Kan equivalences has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts, by lemma 2.5.21.
- **SCat** is a locally finitely presentable category, by proposition 2.1.25.
- The morphisms in **SCat** that has the right lifting property with respect to (the generating) Bergner cofibrations are precisely the Dwyer–Kan fibrations that are Dwyer–Kan equivalences, by lemma 2.10.8.
- Every trivial Bergner cofibration is a Bergner cofibration and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, by proposition 2.10.23.

Thus, we may apply Kan’s recognition principle (theorem 6.2.3).  $\blacksquare$

**2.10.25** PROPOSITION. *Consider a pullback diagram in **SCat**:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{A} & \xrightarrow{\underline{u}} & \underline{C} \\ \underline{p} \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{q} \\ \underline{B} & \xrightarrow{\underline{v}} & \underline{D} \end{array}$$

*If  $\underline{q} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan isofibration and  $\underline{v} : \underline{B} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, then  $\underline{u} : \underline{A} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is also a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 3.5 in [Bergner, 2007].  $\square$

**2.10.26** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $a$  and  $b$  be objects in  $\underline{C}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i) There is an isomorphism between  $a$  and  $b$  in  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$ .
- (ii) There is a simplicial homotopy equivalence between  $a$  and  $b$  in  $\underline{C}$ .
- (iii) The morphisms  $\underline{1} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  in  $\mathbf{Ho\,SCat}$  corresponding to  $a$  and  $b$  are equal.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is a corollary of [proposition 2.5.15](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Apply [proposition 2.10.19](#).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Recalling [theorem 2.6.3](#), by replacing  $\underline{C}$  with  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty[\underline{C}]$  if necessary, we may assume that  $\underline{C}$  is fibrant. Since  $\underline{1}$  is Bergner-cofibrant, the claim is then a special case of [corollary 5.4.3](#). ■

**2.10.27** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\tau_0 \underline{C}$  be the set of simplicial homotopy equivalence classes of objects in  $\underline{C}$ . Then the evident map  $\mathrm{ob}\, \underline{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho\,SCat}(\underline{1}, \underline{C})$  induces a bijection

$$\tau_0 \underline{C} \cong \mathbf{Ho\,SCat}(\underline{1}, \underline{C})$$

that is natural in  $\underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* Since  $\underline{1}$  is Bergner-cofibrant, the claim is consequence of [theorem 2.6.3](#), [corollary 5.4.3](#), and [lemma 2.10.26](#). ■

**2.10.28** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- A **bridge** in  $\underline{C}$  is a  $K$ -fibrant span in  $\underline{C}$  whose component morphisms are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences.

We write  $\underline{C}^\frown$  for the simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, \underline{C}]$  spanned by the bridges in  $\underline{C}$ .

- A **cobridge** in  $\underline{C}$  is a  $K$ -cofibrant cospan in  $\underline{C}$  whose component morphisms are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences.

We write  $\underline{C}^\smile$  for the simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}, \underline{C}]$  spanned by the cobridges in  $\underline{C}$ .



**2.10.29** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a small Kan-enriched category.

- Any common section for the two evident projections  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.
- Any common section for the two evident projections  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\smile \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $i : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown$  be a common section of the two projections  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ . Consider the projection functor  $q : \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  defined by sending a bridge  $b \leftarrow a \rightarrow c$  to its apex  $a$ . Clearly, for each object  $a$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $q(i(a)) \rightarrow a$ , so  $q$  is homotopically essentially surjective on objects. Thus, recalling the 2-out-of-3 property (lemma 2.5.21), it now suffices to show that  $q$  is homotopically fully faithful; but we have the following pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{Kan}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown(b_0 \leftarrow a_0 \rightarrow c_0, b_1 \leftarrow a_1 \rightarrow c_1) & \xrightarrow{q} & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a_0, a_1) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{\mathcal{C}}(b_0, b_1) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(c_0, c_1) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a_0, b_1) \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}(a_0, c_1) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are Kan fibrations, and proposition 1.5.17 implies that the bottom horizontal arrow is a weak homotopy equivalence, so the claim follows, by proposition 1.4.32.  $\blacksquare$

**2.10.30** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.

- We say  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has **enough bridges** if there is a simplicially enriched functor taking diagrams in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of the form below,

$$Y \xleftarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : X \rightarrow Z$  are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , to diagrams of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \longleftarrow & \hat{X} & \longrightarrow & Z \end{array}$$

where the bottom row is a bridge in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

- We say  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has **enough cobridges** if there is a simplicially enriched functor taking diagrams in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of the form below,

$$Y \xrightarrow{f} X \xleftarrow{g} Z$$

where  $f : Y \rightarrow X$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow X$  are weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , to diagrams of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X} & \longleftarrow & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xrightarrow{f} & X & \xleftarrow{g} & Z \end{array}$$

where the top row is a cobridge in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ .

**2.10.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a small Kan-enriched category.*

- *If  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has enough bridges, then  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown$  together with the evident projections constitute (part of) a path object for  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  in the Bergner model structure.*
- *If  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has enough cobridges, then  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^\smile$  together with the evident projections constitute (part of) a path object for  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  in the Bergner model structure.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To begin, recall that [proposition 2.6.20](#) implies that the evident projection functor  $\langle \underline{p}_0, \underline{p}_1 \rangle : \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}} \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a local fibration. Moreover, since  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has enough bridges, there is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{i} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown$  such that  $\underline{p}_0 \underline{i} = \underline{p}_1 \underline{i} = \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}}$ ; note that it is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence by [lemma 2.10.29](#). The same hypothesis also implies that  $\langle \underline{p}_0, \underline{p}_1 \rangle : \underline{\mathcal{C}}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}} \times \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan isofibration, so we are done. ■

REMARK. Compare Theorem A.3.4.8 in [\[HTT\]](#).

**2.10.32** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{J} = \{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}$ . If cobar constructions of the form  $\mathbf{C}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F)$  exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  for all diagrams  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has enough bridges.*
- *Let  $\mathcal{J} = \{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}$ . If bar constructions of the form  $\mathbf{B}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{J}, F)$  exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  for all diagrams  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has enough cobridges.*

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 2.7.16](#). ■

**2.10.33** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  be a small Kan-enriched category, and let  $\underline{f}_0, \underline{f}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be simplicially enriched functors. The following are equivalent if  $\underline{C}$  has enough bridges:

- (i) We have  $\underline{f}_0 = \underline{f}_1$  in  $\text{Ho SCat}$ .
- (ii) There is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{h} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}^\frown$  such that  $\underline{p}_0 \underline{h} = \underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{p}_1 \underline{h} = \underline{f}_1$ , where  $\underline{p}_0, \underline{p}_1 : \underline{C}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{C}$  are the two evident projections.
- (iii) There is span of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{f}_1$ .

Dually, the following are equivalent if  $\underline{C}$  has enough cobridges:

- (i') We have  $\underline{f}_0 = \underline{f}_1$  in  $\text{Ho SCat}$ .
- (ii') There is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{h} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}^\smile$  such that  $\underline{p}_0 \underline{h} = \underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{p}_1 \underline{h} = \underline{f}_1$ , where  $\underline{p}_0, \underline{p}_1 : \underline{C}^\smile \rightarrow \underline{C}$  are the two evident projections.
- (iii') There is cospan of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{f}_1$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). In view of [proposition 2.10.31](#), this is just [corollary 5.4.3](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). The hypothesis allows us to replace the given span of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences with a simplicially enriched diagram of bridges. ■

**2.10.34** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{D}$  be a small Kan-enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{D}$ .

- If  $\underline{D}^\frown$  together with the evident projection functors constitute (part of) a path object for  $\underline{D}$  in the Bergner model structure, then for any small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{J}$ , the induced map

$$\text{Ho SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}) \rightarrow \text{Ho SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{D})$$

is injective.

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

- If  $\underline{D}^\frown$  together with the evident projection functors constitute (part of) a path object for  $\underline{D}$  in the Bergner model structure, then for any small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{J}$ , the induced map

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{D})$$

is injective.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

We may assume without loss of generality that  $\underline{J}$  is Bergner-cofibrant and (by lemma 2.10.5) that  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopically replete simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{D}$ . Consider a parallel pair of simplicially enriched functors  $\underline{f}_0, \underline{f}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  that become equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{D})$ . By corollary 5.4.3, there is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{h} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}^\frown$  such that  $\underline{p}_0 \underline{h} = \underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{p}_1 \underline{h} = \underline{f}_1$ , where  $\underline{p}_0, \underline{p}_1 : \underline{D}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{D}$  are the two evident projections. Observe that any  $K$ -fibrant span in  $\underline{D}$  whose underlying diagram is in  $\underline{C}$  is automatically a  $K$ -fibrant span in  $\underline{C}$  as well, so any bridge in  $\underline{D}$  whose underlying diagram is in  $\underline{C}$  is a bridge in  $\underline{C}$ . Since  $\underline{C}$  is a homotopically replete simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{D}$ , it follows that  $\underline{h}$  induces a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{k} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}^\frown$ . But if the two projections  $\underline{D}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{D}$  admit a common section, then the projections  $\underline{C}^\frown \rightarrow \underline{C}$  also admits a common section, and by lemma 2.10.29, this is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, so we conclude that  $\underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{f}_1$  must also be equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$ . ■

## 2.11 Rectification of diagrams

**Prerequisites.** §§ 2.1, 2.5, 2.6, 2.7, 2.8, 2.10.

The goal of this section is to find sufficient conditions for the following:

**2.11.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories. We say homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of shape  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  **admit strong rectification** if there is a simplicially enriched full subcategory  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^\circ \subseteq [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  satisfying the following conditions:

- A morphism in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^\circ$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence if and only if it is a componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.
- The composite  $\pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^\circ] \hookrightarrow \pi_0[[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.
- For every small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ , the evaluation  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^\circ \times \underline{\mathcal{J}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}] \times \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  induces a map

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^\circ) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{I}} \times \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}})$$

that is bijective.

**2.11.2** REMARK. By propositions 2.5.20 and A.4.19, the localising functor  $\mathbf{SCat} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}$  preserves binary products, so the third condition implies that  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]^\circ$  has the universal property of an exponential object in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}$ .

**2.11.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories. We say homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of shape  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  **admit weak rectification** if the following conditions are satisfied:

- The localising functor  $\mathbf{SCat} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}$  induces a map

$$\mathbf{SFun}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}})$$

that is surjective.

- A pair of simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  become equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}$  if and only if there is a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting them.

**2.II.4** REMARK. Recalling [proposition 2.10.27](#), if homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit strong rectification, then they also admit weak rectification.

**2.II.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a small Kan-enriched category. If  $\underline{C}$  has either enough bridges or enough cobridges, then homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.*

*Proof.* Combine [lemma 2.10.33](#) and [corollary 5.4.3](#). ■

**2.II.6** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a small Kan-enriched category. Assuming homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification:*

- *If every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a left ample replacement, then the evident inclusion  $\text{ob } [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}} \hookrightarrow \text{SFun}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$  induces a bijection between the set of weak simplicial homotopy equivalence classes in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$  and the set  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$ .*
- *If every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a right ample replacement, then the evident inclusion  $\text{ob } [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}} \hookrightarrow \text{SFun}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$  induces a bijection between the set of weak simplicial homotopy equivalence classes in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}}$  and the set  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [corollary 2.8.33](#). ■

**2.II.7** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{I}$  be a Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{p} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, and let  $\underline{C}$  be a small Kan-enriched category. Assume the following hypotheses:*

- *$\underline{C}$  either has enough bridges or enough cobridges.*
- *There is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p}_* : [\underline{I}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  that preserves componentwise weak simplicial homotopy equivalences.*
- *For each simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\underline{p}_*(\underline{f})\underline{p}$  and  $\underline{f}$ .*

- For each simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{g} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\underline{g}$  and  $\underline{p}_*(\underline{g}p)$ .

Then homotopy coherent diagrams of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.

*Proof.* First, observe that  $\underline{p} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  induces the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{SFun}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}) \\ \mathrm{SFun}(\underline{p}, \underline{C}) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{SFun}(\underline{p}, \underline{C}) \\ \mathrm{SFun}(\underline{I}, \underline{C}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I}, \underline{C}) \end{array}$$

where the right vertical arrow is a bijection because  $\underline{p}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence and the bottom horizontal arrow is a surjection by [corollary 5.4.3](#). Thus, recalling [lemma 2.10.33](#), to verify that the map

$$\mathrm{SFun}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$$

is a surjection, it suffices to show that, for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{g} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\underline{g}p$  and  $\underline{f}$ . By hypothesis, we may take  $\underline{g} = \underline{p}_*(\underline{f})$ , so we indeed have a surjection.

Next, consider a pair of simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{g}_0, \underline{g}_1 : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  that become equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}$ . Let  $\underline{f}_0 = \underline{g}_0 p$  and  $\underline{f}_1 = \underline{g}_1 p$ . Clearly,  $\underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{f}_1$  become equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}$ , so by [proposition 2.11.5](#), there is a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\underline{f}_0$  and  $\underline{f}_1$ . Hence, there is also a zigzag connecting  $\underline{p}_*(\underline{f}_0)$  and  $\underline{p}_*(\underline{f}_1)$ , and by concatenation, we obtain a zigzag connecting  $\underline{g}_0$  and  $\underline{g}_1$ , as required.

Finally, observe that if  $\underline{g}_0$  and  $\underline{g}_1$  are connected by a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences, then [proposition 2.10.31](#) implies that  $\underline{g}_0$  and  $\underline{g}_1$  become equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C})$ . This completes the proof. ■

**2.11.8 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a small Kan-enriched category. Assuming  $\underline{C}$  either has enough bridges or enough cobridges:

- If there is a Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{I}$  and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence  $\underline{p} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  such that the right Bousfield–Kan

extensions  $\text{Ran}_p^{\text{BK}} \underline{f} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\text{Ran}_{\text{id}_{\underline{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exist for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.

- If there is a Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{I}$  and a Dwyer–Kan equivalence  $p : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$  such that the left Bousfield–Kan extensions  $\text{Lan}_p^{\text{BK}} \underline{f} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\text{Lan}_{\text{id}_{\underline{I}}}^{\text{BK}} \underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exist for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , then homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Recalling propositions 2.7.13, 2.7.15, and 2.8.45, and corollary 2.8.49, we see that  $p_* = \text{Ran}_p^{\text{BK}}$  satisfies the hypotheses of lemma 2.11.7. The claim follows. ■

**2.11.9** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small simplicially enriched categories and let  $\underline{C}$  be a small Kan-enriched category.*

- Let  $\underline{R} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  be the functor part of a right ample replacement functor and let  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}'}$  be a simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}}$  containing the image of  $\underline{R}$ . Assuming both  $\underline{C}$  and  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}'}$  have either enough bridges or enough cobridges, if homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{I} \times \underline{J}$  admit weak rectification, then there is a bijection

$$\text{Ho SCat}(\underline{I}, [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}'}) \rightarrow \text{Ho SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C})$$

induced by the evaluation  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{R}'} \times \underline{J} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .

- Let  $\underline{Q} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  be the functor part of a left ample replacement functor and let  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}'}$  be a simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}}$  containing the image of  $\underline{Q}$ . Assuming both  $\underline{C}$  and  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}'}$  have either enough bridges or enough cobridges, if homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{I} \times \underline{J}$  admit weak rectification, then there is a bijection

$$\text{Ho SCat}(\underline{I}, [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}'}) \rightarrow \text{Ho SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C})$$

induced by the evaluation  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\text{L}'} \times \underline{J} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.



First, let us verify surjectivity. By hypothesis,

$$\mathbf{SFun}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho\,SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C})$$

is surjective, so consider a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{g} : \underline{I} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ . This defines a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{k} : \underline{I} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$ , and by [proposition 2.8.36](#),  $\hat{k} = \underline{R} \circ \underline{k}$  defines a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{I} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}'}$  such that the corresponding  $\hat{g} : \underline{I} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $\underline{g} \Rightarrow \hat{g}$ . This proves surjectivity.

Injectivity remains to be verified. Let  $\hat{k}_0, \hat{k}_1 : \underline{I} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}'}$  be simplicially enriched diagrams such that the corresponding  $\hat{g}_0, \hat{g}_1 : \underline{I} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  become equal in  $\mathbf{Ho\,SCat}$ . Then there is a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\hat{g}_0$  and  $\hat{g}_1$ , so by [corollary 2.8.33](#), there is a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences connecting  $\hat{k}_0$  and  $\hat{k}_1$ . [Proposition 2.10.31](#) then implies that  $\hat{k}_0$  and  $\hat{k}_1$  become equal in  $\mathbf{Ho\,SCat}$ . This completes the proof.  $\blacksquare$

**2.11.10** *LEMMA. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be small Kan-enriched categories and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

- *Assume the following hypotheses:*
  - *Homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  and in  $\underline{D}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.*
  - *Simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  admit right ample replacements.*
  - *$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Then  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}, \underline{U}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{R}}$  is homotopically essentially surjective on objects. In particular, if  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is fully faithful (in the simplicially enriched sense), then  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}, \underline{U}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{R}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

- *Assume the following hypotheses:*
  - *Homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  and in  $\underline{D}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.*
  - *Simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  admit left ample replacements.*
  - *$[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

Then  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\underline{L}, \underline{U}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{L}}$  is homotopically essentially surjective on objects. In particular, if  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is fully faithful (in the simplicially enriched sense), then  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\underline{L}, \underline{U}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{L}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a right ample diagram. Since  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, the induced map

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{U}) : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{C}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{J}, \underline{D})$$

is a bijection, so there must exist a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  such that  $\underline{UF}$  and  $\underline{G}$  are connected by a zigzag of simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalences. Moreover, the hypotheses imply that we may assume  $\underline{F}$  is in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\underline{R}, \underline{U}}$ . Then by [corollary 2.8.33](#), there is a simplicial homotopy equivalence between  $\underline{UF}$  and  $\underline{G}$  in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{R}}$ . This proves that  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\underline{R}, \underline{U}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{R}}$  is homotopically essentially surjective on objects. Finally, notice that if  $\underline{U} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is fully faithful, then so is  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\underline{R}, \underline{U}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{R}}$ , so it is indeed a Dwyer–Kan equivalence in that case.  $\blacksquare$

### 2.II.II DEFINITION.

- A **left abundant Kan-enriched category** is a Kan-enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  that satisfies the following conditions for every small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{J}$ :
  - There is a left ample replacement functor for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .
  - $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\underline{L}}$  has enough cobridges.
  - For any Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{I}$  and any Dwyer–Kan equivalence  $\underline{p} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{J}$ , there is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p}_! : [\underline{I}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\underline{L}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\underline{L}}$  with these properties:
    - \* For every left ample diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , there is a simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $\underline{f} \Rightarrow \underline{p}_!(\underline{f})\underline{p}_*$ .
    - \* For every left ample diagram  $\underline{g} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  and any left ample replacement  $\underline{\tilde{f}}$  for  $\underline{gp} : \underline{I} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , there is a simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $\underline{p}_!(\underline{\tilde{f}}) \Rightarrow \underline{g}$ .

- A **right abundant Kan-enriched category** is a Kan-enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  that satisfies the following conditions for every small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ :
  - There is a right ample replacement functor for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .
  - $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\mathbf{R}}$  has enough bridges.
  - For any Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and any Dwyer–Kan equivalence  $\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{J}}$ , there is a simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{p}_* : [\underline{\mathcal{I}}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\mathbf{R}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\mathbf{R}}$  with these properties:
    - \* For every right ample diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , there is a simplicially enriched natural weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $\underline{p}_*(\underline{f})\underline{p} \Rightarrow \underline{f}$ .
    - \* For every right ample diagram  $\underline{g} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  and any right ample replacement  $\hat{\underline{f}}$  for  $\underline{g}\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , there is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence  $\underline{g} \Rightarrow \underline{p}_*(\hat{\underline{f}})$  in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\mathbf{L}}$ .

**2.11.12** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a Kan-enriched category.*

- *If cobar constructions (for all small simplicially enriched diagrams and weights) exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , then  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is right abundant.*
- *If bar constructions (for all small simplicially enriched diagrams and weights) exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , then  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is left abundant.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

The existence of right ample replacement functors is a consequence of [corollary 2.8.37](#). For the existence of bridges in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\mathbf{R}}$ , we apply [lemma 2.8.22](#) and [proposition 2.10.32](#). Finally, to verify the third condition, we combine [propositions 2.7.13](#) and [2.7.15](#), [corollary 2.8.33](#), [proposition 2.8.45](#), and [corollary 2.8.49](#). ■

**2.11.13** LEMMA. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small simplicially enriched categories, let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a Kan-enriched category, and let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a small simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .*

- *If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is left abundant, then there is a simplicially enriched full subcategory  $\underline{\mathcal{D}} \subseteq \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  that satisfies the following conditions:*

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

- $\underline{D}$  is small.
  - $\underline{C} \subseteq \underline{D}$  and the inclusion  $\underline{C} \hookrightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.
  - Homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{D}$  of shape  $\underline{I} \times \underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.
  - Both  $\underline{D}$  and  $[\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{L}, \underline{V}}$  have enough cobridges, where  $\underline{V} : \underline{D} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is the inclusion.
  - There is a left  $\underline{V}$ -ample replacement functor for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ .
- If  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is right abundant, then there is a simplicially enriched full subcategory  $\underline{D} \subseteq \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  that satisfies the following conditions:
    - $\underline{D}$  is small.
    - $\underline{C} \subseteq \underline{D}$  and the inclusion  $\underline{C} \hookrightarrow \underline{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.
    - Homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{D}$  of shape  $\underline{I} \times \underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.
    - Both  $\underline{D}$  and  $[\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\underline{R}, \underline{V}}$  have enough bridges, where  $\underline{V} : \underline{D} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is the inclusion.
    - There is a right  $\underline{V}$ -ample replacement functor for simplicially enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{\mathcal{K}}$  be a Bergner-cofibrant small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{p} : \underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow \underline{I} \times \underline{J}$  be a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, and let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal such that  $\max \{|\text{ob } \underline{J}|, |\text{ob } \underline{\mathcal{K}}|\} < \kappa$ . We define by transfinite recursion a simplicially enriched full subcategory  $\underline{D}_\alpha \subseteq \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  for each ordinal  $\alpha \leq \kappa$  as below:

- $\underline{D}_0 = \underline{C}$ .
- For each ordinal  $\alpha < \kappa$ , let  $\underline{V}_\alpha : \underline{D}_\alpha \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be the inclusion and let  $\underline{D}_{\alpha+1}$  be the simplicially enriched full subcategory obtained by adding to  $\underline{D}_\alpha$  the following objects in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ :
  - For each left  $\underline{V}_\alpha$ -ample diagram  $\underline{f} : \underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow \underline{D}_\alpha$ , the vertices of the simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{p}_!(\underline{f}) : \underline{I} \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .

- The vertices of the canonical cobridge corresponding to each cospan of weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $\underline{D}_\alpha$  (considered as a cospan in  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ ).
  - The vertices of the canonical cobridge corresponding to each cospan of weak simplicial homotopy equivalences in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{D}_\alpha]_{L, V_\alpha}$  (considered as a cospan in  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_L$ ).
  - The vertices of the canonical left ample replacement for every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}_\alpha$  (considered as a simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$ ).
- For each limit ordinal  $\lambda \leq \kappa$ , let  $\underline{D}_\lambda = \bigcup_{\alpha < \lambda} \underline{D}_\alpha$ .

Let  $\underline{D} = \underline{D}_\kappa$ . Recalling [lemma 2.8.21](#), [proposition 2.10.31](#), [lemma 2.11.7](#) and [corollary 5.4.3](#), it is straightforward to see that  $\underline{D}$  has the required properties. ■

**2.11.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{J}$  be a small simplicially enriched category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a Kan-enriched category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a small simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ , and let  $\underline{U} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be the inclusion. Assume the following hypotheses:*

- $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  has either enough bridges or enough cobridges.
- Homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit weak rectification.

Then:

- If every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a left  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement and  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is left abundant, then for every small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ , there is a natural bijection

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{L, \underline{U}}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{I}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}})$$

induced by the evaluation functor  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{L, \underline{U}} \times \underline{J} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}] \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , and in particular, homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit strong rectification.

- If every simplicially enriched diagram  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  admits a right  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacement and  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  is right abundant, then for every small simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$ , there is a natural bijection

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{I}}, [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]_{R, \underline{U}}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{\mathcal{I}} \times \underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{C}})$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

induced by the evaluation functor  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{R}, \underline{U}} \times \underline{J} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \times \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , and in particular, homotopy coherent diagrams in  $\underline{C}$  of shape  $\underline{J}$  admit strong rectification.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To begin, let  $\underline{D}$  be a small simplicially enriched full subcategory of  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  as in lemma 2.11.13 and let  $\underline{V} : \underline{D} \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{M}}$  be the inclusion. Then, by construction, the hypotheses of lemma 2.11.9 are satisfied, so there is a bijection

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I}, [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{V}}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{D})$$

induced by the evaluation.

Now consider the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{U}} & \hookrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{V}} & \hookrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}]_{\mathbf{L}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}'} & \hookrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}} & \hookrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{M}}] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}} & \hookrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{D}] & & \end{array}$$

where  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}'} = [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}} \cap [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}}$ . By lemma 2.8.41, the existence of left  $\underline{U}$ -ample replacements implies that the left vertical arrows are Dwyer–Kan equivalences, and similarly,  $[\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{V}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence. We may then apply lemma 2.11.10 to deduce that  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{V}}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.

Finally, we note that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I}, [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{U}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C}) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I}, [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{V}}) & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{D}) \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is induced by the inclusion  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{U}} \hookrightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{D}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{V}}$ , the right vertical arrow is induced by the inclusion  $\underline{C} \hookrightarrow \underline{D}$ , and the horizontal arrows are induced by the evaluation, so we may apply the 2-out-of-3 property to deduce that

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I}, [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]_{\mathbf{L}, \underline{U}}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{SCat}(\underline{I} \times \underline{J}, \underline{C})$$

is a bijection, as required. We may then use corollaries [2.8.20](#) and [2.8.32](#) to complete the proof. ■

## 2.12 Simplicial localisation

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.2, 1.5, 1.6, 1.11, 2.1, 2.5, 2.9, 3.1, 5.5, 5.6, A.4.

When one passes from a relative category to its homotopy category by freely inverting the weak equivalences, one loses much of the homotopical information. Dwyer and Kan [1980a,b,c] instead proposed a more sophisticated notion of localisation that produces a simplicial category retaining all the homotopical information, at least in the case of a simplicial model category.

**2.12.1** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small relative category.

- The **standard resolution** of a  $C$  is the simplicial relative category  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet$ , where  $\text{und } \mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet = \mathbf{S}(\text{und } C)_\bullet$  and  $\text{weq } \mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet = \mathbf{S}(\text{weq } C)_\bullet$ .
- The **standard simplicial localisation** of  $C$  is the simplicial category  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet$  obtained by applying  $\text{Ho}$  to  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet$  degreeewise, and the **simplicial localising functor** is the induced simplicial functor  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet$ .

**2.12.2** REMARK. As in remark 2.9.23, the face and degeneracy operators of the simplicial set  $\text{ob } \mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet$  are trivial, so we may regard it as a simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)$ .

**2.12.3** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small relative category. The standard augmentation for  $C$  induces an isomorphism  $\pi_0[\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)] \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$ .

*Proof.* Let  $D$  be an ordinary category and let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  be a functor that sends weak equivalences in  $C$  to isomorphisms in  $D$ . Then, composing with the standard augmentation  $(\epsilon_C)_\bullet : \mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow C$  yields a simplicial functor  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow D$  that sends weak equivalences in each  $\mathbf{S}(C)_n$  to isomorphisms in  $D$ , so the degreeewise universal property of  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet$  yields a unique simplicial functor  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow D$  making the diagram below commute (strictly),

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet & \xrightarrow{(\epsilon_C)_\bullet} & C \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow F \\ \mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet & \dashrightarrow & D \end{array}$$

where  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow \mathbf{Lo}(C)_\bullet$  is the simplicial localising functor.  $D$  is an ordinary category, so proposition 2.5.14 says the corresponding simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C) \rightarrow D$  factors through the  $\pi_0$ -localising functor  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C) \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)]$  in a



unique way. Thus,  $\pi_0[\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)]$  has the universal property of  $\mathbf{Ho} C$ , and the required isomorphism  $\pi_0[\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)] \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} C$  is induced by the ordinary localising functor  $C \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} C$ . ■

**2.12.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category. The following are equivalent for a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ :*

- (i) *The morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .*
- (ii) *The morphism in  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)$  corresponding to  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism.*
- (iii) *The morphism in  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_0$  corresponding to  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). For each natural number  $n$ , the morphism in  $\mathbf{S}(C)_n$  corresponding to  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence (by definition), so its image in  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_n$  is an isomorphism. Thus, the morphism corresponding to  $f$  in the simplicially enriched category  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)$  is an isomorphism.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Since  $\mathbf{und} \mathbf{S}(C)_0$  and  $\mathbf{weq} \mathbf{S}(C)_0$  are free categories, the morphisms in  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_0$  can be represented by reduced composable strings generated by morphisms in  $\mathbf{und} C$  and the formal inverses of morphisms in  $\mathbf{weq} C$ . Thus, a morphism in  $C$  corresponds to an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Lo}(C)_0$  if and only if it is a weak equivalence in  $C$ . ■

To justify the definition of the standard simplicial localisation, we must first study the case of the fundamental category of a graph.

**2.12.5** LEMMA. *Let  $O$  be a set and let  $C$  and  $D$  be objects in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ . Regarding  $N(C)$  and  $N(D)$  as simplicial subsets of  $N(C +^O D)$ , the inclusion*

$$N(C) \cup N(D) \hookrightarrow N(C +^O D)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $F : \mathbf{sGrph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}_O$  be the free simplicially enriched category over  $O$  functor. If  $C = FX$  and  $D = FY$  for some  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathbf{sGrph}_O$ , then the claim reduces to lemma 1.11.47. In general, consider the standard resolutions

of  $C$  and  $D$ . Since the standard resolution is degreewise free, for each natural number  $n$ , the inclusion

$$N(S(C)_n) \cup N(S(D)_n) \hookrightarrow N(S(C)_n +^O S(D)_n)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence; thus, by [theorem 1.6.10](#),

$$|N(S(C)_\bullet)| \cup |N(S(D)_\bullet)| \hookrightarrow |N(S(C)_\bullet +^O S(D)_\bullet)|$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence. We have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} |N(S(C)_\bullet)| \cup |N(S(D)_\bullet)| & \hookrightarrow & |N(S(C)_\bullet +^O S(D)_\bullet)| \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ N(C) \cup N(D) & \hookrightarrow & N(C +^O D) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the respective standard augmentations; but [corollary 2.3.14](#) and [proposition 2.3.22](#) (plus [proposition 1.5.4](#)) together with lemmas [1.5.19](#) and [2.9.32](#) (plus lemmas [1.6.8](#) and [2.5.23](#)) imply that the vertical arrows in the diagram are weak homotopy equivalences, so we may use the 2-out-of-3 property to deduce that the bottom arrow is also a weak homotopy equivalence, as desired.  $\blacksquare$

**2.12.6** LEMMA. *Let  $O$  be a set, let  $(C_i \mid i \in I)$  be a small family of categories over  $O$ , and let  $C = \sum_{i \in I}^O C_i$  be their coproduct in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ . Regarding each  $N(C_i)$  as a simplicial subset of  $N(C)$ , the inclusion*

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} N(C_i) \hookrightarrow N(C)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be the poset of finite subsets of  $I$ . By [lemma 2.12.5](#) (and induction), for each finite  $J \subseteq I$ , setting  $C_J = \sum_{j \in J}^O C_j$ , the inclusion

$$\bigcup_{j \in J} N(C_j) \hookrightarrow N(C_J)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence; but  $\mathcal{J}$  is directed, so by [proposition 2.9.11](#),

$$\varinjlim_{J \in \mathcal{J}} \bigcup_{j \in J} N(C_j) \hookrightarrow \varinjlim_{J \in \mathcal{J}} N(C_J)$$

is also a weak homotopy equivalence, as required.  $\blacksquare$

**2.12.7** LEMMA. *Let  $G$  be a 1-skeletal simplicial set. The unit  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\pi_1 G)$  is an anodyne extension.*

*Proof.* It is not hard to verify that the unit  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\pi_1 G)$  is a monomorphism, so by [proposition 1.5.12](#), it suffices to show that  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\pi_1 G)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

Let  $O$  be the set of vertices of  $G$  and consider  $\pi_1 G$  as a category over  $O$ . It is easy to check (using the contractibility of  $\Delta^1$  and  $N(\pi_1 \Delta^1)$ , plus [proposition 1.5.16](#)) that  $\eta_G : G \rightarrow N(\pi_1 G)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence when  $G$  has a unique non-degenerate edge. In general, we note that the functor  $\pi_1 : \mathbf{Grph}_O \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}_O$  preserves coproducts (because it is a left adjoint), so we may apply [lemma 2.12.6](#) to deduce the claim for all 1-skeletal simplicial sets  $G$ . ■

**2.12.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $G$  be a 1-skeletal simplicial set. There is a natural commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \longrightarrow & N(\tau_1 G) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \\ G & \longrightarrow & N(\pi_1 G) \end{array}$$

*where the horizontal arrows are the components of the respective adjunctions and the vertical arrow is induced by the unit of the evident adjunction*

$$\mathbf{I} \dashv U : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

*and moreover, every arrow in the diagram is an anodyne extension.*

*Proof.* It is not hard to verify that  $N(\tau_1 G) \rightarrow N(\pi_1 G)$  is a monomorphism, and the commutativity of the diagram is a consequence of the fact that adjunctions can be composed. Thus, recalling the 2-out-of-3 property and [proposition 1.5.12](#), the claim is a corollary of [proposition 1.11.46](#) and [lemma 2.12.7](#). ■

**2.12.9** REMARK. In view of [proposition 7.2.30](#), we should regard the above result as saying that  $\pi_1 G$  is the groupoid completion of  $\tau_1 G$  even when regarded as an  $(\infty, 1)$ -category.

**2.12.10** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small category. If we regard  $C$  as a maximal relative category, then the arrows in the diagram below are weak homotopy equivalences,*

$$N(C) \longleftarrow |N^{ss}(\underline{S}(C))_\bullet| \longrightarrow |N^{ss}(\underline{Lo}(C))_\bullet|$$

*where the leftward-pointing arrow is induced by the standard augmentation and the rightward-pointing arrow is induced by the simplicial localisation functor.*

*Proof.* Proposition 2.9.24 says that the standard augmentation is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence, so by theorem 1.6.10 and lemma 2.5.23, the leftward-pointing arrow is a weak homotopy equivalence. Similarly, by lemma 1.6.8, it suffices to verify that the morphism

$$N(\underline{S}(C)_\bullet) \rightarrow N(\underline{Lo}(C)_\bullet)$$

is a degreewise weak homotopy equivalence; but each  $\underline{S}(C)_n$  is freely generated by a reflexive graph, so this is a corollary of proposition 2.12.8. ■

**2.12.11** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a simplicially enriched category, let  $O = \text{ob } C$ , and let  $\underline{C}$  be the simplicially enriched category corresponding to the simplicial groupoid obtained by inverting degreewise every morphism in the simplicial category  $C_\bullet$ . Assuming  $\underline{C}$  is cofibrant in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *Every morphism in  $\underline{C}$  is a weak simplicial homotopy equivalence.*
- (ii) *The simplicial homotopy category  $\pi_0[\underline{C}]$  is a groupoid.*
- (iii) *The localising functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Use proposition 2.5.15.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). See Proposition 9.3 in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980a]. □

Recalling that the Dwyer–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  is left proper (proposition 2.9.34), we may apply proposition 6.1.23 to complete the justification of the definition of the standard simplicial localisation with the following observation:

**2.12.12** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category and let  $O = \text{ob } C$ . There is a natural pushout diagram in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\text{weq } C) & \hookrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(\max \text{ weq } C) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\text{und } C) & \hookrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C) \end{array}$$

where the morphism  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\text{weq } C) \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\text{und } C)$  induced by the inclusion is a standard cofibration, the horizontal arrows are induced by the simplicial localisation functors, and every arrow is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$ .

*Proof.* Regarding objects in  $\mathbf{SCat}_O$  as simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Cat}_O$ , the claim that we have a pushout diagram can be verified degreewise; but the diagram in degree  $n$  is just

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{S}(\text{weq } C)_n & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{IS}(\text{weq } C)_n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{S}(\text{und } C)_n & \hookrightarrow & \text{Ho } \mathbf{S}(C)_n \end{array}$$

and it is not hard to see that this is indeed a pushout diagram. Similarly, the property of being a monomorphism can be checked degreewise. A variation on the proof of lemma 2.9.17 shows that  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(\text{weq } C) \hookrightarrow \underline{\mathbf{S}}(\text{und } C)$  is a standard cofibration. ■

**2.I2.I3** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in a relative category  $C$ .

- A **hammock** in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of width  $k$  and length  $n$  is a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X & \longrightarrow & Z_{0,1} & \longrightarrow & Z_{0,2} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & Z_{0,n-2} & \longrightarrow & Z_{0,n-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \longrightarrow & Z_{1,1} & \longrightarrow & Z_{1,2} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & Z_{1,n-2} & \longrightarrow & Z_{1,n-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\
 \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \ddots & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \longrightarrow & Z_{k-1,1} & \longrightarrow & Z_{k-1,2} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & Z_{k-1,n-2} & \longrightarrow & Z_{k-1,n-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \longrightarrow & Z_{k,1} & \longrightarrow & Z_{k,2} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & Z_{k,n-2} & \longrightarrow & Z_{k,n-1} & \longrightarrow & Y
 \end{array}$$

such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- In each column, all horizontal arrows point in the same direction.
- All leftward-pointing arrows are weak equivalences.
- All vertical arrows are weak equivalences.

We allow both  $k$  and  $n$  to be zero; if  $n = 0$  then we must have  $X = Y$ .

- A **reduced hammock** in  $C$  is a hammock with these additional properties:
  - In each column, not every horizontal arrow is an identity morphism.
  - Horizontal arrows in adjacent columns point in opposite directions.

**2.I2.I4** REMARK. In other words, a hammock in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  is a composable sequence of morphisms in the category  $C^T(X, Y)$  for some zigzag type  $T$ . It is clear that we can transform any hammock into a reduced hammock by iteratively omitting any column of identity morphisms and composing any adjacent columns where possible.

**2.12.15** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small relative category. The **hammock localisation** of  $C$  is the simplicial category  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)$  defined below:

- The objects are those in  $C$ .
- For each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects, the hom-space  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y)$  is the simplicial set whose  $k$ -simplices are the reduced hammocks of width  $k$  (and any length), with face (resp. degeneracy) operators defined by omitting (resp. repeating) a row of objects and reducing the resulting hammock if necessary.
- Composition is defined by concatenation of hammocks (reducing as necessary), and identities are hammocks of length 0.

**2.12.16** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{Z}$  be the category of zigzag types, let  $\mathbf{Z}_{\rightarrow}$  be the subcategory of monomorphisms, and let  $\mathbf{Z}^{\leftarrow}$  be the subcategory of epimorphisms. Then  $\mathbf{Z}$  is a Reedy category with direct subcategory  $\mathbf{Z}_{\rightarrow}$  and inverse subcategory  $\mathbf{Z}^{\leftarrow}$ , and moreover it has cofibrant constants.

*Proof.* Let  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be defined by  $\deg(n, U, V) = n$ . It is clear that this function makes  $\mathbf{Z}_{\rightarrow}$  a direct category and  $\mathbf{Z}^{\leftarrow}$  an inverse category. Proposition A.4.30 then gives the required factorisation, and lemma A.4.35 shows that it is a Reedy category with cofibrant constants. ■

**2.12.17** COROLLARY. The functor  $\varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} : [\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves weak equivalences between Reedy-cofibrant diagrams.

*Proof.* Apply (proposition 5.3.2 and) Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6) and proposition 5.6.24 to proposition 2.12.16. ■

**2.12.18** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , and let  $N(C^*(X, Y)) : \mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the diagram described in remark A.4.42.

- The diagram  $N(C^*(X, Y)) : \mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is Reedy-cofibrant.
- More generally, if  $F : \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  is any functor that preserves (epimorphisms and) pushouts of epimorphisms along epimorphisms,<sup>[1]</sup> then the diagram  $N(C^{F*}(X, Y)) : \mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is Reedy-cofibrant.

[1] Any functor that preserves pushouts of epimorphisms along epimorphisms must also preserve epimorphisms.

- (iii) The colimit  $\varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} N(C^*(X, Y))$  is naturally isomorphic to the hom-space  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y)$ .

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). First, let us show that  $C^*(X, Y)$  sends epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Z}$  to monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ . Indeed, if  $\sigma : S \rightarrow T$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$ , then the corresponding functor  $\sigma^* : C^T(X, Y) \rightarrow C^S(X, Y)$  must be one defined by inserting identity morphisms, so it is indeed a monomorphism. Since  $F : \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  preserves epimorphisms,  $C^{F*}(X, Y)$  also sends epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Z}$  to monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .

Secondly, we observe that  $C^*(X, Y)$  sends pushouts of epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Z}$  to pullbacks of monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ : this is clear using the methods of the proof of lemma A.4.36. As before, since  $F : \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  preserves pushouts of epimorphisms along epimorphisms,  $C^{F*}(X, Y)$  also sends pushouts of epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Z}$  to pullbacks of monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .

Thus, it follows that the latching object of the diagram  $N(C^{F*}(X, Y))$  at a zigzag type  $T$  is simply the simplicial subset of  $N(C^{FT}(X, Y))$  corresponding to the full subcategory of  $C^{FT}(X, Y)$  spanned by the joint image of all functors  $(F\sigma)^* : C^{FT'}(X, Y) \rightarrow C^{FT}(X, Y)$  where  $\sigma : T \rightarrow T'$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$ . In particular, the latching morphism of  $N(C^{F*}(X, Y))$  at  $T$  is a cofibration, so  $N(C^{F*}(X, Y))$  is indeed a Reedy-cofibrant diagram.

- (ii). It is clear that reduction defines a morphism  $N(C^T(X, Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y)$  and (using lemma A.4.33) it is not hard to see that this is a colimiting cocone. ■

**2.12.19 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be small relative categories.*

- (i) *For each relative functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$ , there is an induced simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)$  defined by applying  $F$  to hammocks componentwise, and this defines an (ordinary) functor  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H : \mathbf{RelCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat}$ .*
- (ii) *For each natural weak equivalence  $\varphi : F_0 \Rightarrow F_1$  of relative functors  $C \rightarrow D$  and each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $C$ , there is an intrinsic homotopy*



fitting into the following diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, F_0Y) & & \\
 & \nearrow^{\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F_0)} & & \searrow^{\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, \varphi_Y)} & \\
 \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) & & \Downarrow & & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, F_1Y) \\
 & \searrow_{\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F_1)} & & \nearrow_{\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(\varphi_X, F_1Y)} & \\
 & & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_1X, F_1Y) & & 
 \end{array}$$

*Proof.* (i). Obvious.

(ii). For any zigzag in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$ , we have the following natural hammock in  $D$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 F_0X & \xlongequal{\quad} & F_0X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{\quad} & F_0Y \xrightarrow{\varphi_Y} F_1Y \\
 \parallel & & \varphi_X \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \varphi_Y & \parallel \\
 F_0X & \xrightarrow{\varphi_X} & F_1X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{\quad} & F_1Y \xlongequal{\quad} & F_1Y
 \end{array}$$

This induces the required intrinsic homotopy. ■

**2.12.20** REMARK. Unlike the standard simplicial localisation, the hammock localisation of a relative category  $C$  is equipped with a natural functor  $C \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)$  that is bijective on objects and faithful (but not necessarily full).

**2.12.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category. If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ , then:*

- For each object  $S$  in  $C$ , the induced morphism

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(S, f) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(S, X) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(S, Y)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

- For each object  $T$  in  $C$ , the induced morphism

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(f, T) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(Y, T) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, T)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Recalling [remark A.4.4I](#), we see that for any zigzag in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $S$  to  $X$ , we have the following natural hammock:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} S & \text{---} & \cdots & \text{---} & X & \text{==} & X & \text{==} & X \\ \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \downarrow f & & \parallel \\ S & \text{---} & \cdots & \text{---} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X \end{array}$$

Similarly, for any zigzag in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $S$  to  $Y$ , we have the following natural hammock:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} S & \text{---} & \cdots & \text{---} & Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \downarrow f & & \parallel \\ S & \text{---} & \cdots & \text{---} & Y & \text{==} & Y & \text{==} & Y \end{array}$$

Thus, the morphism  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})(S, f) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})(S, X) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})(S, Y)$  is half of an intrinsic homotopy equivalence, hence is a weak homotopy equivalence (by [proposition 1.5.4](#)). ■

**2.12.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category. There is a natural functor*

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0 [\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})]$$

*and it is an isomorphism of categories.*

*Proof.* We have natural functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})$  and  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \pi_0 [\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})]$ ; and by [proposition 2.12.21](#), the composite functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0 [\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})]$  sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  to isomorphisms in  $\pi_0 [\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})]$ , so it must factor through the localising functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ . This yields the required natural functor  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0 [\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})]$ , and [theorem A.4.44](#) implies that it is an isomorphism of categories. ■

**2.12.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be small relative categories.*

- (i) *Given relative functors  $F_0, F_1 : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , if  $F_0$  and  $F_1$  are weakly equivalent (as objects in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]_h$ ), then  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F_0)$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence if and only if  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F_1)$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*
- (ii) *If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a relative equivalence, then  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{D})$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i). By [proposition 2.12.21](#), the morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, \varphi_Y) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, F_0Y) &\rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, F_1Y) \\ \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(\varphi_X, F_1Y) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_1X, F_1Y) &\rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, F_1Y) \end{aligned}$$

are weak homotopy equivalences, so by [lemma 1.5.3](#) and [proposition 2.12.19](#), the morphism

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F_0) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_0X, F_0Y)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F_1) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)(F_1X, F_1Y)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence. On the other hand, the induced functors  $\mathrm{Ho} F_0$  and  $\mathrm{Ho} F_1$  are isomorphic, so  $\mathrm{Ho} F_0$  is essentially surjective on objects if and only if  $\mathrm{Ho} F_1$  is essentially surjective on objects. Thus, by applying [propositions 2.5.18](#) and [2.12.22](#), the claim follows.

(ii). Let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  and  $G : D \rightarrow C$  be relative functors, and suppose  $\mathrm{id}_C$  and  $GF$  (resp.  $\mathrm{id}_D$  and  $FG$ ) are weakly equivalent. Then by (i),  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(GF)$  (resp.  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(FG)$ ) is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence. Thus, the 2-out-of-6 property ([lemma 2.5.21](#)) implies  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F)$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**2.12.24** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category and let  $\underline{D}$  be the following simplicially enriched category:*

- *The objects are those in  $C$ .*
- *For each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects, the hom-space  $\underline{D}(X, Y)$  is given by*

$$\underline{D}(X, Y)_n = \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathbf{S}(C)_n)(X, Y)_n$$

*where  $\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet$  is the standard resolution of  $C$ .*

- *Composition and identities are inherited from  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathbf{S}(C)_\bullet)$ .*

*Let  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)$  be the standard simplicial localisation of  $C$  and let  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)$  be the hammock localisation of  $C$ . Then:*

- (i) *The simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)$  induced by the standard augmentation  $\underline{\mathbf{S}}(C) \rightarrow C$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

- (ii) *The simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}(C)$  induced by the localising functors  $\mathbf{S}(C)_n \rightarrow \mathbf{Lo}(C)_n$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 2.2 in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980b].  $\square$

**2.12.25** DEFINITION. A **Dwyer–Kan equivalence of relative categories** is a relative functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  such that the induced simplicially enriched functor  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(F) : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(D)$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence of simplicially enriched categories.

**2.12.26** DEFINITION. Let  $C_\bullet$  be a simplicial category. The **flattening** of  $C_\bullet$  is the relative category  $C^\flat$  defined below:

- The objects are pairs  $(n, X)$ , where  $n$  is a natural number and  $X$  is an object in  $C_n$ .
- A morphism  $(n, X) \rightarrow (m, Y)$  is a pair  $(\varphi, f)$ , where  $\varphi : [m] \rightarrow [n]$  is a morphism in  $\Delta$  and  $f : \varphi^* X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $C_m$ ; a weak equivalence is any morphism of the form  $(\varphi, \text{id}) : (n, X) \rightarrow (m, \varphi^* X)$ .
- Given morphisms  $(\varphi, f) : (n, X) \rightarrow (m, Y)$  and  $(\psi, g) : (m, Y) \rightarrow (l, Z)$ , their composite is  $(\varphi \circ \psi, g \circ \psi^* f) : (n, X) \rightarrow (l, Z)$ .

In other words,  $C^\flat$  is the Grothendieck construction applied to  $C_\bullet$  considered as a functor  $\Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ .

**2.12.27** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathbf{RelCat}$  be the category of small relative categories and let  $\mathbf{SCat}$  be the category of small simplicially enriched categories.*

- (i) *There is a zigzag of natural Dwyer–Kan equivalences between  $\text{id}_{\mathbf{SCat}}$  and  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H((-)^\flat)$ .*
- (ii) *There is a zigzag of natural Dwyer–Kan equivalences between  $\text{id}_{\mathbf{RelCat}}$  and  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(-)^\flat$ .*
- (iii) *If we regard  $\mathbf{RelCat}$  as a homotopical category where the weak equivalences are the Dwyer–Kan equivalences of relative categories, then the functors*

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(-) : \mathbf{RelCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{SCat} \quad (-)^\flat : \mathbf{SCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{RelCat}$$

*are a mutually quasi-inverse pair of homotopical equivalences.*

*Proof.* See paragraph 2.5 and Proposition 3.1 in [Barwick and Kan, 2012].  $\square$

**2.12.28** **THEOREM** (Relative Yoneda embedding). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category and let  $h_\bullet : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]_h$  be the relative functor defined by the formula below:*

$$h_Y(X) = \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})(X, Y)$$

(i) *For each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the induced hom-space morphism*

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H([\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]_h)(X, Y)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets.*

(ii) *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the full relative subcategory of  $[\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]_h$  spanned by the relative functors  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  that are naturally weakly equivalent to one in the image of  $h_\bullet$ . Then the functor  $h_\bullet : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a Dwyer–Kan equivalence of relative categories.*

*Proof.* See paragraph 4.3 in [Barwick and Kan, 2011].  $\square$

## 2.I3 Homotopical calculi of fractions

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.2, 1.5, 1.II, 2.I, 2.5, 2.I2, 3.I, 3.5, A.4.

**2.I3.I** DEFINITION. A small relative category  $C$  admits a **homotopical three-arrow calculus** when it satisfies the following condition:

- Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, let  $\mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $k$ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $l$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $k$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $l$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. Then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

REMARK. A small relative category  $C$  admits a **homotopy calculus of fractions** in the sense of Dwyer and Kan [1980b] precisely when *both*  $C$  and  $\text{weq } C$  (regarded as a relative subcategory with the same weak equivalences) admit homotopical three-arrow calculi.

**2.I3.2** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } C$ , let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be zigzag types, and let  $T * S$  be their concatenation:

$$\bullet \text{---}\text{\scriptsize of type } S \text{---}\bullet \text{---}\text{\scriptsize of type } T \text{---}\bullet$$

- If the rightmost arrow of  $S$  points rightwards and the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points rightwards, then

$$C^{T*S}(X, Y) \cong \mathbf{G}(C^T(-, Y), \mathcal{W}, C^S(X, -))$$

naturally in  $X, Y, T$ , and  $S$ .

- If the rightmost arrow of  $S$  points leftwards and the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points leftwards, then

$$C^{T*S}(X, Y) \cong \mathbf{G}(C^S(X, -), \mathcal{W}, C^T(-, Y))$$

naturally in  $X, Y, T$ , and  $S$ .

- If the rightmost arrow of  $S$  points rightwards and the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points leftwards, then

$$C^{T*S}(X, Y) \cong \mathbf{G}(\Delta\mathbb{1}, \mathcal{W}, C^T(-, Y) \times C^S(X, -))$$

naturally in  $X, Y, T$ , and  $S$ .

- If the rightmost arrow of  $S$  points leftwards and the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points rightwards, then

$$C^{T*S}(X, Y) \cong \mathbf{G}(C^T(-, Y) \times C^S(X, -), \mathcal{W}, \Delta\mathbb{1})$$

naturally in  $X, Y, T$ , and  $S$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**2.13.3** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate zigzag types, let  $\mathcal{H}_0$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

let  $s_0, s_1 : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  be the two functors defined by inserting an identity morphism, and let  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  be the functor defined by composing the middle two arrows.

- (i)  $d \circ s_0 = d \circ s_1 = \text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_1}$ .
- (ii)  $s_0, s_1 : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  and  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  are all weak homotopy equivalences of categories.

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

*Proof.* (i). Obvious.

(ii). There is a natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_1} \Rightarrow d \circ s$  whose component at an object in  $\mathcal{H}_1$ , say

$$X \text{ --- } \bullet \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xleftarrow{u} \bullet \text{ --- } Y$$

is given by the commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \text{---} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{v} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u} & \bullet \text{ --- } Y \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & \downarrow v & & \parallel \\ X & \text{---} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{v \circ u} & \bullet & \text{---} & Y \end{array}$$

Thus, by [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [proposition 1.5.4](#),  $s_0, s_1 : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  and  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  are all indeed weak homotopy equivalences of categories.  $\blacksquare$

**2.13.4** REMARK. Thus, in the definition of ‘homotopical three-arrow calculus’, the condition is automatically satisfied when  $k = 0$  or  $l = 0$  (or both).

**2.13.5** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate zigzag types, let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, let  $\mathcal{H}_0^+$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \text{ --- } \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{l \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1^+$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \text{ --- } \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{l \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1^+$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus, then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1^+$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* Apply the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences of categories and [corollary 1.11.25](#) to [lemma 2.13.2](#).  $\blacksquare$



**2.13.6** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $S$  be a zigzag type of the form below,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \rightsquigarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

let  $k$  be the number of forward-pointing arrows in  $S$ , let  $T$  be the following zigzag type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

let  $\sigma : S \rightarrow T$  be the evident morphism of zigzag types that sends all interior backward-pointing arrows in  $S$  to identity morphisms, and let  $\mathcal{C}^S(X, Y)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{C}^T(X, Y)$ ) be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  of type  $S$  (resp.  $T$ ) from  $X$  to  $Y$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus, then the functor  $s : \mathcal{C}^T(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^S(X, Y)$  induced by  $\sigma : S \rightarrow T$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* Recalling that the class of weak homotopy equivalences of categories is closed under composition, we can reduce the claim to lemmas 2.13.5 and 2.13.3 by factoring  $\sigma : S \rightarrow T$  as a sequence of morphisms of zigzag types of the appropriate nature and considering the corresponding factorisation of  $s : \mathcal{C}^T(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^S(X, Y)$ . ■

**2.13.7** THEOREM (Fundamental theorem of homotopical three-arrow calculi). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\mathcal{H}(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type:

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus, then the reduction morphism

$$N(\mathcal{H}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{C})(X, Y)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence.

*Proof.* We follow the proof of Proposition 6.2 in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980b].

Let  $F : \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  be the evident functor that sends each zigzag type  $T$  to the zigzag type

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } T]{} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

and let  $G : \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  be the evident functor that sends each zigzag type  $S$  with  $k$  rightward-pointing arrows to the following zigzag type:

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

Let  $T_{\rightarrow}$  (resp.  $T_{\leftarrow}$ ) be the zigzag type consisting of a single rightward-pointing (resp. leftward-pointing) arrow. First, let us show that the colimiting cocone component

$$\mathbf{Z}(GT_{\rightarrow}, T) \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{Z}(G, T)$$

is a bijection for all zigzag types  $T$ . Indeed, by [lemma A.4.33](#), we see that  $\mathbf{Z}(GS, T)$  is empty unless  $T$  is a zigzag type of the form below,

$$\bullet \xleftarrow{n \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{m \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{l \text{ arrows}} \bullet$$

where  $l, m, n$  are natural numbers and  $l + m + n \geq 1$ ; moreover:

- If  $m \geq 1$ , then there is a unique morphism  $GT_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow T$ .
- If  $m = 0$ , then there are  $l + n + 1$  morphisms  $GT_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow T$ , all of which factor through the unique epimorphism  $GT_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow GT_{\leftarrow}$  (necessarily uniquely).

Similarly, for any zigzag type  $S'$  consisting of only rightward-pointing arrows, there is a unique morphism  $T_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow S'$ , and its image under  $G$  is the unique morphism  $GT_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow GS'$ , and it is clear that any zigzag type  $S$  with at least one rightward-pointing arrow admits a unique morphism  $\sigma : S \rightarrow S'$  such that  $S'$  consists of only rightward-pointing arrows and  $G\sigma = \text{id}_{GS'}$ . On the other hand, there are unique morphisms  $T_{\rightarrow} * T_{\leftarrow} \rightarrow T_{\rightarrow}$  and  $T_{\rightarrow} * T_{\leftarrow} \rightarrow T_{\leftarrow}$ , and for any zigzag type  $S'$  consisting of only leftward-pointing arrows, there is a unique morphism  $T_{\leftarrow} \rightarrow S'$ , so we conclude that each connected component of the comma category  $(G \downarrow T)$  contains a unique object corresponding to each morphism  $GT_{\rightarrow} \rightarrow T$ . But  $\varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{Z}(G, T)$  can be identified with the set of connected components of the comma category, so this proves the claim.

Now, taking  $H = \mathbf{Z}(G-, -)$  and applying the Yoneda lemma, we obtain natural isomorphisms

$$\mathbf{N}(C^{G*}(X, Y)) \cong H \star_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{N}(C^*(X, Y))$$

and by [proposition A.6.15](#),

$$\varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} (H \star_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{N}(C^*(X, Y))) \cong \left( \varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} H \right) \star_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{N}(C^*(X, Y))$$

but we have shown that the canonical  $\mathbf{Z}(GT_{\rightarrow}, -) \Rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} H$  is a natural isomorphism, so applying the Yoneda lemma again, we deduce that the colimiting cocone component

$$j : \mathbf{N}(C^{GT_{\rightarrow}}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{N}(C^{G*}(X, Y))$$

is an isomorphism as well.

Next, consider the evident natural epimorphisms

$$\varphi : F \Rightarrow \text{id}_Z \qquad \psi : F \Rightarrow G$$

the induced natural transformations

$$\varphi^* : C^*(X, Y) \Rightarrow C^{F^*}(X, Y) \qquad \psi^* : C^{G^*}(X, Y) \Rightarrow C^{F^*}(X, Y)$$

and the induced morphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(\varphi^*) : \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^*(X, Y)) &\rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y)) \\ \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(\psi^*) : \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{G^*}(X, Y)) &\rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y)) \end{aligned}$$

of simplicial sets. Observe that  $\lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y))$  can be identified with the simplicial set of hammocks in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  where the two outermost columns of arrows are leftward-pointing and which are reduced except possibly for the outermost columns, so that e.g.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \text{---} \cdots \text{---} & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \text{---} \cdots \text{---} & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & Y \end{array}$$

is an edge of  $\lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y))$ . The canonical comparison morphism

$$r : \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^*(X, Y))$$

can be identified with the morphism that sends unreduced hammocks to their reductions, and the morphism

$$\lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(\varphi_T^*) : \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^*(X, Y))$$

can be identified with the morphism that sends each reduced hammock to the (non-reduced) hammock obtained by adjoining to the left (resp. right) of the reduced hammock a column of  $\text{id} : X \leftarrow X$  (resp.  $\text{id} : Y \leftarrow Y$ ), so we have  $r \circ \left( \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(\varphi_T^*) \right) = \text{id}$ . On the other hand, the following diagram commutes in  $\text{Ho sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(C^{GT_{\rightarrow}}(X, Y)) & \xrightarrow[\cong]{j} & \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{G^*}(X, Y)) \\ \downarrow i & & \downarrow \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(\psi^*) \\ \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^*(X, Y)) & \xrightarrow[\lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(\varphi^*)]{} & \lim_{\rightarrow Z^{\text{op}}} N(C^{F^*}(X, Y)) \end{array}$$

where  $i : N(C^{GT \rightarrow}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} N(C^*(X, Y))$  is the component of the colimiting cocone. Hence, by lemma 1.5.2 (plus the 2-out-of-6 property of isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ ),  $i$  is a weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} N(\psi^*)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.

To complete the proof, we make the following observations:

- By lemma 2.13.6, the components

$$N(\psi_T^*) : N(C^{GT}(X, Y)) \rightarrow N(C^{FT}(X, Y))$$

are weak homotopy equivalences.

- By proposition 2.12.18,  $N(C^*(X, Y)) : \mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant diagram.
- It is not hard to see that  $F : \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$  preserves (epimorphisms and) pushouts of epimorphisms along epimorphisms, so  $N(C^{F*}(X, Y)) : \mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is also a Reedy-cofibrant diagram.

Thus, by corollary 2.12.17,  $\varinjlim_{\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}} N(\psi^*)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence; but the morphism

$$N(H(X, Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y)$$

in question can be identified with  $i$ , so we are done. ■

**2.13.8 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C$  be a small relative category and let  $T$  be the following zigzag type:*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

*Assuming  $C$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus:*

- *For any weak equivalence  $w : X \rightarrow X'$  and any object  $Y$  in  $C$ , the functor*

$$w_* : C^T(X, Y) \rightarrow C^T(X', Y)$$

*defined by sending each zigzag*

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xrightarrow{f} \bullet \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

*to the zigzag*

$$X' \xleftarrow{w \circ v} \bullet \xrightarrow{f} \bullet \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

- For any object  $X$  and any weak equivalence  $w : Y' \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ , the functor

$$w^* : C^T(X, Y) \rightarrow C^T(X, Y')$$

defined by sending each zigzag

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xrightarrow{f} \bullet \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

to the zigzag

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xrightarrow{f} \bullet \xleftarrow{u \circ w} Y'$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

There is an evident morphism  $w_* : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X', Y)$  defined by concatenation and reduction making the following diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(C^T(X, Y)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \\ N(w_*) \downarrow & & \downarrow w_* \\ N(C^T(X', Y)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X', Y) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are defined by reduction, which are weak homotopy equivalences by the fundamental theorem of homotopical three-arrow calculi (2.13.7). Thus, the 2-out-of-3 property implies that

$$w_* : C^T(X, Y) \rightarrow C^T(X', Y)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories if and only if

$$w_* : \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X', Y)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets, and one may use the method of the proof of [proposition 2.12.21](#) to show that the latter is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**2.I3.9** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } C$ , let  $k$  be a positive integer, and let  $T_k$  be the following zigzag type:

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \overset{k \text{ arrows}}{\cdots} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

Assuming  $C$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus:

- For any weak equivalence  $w : X \rightarrow X'$  and any object  $Y$  in  $C$ , the functor

$$w_* : C^{T_k}(X, Y) \rightarrow C^{T_k}(X', Y)$$

defined by sending each zigzag

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

to the zigzag

$$X' \xleftarrow{w \circ v} \bullet \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

- For any object  $X$  and any weak equivalence  $w : Y' \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ , the functor

$$w^* : C^{T_k}(X, Y) \rightarrow C^{T_k}(X, Y')$$

defined by sending each zigzag

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

to the zigzag

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{u \circ w} Y'$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

The special case  $k = 1$  is [corollary 2.I3.8](#). In general, we have the following commutative diagram in **Cat**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^{T_{k+1}}(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & C^{T_k * T_1}(X, Y) \\ w_* \downarrow & & \downarrow w_* \\ C^{T_{k+1}}(X', Y) & \longrightarrow & C^{T_k * T_1}(X', Y) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the evident functors defined by inserting (two) identity morphisms. The horizontal arrows are weak homotopy equivalences by [lemma 2.13.6](#), and the right vertical arrow is a weak homotopy equivalence by [corollary 1.11.25](#) and [lemma 2.13.2](#); thus, by the 2-out-of-3 property,  $w_* : C^{T_{k+1}}(X, Y) \rightarrow C^{T_{k+1}}(X, Y')$  is also a weak homotopy equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**2.13.10** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , let  $k$  be a positive integer, let  $T_k$  be the following zigzag type,*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

*and let  $\mathbb{H} : \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be the diagram defined by  $\mathbb{H}_X^Y = C^{T_k}(X, Y)$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus, then:*

(i) *We have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Cat}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathcal{W}, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}, \mathcal{W}, \Delta \mathbb{1})) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \text{weq } [T_k, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathcal{W}, \Delta \mathcal{W}) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

*where the left vertical arrow is induced by the canonical projection of (the inner) Grothendieck construction, the bottom horizontal arrow is the canonical isomorphism of [lemma B.5.38](#), and the right vertical arrow is the functor defined by sending zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form*

$$X \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow Y$$

*to the pair  $(X, Y)$ .*

(ii) *For any object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the Grothendieck fibration*

$$\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}_X, \mathcal{W}, \Delta \mathbb{1}) \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$$

*is left-locally weakly constant; dually, for any object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the Grothendieck opfibration*

$$\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathcal{W}, \mathbb{H}^Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$$

*is right-locally weakly constant.*

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

(iii) *The domain projection*

$$\mathrm{weq} [T_k, C]_{\mathrm{h}} \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$$

*is a right-locally weakly constant Grothendieck opfibration; dually, the codomain projection*

$$\mathrm{weq} [T_k, C]_{\mathrm{h}} \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$$

*is a left-locally weakly constant Grothendieck fibration.*

*Proof.* (i). Straightforward.

(ii). [Lemma 2.13.9](#) says that the diagram  $\mathbb{H}_X : \mathcal{W}^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  has the property that every reindexing functor is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, so we may apply [lemma 1.11.27](#).

(iii). Similarly, by [corollary 1.11.25](#), the diagram  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}, \mathcal{W}, \Delta 1) : \mathcal{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  has the property that every reindexing functor is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, so the Grothendieck opfibration

$$\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{W}, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}, \mathcal{W}, \Delta 1)) \rightarrow \mathcal{W}$$

is right-locally weakly constant; but by (i), the following diagram in  $\mathbf{Cat}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{W}, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}, \mathcal{W}, \Delta 1)) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathrm{weq} [T_k, C]_{\mathrm{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{dom} \\ \mathcal{W} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is the Grothendieck opfibration discussed above, so the claim follows. ■

**2.13.11** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \mathrm{weq} C$ , let  $k$  be a positive integer, and let  $T_k$  be the following zigzag type:*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \overset{k \text{ arrows}}{\cdots} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

*Then the functor  $s : \mathrm{weq} [[k], C] \rightarrow \mathrm{weq} [T_k, C]_{\mathrm{h}}$  defined by inserting (two) identity morphisms is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*



*Proof.* Let  $r : \text{weq}[T_k, C]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow \text{weq}[[k], C]$  be the functor defined by discarding the two leftward-pointing arrows. Clearly,  $s \circ r = \text{id}_{\text{weq}[[k], C]}$ . On the other hand, for any zigzag in  $C$  of type  $T_k$ , say

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{X} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

there is a natural commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{X} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y \\ \uparrow v & & \parallel & & & & \parallel \\ \tilde{X} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \tilde{X} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & & & \parallel \\ \tilde{X} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \tilde{X} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \xlongequal{\quad} \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

so there is a zigzag of natural transformations between  $\text{id}_{\text{weq}[T_k, C]_{\text{h}}}$  and  $r \circ s$ . We may then apply [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [proposition 1.5.4](#) to deduce that the functor  $s : \text{weq}[[k], C] \rightarrow \text{weq}[T_k, C]_{\text{h}}$  is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**2.13.12 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } C$ , and let  $T$  be the following zigzag type:*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

(i) *There is a pullback diagram in **Cat** of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[2, C] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle d_0, d_1 \rangle \\ [2, \mathcal{W}] \times [2, \mathcal{W}] & \xrightarrow{d_1 \times d_0} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

where  $d_1$  (resp.  $d_0$ ) denotes the appropriate domain (resp. codomain) projection. Moreover, the horizontal arrows in the diagram are weak homotopy equivalences of categories.

(ii) *For each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $C$ , we have the following pullback diagram in **Cat**,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^T(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\ulcorner (X, Y) \urcorner} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

where  $p : \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W}$  is the functor defined by sending zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form

$$X \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow Y$$

to the pair  $(X, Y)$ , and  $\tau(X, Y)^{\top} : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W}$  is the functor corresponding to the object  $(X, Y)$  in  $\mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W}$ .

- (iii) If  $C$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus, then we have a homotopy derived pullback diagram in **Cat** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^T(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[2, C] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle d_1, d_0 \rangle \\ \mathcal{W}_{/X} \times^{Y/\mathcal{W}} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is defined by the evident projections.

*Proof.* (i). It is clear that we have a pullback diagram of the required form, the top horizontal arrow is a weak homotopy equivalence by [lemma 2.13.11](#), and a similar argument using [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [proposition 1.5.4](#) shows that the bottom horizontal arrow is a weak homotopy equivalence as well.

(ii). This is a paraphrase of the definition of  $C^T(X, Y)$ .

(iii). Consider the following commutative diagram in **Cat**,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} C^T(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[2, C] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{W}_{/X} \times^{Y/\mathcal{W}} & \longrightarrow & [2, \mathcal{W}] \times [2, \mathcal{W}] & \xrightarrow{d_1 \times d_0} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow d_0 \times d_1 & & \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau(X, Y)^{\top}} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} & & \end{array}$$

where every square is a pullback diagram. We wish to prove that the horizontal rectangle is a homotopy derived pullback diagram, and since its right half is a homotopy derived pullback diagram by [lemma 6.1.19](#), it suffices by [lemma 6.1.20](#) to verify that its left half is a homotopy derived pullback diagram; but it is not

hard to check that the vertical arrows in the diagram below are weak homotopy equivalences of categories,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{W}_{/X} \times^{Y/\mathcal{W}} & \longrightarrow & [2, \mathcal{W}] \times [2, \mathcal{W}] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow d_0 \times d_1 \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{(X,Y)^\gamma}} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

so it is enough in turn to show that the vertical rectangle is a homotopy derived pullback diagram.

Let  $\mathbb{H} : \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  be the diagram defined by  $\mathbb{H}_{X'}^{Y'} = C^T(X', Y')$ . By lemmas 1.11.27, 1.11.29, and 2.13.10, the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}_X, \mathcal{W}, \Delta \mathbb{1}) & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{X^\gamma}} & \mathcal{W} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} C^T(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}_X, \mathcal{W}, \Delta \mathbb{1}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{Y^\gamma}} & \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

are homotopy derived pullback diagrams. In addition, by proposition 1.5.17 and lemma 6.1.18, the evident diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{W} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{W} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{1} \end{array}$$

is a homotopy derived pullback diagram; thus, in the diagram shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} C^T(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{H}_X, \mathcal{W}, \Delta \mathbb{1}) & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{Y^\gamma}} & \mathcal{W} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{X^\gamma} \times \text{id}_{\mathcal{W}}} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{X^\gamma}} & \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

every square is a homotopy derived pullback diagram. In particular,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C^T(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & \text{weq}[T, C]_{\text{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{\tau_{(X,Y)^\gamma}} & \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W} \end{array}$$

is a homotopy derived pullback diagram, as required. ■

**2.13.13** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category and let  $n$  be a positive integer. If  $C$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus, then we have derived pullback diagram in **Cat** of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{weq}[[n+1], C] & \xrightarrow{d_0} & \text{weq}[[n], C] \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{dom} \\ \text{weq}[[1], C] & \xrightarrow{\text{codom}} & \text{weq } C \end{array}$$

where  $p : \text{weq}[[n+1], C] \rightarrow \text{weq}[[1], C]$  is the functor defined by sending each composable sequence of morphisms in  $C$  of length  $n+1$ , say

$$X_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} X_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow X_{n+1}$$

(considered as an object in  $\text{weq}[[n+1], C]$ ) to the morphism  $f_1 : X_0 \rightarrow X_1$  (considered as an object in  $\text{weq}[[1], C]$ ).

*Proof.* For each positive integer  $k$ , and let  $T_k$  be the following zigzag type:

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \overset{k \text{ arrows}}{\cdots \rightrightarrows} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

We then have a commutative cube in **Cat** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \text{weq}[[n+1], C] & \xrightarrow{d_0} & \text{weq}[[n], C] & & \\ & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ & \text{weq}[T_n * T_1, C]_h & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{weq}[T_n, C]_h & \\ & \downarrow & \downarrow \text{dom} & \downarrow \text{dom} & \\ \text{weq}[[1], C] & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{weq } C & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{weq } C \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \text{codom} & \searrow & \\ & \text{weq}[T_1, C]_h & \xrightarrow{\text{codom}} & \text{weq } C & \end{array}$$

where the non-trivial diagonal arrows are defined by inserting identity morphisms and both the front and back faces of the cube are pullback squares in **Cat**. Moreover, by lemmas 1.11.27, 1.11.29, and 2.13.10, the front face is a homotopy derived pullback diagram in **Cat**. Since the diagonal arrows are weak homotopy equivalences (by lemmas 2.13.6 and 2.13.11), the claim follows by an application of proposition 6.1.21. ■

**2.13.14** DEFINITION. A small relative category  $C$  admits a **homotopical calculus of right fractions** when it satisfies the following condition:

- Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, let  $\mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $k$ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $l$ arrows}} \bullet$$

where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $k$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $l$ arrows}} \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. Then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

Dually, a small relative category  $C$  admits a **homotopical calculus of left fractions** when it satisfies the following condition:

- Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, let  $\mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $k$ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $l$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $k$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{\scriptsize $l$ arrows}} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. Then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

REMARK. A small relative category  $C$  admits a **homotopy calculus of right** (resp. **left**) **fractions** in the sense of Dwyer and Kan [1980b] precisely when *both*  $C$  and  $\text{weq } C$  (regarded as a relative subcategory with the same weak equivalences) admit homotopical calculi of right (resp. left) fractions.

**2.I3.I5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *If  $C$  admits a functorial calculus of cocycles, then  $C$  also admits a homotopical calculus of right fractions.*
- *If  $C$  admits a functorial calculus of cycles, then  $C$  also admits a homotopical calculus of left fractions.*

*Proof.* Recalling lemma 1.3.10 and proposition 1.5.4, this is just lemma 3.5.15. ■

**2.I3.I6** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate zigzag types, let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{H}_0^+$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } k \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } l \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1^+$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } k \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } l \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1^+$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. If  $C$  admits a homotopical calculus of right fractions and  $l > 0$ , then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1^+$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{H}_0^+$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } k \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } l \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1^+$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } k \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{ } l \text{ arrows } \rangle} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1^+$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. If  $C$  admits a homotopical calculus of left fractions and  $k > 0$ , then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0^+ \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1^+$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* Apply the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences of categories and [corollary 1.11.25](#) to [lemma 2.13.2](#). ■

**2.13.17** COROLLARY. *If  $C$  admits either a homotopical calculus of right fractions or a homotopical calculus of left fractions, then  $C$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus.* ■

**2.13.18** THEOREM (Fundamental theorem of homotopical calculi of fractions). *Let  $C$  be a small relative category and let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ .*

- *Let  $\mathcal{H}(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type:*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet$$

*If  $C$  admits a homotopical calculus of right fractions, then the reduction morphism*

$$N(\mathcal{H}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{H}(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type:*

$$\bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

*If  $C$  admits a homotopical calculus of left fractions, then the reduction morphism*

$$N(\mathcal{H}(X, Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\mathcal{H}^+(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $C$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}^+(X, Y)$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. Since  $C$  admits a homotopical calculus of right fractions,  $s$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. But the following diagram in **sSet** commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(\mathcal{H}(X, Y)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \\ N(s) \downarrow & & \parallel \\ N(\mathcal{H}^+(X, Y)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(C)(X, Y) \end{array}$$

## II. SIMPLICIAL CATEGORIES

---

where the horizontal arrows are the reduction morphisms, so the claim is a consequence of the fundamental theorem of homotopical three-arrow calculi (2.13.18) applied to [corollary 2.13.17](#). ■



## HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

### 3.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §A.4.

- 3.1.1** DEFINITION. A relative category  $C$  is a **category with weak equivalences** if it is semi-saturated and  $\mathrm{weq} C$  has the 2-out-of-3 property, and it is a **homotopical category** if  $\mathrm{weq} C$  has the 2-out-of-6 property. A **homotopical functor** is a relative functor between homotopical categories.
- 3.1.2** REMARK. If  $C$  is a relative category such that  $\mathrm{weq} C$  has the 2-out-of-6 property, then every isomorphism in  $C$  is automatically a weak equivalence. Indeed, suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  are mutual inverses in  $C$ ; then the fact that  $g \circ f = \mathrm{id}_X$  and  $f \circ g = \mathrm{id}_Y$  are in  $\mathrm{weq} C$  implies that  $f$  and  $g$  must also be in  $\mathrm{weq} C$ . Recalling lemma A.4.14, it follows that every homotopical category is a category with weak equivalences.
- 3.1.3** ¶ To simplify notation, we will usually not distinguish between  $\mathrm{und} C$  and  $C$ . For example, when  $C$  and  $D$  are relative categories, then by ‘ordinary functor  $C \rightarrow D$ ’ we mean a functor  $\mathrm{und} C \rightarrow \mathrm{und} D$ .
- 3.1.4** EXAMPLE. Any saturated relative category is automatically a homotopical category, by corollary A.4.15. In particular, any minimal saturated relative category is a homotopical category. On the other hand, any maximal relative category is obviously a homotopical category.
- 3.1.5** REMARK. A relative category  $C$  is a category with weak equivalences or a homotopical category if and only if the opposite relative category  $C^{\mathrm{op}}$  is.

- 3.1.6** LEMMA. *Let  $A$  be an object in a homotopical category (resp. category with weak equivalences)  $C$ . Then the slice category  $C_{/A}$  is also a homotopical category (resp. category with weak equivalences) if we declare a morphism in  $C_{/A}$  to be a weak equivalence if and only if it is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .*

*Proof.* Use lemma A.4.14 on the projection functor  $C_{/A} \rightarrow C$ . ■

- 3.1.7** LEMMA. *Any relative subcategory  $D$  of a homotopical category (resp. category with weak equivalences)  $C$  is also a homotopical category (resp. category with weak equivalences).*

*Proof.* Use lemma A.4.14 on the inclusion  $D \hookrightarrow C$ . ■

- 3.1.8** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a relative category, let  $D$  be a saturated homotopical category, and let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  be a relative functor. If a morphism in  $C$  is a weak equivalence if and only if its image under  $F$  is a weak equivalence in  $D$ , then  $C$  is also a saturated homotopical category.*

*Proof.* Consider the induced functor  $\mathrm{Ho} F : \mathrm{Ho} C \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D$ . Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $C$  such that  $f$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$ . Since  $\mathrm{Ho} F$  is a functor,  $Ff$  must be an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} D$ ; but  $D$  is saturated, so  $Ff$  is a weak equivalence in  $D$ . We may therefore deduce that  $f$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ . ■

- 3.1.9** COROLLARY. *Any relative subcategory of a saturated homotopical category is a saturated homotopical category.* ■

- 3.1.10** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be two relative categories. If  $D$  is a homotopical category (resp. category with weak equivalences), then the relative functor category  $[C, D]_{\mathrm{h}}$  is also a homotopical category (resp. category with weak equivalences).*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward check. ◆

- 3.1.11** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be two relative categories. If  $D$  is a saturated homotopical category, then the relative functor category  $[C, D]_{\mathrm{h}}$  is also a saturated homotopical category.*

*Proof.* For each object  $C$  in  $C$ , we have a homotopical functor  $C^* : [C, D]_{\mathrm{h}} \rightarrow D$  that evaluates an object  $F$  in  $[C, D]_{\mathrm{h}}$  at  $C$ . Thus, we obtain a functor  $\mathrm{Ho} C^* : \mathrm{Ho} [C, D]_{\mathrm{h}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D$ .

Consider a morphism  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  in  $[C, D]_h$  such that  $\varphi$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } [C, D]_h$ . Since  $\text{Ho } C^*$  is a functor,  $(\text{Ho } C^*)(\varphi)$  must be an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } C$ ; but  $C$  is a saturated homotopical category, so that implies the component  $\varphi_C$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ . We therefore conclude that  $\varphi$  is a weak equivalence in  $[C, D]_h$ . ■

**3.1.12** DEFINITION. Two objects in a relative category are **weakly equivalent** if they can be connected by a *zigzag* of weak equivalences; we define  $X \stackrel{w}{\simeq} Y$  to mean that  $X$  and  $Y$  are weakly equivalent.

**3.1.13** REMARK. If  $X$  and  $Y$  are weakly equivalent in a relative category  $C$ , then they are isomorphic in  $\text{Ho } C$ . The converse is certainly true if  $C$  is saturated, but is false if  $C$  is not semi-saturated.

**3.1.14** DEFINITION. A **homotopically replete subcategory** of a relative category  $C$  is a relative subcategory  $D$  with the following property:

- If  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$  and either  $A$  or  $B$  is in  $D$ , then  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $f$  are all in  $D$ .

**3.1.15** REMARK. Any full relative subcategory  $D$  of a relative category  $C$  is homotopically replete if and only if it has the following property:

- If  $D$  is an object in  $D$  and  $C$  an object in  $C$  that is weakly equivalent to  $D$ , then  $C$  is in  $D$ .

**3.1.16** DEFINITION. A parallel pair of morphisms in a relative category  $C$  are **weakly homotopic** if they are equal in  $\text{Ho } C$ ; we define  $f \stackrel{w}{\sim} g$  to mean that  $f$  and  $g$  are weakly homotopic.

**3.1.17** DEFINITION. An **equivalence** in a relative category  $C$  is a pair  $(f, g)$ , where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  are morphisms in  $C$  such that  $g \circ f \stackrel{w}{\sim} \text{id}_X$  and  $f \circ g \stackrel{w}{\sim} \text{id}_Y$ . Two morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $C$  are **mutual quasi-inverses** when  $(f, g)$  constitute an equivalence in  $C$ .

**3.1.18** REMARK. It follows from the definitions that quasi-inverses are unique up to weak homotopy.

**3.1.19** LEMMA. *If the localising functor  $\gamma : C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  for a relative category  $C$  is full, then the following are equivalent for all morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ :*

- *$f$  is a morphism in  $C$  and has a quasi-inverse.*
- *$\gamma f$  is an isomorphism in  $C$ .*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**3.1.20** REMARK. Clearly, any isomorphism in any relative category has a quasi-inverse; but this implies that in a relative category that is *not* semi-saturated, a morphism that has a quasi-inverse need *not* be a weak equivalence. On other hand, if  $f$  is a morphism in a *saturated* homotopical category and  $f$  has a quasi-inverse, then  $f$  must be a weak equivalence.

**3.1.21** DEFINITION. A relative category  $C$  has the **Whitehead property** when the following are equivalent:

- $f$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .
- $f$  is a morphism in  $C$  and has a quasi-inverse.

**3.1.22** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  be a relative category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$C$  has the Whitehead property.*
- (ii) *The localising functor  $\gamma : C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  is full, and  $C$  is a saturated homotopical category.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By [theorem A.4.44](#), every morphism  $\gamma X_0 \rightarrow \gamma X_n$  in  $\text{Ho } C$  is of the form

$$(\gamma f_n)^{-1} \circ \dots \circ \gamma h_2 \circ (\gamma f_1)^{-1} \circ \gamma h_1$$

for some morphisms  $h_1 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_1, f_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Y_1, h_2 : X_1 \rightarrow Y_2$ , etc. in  $C$ , where  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  are weak equivalences. By the Whitehead property, each  $f_i : X_i \rightarrow Y_i$  has a quasi-inverse in  $C$ , say  $g_i : Y_i \rightarrow X_i$ . Since  $\gamma g_i = (\gamma f_i)^{-1}$ , it follows that

$$(\gamma f_n)^{-1} \circ \dots \circ h_2 \circ (\gamma f_1)^{-1} \circ \gamma h_1 = \gamma(g_n \circ \dots \circ h_2 \circ g_1 \circ h_1)$$

and therefore  $\gamma : C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  is indeed full.

In particular, every morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$  such that  $\gamma f : \gamma X \rightarrow \gamma Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } C$  must have a quasi-inverse, and hence must be a weak

equivalence, in view of the Whitehead property. We therefore conclude that  $\mathcal{C}$  is a saturated homotopical category.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). The converse follows from the definitions and [lemma 3.1.19](#). ■

**3.1.23** REMARK. The Whitehead property is in general not inherited by slice categories or by functor categories. For example, if  $q \circ f = p$  and  $g$  is a quasi-inverse for  $f$ , it is only guaranteed that  $q \stackrel{w}{\sim} p \circ g$ .

**3.1.24** DEFINITION. Let  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be two ordinary functors between relative categories. A **natural weak equivalence**  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  is a natural transformation such that  $\alpha_C : FC \rightarrow GC$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$  for all objects  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and we say  $F$  and  $G$  are **naturally weakly equivalent** if they can be connected by a zigzag of natural weak equivalences.

**3.1.25** REMARK. This is precisely the notion of weak equivalence in the relative functor category  $[\text{min und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]_h$ . Although the definition above applies to all functors, if  $H : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is an ordinary functor, then the natural transformation  $H\alpha : HF \Rightarrow HG$  is only guaranteed to be a natural weak equivalence if we assume  $H$  is a relative functor.

**3.1.26** DEFINITION. A **relative equivalence** is a relative functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  for which there exists a relative functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that  $GF$  is naturally weakly equivalent to  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $FG$  is naturally weakly equivalent to  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ . Such a  $G$  is said to be a **relative inverse** of  $F$ . When  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are homotopical categories, we may say **homotopical equivalence** and **homotopical inverse** instead of ‘relative equivalence’ and ‘relative inverse’.

**3.1.27** PROPOSITION. *If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a relative equivalence of relative categories with relative inverse  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then  $\text{Ho } F : \text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{D}$  is an equivalence of categories, with quasi-inverse  $\text{Ho } G : \text{Ho } \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ .* ■

**3.1.28** DEFINITION. An **adjoint relative equivalence** is an adjunction of the form below,

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

where  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are relative categories,  $F$  and  $G$  are relative functors, and both the adjunction unit and counit are natural weak equivalences. When  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are homotopical categories, we may say **adjoint homotopical equivalence** instead of ‘adjoint relative equivalence’.

**3.I.29** PROPOSITION. *An adjoint relative equivalence of relative categories descends to an adjoint equivalence of homotopy categories.*

*Proof.* Use the 2-functoriality of  $\mathrm{Ho} : \mathfrak{RelCat} \rightarrow \mathfrak{Cat}$  (corollary A.4.20). ■

**3.I.30** DEFINITION. A **homotopically contractible category** is a homotopical category  $\mathcal{C}$  such that the unique (homotopical) functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is a homotopical equivalence, where  $\mathbb{1}$  is the trivial category with only one object.

**3.I.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a homotopical category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{C}$  is homotopically contractible.*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{C}$  is inhabited, and for every object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the constant functor  $\Delta A$  is naturally weakly equivalent to  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .*
- (iii) *There exists an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $\Delta A$  and  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  are naturally weakly equivalent.*

*Proof.* Obvious. (This is paragraph 37.6 in [DHKS].) ◆

## 3.2 Homotopical Kan extensions

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, A.4.

**3.2.1** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a homotopical category. A **homotopically initial object** in  $C$  is an object  $A$  for which there exists a zigzag of natural transformations of the form

$$\Delta A \rightsquigarrow F \xrightarrow{\alpha} G \rightsquigarrow \mathrm{id}_C$$

where  $\Delta A : C \rightarrow C$  is the constant functor with value  $A$ ,  $\alpha_A : FA \rightarrow GA$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ , and the squiggles denote (possibly trivial) zigzags of natural weak equivalences. Dually, a **homotopically terminal object** in  $C$  is a homotopically initial object in  $C^{\mathrm{op}}$ .

**3.2.2** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a homotopical category. If  $A$  is a homotopically initial (resp. homotopically terminal) object in  $C$ , then:*

- (i) *Any object in  $C$  weakly equivalent to  $A$  is also a homotopically initial (resp. homotopically terminal) object in  $C$ .*
- (ii)  *$A$  is an initial (resp. terminal) object in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$ .*
- (iii) *If  $C$  is a minimal homotopical category, then  $A$  is an initial (resp. terminal) object in  $C$  as well.*

*Conversely, any initial (resp. terminal) object in  $C$  is also homotopically initial (resp. homotopically terminal).*

*Proof.* Obvious. (This is Proposition 38.3 in [DHKS].) ◆

**3.2.3** PROPOSITION. *If  $A$  is a homotopically initial object in a homotopical category  $C$ , then for any object  $Z$  in  $C$ , the zigzag category  $C^{(\mathrm{T})}(A, Z)$  is connected.*

*Proof.* By theorem A.4.44, there is a bijection between the connected components of  $C^{(\mathrm{T})}(A, Z)$  and the morphisms  $A \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$ ; but we know  $A$  is an initial object in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$ , so  $C^{(\mathrm{T})}(A, Z)$  has exactly one connected component. ■

**3.2.4** LEMMA. *Let  $H : C \rightarrow D$  be a relative functor and let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  be an ordinary functor. If  $\mathrm{weq} D$  has the 2-out-of-3 property and  $F$  is naturally weakly equivalent to  $H$ , then  $F$  is also a relative functor.*

*Proof.* Apply the 2-out-of-3 property inductively. ◆

**3.2.5 LEMMA.** *If  $A$  and  $A'$  be homotopically initial objects in a homotopical category  $C$ , then  $A \stackrel{w}{\simeq} A'$ , and moreover every morphism  $A \rightarrow A'$  in  $C$  is a weak equivalence.*

*Proof.* This is paragraph 38.5 in [DHKS].

Suppose, as in the definition, that we have endofunctors  $F, F', G, G'$  on  $C$  and natural transformations  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G, \alpha' : F' \Rightarrow G'$ , such that  $F \stackrel{w}{\simeq} \Delta A, F' \stackrel{w}{\simeq} \Delta A', G \stackrel{w}{\simeq} \text{id}_C$ , and  $G' \stackrel{w}{\simeq} \text{id}_C$ , and the morphisms  $\alpha_A : FA \rightarrow GA$  and  $\alpha'_{A'} : FA' \rightarrow GA'$  are both weak equivalences. Note that the previous lemma implies  $G$  and  $G'$  are both homotopical functors, while a similar argument shows that  $F$  and  $F'$  sends *all* morphisms to weak equivalences.

Let  $f : A \rightarrow A'$  be a morphism in  $C$ . By applying the 2-out-of-3 property repeatedly in the following diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \rightsquigarrow & FA & \xrightarrow{\alpha_A} & GA & \rightsquigarrow & A \\ \parallel & & \downarrow Ff & & \downarrow Gf & & \downarrow f \\ A & \rightsquigarrow & FA' & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{A'}} & GA' & \rightsquigarrow & A' \end{array}$$

we see that  $f$  is a weak equivalence if and only if  $\alpha_{A'} : FA' \rightarrow GA'$  is a weak equivalence. Since  $\alpha'_{A'} : F'A' \rightarrow G'A'$  is a weak equivalence, and  $GA' \stackrel{w}{\simeq} A'$ , it follows that  $\alpha'_{GA'} : FGA' \rightarrow G'GA'$  is a weak equivalence, and since  $G$  is homotopical, so  $G\alpha'_{GA'} : GFGA' \rightarrow GG'GA'$  is also a weak equivalence. Similarly,  $\alpha_A : FA \rightarrow GA$  is a weak equivalence, and  $A \stackrel{w}{\simeq} FA' \stackrel{w}{\simeq} G'FA'$ , so  $\alpha_{G'FA'} : FG'FA' \rightarrow GG'FA'$  is a weak equivalence as well.

Now, by applying the 2-out-of-6 property to the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} FF'FA' & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{F'FA'}} & GF'FA' & \xrightarrow{GF'\alpha_{A'}} & GF'GA' \\ \downarrow F\alpha'_{FA'} & & \downarrow G\alpha'_{FA'} & & \downarrow G\alpha'_{GA'} \\ FG'FA' & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{G'FA'}} & GG'FA' & \xrightarrow{GG'\alpha_{A'}} & GG'GA' \end{array}$$

we may deduce that  $GG'\alpha_{A'} : GG'FA' \rightarrow GG'GA'$  is a weak equivalence, and hence that  $\alpha_{A'} : FA' \rightarrow GA'$  is a weak equivalence, as required. Moreover,  $A \stackrel{w}{\simeq} FA'$  and  $GA' \stackrel{w}{\simeq} A'$ , so it follows that  $A \stackrel{w}{\simeq} A'$ . ■



**3.2.6** ¶ We will say that an object in a homotopical category  $C$  characterised by a homotopical universal property is **homotopically unique** if the full subcategory spanned by such objects inside the homotopical category of objects in  $C$  equipped with the relevant additional structure is homotopically contractible.

**3.2.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a homotopically contractible category.*

- (i) *Every morphism in  $C$  is a weak equivalence.*
- (ii) *The unique functor  $\mathrm{Ho} C \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is an equivalence of categories.*
- (iii) *If  $C$  is a minimal homotopical category, then  $C \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is also an equivalence of categories.*
- (iv) *The opposite homotopical category  $C^{\mathrm{op}}$  and the homotopical functor category  $[\mathcal{D}, C]_{\mathrm{h}}$  (for any homotopical category  $\mathcal{D}$ ) are also homotopically contractible.*
- (v) *Every object in  $C$  is both homotopically initial and homotopically terminal.*

*Proof.* Obvious. (This is paragraph 37.6 in [DHKS].) ◆

**3.2.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a homotopical category. If  $\mathcal{D}$  is the full homotopical subcategory of  $C$  spanned by the homotopically initial (or homotopically terminal) objects, then  $\mathcal{D}$  is homotopically contractible.*

*Proof.* This follows from lemma 3.2.5. ■

**3.2.9** REMARK. Even if  $C$  is a saturated homotopical category, an object that is initial in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$  need not be homotopically initial in  $C$ . Indeed, let  $C$  be the maximal homotopical category generated by a graph of the following form:



No object in  $C$  is homotopically initial, because the length of the shortest zigzag connecting two objects cannot be bounded above; yet every object in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$  is initial. The same argument shows that  $C$  is not homotopically contractible, but  $\mathrm{Ho} C$  is certainly contractible.

**3.2.I0** DEFINITION. Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be two ordinary functors between homotopical categories. A **homotopical left Kan extension** (resp. **homotopical right Kan extension**) of  $G$  along  $F$  is a homotopically initial (resp. homotopically terminal) object of the homotopical category  $(G \downarrow F^*)_h$  (resp.  $(F^* \downarrow G)_h$ ) described below:

- The objects are pairs  $(H, \alpha)$  where  $H$  is a homotopical functor  $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $\alpha$  is a natural transformation of type  $G \Rightarrow HF$  (resp.  $HF \Rightarrow G$ ).
- The morphisms  $(H', \alpha') \rightarrow (H, \alpha)$  are those natural transformations  $\beta : H' \Rightarrow H$  such that  $\beta F \bullet \alpha' = \alpha$  (resp.  $\alpha \bullet \beta F = \alpha'$ ).
- The weak equivalences are the natural weak equivalences.

**3.2.I1** REMARK. Note that any homotopical Kan extension of  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  along  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  has, by definition, an underlying *homotopical* functor  $H : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ .

**3.2.I2** COROLLARY. *Homotopical Kan extensions are homotopically unique, any two homotopical left (resp. right) Kan extensions of  $G$  along  $F$  are naturally weakly equivalent.* ■

**3.2.I3** DEFINITION. Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be two ordinary functors between homotopical categories, and let  $L : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  be a homotopical functor. We say  $L$  **preserves** a homotopical left (resp. right) Kan extension  $(H, \alpha)$  of  $G$  along  $F$  if  $(LH, L\alpha)$  is a homotopical left (resp. right) Kan extension of  $LF$  along  $G$ . If a homotopical Kan extension is preserved by *all* homotopical functors, then it is said to be **absolute**.

### 3.3 Quillen–Verdier derived functors

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, A.4, A.1, A.5

The fact that  $\mathrm{Ho} : \mathbf{RelCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is a 2-functor means that relative functors  $F : C \rightarrow D$  descend to functors  $\mathrm{Ho} F : \mathrm{Ho} C \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D$  in a very well-behaved way. However, what can we say about ordinary (i.e. not necessarily relative) functors  $C \rightarrow D$ ?

In this section, we follow [DHKS, §§40–43]; however, we will use a weaker definition of ‘deformation retract’ and a stronger definition of ‘total derived functor’.

**3.3.1** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  and  $D$  be relative categories, and let  $\gamma_C : C \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$  and  $\gamma_D : D \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D$  be the localising functors.

- A **total left derived functor** for an ordinary functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  is an absolute right (!) Kan extension of  $\gamma_D F : C \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D$  along  $\gamma_C : C \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$ .
- A **total right derived functor** for an ordinary functor  $G : D \rightarrow C$  is an absolute left (!) Kan extension of  $\gamma_C G : D \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$  along  $\gamma_D : D \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D$ .

**3.3.2** REMARK. The above definition is essentially due to Verdier [1963], but the formulation using Kan extensions is due to Quillen [1967, Ch. I, §4]. We deviate from convention by demanding that the Kan extensions be *absolute*; this is in order to make theorem 3.3.5 true.

**3.3.3** REMARK. As with everything defined by a universal property, total derived functors are unique up to unique isomorphism *if* they exist.

**3.3.4** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  and  $D$  be relative categories and let  $F \dashv G : D \rightarrow C$  be an adjunction of ordinary categories. A **derived adjunction** for  $F \dashv G$  consists of

- a left derived functor  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  for  $F$ ,
- a right derived functor  $(\mathbf{R}G, \beta)$  for  $G$ , and
- an adjunction  $\mathbf{L}F \dashv \mathbf{R}G : \mathrm{Ho} D \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$  with unit  $\bar{\eta} : \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} C} \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{L}F)$  and counit  $\bar{\epsilon} : (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}G) \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} D}$ ,

such that  $(\alpha, \beta)$  constitute a conjugate pair of natural transformations. We refer to  $\bar{\eta}$  as the **derived unit** and  $\bar{\epsilon}$  as the **derived counit**.

The following appears in [Maltsiniotis, 2007].

**3.3.5 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories and let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an ordinary adjunction. If  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  is a total left derived functor for  $F$  and  $(\mathbf{R}G, \beta)$  is a total right derived functor for  $G$ , then there exist unique natural transformations  $\bar{\eta} : \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{L}F)$  and  $\bar{\varepsilon} : (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}G) \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}}$  making  $\mathbf{L}F \dashv \mathbf{R}G : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  a derived adjunction for  $F \dashv G$  with derived unit  $\bar{\eta}$  and derived counit  $\bar{\varepsilon}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\eta$  and  $\varepsilon$  be the unit and counit of the adjunction  $F \dashv G$ . First, we prove that  $\bar{\eta}$  and  $\bar{\varepsilon}$  are unique if they exist. Indeed, if they exist, then  $(\alpha, \beta)$  is a conjugate pair of natural transformations, so we must have the equations shown below:

$$\beta F \cdot \gamma_C \eta = (\mathbf{R}G)\alpha \cdot \bar{\eta} \gamma_C \quad \bar{\varepsilon} \gamma_D \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\beta = \gamma_D \varepsilon \cdot \alpha G$$

However,  $((\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{L}F), (\mathbf{R}G)\alpha)$  is a left Kan extension of  $(\mathbf{R}G)\gamma_D F$  along  $\gamma_C$  and  $((\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}G), (\mathbf{L}F)\beta)$  is a right Kan extension of  $(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C G$  along  $\gamma_D$ , so  $\bar{\eta}$  and  $\bar{\varepsilon}$  are uniquely determined as natural transformations by these equations.

Next, we prove that the natural transformations  $\bar{\eta}$  and  $\bar{\varepsilon}$  defined above satisfy the left and right triangle identities. Using naturality and the defining equations for  $\bar{\eta}$  and  $\bar{\varepsilon}$ , we obtain the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \cdot (\bar{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{L}F) \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\bar{\eta})\gamma_C &= \alpha \cdot \bar{\varepsilon}(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\bar{\eta}\gamma_C \\ &= \bar{\varepsilon}\gamma_D F \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}G)\alpha \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\bar{\eta}\gamma_C \\ &= \bar{\varepsilon}\gamma_D F \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\beta F \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C \eta \\ &= \gamma_D \varepsilon F \cdot \alpha G F \cdot (\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C \eta \\ &= \gamma_D \varepsilon F \cdot \gamma_D F \eta \cdot \alpha \\ &= \gamma_D (\varepsilon F \cdot F \eta) \cdot \alpha \end{aligned}$$

Since  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  is a right Kan extension of  $F$  along  $\gamma_C$ , this implies that  $\bar{\eta}$  and  $\bar{\varepsilon}$  satisfy the left triangle identity if  $\eta$  and  $\varepsilon$  do. A formally dual calculation shows that the same is true for the right triangle identity. Thus, we have the required derived adjunction. ■

**3.3.6 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories. A **left deformation retract** for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a triple  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  where

- $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  with the induced relative subcategory structure,

- $Q$  is a pair of maps  $\text{ob } C \rightarrow \text{ob } C$  and  $\text{mor } C \rightarrow \text{mor } C$  (but not necessarily functorial), and
- $p$  assigns to each object  $X$  in  $C$  a weak equivalence  $p_X : QX \rightarrow X$ ,

and these data are required to satisfy the following axioms:

**DR1.** For all objects  $X$  in  $C$ , the object  $QX$  is in  $C^\circ$  and  $Q\text{id}_X = \text{id}_{QX}$ .

**DR2.** For all morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ , we have  $p_Y \circ Qf = f \circ p_X$ , i.e. the diagram in  $C$  shown below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} QX & \xrightarrow{p_X} & X \\ Qf \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ QY & \xrightarrow{p_Y} & Y \end{array}$$

and if  $f$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ , then so is  $Qf$ .

**DR3.** The inclusion  $C^\circ \hookrightarrow C$  induces a faithful functor  $\text{Ho } C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$ .

**DR4.** The restriction  $F|_{C^\circ} : C^\circ \rightarrow D$  is a relative functor.

An ordinary functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  is **left deformable** if there exists a left deformation retract for  $F$ . A **left deformation retract** of a relative category  $C$  is a left deformation retract for  $\text{id}_C$ .

Dually, a **right deformation retract** for an ordinary functor  $G : D \rightarrow C$  is a triple  $(D^\circ, R, i)$  where

- $D^\circ$  is a full subcategory of  $D$  with the induced relative subcategory structure,
- $R$  is a pair of maps  $\text{ob } D \rightarrow \text{ob } D$  and  $\text{mor } D \rightarrow \text{mor } D$  (but not necessarily functorial), and
- $i$  assigns to each object  $A$  in  $D$  a weak equivalence  $i_A : A \rightarrow RA$ ,

and these data are required to satisfy the following axioms:

**DR1.** For all objects  $A$  in  $D$ , the object  $RA$  is in  $D^\circ$  and  $R\text{id}_A = \text{id}_{RA}$ .

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

**DR2.** For all morphisms  $g : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , we have  $Rg \circ i_A = i_B \circ g$ , i.e. the diagram in  $\mathcal{D}$  shown below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{i_A} & RA \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow Rg \\ B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & RB \end{array}$$

and if  $g$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then so is  $Rg$ .

**DR3.** The inclusion  $\mathcal{D}^\circ \hookrightarrow \mathcal{D}$  induces a faithful functor  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}$ .

**DR4.** The restriction  $G|_{\mathcal{D}^\circ} : \mathcal{D}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a relative functor.

An ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is **right deformable** if there exists a right deformation retract for  $G$ . A **right deformation retract** of a relative category  $\mathcal{D}$  is a right deformation retract for  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ .

**3.3.7** REMARK. Every relative functor is both left deformable and right deformable, with trivial left and right deformation retracts.

**3.3.8** PROPOSITION.

- Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category and let  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  be a left deformation retract of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then the functor  $U : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{C}^\circ \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects, and there exist a unique functor  $\bar{Q} : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}^\circ$  and a unique natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Ho} p : U\bar{Q} \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}}$  whose components are (the images of) the weak equivalences  $p_X : QX \rightarrow X$ .
- Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a relative category and let  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  be a right deformation retract of  $\mathcal{D}$ . Then the functor  $U : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}$  by the inclusion  $\mathcal{D}^\circ \hookrightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects, and there exist a unique functor  $\bar{R} : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}^\circ$  and a unique natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Ho} i : \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}} \Rightarrow U\bar{R}$  whose components are (the images of) the weak equivalences  $i_A : A \rightarrow RA$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since each  $p_X : QX \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  and each  $QX$  is in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , we see that the functor  $U : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  is essentially surjective on objects. Axiom DR3 says that it is also faithful, so it remains to be shown that  $U$  is full.

Let  $\tilde{X}$  and  $\tilde{Y}$  be objects in  $C^\circ$  and consider a morphism  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  in  $\text{Ho } C$ . By [theorem A.4.44](#) and axiom DR2, there is a morphism of zigzags in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \xleftarrow{p_{\tilde{X}}} & Q\tilde{X} & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & Q\tilde{Y} & \xrightarrow{p_{\tilde{Y}}} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow p_{\tilde{X}} & & & & \downarrow p_{\tilde{Y}} & & \parallel \\ X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y \end{array}$$

where the top row is a zigzag in  $C^\circ$  and the bottom row is a zigzag in  $C$  representing  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  in  $\text{Ho } C$ . Thus, the top row also represents  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  in  $\text{Ho } C$ , and in particular,  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  is in the image of  $U : \text{Ho } C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$ .

Clearly, the assignments  $X \mapsto QX$  and  $f \mapsto Qf$  induce a well-defined functor  $\text{Ho } Q : \text{Ho } C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  whose image is contained in the image of the fully faithful functor  $U : \text{Ho } C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$ . Thus, there is a unique functor  $\bar{Q} : \text{Ho } C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C^\circ$  such that  $\text{Ho } Q = U\bar{Q}$ . It is easy to see that there is a unique natural isomorphism  $\text{Ho } i : U\bar{Q} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Ho } C}$  of the required form.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.9 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be relative categories.*

- *Let  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  be a left deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$ . For any full subcategory  $C' \subseteq C$ , if  $C'$  contains every  $QX$  and the restriction  $F : C' \rightarrow D$  is a relative functor, then  $(C', Q, p)$  is also a left deformation retract for  $F : C \rightarrow D$ .*
- *Let  $(D^\circ, R, i)$  be a right deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $G : D \rightarrow C$ . For any full subcategory  $D' \subseteq D$ , if  $D'$  contains every  $RA$  and the restriction  $G : D' \rightarrow C$  is a relative functor, then  $(D', Q, p)$  is also a right deformation retract for  $G : D \rightarrow C$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Clearly,  $(C', Q, p)$  satisfies axioms DR1 and DR2, and by hypothesis, it also satisfies axiom DR4. We must now verify axiom DR3. We have the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Ho } C^\circ & \longrightarrow & \text{Ho } C' \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \\ & & \text{Ho } C \end{array}$$

and since  $\text{Ho } C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects (by [proposition 3.3.8](#)),  $\text{Ho } C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C'$  is faithful. In particular, the evident restriction of  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract of  $C'$ , so the same proposition

implies  $\mathrm{Ho} C^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C'$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects. The 2-out-of-3 property of such functors then implies that  $\mathrm{Ho} C' \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$  is faithful, as required.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.10** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be relative categories. Given a left deformation retract  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  for an ordinary functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$ :*

- (i) *If  $Q$  is functorial, then the composite  $FQ : C \rightarrow D$  is a relative functor.*
- (ii) *If  $C_F^\circ$  is the full subcategory of  $C$  spanned by the objects  $X$  such that the morphism  $Fp_X : FQX \rightarrow FX$  is weak equivalence in  $D$ , then  $C^\circ \subseteq C_F^\circ$ .*
- (iii) *If moreover  $\mathrm{weq} D$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $D$ , then  $(C_F^\circ, Q, p)$  is also a left deformation retract for  $F$ .*

*Dually, given a right deformation retract  $(D^\circ, R, i)$  be a right deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $G : D \rightarrow C$ :*

- (i') *If  $Q$  is functorial, then the composite  $GR : D \rightarrow C$  is a relative functor.*
- (ii') *If  $D_G^\circ$  is the full subcategory of  $D$  spanned by the objects  $A$  such that the morphism  $Gi_A : GA \rightarrow GRA$  is weak equivalence in  $C$ , then  $D^\circ \subseteq D_G^\circ$ .*
- (iii') *If moreover  $\mathrm{weq} C$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $C$ , then  $(D_G^\circ, R, i)$  is also a right deformation retract for  $F$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Immediate from the definitions.

(ii). Let  $\tilde{X}$  be an object in  $C^\circ$ . By definition,  $Q\tilde{X}$  is also an object in  $C^\circ$ , and  $F|_{C^\circ}$  is a relative functor, so  $Fp_{\tilde{X}} : FQ\tilde{X} \rightarrow F\tilde{X}$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .

(iii). Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C_F^\circ$  and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a weak equivalence in  $C$ . Consider the following commutative diagram in  $D$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FQX & \xrightarrow{Fp_X} & FX \\ FQf \downarrow & & \downarrow Ff \\ FQY & \xrightarrow{Fp_Y} & FY \end{array}$$

$FQf$  is a weak equivalence in  $D$  by claim (i), and both  $Fp_X$  and  $Fp_Y$  are weak equivalences by the definition of  $C_F^\circ$ , so using the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\mathrm{weq} D$ , we may deduce that  $Ff$  is a weak equivalence in  $D$  too. Thus,  $F|_{C_F^\circ}$  is a relative functor, and by [corollary 3.3.9](#),  $(C_F^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ .  $\blacksquare$



**3.3.II** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories, let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be an ordinary functor, and let  $\{C_j^\circ \mid j \in J\}$  be a directed family of full subcategories of  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $C^\circ = \bigcup_{j \in J} C_j^\circ$ . If each restriction  $F : C_j^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a relative functor, then the restriction  $F : C^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is also a relative functor.

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

When we have the 2-out-of-6 property, we can say a bit more about enlarging deformation retracts.

**3.3.I2** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories.

- Let  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  and  $(C'^\circ, Q', p')$  be left deformation retracts for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and let  $C''^\circ$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  generated by the union of  $C^\circ$  and  $C'^\circ$ . If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a homotopical category, then the restriction  $F : C''^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a relative functor.
- Let  $(D^\circ, R, i)$  and  $(D'^\circ, R', i')$  be right deformation retracts for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and let  $D''^\circ$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$  generated by the union of  $D^\circ$  and  $D'^\circ$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a homotopical category, then the restriction  $G : D''^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a relative functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version. We follow the proof of Proposition 40.4 in [DHKS].

Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a weak equivalence in  $C''^\circ$ . If  $X$  and  $Y$  are both in  $C^\circ$  (resp.  $C'^\circ$ ), then  $Ff : FX \rightarrow FY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , because  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  (resp.  $(C'^\circ, Q', p')$ ) is a left deformation retract for  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ ; so instead suppose  $X$  (resp.  $Y$ ) is in  $C^\circ$  (resp.  $C'^\circ$ ). Consider the following diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 FQQ'X & \xrightarrow{Fp_{Q'X}} & FQ'X & \xrightarrow{FQ'f} & FQ'Y \\
 FQp'_X \downarrow \simeq & & Fp'_X \downarrow & & \simeq \downarrow Fp'_Y \\
 FQX & \xrightarrow[Fp_X]{\simeq} & FX & \xrightarrow{Ff} & FY
 \end{array}$$

The left square commutes because  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract and the right square commutes because  $(C'^\circ, Q', p')$  is a left deformation retract. Since the marked arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the 2-out-of-6 property implies that  $Ff : FX \rightarrow FY$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , as required. ■

**3.3.13** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories.*

- *Let  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  be a left deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{D}$  is a homotopical category, there is a full subcategory  $\mathcal{C}_F^\circ \subseteq \mathcal{C}$  with the following property: for any full subcategory  $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \mathcal{C}$  that contains every  $QX$ ,  $(\mathcal{C}', Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  if and only if  $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \mathcal{C}_F^\circ$ .*
- *Let  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  be a right deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  is a homotopical category, there is a full subcategory  $\mathcal{D}_G^\circ \subseteq \mathcal{D}$  with the following property: for any full subcategory  $\mathcal{D}' \subseteq \mathcal{D}$  that contains every  $RA$ ,  $(\mathcal{D}', R, i)$  is a right deformation retract for  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $\mathcal{D}' \subseteq \mathcal{D}_G^\circ$ .*

*Proof.* Recalling [corollary 3.3.9](#), this is a straightforward consequence of lemmas [3.3.11](#) and [3.3.12](#). ■

**3.3.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories, and let  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  and  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{D}$  be the respective localising functors.*

- *If  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , then there exist a right Kan extension  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  of  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}}F$  along  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}}$  such that  $(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_{\mathcal{C}} = \gamma_{\mathcal{D}}FQ$  and  $\alpha = \gamma_{\mathcal{D}}Fp$ . (In particular,  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}}FQ$  is functorial even if  $Q$  is not.)*
- *If  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is a right deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then there exist a left Kan extension  $(\mathbf{R}G, \beta)$  of  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}}G$  along  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}}$  such that  $(\mathbf{R}G)\gamma_{\mathcal{D}} = \gamma_{\mathcal{C}}GR$  and  $\beta = \gamma_{\mathcal{C}}Gi$ . (In particular,  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}}GR$  is functorial even if  $R$  is not.)*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To simplify notation, we may assume without loss of generality that  $\mathcal{D}$  is a minimal saturated relative category and that  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ . Henceforth, we write  $\gamma$  instead of  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}}$ . First, observe that  $\gamma Q$  is functorial (even if  $Q$  is not) because each  $\gamma p_X : \gamma QX \rightarrow \gamma X$  is an isomorphism, so (using axioms DR1 and DR3) there is a unique functor  $\tilde{Q} : \text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ$  such that  $\tilde{Q}\gamma = \gamma Q$ . Let  $\gamma^\circ : \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ$  be the localising functor for  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . Since  $F|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ}$  is a relative functor (by axiom DR4), we must have  $F|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ} = \tilde{F}\gamma^\circ$  for a unique functor  $\tilde{F} : \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ . We may then define  $\mathbf{L}F$  to be the functor  $\tilde{F}\tilde{Q}$ . We define  $\alpha : (\mathbf{L}F)\gamma \Rightarrow F$  by taking  $\alpha_X = Fp_X$ ; by axiom DR2, this is indeed a natural transformation.

It remains to be shown that  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  is a right Kan extension of  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  along  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ . Let  $H : \mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor and let  $\varphi : H\gamma \Rightarrow F$  be any natural transformation. By restricting along the inclusion  $\mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , we obtain a natural transformation  $\varphi|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ} : H|_{\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C}^\circ} \Rightarrow F|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ}$ , so there is a unique natural transformation  $\tilde{\varphi} : H|_{\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C}^\circ} \Rightarrow \tilde{F}$  such that  $\tilde{\varphi}\gamma^\circ = \varphi|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ}$  (by the 2-dimensional universal property of  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ ). Since  $\gamma p$  is a natural isomorphism, there is then a unique natural transformation  $\bar{\varphi} : H \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}F$  such that  $\bar{\varphi}_{\gamma X} \circ H\gamma p_X = \tilde{\varphi}_{\gamma^\circ QX}$  for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We then have  $\alpha \bullet \bar{\varphi}\gamma = \varphi$ , and  $\bar{\varphi}$  is the unique such natural transformation because the canonical functor  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  is essentially surjective on objects. ■

**3.3.15 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}$  be relative categories. Given a composable pair of ordinary functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ , a **lax left deformation retract** for  $(G, F)$  consists of

- a left deformation retract  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q^{\mathcal{C}^\circ}, p^{\mathcal{C}^\circ})$  for  $F$ , and
- a left deformation retract  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, Q^{\mathcal{D}^\circ}, p^{\mathcal{D}^\circ})$  for  $G$ ,

such that  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q^{\mathcal{C}^\circ}, p^{\mathcal{C}^\circ})$  is also a left deformation retract for  $GF$  as well. A **strong left deformation retract** for  $(G, F)$  is a lax left deformation retract as above such that  $F$  sends objects in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  to objects in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$ . We say a composable pair of functors is **laxly left deformable** (resp. **strongly left deformable**) if it admits a lax left deformation (resp. strong left deformation).

Dually, given a composable pair of ordinary functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , an **oplax right deformation retract** for  $(F, G)$  consists of

- a right deformation retract  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, R^{\mathcal{C}^\circ}, i^{\mathcal{C}^\circ})$  for  $F$ , and
- a right deformation retract  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R^{\mathcal{D}^\circ}, i^{\mathcal{D}^\circ})$  for  $G$ ,

such that  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R^{\mathcal{D}^\circ}, i^{\mathcal{D}^\circ})$  is a right deformation retract for  $GF$  as well. A **strong right deformation retract** for  $(F, G)$  is an oplax right deformation retract as above such that  $G$  sends objects in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$  to objects in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . We say a composable pair of functors is **oplaxly right deformable** (resp. **strongly left deformable**) if it admits an oplax right deformation (resp. strong right deformation).

**3.3.16** LEMMA.

- Let  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  be a left deformation retract for  $F : C \rightarrow D$  and let  $(D^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  be a left deformation retract for  $G : D \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ . If  $F$  maps objects in  $C^\circ$  to objects in  $D^\circ$ , then  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  is a left deformation retract for  $GF : C \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ .

Dually:

- Let  $(C^\circ, R^{C^\circ}, i^{C^\circ})$  be a right deformation retract for  $F : C \rightarrow B$  and let  $(D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ})$  be a right deformation retract for  $G : D \rightarrow C$ . If  $G$  maps objects in  $D^\circ$  to objects in  $C^\circ$ , then  $(D^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ})$  is a right deformation retract for  $FG : D \rightarrow B$ .

*Proof.* Our hypotheses imply that the restriction  $GF|_{C^\circ} : C^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is a relative functor, so  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  satisfies the conditions required to be a left deformation retract for  $GF : C \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ . ■

**3.3.17** THEOREM. Let  $C$ ,  $D$ , and  $\mathcal{E}$  be relative categories, and let  $\gamma_C : C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$ ,  $\gamma_D : D \rightarrow \text{Ho } D$ , and  $\gamma_{\mathcal{E}} : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{E}$  be the respective localising functors.

- (i) Let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  be an ordinary functor. If  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is any left deformation retract for  $F$ , then  $F$  has a total left derived functor  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  such that  $(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C = \gamma_D FQ$  and  $\alpha = \gamma_D Fp$ .
- (ii) Let  $F, F' : C \rightarrow D$  be a parallel pair of ordinary functors. If  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  and  $(\mathbf{L}F', \alpha')$  are total left derived functors for  $F$  and  $F'$  (respectively), then for any natural transformation  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$ , there exists a unique natural transformation  $\mathbf{L}\varphi : \mathbf{L}F \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}F'$  such that  $\alpha' \bullet (\mathbf{L}\varphi)\gamma_C = \gamma_D \varphi \bullet \alpha$ .
- (iii) Moreover, if  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for both  $F$  and  $F'$ , then  $(\mathbf{L}\varphi)\gamma_C = \gamma_D \varphi Q$ .
- (iv) Let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  and  $G : D \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be ordinary functors between relative categories. If  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha^F)$ ,  $(\mathbf{L}G, \alpha^G)$ , and  $(\mathbf{L}(GF), \alpha^{GF})$  are total left derived functors for  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $GF$  (respectively), then there is a unique natural transformation  $\mu_{G,F} : (\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F) \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}(GF)$  such that  $\alpha^{GF} \bullet \mu_{G,F}\gamma_C = \alpha^G F \bullet (\mathbf{L}G)\alpha^F$ .
- (v) If  $(G, F)$  is moreover a strongly left deformable composable pair, then the canonical comparison  $\mu_{G,F} : (\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F) \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}(GF)$  is an isomorphism.

Dually:

- (i') Let  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an ordinary functor. If  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is any right deformation retract for  $G$ , then  $G$  has a total right derived functor  $(\mathbf{R}G, \beta)$  such that  $(\mathbf{R}G)\gamma_D = \gamma_C G R$  and  $\beta = \gamma_C G i$ .
- (ii') Let  $G, G' : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a parallel pair of ordinary functors. If  $(\mathbf{R}G, \beta)$  and  $(\mathbf{R}G', \beta')$  are total right derived functors for  $G$  and  $G'$  (respectively), then for any natural transformation  $\psi : G' \Rightarrow G$ , there exists a unique natural transformation  $\mathbf{R}\psi : \mathbf{R}G' \Rightarrow \mathbf{R}G$  such that  $(\mathbf{R}\psi)\gamma_D \bullet \beta' = \beta \bullet \gamma_C \psi$ .
- (iii') Moreover, if  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is a right deformation retract for both  $G$  and  $G'$ , then  $(\mathbf{R}\psi)\gamma_D = \gamma_C \psi R$ .
- (iv') Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be ordinary functors between relative categories. If  $(\mathbf{R}F, \beta^F)$ ,  $(\mathbf{R}G, \beta^G)$ , and  $(\mathbf{R}(FG), \beta^{FG})$  are total right derived functors for  $F$ ,  $G$ , and  $FG$  (respectively), then there is a unique natural transformation  $\delta_{F,G} : \mathbf{R}(FG) \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}F)(\mathbf{R}G)$  such that  $\delta_{F,G}\gamma_D \bullet \beta^{FG} = (\mathbf{R}F)\beta^G \bullet \beta^F G$ .
- (v') If  $(F, G)$  is moreover a strongly right deformable composable pair, then the canonical comparison  $\delta_{F,G} : \mathbf{R}(FG) \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}F)(\mathbf{R}G)$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* (i). By [proposition 3.3.14](#), the functor  $\gamma_D F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{D}$  has a right Kan extension along  $\gamma_C : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ , say  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$ , characterised by the announced equations. We must verify that  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  is an absolute right Kan extension, i.e. that  $(H(\mathbf{L}F), H\alpha)$  is a right Kan extension for any functor  $H : \text{Ho } \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  whatsoever.

It is clear that  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is also a left deformation retract for  $H\gamma_D F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ , so the cited proposition yields a right Kan extension  $(L', \alpha')$  of  $H\gamma_D F$  along  $\gamma_C$ . There is then a unique natural transformation  $\varphi : H(\mathbf{L}F) \Rightarrow L'$  such that  $\alpha' \bullet \varphi\gamma_C = H\alpha$ , i.e. the following diagram commutes for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C X & \xrightarrow{\varphi\gamma_C X} & L'\gamma_C X \\ H\alpha_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha'_X \\ H\gamma_D F X & \xlongequal{\quad} & H\gamma_D F X \end{array}$$

However, if  $\tilde{X}$  is in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , then  $\alpha_{\tilde{X}}$  and  $\alpha'_{\tilde{X}}$  are isomorphisms, and so  $\varphi_{\gamma_C X}$  must be an isomorphism as well. Since the canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is essentially

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

surjective on objects,  $\varphi : H(\mathbf{L}F) \Rightarrow L'$  must be a natural isomorphism. In particular,  $(H(\mathbf{L}F), H\alpha)$  is indeed a right Kan extension.

(ii). Noting that  $\gamma_D \varphi \bullet \alpha$  is a natural transformation  $(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C \Rightarrow \gamma_D F'$ , the universal property of  $(\mathbf{L}F', \alpha')$  yields a unique natural transformation  $\mathbf{L}\varphi : \mathbf{L}F \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}F'$  such that  $\gamma_D \varphi \bullet \alpha = \alpha' \bullet (\mathbf{L}\varphi)\gamma_C$ , as required.

(iii). We must have

$$\gamma_D F p \bullet (\mathbf{L}\varphi)\gamma_C = \gamma_D \varphi \bullet \gamma_D F' p = \gamma_D F p \bullet \gamma_D \varphi Q$$

as required.

(iv). Since  $\alpha^G F \bullet (\mathbf{L}G)\alpha^F$  is a natural transformation  $(\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C \Rightarrow \gamma_D GF$ , the universal property of  $(\mathbf{L}(GF), \alpha^{GF})$  yields the required natural transformation  $\mu_{G,F} : (\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F) \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}(GF)$ .

(v). Let  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  and  $(D^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  constitute a strong left deformation retract for  $(G, F)$ , and let  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha^F)$ ,  $(\mathbf{L}G, \alpha^G)$ ,  $(\mathbf{L}(GF), \alpha^{GF})$  be the total left derived functors for  $F$  and  $G$ , respectively, as constructed in claim (i). Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha^{GF} \bullet \mu_{G,F} \gamma_C &= \alpha^G F \bullet (\mathbf{L}G)\alpha^F \\ &= \gamma_\varepsilon G p^{D^\circ} F \bullet \gamma_\varepsilon G Q^{D^\circ} F p^{C^\circ} \\ &= \gamma_\varepsilon G F p^{C^\circ} \bullet \gamma_\varepsilon G p^{D^\circ} F Q^{C^\circ} \end{aligned}$$

so we must have  $\mu_{G,F} \gamma_C = \gamma_\varepsilon G p^{D^\circ} F Q^{C^\circ}$ ; but  $\gamma_\varepsilon G p^{D^\circ} F Q^{C^\circ}$  is a natural isomorphism because  $F$  sends objects in  $C^\circ$  to objects in  $D^\circ$  and  $G$  preserves weak equivalences in  $D^\circ$ , so we deduce that  $\mu_{G,F}$  is also a natural isomorphism (using the fact that  $\gamma_C : C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  is bijective on objects). ■

**3.3.18 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be relative categories.*

- *If  $F : C \rightarrow D$  is a relative functor, then  $(\text{Ho } F, \text{id})$  is a total left derived functor for  $F$ .*
- *If  $G : D \rightarrow C$  is a relative functor, then  $(\text{Ho } G, \text{id})$  is a total right derived functor for  $G$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [remark 3.3.7](#), the trivial right deformation retract is a right deformation retract for  $F : C \rightarrow D$ . Thus,  $\text{Ho } F : \text{Ho } C \rightarrow \text{Ho } D$  together with  $\text{id} : (\text{Ho } F)\gamma_C \Rightarrow \gamma_D F$  constitute a total left derived functor for  $F$ . ■

**3.3.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category.*

- *If  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract of  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{W}$  is a subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}^\circ \subseteq \mathcal{W} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , then the functor  $\mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \hookrightarrow \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has a fully faithful left adjoint.*
- *If  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, R, i)$  is a right deformation retract of  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{W}$  is a subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}^\circ \subseteq \mathcal{W} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , then the functor  $\mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \hookrightarrow \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has a fully faithful right adjoint.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider the localising functor  $\gamma_{\mathcal{W}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ . Since  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}^\circ \subseteq \mathcal{W}$ ,  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for  $\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}$ , so (by [theorem 3.3.17](#)) there exists an absolute right Kan extension  $(F, \alpha)$  of  $\gamma_{\mathcal{W}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  along the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ . Since  $\gamma$  factors through  $\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}$ , say  $\gamma = G\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}$ , the 2-dimensional universal property of  $\mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  yields a natural transformation  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]}$  such that  $\varepsilon\gamma_{\mathcal{W}} = \alpha$ ; similar arguments show that  $(F, \varepsilon)$  is an absolute right Kan extension of  $\text{id} : \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  along  $G : \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ , so  $F$  is a left adjoint for  $G$  with counit  $\varepsilon$ , by [proposition A.5.21](#).

It remains to be shown that  $F : \text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  is fully faithful. Consider the natural transformation  $G\varepsilon : GFG \Rightarrow G$ . The total derived functor theorem says  $\varepsilon\gamma_{\mathcal{W}} : FG\gamma_{\mathcal{W}} \Rightarrow \gamma_{\mathcal{W}}$  is given by  $\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}p$ , so  $G\varepsilon\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}$  is given by  $G\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}p$ , which is a natural isomorphism. Since  $\gamma_{\mathcal{W}}$  is bijective on objects, we deduce that  $G\varepsilon$  itself is a natural isomorphism. Thus,  $\eta G : G \Rightarrow GFG$  is a natural isomorphism (by the right triangle identity), and since  $G$  is bijective on objects, we may use [proposition A.1.3](#) to see that  $F$  is fully faithful.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.20** DEFINITION. The **2-category of small left deformation retracts** is defined as follows:

- The objects are pairs  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  where  $\mathcal{C}$  is a small relative category and  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  is a left deformation retract of  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- A 1-morphism  $F : (\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ}) \rightarrow (\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{D}^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  is an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , such that  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ , and  $F$  sends objects in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  to objects in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$ .
- The 2-morphisms are ordinary natural transformations.

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

- All compositions and identities are inherited from 2-category of small categories.

We write  $\mathfrak{LDef}$  for this 2-category, and we write  $LDefFun$  for its hom-sets.

The **2-category of small right deformation retracts** is defined dually:

- The objects are pairs  $(D, D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ})$  where  $D$  is a small relative category and  $(D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ})$  is a right deformation retract of  $D$ .
- A 1-morphism  $G : (D, D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ}) \rightarrow (C, C^\circ, R^{C^\circ}, i^{C^\circ})$  is an ordinary functor  $G : D \rightarrow C$ , such that  $(D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ})$  is a right deformation retract for  $G$ , and  $G$  sends objects in  $D^\circ$  to objects in  $C^\circ$ .
- The 2-morphisms are ordinary natural transformations.
- All compositions and identities are inherited from 2-category of small categories.

We write  $\mathfrak{RDef}$  for this 2-category, and we write  $RDefFun$  for its hom-sets.

**3.3.21** REMARK. The duality principle for deformation retracts can be formalised as follows: there is a 2-functor  $\mathfrak{LDef}^{co} \rightarrow \mathfrak{RDef}$  that sends  $(C, C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  to its opposite  $(C^{op}, (C^\circ)^{op}, (Q^{C^\circ})^{op}, (p^{C^\circ})^{op})$ , and it has an evident strict inverse  $\mathfrak{RDef}^{co} \rightarrow \mathfrak{LDef}$ . Note that these two 2-functors reverse the direction of 2-morphisms but preserve the direction of 1-morphisms!

**3.3.22** COROLLARY. *There are two pseudofunctors,  $\mathbf{L}$  and  $\mathbf{R}$ , where:*

- $\mathbf{L}$  is a pseudofunctor  $\mathfrak{LDef} \rightarrow \mathfrak{Cat}$  that sends an object  $(C, C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  to the homotopy category  $Ho C$ , a 1-morphism  $F : (C, C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ}) \rightarrow (D, D^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  to its total left derived functor  $\mathbf{L}F : Ho C \rightarrow Ho D$ , and a 2-morphism  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  to the derived natural transformation  $\mathbf{L}\varphi : \mathbf{L}F \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}F'$ , and  $\mathbf{L}$  preserves identity 1-morphisms strictly.
- $\mathbf{R}$  is a pseudofunctor  $\mathfrak{RDef} \rightarrow \mathfrak{Cat}$  that sends an object  $(D, D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ})$  to the homotopy category  $Ho D$ , a 1-morphism  $G : (D, D^\circ, R^{D^\circ}, i^{D^\circ}) \rightarrow (C, C^\circ, R^{C^\circ}, i^{C^\circ})$  to its total right derived functor  $\mathbf{R}G : Ho D \rightarrow Ho C$ , and a 2-morphism  $\psi : G' \Rightarrow G$  to the derived natural transformation  $\mathbf{R}\psi : \mathbf{R}G' \Rightarrow \mathbf{R}G$ , and  $\mathbf{R}$  preserves identity 1-morphisms strictly.



- **L** and **R** are compatible with the duality principle, in the sense that the following diagrams commute (strictly):

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathfrak{LDef}^{\text{co}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}^{\text{co}}} & \mathfrak{Cat}^{\text{co}} \\
 (-)^{\text{op}} \downarrow & & \downarrow (-)^{\text{op}} \\
 \mathfrak{LDef} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{R}} & \mathfrak{Cat}
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathfrak{RDef}^{\text{co}} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{R}^{\text{co}}} & \mathfrak{Cat}^{\text{co}} \\
 (-)^{\text{op}} \downarrow & & \downarrow (-)^{\text{op}} \\
 \mathfrak{RDef} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{L}} & \mathfrak{Cat}
 \end{array}$$

*Proof.* The main claims follow from [theorem 3.3.17](#); the only thing left to check is that the collection of 2-isomorphisms  $\mu$  and  $\delta$  satisfy the coherence laws for pseudofunctors; that is, we should show that the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 (\mathbf{L}H)(\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F) & \xrightarrow{(\mathbf{L}H)\mu_{G,F}} & (\mathbf{L}H)\mathbf{L}(GF) \\
 \mu_{H,G}(\mathbf{L}F) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{H,GF} \\
 \mathbf{L}(HG)(\mathbf{L}F) & \xrightarrow{\mu_{HG,F}} & \mathbf{L}(HGF)
 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbf{R}(FGH) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{F,GH}} & (\mathbf{R}F)\mathbf{R}(GH) \\
 \delta_{FG,H} \downarrow & & \downarrow (\mathbf{R}F)\delta_{G,H} \\
 \mathbf{R}(FG)(\mathbf{R}H) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{F,G}(\mathbf{R}H)} & (\mathbf{R}F)(\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{R}H)
 \end{array}$$

However, using the explicit formulae for  $\mu$  and  $\delta$  in the proof of the theorem, it is easy to see that these diagrams do indeed commute.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.23** DEFINITION. A **deformable adjunction** between two relative categories is an ordinary adjunction where the left adjoint is left deformable and the right adjoint is right deformable.

**3.3.24** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories and let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an adjunction of ordinary categories, with unit  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow GF$  and counit  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ .

- If  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a deformable adjunction, then it admits a derived adjunction.
- Let  $F' \dashv G' : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$  be another adjunction, with unit  $\eta'$  and counit  $\varepsilon'$ , and let  $H : \mathcal{C}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $K : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be relative functors. If

- $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ ,

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

- $(C'^\circ, Q', p')$  is a left deformation retract for  $F'$ ,
- $H$  sends objects in  $C'^\circ$  to objects in  $C^\circ$ ,
- $(D^\circ, R, i)$  is a right deformation retract for  $G$ ,
- $(D'^\circ, R', i')$  is a right deformation retract for  $G'$ , and
- $K$  sends objects in  $D'^\circ$  to objects in  $D^\circ$ ,

then for any conjugate pair of natural transformations,

$$\varphi : FH \Rightarrow KF' \qquad \psi : HG' \Rightarrow GK$$

the derived natural transformations

$$\mathbf{L}\varphi : (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathrm{Ho} H) \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Ho} K)(\mathbf{L}F') \quad \mathbf{R}\psi : (\mathrm{Ho} K)(\mathbf{R}G') \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}G)(\mathrm{Ho} K)$$

also constitute a conjugate pair.

- (iii) Let  $F' \dashv G' : D' \rightarrow D$  be another adjunction, with unit  $\eta'$  and counit  $\epsilon'$ . If  $(F', F)$  is strongly left deformable and  $(G, G')$  is strongly right deformable, then the three derived adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{L}F \dashv \mathbf{R}G &: \mathrm{Ho} D \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C \\ \mathbf{L}F' \dashv \mathbf{R}G' &: \mathrm{Ho} D' \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D \\ \mathbf{L}(F'F) \dashv \mathbf{R}(GG') &: \mathrm{Ho} D' \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C \end{aligned}$$

make  $(\mu_{F',F}, \delta_{G,G'})$  a conjugate pair of natural transformations, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} (\delta_{G,G'} \mathbf{L}(F'F)) \bullet \bar{\eta}'' &= ((\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{R}G') \mu_{F',F}) \bullet (\mathbf{R}G) \bar{\eta}' (\mathbf{L}F) \bullet \bar{\eta} \\ \bar{\epsilon}'' \bullet (\mu_{F',F} \mathbf{R}(GG')) &= \bar{\epsilon}' \bullet (\mathbf{L}F') \bar{\epsilon} (\mathbf{R}G') \bullet ((\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{L}F') \delta_{G,G'}) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\bar{\eta}''$  and  $\bar{\epsilon}''$  are the unit and counit for  $\mathbf{L}(F'F) \dashv \mathbf{R}(GG')$ .

*Proof.* (i). We appeal to theorems 3.3.5 and 3.3.17.

(ii). Recall the following characterisations of  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  and  $\mathbf{R}\psi$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_D K F' p' \bullet (\mathbf{L}\varphi) \gamma_{C'} &= \gamma_D \varphi \bullet \gamma_D F p H \\ (\mathbf{R}\psi) \gamma_{D'} \bullet \gamma_C H G' i' &= \gamma_C G i K \bullet \gamma_C \psi \end{aligned}$$

We wish to show that these equations hold:

$$(I) \qquad \bar{\epsilon}(\mathrm{Ho} K) \bullet (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}\psi) = (\mathrm{Ho} K) \bar{\epsilon}' \bullet (\mathbf{L}\varphi)(\mathbf{R}G')$$

$$(2) \quad (\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{L}\varphi) \bullet \bar{\eta}(\mathrm{Ho} H) = (\mathbf{R}\psi)(\mathbf{L}F') \bullet (\mathrm{Ho} H)\bar{\eta}'$$

By [proposition A.1.6](#), it suffices to show that equation (1) is satisfied, and since the canonical functor  $\mathrm{Ho} D'^{\circ} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} D'$  is essentially surjective on objects, equation (1) holds if and only if the following equation holds for all  $\hat{A}$  in  $D'^{\circ}$ :

$$(3) \quad \bar{\varepsilon}_{\gamma_D K \hat{A}} \circ (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}\psi)_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} = (\mathrm{Ho} K)\bar{\varepsilon}'_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} \circ (\mathbf{L}\varphi)_{\gamma_{C'} G' R' \hat{A}}$$

We observe that  $G' i'_{\hat{A}} : G' \hat{A} \rightarrow G' R' \hat{A}$  is a weak equivalence in  $C'$  (because  $(D'^{\circ}, R', i')$  is a right deformation retract for  $G'$ ), so  $\gamma_C H G' i'_{\hat{A}}$  is invertible, and we must have

$$(\mathbf{R}\psi)_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} = \gamma_C G i_{K \hat{A}} \circ \gamma_C \psi_{\hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_C H G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1}$$

and hence,

$$(\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}\psi)_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} = \gamma_D F Q G i_{K \hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D F Q \psi_{\hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_D F Q H G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1}$$

therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\varepsilon}_{\gamma_D K \hat{A}} \circ (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}\psi)_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} &= \gamma_D \varepsilon_{K \hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D F p_{G \hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D F Q \psi_{\hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_D F Q H G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1} \\ &= \gamma_D \varepsilon_{K \hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D F \psi_{\hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D F p_{H G' \hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_D F Q H G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand,

$$\bar{\varepsilon}'_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} = \gamma_{D'} \varepsilon'_{\hat{A}} \circ \gamma_{D'} F' p'_{G' \hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_{D'} F' Q' G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1}$$

and so,

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathrm{Ho} K)\bar{\varepsilon}'_{\gamma_{D'} \hat{A}} \circ (\mathbf{L}\varphi)_{\gamma_{C'} G' R' \hat{A}} &= \gamma_D K \varepsilon'_{\hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D K F' p'_{G' \hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_D K F' Q' G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1} \circ (\mathbf{L}\varphi)_{\gamma_{C'} G' R' \hat{A}} \\ &= \gamma_D K \varepsilon'_{\hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D K F' p'_{G' \hat{A}} \circ (\mathbf{L}\varphi)_{\gamma_{C'} G' \hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_D F Q H G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1} \\ &= \gamma_D K \varepsilon'_{\hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D \varphi_{G' \hat{A}} \circ \gamma_D F p_{H G' \hat{A}} \circ (\gamma_D F Q H G' i'_{\hat{A}})^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

but  $\varepsilon_{K \hat{A}} \circ F \psi_{\hat{A}} = K \varepsilon'_{\hat{A}} \circ \varphi_{G' \hat{A}}$  by hypothesis, so equation (3) indeed holds.

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

(iii). Suppose

- $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ ,
- $(C'^\circ, Q', p')$  is a left deformation retract for  $F'$ ,
- $F$  sends objects in  $C^\circ$  to objects in  $C'^\circ$ ,
- $(D^\circ, R, i)$  is a right deformation retract for  $G$ ,
- $(D'^\circ, R', i')$  is a right deformation retract for  $G'$ , and
- $G'$  sends objects in  $D'^\circ$  to objects in  $D^\circ$ ,

and recall that the comparison isomorphisms are characterised by the following equations:

$$\mu_{F',F}\gamma_C = \gamma_{D'}F'p'FQ \quad \delta_{G,G'}\gamma_{D'} = \gamma_CGiG'R'$$

Thus,  $((\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{R}G') \circ \mu_{F',F}) \bullet (\mathbf{R}G)\bar{\eta}'(\mathbf{L}F) \bullet \bar{\eta})\gamma_C$  expands to

$$\begin{aligned} & \gamma_C G R G' R' F' p' F Q \\ & \bullet \gamma_C (G R G' i' F' Q' F Q \bullet G R \eta' Q' F Q) \bullet (\gamma_C G R p' F Q)^{-1} \\ & \bullet \gamma_C (G i F Q \bullet \eta Q) \bullet (\gamma_C p)^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

and a straightforward calculation then shows

$$\begin{aligned} & ((\delta_{G,G'}^{-1} \circ \mu_{F',F}) \bullet (\mathbf{R}G)\bar{\eta}'(\mathbf{L}F) \bullet \bar{\eta})\gamma_C \\ & = \gamma_C G i G' R' F' F Q \bullet \gamma_C (G G' i' F' F Q \bullet G \eta F Q \bullet \eta Q) \bullet (\gamma_C p)^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

but the RHS is precisely the definition of  $((\delta_{G,G'}\mathbf{L}(F'F)) \bullet \bar{\eta}'')\gamma_C$ . The dual calculation proves the other equation. ■

**3.3.25** COROLLARY. *Let  $C, C', D, D'$  be relative categories, let  $F \dashv G : D \rightarrow C$  and  $F' \dashv G' : D' \rightarrow C'$  be two adjunctions of ordinary categories, and let  $H : C' \rightarrow C$  and  $K : D' \rightarrow D$  be homotopical functors. Suppose we have a conjugate pair of natural transformations as in the diagrams below:*

$$(L) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} C' & \xrightarrow{H} & C \\ F' \downarrow & \wr_{\varphi} & \downarrow F \\ D' & \xrightarrow{K} & D \end{array} \quad (R) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} D' & \xrightarrow{K} & D \\ G' \downarrow & \wr_{\psi} & \downarrow G \\ C' & \xrightarrow{H} & C \end{array}$$

Assume the following hypotheses:

- $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ .
- $(C'^\circ, Q', p')$  is a left deformation retract for  $F'$ .
- $H$  sends objects in  $C'^\circ$  to objects in  $C^\circ$ .
- $(D^\circ, R, i)$  is a right deformation retract for  $G$ .
- $(D'^\circ, R', i')$  is a right deformation retract for  $G'$ .
- $K$  sends objects in  $D'^\circ$  to objects in  $D^\circ$ .

Then, considering the derived natural transformations  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  and  $\mathbf{R}\psi$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{(L')} & \begin{array}{ccc} \text{Ho } C' & \xrightarrow{\text{Ho } H} & \text{Ho } C \\ \mathbf{L}F' \downarrow & \swarrow_{\mathbf{L}\varphi} & \downarrow \mathbf{L}F \\ \text{Ho } D' & \xrightarrow{\text{Ho } K} & \text{Ho } D \end{array} & \begin{array}{ccc} \text{Ho } D' & \xrightarrow{\text{Ho } K} & \text{Ho } D \\ \mathbf{R}G' \downarrow & \nearrow^{\mathbf{R}\psi} & \downarrow \mathbf{R}G \\ \text{Ho } C' & \xrightarrow{\text{Ho } H} & \text{Ho } C \end{array} & \text{(R')}
 \end{array}$$

- If diagram (R) satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition, then so does (R').
- If diagram (L) satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition, then so does (L').

*Proof.* The theorem says that  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  and  $\mathbf{R}\psi$  constitute a conjugate pair of natural transformations, and by [theorem 3.3.17](#) it is clear that  $\mathbf{L}\varphi$  (resp.  $\mathbf{R}\psi$ ) is a natural isomorphism if  $\varphi$  (resp.  $\psi$ ) is a natural isomorphism.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.26 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}$  be relative categories.*

- *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be functors and suppose  $(G, F)$  is laxly left deformable. If the canonical comparison  $\mu_{G,F} : (\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F) \Rightarrow \mathbf{L}(GF)$  is a natural isomorphism and  $\mathcal{E}$  is a saturated homotopical category, then  $(G, F)$  is a left deformable composable pair.*

*Dually:*

- *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be functors and suppose  $(F, G)$  is oplaxly right deformable. If the canonical comparison  $\delta_{F,G} : \mathbf{R}(FG) \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}F)(\mathbf{R}G)$  is a natural isomorphism and  $\mathcal{C}$  is a saturated homotopical category, then  $(F, G)$  is a left deformable composable pair.*

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

*Proof.* Let  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  and  $(D^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  constitute a lax left deformation retract for  $(G, F)$ . By [theorem 3.3.17](#), we may assume without loss of generality that  $(\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_C = \gamma_D FQ$ ,  $(\mathbf{L}G)\gamma_D = \gamma_C GQ^{D^\circ}$ , and  $\mu_{G,F}\gamma_C = \gamma_C Gp^{D^\circ} FQ^{C^\circ}$ . Our hypothesis says  $\mu_{G,F}$  is a natural isomorphism and  $\mathcal{E}$  is a saturated homotopical category, so the morphisms  $Gp_{FQ^{C^\circ}X}^{D^\circ} : GQ^{D^\circ} FQ^{C^\circ} X \Rightarrow GFQ^{C^\circ} X$  are weak equivalences, for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

Now, let  $\tilde{X}$  be an object in  $C^\circ$ . The following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} GQ^{D^\circ} FQ^{C^\circ} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{Gp_{FQ^{C^\circ}\tilde{X}}^{D^\circ}} & GFQ^{C^\circ} \tilde{X} \\ GQ^{D^\circ} Fp_{\tilde{X}}^{C^\circ} \downarrow & & \downarrow GFp_{\tilde{X}}^{C^\circ} \\ GQ^{D^\circ} F\tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{Gp_{F\tilde{X}}^{D^\circ}} & GF\tilde{X} \end{array}$$

and since  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  is a left deformation retract for both  $F$  and  $GF$ , it follows that the downward-pointing arrows in the above diagrams are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$ ; so using the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{E}$  and the fact that  $Gp_{FQ^{C^\circ}\tilde{X}}^{D^\circ}$  is a weak equivalence, we deduce that  $Gp_{F\tilde{X}}^{D^\circ}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Thus, recalling [proposition 3.3.10](#), we obtain a left deformation retract  $(D_G^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  for  $G$  such that  $F$  sends every object in  $C^\circ$  to an object in  $D_G^\circ$ , and so  $(G, F)$  is indeed strongly left deformable.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.27** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $\mathcal{E}$  be relative categories, and let*

$$F_! \dashv F^* : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \qquad G_! \dashv G^* : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$$

*be adjunctions of ordinary categories. If  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{E}$  are saturated homotopical categories, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $(G_!, F_!)$  is strongly left deformable and  $(F^*, G^*)$  is strongly right deformable.
- (ii)  $(G_!, F_!)$  is laxly left deformable and  $(F^*, G^*)$  is strongly right deformable.
- (iii)  $(G_!, F_!)$  is strongly left deformable and  $(F^*, G^*)$  is oplaxly right deformable.

*Proof.* [Theorem 3.3.24](#) says  $(\mu_{G_!, F_!}, \delta_{F^*, G^*})$  is a conjugate pair of natural transformations, and the pasting lemma ([A.1.12](#)) implies  $\mu_{G_!, F_!}$  is a natural isomorphism if and only if  $\delta_{F^*, G^*}$  is a natural isomorphism, so the equivalence of the three statements follows from the proposition above.  $\blacksquare$

**3.3.28** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be two relative categories, let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an adjunction of ordinary categories with unit  $\eta$  and counit  $\varepsilon$ , let  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  be a left deformation retract for  $F$ , and let  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  be a right deformation retract for  $G$ . Consider the following statements:*

- (i) *For all objects  $\tilde{X}$  in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  and all objects  $\hat{B}$  in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$ , if  $F\tilde{X} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then its right adjoint transpose  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow G\hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , The morphism  $Gi_{FQX} \circ \eta_{QX} : QX \rightarrow GRFQX$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iii) *The derived unit  $\bar{\eta} : \text{id}_{\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow (\mathbf{R}G)(\mathbf{L}F)$  is a natural isomorphism.*
- (i') *For all objects  $\tilde{X}$  in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  and all objects  $\hat{B}$  in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$ , if  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow G\hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then its left adjoint transpose  $F\tilde{X} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*
- (ii') *For all objects  $B$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the morphism  $\varepsilon_{RB} \circ Fp_{GRB} : FQGRB \Rightarrow RB$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*
- (iii') *The derived counit  $\bar{\varepsilon} : (\mathbf{L}F)(\mathbf{R}G) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\text{Ho } \mathcal{D}}$  is a natural isomorphism.*

*We have the implications (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii); if  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property, then (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i); and if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a saturated homotopical category, then (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Dually, (i')  $\Rightarrow$  (ii')  $\Rightarrow$  (iii'); if  $\text{weq } \mathcal{D}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property, then (ii')  $\Rightarrow$  (i'); and if  $\mathcal{D}$  is a saturated homotopical category, then (iii')  $\Rightarrow$  (ii').*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). We have a weak equivalence  $i_{FQX} : FQX \rightarrow RFQX$ , and  $QX$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , so by the hypothesis, its right adjoint transpose  $Gi_{FQX} \circ \eta_{QX}$  is also a weak equivalence.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). The derived unit is given by  $\bar{\eta}\gamma_C = \gamma_C(GiFQ \bullet \eta Q) \circ (\gamma_C p)^{-1}$ , which is certainly a natural isomorphism if  $Gi_{FQX} \circ \eta_{QX}$  is a weak equivalence for all  $X$ .

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Assume  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property. Given  $\tilde{X}$  in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Q\tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{\eta_{Q\tilde{X}}} & GFQ\tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{Gi_{FQ\tilde{X}}} & GRFQ\tilde{X} \\ p_{\tilde{X}} \downarrow & & & & \downarrow GRFp_{\tilde{X}} \\ \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{\eta_{\tilde{X}}} & GF\tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{Gi_{F\tilde{X}}} & GRF\tilde{X} \end{array}$$

but the top row and the two vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so the bottom row must be a weak equivalence as well, by the 2-out-of-3 property.

Let  $g : F\tilde{X} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , and let  $f = Gg \circ \eta_{\tilde{X}}$  be its right adjoint transpose in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We know  $G|_{\mathcal{D}^\circ} : \mathcal{D}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a relative functor, so  $GRg : GRF\tilde{X} \rightarrow GR\hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; but

$$Gi_{\hat{B}} \circ f = Gi_{\hat{B}} \circ Gg \circ \eta_{\tilde{X}} = GRg \circ (Gi_{F\tilde{X}} \circ \eta_{\tilde{X}})$$

and we know  $Gi_{\hat{B}} : G\hat{B} \rightarrow GR\hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so by the 2-out-of-3 property again,  $f$  must be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Now assume  $\mathcal{C}$  is a saturated homotopical category. If  $\bar{\eta}$  is a natural isomorphism, then each  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}}(Gi_{FQ} \bullet \eta_Q)$  must also be a natural isomorphism, and so each  $Gi_{FQX} \circ \eta_{QX}$  is a weak equivalence, by the saturation hypothesis. ■

**3.3.29 COROLLARY.** *With notation as above, suppose the **Quillen equivalence condition** is satisfied:*

- *For all objects  $\tilde{X}$  in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  and all objects  $\hat{B}$  in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$ , a morphism  $F\tilde{X} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$  if and only if its right adjoint transpose  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow G\hat{B}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Then the derived adjunction is an adjoint equivalence of categories.* ■



### 3.4 DHKS derived functors

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 3.2, 3.3.

Notice that in [theorem 3.3.17](#), we constructed derived functors by restricting to a relatively equivalent full subcategory on which the functor respects weak equivalences. This suggests that, by strengthening the definition of ‘deformation retract’, we may be able to construct derived functors without first passing to the homotopy category.

In this section we follow [[DHKS](#), Ch. VII].

**3.4.I DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories. A **functorial left deformation retract** for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a triple  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  where

- $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  with the induced relative subcategory structure,
- $Q : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a relative functor, and
- $p : Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  is a natural weak equivalence,

and these data are required to have the following properties:

- The restriction  $F|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ} : \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a relative functor.
- For all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the object  $QX$  is in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .

An ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is **functorially left deformable** if there exists a functorial left deformation retract for  $F$ .

Dually, a **functorial right deformation retract** for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a triple  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  where

- $\mathcal{D}^\circ$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$  with the induced relative subcategory structure,
- $R : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a relative functor, and
- $i : \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \Rightarrow R$  is a natural weak equivalence,

and these data are required to have the following properties:

- The restriction  $G|_{\mathcal{D}^\circ} : \mathcal{D}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a relative functor.
- For all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the object  $RA$  is in  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$ .

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

An ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is **functorially right deformable** if there exists a functorial right deformation retract for  $G$ .

**3.4.2** REMARK. Every relative functor is both functorially left deformable and functorially right deformable, with trivial functorial left and right deformation retracts.

REMARK. The definition above is the one found in [DHKS, §40] under the name ‘deformation retract’; they do not consider the non-functorial version.

**3.4.3** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories.*

- *If  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , then  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is also a left deformation retract for  $F$ .*
- *If  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is a functorial right deformation retract for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is also a right deformation retract for  $G$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is clear that axioms DR1, DR2, and DR4 are satisfied, so we need only check axiom DR3. For this, we simply observe that the inclusion  $\mathcal{C}^\circ \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and the relative functor  $Q : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^\circ$  (together with the natural weak equivalence  $p : Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}^\circ}$ ) constitute a relative equivalence of relative categories; thus, [proposition 3.1.27](#) implies the canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is fully faithful, as required. ■

**3.4.4** REMARK. Conversely, by replacing a relative category with its homotopy category, we may obtain functorial left (resp. right) deformation retracts from ordinary left (resp. right) deformation retracts.

**3.4.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be relative categories.*

- *Let  $Q : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a relative functor, let  $p : Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  be a natural weak equivalence, and let  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  spanned by the image of  $Q$ . If  $\text{weq } \mathcal{D}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{D}$  and  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a functor such that  $FQ$  is a relative functor and  $FqQ : FQQ \Rightarrow FQ$  is a natural weak equivalence, then  $(\mathcal{C}^\circ, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for  $F$ .*

*Dually:*

- Let  $R : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a relative functor, let  $i : \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \Rightarrow R$  be a natural weak equivalence, and let  $\mathcal{D}^\circ$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{D}$  spanned by the image of  $R$ . If  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a functor such that  $GR$  is a relative functor and  $GiR : GR \Rightarrow GRR$  is a natural weak equivalence, then  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is a functorial right deformation retract for  $G$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f : QX \rightarrow QY$  be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . By naturality, the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FQQX & \xrightarrow{FQf} & FQQY \\ Fp_{QX} \downarrow & & \downarrow Fp_{QY} \\ FQX & \xrightarrow{Ff} & FQY \end{array}$$

We know  $FQf$ ,  $Fp_{QX}$ , and  $Fp_{QY}$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{D}$ , so using the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{D}$ , we deduce that  $Ff$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Thus  $F|_{\mathcal{C}^\circ}$  is a relative functor, as required.  $\blacksquare$

**3.4.6 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be homotopical categories. A **homotopical left approximation** for an ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a homotopical right (!) Kan extension of  $F$  along  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ . Dually, a **homotopical right approximation** for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a homotopical left (!) Kan extension of  $G$  along  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ .

**3.4.7 REMARK.** More explicitly, a homotopical left approximation for  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a homotopically terminal object in the homotopical category  $([C, \mathcal{D}]_{\text{h}} \downarrow F)_{\text{h}}$  described below:

- The objects are pairs  $(K, \alpha)$  where  $K$  is a homotopical functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $\alpha$  is a natural transformation of type  $K \Rightarrow F$ .
- The morphisms  $(K', \alpha') \rightarrow (K, \alpha)$  are those natural transformations  $\psi : K' \Rightarrow K$  such that  $\alpha \bullet \psi = \alpha'$ .
- The weak equivalences are the natural weak equivalences.

Dually, a homotopical right approximation for  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a homotopically initial object in the homotopical category  $(F \downarrow [D, C]_{\text{h}})_{\text{h}}$ . By [corollary 3.2.12](#), homotopical approximations are homotopically unique.

We have the following special case:

**3.4.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $Q$  be a homotopical endofunctor on a homotopical category  $C$  and let  $p : Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_C$  be a natural transformation. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $(Q, p)$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $\text{id}_C$ .
- (ii)  $(C, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for  $\text{id}_C$ .

*Dually, let  $R$  be a homotopical endofunctor on a homotopical category  $D$ , and let  $i : \text{id}_D \Rightarrow R$  be a natural transformation. The following are equivalent:*

- (i')  $(R, i)$  is a homotopical right approximation for  $\text{id}_C$ .
- (ii')  $(D, R, i)$  is a functorial right deformation retract for  $\text{id}_D$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $(Q, p)$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $\text{id}_C$ , then there must exist a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \text{id}_C & \longrightarrow & Q_1 & \longleftarrow & Q_2 & \longrightarrow & \dots \longleftarrow Q \\
 \text{id} \downarrow & & p_1 \downarrow & & p_2 \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
 \text{id}_C & \xlongequal{\quad} & \text{id}_C & \xlongequal{\quad} & \text{id}_C & \xlongequal{\quad} & \dots \xlongequal{\quad} \text{id}_C
 \end{array}$$

where all the arrows in the top row are natural weak equivalences. Using 2-out-of-3 property, we deduce (by induction) that  $p_1, p_2, \dots, p$  are also natural weak equivalences; thus  $(C, Q, p)$  is indeed a functorial left deformation retract for  $\text{id}_C$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). If  $(C, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for  $\text{id}_C$ , then  $p : Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_C$  is a natural weak equivalence; but  $(\text{id}_C, \text{id}_{\text{id}_C})$  is a terminal object in  $([C, C]_{\text{h}} \downarrow \text{id}_C)_{\text{h}}$ , so by [proposition 3.2.2](#),  $(Q, p)$  must be a homotopically terminal object. ■

**3.4.9 LEMMA.** *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be homotopical categories.*

- *Let  $(F', p')$  and  $(F'', p'')$  be any two homotopical left approximations for an ordinary functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$ . For any object  $X$  in  $C$ ,  $p'_X : F'X \rightarrow FX$  is a weak equivalence in  $D$  if and only if  $p''_X : F''X \rightarrow FX$  is a weak equivalence in  $D$ .*

- Let  $(G', i')$  and  $(G'', i'')$  be any two homotopical left approximations for an ordinary functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . For any object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,  $i'_Y : GY \rightarrow G'Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $i''_Y : GY \rightarrow G''Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By lemma 3.2.5, there is a (finite) commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F' & \xrightarrow{\quad} \cdots \xrightarrow{\quad} & F'' \\ p' \downarrow & & \downarrow p'' \\ F & \xlongequal{\quad} \cdots \xlongequal{\quad} & F \end{array}$$

where the top row is a zigzag of natural weak equivalences. Thus, using 2-out-of-3 property, we deduce (by induction) that  $p'_X : F'X \rightarrow FX$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$  if and only if  $p''_X : F''X \rightarrow FX$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ . ■

**3.4.10** DEFINITION. Let  $F, F' : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be ordinary functors between homotopical categories, and let  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  be a natural transformation. We define the homotopical category  $([\min 2, [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]_h]_h \downarrow \varphi)_h$  as follows:

- The objects are tuples  $(H, H', \alpha, \alpha', \theta)$  where  $H$  and  $H'$  are homotopical functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ ,  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha'$  are natural transformations of type  $H \Rightarrow F$  and  $H' \Rightarrow F'$  (respectively), and  $\theta : H \Rightarrow H'$  is a natural transformation such that  $\varphi \cdot \alpha = \alpha' \cdot \theta$ .
- The morphisms  $(H, H', \alpha, \alpha', \theta) \rightarrow (K, K', \beta, \beta', \chi)$  are pairs  $(\zeta, \zeta')$  of natural transformations, where  $\zeta : H \Rightarrow K$  and  $\zeta' : H' \Rightarrow K'$ , such that  $\chi \cdot \zeta = \zeta' \cdot \theta$ ,  $\beta \cdot \zeta = \alpha$ , and  $\beta' \cdot \zeta' = \alpha'$ .
- The weak equivalences are those  $(\zeta, \zeta')$  where both  $\zeta$  and  $\zeta'$  are natural weak equivalences.

A **homotopical left approximation** for  $\varphi$  is a homotopically terminal object  $(\mathbb{L}F, \mathbb{L}F', \delta, \delta', \mathbb{L}\varphi)$  in  $([\min 2, [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]_h]_h \downarrow \varphi)_h$  such that  $(\mathbb{L}F, \delta)$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $F$  and  $(\mathbb{L}F', \delta')$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $F'$ .

Dually, let  $G, G' : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be ordinary functors between homotopical categories, and let  $\psi : G' \Rightarrow G$  be a natural transformation. We define the homotopical category  $(\psi \downarrow [\min 2, [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{C}]_h]_h)_h$  as follows:

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

- The objects are tuples  $(H, H', \alpha, \alpha', \theta)$  where  $H$  and  $H'$  are homotopical functors  $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha'$  are natural transformations of type  $G \Rightarrow H$  and  $G' \Rightarrow H'$  (respectively), and  $\theta : H' \Rightarrow H$  is a natural transformation such that  $\alpha \bullet \psi = \theta \bullet \alpha'$ .
- The morphisms  $(K, K', \beta, \beta', \chi) \rightarrow (H, H', \alpha, \alpha', \theta)$  are pairs  $(\zeta, \zeta')$  of natural transformations, where  $\zeta : K \Rightarrow H$  and  $\zeta' : K' \Rightarrow H'$ , such that  $\zeta \bullet \chi = \theta \bullet \zeta'$ ,  $\zeta \bullet \beta = \alpha$ , and  $\zeta' \bullet \beta' = \alpha'$ .
- The weak equivalences are those  $(\zeta, \zeta')$  where both  $\zeta$  and  $\zeta'$  are natural weak equivalences.

A **homotopical right approximation** for  $\psi$  is a homotopically initial object  $(\mathbb{R}G, \mathbb{R}G', \delta, \delta', \mathbb{R}\psi)$  in  $(\psi \downarrow [\min 2, [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{C}]_h]_h)_h$  such that  $(\mathbb{R}G, \delta)$  is a homotopical right approximation for  $G$  and  $(\mathbb{R}G', \delta')$  is a homotopical right approximation for  $G'$ .

**3.4.II THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be homotopical categories.*

- (i) *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be an ordinary functor. If  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for  $F$ , then  $(FQ, Fp)$  is a homotopical absolute right Kan extension of  $F$  along  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .*
- (ii) *Let  $F, F' : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a parallel pair of ordinary functors. If  $(C^\circ, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for both  $F$  and  $F'$ , then for any natural transformation  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$ ,  $(FQ, F'Q, Fp, F'p, \varphi Q)$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $\varphi$ .*
- (iii) *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be ordinary functors between homotopical categories. If  $(G, F)$  is strongly left deformable, then, for any homotopical left approximation  $((\mathbb{L}F), \delta^F)$  for  $F$  and any homotopical left approximation  $((\mathbb{L}G), \delta^G)$  for  $G$ ,  $((\mathbb{L}G)(\mathbb{L}F), \delta^G \circ \delta^F)$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $GF$ .*

*Dually:*

- (i') *Let  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an ordinary functor. If  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is a functorial right deformation retract for  $F$ , then  $(GR, Gi)$  is a homotopical absolute left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ .*

(ii') Let  $G, G' : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a parallel pair of ordinary functors. If  $(\mathcal{D}^\circ, R, i)$  is a functorial right deformation retract for both  $G$  and  $G'$ , then for any natural transformation  $\psi : G' \Rightarrow G$ ,  $(GR, G'R, Gi, G'i, \psi R)$  is a homotopical right approximation for  $\psi$ .

(iii') Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be ordinary functors between homotopical categories. If  $(F, G)$  is strongly right deformable, then, for any homotopical right approximation  $((\mathbb{R}F), \delta^F)$  for  $F$  and any homotopical right approximation  $((\mathbb{R}G), \delta^G)$  for  $G$ ,  $((\mathbb{R}F)(\mathbb{R}G), \delta^F \circ \delta^G)$  is a homotopical right approximation for  $FG$ .

*Proof.* (i). Let  $H : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $K : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be any two homotopical functors, and let  $\alpha : K \Rightarrow HF$  be any natural transformation. Then, we have the following commutative diagram of natural transformations,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} K & \xleftarrow{Kp} & KQ & \xrightarrow{\alpha Q} & HFQ \\ & \searrow \alpha & \downarrow & \swarrow HFp & \\ & & HF & & \end{array}$$

and, for any other homotopical functor  $K' : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and natural transformation  $\psi : K' \Rightarrow K$ , for  $\alpha' = \alpha \bullet \psi$ , the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} K' & \xleftarrow{K'p} & K'Q & \xrightarrow{\alpha' Q} & HFQ \\ \psi \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi Q & & \parallel \\ K & \xleftarrow{Kp} & KQ & \xrightarrow{\alpha Q} & HFQ \\ & \searrow \alpha & \downarrow & \swarrow HFp & \\ & & HF & & \end{array}$$

also commutes; thus,  $(HFQ, HFp)$  is indeed a homotopically terminal object in  $([C, \mathcal{E}]_h \downarrow HF)_h$ .

(ii). Suppose  $(H, H', \alpha, \alpha', \theta)$  is an object in  $([\min 2, [C, D]_h]_h \downarrow \varphi)_h$ . The dia-

gram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & HQ & \xrightarrow{\theta Q} & H'Q \\
 & \swarrow H_p & \downarrow & \swarrow H'_p & \downarrow \alpha' Q \\
 H & \xrightarrow{\theta} & H' & & \\
 \downarrow \alpha & \searrow \alpha Q & \downarrow \alpha' & \searrow \alpha' Q & \\
 & & FQ & \xrightarrow{\varphi Q} & F'Q \\
 & \swarrow F_p & \downarrow & \swarrow F'_p & \\
 F & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & F' & & 
 \end{array}$$

and  $(Hp, H'p)$  is a weak equivalence, so  $(FQ, F'Q, Fp, F'p, \varphi Q)$  is indeed a homotopically terminal object in  $([\min 2, [C, D]_h]_h \downarrow \varphi)_h$ .

(iii). Let  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  and  $(D^\circ, Q^{D^\circ}, p^{D^\circ})$  be functorial left deformation retracts for  $F$  and  $G$  respectively, and suppose  $F$  maps objects in  $C^\circ$  to objects in  $D^\circ$ . To begin, observe that  $Gp^{D^\circ}FQ^{C^\circ} : GQ^{D^\circ}FQ^{C^\circ} \Rightarrow GFQ^{C^\circ}$  is a natural weak equivalence; and, as established above, both  $\delta^F Q^{C^\circ} : (\mathbb{L}F)Q^{C^\circ} \Rightarrow FQ^{C^\circ}$  and  $\delta^G Q^{D^\circ} : (\mathbb{L}G)Q^{D^\circ} \Rightarrow GQ^{D^\circ}$  are natural weak equivalences, so their horizontal composite  $(\delta^G Q^{D^\circ}) \circ (\delta^F Q^{C^\circ})$  is also a natural weak equivalence. We also know that  $(C^\circ, Q^{C^\circ}, p^{C^\circ})$  is a functorial left deformation retract for  $GF$ , so  $(GFQ^{C^\circ}, GFp^{C^\circ})$  is a homotopical left approximation for  $GF$ . Now, noting that the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 (\mathbb{L}G)Q^{D^\circ}(\mathbb{L}F)Q^{C^\circ} & \xrightarrow{(\delta^G Q^{D^\circ}) \circ (\delta^F Q^{C^\circ})} & GQ^{D^\circ}FQ^{C^\circ} & \xrightarrow{Gp^{D^\circ}FQ^{C^\circ}} & GFQ^{C^\circ} \\
 \downarrow (\mathbb{L}G)p^{D^\circ} \circ (\mathbb{L}F)p^{C^\circ} & & \downarrow (Gp^{D^\circ}) \circ (Fp^{C^\circ}) & & \downarrow GFp^{C^\circ} \\
 (\mathbb{L}G)(\mathbb{L}F) & \xrightarrow{\delta^G \circ \delta^F} & GF & \xlongequal{\quad} & GF
 \end{array}$$

we conclude that  $((\mathbb{L}G)(\mathbb{L}F), \delta^G \circ \delta^F)$  and  $(GFQ^{C^\circ}, GFp^{C^\circ})$  are weakly equivalent in  $([C, \mathcal{E}]_h \downarrow GF)_h$ , and so  $((\mathbb{L}G)(\mathbb{L}F), \delta^G \circ \delta^F)$  is also a homotopical left approximation for  $GF$ , by [proposition 3.2.2](#).  $\blacksquare$

**3.4.12** REMARK. Unlike the situation we had with total derived functors, the assignment  $F \mapsto FQ$  (resp.  $G \mapsto GR$ ) is not a lax (resp. oplax) 2-functor, because we do not have a natural transformation  $\text{id}_C \Rightarrow Q$  (resp.  $R \Rightarrow \text{id}_D$ ).



**3.4.13** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be homotopical categories, and let  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  and  $\gamma_{\mathcal{D}} : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}$  be the respective localising functors.*

- *If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a left deformable functor and  $(\mathbb{L}F, \delta)$  is any homotopical left approximation for  $F$ , then  $(\mathrm{Ho}(\mathbb{L}F), \gamma_{\mathcal{D}}\delta)$  is a total left derived functor for  $F$ .*
- *If  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a right deformable functor and  $(\mathbb{R}G, \delta)$  is any homotopical right approximation for  $G$ , then  $(\mathrm{Ho}(\mathbb{R}G), \gamma_{\mathcal{C}}\delta)$  is a total right derived functor for  $G$ .*

*Proof.* Combine theorems 3.3.17 and 3.4.11. ■

## 3.5 Two-arrow calculi

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, A.4.

**3.5.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category.

- We say  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a **calculus of spans** if, for any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and any weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f'} & \tilde{Y} \\ v' \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $v' : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- We say  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a **calculus of cospans** if, for any weak equivalence  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  and any morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a pushout square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ u \downarrow & & \downarrow u' \\ \hat{Y} & \xrightarrow{g'} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

where  $u' : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

We follow Jardine [2009] in using the following terminology:

**3.5.2** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category.

- A **cocycle**  $(f, v) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a span of the form below,

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{f} Y$$

where  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow Y$  is any morphism. The **cocycle category**  $\mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$  is the category whose objects are cocycles  $X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and whose morphisms are commutative diagrams of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{X}' & \xrightarrow{f'} & Y \end{array}$$

with composition and identities inherited from  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- A **cycle**  $(u, f) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cospan of the form below,

$$X \xrightarrow{f} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

where  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $f : X \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  is any morphism. The **cycle category**  $\mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow \sim}(X, Y)$  is the category whose objects are cycles  $X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and whose morphisms are commutative diagrams of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xrightarrow{f'} & \hat{Y}' & \xleftarrow{u'} & Y \end{array}$$

with composition and identities inherited from  $\mathcal{C}$ .

In many cases of interest,  $\mathcal{C}$  will be a relative category where either  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  does *not* have the 2-out-of-3 property, or only a certain subcategory of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  satisfies the condition on pullbacks/pushouts. To cover those situations, we introduce the following:

**3.5.3 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- A **calculus of cocycles** for  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of a subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  that satisfies the following axioms:
  - Every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and the relative category  $(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V})$  admits a calculus of spans.
  - For every weak equivalence  $w : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a factorisation  $w = v \circ u$  where  $v$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$  and  $p \circ u = \text{id}$  for some morphism  $p$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

Given such a subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , a  **$\mathcal{V}$ -cocycle** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cocycle in the relative category  $(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V})$ , and we write  $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{V}}^{\rightarrow \sim}(X, Y)$  for the category of  $\mathcal{V}$ -cocycles  $X \rightrightarrows Y$ .

- A **calculus of cycles** for  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of a subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  that satisfies the following axioms:
  - Every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , and the relative category  $(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})$  admits a calculus of cospans.
  - For every weak equivalence  $w : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a factorisation  $w = v \circ u$  where  $u$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $v \circ i = \text{id}$  for some morphism  $i$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ .

Given such a subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , a  $\mathcal{U}$ -**cycle** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cycle in the relative category  $(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})$ , and we write  $C_{\mathcal{U}}^{\sim}(X, Y)$  for the category of  $\mathcal{U}$ -cycles  $X \rightarrowtail Y$ .

**3.5.4 LEMMA.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{mor weq } \mathcal{C}$  consist of all weak equivalences  $v : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with the following property: for any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Z$ , there exists a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ w \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*where  $w : X \times_Z Y \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\mathcal{V}$  contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is closed under composition and pullback, and  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of cocycles if and only if  $\mathcal{V}$  (considered a subcategory of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ ) defines a calculus of cocycles for  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- *Let  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{mor weq } \mathcal{C}$  consist of all weak equivalences  $u : Z \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with the following property: for any morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow Y$ , there exists a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \\ u \downarrow & & \downarrow w \\ X & \longrightarrow & X \cup^Z Y \end{array}$$

*where  $w : Y \rightarrow X \cup^Z Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\mathcal{U}$  contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is closed under composition and pushout, and  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of cocycles if and only if  $\mathcal{U}$  defines a calculus of cycles for  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**3.5.5** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *If a subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  defines a calculus of cocycles for  $\mathcal{C}$ , then for every cocycle  $(f, w) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{w} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v} & \bullet & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

where  $v$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

- *If a subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  defines a calculus of cycles for  $\mathcal{C}$ , then for every cycle  $(w, f) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $u$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{U}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $(f, w) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  be a cocycle in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By hypothesis, there exist a morphism  $v : \hat{Z} \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  and a morphism  $u : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $w = v \circ u$  and  $p \circ u = \text{id}_Z$  for some morphism  $p : \hat{Z} \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Thus, we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{w} & Z & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow u & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v} & \hat{Z} & \xrightarrow{f \circ p} & Y \end{array}$$

which is of the required form.  $\blacksquare$

**3.5.6** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *If a subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  defines a calculus of cocycles for  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the canonical comparison functor*

$$\text{Ho}(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V}) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$$

*is an isomorphism of categories.*

- *If a subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  defines a calculus of cycles for  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the canonical comparison functor*

$$\text{Ho}(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U}) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$$

*is an isomorphism of categories.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To show that  $\text{Ho}(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V}) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is an isomorphism of categories, it suffices to check that every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  becomes an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho}(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V})$ . Let  $w : Y \rightarrow X$  be a weak equivalence. Then there exist a morphism  $v : \hat{Y} \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  and a morphism  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $w = v \circ u$  and  $p \circ u = \text{id}_Y$  for some  $p : \hat{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Clearly,  $u$  becomes an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho}(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V})$ , and  $w = v \circ u$ , so we are done. ■

**3.5.7** ¶ Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category that admits a calculus of spans. Given a pair of cocycles in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say  $(f, v)$  and  $(g, v')$  as below,

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{f} Y \xleftarrow{v'} \tilde{Y} \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

a **composition** for the pair is a commutative diagram of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & W & & \\ & \swarrow v'' & & \searrow f'' & \\ & \tilde{X} & & \tilde{Y} & \\ \swarrow v & & & & \searrow f' \\ X & & Y & & Z \end{array}$$

where the diamond is a pullback square with  $v'' : W \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and the **composite** is the cocycle  $(f' \circ f'', v \circ v'')$ . It is clear that compositions

exist and are unique up to unique isomorphism (in the appropriate sense). Moreover, composition is associative and unital up to coherent natural isomorphism, so we get a **bicategory of cocycles** in  $\mathcal{C}$ , which we denote by  $\mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}$ , and we have an obvious pseudofunctor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}$  that sends a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  to the cocycle  $(f, \text{id}_X)$ .

Dually, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a relative category that admits a calculus of cospans, then we get a **bicategory of cycles** in  $\mathcal{C}$ , which we denote by  $\mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow\sim}$ , and we have an obvious pseudofunctor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow\sim}$  that sends a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  to the cycle  $(\text{id}_Y, f)$ .

**3.5.8** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a small relative category, then the category of cocycles or cycles between any two objects is a small category; but if  $\mathcal{C}$  is merely locally small, then the category of cocycles or cycles may not even be essentially small.

**3.5.9** THEOREM (Fundamental theorem of calculi of spans and cospans). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small relative category and let  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be the connected components functor.<sup>[1]</sup>*

- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of spans and  $\pi_0[\mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  is the category obtained by applying  $\pi_0$  to the hom-categories of the bicategory of cocycles, then the pseudofunctor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}$  induces an isomorphism  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[\mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}]$ .*
- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of cospans and  $\pi_0[\mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow\sim}]$  is the category obtained by applying  $\pi_0$  to the hom-categories of the bicategory of cycles, then the pseudofunctor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow\sim}$  induces an isomorphism  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[\mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow\sim}]$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We must first show that the cocycle  $(v, \text{id}_{\tilde{X}}) : \tilde{X} \rightrightarrows X$  becomes an isomorphism in  $\pi_0[\mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}]$ . Consider the cocycle  $(\text{id}_{\tilde{X}}, v) : X \rightrightarrows \tilde{X}$ . The following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow v & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \end{array}$$

[1] Recall [proposition A.2.15](#).

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

so  $(v, \text{id}_{\tilde{X}}) \circ (\text{id}_{\tilde{X}}, v) = (\text{id}_X, \text{id}_X)$  in  $\pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$ . On the other hand, given a pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{p_1} & \tilde{X} \\ p_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{v} & X \end{array}$$

where  $p_0 : K \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  is a weak equivalence, the universal property of  $K$  yields a unique morphism  $\Delta : X \rightarrow K$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ \parallel & & \Delta \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{p_0} & K & \xrightarrow{p_1} & X \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(\text{id}_{\tilde{X}}, v) \circ (v, \text{id}_{\tilde{X}}) = (\text{id}_{\tilde{X}}, \text{id}_{\tilde{X}})$  in  $\pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$ . It now follows that every morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  is of the form  $(f, \text{id}_{\tilde{X}}) \circ (v, \text{id}_{\tilde{X}})^{-1}$  for some weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and some morphism  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow Y$ ; hence, the induced functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  is a bijection on objects and full.

It remains to be shown that the functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  is faithful. Suppose we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow h & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{X}' & \xrightarrow{f'} & X \end{array}$$

where  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  and  $v' : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow X$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The 2-out-of-3 property of isomorphisms in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  ensures  $h : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \tilde{X}'$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ , so:

$$f \circ v^{-1} = (f' \circ h) \circ (h \circ v')^{-1} = f' \circ v'^{-1}$$

We may therefore define a functor  $\pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  that sends the connected component of a cocycle  $(f, v) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  to the morphism  $f \circ v^{-1}$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ ; and using the fact that localising functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is an epimorphism in **Cat**, we see that this functor is a left inverse for the functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  constructed in the previous paragraph. Thus  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  is indeed an isomorphism.  $\blacksquare$



**3.5.10** COROLLARY. *Let  $C$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *If a subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } C$  defines a calculus of cocycles for  $C$ , then every morphism in  $\text{Ho } C$  is of the form  $f \circ v^{-1}$  for some  $\mathcal{V}$ -cocycle  $(f, v)$ .*
- *If a subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } C$  defines a calculus of cycles for  $C$ , then every morphism in  $\text{Ho } C$  is of the form  $u^{-1} \circ g$  for some  $\mathcal{U}$ -cycle  $(u, g)$ .*

*Proof.* Combine lemma 3.5.6 and theorem 3.5.9. ■

**3.5.11** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a relative category in which  $\text{weq } C$  has the 2-out-of-3 property, and let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $C$ .*

- *If  $C$  admits a calculus of spans, then the cocycle category  $C^{\sim\rightarrow}(X, Y)$  also admits a calculus of spans, where the weak equivalences are those morphisms of spans  $X \rightrightarrows Y$  whose underlying morphism is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .*
- *If  $C$  admits a calculus of cospans, then the cycle category  $C^{\rightarrow\sim}(X, Y)$  also admits a calculus of cospans, where the weak equivalences are those morphisms of spans  $X \rightrightarrows Y$  whose underlying morphism is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider a cospan in  $C^{\sim\rightarrow}(X, Y)$ , i.e. a commutative diagram in  $C$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{w_0} & Z_0 & \xrightarrow{f_0} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow v & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{w_1} & Z_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow z & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{w_2} & Z_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $w_0, w_1, w_2$  and  $v$  are weak equivalences in  $C$ . By hypothesis, there is a pullback diagram in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z' & \xrightarrow{z'} & Z_0 \\
 \downarrow v' & & \downarrow v \\
 Z_2 & \xrightarrow{z} & Z_1
 \end{array}$$

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

where  $v' : Z' \rightarrow Z_2$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ , and taking  $w' = w_2 \circ v'$  and  $f' = f_2 \circ v'$ , we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $C$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{w_0} & Z_0 & \xrightarrow{f_0} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow z' & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{w'} & Z' & \xrightarrow{f'} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow v' & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{w_2} & Z_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & Y
 \end{array}$$

It is not hard to verify that the cocycle  $(f', w') : X \rightrightarrows Y$  is (the object part of) the pullback for the cospan in  $C^{\sim\rightarrow}(X, Y)$  under consideration. Thus  $C^{\sim\rightarrow}(X, Y)$  indeed admits a calculus of spans. ■

**3.5.12 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C$  be a relative category in which  $\text{weq } C$  has the 2-out-of-3 property.*

- *Let  $(f, v)$  and  $(f', v')$  be two cocycles  $X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $C$ . If  $C$  admits a calculus of spans, then  $(f, v)$  and  $(f', v')$  are in the same connected component of  $C^{\sim\rightarrow}(X, Y)$  if and only if there exists a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the following form,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{v} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow w_1 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{w_3} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow w_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f'} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $w_1, w_2, w_3$  are weak equivalences in  $C$ .

- *Let  $(u, g)$  and  $(u', g')$  be two cycles  $X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $C$ . If  $C$  admits a calculus of cospans, then  $(u, g)$  and  $(u', g')$  are in the same connected component of  $C^{\rightarrow\sim}(X, Y)$  if and only if there exists a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the*

following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xrightarrow{g} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow w_1 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xrightarrow{g_3} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{w_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow w_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xrightarrow{g'} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u'} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $w_1, w_2, w_3$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* Combine the fundamental theorem of calculi of spans and cospans (3.5.9) and proposition 3.5.11. ■

**3.5.13** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- A **functorial calculus of cocycles** for  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of the following data:
  - A subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  that contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  and such that the relative category  $(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V})$  admits a calculus of spans.
  - For each weak equivalence  $w : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , a natural commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow u & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{p} & \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{v} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where both  $v : \hat{X} \rightarrow Y$  and  $p : \hat{X} \rightarrow X$  are in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

- A **functorial calculus of cycles** for  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of the following data:
  - A subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  that contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  and such that the relative category  $(\text{und } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})$  admits a calculus of cospans.
  - For each weak equivalence  $w : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , a natural commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xrightarrow{u} & \tilde{Y} & \xleftarrow{i} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow v & & \parallel \\
 X & \xrightarrow{w} & Y & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where both  $u : X \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  and  $i : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  are in  $\mathcal{U}$ .

**3.5.14** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a functorial calculus of cocycles with distinguished subcategory  $\mathcal{V} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , then for any pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the inclusion*

$$\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{V}}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$$

*is a homotopical equivalence of categories (regarded as maximal relative categories).*

- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a functorial calculus of cycles with distinguished subcategory  $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , then for any pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the inclusion*

$$\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{U}}^{\rightarrow \sim}(X, Y) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow \sim}(X, Y)$$

*is a homotopical equivalence of categories (regarded as maximal relative categories).*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Following (the proof of) lemma 3.5.5, we obtain a functor  $R : \mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{V}}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$  and a natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)} \Rightarrow R$  such that the image of  $R$  is contained in  $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{V}}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$ . Since  $\mathcal{C}_{\mathcal{V}}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$ , this suffices to prove the claim.  $\blacksquare$

**3.5.15** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, and let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type:*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[l \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet$$

- *Let  $\mathcal{H}_0$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet \xrightarrow[l \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet$$

*and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a functorial calculus of cocycles, then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  is a homotopical equivalence of categories (regarded as maximal relative categories).*

- Let  $\mathcal{H}_0$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{\cdots} \bullet \xrightarrow[l \text{ arrows}]{\cdots} \bullet \xleftarrow{\quad} \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a functorial calculus of cycles, then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  is a homotopical equivalence of categories (regarded as maximal relative categories).

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider an object in  $\mathcal{H}_1$ , say:

$$X \xleftarrow{\quad} \tilde{X}_0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \tilde{X}_{k-1} \xrightarrow{f_k} \tilde{X}_k \xleftarrow{w} \tilde{Y}_0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \tilde{Y}_{l-1} \xrightarrow{g_l} Y$$

For  $0 < i \leq k$ , write  $f_i$  for the morphism  $\tilde{X}_{i-1} \rightarrow \tilde{X}_i$  in the above diagram. By hypothesis, we have a natural commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{Y}_0 & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \tilde{Y}_0 \\ q \uparrow & & \parallel \\ \tilde{X}'_k & \xleftarrow{u} & \tilde{Y}_0 \\ v_k \downarrow & & \parallel \\ \tilde{X}_k & \xleftarrow{w} & \tilde{Y}_0 \end{array}$$

where  $v_k$  and  $q$  are morphisms in  $\mathcal{V}$ , so we may functorially construct a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f'_k} & \tilde{X}'_k \\ v_0 \downarrow & & & & v_{k-1} \downarrow & & \downarrow v_k \\ \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f_k} & \tilde{X}_k \end{array}$$

where each square is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We then obtain the following

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccc}
 X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{q \circ f'_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \uparrow q & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f'_k} & \tilde{X}'_k & \xleftarrow{u_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow v_0 & & & & \downarrow v_{k-1} & & \downarrow v_k & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f_k} & \tilde{X}_k & \xleftarrow{w} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & Y
 \end{array}$$

Note that  $v_0, \dots, v_k$  are all in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

Moreover, when  $\tilde{X}_k = \tilde{Y}_0$  and  $w = \text{id}_{\tilde{Y}_0}$ , there is a unique morphism  $u_i : \tilde{X}_i \rightarrow \tilde{X}'_i$  making the diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  below commute (for  $0 \leq i < k$ ),

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \tilde{X}_i & \xrightarrow{f_{i+1}} & \tilde{X}_{i+1} \\
 \downarrow u_i & & \downarrow u_{i+1} \\
 \tilde{X}'_i & \xrightarrow{f'_{i+1}} & \tilde{X}'_{i+1} \\
 \downarrow v_i & & \downarrow v_{i+1} \\
 \tilde{X}_i & \xrightarrow{f_{i+1}} & \tilde{X}_{i+1}
 \end{array}
 \quad \text{id} \curvearrowright$$

Since  $q \circ u_k = \text{id}_{\tilde{Y}_0}$ , we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
 X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow u_0 & & & & \downarrow u_{k-1} & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{q \circ f'_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & Y
 \end{array}$$

By naturality, the above defines a functor  $r : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  such that  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_1} \stackrel{w}{\simeq} s \circ r$  and  $r \circ s \stackrel{w}{\simeq} \text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_0}$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

The following definition is due to Gabriel and Zisman [GZ].

**3.5.16** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a relative category. We say  $C$  admits a **calculus of right fractions** if the following axioms are satisfied:

- (Right Ore condition). Given any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$  and any weak equivalence  $v : X \rightarrow \tilde{X}$ , there exists a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f'} & \tilde{Y} \\ v' \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $v' : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is also a weak equivalence in  $C$ .

- (Right cancellability). Given any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ , if  $t : Y \rightarrow T$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$  such that  $t \circ f_0 = t \circ f_1$ , then there exists a weak equivalence  $s : S \rightarrow X$  such that  $f_0 \circ s = f_1 \circ s$ .

Dually, we say  $C$  admits a **calculus of left fractions** if the following axioms are satisfied:

- (Left Ore condition). Given any weak equivalence  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  and any morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $C$ , there exists a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ u \downarrow & & \downarrow u' \\ \hat{Y} & \xrightarrow{g'} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

where  $u' : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  is also a weak equivalence in  $C$ .

- (Left cancellability). Given any parallel pair  $g_0, g_1 : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $C$ , if  $s : S \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$  such that  $g_0 \circ s = g_1 \circ s$ , then there exists a weak equivalence  $t : Z \rightarrow T$  such that  $t \circ g_0 = t \circ g_1$ .

**3.5.17** REMARK. Although we cannot compose cocycles (resp. cycles) using pullbacks (resp. pushouts) and form a bicategory of cocycles (resp. cycles) in a relative category  $C$  with a calculus of right fractions (resp. calculus of left fractions), the axioms are still enough to give a well-defined category  $\pi_0[C^{\sim\rightarrow}]$  (resp.  $\pi_0[C^{\rightarrow\sim}]$ ).

**3.5.18** LEMMA. *Let  $Y$  be an object in a relative category  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- *Let  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w$  be the full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y}$  spanned by the objects  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  where  $v$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions, then  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w^{\text{op}}$  is a filtered category.<sup>[2]</sup>*
- *Let  $({}^Y\mathcal{C})_w$  be the full subcategory of the slice category  ${}^Y\mathcal{C}$  spanned by the objects  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  where  $u$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of left fractions, then  $({}^Y\mathcal{C})_w$  is a filtered category.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To begin, we observe that  $\text{id} : Y \rightarrow Y$  is an object in  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w$ , so  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w$  is indeed an inhabited category. Now suppose we have two objects in  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w$ , say  $v' : \tilde{Y}' \rightarrow Y$  and  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$ . Then the right Ore condition ensures there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \tilde{Y}'' & & \\
 & \swarrow & \downarrow v'' & \searrow & \\
 \tilde{Y} & & & & \tilde{Y}' \\
 & \searrow v & & \swarrow v' & \\
 & & Y & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $v'' : \tilde{Y}'' \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Finally, suppose we have a parallel pair of morphisms in  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w$ , say  $f_0, f_1 : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}'$  such that  $v' \circ f_0 = v' \circ f_1 = v$ . The right cancellability condition then yields a weak equivalence  $s : \tilde{S} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  such that  $f_0 \circ s = f_1 \circ s$ . This completes the proof that  $(\mathcal{C}_{/Y})_w$  is a cofiltered category. ■

**3.5.19** THEOREM (Fundamental theorem of calculi of fractions). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category.*

- *Let  $Y$  and  $Z$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions, then the hom-ensemble maps*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{C}(\tilde{Y}, Z) &\rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(Y, Z) \\
 f &\mapsto f \circ v^{-1}
 \end{aligned}$$

[2] See [definition 0.2.1](#).



defined by each weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  constitute a colimiting cocone over the evident filtered diagram of shape  $(C_{/Y})_w^{\text{op}}$ .

- Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of left fractions, then the hom-ensemble maps

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}(X, \hat{Y}) &\rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(X, Y) \\ g &\mapsto u^{-1} \circ g \end{aligned}$$

defined by each weak equivalence  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  constitute a colimiting cocone over the evident filtered diagram of shape  $(^Y/\mathcal{C})_w$ .

*Proof.* See Proposition 2.4 in [GZ, Ch. I]. □

**3.5.20 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category. Let  $(f, v)$  and  $(f', v')$  be two cocycles  $Y \rightarrowtail Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions, then the following are equivalent:

- (i) The cocycles  $(f, v)$  and  $(f', v')$  are in the same connected component of the cocycle category  $\mathcal{C}^{\rightarrowtail}(Y, Z)$ .
- (ii) We have  $f \circ v^{-1} = f' \circ v'^{-1}$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii) There exists a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{v} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{w_3} & \bullet & \longrightarrow & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{v'} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f'} & Z \end{array}$$

where  $w_3$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

Dually, let  $(u, g)$  and  $(u', g')$  be two cocycles  $X \rightarrowtail Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of left fractions, then the following are equivalent:

- (i') The cycles  $(u, g)$  and  $(u', g')$  are in the same connected component of the cycle category  $\mathcal{C}^{\rightarrow\sim}(X, Y)$ .
- (ii') We have  $u^{-1} \circ g = u'^{-1} \circ g'$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ .

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

(iii') *There exists a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xrightarrow{g} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \xleftarrow{w_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \xrightarrow{g'} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u'} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $w_3$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). It is clear that any two cocycles in the same connected component of  $\mathcal{C}^{\sim\rightarrow}(Y, Z)$  must represent the same morphism  $Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Suppose  $(f, v)$  and  $(f', v')$  represent the same morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ . Using the explicit description of filtered colimits of ensembles, we deduce that there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \tilde{Y}'' & & \\
 & \swarrow h_1 & \downarrow v'' & \searrow h_2 & \\
 \tilde{Y} & & & & \tilde{Y}' \\
 & \searrow v & & \swarrow v' & \\
 & & Y & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $v''$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $f \circ h_1 = f' \circ h_2$ . Thus, the following diagram commutes, as required:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Y & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{Y} & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow h_1 & & \parallel \\
 Y & \xleftarrow{v''} & \tilde{Y}'' & \longrightarrow & Z \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow h_2 & & \parallel \\
 Y & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{Y}' & \xrightarrow{f'} & Z
 \end{array}$$

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Immediate. ■

**3.5.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a homotopical category. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits*

- *a calculus of spans, or*
- *a calculus of cospans, or*
- *a calculus of right fractions, or*
- *a calculus of left fractions*

*then  $\mathcal{C}$  is a saturated homotopical category.*

*Proof.* The four cases are similar; we will assume that  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of spans.

Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism that is invertible in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ . Then there exists a cocycle  $(g, v) : Y \rightrightarrows X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $g \circ v^{-1}$  is a two-sided inverse for  $f$  in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ . Construct a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f'} & \tilde{Y} \\ v' \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $v' : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The fundamental theorem of calculi of spans (3.5.9) implies that  $(f \circ g, v) = (\mathrm{id}_Y, \mathrm{id}_Y)$  and  $(g \circ f', v') = (\mathrm{id}_X, \mathrm{id}_X)$  in  $\pi_0[\mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}]$ , so by corollary 3.5.12, we must have commutative diagrams of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{Y} & \xrightarrow{f \circ g} & Y \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}} & Y & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & Y \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{g \circ f'} & X \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{\mathrm{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id}} & X \end{array}$$

Thus, by repeatedly using the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\mathrm{weq} \mathcal{C}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we see that  $f \circ g$  and  $g \circ f'$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and by using the 2-out-of-6 property, we deduce that  $f$  (as well as  $g$  and  $f'$ ) is indeed a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

One advantage of calculi of fractions over calculi of spans and cospans is the following:

**3.5.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category and let  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  be the localising functor.*

- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions, then  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  preserves limits for any finite diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of left fractions, then  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  preserves colimits for any finite diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Apply theorems 0.2.13 and 3.5.19. ■

**3.5.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category.

- A **colocal object** (or **right-closed object**) in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that the hom-ensemble map

$$\mathcal{C}(X, v) : \mathcal{C}(X, \tilde{Y}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$$

is a bijection for all weak equivalences  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- A **local object** (or **left-closed object**) in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that the hom-ensemble map

$$\mathcal{C}(u, Y) : \mathcal{C}(\hat{X}, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$$

is a bijection for all weak equivalences  $u : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**3.5.24** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions, then the following are equivalent for an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i)  *$X$  is a colocal object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For all weak equivalences  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the hom-ensemble map*

$$\mathcal{C}(X, v) : \mathcal{C}(X, \tilde{Y}) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$$

*is a surjection.*

- (iii) *The map  $\mathcal{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  induced by the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  is a bijection.*

Dually, if  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of left fractions, then the following are equivalent for an object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

(i')  $Y$  is a local object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii') For all weak equivalences  $u : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the hom-ensemble map

$$C(u, Y) : C(\hat{X}, Y) \rightarrow C(X, Y)$$

is a surjection.

(iii') The map  $C(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Ho } C(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  induced by the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is a bijection.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Obvious.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). The fundamental theorem of calculi of fractions (3.5.19) says that there is a natural bijection

$$\lim_{v: (C_{/X})_w^{\text{op}}} C(\text{dom } v, Y) \cong \text{Ho } C(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$$

where  $v$  varies over the weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  with codomain  $X$  (considered as a full subcategory of the slice category  $C_{/X}$ ). Note that each weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a split epimorphism, so  $\text{Ho } C(X, Y)$  is a filtered colimit for a diagram of injective maps. In particular, the map  $C(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Ho } C(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  is injective. On the other hand, if  $i : X \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  is a section of a weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$ , then  $\gamma(v)^{-1} = \gamma(i)$ . Thus, the map  $C(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Ho } C(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  is also surjective.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  be any weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The hom-ensemble bijection in the hypothesis is natural, so we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(X, \tilde{Y}) & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \text{Ho } C(\gamma X, \gamma \tilde{Y}) \\ C(X, v) \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Ho } C(\gamma(v)) \\ C(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \text{Ho } C(\gamma X, \gamma Y) \end{array}$$

Since  $\gamma(v) : \gamma \tilde{Y} \rightarrow \gamma Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ , the map  $C(X, v)$  must be a bijection. Thus,  $X$  is a colocal object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . ■

**3.5.25 ¶** Given a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , an  **$F$ -isomorphism** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  that  $F$  sends to an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Note that  $\mathcal{C}$ , together with the class of  $F$ -isomorphisms, is then a saturated homotopical category by [lemma 3.1.8](#).

**3.5.26 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category. Consider the following statements:*

- (i) *The localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  has a left adjoint.*
- (ii) *The localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  has a fully faithful left adjoint.*
- (iii) *For each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a colocal object  $\tilde{X}$  and a  $\gamma$ -isomorphism  $p : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$ .*

*We always have the implications (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii), and if  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions, then (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i) as well.*

*Dually:*

- (i') *The localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  has a right adjoint.*
- (ii') *The localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  has a fully faithful right adjoint.*
- (iii') *For each object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a local object  $\hat{Y}$  and a  $\gamma$ -isomorphism  $i : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$ .*

*We always have the implications (i')  $\Rightarrow$  (ii')  $\Rightarrow$  (iii'), and if  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of left fractions, then (iii')  $\Rightarrow$  (i') as well.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is [proposition A.4.21](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Let  $L : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a left adjoint for  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ . We then have the following natural bijection:

$$\mathcal{C}(L\gamma X, Y) \cong \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$$

Since  $\gamma v : \gamma \tilde{Y} \rightarrow \gamma Y$  is an isomorphism for any weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , it follows that  $L\gamma X$  is a colocal object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

Now, consider the adjunction counit component  $\varepsilon_X : L\gamma X \rightarrow X$ . [Proposition A.1.3](#) says the adjunction unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow \gamma L$  is a natural isomorphism, so the right triangle identity implies  $\gamma \varepsilon_X : \gamma L\gamma X \rightarrow \gamma X$  is an isomorphism, i.e.  $\varepsilon_X$  is a  $\gamma$ -isomorphism, as required.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a calculus of right fractions. [Proposition 3.5.24](#) says the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  induces a natural map

$$\mathcal{C}(\tilde{X}, Y) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma \tilde{X}, \gamma Y)$$

that is a bijection whenever  $\tilde{X}$  is a colocal object, so if  $p : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a  $\gamma$ -isomorphism, we obtain a bijection

$$\mathcal{C}(\tilde{X}, Y) \cong \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$$

that is natural in  $Y$ . Since  $\gamma$  is bijective on objects, this implies  $\gamma$  has a left adjoint. ■

**3.5.27 THEOREM (Reflective localisations).** *Let  $U : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a fully faithful functor. If  $U$  has a left adjoint, say  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , then:*

- (i) *Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the smallest subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  that contains all identity morphisms and the components of the adjunction unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow UF$ . Then  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})$  admits a calculus of left fractions.*
- (ii) *Any localisation of  $\mathcal{C}$  at  $\mathcal{U}$  is also a localisation of  $\mathcal{C}$  at  $F$ -isomorphisms.*
- (iii) *The canonical functor  $\bar{F} : \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  induced by  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Dually, if  $U$  has a right adjoint, say  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , then:*

- (i') *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be the smallest subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  that contains all identity morphisms and the components of the adjunction counit  $\epsilon : UH \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ . Then  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{V})$  admits a calculus of right fractions.*
- (ii') *Any localisation of  $\mathcal{C}$  at  $\mathcal{V}$  is also a localisation of  $\mathcal{C}$  at  $H$ -isomorphisms.*
- (iii') *The canonical functor  $\bar{H} : \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  induced by  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* (i). The naturality of  $\eta$  ensures that  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})$  satisfies the left Ore condition. Suppose  $f_0, f_1 : UFX \rightarrow Y$  are morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f_0 \circ \eta_X = f_1 \circ \eta_X$ . By [proposition A.1.3](#), the adjunction counit  $\epsilon : FU \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  is a natural isomorphism, so the triangle identities imply that  $\eta UF = FU\eta$ . But  $\eta_Y \circ f_0 = UF f_0 \circ \eta_{UF X}$  and  $\eta_Y \circ f_1 = UF f_1 \circ \eta_{UF X}$ , so we may deduce that  $\eta_Y \circ f_0 = \eta_Y \circ f_1$ . Thus  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{U})$  is left cancellable.

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

---

(ii). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By naturality of  $\eta$ , the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\eta_X} & UFX \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow U F f \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\eta_Y} & UFY \end{array}$$

Thus, any functor that sends the components of  $\eta$  to isomorphisms must also make  $F$ -isomorphisms invertible. On the other hand,  $F\eta$  is a natural isomorphism because  $\varepsilon$  is, so any functor that makes  $F$ -isomorphisms invertible must also send the components of  $\eta$  to isomorphisms.

(iii). Since  $\varepsilon : FU \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  is a natural isomorphism, the functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is essentially surjective on objects, and so  $\bar{F} : \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  must also be essentially surjective on objects.

It remains to be shown that  $\bar{F}$  is a fully faithful functor. Let  $Y$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f : X \rightarrow X'$  be an  $F$ -isomorphism. Since  $F \dashv U$ , we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}(FX', FY) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{C}(X', UFY) \\ \mathcal{D}(Ff, FY) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathcal{C}(f, UFY) \\ \mathcal{D}(FX, FY) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{C}(X, UFY) \end{array}$$

We then see that  $UFY$  is a local object in  $\mathcal{C}$  (with respect to  $F$ -isomorphisms). Since  $\eta_Y : Y \rightarrow UFY$  is an  $F$ -isomorphism, we may then apply [proposition 3.5.26](#) to deduce that the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$  has a fully faithful right adjoint that sends each object  $\gamma Y$  to  $UFY$ . Thus  $\bar{F}$  is indeed fully faithful. ■



## 3.6 Three-arrow calculi

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, A.4.

In this section, we follow [DHKS, §36] and [Thomas, 2011].

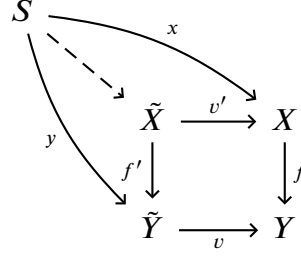
**3.6.1 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  be the subcategory of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be subcategories of  $\mathcal{W}$ . We say  $\mathcal{C}$  **admits a three-arrow calculus** for  $\mathcal{C}$  with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$  if the following conditions are satisfied:

- A1.** For each weak equivalence  $w$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exist  $u$  in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $v$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  such that  $w = v \circ u$ .
- A2.** Given a diagram of the form  $\hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with  $u$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ , there exists a diagram of the form  $\hat{Y} \xrightarrow{g'} \hat{Z} \xleftarrow{u'} Z$  such that
  - $g' \circ u = u' \circ g$ ,
  - $u'$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , and
  - given any diagram of the form  $\hat{Y} \xrightarrow{y} T \xleftarrow{z} Z$  such that  $y \circ u = z \circ g$ , there exists a (not necessarily unique) morphism  $T \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \hat{Y} & & \\
 g \downarrow & & \downarrow g' & \searrow y & \\
 Z & \xrightarrow{u'} & \hat{Z} & & \\
 & \searrow u' & \swarrow z & \searrow & \\
 & & & T & 
 \end{array}$$

- A3.** Given a diagram of the form  $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{Y}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with  $v$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , there exists a diagram of the form  $X \xleftarrow{v'} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{f'} \tilde{Y}$  such that
  - $f \circ v' = v \circ g'$ ,
  - $v'$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and
  - given any diagram of the form  $X \xleftarrow{x} S \xrightarrow{y} Y$  such that  $f \circ x = v \circ y$ , there exists a (not necessarily unique) morphism  $S \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  making

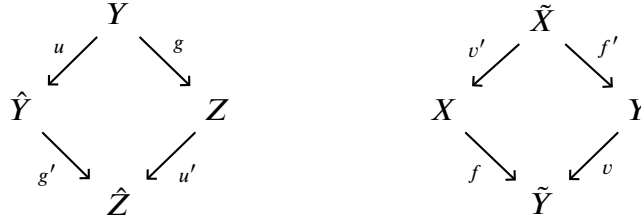
the diagram below commute:



A **uni-fractionable category** is a relative category  $\mathcal{C}$  together with a pair of subcategories  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$  such that  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ .

**3.6.2** REMARK. Note that axiom A1 implies that  $\text{ob } \mathcal{U} = \text{ob } \mathcal{V} = \text{ob } \mathcal{C}$ ; in particular, every identity morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is also in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$ .

**3.6.3** REMARK. Consider diagrams of the following forms,



where  $u, u'$  are in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $v, v'$  are in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Under the assumption that  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphism  $g$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  if and only if  $g'$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and the morphism  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  if and only if  $f'$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

**3.6.4** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  be the subcategory of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be subcategories of  $\mathcal{W}$ . A **functorial three-arrow calculus** for  $\mathcal{C}$  with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$  consists of the following data:

**FA1.** A functorial factorisation system on  $\mathcal{W}$  with left class contained in  $\text{mor } \mathcal{U}$  and right class contained in  $\text{mor } \mathcal{V}$ .

**FA2.** A functor from the full subcategory of  $[\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, \mathcal{C}]$  spanned by those diagrams of the form  $\hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z$ , where  $u$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , to the category  $[\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}, \mathcal{C}]$ , such that each diagram  $\hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z$  is sent to a diagram of the form  $\hat{Y} \xrightarrow{g'} \hat{Z} \xleftarrow{u'} Z$ , where  $g' \circ u = u' \circ g$ ,  $u'$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , and  $u'$  is an isomorphism if  $u$  is.

**FA3.** A functor from the full subcategory of  $[\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}, C]$  spanned by those diagrams of the form  $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{Y}$ , where  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ , to the category  $[\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, C]$ , such that each diagram  $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{Y}$  is sent to a diagram of the form  $X \xleftarrow{v'} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{f'} \tilde{Y}$ , where  $f \circ v' = v \circ g'$ ,  $v'$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $v'$  is an isomorphism if  $v$  is.

If such data exist, then we say  $C$  **admits a functorial three-arrow calculus** with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ .

**3.6.5** REMARK. If  $\text{mor } \mathcal{U}$  is closed under pushout in  $C$ , then we may take pushouts to construct datum FA2; similarly, if  $\text{mor } \mathcal{V}$  is closed under pullback in  $C$ , then we may take pullbacks to construct datum FA3.

**3.6.6** REMARK. A relative category  $C$  admits a (functorial) three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$  if and only if the opposite relative category  $C^{\text{op}}$  admits a (functorial) three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{U})$ .

**3.6.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a relative category and let  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be subcategories of  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } C$  (itself considered as a subcategory of  $C$ ). If  $C$  admits a functorial three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ , then  $C$  admits a three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ .*

*Proof.* Obviously, having datum FA1 implies axiom A1 is satisfied. Now suppose we have a commutative square of the form below in  $C$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \hat{Y} \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow y \\ Z & \xrightarrow{z} & T \end{array}$$

where  $u$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . The datum FA2 then gives us the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \hat{Y} & & \\ \downarrow g & \searrow & \downarrow y & & \\ & T & \xrightarrow{g'} & T & \\ & \parallel & \downarrow g' & & \\ Z & \xrightarrow{z} & \hat{Z} & \xrightarrow{w} & \hat{T} \\ & \searrow & \downarrow & & \\ & T & \xrightarrow{w} & \hat{T} & \end{array}$$

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

and  $w : T \rightarrow \hat{T}$  is an isomorphism, thus, there exists a morphism  $\hat{Z} \rightarrow T$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \hat{Y} \\
 g \downarrow & & \downarrow g' \\
 Z & \xrightarrow{u'} & \hat{Z} \\
 & \searrow z & \nearrow y \\
 & & T
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A dashed arrow also points from  $\hat{Z}$  to  $T$ .)

This shows that axiom A2 is satisfied, and the dual argument proves axiom A3. ■

**3.6.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  be relative categories. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a functorial three-arrow calculus, and either*

- *weq  $\mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$ , or*
- *$\mathcal{A}$  is a minimal relative category,*

*then the relative functor category  $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}}$  admits a functorial three-arrow calculus constructed componentwise from  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$  be a functorial three-arrow calculus for  $\mathcal{C}$ . It is clear that, when  $\mathcal{A}$  is a minimal relative category, all the data constituting a three-arrow calculus for  $\mathcal{C}$  may be lifted componentwise to define a three-arrow calculus for  $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}}$ .

In general, we must check that  $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}}$  is closed under the various componentwise constructions. However, if  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\theta : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a natural weak equivalence of relative functors  $X, Y : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and  $\psi \bullet \varphi$  is the componentwise  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ -factorisation of  $\theta$ , then the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 XA & \xrightarrow{\varphi_A} & ZA & \xrightarrow{\psi_A} & YA \\
 xf \downarrow & & zf \downarrow & & \downarrow Yf \\
 XB & \xrightarrow{\varphi_B} & ZB & \xrightarrow{\psi_B} & YB
 \end{array}$$

and so by the 2-out-of-3 property of weq  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $Zf$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , thus  $Z : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a relative functor. Similarly, one uses the 2-out-of-3 property of weq  $\mathcal{C}$  to ensure that the componentwise constructions satisfy the conditions to be data FA2 and FA3 for a functorial three-arrow calculus. ■

**3.6.9** THEOREM (Fundamental theorem of three-arrow calculi). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category such that  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ , then:*

- (i) *Every morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  can be represented by a zigzag in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$X \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{f} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

*where  $u$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ .*

- (ii) *Two such zigzags represent the same morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  if and only if there exists a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\ \parallel & & \uparrow v_1 & & \uparrow v_2 & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v_3} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_3} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_3} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow w_1 & & \downarrow w_2 & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v_4} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_4} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_4} & Y \\ \parallel & & \uparrow u_1 & & \uparrow u_2 & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{X}' & \xrightarrow{f'} & \hat{Y}' & \xleftarrow{u'} & Y \end{array}$$

*where  $u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4$  are in  $\mathcal{U}$ ,  $v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4$  are in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $w_1, w_2$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* For the functorial case, see paragraph 36.3 in [DHKS]; for the general case, see Lemma 4.9 and Theorem 5.13 in [Thomas, 2011].  $\square$

**3.6.10** PROPOSITION. *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a homotopical category that admits a three-arrow calculus, then  $\mathcal{C}$  is a saturated homotopical category.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ . Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  whose image in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is an isomorphism, with inverse represented by the following zigzag,

$$Y \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{Y} \xrightarrow{g} \hat{X} \xleftarrow{u} X$$

### III. HOMOTOPICAL CATEGORIES

where  $u$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Then, by axioms A2 and A3, there exist  $v'$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ ,  $f'$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $u''$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ , and  $f''$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that the diagrams below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f'} & \tilde{Y} \\ v' \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ u \downarrow & & \downarrow u'' \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{f''} & \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

and by [theorem 3.6.9](#), we have commutative diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\quad} & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\quad} & X \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{g \circ f'} & \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{u} & X \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccccc} Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\quad} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\quad} & Y \\ \parallel & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{Y} & \xrightarrow{f'' \circ g} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{u''} & Y \end{array}$$

where all leftward- and upward-pointing arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We may then deduce that *every* arrow appearing in the above diagrams are in  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  by iteratively applying the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ . In particular,  $g \circ f'$  and  $f'' \circ g$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so the 2-out-of-6 property of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  implies that  $f'$ ,  $f''$ ,  $g$  are all in  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ . We then conclude that  $f$  is in  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , by using the 2-out-of-3 property again. ■

## CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

### 4.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 3.3, 3.5, A.4.

**4.1.1** **DEFINITION.** A **basic fibration category** is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a full replete subcategory  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  and a pair  $(\mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  of subclasses of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  satisfying these axioms:

- BF1.**  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{W})$  is a category with weak equivalences, i.e.  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$  and every isomorphism is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .
- BF2.**  $\mathcal{F}$  is closed under composition and every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ . If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $Y$  is in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , then  $X$  is also in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .
- BF3.** If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$  and  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , then the pullback of  $p$  along  $g$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is a morphism that is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ .
- BF4.** Given an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and a finite sequence  $(f_1, \dots, f_n)$  of morphisms  $f_k : X \rightarrow Y_k$  where ( $n$  is possibly zero and) each  $Y_k$  is fibrant, there exist a morphism  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  in  $\mathcal{W}$  and morphisms  $p_k : \hat{X} \rightarrow Y_k$  (for  $1 \leq k \leq n$ ) in  $\mathcal{F}$  such that  $f_k = p_k \circ i$  (for  $1 \leq k \leq n$ ).

In a basic fibration category as above,

- a **weak equivalence** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W}$ ,
- a **fibration** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ ,
- a **trivial fibration** (or **acyclic fibration**) is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ , and

- a **fibrant object** is an object in  $C^\circ$ .

We will often abuse notation and say  $C$  is a basic fibration category, without mentioning the data  $C^\circ$ ,  $\mathcal{W}$ , and  $\mathcal{F}$ .

**4.I.2** REMARK. In general, not every isomorphism is a fibration. For example, given any category  $C$  with a terminal object, we could take  $C^\circ$  to be the full subcategory of terminal objects in  $C$ ,  $\mathcal{W}$  to be the class of *all* morphisms, and  $\mathcal{F}$  to be  $\text{mor } C^\circ$ .

**4.I.3** REMARK. The special case  $n = 0$  of axiom BF4 says that every object in  $C$  admits a **fibrant replacement**, i.e. a weak equivalence  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  in  $C$  where  $\hat{X}$  is a fibrant object in  $C$ .

**4.I.4** REMARK. If  $C$  is a basic fibration category in which the weak equivalences are the isomorphisms, then axioms BF2 and BF4 imply that every object in  $C$  is fibrant and every morphism in  $C$  is a fibration. Conversely, any category is a basic fibration category in which the weak equivalences are the isomorphisms.

**4.I.5** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category. Given a span in  $C$ , say*

$$Y \xleftarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

*there is a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ i_Y \downarrow & & i_X \downarrow & & \downarrow i_Z \\ \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{g}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

*where the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $C$  and both arrows in the bottom row are fibrations in  $C^\circ$ . Moreover, in the construction of this diagram,  $i_Y : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  and  $i_Z : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  may be chosen freely.*

*Proof.* Apply axiom BF4 (three times). ■



**4.1.6** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category. Given a span in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say*

$$Y \xleftarrow{f} X \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

*if  $Y$  and  $Z$  are fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow u & & \parallel \\ Y & \xleftarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{g}} & Z \end{array}$$

*where  $u : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  and both arrows in the bottom row are fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .* ■

**4.1.7** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a category with weak equivalences. If  $F : \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a functor that sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $F$  also sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $w$  be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . By [corollary 4.1.6](#), there exist morphisms  $u$  and  $v$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $w = v \circ u$ , where  $u$  is a section of a trivial fibration and  $v$  is a trivial fibration. Since weak equivalences have the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,  $Fu$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , hence  $Fw = Fv \circ Fu$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , as required. ■

**4.1.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category and let  $\mathcal{V}^\circ$  be the subcategory of trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .*

- (i)  $\mathcal{V}^\circ$  defines a calculus of cocycles for  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .
- (ii) *If the diagrams in [corollary 4.1.6](#) can be chosen functorially, then  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  admits a functorial calculus of cocycles.*

*Proof.* This is a consequence of axioms BF1–BF3 and [corollary 4.1.6](#). ■

**4.1.9** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a homotopically replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\mathcal{D}$  is a basic fibration category where the fibrant objects (resp. weak equivalences, fibrations) are those objects (resp. morphisms) in  $\mathcal{D}$  whose underlying object (resp. morphism) in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a fibrant object (resp. weak equivalence, fibration).*

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**4.1.10** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category and let  $A$  be an object in  $C$ . Then the slice category  $^A/C$  is a basic fibration category where the fibrant objects (resp. weak equivalences, fibrations) are those objects (resp. morphisms) in  $^A/C$  whose underlying object (resp. morphism) in  $C$  is a fibrant object (resp. weak equivalence, fibration).*

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**4.1.11** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category. A **weak path object** for a fibrant object  $Z$  in  $C$  is a tuple  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  such that:

- $\text{Path}(Z)$  is a fibrant object in  $C$ .
- $i : Z \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z)$  is a weak equivalence in  $C$ .
- $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(Z) \rightarrow Z$  are trivial fibrations in  $C$ , and  $p_0 \circ i = p_1 \circ i = \text{id}_Z$ .
- Given morphisms  $g_0, g_1 : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $C^\circ$  and a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$ , if  $h = g_0 \circ f = g_1 \circ f$ , then there exist a weak equivalence  $u : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$ , a fibration  $q : \hat{X} \rightarrow Y$ , and a morphism  $\hat{h} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z)$  in  $C$  such that the following equations are satisfied:

$$\begin{array}{ll} q \circ u = f & \hat{h} \circ u = i \circ h \\ g_0 \circ q = p_0 \circ \hat{h} & g_1 \circ q = p_1 \circ \hat{h} \end{array}$$

**4.1.12** LEMMA (Cisinski). *Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category. Consider a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{v_0} & Y_0 & \xrightarrow{f_0} & Z \\ \parallel & & \uparrow u_0 & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{w} & Y & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow u_1 & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v_1} & Y_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Z \end{array}$$

where  $X, Y_0, Y_1$ , and  $Z$  are fibrant objects in  $C$  and both  $v_0$  and  $v_1$  are trivial fibrations in  $C$ . Given a weak path object  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Z$  in  $C$ , there is

a commutative diagram in  $C^\circ$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{v_0} & Y_0 & \xrightarrow{f_0} & Z & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & Z \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow \hat{u}_0 & & \uparrow p_0 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \hat{Y} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \text{Path}(Z) & \xleftarrow{i} & Z \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \hat{u}_1 & & \downarrow p_1 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v_1} & Y_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Z & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & Z
 \end{array}$$

where  $\hat{u}_0$  and  $\hat{u}_1$  are weak equivalences in  $C^\circ$ .

*Proof.* Using axiom BF3, form the following pullback diagram in  $C$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 K & \xrightarrow{q_1} & Y_1 \\
 q_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow v_1 \\
 Y_0 & \xrightarrow{v_0} & X
 \end{array}$$

This makes sense because  $v_0 : Y_0 \rightarrow X$  and  $v_1 : Y_1 \rightarrow X$  are trivial fibrations in  $C^\circ$ . There is then a unique morphism  $k : Y \rightarrow K$  in  $C$  such that  $q_0 \circ k = u_0$  and  $q_1 \circ k = u_1$ . Let  $g_0 = f_0 \circ q_0$  and  $g_1 = f_1 \circ q_1$ . Then,  $f = g_0 \circ k = g_1 \circ k$ , so there exist a weak equivalence  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$ , a fibration  $\hat{k} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow K$ , and a morphism  $\hat{f} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z)$  in  $C$  such that the following equations hold,

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \hat{k} \circ u = k & \hat{f} \circ u = i \circ f \\
 g_0 \circ \hat{k} = p_0 \circ \hat{f} & g_1 \circ \hat{k} = p_1 \circ \hat{f}
 \end{array}$$

so  $\hat{u}_0 = q_0 \circ \hat{k}$  and  $\hat{u}_1 = q_1 \circ \hat{k}$ , we have a commutative diagram of the required form. (Note that  $\hat{u}_0 \circ u = u_0$  and  $\hat{u}_1 \circ u = u_1$ , so  $\hat{u}_0$  and  $\hat{u}_1$  are indeed weak equivalences, by axiom BF1.) ■

**4.1.13** LEMMA (Cisinski). Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category, let  $X, Y$ , and  $Z$  be objects in  $C$ , let  $\hat{X}, \hat{Y}, \hat{Z}$  be fibrant objects in  $C$ , and consider commutative diagrams in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
 i_X \downarrow & & \downarrow u_f & & \downarrow i_Y \\
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_f} & E_f & \xrightarrow{p_f} & \hat{Y}
 \end{array}$$

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

---

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Y & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\
 i_Y \downarrow & & \downarrow u_g & & \downarrow i_Z \\
 \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{v_g} & E_g & \xrightarrow{p_g} & \hat{Z} \\
 \\ 
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{h} & Z \\
 i_X \downarrow & & \downarrow u_h & & \downarrow i_Z \\
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_h} & E_h & \xrightarrow{p_h} & \hat{Z}
 \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $v_f$ ,  $v_g$ , and  $v_h$  are trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and  $h = g \circ f$ . If  $(\text{Path}(\hat{Z}), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a weak path object for  $\hat{Z}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then there exist commutative diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  as shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_h} & E_h & \xrightarrow{p_h} & \hat{Z} & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \hat{Z} \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow & & \uparrow p_0 & & \parallel \\
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{\quad} & C & \longrightarrow & \text{Path}(\hat{Z}) & \xleftarrow{i} & \hat{Z} \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow p_1 & & \parallel \\
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_f \circ v'} & P & \xrightarrow{p_g \circ p'} & \hat{Z} & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \hat{Z}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc}
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_f} & E_f & \xleftarrow{v'} & P & \xrightarrow{p'} & E_g & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & E_g & \xrightarrow{p_g} & \hat{Z} \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \downarrow v' & & \downarrow v_g & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_f} & E_f & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & E_f & \xrightarrow{p_f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{v_g} & E_g & \xrightarrow{p_g} & \hat{Z}
 \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .

*Proof.* Using axiom BF3, form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 P & \xrightarrow{p'} & E_g \\
 v' \downarrow & & \downarrow v_g \\
 E_f & \xrightarrow{p_f} & \hat{Y}
 \end{array}$$

This makes sense since  $v_g : E_g \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  and  $p_f : E_f \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . By the universal property of pullbacks, there is a unique

morphism  $c : X \rightarrow P$  making the diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  shown below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ u_f \downarrow & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow u_g \\ E_f & \xleftarrow{v'} & P & \xrightarrow{p'} & E_g \end{array}$$

so we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_h} & E_h & \xrightarrow{p_h} & \hat{Z} \\ \parallel & & \uparrow u_h & & \parallel \\ \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{i_X} & X & \xrightarrow{i_Z \circ h} & \hat{Z} \\ \parallel & & \downarrow c & & \parallel \\ \hat{X} & \xleftarrow{v_f \circ v'} & P & \xrightarrow{p_g \circ p'} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

The claim then follows, by [lemma 4.1.12](#). ■

**4.1.14** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category. The **homotopy category** of  $\mathcal{C}$  is the category  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  obtained by freely inverting the weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , as in [definition A.4.9](#).

**4.1.15** PROPOSITION (Cisinski). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category. If every fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a weak path object, then the inclusion  $U : \mathcal{C}^\circ \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  induces a functor  $\text{Ho } U : \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* To begin, choose for each non-fibrant object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  a weak equivalence  $i_X : X \rightarrow RX$  where  $RX$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and for each fibrant object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , define  $RX = X$  and  $i_X = \text{id}_X$ . Then, for each non-identity morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , use axiom BF4 to choose a morphism  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  making the following diagram commute in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ i_X \downarrow & & \downarrow i_Y \\ RX & \xrightarrow{Rf} & RY \end{array}$$

By [lemma 4.1.13](#), this defines a functor  $R : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^\circ$ ; moreover, by axiom BF1,  $Rf$  is an weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  if  $f$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so there

is an induced functor  $\bar{R} : \text{Ho } C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C^\circ$ . By construction,  $RU : C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C^\circ$  is the localising functor, and  $i$  defines a natural isomorphism  $\text{id}_{\text{Ho } C} \Rightarrow (\text{Ho } U)\bar{R}$ , so  $\text{Ho } U : \text{Ho } C^\circ \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  is indeed fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects. ■

**4.1.16** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category. A **right Cisinski deformation retract** of  $C$  is a right deformation retract  $(C^\circ, R, i)$  of  $C$  where  $C^\circ$  is the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $C$ .

**4.1.17** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category. If every fibrant object in  $C$  admits a weak path object, then right Cisinski deformation retracts of  $C$  exist.*

*Proof.* See (the proof of) [proposition 4.1.15](#). ■

**4.1.18** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category, let  $A$  be an object in  $C$ , and let  $(^A/C)_w$  be the full subcategory of the slice category  $^A/C$  spanned by those objects whose underlying morphism in  $C$  is a weak equivalence.*

- (i)  $(^A/C)_w$  is a basic fibration category (with the obvious fibrant objects, weak equivalences, and fibrations).
- (ii)  $(^A/C)_w$  has an initial object, and every morphism in  $(^A/C)_w$  is a weak equivalence.
- (iii)  $\text{Ho } (^A/C)_w^\circ$  is equivalent to the terminal groupoid  $\mathbb{1}$ .

*Proof.* (i). Combine lemmas [4.1.9](#) and [4.1.10](#).

(ii). It is clear that  $\text{id} : A \rightarrow A$  is an initial object in  $(^A/C)_w$ , and by axiom BF1, every morphism in  $(^A/C)_w$  is a weak equivalence.

(iii). In particular, by [proposition 3.2.7](#),  $\text{Ho } (^A/C)_w$  is equivalent to  $\mathbb{1}$ , so the claim is a consequence of [proposition 4.1.15](#). ■

**4.1.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a basic fibration category, let  $\mathcal{V}$  be the class of trivial fibrations in  $C$ , let  $(C^\circ, R, i)$  be a right Cisinski deformation retract of  $C$ , and let  $C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$  be the localisation of  $C$  with respect to the trivial fibrations.*

- (i) *Let  $\mathcal{V}^\circ = \mathcal{V} \cap \text{mor } C^\circ$ . Then the inclusion  $\mathcal{V}^\circ \subseteq \mathcal{W} \cap \text{mor } C^\circ$  induces an isomorphism  $C^\circ[\mathcal{V}^{\circ-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } C^\circ$ .*

- (ii) *The inclusion  $C^\circ \hookrightarrow C$  induces a fully faithful functor  $\mathrm{Ho} C^\circ \rightarrow C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$ , and  $(R, i)$  induces a left adjoint for that functor.*

*Proof.* (i). Apply lemma 3.5.6 to proposition 4.1.8.

(ii). By axiom BF3,  $(C, \mathcal{V})$  admits a calculus of spans, so we may use the fundamental theorem of calculi of spans (3.5.9) to deduce that the canonical functor  $C^\circ[\mathcal{V}^{\circ-1}] \rightarrow C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$  is indeed fully faithful.

On the other hand, the localising functor  $C \rightarrow C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$  sends weak equivalences in  $C^\circ$  to isomorphisms in  $C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$ , so we may apply proposition 3.3.19 to deduce that the canonical functor  $C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$  has a fully faithful right adjoint defined by  $R$ . Moreover, proposition 4.1.15 says that the canonical functor  $\mathrm{Ho} C^\circ \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} C$  is fully faithful, and in the proof, we see this has a left adjoint defined by  $R$ . Thus, we have the following hom-set bijections,

$$\mathrm{Ho} C^\circ(RX, Y) \cong \mathrm{Ho} C(X, Y) \cong C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}](X, RY)$$

and these bijections are moreover natural in  $Y$ . Since  $Y$  is a fibrant object, the morphism  $i_Y : Y \rightarrow RY$  is invertible in  $C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$ ; and  $i$  defines a natural transformation of functors  $\mathrm{Ho} C^\circ \rightarrow C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$ , so we have obtained from  $(R, i)$  a left adjoint for the functor  $\mathrm{Ho} C^\circ \rightarrow C[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$  induced by the inclusion  $C^\circ \hookrightarrow C$ , as required. ■

The following notion is due to Cisinski [2010].

**4.1.20 DEFINITION.** A **Cisinski fibration category** (or **left-derivable category**) is a category  $C$  equipped with a pair  $(\mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  of subclasses of  $\mathrm{mor} C$  satisfying these axioms:

- D0.**  $C$  has a terminal object  $1$ . A **fibrant object** in  $C$  is an object  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  in  $C$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ . Any object isomorphic to a fibrant object is fibrant, and  $1$  is fibrant.
- D1.**  $(C, \mathcal{W})$  is a category with weak equivalences, i.e.  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $C$  and every isomorphism is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .
- D2.**  $\mathcal{F}$  is closed under composition and every isomorphism between fibrant objects in  $C$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ . If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  a morphism between fibrant objects in  $C$ , then the pullback of  $p$  along  $g$  exists in  $C$  and is a morphism that is in  $\mathcal{F}$ .

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

---

- D3.** If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$  and  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the pullback of  $p$  along  $g$  (exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and) is a morphism that is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ .
- D4.** If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $Y$  is fibrant, then there exist a morphism  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  in  $\mathcal{W}$  and a morphism  $p : \hat{X} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{F}$  such that  $f = p \circ i$ .

In a Cisinski fibration category as above,

- a **weak equivalence** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W}$ ,
- a **fibration** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ ,
- a **trivial fibration** (or **acyclic fibration**) is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ , and

We will often abuse notation and say  $\mathcal{C}$  is a Cisinski fibration category, without mentioning the data  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$ .

**4.1.2I** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  be the full subcategory  $\mathcal{C}$  spanned by the fibrant objects.*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{C}^\circ$  has finite products and the inclusion  $\mathcal{C}^\circ \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves them.*
- (ii) *For any finite sequence  $(A_1, \dots, A_n)$  of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , each projection  $A_1 \times \dots \times A_n \rightarrow A_k$  is a fibration.*

*Proof.* By axiom D0,  $\mathcal{C}$  has a terminal object 1. Thus, by axiom D2, for any pair  $(A_1, A_2)$  of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we may form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_1 \times A_2 & \longrightarrow & A_2 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_1 & \longrightarrow & 1 \end{array}$$

where every arrow is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The remainder of the claim follows by induction. ■



**4.1.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a category with a terminal object  $1$ , let  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  be subclasses of  $\text{mor } C$ , and let  $C^\circ$  be the full subcategory of  $C$  spanned by those objects  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$C$  is a Cisinski fibration category with weak equivalences  $\mathcal{W}$  and fibrations  $\mathcal{F}$ .*
- (ii)  *$C$  is a basic fibration category with fibrant objects  $C^\circ$ , weak equivalences  $\mathcal{W}$ , and fibrations  $\mathcal{F}$ , and axiom D2 is satisfied.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). It is clear  $C^\circ$  is a replete subcategory of  $C$  and that axioms BF1–BF3 are satisfied. For axiom BF4, we may apply [lemma 4.1.21](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Straightforward. ■

**4.1.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $A$  be an object in a Cisinski fibration category  $C$ . Then the slice category  ${}^A/C$  is a Cisinski fibration category where a morphism in  ${}^A/C$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration) if and only if the underlying morphism in  $C$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration).*

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**4.1.24** PROPOSITION. *Let  $A$  be an object in a Cisinski fibration category  $C$ . If  $A$  is fibrant, then the slice category  $C_{/A}$  is a Cisinski fibration category where a morphism in  $C_{/A}$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration) if and only if the underlying morphism in  $C$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration).*

*Proof.* The object  $\text{id} : A \rightarrow A$  is a terminal object in  $C_{/A}$ , and axiom D2 in  $C$  implies axiom D0 in  $C_{/A}$ . It is clear that axiom D1 is also satisfied. The projection  $C_{/A} \rightarrow C$  creates pullbacks, so axioms D2 and D3 in  $C$  imply axioms D2 and D3 in  $C_{/A}$ . Since the fibrant objects in  $C_{/A}$  are the objects  $p : E \rightarrow A$  whose underlying morphism in  $C$  is a fibration, axiom D4 in  $C_{/A}$  follows from axiom D4 in  $C$ . ■

**4.1.25** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a Cisinski fibration category. Then  $[2, C]$  admits the structure of a Cisinski fibration category where:*

- *the weak equivalences are the natural weak equivalences, and*

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

---

- the fibrations are the commutative squares in  $\mathcal{C}$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \end{array}$$

such that  $X_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  and  $Y_0 \rightarrow Y_1$  are fibrations between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  and the induced morphism  $X_0 \rightarrow X_1 \times_{Y_1} Y_0$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

In particular, the fibrant objects in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  with respect to this structure are the fibrations between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* It is clear that axioms D0 and D1 are satisfied. For axiom D2, consider a fibration in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \end{array}$$

and a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y'_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y'_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \end{array}$$

where  $Y'_0 \rightarrow Y'_1$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Note that axiom D2 implies that  $X_0 \rightarrow X_1$  and  $Y_0 \rightarrow Y_1$  are also fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus, we may form the following pullback squares in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X'_0 & \longrightarrow & X_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y'_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} X'_1 & \longrightarrow & X_1 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y'_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \end{array}$$

Of course,  $X'_1 \rightarrow Y'_1$  is a fibration, and it remains to be shown that the induced morphism  $X'_0 \rightarrow X'_1 \times_{Y'_1} Y'_0$  is a fibration. Consider the following commutative

diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X'_1 \times_{Y'_1} Y'_0 & \longrightarrow & Y'_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X'_1 & \longrightarrow & Y'_1 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 X'_1 \times_{Y'_1} Y'_0 & \longrightarrow & Y'_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X_1 \times_{Y_1} Y_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1
 \end{array}$$

Both squares in the diagram above left are pullback diagrams, so by the pullback pasting lemma, the outer rectangle is also a pullback diagram; but the outer rectangle of the diagram left above is the same as the outer rectangle of the diagram right above, and the lower square is a pullback diagram by definition, so the upper square is also a pullback diagram. Thus, in the commutative diagram shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X'_0 & \longrightarrow & X'_1 \times_{Y'_1} Y'_0 & \longrightarrow & Y'_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X_0 & \longrightarrow & X_1 \times_{Y_1} Y_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0
 \end{array}$$

the right square and outer rectangle are pullback diagrams, so the same is true of the left square. In particular, the morphism  $X'_0 \rightarrow X'_1 \times_{Y'_1} Y'_0$  is a fibration. Thus, the class of fibrations in  $[2, C]$  is closed under pullback along morphisms between fibrant objects. Next, consider a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 & \longrightarrow & Z_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 & \longrightarrow & Z_1
 \end{array}$$

where both squares are fibrations in  $[2, C]$ . We then have the following commutative diagram in  $C$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X_1 \times_{Y_1} Y_0 & \longrightarrow & & Y_0 & & & \\
 \downarrow & & & \downarrow & & & \\
 X_1 \times_{Z_1} Z_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \times_{Z_1} Z_0 & \longrightarrow & Z_0 & & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 & \longrightarrow & Z_1 & & 
 \end{array}$$

where all squares and rectangles are pullback diagrams (by the pullback pasting lemma). Thus, (using axiom D2 in  $\mathcal{C}$ ) the induced morphism  $X_0 \rightarrow X_1 \times_{Z_1} Z_0$  is a fibration. This shows that the class of fibrations in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  is closed under composition.

Similar arguments can be used to verify axiom D3. Finally, we must verify axiom D4. Consider a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \end{array}$$

where  $Y_0 \rightarrow Y_1$  is a fibration between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . First, using axiom D4 in  $\mathcal{C}$ , factor  $X_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  as a weak equivalence  $X_1 \rightarrow \hat{X}_1$  followed by a fibration  $\hat{X}_1 \rightarrow Y_1$ . There is then an induced morphism  $X_0 \rightarrow \hat{X}_1 \times_{Y_1} Y_0$ , which we may factor as a weak equivalence  $X_0 \rightarrow \hat{X}_0$  followed by a fibration  $\hat{X}_0 \rightarrow \hat{X}_1 \times_{Y_1} Y_0$ . We thus obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_0 & \longrightarrow & \hat{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & Y_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X_1 & \longrightarrow & \hat{X}_1 & \longrightarrow & Y_1 \end{array}$$

where the left half is a natural weak equivalence and the right half corresponds to a fibration in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ , as required. ■

**4.1.26 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. A **path object** for a fibrant object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tuple  $(\text{Path}(X), i, p_0, p_1)$  such that:

- $\text{Path}(X)$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- $i : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(X)$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(X) \rightarrow X$  are retractions of  $i : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(X)$ .
- $(p_0, p_1) : \text{Path}(X) \rightarrow X \times X$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**4.1.27** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a Cisinski fibration category.

- (i) Every fibrant object in  $C$  admits a path object.
- (ii) Every path object in  $C$  is also a weak path object.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $Z$  be a fibrant object in  $C$ . We can then use lemma 4.1.21 and axiom D4 to factorise the diagonal  $\Delta : Z \rightarrow Z \times Z$  and obtain a path object for  $Z$ .

(ii). Let  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  be any path object for  $Z$ . Note that by lemma 4.1.21, the morphisms  $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(Z) \rightarrow Z$  are fibrations, and by axiom BF1, they are also weak equivalences.

Now, let  $g_0, g_1 : Y \rightarrow Z$  be morphisms in  $C^\circ$  and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $C$  such that  $h = g_0 \circ f = g_1 \circ f$ . By axiom D2, we may form the following pullback square in  $C$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E & \xrightarrow{b} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ a \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\langle g_0, g_1 \rangle} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

Moreover, there is a unique morphism  $e : X \rightarrow E$  such that  $a \circ e = f$  and  $b \circ e = i \circ h$ . Using axiom D4, factor  $e$  as a weak equivalence  $u : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  followed by a fibration  $\hat{e} : \hat{X} \rightarrow E$ . Then, taking  $q = a \circ \hat{e}$  and  $\hat{h} = b \circ \hat{e}$ , we have the following equations:

$$\begin{array}{ll} q \circ u = f & \hat{h} \circ u = i \circ h \\ g_0 \circ q = p_0 \circ \hat{h} & g_1 \circ q = p_1 \circ \hat{h} \end{array}$$

Thus,  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  is indeed a weak path object for  $Z$ . ■

**4.1.28** DEFINITION. A **relative fibration category** is a category  $C$  equipped with a pair  $(\mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  of subclasses of  $\text{mor } C$  satisfying these axioms:

**RF0.**  $C$  has a terminal object.

**RF1.**  $(C, \mathcal{W})$  is a category with weak equivalences, i.e.  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $C$  and every isomorphism is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

**RF2.** Every isomorphism is in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  is closed under composition. If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the pullback of  $p$  along  $g$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ .

**RF3.** If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$  and  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the pullback of  $p$  along  $g$  (exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and) is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ .

**RF4.** For any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  there exist a morphism  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  in  $\mathcal{W}$  and a morphism  $p : \hat{X} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{F}$  such that  $f = p \circ i$ .

**4.I.29** REMARK. It is clear that every relative fibration category is a Cisinski fibration category. On the other hand, a **weak fibration category** in the sense of Barnea and Schlank [2011] is the same thing as a relative fibration category with all finite limits.

**4.I.30** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a relative fibration category.
- (ii) For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$  is a relative fibration category.
- (iii) For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$  is a Cisinski fibration category, and  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfies axioms RF2 and RF3.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). The object  $\text{id} : A \rightarrow A$  is a terminal object in  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ , and axiom RF2 in  $\mathcal{C}$  implies axiom RF0 in  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ . It is clear that axiom RF1 is also satisfied. The projection  $\mathcal{C}_{/A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  creates pullbacks, and it follows that axioms RF2–RF4 are satisfied in  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Axioms RF0 and RF1 are automatically satisfied because  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfies axioms D0 and D1, axioms RF2 and RF3 are satisfied by hypothesis, so only axiom RF4 remains to be verified.

Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then it is also an object in  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y}$ , and  $\text{id} : Y \rightarrow Y$  is a terminal object in  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y}$ , so by axiom D4 (applied in  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y}$ ), there is a weak equivalence  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  and a fibration  $p : \hat{X} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f = p \circ i$ . ■

One particularly pleasant kind of relative fibration category is obtained by taking the full subcategory of fibrant objects in a model category or, more generally, a Cisinski fibration category. We can study these categories axiomatically following Brown [1973]:

**4.1.31** DEFINITION. A **category of fibrant objects** is a category  $\mathcal{E}$  with finite products and equipped with a pair  $(\mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  of subclasses of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{E}$  satisfying these axioms:

- (A)  $(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{W})$  is a category with weak equivalences, i.e.  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{C}$  and every isomorphism is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .
- (B) Every isomorphism is in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and  $\mathcal{F}$  is closed under composition.
- (C) Pullbacks along morphisms in  $\mathcal{F}$  exist in  $\mathcal{E}$ , and the pullback of a morphism that is in  $\mathcal{F}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ ) is also a morphism that is in  $\mathcal{F}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ ).
- (D) For each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , there is a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{i} & \text{Path}(X) \\ & \searrow \Delta & \downarrow p \\ & & X \times X \end{array}$$

where  $\Delta : X \rightarrow X \times X$  is the diagonal morphism,  $i : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(X)$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and  $\text{Path}(X) \rightarrow X \times X$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ .

- (E) For any object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ .

In a category of fibrant objects as above,

- a **weak equivalence** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W}$ ,
- a **fibration** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and
- a **trivial fibration** (or **acyclic fibration**) is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ .

**4.1.32** REMARK. We will see (in [proposition 4.1.36](#)) that categories of fibrant objects are Cisinski fibration categories, and in view of that fact, axiom D is precisely the statement that path objects exist.

**4.1.33** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  (with weak equivalences and fibrations inherited from  $\mathcal{C}$ ) is a category of fibrant objects.*

*Proof.* Since the terminal object is fibrant,  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  has finite products. Moreover, axioms A, B, C, and E are clearly satisfied, and for axiom D, we use [lemma 4.1.27](#). ■

**4.1.34** DEFINITION. A **path object functor** for a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$  consists of the following data:

- A functor  $\text{Path} : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ .
- Natural transformations  $i : \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}} \Rightarrow \text{Path}$  and  $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}}$  such that  $(\text{Path}(X), i_X, (p_0)_X, (p_1)_X)$  is a path object for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

We say  $\mathcal{E}$  has **functorial path objects** if it admits a path object functor.

**4.1.35** LEMMA (Factorisation lemma). *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

- (i) *There exists a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow u & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{v} & E_f & \xrightarrow{p} & Y \end{array}$$

*where  $u : X \rightarrow E_f$  is a weak equivalence and both  $p : E_f \rightarrow Y$  and  $v : E_f \rightarrow X$  are fibrations.*

- (ii) *Moreover, if  $\mathcal{E}$  has functorial path objects, then  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $p$  can be chosen functorially (with respect to  $f$ ).*

*Proof.* Let  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  be a path object for  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Form a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E_f & \xrightarrow{g} & \text{Path}(Y) \\ v \downarrow & & \downarrow p_0 \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$



Note that  $p_0 : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration, so this makes sense, and  $v : E_f \rightarrow X$  is also a trivial fibration (by axiom C). Let  $u : X \rightarrow E_f$  be the unique morphism such that  $v \circ u = \text{id}_X$  and  $g \circ u = i \circ f$ , and let  $p = p_1 \circ g$ . Then  $u$  is a section of a trivial fibration, hence is a weak equivalence by axiom A, and  $p$  is a fibration because we have the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 E_f & \xrightarrow{g} & \text{Path}(Y) \\
 \downarrow \langle q, p_1 \circ g \rangle & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\
 p \left( \begin{array}{ccc} X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f \times \text{id}_Y} & Y \times Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y & & Y \end{array} \right.
 \end{array}$$

where the square in the diagram is a pullback square and  $X \times Y \rightarrow Y$  is the product projection (thus, a fibration by axioms C and E). It is clear that  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $p$  are functorial with respect to  $f$  and the choice of  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$ , so if  $\mathcal{E}$  has functorial path objects, then  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $p$  can be chosen functorially with respect to  $f$ . ■

**4.1.36 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category with two subclasses  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{E}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{E}$  is a category of fibrant objects with weak equivalences  $\mathcal{W}$  and fibrations  $\mathcal{F}$ .
- (ii)  $\mathcal{E}$  is a relative fibration category with weak equivalences  $\mathcal{W}$  and fibrations  $\mathcal{F}$ , and every object in  $\mathcal{E}$  is fibrant.
- (iii)  $\mathcal{E}$  is a Cisinski fibration category with weak equivalences  $\mathcal{W}$  and fibrations  $\mathcal{F}$ , and every object in  $\mathcal{E}$  is fibrant.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Axioms RF0–RF3 are clearly satisfied, and for axiom RF4, we apply the factorisation lemma (4.1.35).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Axiom E is satisfied by hypothesis, axiom A corresponds to axiom D1, axioms B and C correspond to axioms D2 and D3, and axiom D is a special case of axiom D4. ■

**4.1.37** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

- (i) *The slice category  $\mathcal{E}_{/A}$  is a relative fibration category (with the obvious weak equivalences and fibrations).*
- (ii) *The full subcategory  $(\mathcal{E}_{/A})^\circ$  spanned by the fibrations  $X \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  is a category of fibrant objects.*

*Proof.* (i). Combine propositions 4.1.30 and 4.1.36.

(ii). Apply proposition 4.1.33. ■

**4.1.38** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $\mathcal{V}$  be the class of trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{V}$  defines a calculus of cocycles for  $\mathcal{E}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{E}$  has functorial path objects, then  $\mathcal{E}$  admits a functorial calculus of cocycles.*
- (iii) *Every morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{E}$  can be represented by a  $\mathcal{V}$ -cocycle in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). This is a consequence of axioms A and C and the factorisation lemma (4.1.35).

(iii). Apply corollary 3.5.10. ■

**4.1.39** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a category of weak equivalences. If  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a functor that sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{E}$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $F$  also sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{D}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f$  be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . By the factorisation lemma (4.1.35), there exist morphisms  $u$  and  $v$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $f = v \circ u$ ,  $u$  is a section of a trivial fibration, and  $v$  is a trivial fibration. Since weak equivalences have the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,  $Fu$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ ; hence,  $Ff$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ , as required. ■

**4.1.40** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subclass of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{E}$  that has the 2-out-of-3 property.*

- (i) *If every trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$  is also in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (ii) *In particular, the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$  is the smallest class of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  that has the 2-out-of-3 property and contains the trivial fibrations.* ■

## 4.2 Homotopy pullbacks

**Prerequisites.** §§3.I, 4.I.

**4.2.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- A **homotopically quadrable morphism** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a morphism  $p : E \rightarrow Y$  with the following property: for any morphism  $f : Y' \rightarrow Y$  and any weak equivalence  $v : Y'' \rightarrow Y'$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} E'' & \xrightarrow{u} & E' & \longrightarrow & E \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Y'' & \xrightarrow{v} & Y' & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where both squares are pullbacks and  $u : E'' \rightarrow E'$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- A **homotopically coquadrable morphism** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a morphism  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  with the following property: for any morphism  $f : Z \rightarrow Z'$  and any weak equivalence  $v : Z' \rightarrow Z''$ , there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z & \xrightarrow{f} & Z' & \xrightarrow{v} & Z'' \\ \downarrow i & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ W & \longrightarrow & W' & \xrightarrow{u} & W'' \end{array}$$

where both squares are pushouts and  $u : W' \rightarrow W''$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

REMARK. Homotopically quadrable (resp. coquadrable) morphisms are called ‘sharp maps’ (resp. ‘flat maps’) in [Rezk, 1998].

**4.2.2** REMARK. It is clear that every isomorphism is homotopically quadrable (resp. coquadrable), and the pullback (resp. pushout) pasting lemma implies the class of homotopically quadrable (resp. coquadrable) morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under composition and pullback (resp. pushout).

**4.2.3** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a basic fibration category. Then every trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$  is homotopically quadrable as a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $p : E \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . By axiom BF3, we can form the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} E'' & \xrightarrow{u} & E' & \longrightarrow & E \\ p'' \downarrow & & p' \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Y'' & \xrightarrow{v} & Y' & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where both squares are pullbacks, and moreover,  $p' : E' \rightarrow Y'$  and  $p'' : E'' \rightarrow Y''$  are also trivial fibrations. Axiom BF1 then implies  $u : E'' \rightarrow E'$  is a weak equivalence if (and only if)  $v : Y'' \rightarrow Y'$  is a weak equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**4.2.4** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences. Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  has a terminal object 1, the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{C}$  has binary products, and the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under binary products.*
- (ii) *For any object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the unique morphism  $Y \rightarrow 1$  is homotopically quadrable.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $x : X' \rightarrow X$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and consider the following diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X' \times Y & \xrightarrow{x \times \text{id}_Y} & X \times Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X' & \xrightarrow{x} & X & \longrightarrow & 1 \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are the evident projections. By the pullback pasting lemma, both squares are pullback squares, and by hypothesis, the morphism  $x \times \text{id}_Y : X' \times Y \rightarrow X \times Y$  is a weak equivalence if  $x : X' \rightarrow X$  is. Thus,  $Y \rightarrow 1$  is indeed homotopically quadrable.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose the morphism  $Y \rightarrow 1$  is homotopically quadrable in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then the binary product  $X \times Y$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Moreover, for any weak equivalence  $x : X' \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $x \times \text{id}_Y : X' \times Y \rightarrow X \times Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus, if the morphism  $Y \rightarrow 1$  is homotopically quadrable for

every object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , (by axiom A) the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under binary products. ■

**4.2.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

- (i) *There is a functor  $f^* : (\mathcal{E}_{/Y})^\circ \rightarrow (\mathcal{E}_{/X})^\circ$  sending a fibration over  $Y$  to its pullback along  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ .*
- (ii) *The pullback functor  $f^* : (\mathcal{E}_{/Y})^\circ \rightarrow (\mathcal{E}_{/X})^\circ$  preserves weak equivalences and fibrations.*

*Proof.* (i). This is just axiom C for a category of fibrant objects.

(ii). Recalling [corollary 4.1.37](#) and the pullback pasting lemma, this is a consequence of axiom C and [lemma 4.1.7](#). ■

**4.2.6** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $s : X \rightarrow Y$  be a section of a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Given a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{f} & X \\ s' \downarrow & & \downarrow s \\ Y' & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \end{array}$$

*where  $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ , the morphism  $s' : X' \rightarrow Y'$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $p : Y \rightarrow X$  be a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $p \circ s = \text{id}_X$ . Form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} P & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \\ r \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Y' & \xrightarrow{p \circ g} & X \end{array}$$

By axiom C,  $r : P \rightarrow Y'$  is a trivial fibration and  $q : P \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration. There is a unique morphism  $u_0 : Y' \rightarrow Z$  such that  $r \circ u_0 = \text{id}_{Y'}$ , and  $q \circ u_0 = g$ , and there is also a unique morphism  $u_1 : Y' \rightarrow Z$  such that  $r \circ u_1 = \text{id}_{Y'}$ , and  $q \circ u_1 = s \circ p \circ g$ . Note that both  $u_0$  and  $u_1$  are weak equivalences, by axiom A.

We then have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Y' & \xrightarrow{p \circ g} & X \\ u_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow s \\ P & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \\ r \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Y' & \xrightarrow{p \circ g} & X \end{array}$$

where the lower square and outer rectangle are pullback diagrams, so the pullback pasting lemma implies the upper square is also a pullback diagram. Thus, there is a unique morphism  $u' : X' \rightarrow Y'$  such that  $p \circ g \circ u' = f$  and  $u_1 \circ u' = u_0 \circ s'$ ; but in the diagram shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X' & \xrightarrow{u'} & Y' & \xrightarrow{p \circ g} & X \\ s' \downarrow & & \downarrow u_1 & & \downarrow s \\ Y' & \xrightarrow{u_0} & P & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \end{array}$$

the right square and outer rectangle are pullback diagrams, and both  $q$  and  $q \circ u_0 = g$  are fibrations, so by [proposition 4.2.5](#),  $u'$  is a weak equivalence. Thus,  $s'$  is indeed a weak equivalence (by axiom A). ■

**4.2.7 PROPOSITION.** *In a category of fibrant objects, the pullback of a weak equivalence along a fibration is again a weak equivalence. In particular, every fibration in a category of fibrant objects is homotopically quadrable.*

*Proof.* Axiom C says that the pullback of a trivial fibration is a trivial fibration, so the factorisation lemma ([4.1.35](#)) implies it is enough to prove that the pullback of a section of a trivial fibration is a weak equivalence; but that is precisely the statement of [lemma 4.2.6](#). ■

**4.2.8 COROLLARY.** *In a category of fibrant objects, the class of weak equivalences is closed under binary products.*

*Proof.* Apply [lemma 4.2.4](#) to [proposition 4.2.7](#). ■

**4.2.9** COROLLARY. *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a weak equivalence in a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$ , let  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  be a path object for  $Y$ , and let  $K$  be defined by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{u} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ \langle k_0, k_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ X \times X & \xrightarrow{f \times f} & Y \times Y \end{array}$$

(i) *There is a unique morphism  $r : X \rightarrow K$  such that  $k_0 \circ r = k_1 \circ r = \text{id}_X$  and  $u \circ r = i \circ f$ ; moreover,  $r : X \rightarrow K$  is a weak equivalence.*

(ii)  *$(K, r, k_0, k_1)$  is a path object for  $X$ .*

*Proof.* (i). The existence and uniqueness of  $r : X \rightarrow K$  is clear. [Proposition 4.2.7](#) and [corollary 4.2.8](#) imply that  $u : K \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z)$  is a weak equivalence, so by axiom A,  $r : X \rightarrow K$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

(ii). It remains to be shown that  $\langle k_0, k_1 \rangle : K \rightarrow X \times X$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ ; but that is an immediate consequence of axiom C. ■

**4.2.10** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category with weak equivalences. The following are equivalent:*

(i)  *$\mathcal{E}$  admits the structure of a category of fibrant objects (with the given weak equivalences).*

(ii)  *$\mathcal{E}$  has finite products, the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under binary products, and every morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  can be factored as a weak equivalence followed by a homotopically quadrable morphism.*

(iii)  *$\mathcal{E}$  is a category of fibrant objects where the weak equivalences are the given ones and the fibrations are the homotopically quadrable morphisms.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is a consequence of [proposition 4.2.7](#) and [corollary 4.2.8](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Axioms A and D are satisfied by hypothesis, and it is straightforward to verify axioms B and C using the definition of ‘homotopically quadrable morphism’. For axiom E, we apply [lemma 4.2.4](#).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Immediate. ■



**4.2.II** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. Given a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_0 & \xrightarrow{p_0} & Y_0 & \xleftarrow{y_0} & T_0 \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow h \\ X_1 & \xrightarrow{p_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{y_1} & T_1 \end{array}$$

if  $p_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  and  $p_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  are fibrations and  $f : X_0 \rightarrow X_1$ ,  $g : Y_0 \rightarrow Y_1$ , and  $h : T_0 \rightarrow T_1$  are weak equivalences, then the induced morphism

$$T_0 \times_{Y_0} X_0 \rightarrow T_1 \times_{Y_1} X_1$$

is a weak equivalence.

*Proof.* First, form the following pullback square in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{p'} & Y_0 \\ f' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Y_1 \end{array}$$

Axiom C ensures the existence of such a pullback square and that  $p' : X' \rightarrow Y_0$  is a fibration; moreover, by [proposition 4.2.7](#),  $f' : X' \rightarrow X_1$  is a weak equivalence. There is then a unique morphism  $x' : X_0 \rightarrow X'$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_1 & \xleftarrow{f} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{p_0} & Y_0 \\ \parallel & & \downarrow x' & & \parallel \\ X_1 & \xleftarrow{f'} & X' & \xrightarrow{p'} & Y_0 \end{array}$$

and by axiom A,  $x' : X_0 \rightarrow X'$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . We then have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} T_0 \times_{Y_0} X_0 & \longrightarrow & T_0 \times_{Y_0} X' & \longrightarrow & T_0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow y_0 \\ X_0 & \xrightarrow{x'} & X' & \xrightarrow{p'} & Y_0 \\ & \searrow p_0 & & & \end{array}$$

where the right square and outer rectangle are pullback diagrams. Thus, by [proposition 4.2.5](#),  $T_0 \times_{Y_0} X_0 \rightarrow T_0 \times_{Y_0} X'$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Similarly, we

have the following diagrams,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 T_0 \times_{Y_0} X' & \longrightarrow & T_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_0 \\
 X' & \xrightarrow{p'} & Y_0 \\
 f' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
 X_1 & \xrightarrow{p_1} & Y_1
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 T_0 \times_{Y_0} X' & \longrightarrow & T_0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow h \\
 T_1 \times_{Y_1} X_1 & \longrightarrow & T_1 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_1 \\
 X_1 & \xrightarrow{p_1} & Y_1
 \end{array}$$

where every square is a pullback diagram, so  $T_0 \times_{Y_0} X' \rightarrow T_1 \times_{Y_1} X_1$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Thus, (by axiom A) the morphism  $T_0 \times_{Y_0} X_0 \rightarrow T_1 \times_{Y_1} X_1$  is a weak equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**4.2.12** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. A **homotopy pullback** of a pair of morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  consists of the following data:

- An object in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,  $X \overset{h}{\times}_Z Y$ .
- A pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,  $q_0 : X \overset{h}{\times}_Z Y \rightarrow X$  and  $q_1 : X \overset{h}{\times}_Z Y \rightarrow Y$ , called **projections**.
- A path object  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Z$ .
- A morphism  $u : X \overset{h}{\times}_Z Y \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z)$  fitting into a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \overset{h}{\times}_Z Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \text{Path}(Z) \\
 \langle q_0, q_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\
 X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f \times g} & Z \times Z
 \end{array}$$

We will often abuse notation and refer to  $X \overset{h}{\times}_Z Y$  as the homotopy pullback.

**4.2.13** REMARK. Given  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , we may form a category whose objects are homotopy pullbacks of  $f$  and  $g$  and whose morphisms are tuples of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  making all the relevant diagrams commute, and lemmas 4.1.5, 4.1.18 and 4.2.11 imply that any two objects in this category are connected by a span of weak equivalences.

**4.2.14 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Given a path object  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Z$ , consider a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the following form:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_Z^h Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ \langle q_0, q_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f \times g} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

- (i) *The morphism  $\langle q_0, q_1 \rangle : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow X \times Y$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ , as are the projections  $q_0 : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow X$  and  $q_1 : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow Y$ .*
- (ii) *The dotted arrows in the diagram shown below form a limiting cone over the diagram of solid arrows:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_Z^h Y & & \overset{q_1}{\dashrightarrow} & Y & \\ & \searrow u & & \downarrow g & \\ & & \text{Path}(Z) & \xrightarrow{p_1} & Z \\ & \searrow p_0 & & & \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z & & \end{array}$$

- (iii) *If  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $q_1 : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Symmetrically, if  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $q_0 : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). By definition,  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle : \text{Path}(Z) \rightarrow Z \times Z$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ , so by axiom C, so is  $\langle q_0, q_1 \rangle : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow X \times Y$ . Axioms C and E imply that the projections  $X \times Y \rightarrow X$  and  $X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  are fibrations, so by axiom B, the projections  $X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow X$  and  $X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow Y$  are also fibrations.

(ii). This is a straightforward check.

(iii). We will prove the claim in the case where  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence

in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Consider the following diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X \times_Z^h Y & \xrightarrow{\quad} & E_g & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{Path}(Z) \\
 \langle q_0, q_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\
 X \times Y & \xrightarrow{f \times \text{id}_Y} & Z \times Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_Z \times g} & Z \times Z
 \end{array}$$

$\xrightarrow{\quad u \quad}$  (curved arrow from  $X \times_Z^h Y$  to  $\text{Path}(Z)$ )

where the outer rectangle and right square are pullback diagrams. The pullback pasting lemma says the left square is also a pullback diagram, so by [proposition 4.2.7](#), the morphism  $X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow E_g$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . On the other hand, axiom C implies that the composite  $E_g \rightarrow Z \times Y \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration. It is clear that the composite  $Z \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow E_g \rightarrow Z \times Y \rightarrow Y$  is equal to  $q_1 : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow Y$ , so by axiom A, it is a weak equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**4.2.15** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X_0 & \xrightarrow{f_0} & Z_0 & \xleftarrow{g_0} & Y_0 \\
 h_X \downarrow & & \downarrow h_Z & & \downarrow h_Y \\
 X_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Z_1 & \xleftarrow{g_1} & Y_1
 \end{array}$$

Given any path object  $(\text{Path}(Z_1), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Z_1$ :

- (i) *There exist a path object  $(\text{Path}(Z_0), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Z_0$  and a morphism  $h_p : \text{Path}(Z_0) \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z_1)$  making the following diagram commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z_0 & \xrightarrow{h_Z} & Z_1 \\
 i \downarrow & & \downarrow i \\
 \text{Path}(Z_0) & \xrightarrow{h_p} & \text{Path}(Z_1) \\
 \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\
 Z_0 \times Z_0 & \xrightarrow{h_Z \times h_Z} & Z_1 \times Z_1
 \end{array}$$

- (ii) *Let  $X_0 \times_{Z_0}^h Y_0$  and  $X_1 \times_{Z_1}^h Y_1$  be the homotopy pullbacks corresponding to  $(\text{Path}(Z_0), i, p_0, p_1)$  and  $(\text{Path}(Z_1), i, p_0, p_1)$ . There is a unique morphism  $h : X_0 \times_{Z_0}^h Y_0 \rightarrow X_1 \times_{Z_1}^h Y_1$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  making the following diagrams*

commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X_0 \times_{Z_0}^h Y_0 & \longrightarrow & X_0 \times Y_0 \\
 \downarrow h & & \downarrow h_X \times h_Y \\
 X_1 \times_{Z_1}^h Y_1 & \longrightarrow & X_1 \times Y_1
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 X_0 \times_{Z_0}^h Y_0 & \longrightarrow & \text{Path}(Z_0) \\
 \downarrow h & & \downarrow h_P \\
 X_1 \times_{Z_1}^h Y_1 & \longrightarrow & \text{Path}(Z_1)
 \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the various projections.

(iii) Moreover, if  $h_X$ ,  $h_Y$ , and  $h_Z$  are all weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $h$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

*Proof.* (i). First, form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 K & \xrightarrow{h_K} & \text{Path}(Z_1) \\
 q \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\
 Z_0 \times Z_0 & \xrightarrow{h_Z \times h_Z} & Z_1 \times Z_1
 \end{array}$$

Then, there is a unique morphism  $k : Z_0 \rightarrow K$  such that  $q \circ k = \Delta$  and  $h_K \circ k = i \circ h_Z$ , and by the factorisation lemma (4.1.35), there is a weak equivalence  $i : Z_0 \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z_0)$  and a fibration  $\hat{k} : \text{Path}(Z_0) \rightarrow K$  such that  $i \circ \hat{k} = k$ . Taking  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle = q \circ \hat{k}$  and  $h_P = h_K \circ \hat{k}$ , it is straightforward to see that  $(\text{Path}(Z_0), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a path object for  $Z_0$  and  $h_P : \text{Path}(Z_0) \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z_1)$  is a morphism of the required form.

(ii). Immediate, by definition.

(iii). By axiom A,  $h_P : \text{Path}(Z_0) \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z_1)$  is a weak equivalence, and by corollary 4.2.8, both  $h_X \times h_Y : X_0 \times Y_0 \rightarrow X_1 \times Y_1$  and  $h_Z \times h_Z : Z_0 \times Z_0 \rightarrow Z_1 \times Z_1$  are weak equivalences. The claim follows, by lemma 4.2.11. ■

**4.2.16 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. A **homotopy pullback diagram** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 T & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \\
 x \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
 X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z
 \end{array}$$

such that for any commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z & \xleftarrow{g} & Y \\ i_X \downarrow & & \downarrow i_Z & & \downarrow i_Y \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} & \xleftarrow{\hat{g}} & \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

where  $\hat{X}$ ,  $\hat{Y}$ , and  $\hat{Z}$  are fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  and the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T & \xrightarrow{i_Y \circ y} & \hat{Y} \\ i_X \circ x \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

induces a weak equivalence  $T \rightarrow \hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}}^h \hat{Y}$  for every homotopy pullback  $\hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}}^h \hat{Y}$ .

**4.2.17** REMARK. Recalling [remark 4.2.13](#) and [proposition 4.2.15](#), it is equivalent to check the condition for just one choice of  $i_X$ ,  $i_Y$ ,  $i_Z$ , and  $\hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}}^h \hat{Y}$ .

**4.2.18** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \\ x \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

If  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically quadrable morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and the above diagram is a pullback square in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then it is a homotopy pullback diagram.

*Proof.* Let  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  be any path object for  $Z$ . First, form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E_f & \xrightarrow{h} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ \langle v, \hat{f} \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ X \times Z & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

Note that  $v : E_f \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration. Let  $u : X \rightarrow E_f$  be the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $v \circ u = \text{id}_X$ ,  $\hat{f} \circ u = f$ , and  $h \circ u = i \circ f$ . Then  $u$  is a

section of a trivial fibration, hence is a weak equivalence by axiom A. Moreover, we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_Z^h Y & \xrightarrow{k} & E_f & \xrightarrow{h} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ \langle q_0, q_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \langle v, \hat{f} \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ X \times Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_X \times g} & X \times Z & \xrightarrow{f \times \text{id}_Z} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

and since the right square and outer rectangle are pullback diagrams, so is the left square. Note that  $\text{id}_X \times g : X \times Y \rightarrow X \times Z$  and  $k : X \times_Z^h Y \rightarrow E_f$  are homotopically quadrable morphisms. A similar argument shows we have a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T & \xrightarrow{x} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow u \\ X \times_Z^h Y & \xrightarrow{k} & E_f \end{array}$$

so the left vertical arrow is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . But this is precisely the canonical comparison morphism, so the claim follows by [lemma 4.2.11](#). ■

**4.2.19** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. Consider a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*Assuming  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the square is a homotopy pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $q : W \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Using axiom D4, we may choose:

- a weak equivalence  $i_Z : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  where  $\hat{Z}$  is a fibrant object,
- a fibration  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_X : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  such that  $\hat{f} \circ i_X = i_Z \circ f$ , and
- a fibration  $\hat{g} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_Y : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  such that  $\hat{g} \circ i_Y = i_Z \circ g$ .

Observe that axiom D1 implies that  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ . (In fact, we may take  $\hat{X} = \hat{Z}$  and  $\hat{f} = \text{id}_{\hat{Z}}$ .) We then construct the following pullback square in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{W} & \xrightarrow{\hat{q}} & \hat{Y} \\ \hat{p} \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

and we note that (by axiom D3)  $\hat{q} : \hat{W} \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  is also a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus, the canonical comparison morphism  $i_W : W \rightarrow \hat{W}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $q : W \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The claim follows, by (proposition 4.2.7 and) proposition 4.2.18.  $\blacksquare$

**4.2.20** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} W' & \xrightarrow{w} & W & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \\ p' \downarrow & & p \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X' & \xrightarrow{x} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*Assuming the right square is a homotopy pullback diagram, the outer rectangle is a homotopy pullback diagram if and only if the left square is a homotopy pullback diagram.*

*Proof.* Using axiom D4, we may choose:

- a weak equivalence  $i_Z : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  where  $\hat{Z}$  is a fibrant object,
- a fibration  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_X : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  such that  $\hat{f} \circ i_X = i_Z \circ f$ ,
- a fibration  $\hat{g} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_Y : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  such that  $\hat{g} \circ i_Y = i_Z \circ g$ , and
- a fibration  $\hat{x} : \hat{X}' \rightarrow \hat{X}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_{X'} : X' \rightarrow \hat{X}'$  such that  $\hat{x} \circ i_{X'} = i_X \circ x$ .



We then construct the following diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \hat{W}' & \longrightarrow & \hat{W} & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{p} & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ \hat{X}' & \xrightarrow{\hat{x}} & \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

where both squares are pullback diagrams; note that the ordinary pullback pasting lemma says that the outer rectangle is then also a pullback diagram. We thus have canonical comparison morphisms  $i_{W'} : W' \rightarrow \hat{W}'$  and  $i_W : W \rightarrow \hat{W}$ , and recalling (proposition 4.2.7 and) proposition 4.2.18, the hypothesis implies  $i_W : W \rightarrow \hat{W}$  is a weak equivalence. Moreover, by axiom D2,  $\hat{p} : \hat{W} \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is a fibration, and  $\hat{p} \circ i_W = i_X \circ p$ , so the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $i_{W'} : W' \rightarrow \hat{W}'$  is a weak equivalence.
- (ii) The diagram shown below is a homotopy pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W' & \xrightarrow{w} & W \\ p' \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ X' & \xrightarrow{x} & X \end{array}$$

- (iii) The diagram shown below is a homotopy pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W' & \xrightarrow{q \circ w} & Y \\ p' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X' & \xrightarrow{f \circ x} & Z \end{array}$$

This completes the proof. ■

**4.2.2I** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. Consider a commutative cube in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} W' & \longrightarrow & Y' & & \\ \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ & W & \longrightarrow & Y & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X' & \longrightarrow & Z' & & \\ & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\ & X & \longrightarrow & Z & \end{array}$$

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

Assuming the diagonal arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the front face is a homotopy pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if the back face is a homotopy pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* Apply lemmas 4.2.19 and 4.2.20 (twice for each direction). ■

**4.2.22** DEFINITION. A **right proper fibration category** is a relative fibration category in which every fibration is homotopically quadrable.

**4.2.23** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Assuming pullbacks along  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  exist in  $\mathcal{C}$ , if every pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

is also a homotopy pullback diagram, then  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically quadrable morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_Z Y' & \xrightarrow{f^*v} & X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ Y' & \xrightarrow{v} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \end{array}$$

where the right square and outer rectangle are pullback diagrams and  $v : Y' \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence. By hypothesis, the right square and the outer rectangle are homotopy pullback diagrams, so by lemma 4.2.20, the left square is also a homotopy pullback diagram. We can then apply lemma 4.2.19 to deduce that  $f^*v : X \times_Z Y' \rightarrow X \times_Z Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . ■

The following is a slight generalisation of Proposition 2.7 in [Rezk, 1998]:

**4.2.24 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative fibration category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  is right proper, the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is homotopically quadrable in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *Pullbacks along  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  exist in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and every pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*is also a homotopy pullback diagram.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Suppose we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z & \xleftarrow{g} & Y \\ w_X \downarrow & & \downarrow w_Z & & \downarrow w_Y \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} & \xleftarrow{\hat{g}} & \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and  $\hat{g} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  are fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ . We then have a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y} & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y} & \longrightarrow & \hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y} & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ X & \xrightarrow{w_X} & \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

By the pullback pasting lemma, the left square is a pullback; hence by right properness, the canonical comparison morphism  $X \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y} \rightarrow \hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y}$  is a weak equivalence. Applying the pullback pasting lemma again, we find that the squares in

the diagram below are pullbacks:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y & & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & \searrow w_Y & \\
 X \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y} & \longrightarrow & Z \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y} & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\
 X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z & \xrightarrow{w_Z} & \hat{Z}
 \end{array}$$

By right properness (and axiom D1), the morphism  $Y \rightarrow Z \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y}$  is a weak equivalence, so if  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically quadrable morphism, then the canonical comparison morphism  $X \times_Z Y \rightarrow X \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y}$  is a weak equivalence, in which case the canonical comparison morphism  $X \times_Z Y \rightarrow \hat{X} \times_{\hat{Z}} \hat{Y}$  is a weak equivalence (by axiom D1 again). Thus, by [proposition 4.2.18](#), the pullback diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
 X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z
 \end{array}$$

is also a homotopy pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). See [proposition 6.1.22](#). ■

## 4.3 The homotopy category

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 4.1, 4.2.

**4.3.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category, let  $Y$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- Let  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  be a path object for  $Y$ . A **right homotopy** from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a morphism  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  such that  $p_0 \circ H = f_0$  and  $p_1 \circ H = f_1$ .
- We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **right homotopic** if there exists a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to some path object for  $Y$ .

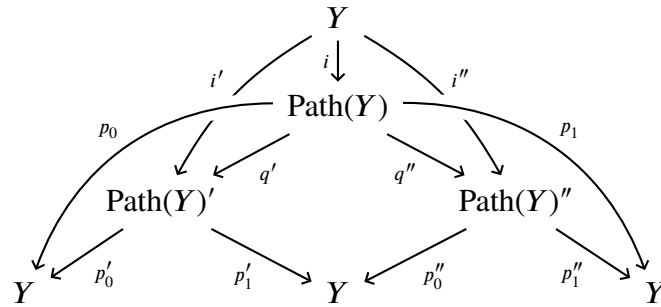
**4.3.2** REMARK. If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic, then  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  (because  $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y$  are isomorphisms in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  with a common section, namely  $i : Y \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$ ). The converse is not true in general; but see also [theorem 4.3.14](#).

**4.3.3** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category, let  $Y$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- Given any path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Y$ ,  $i \circ f_0 : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to itself.
- If  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to a path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Y$ , then the same  $H$  is a right homotopy from  $f_1$  to  $f_0$  for the path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_1, p_0)$ .

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**4.3.4** LEMMA. Let  $Y$  be an fibrant object in a Cisinski fibration category  $\mathcal{C}$ . Given two path objects for  $Y$ , say  $(\text{Path}(Y)', i', p'_0, p'_1)$  and  $(\text{Path}(Y)'', i'', p''_0, p''_1)$ , then there exists a third path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  such that the diagram below commutes,



and the diamond is a pullback diagram.

*Proof.* Axiom D2 ensures that we can construct a diagram of the required form in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Moreover, axiom D1 and D2 imply that  $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y$  are trivial fibrations, so  $i : Y \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a weak equivalence. Finally, we note that  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y \times Y$  can be factorised as follows,

$$\text{Path}(Y) \xrightarrow{\langle q', p_1 \rangle} \text{Path}(Y)' \times Y \xrightarrow{p'_0 \times \text{id}_Y} Y \times Y$$

but  $p'_0 \times \text{id}_Y : \text{Path}(Y)' \times Y \rightarrow Y \times Y$  is a (trivial) fibration, and in the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \text{Path}(Y) & \xrightarrow{\langle q', p_1 \rangle} & \text{Path}(Y)' \times Y & \xrightarrow{\pi_1} & \text{Path}(Y') \\ q'' \downarrow & & \downarrow p'_1 \times \text{id}_Y & & \downarrow p'_1 \\ \text{Path}(Y)'' & \xrightarrow{\langle p''_0, p''_1 \rangle} & Y \times Y & \xrightarrow{\pi_1} & Y \end{array}$$

the outer rectangle and the right square are pullback diagrams, so the left square is also a pullback diagram, and therefore  $\langle q', p_1 \rangle : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow \langle q', p_1 \rangle$  is also a fibration; thus,  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y \times Y$  is indeed a fibration. ■

**4.3.5 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category, let  $Y$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1, f_2 : X \rightarrow Y$  be three parallel morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic, and  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  are right homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_2$  are also right homotopic.* ■

**4.3.6 LEMMA.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category, let  $Y$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) *If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic and  $g : W \rightarrow X$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $f_0 \circ g$  and  $f_1 \circ g$  are also right homotopic.*
- (ii) *Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  is a relative fibration category, if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}^\circ$ , then for any path object  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Z$ , there exist a trivial fibration  $q : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  and a right homotopy from  $g \circ f_0 \circ q$  to  $g \circ f_1 \circ q$  with respect to  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Obvious.

(ii). Let  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  be a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to the path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  and let  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  be any path object

for  $Z$ . Form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{g'} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ p' \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ Y \times Y & \xrightarrow{g \times g} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

Note that there is a unique morphism  $k : Y \rightarrow K$  making the diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  shown below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y \times Y & \xleftarrow{\Delta} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & Z \\ \parallel & & \downarrow k & & \downarrow i \\ Y \times Y & \xleftarrow{p'} & K & \xrightarrow{g'} & \text{Path}(Z) \end{array}$$

so by [corollary 4.1.6](#), there is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{Y} & \xrightarrow{p''} & K \\ v \downarrow & & \downarrow p' \\ \text{Path}(Y) & \xrightarrow{\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle} & Y \times Y \end{array}$$

where  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a trivial fibration. Now, form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{h} & \tilde{Y} \\ q \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{H} & \text{Path}(Y) \end{array}$$

By axiom D3,  $q : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration. Let  $\tilde{H} = g' \circ p'' \circ h$ . Then the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{H}} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ q \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ X & \xrightarrow{\langle g \circ f_0, g \circ f_1 \rangle} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

so  $g \circ f_0 \circ q$  and  $g \circ f_1 \circ q$  are indeed right homotopic.  $\square$

**4.3.7 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ . We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **homotopic** if there is a trivial fibration  $q : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $f_0 \circ q$  and  $f_1 \circ q$  are right homotopic.

**4.3.8** REMARK. Since weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$  become isomorphisms in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{E}$ , [remark 4.3.2](#) implies that homotopic pairs of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  become equal in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{E}$ . Moreover, the converse is true: see [theorem 4.3.14](#).

**4.3.9** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. The relation of homotopy is a congruence on  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* First, let us show that the relation of homotopy is an equivalence relation on  $\text{mor } \mathcal{E}$ . It is reflexive and symmetric because the relation of right homotopy is reflexive and symmetric ([lemma 4.3.3](#)). It is also transitive: indeed, given trivial fibrations  $q_2 : \tilde{X}_2 \rightarrow X$  and  $q_0 : \tilde{X}_0 \rightarrow X$  such that  $f_0 \circ q_2$  and  $f_1 \circ q_2$  are right homotopic and  $f_1 \circ q_0$  and  $f_2 \circ q_0$  are right homotopic, by taking  $\tilde{X}_1 = \tilde{X}_2 \times_X \tilde{X}_0$  and applying axioms A, B, and C, we can find a trivial fibration  $q_1 : \tilde{X}_1 \rightarrow X$  such that  $f_0 \circ q_1$  and  $f_1 \circ q_1$  are right homotopic and  $f_1 \circ q_1$  and  $f_2 \circ q_1$  are right homotopic; thus,  $f_0 \circ q_1$  and  $f_2 \circ q_1$  are right homotopic, by [corollary 4.3.5](#).

It remains to be shown that the relation of homotopy is compatible with composition, but this follows by a straightforward application of axioms A, B, and C to [lemma 4.3.6](#). ■

**4.3.10** DEFINITION. The **primitive homotopy category** of a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$  is the category  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$  obtained by identifying homotopic morphisms.

**4.3.11** REMARK. The name ‘primitive homotopy category’ alludes to two facts: first, that homotopic morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  become identified in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ ; and second, that weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{E}$  do not necessarily become invertible in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .

**4.3.12** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. If  $p : W \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then it is an epimorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Suppose  $f_0 \circ p = f_1 \circ p$  in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ , i.e. there is a trivial fibration  $q : \tilde{W} \rightarrow W$  such that  $f_0 \circ p \circ q$  and  $f_1 \circ p \circ q$  are right homotopic. Then  $p \circ q : \tilde{W} \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration (by axioms A and B) and so we have  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ , as required. ■



**4.3.13** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$ . If  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $g \circ f_0$  and  $g \circ f_1$  are right homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are also right homotopic.

*Proof.* Suppose  $(\text{Path}(Z), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a path object for  $Y$  and  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Z)$  is a right homotopy from  $g \circ f_0$  to  $g \circ f_1$ . Let  $K = Y \times_Z^h Y$  be defined by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{u} & \text{Path}(Z) \\ \langle k_0, k_1 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle p_0, p_1 \rangle \\ Y \times Y & \xrightarrow{g \times g} & Z \times Z \end{array}$$

By construction, there is a unique morphism  $F : X \rightarrow K$  such that  $k_0 \circ F = f_0$ ,  $k_1 \circ F = f_1$ , and  $u \circ F = H$ ; and there is a unique morphism  $r : Y \rightarrow K$  such that  $k_0 \circ r = \text{id}_Y$ ,  $k_1 \circ r = \text{id}_Y$ , and  $u \circ r = i \circ g$ . Moreover, [corollary 4.2.9](#) says that  $(K, r, k_0, k_1)$  is a path object for  $Y$ . Thus,  $F : X \rightarrow K$  is a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

**4.3.14** THEOREM (K. S. Brown). Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects.

- (i) For any weak equivalence  $v : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  and any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , there exists a commutative diagram in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f'} & \tilde{Y} \\ v' \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $v' : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

- (ii) If  $t : Y \rightarrow T$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $t : Y \rightarrow T$  is a monomorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .
- (iii) The localisation functor  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \text{Ho} \mathcal{E}$  is faithful, i.e. for any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , we have  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho} \mathcal{E}$  if and only if there exists a trivial fibration  $q : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  such that  $f_0 \circ q$  and  $f_1 \circ q$  are right homotopic.

*Proof.* (i). See [proposition 4.2.14](#).

(ii). Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  and suppose  $t : Y \rightarrow T$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $t \circ f_0 = t \circ f_1$  in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ , i.e. there is a trivial fibration  $q : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  such that  $t \circ f_0 \circ q$  and  $t \circ f_1 \circ q$  are right homotopic. Then, by [lemma 4.3.13](#),  $f_0 \circ q$  and  $f_1 \circ q$  are right homotopic. Thus,  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ , as required.

(iii). It now follows that  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$  with the class of *trivial fibrations* constitute a relative category that admits a calculus of right fractions. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Suppose  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho} \mathcal{E}$ . By [proposition 3.5.20](#), there must be a commutative diagram in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \xrightarrow{f_0} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{q'} & \tilde{X}' & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\
 X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $q' : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ . In other words, there is a trivial fibration  $q' : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $f_0 \circ q' = f_1 \circ q'$  in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ . But [lemma 4.3.12](#) says  $q' : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow X$  is an epimorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ , so we may deduce that  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ , as required. ■

**4.3.15** LEMMA. *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a weak equivalence in a category of fibrant objects  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

- (i) *The morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is both a monomorphism and an epimorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has a retraction in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .*
- (iii) *If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has a section in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Since  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  becomes invertible in  $\text{Ho} \mathcal{E}$ , it must be both a monomorphism and an epimorphism in  $\text{Ho} \mathcal{E}$ ; but faithful functors reflect monomorphisms and epimorphisms, so [theorem 4.3.14](#) implies that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is also both a monomorphism and an epimorphism in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ .

(ii). If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a split monomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then the same is true in  $\text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$ ; but in any category, a split monomorphism that is also an epimorphism must be an isomorphism.

(iii). Similarly, this follows from the dual fact: in any category, a split epimorphism that is also a monomorphism must be an isomorphism. ■

**4.3.16 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. For any functor  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  factors through the functor  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$  be the functor that sends morphisms to their homotopy classes.
- (ii) For any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , if there is a weak equivalence  $g : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Ff_0 \circ Fg = Ff_1 \circ Fg$ , then  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ .
- (iii) For any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , if there is a trivial fibration  $p : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Fp \circ Ff_0 = Fp \circ Ff_1$ , then  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ ; and if there is a trivial fibration  $g : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Ff_0 \circ Fg = Ff_1 \circ Fg$ , then  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii), (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). These are consequences of lemma 4.3.15.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). First, let us show that  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  identifies right homotopic morphisms. Let  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  be any path object for  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ . By definition,  $i : Y \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a weak equivalence and a common section for  $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y$ . In particular,  $Fp_0 \circ Fi = Fp_1 \circ Fi$ , so the hypothesis implies  $Fp_0 = Fp_1$ . Thus, if  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  are right homotopic in  $\mathcal{E}$ , then  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ .

It remains to be shown that  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  identifies homotopic morphisms. Suppose  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  is a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $q : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration such that  $f_0 \circ q$  and  $f_1 \circ q$  are right homotopic. Then  $Ff_0 \circ Fq = Ff_1 \circ Fq$ , by the above paragraph. But trivial fibrations are weak equivalences, so the hypothesis implies  $Ff_0 = Ff_1$ , as required.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). As above, we first show that  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  identifies right homotopic morphisms. Let  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  be any path object for  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Axiom A implies that  $p_0, p_1 : \text{Path}(Y) \rightarrow Y$  are trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{E}$ , and since  $p_0 \circ i = p_1 \circ i = \text{id}_Y$ , we have  $Fp_0 \circ F(i \circ p_0) = Fp_0$  and  $Fp_1 \circ F(i \circ p_1) = Fp_1$ ; thus, the hypothesis implies  $F(i \circ p_0) = F(i \circ p_1) = \text{id}_{F\text{Path}(Y)}$ . We may then deduce that

$Fp_0 = Fp_1$ , and it follows that right homotopic morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  become equal in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

It remains to be shown that  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  identifies homotopic morphisms; but the argument used above works under these hypotheses. ■

**4.3.17** REMARK. The above proposition implies that the primitive homotopy category  $\mathrm{Ho}_\pi \mathcal{E}$  we defined is *isomorphic* to the category  $\pi \mathcal{E}$  defined in [Brown, 1973, §2].

## 4.4 Inverse diagrams

**Prerequisites.** §§4.1, A.5, A.6.

### 4.4.1 DEFINITION.

- A **direct category** is a category  $\mathcal{J}$  for which there exists a function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that, if  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then  $\deg A \leq \deg B$  with equality if and only if  $f = \text{id}_A = \text{id}_B$ .
- An **inverse category** is a category  $\mathcal{J}$  for which there exists a function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  such that, if  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then  $\deg A \geq \deg B$  with equality if and only if  $f = \text{id}_A = \text{id}_B$ .

**4.4.2 REMARK.** Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a category and let  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a function. Then  $\deg$  makes  $\mathcal{J}$  a direct category if and only if  $\deg$  makes  $\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}$  an inverse category.

**4.4.3 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a category. The **height** of  $\mathcal{J}$  is the least element  $\text{ht } \mathcal{J}$  of  $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, \infty\}$  with the following property:

- Given any composable sequence of morphisms of length  $n$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , say

$$A_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} A_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow A_{n-1} \xrightarrow{f_n} A_n$$

if  $n \geq \text{ht } \mathcal{J}$ , then for some  $0 \leq i < j \leq n$ , we have  $A_i = \cdots = A_j$  and  $f_{i+1} = \cdots = f_j = \text{id}$ .

A **category of finite height** is a category  $\mathcal{J}$  such that  $\text{ht } \mathcal{J} < \infty$ .

**4.4.4 REMARK.** In particular,  $\text{ht } \mathcal{J} = 1$  if and only if  $\mathcal{J}$  is discrete.

**4.4.5 REMARK.** Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a direct (resp. inverse) category. For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the slice category  $\mathcal{J}_{/A}$  (resp.  ${}^A/\mathcal{J}$ ) is a category of finite height. Indeed, for any degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ ,  $\text{ht } \mathcal{J}_{/A}$  (resp.  $\text{ht } {}^A/\mathcal{J}$ ) is at most  $1 + \deg A$ .

**4.4.6 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a category and let  $\preceq$  be the binary relation on  $\text{ob } \mathcal{J}$  defined below:

$$A \preceq B \text{ if and only if there is a morphism } A \rightarrow B$$

Then the following are equivalent:

- (i) There exists a function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  making  $\mathcal{J}$  a direct category.

- (ii) If  $f : A \rightarrow A$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then  $f = \text{id}_A$ ;  $\leq$  is an anti-symmetric relation on  $\text{ob } \mathcal{J}$ ; and for any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there is a natural number  $\deg A$  such that, for any chain in  $\text{ob } \mathcal{J}$  of the form below,

$$A_0 \leq \cdots \leq A_n = A$$

if  $A_0, \dots, A_n$  are distinct, then  $n \leq \deg A$ . (In particular,  $\leq$  is a well-founded partial order.)

Dually, let  $\leq$  be the binary relation on  $\text{ob } \mathcal{J}$  defined below:

$$A \leq B \text{ if and only if there is a morphism } B \rightarrow A$$

Then the following are equivalent:

- (i') There exists a function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  making  $\mathcal{J}$  an inverse category.  
(ii') If  $f : A \rightarrow A$  is an endomorphism in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then  $f = \text{id}_A$ ;  $\leq$  is an anti-symmetric relation on  $\text{ob } \mathcal{J}$ ; and for any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there is a natural number  $\deg A$  such that, for any chain in  $\text{ob } \mathcal{J}$  of the form below,

$$A_0 \leq \cdots \leq A_n = A$$

if  $A_0, \dots, A_n$  are distinct, then  $n \leq \deg A$ . (In particular,  $\leq$  is a well-founded partial order.)

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**4.4.7** REMARK. The degree function for a direct or inverse category is not determined by the underlying category: for example, if  $\deg$  is a degree function for  $\mathcal{J}$ , then so is  $A \mapsto 1 + \deg A$ . Nonetheless, the above proposition shows that any direct or inverse category has a canonical degree function.

**4.4.8** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a finite category. The following are equivalent:

- (i) The only endomorphisms and isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{J}$  are the identities.  
(ii)  $\mathcal{J}$  is a direct category.  
(iii)  $\mathcal{J}$  is an inverse category.

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 4.4.6](#). ■

**4.4.9** LEMMA. Let  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor that is conservative and amnestic.<sup>[1]</sup>

- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a direct category, then so is  $\mathcal{J}$ .
- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is an inverse category, then so is  $\mathcal{J}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  be a degree function for  $\mathcal{D}$ . By taking  $\deg C = \deg FC$  for every object in  $\mathcal{J}$ , we see that for any morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , we have  $\deg A \leq \deg B$ ; and since  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is conservative and amnestic, we have  $\deg A = \deg B$  if and only if  $f = \text{id}_A = \text{id}_B$ . Thus,  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  is a degree function making  $\mathcal{J}$  a direct category. ■

**4.4.10** COROLLARY.

- Any subcategory of a direct category is a direct category.
- Any subcategory of an inverse category is an inverse category. ■

**4.4.11** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a category and let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{J}$ .

- If  $\mathcal{J}$  is a direct category, then the slice categories  $^A\mathcal{J}$  and  $\mathcal{J}_{/A}$  are also direct categories.
- If  $\mathcal{J}$  is an inverse category, then the slice categories  $^A\mathcal{J}$  and  $\mathcal{J}_{/A}$  are also inverse categories.

*Proof.* Apply lemma 4.4.9. ■

**4.4.12** DEFINITION.

- A **minimal object** in a direct category  $\mathcal{J}$  is an object  $A$  such that the only morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$  with codomain  $A$  is  $\text{id}_A$ .
- A **minimal object** in an inverse category  $\mathcal{J}$  is an object  $A$  such that the only morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$  with domain  $A$  is  $\text{id}_A$ .
- A **maximal object** in a direct category  $\mathcal{J}$  is an object  $A$  such that the only morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$  with domain  $A$  is  $\text{id}_A$ .
- A **maximal object** in an inverse category  $\mathcal{J}$  is an object  $A$  such that the only morphism in  $\mathcal{J}$  with codomain  $A$  is  $\text{id}_A$ .

[1] An **amnestic functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  with the following property: if  $f$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $Ff = \text{id}$ , then  $(\text{dom } f = \text{codom } f \text{ and}) f = \text{id}$ .

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

---

- The **boundary** of a direct category  $\mathcal{J}$  is the full subcategory  $\partial\mathcal{J}_\rightarrow$  of *non-maximal* objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ .
- The **boundary** of an inverse category  $\mathcal{J}$  is the full subcategory  $\partial\mathcal{J}^\leftarrow$  of *non-maximal* objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ .

**4.4.I3** REMARK. If a direct (resp. inverse) category  $\mathcal{J}$  has a terminal (resp. initial) object, then it is the *unique* maximal object in  $\mathcal{J}$ .

**4.4.I4** REMARK. By [corollary 4.4.I0](#), the boundary of a direct (resp. inverse) category is also a direct (resp. inverse) category.

**4.4.I5** DEFINITION.

- The **latching category** of a direct category  $\mathcal{J}$  at an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  is the boundary  $\partial\mathcal{J}_{\rightarrow A}$  of the slice category  $\mathcal{J}_{/A}$ .
- The **matching category** of an inverse category  $\mathcal{J}$  at an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  is the boundary  $\partial\mathcal{J}^\leftarrow A$  of the slice category  ${}^A\mathcal{J}$ .

**4.4.I6** DEFINITION.

- A **locally finite direct category** is a direct category such that every latching category is finite.
- A **locally finite inverse category** is an inverse category such that every latching category is finite.

**4.4.I7** REMARK. A locally finite direct (resp. inverse) category has finite hom-sets, but not every direct (resp. inverse) category with that property is finite.

**4.4.I8** LEMMA.

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small direct category and let  $P : \partial\mathcal{J}_\rightarrow \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the functor sending objects  $A$  in  $\partial\mathcal{J}_\rightarrow$  to  $\mathcal{h}_A$ . Then the unique morphism  $\lim_{\rightarrow \partial\mathcal{J}_\rightarrow} P \rightarrow 1$  is a monomorphism.
- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category and let  $P : (\partial\mathcal{J}^\leftarrow)^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the functor sending objects  $A$  in  $\partial\mathcal{J}^\leftarrow$  to  $\mathcal{h}^A$ . Then the unique morphism  $\lim_{\rightarrow (\partial\mathcal{J}^\leftarrow)^{\text{op}}} P \rightarrow 1$  is a monomorphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $W = \lim_{\rightarrow \partial\mathcal{J}_\rightarrow} P$  and let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{J}$ . If  $A$  is a maximal object in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then by construction,  $W(A) = \emptyset$ ; and if  $A$  is a non-maximal object in  $\mathcal{J}$ ,



then it is not hard to see that  $W(A)$  is a singleton. Thus, the unique morphism  $W \rightarrow 1$  is a monomorphism, as required. ■

**4.4.19** DEFINITION.

- Let  $A$  be an object in a small direct category  $\mathcal{J}$ . The **boundary** of the representable functor  $\hat{h}_A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the maximal subfunctor  $\partial \hat{h}_A \subseteq \hat{h}_A$  not containing  $\text{id} : A \rightarrow A$ .
- Let  $A$  be an object in a small inverse category  $\mathcal{J}$ . The **boundary** of the representable functor  $\hat{h}^A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the maximal subfunctor  $\partial \hat{h}^A \subseteq \hat{h}^A$  not containing  $\text{id} : A \rightarrow A$ .

**4.4.20** LEMMA.

- Let  $A$  be an object in a small direct category  $\mathcal{J}$  and let  $P : \partial \mathcal{J}_{\rightarrow A} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the functor sending objects  $A' \rightarrow A$  in  $\partial \mathcal{J}_{\rightarrow A}$  to  $\hat{h}_{A'}$ . Then the canonical morphism  $\lim_{\rightarrow \partial \mathcal{J}_{\rightarrow A}} P \rightarrow \hat{h}_A$  is a monomorphism and has  $\partial \hat{h}_A$  as its image.
- Let  $A$  be an object in a small inverse category  $\mathcal{J}$  and let  $P : (\partial \mathcal{J}^{\leftarrow A})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the functor sending objects  $A \rightarrow A'$  in  $\partial \mathcal{J}^{\leftarrow A}$  to  $\hat{h}^{A'}$ . Then the canonical morphism  $\lim_{\rightarrow (\partial \mathcal{J}^{\leftarrow A})^{\text{op}}} P \rightarrow \hat{h}^A$  is a monomorphism and has  $\partial \hat{h}^A$  as its image.

*Proof.* Straightforward. ♦

**4.4.21** DEFINITION.

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small direct category. A **finite relative Reedy cell complex** in  $[\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a monomorphism  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $[\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  such that the set

$$\coprod_{A \in \text{ob } \mathcal{J}} \{w \in W(A) \mid w \notin \text{im } i_A\}$$

is finite. A **finite Reedy cell complex** is a functor  $W : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  such that the unique morphism  $\emptyset \rightarrow W$  is a finite relative Reedy cell complex.

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category. A **finite relative Reedy cell complex** in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a monomorphism  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$  such that the set

$$\coprod_{A \in \text{ob } \mathcal{J}} \{w \in W(A) \mid w \notin \text{im } i_A\}$$

is finite. A **finite Reedy cell complex** is a functor  $W : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  such that the unique morphism  $\emptyset \rightarrow W$  is a finite relative Reedy cell complex.

**4.4.22** PROPOSITION.

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small direct category. If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a finite relative Reedy cell complex in  $[\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , then there exist a finite sequence

$$((A_1, w_1), \dots, (A_N, w_N))$$

of pairs  $(A_n, w_n)$ , where  $A_n$  is an object in  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $w_n$  is an element of  $W(A_n)$ , and a sequence of subfunctors

$$\text{im } i = W^{(0)} \subseteq \dots \subseteq W^{(N)} = W$$

such that, for  $1 \leq n \leq N$ , we have a pushout diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial h_{A_n} & \hookrightarrow & h_{A_n} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ W^{(n-1)} & \hookrightarrow & W^{(n)} \end{array}$$

where  $h_{A_n} \rightarrow W^{(n)}$  is the unique morphism sending  $\text{id} : A_n \rightarrow A_n$  to  $w_n$ .

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category. If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a finite relative Reedy cell complex in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , then there exist a finite sequence

$$((A_1, w_1), \dots, (A_N, w_N))$$

of pairs  $(A_n, w_n)$ , where  $A_n$  is an object in  $\mathcal{J}$  and  $w_n$  is an element of  $W(A_n)$ , and a sequence of subfunctors

$$\text{im } i = W^{(0)} \subseteq \dots \subseteq W^{(N)} = W$$

such that, for  $1 \leq n \leq N$ , we have a pushout diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial h^{A_n} & \hookrightarrow & h^{A_n} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ W^{(n-1)} & \hookrightarrow & W^{(n)} \end{array}$$

where  $h^{A_n} \rightarrow W^{(n)}$  is the unique morphism sending  $\text{id} : A_n \rightarrow A_n$  to  $w_n$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a finite relative Reedy cell complex. Clearly, we may assume  $Z$  is a subfunctor of  $W$  and  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is the inclusion. Choose a degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ . By hypothesis, the set

$$\{(A, w) \mid A \in \text{ob } \mathcal{J}, w \in W(A) \setminus Z(A)\}$$

is finite, so we may enumerate it: say  $((A_1, w_1), \dots, (A_N, w_N))$ . By reordering if necessary, we may assume that  $\deg A_i \leq \deg A_j$  when  $i \leq j$ . Let  $W^{(0)} = Z$ , and for  $0 \leq n < N$ , let  $W^{(n+1)} \subseteq W$  be the subfunctor defined as follows:

$$W^{(n+1)}(A) = \begin{cases} W^{(n)}(A) & \text{if } A \neq A_{n+1} \\ W^{(n)}(A) \cup \{w_{n+1}\} & \text{if } A = A_{n+1} \end{cases}$$

By construction,  $W^{(N)} = W$ , and it is straightforward to verify that we have pushout squares of the required form. ■

**4.4.23** LEMMA.

- *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite direct category. For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , both  $h_A$  and its boundary  $\partial h_A$  are finite Reedy cell complexes.*
- *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category. For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , both  $h^A$  and its boundary  $\partial h^A$  are finite Reedy cell complexes.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since the inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$  is a finite relative Reedy cell complex by definition, it suffices to verify that  $\partial h_A$  is a finite Reedy cell complex. But this is an immediate consequence of the hypothesis that  $\mathcal{J}$  is locally finite. ■

**4.4.24** LEMMA.

- *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a finite direct category. Then the terminal object in  $[\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a finite Reedy cell complex.*
- *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a finite inverse category. Then the terminal object in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a finite Reedy cell complex.*

*Proof.* This follows from the fact that  $\mathcal{J}$  has only finitely many objects. ■

**4.4.25** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small category.

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small direct category and let  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a diagram. A **latching object**  $L_A(X)$  is a weighted colimit  $\partial h_A \star_{\mathcal{J}} X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The **matching morphism**  $L_A(X) \rightarrow XA$  is the morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ .
- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category and let  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a diagram. A **matching object**  $M_A(X)$  is a weighted limit  $\{\partial h^A, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . The **matching morphism**  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X)$  is the morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ .

**4.4.26** REMARK. Assuming existence, the latching object  $L_A(X)$  and the matching object  $M_A(X)$  are functorial in both  $A$  and  $X$ . Moreover, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}(L_A(X), -) &\cong M_A(\mathcal{C}(X, -)) \\ \mathcal{C}(-, M_A(X)) &\cong M_A(\mathcal{C}(-, X)) \end{aligned}$$

**4.4.27** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small category.

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small direct category and let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . A **relative latching object**  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a pullback diagram in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{Set}]$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}(L_A(X, Y, \varphi), -) & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h_A, \mathcal{C}(Y, -)\}^{\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \{\partial h_A, \mathcal{C}(\varphi, -)\}^{\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}} \\ \{h_A, \mathcal{C}(X, -)\}^{\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}} & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h_A, \mathcal{C}(X, -)\}^{\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}} \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ , the **relative latching morphism**  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  corresponds to  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$ , and the **insertion**  $XA \rightarrow L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  corresponds to  $\text{id} : L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$ .

- Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category and let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . A **relative matching object**  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$

is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a pullback diagram in  $[\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}(-, M_A(X, Y, \varphi)) & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h^A, \mathcal{C}(-, X)\}^{\mathcal{J}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \{\partial h^A, \mathcal{C}(-, \varphi)\}^{\mathcal{J}} \\ \{h^A, \mathcal{C}(-, Y)\}^{\mathcal{J}} & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h^A, \mathcal{C}(-, Y)\}^{\mathcal{J}} \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ , the **relative matching morphism**  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  corresponds to  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$ , and the **projection**  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  corresponds to  $\text{id} : M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$ .

**4.4.28** REMARK.

- If  $\mathcal{C}$  has enough colimits, then we have a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_A(X) & \longrightarrow & XA \\ L_A(\varphi) \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_A(Y) & \longrightarrow & L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \end{array}$$

where the right vertical arrow is the insertion.

- If  $\mathcal{C}$  has enough limits, then we have a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M_A(X, Y, \varphi) & \longrightarrow & M_A(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow M_A(\varphi) \\ YA & \longrightarrow & M_A(Y) \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is the projection.

For the remainder of this section, we focus on inverse diagrams in Cisinski fibration categories. We follow [Cisinski, 2010, §1].

**4.4.29** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category. A **Reedy-fibrant diagram**  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a diagram with the following property:

- For all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the matching object  $M_A(X)$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and the matching morphism  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X)$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**4.4.30** REMARK. Let 1 be a terminal object in a Cisinski fibration category. For any small inverse diagram  $\mathcal{J}$  and any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the matching object  $M_A(\Delta 1)$  exists and is isomorphic to 1. In particular,  $\Delta 1$  is always Reedy-fibrant.

**4.4.31** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category, and let  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a Reedy-fibrant diagram.*

- (i) *For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the matching object  $M_A(X)$  is fibrant.*
- (ii) *For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the object  $XA$  is fibrant.*
- (iii) *For any finite Reedy cell complex  $W : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the weighted limit  $\{W, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is a fibrant object.*
- (iv) *For any finite Reedy relative cell complex  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , if  $Z$  is a finite Reedy cell complex, then the induced morphism  $\{i, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} : \{W, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (v) *If  $\mathcal{J}$  is finite, then the limit  $\varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} X$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is a fibrant object.*
- (vi) *If  $f : A \rightarrow A'$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then the morphism  $Xf : XA \rightarrow XA'$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* (i) – (iv). To begin, observe that the weighted limit  $\{\emptyset, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is fibrant, by axiom D0. Then, assuming we have the following pushout diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial h_A & \xrightarrow{z} & Z \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow i \\ h_A & \xrightarrow{w} & W \end{array}$$

if  $\{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is fibrant, then  $\{W, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  and  $\{i, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} : \{W, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  be defined (using axiom D2) by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{W, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} & \longrightarrow & XA \\ \{i, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} & \longrightarrow & M_A(X) \end{array}$$

where  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X)$  is the matching morphism and  $\{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow M_A(X)$  is induced by  $z : \partial h_A \rightarrow Z$ .

In general, we use induction (on the maximum degree of objects  $A$  such that  $Z(A)$  is non-empty) and apply [proposition 4.4.22](#) and [lemma 4.4.23](#).

(v). Apply [lemma 4.4.24](#).

(vi). It suffices to show that  $h^f : h^{A'} \rightarrow h^A$  is a finite relative Reedy cell complex (between finite Reedy cell complexes). Since  $f : A \rightarrow A'$  is an epimorphism,  $h^f : h^{A'} \rightarrow h^A$  is a monomorphism. The claim then follows from the hypothesis that  $\mathcal{J}$  is locally finite. ■

**4.4.32** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small inverse category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category. A **Reedy fibration** (resp. **Reedy trivial fibration**) in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  is a natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  of diagrams  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with the following property:

- For all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the relative matching object  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exists and the relative matching morphism  $X A \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**4.4.33** REMARK. Recalling [remark 4.4.30](#), it is not hard to see that a diagram  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is Reedy-fibrant if and only if the unique natural transformation  $X \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  is a Reedy fibration.

**4.4.34** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category. Regarding  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  as a Cisinski fibration category via [proposition 4.1.25](#):

- (i) Assuming  $X, Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  are Reedy-fibrant diagrams, a natural transformation of diagrams  $X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy fibration if and only if the corresponding diagram  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  is Reedy-fibrant.

Furthermore, given a Reedy fibration (resp. Reedy trivial fibration)  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  between Reedy-fibrant diagrams:

- (ii) If  $Z$  is a finite Reedy cell complex in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , then the induced morphism  $\{Z, \varphi\}^{\mathcal{J}} : \{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \{Z, Y\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a relative finite Reedy cell complex in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , then the induced morphism

$$\{W, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \{Z, X\}^{\mathcal{J}} \times_{\{Z, Y\}^{\mathcal{J}}} \{W, Y\}^{\mathcal{J}}$$

is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- (iv) For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the component  $\varphi_A : X A \rightarrow Y A$  is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (v) If  $\mathcal{J}$  is finite, then the induced morphism  $\lim_{\leftarrow \mathcal{J}} \varphi : \lim_{\leftarrow \mathcal{J}} X \Rightarrow \lim_{\leftarrow \mathcal{J}} Y$  is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i). Straightforward.

(ii) – (v). For the case where  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy fibration, apply [theorem 4.4.31](#). For the case where  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy trivial fibration, a similar argument works. ■

**4.4.35** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category, and let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation between Reedy-fibrant diagrams  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy trivial fibration.
- (ii)  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy fibration such that, for every object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , the morphisms  $\varphi_A : X A \rightarrow Y A$  and  $M_A(\varphi) : M_A(X) \rightarrow M_A(Y)$  are trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii)  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is both a Reedy fibration and a natural weak equivalence.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Clearly, every Reedy trivial fibration is a Reedy fibration, and by [theorem 4.4.34](#), the morphisms  $\varphi_A : X A \rightarrow Y A$  and  $M_A(\varphi) : M_A(X) \rightarrow M_A(Y)$  are indeed trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). By [remark 4.4.28](#), we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X A & & & & \\
 & \searrow & & \searrow & \\
 & & M_A(X, Y, \varphi) & \longrightarrow & M_A(X) \\
 & \searrow \varphi_A & \downarrow & & \downarrow M_A(\varphi) \\
 & & Y A & \longrightarrow & M_A(Y)
 \end{array}$$



and by hypothesis,  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is a fibration. Choose a degree function  $\deg : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ . If  $\deg A = 0$ , then  $M_A(X)$  and  $M_A(Y)$  are terminal objects, so  $M_A(\varphi) : M_A(X) \rightarrow M_A(Y)$  is an isomorphism; and if  $\deg A > 0$ , by induction on  $\deg A$ , we may assume  $M_A(\varphi) : M_A(X) \rightarrow M_A(Y)$  is a trivial fibration. Then, by axiom D3, the projection  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  is also a trivial fibration. Thus, by axiom D1, the relative matching morphism  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is a trivial fibration if (and only if)  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$  is a weak equivalence. ■

**4.4.36 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category. For any natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  of diagrams  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if  $Y$  is Reedy-fibrant, then there exist a natural weak equivalence  $\iota : X \Rightarrow \hat{X}$  and a Reedy fibration  $\pi : \hat{Y} \Rightarrow Y$  such that  $\varphi = \pi \bullet \iota$ .*

*Proof.* Choose a degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  and, for each natural number  $n$ , let  $\mathcal{J}^{(n)}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{J}$  spanned by the objects of degree  $\leq n$ . We will construct objects  $\hat{X}A$ , weak equivalences  $\iota_A : XA \rightarrow \hat{X}A$ , and fibrations  $\pi_A : \hat{X}A \rightarrow YA$  by induction on  $\deg A$ .

If  $\deg A = 0$ , then define  $\iota_A : XA \rightarrow \hat{X}A$  and  $\pi_A : \hat{X}A \rightarrow YA$  by factoring  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$  using axiom D4; note that  $YA$  is fibrant, by [theorem 4.4.31](#). Given  $\hat{X}$  defined on  $\mathcal{J}^{(n)}$  and Reedy-fibrant as a diagram  $\mathcal{J}^{(n)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  as well as  $\iota$  and  $\pi$  defined as natural transformations of functors  $\mathcal{J}^{(n)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if  $\deg A = n + 1$ , then we can construct the matching object  $M_A(\hat{X})$ , and there is an induced morphism  $M_A(\hat{X}) \rightarrow M_A(Y)$ , so we can construct the relative matching object  $M_A(\hat{X}, Y, \pi)$  by using [remark 4.4.28](#). (Note that  $M_A(\hat{X})$  is fibrant, so we can indeed use axiom D2.) Hence, we obtain an induced morphism  $XA \rightarrow M_A(\hat{X}, Y, \pi)$ , and we may factor it as a weak equivalence  $\iota_A : XA \rightarrow \hat{X}A$  followed by a fibration  $\hat{X}A \rightarrow M_A(\hat{X}, Y, \pi)$ , and we take  $\pi_A : \hat{X}A \rightarrow YA$  to be the composite of  $\hat{X}A \rightarrow M_A(\hat{X}, Y, \pi)$  followed the projection  $M_A(\hat{X}, Y, \pi) \rightarrow YA$ . We then define the morphisms  $\hat{X}A \rightarrow \hat{X}A'$  for  $\deg A' \leq n$  by composing with the projection  $M_A(\hat{X}) \rightarrow \hat{X}A'$  induced by the corresponding morphism  $h^{A'} \rightarrow \partial h^A$ .

In this way, we may extend  $\hat{X}$  to a Reedy-fibrant diagram  $\mathcal{J}^{(n+1)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\iota$  to a natural weak equivalence of diagrams  $\mathcal{J}^{(n+1)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and  $\pi$  a Reedy fibration of diagrams  $\mathcal{J}^{(n+1)} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . Since the Reedy conditions are local, it follows that the resulting  $\hat{X}$ ,  $\iota$ , and  $\pi$  are of the required form. ■

**4.4.37** THEOREM (Cisinski). *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category. Then  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  is locally small and admits the structure of a Cisinski fibration category where:*

- *the weak equivalences are the natural weak equivalences, and*
- *the fibrations are the Reedy fibrations.*

*Proof.* It is straightforward to verify axiom D0 and D1, and for axioms D2 and D3, we can use the methods of the proof of [proposition 4.1.25](#). Finally, axiom D4 is [proposition 4.4.36](#). ■

**4.4.38** THEOREM (Cisinski). *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small locally finite inverse category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small Cisinski fibration category. Then  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  is locally small and admits the structure of a Cisinski fibration category where:*

- *the weak equivalences are the natural weak equivalences, and*
- *the fibrations are the componentwise fibrations.*

*Proof.* It is straightforward to verify axioms D0–D3; axiom D4 remains to be verified.

Let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and suppose  $Y$  is componentwise fibrant. By [remark 4.4.30](#) and [proposition 4.4.36](#), there is a natural weak equivalence  $Y \Rightarrow \hat{Y}$  where  $\hat{Y}$  is Reedy-fibrant, and we may factor the composite  $X \Rightarrow Y \Rightarrow \hat{Y}$  as a weak equivalence  $X \Rightarrow \hat{X}$  followed by a Reedy fibration  $\hat{X} \Rightarrow \hat{Y}$ . [Theorem 4.4.34](#) says that Reedy fibrations are componentwise fibrations, so we may form a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X & & \xrightarrow{\quad \varphi \quad} & & Y \\
 & \searrow & & \searrow & \\
 & & \hat{X}' & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & \hat{X} & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y}
 \end{array}$$

where the square is a pullback diagram. By axiom D2 in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\hat{X}' \Rightarrow Y$  is a componentwise fibration, and by [proposition 4.2.7](#),  $\hat{X}' \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is a natural weak equivalence. Hence, by axiom D1,  $X \Rightarrow \hat{X}'$  is a natural weak equivalence, and we have the desired factorisation of  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$ . ■

## 4.5 Calculus of correspondences

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1.1, 3.1, 3.5, 4.1, 4.4, B.5.

**4.5.1 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category with an initial object  $0$  and let  $\mathcal{C}_w^\circ$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  spanned by the fibrant objects  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence. Then  $\mathcal{C}_w^\circ$  is an aspherical category.*

*Proof.* We will apply Cisinski's asphericity criterion (lemma 1.11.11) to deduce that  $\mathcal{C}_w^\circ$  is aspherical.

Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a finite poset and consider a diagram  $X : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_w^\circ$ . By proposition 4.4.8,  $\mathcal{J}$  is a finite direct category, so by proposition 4.4.36, there exist a Reedy-fibrant diagram  $\hat{X} : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and a natural weak equivalence  $\iota : X \Rightarrow \hat{X}$ . Then, by theorem 4.4.31,  $\varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} \hat{X}$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and is fibrant, so (using axiom D4) we may factor the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} \hat{X}$  as a weak equivalence  $0 \rightarrow Y$  followed by a fibration  $Y \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\mathcal{J}} \hat{X}$ . Let  $\pi : \Delta Y \Rightarrow \hat{X}$  be the corresponding cone. Thus, we have a zigzag

$$\Delta Y \xrightarrow{\pi} \hat{X} \xleftarrow{\iota} X$$

in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$ , as required. ■

**4.5.2 THEOREM (Cisinski).** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category.*

(i) *Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $(^A/C)_w^\circ$  be the full subcategory of the slice category  $^A/C$  spanned by the objects  $i : A \rightarrow X$  in  $^A/C$  such that  $i : A \rightarrow X$  is weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $X$  is fibrant in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $(^A/C)_w^\circ$  is an aspherical category.*

(ii) *The inclusion  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}^\circ \hookrightarrow \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  is a left aspherical functor.*

*Proof.* (i). By propositions 4.1.23 and 4.5.1,  $(^A/C)_w^\circ$  is an aspherical category.

(ii). We must show that the comma category  $(A \downarrow \text{weq } \mathcal{C}^\circ)$  is aspherical for every object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , but  $(^A/C)_w^\circ$  is canonically isomorphic to  $(A \downarrow \text{weq } \mathcal{C}^\circ)$ , so we are done. ■

**4.5.3 REMARK.** We may obtain lemma 4.1.18 as a formal consequence of the above theorem.

**4.5.4** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $(X, Y)$  be a pair of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- A **correspondence**  $(t, s) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a span in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$X \xleftarrow{s} R \xrightarrow{t} Y$$

such that  $\langle t, s \rangle : R \rightarrow Y \times X$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- The **category of correspondences**  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{cor}}(X, Y)$  is the full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y \times X}$  spanned by the correspondences.

**4.5.5** REMARK. By propositions 4.1.24 and 4.1.33,  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{cor}}(X, Y)$  is a category of fibrant objects in the obvious way.

**4.5.6** REMARK. By lemma 4.1.21, if  $(t, s) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  is a correspondence, then  $s$  and  $t$  are fibrations in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**4.5.7** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category. Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & R & & \\
 & \swarrow s & & \searrow t & \\
 & R_1 & & R_2 & \\
 \swarrow s_1 & & \searrow t_1 & & \swarrow s_2 \\
 X_0 & & X_1 & & X_2
 \end{array}$$

where  $(t_1, s_1) : X_0 \rightrightarrows X_1$  and  $(t_2, s_2) : X_1 \rightrightarrows X_2$  are correspondences in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If the diamond is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $(t, s) : X_0 \rightrightarrows X_2$  is also a correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* If the diamond is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the following diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  is also a pullback diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 R & \xrightarrow{\langle t, p, s \rangle} & X_2 \times X_1 \times X_0 \\
 \langle t', s' \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{X_2} \times \Delta \times \text{id}_{X_0} \\
 R_2 \times R_0 & \xrightarrow{\langle t_1, s_1 \rangle \times \langle t_2, s_2 \rangle} & X_2 \times X_1 \times X_1 \times X_0
 \end{array}$$

where  $p = t_1 \circ s' = s_2 \circ t'$ . Using axiom D2, it is not hard to see that  $\langle t, p, s \rangle : R \rightarrow X_2 \times X_1 \times X_0$  is a fibration; but the projection  $X_2 \times X_1 \times X_0 \rightarrow X_2 \times X_0$  is also a fibration, so it follows that  $\langle t, s \rangle : R \rightarrow X_0 \times X_2$  is a fibration. Thus,  $(t, s) : X_0 \rightrightarrows X_2$  is indeed a correspondence.  $\blacksquare$

**4.5.8 ¶** By the above lemma, we may define functors

$$\begin{aligned} \circ : C^{\text{cor}}(X_1, X_2) \times C^{\text{cor}}(X_0, X_1) &\rightarrow C^{\text{cor}}(X_0, X_2) \\ ((t_2, s_2), (t_1, s_1)) &\mapsto (t, s) \end{aligned}$$

constituting a composition operation that is associative up to coherent natural isomorphisms. However, it is not unital in general, because  $(\text{id}, \text{id}) : X \rightrightarrows X$  is usually *not* a correspondence.

**4.5.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $(X, Y)$  be a pair of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- A **functional correspondence**  $(t, s) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$  where  $s$  is a trivial fibration.

We write  $C^{\text{fun}}(X, Y)$  for the full subcategory of  $C^{\text{cor}}(X, Y)$  spanned by the functional correspondences.

- An **invertible correspondence**  $(t, s) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$  where both  $s$  and  $t$  are trivial fibrations.

**4.5.10** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $(t, s) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  be a correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Consider the following statements:

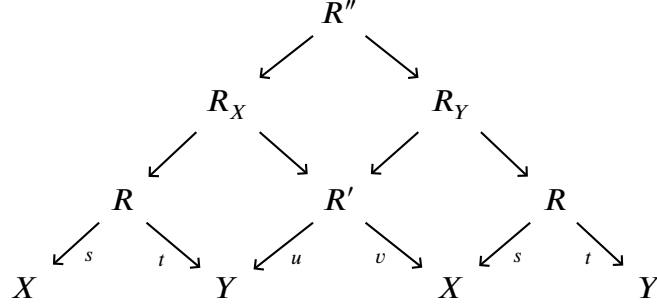
- (i) The correspondence  $(t, s) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  is invertible.
- (ii) The composite correspondences  $(s, t) \circ (t, s) : X \rightrightarrows X$  and  $(t, s) \circ (s, t) : Y \rightrightarrows Y$  are both invertible.
- (iii) There is a correspondence  $(v, u) : Y \rightrightarrows X$  such that the composite correspondences  $(v, u) \circ (t, s) : X \rightrightarrows X$  and  $(s, t) \circ (v, u) : Y \rightrightarrows Y$  are both invertible.

We have the implications (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii), and if weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  have the 2-out-of-6 property, then (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i) as well.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Use axiom D3.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Consider the following commutative diagram,



where the diamonds are pullback squares. Under the hypotheses, by axiom D3 and the pullback pasting lemma,  $R'' \rightarrow R_X \rightarrow R$  and  $R'' \rightarrow R_Y \rightarrow R$  are both trivial fibrations. Thus, in the commutative diagrams shown below,



the diagonal arrows are weak equivalences, so (assuming weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  have the 2-out-of-6 property) it follows that  $s : R \rightarrow X$  and  $t : R \rightarrow Y$  are weak equivalences.  $\blacksquare$

**4.5.II** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category, let  $f : X_0 \rightarrow X_1$  and  $g : Y_0 \rightarrow Y_1$  be morphisms of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $(t_1, s_1) : X_1 \rightrightarrows Y_1$  be an invertible correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $(t_0, s_0) : X_0 \rightrightarrows Y_0$  be the correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$  defined by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 R_0 & \xrightarrow{h} & R_1 \\
 \langle t_0, s_0 \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle t_1, s_1 \rangle \\
 X_0 \times Y_0 & \xrightarrow{f \times g} & X_1 \times Y_1
 \end{array}$$

Then  $(t_0, s_0) : X_0 \rightrightarrows Y_0$  is also an invertible correspondence in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* In view of [proposition 4.1.33](#), [corollary 4.2.8](#) says that  $f \times g : X_0 \times Y_0 \rightarrow X_1 \times Y_1$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so we may apply [proposition 4.2.7](#) to deduce that  $h : R_0 \rightarrow R_1$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Hence, by axiom A, both  $s_0 : R_0 \rightarrow X_0$  and  $t_0 : R_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**4.5.12** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a Cisinski fibration category and let  $(X, Y)$  be a pair of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then the inclusion  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{fun}}(X, Y) \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\sim \rightarrow}(X, Y)$  is a left aspherical functor.

*Proof.* Let  $(f, w) : X \rightrightarrows Y$  be a cocycle in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $\langle f, w \rangle$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y \times X}$ , and recalling [proposition 4.1.24](#), any fibrant replacement for  $\langle f, w \rangle$  is a functional correspondence  $X \rightrightarrows Y$ . Since the comma category  $((f, w) \downarrow \mathcal{C}^{\text{fun}}(X, Y))$  is isomorphic to the category of fibrant replacements for  $\langle f, w \rangle$  in  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y \times X}$ , the claim is a special case of [theorem 4.5.2](#). ■

**4.5.13** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects, let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ , let  $\mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{E}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet \xrightarrow[l \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet$$

where the dotted arrows stand for a composable chain of rightward-pointing arrows, let  $\mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{E}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \xrightarrow[l \text{ arrows}]{} \bullet$$

and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  be the evident functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. Then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)$  be the category of commutative diagrams in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} & \bullet & \xrightarrow[k \text{ arrows}]{} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} & \bullet & \xrightarrow[l \text{ arrows}]{} & Y \\ & & & & \uparrow v & & \parallel & & \\ & & & & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \bullet & & \\ & & & & \downarrow q & & \parallel & & \\ & & & & \bullet & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \bullet & & \end{array}$$

where  $(q, v)$  is some invertible correspondence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . (The morphisms in  $\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)$  are the natural transformations whose components at the labelled vertices are identities.) There is an evident projection  $p_1 : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$ , and we claim it is a left aspherical functor.

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

---

First, let us show that  $d : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a Grothendieck fibration. Consider a morphism in  $\mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$ , say,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_k & \xleftarrow{w'} & \tilde{Y}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}'_{l-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_k & \xleftarrow{w} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

and suppose we have an object in  $\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_k & \xleftarrow{w} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \\ & & & & & & \uparrow v & & \parallel & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & Z_k & \xleftarrow{u} & \tilde{Y}_0 & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \downarrow q & & \parallel & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \tilde{Y}_0 & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \tilde{Y}_0 & & & & & & \end{array}$$

Form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R' & \xrightarrow{r} & R \\ \langle q', v' \rangle \downarrow & & \downarrow \langle q, v \rangle \\ \tilde{Y}'_0 \times \tilde{X}'_k & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_0 \times \tilde{X}_k \end{array}$$

By lemma 4.5.11,  $(q', v') : \tilde{X}'_k \rightarrow \tilde{Y}'_0$  is also an invertible correspondence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Moreover, there is a unique morphism  $u' : \tilde{Y}'_0 \rightarrow R'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $v' \circ u' = w'$ ,  $q' \circ u' = \text{id}_Y$ , and  $r \circ u' = u$ . Thus,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_k & \xleftarrow{w'} & \tilde{Y}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}'_{l-1} & \longrightarrow & Y \\ & & & & & & \uparrow v' & & \parallel & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & R' & \xleftarrow{u'} & \tilde{Y}_0 & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \downarrow q' & & \parallel & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \tilde{Y}_0 & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \tilde{Y}_0 & & & & & & \end{array}$$

is an object in  $\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)$ , and it is not hard to see that there is an evident  $p_1$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)$  from our new object to the given one.



Now, since  $d : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a Grothendieck fibration, by [corollary 1.3.11](#) and propositions [B.5.23](#) and [B.5.31](#), it suffices to show that the strict fibres of  $d : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  are aspherical. But this is a straightforward consequence of [lemma 4.5.12](#).

Next, let  $\mathcal{H}_0^+(X, Y)$  be defined by the following pullback diagram in **Cat**:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{H}_0^+(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{s^+} & \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \\ p_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow p_1 \\ \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{s} & \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y) \end{array}$$

We know  $p_1 : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a Grothendieck fibration with aspherical (strict) fibres, and (recalling [lemma B.5.33](#)) these properties are preserved by pullback, so  $p_0 : \mathcal{H}_0^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  is also a Grothendieck fibration with aspherical (strict) fibres, hence left aspherical *a fortiori*. Thus, in view of [lemma 1.5.2](#) and Quillen's Theorem A ([corollary 1.11.22](#)), to show that  $s : \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, it is enough to find a functor  $d : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  such that the diagram in **Ho sSet** shown below commutes:

$$(*) \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} \mathcal{N}(\mathcal{H}_0^+(X, Y)) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{N}(d^+)} & \mathcal{N}(\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)) & & \\ & \searrow \mathcal{N}(p_0) & \downarrow \mathcal{N}(d) & \searrow \mathcal{N}(p_1) & \\ & & \mathcal{N}(\mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{N}(s)} & \mathcal{N}(\mathcal{H}_1(X, Y)) \end{array}$$

Consider an object in  $\mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y)$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_k \xleftarrow{w} \tilde{Y}_0 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \tilde{Y}_{l-1} \xrightarrow{g_l} Y \\ & & & & & & \uparrow v_k \quad \parallel \\ & & & & & & \tilde{X}'_k \xleftarrow{u_k} \tilde{Y}_0 \\ & & & & & & \downarrow q \quad \parallel \\ & & & & & & \tilde{Y}_0 \xleftarrow{\text{id}} \tilde{Y}_0 \end{array}$$

and write  $f_j : \tilde{X}_j \rightarrow \tilde{X}_k$  for the evident composite. Since  $v_k : \tilde{X}'_k \rightarrow \tilde{X}_k$  is a trivial fibration, by axiom C, we may functorially construct the following

#### IV. CATEGORIES WITH FIBRATIONS

commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f'_k} & \tilde{X}'_k \\ v_0 \downarrow & & & & v_{k-1} \downarrow & & \downarrow v_k \\ \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f_k} & \tilde{X}_k \end{array}$$

where each square is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ . We then obtain the diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  shown below,

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{q \circ f'_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & \tilde{Y}_l \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \uparrow q & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f'_k} & \tilde{X}'_k & \xleftarrow{u_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & \tilde{Y}_l \\ \parallel & & v_0 \downarrow & & & & v_{k-1} \downarrow & & \downarrow v_k & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f_k} & \tilde{X}_k & \xleftarrow{w} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & \tilde{Y}_l \end{array}$$

where every vertical arrow is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Omitting the internal leftward-pointing arrow in the top row gives an object in  $\mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$ , so this construction defines a functor  $d : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  equipped with a zigzag of natural weak equivalences connecting  $p_1$  and  $s \circ d$ .

Now, suppose  $\tilde{X}_k = \tilde{Y}_0$  and  $w = \text{id}_{\tilde{Y}_0}$ . Then, for  $0 \leq i < k$ , there is a unique morphism  $u_i : \tilde{X}_i \rightarrow \tilde{X}'_i$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{X}_i & \xrightarrow{f_{i+1}} & \tilde{X}_{i+1} \\ \downarrow u_i & & \downarrow u_{i+1} \\ \tilde{X}'_i & \xrightarrow{f'_{i+1}} & \tilde{X}'_{i+1} \\ \downarrow v_i & & \downarrow v_{i+1} \\ \tilde{X}_i & \xrightarrow{f_{i+1}} & \tilde{X}_{i+1} \end{array} \quad \text{id} \left( \begin{array}{c} \tilde{X}_i \\ \tilde{X}'_i \\ \tilde{X}_i \end{array} \right)$$

Since  $q \circ u_k = \text{id}_{\tilde{Y}_0}$ , we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccc} X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{f_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & \tilde{Y}_l \\ \parallel & & u_0 \downarrow & & & & u_{k-1} \downarrow & & \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ X & \longleftarrow & \tilde{X}'_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{X}'_{k-1} & \xrightarrow{q \circ f'_k} & \tilde{Y}_0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & \tilde{Y}_{l-1} & \xrightarrow{g_l} & \tilde{Y}_l \end{array}$$

where every vertical arrow is weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Thus, we have a natural weak equivalence  $p_0 \Rightarrow d \circ s^+$ , so (recalling [corollary 1.5.5](#))  $d : \mathcal{H}_1^+(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0(X, Y)$  is indeed a functor making  $(*)$  commute. ■

**4.5.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category of fibrant objects. Then  $\mathcal{E}$  admits a homotopical calculus of right fractions.*

*Proof.* Since the class of weak homotopy equivalences of categories is closed under composition (by [lemma 1.11.3](#)), this is just [lemma 4.5.13](#). ■



## MODEL CATEGORIES

In [1967], Quillen introduced the notion of a ‘closed model category’ (but we shall say simply ‘model category’) for homotopy theory, so as to formalise the similarities between the homotopy theory of spaces and homological algebra. The idea was that, to do homotopy theory, one only really needs to know which morphisms are cofibrations, which are weak equivalences, and which are fibrations.

### 5.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 3.5, 3.6, A.3, A.4.

**5.1.1** DEFINITION. A **model structure** on a category  $\mathcal{M}$  is a triple  $(C, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  of subensembles of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{M}$  satisfying the following axioms:<sup>[1]</sup>

**CM2.**  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property.

**CM3.**  $C$ ,  $\mathcal{W}$ , and  $\mathcal{F}$  are closed under retracts.

**CM4.** We have  $C \cap \mathcal{W} \subseteq \square \mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F} \subseteq C \square$ , i.e. given a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & X \\ i \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ W & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

---

[1] This presentation is due to Quillen [1969].

where  $i$  is in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $p$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ , if at least one of  $i$  or  $p$  is also in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then there exists a morphism  $W \rightarrow X$  making both of the evident triangles commute.

**CM5.** Any morphism  $f$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  may be factored in two ways:

- $f = p \circ i$  where  $i$  is in  $\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{W}$  and  $p$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and
- $f = q \circ j$ , where  $j$  is in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $q$  is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ .

Given a model structure  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  on a category  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

- a **weak equivalence** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W}$ ,
- a **cofibration** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,
- a **fibration** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ ,
- a **trivial cofibration** (or **acyclic cofibration**) is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{W}$ , and
- a **trivial fibration** (or **acyclic fibration**) is a morphism in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ ;
- a **cofibrant object** is an object  $W$  that is projective with respect to the class of trivial fibrations, i.e. for every trivial fibration  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  and every morphism  $w : W \rightarrow Y$ , there exists a morphism  $W \rightarrow X$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & X \\ & \nearrow & \downarrow p \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

- a **fibrant object** is an object  $X$  that is injective with respect to the class of trivial cofibrations, i.e. for every trivial cofibration  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  and every morphism  $z : Z \rightarrow X$ , there exists a morphism  $W \rightarrow X$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ \downarrow i & \nearrow & \\ W & & \end{array}$$

- a **cofibrant–fibrant object** is an object that is both cofibrant and fibrant.

A **model category** is a locally small category  $\mathcal{M}$  that is equipped with a model structure and satisfies the additional axiom below:

**CM1.**  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite limits and finite colimits.

A **derivable category** is a locally small category  $\mathcal{M}$  that is equipped with a model structure and satisfies the additional axioms below:

**DC0.** For each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exist

- a trivial cofibration  $X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  where  $\hat{X}$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and
- a trivial fibration  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  where  $\tilde{X}$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**DC1.**  $\mathcal{M}$  has pushouts along morphisms in  $\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{W}$ , and pullbacks along morphisms in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ ; i.e. given diagrams in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & Z' \\ i \downarrow & & \\ W & & \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} & & X \\ & & \downarrow p \\ Y' & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

if  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{W}$ , then the diagram on the left can be completed to a pushout square; and if  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ , then the diagram on the right can be completed to a pullback square.

**5.1.2** REMARK. Our definition of ‘cofibrant object’ (resp. ‘fibrant object’) is necessarily non-standard, because we do not always have initial objects (resp. terminal objects). Nonetheless, in a model category, our definitions agree with the standard ones: see [lemma 5.1.16](#).

**5.1.3** DEFINITION. A **DHK model category** is a model category satisfying the following variants of CM1 and CM5:

**CM1\*.**  $\mathcal{M}$  is complete and cocomplete.

**CM5\*.** The  $(\mathcal{C} \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  and  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F})$ -factorisations can be chosen *functorially* in the sense of [definition A.3.30](#).

**5.1.4** REMARK. Hovey [1999] and Hirschhorn [2003] attribute the stronger definition of ‘model category’ to Dwyer, Hirschhorn and Kan [DHK], hence the name ‘DHK model category’; of course, this is the definition used in the cited works, as well as in [DHKS]. Note also that the definition in [Hovey, 1999] includes the functorial factorisations as a *structure* instead of a property. On the other hand, [DS] and [GJ] use Quillen’s 1969 definition essentially verbatim.

**5.1.5** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be any category. The **discrete model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  is defined by the following data:

- The weak equivalences are the isomorphisms.
- Every morphism is both a cofibration and a fibration.

It is straightforward to directly verify that the axioms are satisfied in this case. Notice that if  $\mathcal{M}$  is complete and cocomplete, then the discrete model structure even makes  $\mathcal{M}$  into a DHK model category.

**5.1.6** EXAMPLE. The **mono–epi model structure** on **Set** is defined by the following data:

- Every morphism is a weak equivalence.
- The cofibrations are the injective maps.
- The fibrations are the surjective maps.

The key observation is that **Set** admits a mono–epi weak factorisation system;<sup>[2]</sup> in fact, we can even choose the mono–epi factorisations functorially: for example, given a map  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , we may take the cograph factorisation  $X \rightarrow X \amalg Y \rightarrow Y$ , where  $X \rightarrow X \amalg Y$  is the coproduct insertion and  $X \amalg Y \rightarrow Y$  is the map  $(f, \text{id}_Y)$ .

**5.1.7** REMARK. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category. Then,  $(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  is a model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $(\mathcal{F}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{W}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}})$  is a model structure on  $\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}$ .

---

[2] — not to be confused with the epi–mono *orthogonal* factorisation system!



**5.1.8** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure.*

- *If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $Z$  is a cofibrant object, then  $W$  is also a cofibrant object.*
- *If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $Y$  is a fibrant object, then  $X$  is also a fibrant object.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $w : W \rightarrow Y$  be any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since  $Z$  is cofibrant, there exists a morphism  $z : Z \rightarrow X$  such that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

and since  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a cofibration, axiom CM4 gives a morphism  $s : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s = w$ . Thus  $W$  is also cofibrant. ■

**5.1.9** LEMMA. *In a category equipped with a model structure:*

- *Every trivial fibration with cofibrant codomain is a split epimorphism.*
- *Every trivial cofibration with fibrant domain is a split monomorphism.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a trivial fibration, and suppose  $Y$  is cofibrant. Consider the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X & \\ & \downarrow p & \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y \end{array}$$

By definition, there exists a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s = \text{id}_Y$ . This shows that  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a split epimorphism. ■

**5.1.10** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure. The following are equivalent for a morphism  $f$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

- (i)  $f$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (ii) For any factorisation  $f = p \circ j$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  where  $p$  is a fibration and  $j$  is a trivial cofibration,  $p$  must be a trivial fibration.
- (iii) There exist a trivial cofibration  $j$  and a trivial fibration  $q$  such that  $f = q \circ j$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Use axiom CM2.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Use axiom CM5.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Use axiom CM2 again. ■

**5.1.11** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with a pair of weak factorisation systems  $(C', F)$  and  $(C, F')$ . Assume  $\mathcal{W}$  is a subensemble of  $\text{mor } C$  satisfying the following condition:

$$\mathcal{W} \subseteq \{q \circ j \mid j \in C', q \in F'\}$$

(i)  $C \cap \mathcal{W} \subseteq C'$ .

(ii) If  $C' \subseteq C \cap \mathcal{W}$ , then  $F' \subseteq F$  and  $C \cap \mathcal{W} = C'$ .

*Dually:*

(i')  $\mathcal{W} \cap F \subseteq F'$ .

(ii') If  $F' \subseteq \mathcal{W} \cap F$ , then  $C' \subseteq C$  and  $\mathcal{W} \cap F = F'$ .

In particular, assuming  $C' \cup F' \subseteq \mathcal{W}$ , we have  $C' = C \cap \mathcal{W}$  if and only if  $F' = \mathcal{W} \cap F$ .

*Proof.* (i). Suppose  $i : X \rightarrow Z$  is in  $C \cap \mathcal{W}$ ; then there must be  $j : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C'$  and  $q : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $F'$  such that  $i = q \circ j$ , and so we have the commutative diagram shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{j} & Y \\ i \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\ Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z \end{array}$$

Since  $i \sqsubseteq q$ ,  $i$  must be a retract of  $j$ ; hence, by [proposition A.3.19](#),  $i$  is in  $C'$ , and therefore  $C \cap \mathcal{W} \subseteq C'$ .

(ii). If we know  $C' \subseteq C$ , then  $\mathcal{F}' \subseteq \mathcal{F}$  by [proposition A.3.3](#), and  $C' \subseteq C \cap \mathcal{W}$ , so from claim (i) it follows that  $C' = C \cap \mathcal{W}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**5.1.12 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category and let  $C, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F}$  be subclasses of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{M}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  has either pushouts along morphisms in  $C \cap \mathcal{W}$  or pullbacks along morphisms in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $(C, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  is a model structure for  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (ii)  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and both  $(C \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  and  $(C, \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F})$  are weak factorisation systems for  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Axiom CM5 says that  $(C \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$ - and  $(C, \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F})$ -factorisations exist, and axiom CM4 says we have the following inclusions:

$$\begin{array}{ll} C \subseteq \square(\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}) & \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F} \subseteq C\square \\ \mathcal{F} \subseteq (C \cap \mathcal{W})\square & C \cap \mathcal{W} \subseteq \square\mathcal{F} \end{array}$$

Axiom CM3 implies each one of  $C, \mathcal{F}, C \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$  is closed under retracts, so we may apply [proposition A.3.21](#) to deduce that both  $(C, \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F})$  and  $(C \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  are indeed weak factorisation systems.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). We may deduce from [proposition A.3.19](#) that  $C$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  are closed under retracts, and it remains to be shown that  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts. The two cases are formally dual; we will assume that  $\mathcal{M}$  has pushouts along morphisms in  $C \cap \mathcal{W}$ .

Let  $w : X \rightarrow Z$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and consider a commutative diagram of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{id} & & \\ & \curvearrowright & & \curvearrowleft & \\ X' & \xrightarrow{s_X} & X & \xrightarrow{r_X} & X' \\ w' \downarrow & & w \downarrow & & \downarrow w' \\ Z' & \xrightarrow{s_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{r_Z} & Z' \\ & \curvearrowleft & & \curvearrowright & \\ & & \text{id} & & \end{array}$$

Choose a  $(C \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  factorisation for  $w'$ , say  $w' = p' \circ j'$ , with  $j' : X' \rightarrow Y'$  in  $C \cap \mathcal{W}$  and  $p' : Y' \rightarrow Z'$  in  $\mathcal{F}$ . Construct the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 X' & \xrightarrow{s_X} & X & \xrightarrow{r_X} & X' \\
 j' \downarrow & & u \downarrow & & \downarrow j' \\
 Y' & \xrightarrow{s_Y} & Y & \xrightarrow{r_Y} & Y' \\
 p' \downarrow & & v \downarrow & & \downarrow p' \\
 Z' & \xrightarrow{s_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{r_Z} & Z'
 \end{array}$$

where the top left square is a pushout square,  $v \circ u = w$ , and  $r_Y \circ s_Y = \text{id}_Y$ . Since  $C \cap \mathcal{W}$  is closed under pushouts,  $u$  is also in  $C \cap \mathcal{W}$ , and by the 2-out-of-3 property,  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Thus,  $p'$  is in  $\mathcal{F}$  and is a retract of  $v$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \text{id} & & \\
 & \curvearrowright & & \curvearrowleft & \\
 Y' & \xrightarrow{s_Y} & Y & \xrightarrow{r_Y} & Y' \\
 p' \downarrow & & v \downarrow & & \downarrow p' \\
 Z' & \xrightarrow{s_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{r_Z} & Z' \\
 & \curvearrowleft & & \curvearrowright & \\
 & & \text{id} & & 
 \end{array}$$

Using the 2-out-of-3 property again, choose a  $(C \cap \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F})$ -factorisation of  $v$ , say  $v = q \circ j$ . Since  $j \sqsubset p'$ , there exists a morphism  $r$  such that  $r \circ j = r_Y$  and  $p' \circ r = r_Z \circ q$ . Putting  $s = j \circ s_Y$ , we obtain  $r \circ s = r_Y \circ s_Y = \text{id}_Y$ ; thus  $p'$  is a retract of  $q$  and must therefore be in  $\mathcal{F} \cap \mathcal{W}$ . Hence,  $w' = p' \circ j'$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . ■

**5.1.13** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *Pushouts of trivial cofibrations along any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  exist, and any such is a trivial cofibration.*
- *Pullbacks of trivial fibrations along any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  exist, and any such is a trivial fibration.*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.3.19](#). ■

**5.1.14** REMARK. May and Ponto [2012, Ch. 14] define ‘model category’ to mean a complete and cocomplete locally small category  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with a triple of classes  $(C, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  satisfying condition (ii) of the above proposition; if the two weak factorisation systems can be extended to a pair of functorial factorisation systems, then this is a DHK model category.

**5.1.15** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure.*

- *The class of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under retracts.*
- *The class of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under retracts.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $X$  be a cofibrant object and let  $s : X' \rightarrow X$  and  $r : X \rightarrow X'$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $r \circ s = \text{id}_{X'}$ . We must show that, for any cofibration  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and any morphism  $z' : Z \rightarrow X'$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there is a morphism  $h' : W \rightarrow X'$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $h' \circ i = z'$ . Let  $z = s \circ z'$ . Since  $X$  is cofibrant, there is a morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ i = z$ ; so if  $h' = r \circ h$ , then  $h' \circ i = r \circ s \circ z' = z'$ , as required. ■

**5.1.16** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has an initial object  $0$ , then the following are equivalent for any object  $W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

- (i)  *$W$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *The unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow W$  has the left lifting property with respect to all trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (iii) *The unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow W$  is a cofibration.*

*Dually, if  $\mathcal{M}$  has a terminal object  $1$ , then the following are equivalent for any object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

- (i')  *$X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii') *The unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to all trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (iii') *The unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is a fibration.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Obvious.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). By [theorem 5.1.12](#), any morphism that has the left lifting property with respect to all trivial fibrations must be a cofibration. ■

**5.1.17** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure. If  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom DC1 and has both an initial object and a terminal object, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category. In particular, any model category is a derivable category.*

*Proof.* Use axiom CM5 to factorise the unique morphisms  $0 \rightarrow X$  and  $X \rightarrow 1$ , and then apply lemma 5.1.16 to deduce that axiom DC0 is satisfied. ■

**5.1.18** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure and let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i) *The slice category  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  (resp.  ${}^A/\mathcal{M}$ ) admits a **slice model structure**, where a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  (resp.  ${}^A/\mathcal{M}$ ) is a weak equivalence, cofibration, or fibration if it is so in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *The slice category  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  (resp.  ${}^A/\mathcal{M}$ ), equipped with the slice model structure, is a derivable category if  $\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category.*
- (iii) *The slice category  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  (resp.  ${}^A/\mathcal{M}$ ), equipped with the slice model structure, is a model category if  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model category.*

*Proof.* The two halves of each claim are formally dual; we will prove the versions for  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$ .

(i). Use lemmas 3.1.6 and A.3.23.

(ii).  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  always has a terminal object, so axiom CM5 and lemma 5.1.16 imply one half of axiom DC0 in  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$ ; for the other half, we may use axiom DC0 in  $\mathcal{M}$  directly.

It is well known that the projection functor  $\mathcal{M}_{/A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves and reflects pullbacks and pushouts, so pushouts along trivial cofibrations (resp. pullbacks along trivial fibrations) exist in  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  if pushouts along trivial cofibrations (resp. pullbacks along trivial fibrations) exist in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  satisfies axiom DC1 if  $\mathcal{M}$  does.

(iii). The argument above also shows that  $\mathcal{M}_{/A}$  has finite limits and colimits if  $\mathcal{M}$  does. ■

**5.1.19** LEMMA. Let  $(\mathcal{M}_i \mid i \in I)$  be a sequence of categories equipped with model structures.

- (i) The product category  $\mathcal{M} = \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{M}_i$  admits a **product model structure**, where a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence, cofibration, or fibration if each component is so.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{M}$ , equipped with the product model structure, is a derivable category if each  $\mathcal{M}_i$  is a derivable category.
- (iii)  $\mathcal{M}$ , equipped with the product model structure, is a model category if each  $\mathcal{M}_i$  is a model category.

*Proof.* Everything can be checked componentwise. ◆

**5.1.20** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure.

- Suppose we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & Z & \\ i' \swarrow & & \searrow i \\ W' & \xrightarrow{g} & W \end{array}$$

where  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  and  $i' : Z \rightarrow W'$  are cofibrations and  $g : W' \rightarrow W$  is a weak equivalence. If a fibration  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $i' : Z \rightarrow W'$ , then  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  also has the right lifting property with respect to  $i : Z \rightarrow W$ .

- Suppose we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & X' \\ p \searrow & & \swarrow p' \\ & Y & \end{array}$$

where  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $p' : X' \rightarrow Y$  are fibrations and  $f : X \rightarrow X'$  is a weak equivalence. If a cofibration  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $p' : X' \rightarrow Y$ , then  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  also has the left lifting property with respect to  $p : X \rightarrow Y$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider the following lifting problem in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

Suppose  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration that has the right lifting property with respect to  $i' : Z \rightarrow W'$ . Then there must exist a morphism  $h' : W' \rightarrow X$  such that the diagram shown below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i' \downarrow & \nearrow h' & \downarrow p \\ W' & \xrightarrow{w \circ g} & Y \end{array}$$

Using lemma 5.1.10, choose a trivial cofibration  $j : W' \rightarrow W''$  and a trivial fibration  $q : W'' \rightarrow W$  such that  $g = q \circ j$ . Since  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration, there is a morphism  $h'' : W'' \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W' & \xrightarrow{h'} & X \\ j \downarrow & \nearrow h'' & \downarrow p \\ W'' & \xrightarrow{w \circ q} & Y \end{array}$$

On the other hand,  $q : W'' \rightarrow W$  is a trivial fibration, so there is a morphism  $s : W \rightarrow W''$  such that the diagram shown below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{j \circ i'} & W'' \\ i \downarrow & \nearrow s & \downarrow q \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W \end{array}$$

Let  $h = h'' \circ s$ . Then,

$$h \circ i = h'' \circ s \circ i = h'' \circ j \circ i' = h' \circ i' = z$$

and since  $q \circ s = \text{id}$ ,

$$p \circ h = p \circ h'' \circ s = w \circ q \circ s = w$$

so  $h : W \rightarrow X$  is indeed a solution to the lifting problem. ■



**5.1.21** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be an object in a category  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with a model structure.

- A **cofibrant replacement** for  $X$  is a pair  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  where  $\tilde{X}$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $p$  is a weak equivalence  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow X$ .
- A **fibrant replacement** for  $X$  is a pair  $(\hat{X}, i)$  where  $\hat{X}$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $i$  is a weak equivalence  $X \rightarrow \hat{X}$ .
- A **fibrant cofibrant replacement** for  $X$  is a cofibrant replacement  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  where  $p : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration.
- A **cofibrant fibrant replacement** for  $X$  is a fibrant replacement  $(\hat{X}, i)$  where  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is a trivial cofibration.

**5.1.22** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure.

- A **cofibrant replacement functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a pair  $(Q, p)$ , where  $Q$  is an endofunctor on  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $p$  is a natural transformation  $Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$  such that, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $(QX, p_X)$  is a cofibrant replacement for  $X$ .
- A **fibrant replacement functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a pair  $(R, i)$ , where  $R$  is an endofunctor on  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $i$  is a natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{M}} \Rightarrow R$  such that, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $(RX, i_X)$  is a fibrant replacement for  $X$ .
- A **fibrant cofibrant replacement functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a pair  $(Q, p)$ , where  $Q$  is an endofunctor on  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $p$  is a natural transformation  $Q \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$  such that, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $(QX, p_X)$  is a fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$ .
- A **cofibrant fibrant replacement functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a pair  $(R, i)$ , where  $R$  is an endofunctor on  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $i$  is a natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{M}} \Rightarrow R$  such that, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $(RX, i_X)$  is a cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $X$ .

**5.1.23** REMARK. Note that a fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$  is precisely a cofibrant replacement for  $X$  that is fibrant as an object in  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$ , and a cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $X$  is precisely a fibrant replacement for  $X$  that is cofibrant as an object in  ${}^X\mathcal{M}$ .

Moreover, if  $X$  is fibrant and  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  is a fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$ , then  $\tilde{X}$  is both fibrant and cofibrant in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and if  $X$  is cofibrant and  $(\hat{X}, i)$  is a cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $X$ , then  $\hat{X}$  is both cofibrant and fibrant in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.1.24** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *Any object in a derivable category has both a fibrant cofibrant replacement and a cofibrant fibrant replacement.*
- (ii) *Any DHK model category has both a fibrant cofibrant replacement functor and a cofibrant fibrant replacement functor.*

*Proof.* (i). This is axiom DC0.

(ii). Use axiom CM5\* to factorise the unique natural transformations  $\Delta 0 \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$  and  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{M}} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$ , and then apply lemma 5.1.16. ■

It should go without saying that any two cofibrant or fibrant replacements for a fixed object are weakly equivalent; however, more is true:

**5.1.25** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be an object in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Any two cofibrant replacements for  $X$  are weakly equivalent as objects in the slice model category  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$ .*
- *Any two fibrant replacements for  $X$  are weakly equivalent as objects in the slice model category  ${}^X\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  be a fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$ ; such exist, by proposition 5.1.24. Let  $(\tilde{X}', p')$  be any cofibrant replacement for  $X$ . Then,  $p : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration, so there exists a morphism  $f : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  such that  $p \circ f = p'$ . The 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences implies any such  $f : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  is a weak equivalence, so we may deduce that every cofibrant replacement for  $X$  is weakly equivalent to  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  as objects in  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$ . ■

In the presence of functorial cofibrant and fibrant replacements, we can say something stronger still:

**5.1.26** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be an object in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has a cofibrant replacement functor, then the full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$  spanned by the cofibrant replacements for  $X$  is homotopically contractible.*

- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has a fibrant replacement functor, then the full subcategory of the slice category  $^X/\mathcal{M}$  spanned by the fibrant replacements for  $X$  is homotopically contractible.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $(Q, p)$  be a cofibrant replacement functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then, for each cofibrant replacement  $(\tilde{X}, q)$  for  $X$ , we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \tilde{X} & \xleftarrow{p_{\tilde{X}}} & Q\tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{Qq} & QX \\
 & \searrow q & \downarrow & \swarrow p_X & \\
 & & X & & 
 \end{array}$$

Thus, the constant functor at  $(QX, p_X)$  is naturally weakly equivalent to the identity functor of the category of cofibrant replacements for  $X$ , and we may then apply [proposition 3.1.31](#) to deduce that it is homotopically contractible. ■

**5.1.27** REMARK. In other words, cofibrant replacements (resp. fibrant replacements) are homotopically unique in a model category with functorial cofibrant replacements (resp. functorial fibrant replacements).

**5.1.28** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with a model structure, let  $(C, \mathcal{W}, F)$  be the model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $\mathcal{N}$  be a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(i) If  $\mathcal{N}$  is homotopically replete in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the data

$$(C \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N}, \mathcal{W} \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N}, F \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N})$$

constitute a model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$ .

- (ii) If  $W$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and is in  $\mathcal{N}$ , then  $W$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{N}$ , i.e. projective with respect to  $\mathcal{W} \cap F \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N}$ ; dually, if  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and is in  $\mathcal{N}$ , then  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{N}$ , i.e. injective with respect to  $C \cap \mathcal{W} \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N}$ .
- (iii) If  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom DC0, then  $\mathcal{N}$  also satisfies axiom DC0, and every cofibrant (resp. fibrant) object in  $\mathcal{N}$  is also a cofibrant (resp. fibrant) object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (iv) If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category, then so is  $\mathcal{N}$  when equipped with the above model structure;

*Proof.* (i). [Lemma 3.1.7](#) implies that axiom CM2 is satisfied. Since  $\mathcal{N}$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ , the data  $(C \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N}, \mathcal{W} \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N}, \mathcal{F} \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{N})$  satisfy axioms CM3 and CM4 because  $(C, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{F})$  do. Finally, for axiom CM5, we appeal to the hypothesis that  $\mathcal{N}$  is homotopically replete.

(ii). This follows from the assumption that  $\mathcal{N}$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(iii). Given the above,  $\mathcal{N}$  satisfies axiom DC0 if  $\mathcal{M}$  does. Now, suppose  $W$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{N}$ . Then, by axiom DC0, there is a cofibrant object  $\tilde{W}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and a trivial fibration  $\tilde{W} \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; but  $\mathcal{N}$  is a homotopically replete subcategory, so  $\tilde{W} \rightarrow W$  is also a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{N}$ , so by [lemma 5.1.9](#),  $W$  is a retract of  $\tilde{W}$  and is therefore a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , by [lemma 5.1.15](#). Dually, if  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{N}$ , then it is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  as well.

(iv). It remains to be shown that pushouts along trivial cofibrations and pullbacks along trivial fibrations exist in  $\mathcal{N}$ . For this, simply apply [corollary 5.1.13](#) to the hypothesis that  $\mathcal{N}$  is homotopically replete and full. ■

**5.1.29** DEFINITION. The **Quillen homotopy category** (or, more simply, **homotopy category**) of a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$  is the category  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  obtained by freely inverting the weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ , as in [definition A.4.9](#).

**5.1.30** DEFINITION. A **saturated derivable category** is a derivable category that is saturated as a category with weak equivalences.

**5.1.31** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category and let  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  be the localising functor.*

- (i) *Let  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be the classes of trivial cofibrations and trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ , respectively. Then  $\mathcal{M}$  admits a three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ , which is functorial if  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom CM5\*.*
- (ii) *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $v : X \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  and  $v' : X \rightarrow \tilde{X}'$  be trivial fibrations, let  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  and  $u' : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}'$  be trivial cofibrations, and let  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  and  $f' : \tilde{X}' \rightarrow \hat{Y}'$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then,*

$$\gamma(u)^{-1} \circ \gamma(f) \circ \gamma(v)^{-1} = \gamma(u')^{-1} \circ \gamma(f') \circ \gamma(v')^{-1}$$

if and only if there exists a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow v_1 & & \uparrow v_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v_3} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_3} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow w_1 & & \downarrow w_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v_4} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_4} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_4} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow u_1 & & \uparrow u_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v'} & \tilde{X}' & \xrightarrow{f'} & \hat{Y}' & \xleftarrow{u'} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4$  are trivial cofibrations,  $v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4$  are trivial fibrations, and  $w_1, w_2$  are weak equivalences. In any such diagram,  $v_1$  is a split epimorphism if  $\tilde{X}$  is cofibrant, and  $u_2$  is a split monomorphism if  $\hat{Y}'$  is fibrant.

- (iii)  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated derivable category if and only if the weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  have the 2-out-of-6 property.
- (iv) If  $X$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $Y$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the hom-set map  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  is surjective.
- (v)  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is a locally small category.

*Proof.* (i). Axioms CM2 and CM5 imply axiom A1 is satisfied, and axioms A2 and A3 follow from the above claims; that we get a functorial three-arrow calculus under axiom CM5\* is an obvious consequence of the universal property of pushouts and pullbacks.

(ii). This is a special case of the fundamental theorem of three-arrow calculi (3.6.9), plus lemma 5.1.9.

(iii). Apply proposition 3.6.10 and lemma A.4.14.

(iv). Consider a zigzag of the following form in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$X \xleftarrow{v} X' \xrightarrow{f'} Y' \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

where  $u : Y \rightarrow Y'$  is a trivial cofibration and  $v : X' \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration. Let  $\bar{f} = \gamma(u)^{-1} \circ \gamma(f') \circ \gamma(v)^{-1}$  be the corresponding morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ ; note

that the fundamental theorem of three-arrow calculi says that every morphism  $\gamma X \rightarrow \gamma Y$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is of this form. Suppose  $X$  is cofibrant and  $Y$  is fibrant. Then lemma 5.1.9 says  $u$  is a split monomorphism and  $v$  is a split epimorphism, so choose  $r : Y' \rightarrow Y$  and  $s : X \rightarrow X'$  such that  $r \circ u = \text{id}_Y$  and  $v \circ s = \text{id}_X$ . Since  $\gamma(u)$  and  $\gamma(v)$  are isomorphisms in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ , we must have  $\gamma(u)^{-1} = \gamma(r)$  and  $\gamma(v)^{-1} = \gamma(s)$ . Hence, taking  $f = r \circ f' \circ s$ , we have  $\bar{f} = \gamma(f)$ , as required.

(v). By proposition 5.1.24, every object in  $\mathcal{M}$  is weakly equivalent to both a cofibrant object and a fibrant object, so we may deduce that  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is locally small from claim (iii). ■

**5.1.32** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. For any two objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , every morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  can be represented by a zigzag of the following form,*

$$X \xleftarrow{p} \tilde{X} \longrightarrow \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{i} Y$$

where  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  is any cofibrant replacement for  $X$  and  $(\hat{Y}, i)$  is any fibrant replacement for  $Y$ . ■

**5.1.33** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category where  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property and the special 2-out-of-4 property.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{M}_c$  be the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If a functor  $F : \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  sends trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $F$  preserves all weak equivalences.*
- *Let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If a functor  $G : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}_f$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $G$  preserves all weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Axioms CM2 and CM5 imply that every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  can be factored as a trivial cofibration followed by a trivial fibration, so it is enough to show that  $F$  sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}_c$ .  $Y$  is cofibrant, so lemma 5.1.9 says  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  has a section  $s : Y \rightarrow X$ .

Let  $e = s \circ p$ . Since  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration, we may form a pullback square in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \xrightarrow{k_1} & X \\ k_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ X & \xrightarrow{p} & Y \end{array}$$

There is then a unique morphism  $\Delta : X \rightarrow K$  such that  $k_0 \circ \Delta = k_1 \circ \Delta = \text{id}_X$ . Since  $k_0 : K \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration (by [corollary 5.1.13](#)),  $\Delta : X \rightarrow K$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  and therefore factorises as  $q \circ j$  for some trivial cofibration  $j : X \rightarrow \tilde{K}$  and some trivial fibration  $q : \tilde{K} \rightarrow K$ ; note that  $\tilde{K}$  is a cofibrant object. There is also a unique morphism  $t : X \rightarrow K$  such that  $k_0 \circ t = \text{id}_X$  and  $k_1 \circ t = e$ ; and  $X$  is a cofibrant object, so there exists a morphism  $h : X \rightarrow \tilde{K}$  such that  $q \circ h = t$ . Taking  $q_0 = k_0 \circ q$  and  $q_1 = k_1 \circ q$ , we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}_c$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{e} & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow h & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{q_0} & \tilde{K} & \xrightarrow{q_1} & X \\ \parallel & & \uparrow j & & \parallel \\ X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \end{array}$$

Consider the image of the above diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By hypothesis,  $Fj : FX \rightarrow F\tilde{K}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and by repeatedly applying the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , we may deduce that  $Fe : FX \rightarrow FX$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  as well. But  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the special 2-out-of-4 property, and  $Fe = Fs \circ Fp$ , so we may conclude that  $Fp : FX \rightarrow FY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

**5.1.34 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. Let  $\mathcal{M}_c$  be the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}_c$ , considered as a relative category with trivial cofibrations as weak equivalences, admits a calculus of cospan.
- (ii) The localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_c$  with respect to trivial cofibrations is isomorphic to the localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_c$  with respect to all weak equivalences.

- (iii) Every morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c$  can be represented by a cycle in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  of the form below,

$$X \xrightarrow{f} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{i} Y$$

where  $(\hat{Y}, i)$  is any cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $Y$ .

Dually, let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- (i')  $\mathcal{M}_f$ , considered as a relative category with trivial fibrations as weak equivalences, admits a calculus of spans.
- (ii') The localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_f$  with respect to trivial fibrations is isomorphic to the localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_f$  with respect to all weak equivalences.
- (iii') Every morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f$  can be represented by a cocycle in  $\mathcal{M}_f$  of the form below,

$$X \xleftarrow{p} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{f} Y$$

where  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  is any fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$ .

*Proof.* (i). This is an immediate consequence of [corollary 5.1.13](#).

(ii). Suppose  $F : \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a functor that sends trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . It is clear that isomorphisms have the special 2-out-of-4 property, so we may apply [lemma 5.1.33](#) to deduce that  $F$  sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  as well. Hence, any localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_c$  with respect to trivial cofibrations must also be a localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_c$  with respect to weak equivalences.

(iii). The fundamental theorem of calculi of cospans ([3.5.9](#)) says every morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c$  can be represented by a cycle in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  of the form below,

$$X \xrightarrow{g} Y' \xleftarrow{u} Y$$

where  $u : Y \rightarrow Y'$  is a trivial cofibration, and that two such cycles represent the same morphism if and only if they are in the same connected component of the cycle category  $\mathcal{M}_c^{\rightarrow\sim}(X, Y)$ . Let  $(\hat{Y}, i)$  be any cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $Y$ . Since  $u : Y \rightarrow Y'$  is a trivial cofibration and  $\hat{Y}$  is fibrant, axiom CM4 yields



a morphism  $h : Y' \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  such that  $h \circ u = i$ . Taking  $f = h \circ g$ , we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}_c$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{g} & Y' & \xleftarrow{u} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow h & & \parallel \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{i} & Y \end{array}$$

Thus, the cycles  $(u, g)$  and  $(i, f)$  represent the same morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c$ . ■

**5.1.35 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{M}_c$  be the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{M}_c \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*
- *Let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{M}_f \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is clear that [proposition 5.1.24](#) implies the functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is essentially surjective on objects; it remains to be shown that the functor is fully faithful. Consider the full subcategory  $\mathcal{M}_{cf}$  spanned by the cofibrant–fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . By restricting the localising functors, we obtain the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}_{cf} & \longrightarrow & \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{M}_{cf} & \longrightarrow & \text{Ho } \mathcal{M} \end{array}$$

where  $\mathcal{M}_{cf} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c$  and  $\mathcal{M}_{cf} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  are essentially surjective on objects. [Theorem 5.1.31](#) implies  $\mathcal{M}_{cf} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is a full functor, so  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  must also be full.

Now, consider a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c$ . [Proposition 5.1.34](#) says they can be represented by cycles of the following form,

$$X \xrightarrow{f} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{i} Y \qquad X \xrightarrow{f'} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{i} Y$$

where  $(\hat{Y}, i)$  is any cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $Y$ . Suppose the two morphisms are equal in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ . Then, there must be a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{i} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow v_1 & & \uparrow v_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v_3} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_3} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow w_1 & & \downarrow w_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v_4} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_4} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_4} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow u_1 & & \uparrow u_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f'} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{i} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $u_1, u_2, u_3, u_4$  are trivial cofibrations,  $v_1, v_2, v_3, v_4$  are trivial fibrations, and  $w_1, w_2$  are weak equivalences. Since  $X$  is cofibrant, there exists a morphism  $s$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $v_1 \circ s = \text{id}_X$ , so (using [lemma 5.1.8](#)) we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}_c$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{i} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow \text{id} & & \uparrow v_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f_3 \circ s} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow w_1 \circ s & & \downarrow w_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{v_4} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_4} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_4} & Y \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow u_1 & & \uparrow u_2 & & \parallel \\
 X & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & X & \xrightarrow{f'} & \hat{Y} & \xleftarrow{i} & Y
 \end{array}$$

Noting that axiom CM2 implies  $w_1 \circ s$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_c$ , we may then deduce that the two zigzags also represent the same morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c$ . Thus, the functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is indeed faithful.  $\blacksquare$

## 5.2 Left and right homotopy

**Prerequisites.** §5.1.

**5.2.1** DEFINITION. Let  $X$  be an object in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A **cylinder object** for  $X$  is a quadruple  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$ , where  $\text{Cyl}(X)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence, and  $i_0$  and  $i_1$  are sections of  $p$  such that the morphism  $\langle i_0, i_1 \rangle : X + X \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(X)$  is a cofibration.
- A **path object** for  $X$  is a quadruple  $(\text{Path}(X), i, p_0, p_1)$ , where  $\text{Path}(X)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $i : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(X)$  is a weak equivalence, and  $p_0$  and  $p_1$  are retractions of  $i$  such that the morphism  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle : \text{Path}(X) \rightarrow X \times X$  is a fibration.

**5.2.2** REMARK. Let  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  be a cylinder object for  $X$ . By definition,  $p \circ i_0 = p \circ i_1 = \text{id}_X$ , and  $p$  is a weak equivalence, so by the 2-out-of-3 property,  $i_0$  and  $i_1$  must also be weak equivalences  $X \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(X)$ .

Dually, if  $(\text{Path}(X), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a path object for  $X$ , then  $p_0$  and  $p_1$  must be weak equivalences  $\text{Path}(X) \rightarrow X$ .

**5.2.3** PROPOSITION. Let  $X$  be an object in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- There exists a cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  for  $X$ , where the morphism  $p : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow X$  is a trivial fibration.
- There exists a path object  $(\text{Path}(X), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $X$ , where the morphism  $i : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(X)$  is a trivial cofibration.

*Proof.* Use axioms CM1 and CM5. ■

**5.2.4** DEFINITION. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  be a cylinder object for  $X$ , and let  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  be a path object for  $Y$ .

- A **left homotopy** from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  is a morphism  $H : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  such that  $H \circ i_0 = f_0$  and  $H \circ i_1 = f_1$ .
- A **right homotopy** from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a morphism  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  such that  $p_0 \circ H = f_0$  and  $p_1 \circ H = f_1$ .

- We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **left homotopic** if there exists a left homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to some cylinder object for  $X$ .
- We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **right homotopic** if there exists a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to some path object for  $Y$ .

**5.2.5** REMARK. If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are either left homotopic or right homotopic, then they must represent the same morphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ . For definiteness, let us write  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  for the localising functor, and suppose  $H : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  is a left homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ . Since  $i_0$  and  $i_1$  are both sections of the weak equivalence  $p : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow X$ , we must have  $\gamma i_0 = (\gamma p)^{-1} = \gamma i_1$ ; but  $f_0 = H \circ i_0$  and  $f_1 = H \circ i_1$ , so indeed  $\gamma f_0 = \gamma f_1$ . This is one of the reasons for calling  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  the *homotopy category* of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

However, it is not quite true that  $\gamma f_0 = \gamma f_1$  if and only if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are either left homotopic or right homotopic; this only happens in special cases. In general, being left/right homotopic fails to even be an equivalence relation.

**5.2.6** DEFINITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A **left homotopy left inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $g \circ f$  and  $\text{id}_X$  are left homotopic.
- A **right homotopy right inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism  $h : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $f \circ h$  and  $\text{id}_Y$  are right homotopic.
- A **right homotopy left inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $g \circ f$  and  $\text{id}_X$  are right homotopic.
- A **left homotopy right inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism  $h : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $f \circ h$  and  $\text{id}_Y$  are left homotopic.

A **homotopy equivalence** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a pair  $(f, g)$  such that  $g$  (resp.  $f$ ) is both a left homotopy left inverse and a right homotopy right inverse for  $f$  (resp.  $g$ ). Two morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  are **mutual homotopy inverses** when  $(f, g)$  constitute a homotopy equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.2.7** REMARK. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  be morphisms in a model category.

- $g$  is a left homotopy left inverse for  $f$  if and only if  $f$  is a left homotopy right inverse for  $g$ .
- $g$  is a right homotopy left inverse for  $f$  if and only if  $f$  is a right homotopy left inverse for  $g$ .

However, note that the dual of ‘left homotopy left inverse’ is ‘right homotopy right inverse’, and the dual of ‘right homotopy left inverse’ is ‘left homotopy right inverse’!

**5.2.8** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a model category, and suppose  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are either left or right homotopic. Then,  $f_0$  is a weak equivalence if and only if  $f_1$  is a weak equivalence.

*Proof.* Assume  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are left homotopic; the other case is formally dual. So, there exist a cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  for  $X$  and a morphism  $H : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  such that  $H \circ i_0 = f_0$  and  $H \circ i_1 = f_1$ . Suppose  $f_0$  is a weak equivalence. By [remark 5.2.2](#),  $i_0$  is a weak equivalence, so the 2-out-of-3 property implies  $H$  is also a weak equivalence; but  $i_1$  is a weak equivalence as well, so  $f_1$  must be a weak equivalence too. A symmetrical argument proves that  $f_0$  is a weak equivalence if  $f_1$  is. ■

**5.2.9** LEMMA. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  be morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If  $g \circ f$  is either left or right homotopic to  $\text{id}_X$ , and  $f \circ g$  is either left or right homotopic to  $\text{id}_Y$ , then  $(f, g)$  is an equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  (in the sense of [definition 3.1.17](#)).
- If there exist morphisms  $g, h : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $g \circ f$  is either left or right homotopic to  $\text{id}_X$  and  $f \circ h$  is either left or right homotopic to  $\text{id}_Y$ , then (the image of)  $f$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* Obvious, given [remark 5.2.5](#). ♦

**5.2.I0** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- (i) Given any cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  for  $X$ ,  $f_0 \circ p : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  is a left homotopy from  $f_0$  to itself.
- (ii) If  $H : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  is a left homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to a cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  for  $X$ , then the same  $H$  is a left homotopy from  $f_1$  to  $f_0$  for the cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_1, i_0, p)$ .

*Dually:*

- (i') Given any path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Y$ ,  $i \circ f_0 : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to itself.
- (ii') If  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  is a right homotopy from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  with respect to a path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Y$ , then the same  $H$  is a right homotopy from  $f_1$  to  $f_0$  for the path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_1, p_0)$ .

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

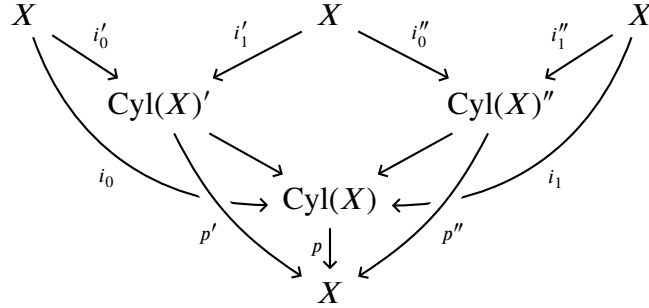
**5.2.II** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.

- If  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  is a cylinder object for a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the insertions  $i_0, i_1 : X \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(X)$  are trivial cofibrations, and  $\text{Cyl}(X)$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- If  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  is a path object for a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the projections  $p_0, p_1 : Y \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  are trivial fibrations, and  $\text{Path}(X)$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* See Lemmas 1.5 and 1.7 in [GJ], or Lemma 7.3.6 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

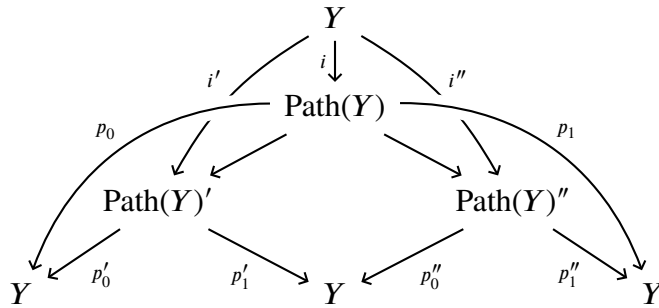
**5.2.12** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be model category.

- Let  $X$  be a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Given two cylinder objects for  $X$ , say  $(\text{Cyl}(X)', i'_0, i'_1, p')$  and  $(\text{Cyl}(X)'', i''_0, i''_1, p'')$ , there exists a third cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  such that the diagram below commutes,



and the diamond is a pushout diagram.

- If  $Y$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and we have two path objects for  $Y$ , say  $(\text{Path}(Y)', i', p'_0, p'_1)$  and  $(\text{Path}(Y)'', i'', p''_0, p''_1)$ , then there exists a third path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  such that the diagram below commutes,



and the diamond is a pullback diagram.

*Proof.* See Lemmas 1.5 and 1.7 in [GJ, Ch. II], or Lemma 7.4.2 in [Hirschhorn, 2003].  $\square$

**5.2.13** COROLLARY. Let  $f_0, f_1, f_2 : X \rightarrow Y$  be three parallel morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Assuming  $X$  is cofibrant, if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are left homotopic, and  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  are left homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_2$  are also left homotopic.

- Assuming  $Y$  is fibrant, if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic, and  $f_1$  and  $f_2$  are right homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_2$  are also right homotopic. ■

**5.2.14** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If  $X$  is cofibrant, and  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are left homotopic, given any path object  $(\text{Path}(Y), i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Y$ , there is a right homotopy  $H : X \rightarrow \text{Path}(Y)$  from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ .
- If  $Y$  is fibrant, and  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic, given any cylinder object  $(\text{Cyl}(X), i_0, i_1, p)$  for  $X$ , there is a left homotopy  $H : \text{Cyl}(X) \rightarrow Y$  from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ .

*Proof.* See Proposition 1.8 in [GJ, Ch. II], or Proposition 7.4.7 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

**5.2.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If  $X$  is cofibrant, then being left homotopic is an equivalence relation on the hom-set  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y)$ .
- If  $Y$  is fibrant, then being right homotopic is an equivalence relation on the hom-set  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y)$ .
- If  $X$  is cofibrant and  $Y$  is fibrant, then these two equivalence relations on  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y)$  coincide.

*Proof.* Use the preceding lemmas. ■

**5.2.16** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic and  $g : W \rightarrow X$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $f_0 \circ g$  and  $f_1 \circ g$  are also right homotopic.
- If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are left homotopic and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $g \circ f_0$  and  $g \circ f_1$  are also left homotopic.

*Proof.* Obvious. ♦



**5.2.17** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category, and let  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}}$  be the full subcategory spanned by the cofibrant–fibrant objects. Then the equivalence relation induced by homotopy is a congruence on  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}}$ ; in particular, there exist a locally small category  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{h}}$  and a full functor  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}'$  with these properties:*

- *The objects of  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{h}}$  are those of  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}}$ .*
- *The hom-set  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{h}}(X, Y)$  is  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y)$  modulo homotopy.*
- *The functor  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{\text{h}}$  sends each morphism in  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}}$  to its homotopy class.* ■

The next result is a version of Whitehead’s theorem; however, this is a purely formal consequence of the model category axioms and has no real content, unlike the original theorem.

**5.2.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be cofibrant–fibrant objects in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence, then  $f$  has a homotopy inverse in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 1.10 in [GJ, Ch. II], or Theorem 7.5.10 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

**5.2.19** LEMMA. *Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $g : W \rightarrow X$  is a morphism with a right homotopy right inverse in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $f_0 \circ g$  and  $f_1 \circ g$  are right homotopic if and only if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic.*
- *If  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a morphism with a left homotopy left inverse in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $g \circ f_0$  and  $g \circ f_1$  are left homotopic if and only if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are left homotopic.*

*Proof.* This follows immediately from the definitions and lemma 5.2.16. ■

**5.2.20** COROLLARY. *Let  $W, X, Y, Z$  be cofibrant–fibrant objects in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms.*

- *If  $g : W \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence such that  $f_0 \circ g$  and  $f_1 \circ g$  are homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are homotopic.*

## V. MODEL CATEGORIES

---

- If  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence such that  $g \circ f_0$  and  $g \circ f_1$  are homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are homotopic.

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 5.2.18](#) in conjunction with the above lemma. ■

## 5.3 Quillen functors

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 3.3, 3.4, 5.1, A.5.

### 5.3.1 DEFINITION.

- A **left Quillen functor** is a functor between derivable categories that has a right adjoint and preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations.
- A **right Quillen functor** is a functor between derivable categories that has a left adjoint and preserves fibrations and trivial fibrations.
- A **Quillen adjunction** is an adjunction

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$$

where  $F$  is a left Quillen functor and  $G$  is a right Quillen functor.

- A **Quillen equivalence** is a Quillen adjunction as above satisfying this additional condition:
  - Given a cofibrant object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{N}$  and fibrant object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , a morphism  $FA \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if its right adjoint transpose  $A \rightarrow GY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

### 5.3.2 PROPOSITION. *Let $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$ be an adjunction between categories with model structures. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$F$  preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations.*
- (ii)  *$G$  preserves fibrations and trivial fibrations.*
- (iii)  *$F$  preserves cofibrations and  $G$  preserves fibrations.*
- (iv)  *$F$  preserves trivial cofibrations and  $G$  preserves trivial fibrations.*
- (v) *(Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  are derivable categories.)  $F \dashv G$  is a Quillen adjunction.*

*Proof.* Use [proposition A.3.28](#). ■

**5.3.3** REMARK. A functor between categories with model structures that preserves both trivial cofibrations and trivial fibrations must also preserve weak equivalences, since axioms CM2 and CM5 together imply that a morphism is a weak equivalence if and only if it is of the form  $p \circ i$  where  $i$  is a trivial cofibration and  $p$  is a trivial fibration. In particular, a functor that is both left and right Quillen must be homotopical.

**5.3.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  be a Quillen adjunction.*

- *$F$  sends cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{N}$  to cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *$G$  sends fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{N}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $B$  be a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{N}$  and let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since  $F \dashv G$ , we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}(FB, X) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{N}(B, GX) \\ \mathcal{M}(FB, p) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathcal{M}(B, Gp) \\ \mathcal{M}(FB, Y) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{N}(B, GY) \end{array}$$

By hypothesis,  $Gp : GX \rightarrow GY$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{N}$ , so the hom-set map  $\mathcal{N}(B, Gp)$  is a surjection. It follows that  $\mathcal{M}(FB, p)$  is also a surjection, and thus  $FB$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**5.3.5** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *The composite of two Quillen adjunctions is also a Quillen adjunction.*
- (ii) *The composite of two Quillen equivalences is also a Quillen equivalence.*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**5.3.6** LEMMA (Ken Brown's lemma). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with weak equivalences.*

- *Let  $\mathcal{M}_c$  be the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $F : \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  sends trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $F$  also sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- Let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $F : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}_f$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $F$  also sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}_f$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* See Lemma 9.9 in [DS], Lemma 7.7.1 in [Hirschhorn, 2003], or Lemma 14.5 in [DHKS].  $\square$

The usual proof of the Ken Brown's lemma uses binary coproducts (or binary products, as the case may be), so it cannot be used in the case where the domain is merely a derivable category. Nonetheless, we have already proved something very similar, namely [lemma 5.1.33](#).

**5.3.7** PROPOSITION (Dugger). *Let  $F \dashv G$  be an adjunction between DHK model categories. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $F \dashv G$  is a Quillen adjunction.
- (ii)  $F$  preserves cofibrations between cofibrant objects and all trivial cofibrations.
- (iii)  $G$  preserves fibrations between fibrant objects and all trivial fibrations.

*Proof.* See Proposition 8.5.4 in [Hirschhorn, 2003], or Corollary A.2 in [Dugger, 2001a].  $\square$

**5.3.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  be an adjunction between derivable categories and assume that both the adjunction unit  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{N}} \Rightarrow GF$  and the adjunction counit  $\epsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$  are natural weak equivalences. If the functor  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  preserves and reflects weak equivalences, then:*

- (i) A morphism  $FA \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if its right adjoint transpose  $A \rightarrow GY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- (ii)  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves weak equivalences.
- (iii) If  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves cofibrations, then the adjunction is a Quillen adjunction.

Dually, if the functor  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves and reflects weak equivalences, then:

(i') A morphism  $FA \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if its right adjoint transpose  $A \rightarrow GY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

(ii')  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  preserves weak equivalences.

(iii') If  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  preserves fibrations, then the adjunction is a Quillen adjunction.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $Y$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{N}$ , let  $f : FA \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $g : A \rightarrow GY$  be its right adjoint transpose. First, suppose  $f : FA \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then  $Gf : GFA \rightarrow GY$  and  $g = Gf \circ \eta_A : A \rightarrow GY$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

Conversely, suppose  $g : A \rightarrow GY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{N}$ . Then so are  $GFg : GFA \rightarrow GFGY$  and  $Gf = G\varepsilon_Y \circ GFg : GFA \rightarrow GY$ . But  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  reflects weak equivalences, so  $f : FA \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(ii). Axiom CM2 implies that  $GF : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  preserves weak equivalences, and  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  reflects weak equivalences by hypothesis, so  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  must preserve weak equivalences.

(iii). It now follows that  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves trivial cofibrations if it preserves cofibrations. We may then apply [proposition 5.3.2](#) to complete the proof. ■

**5.3.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.

- A **left Quillen deformation retract** of  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  where  $\mathcal{M}_c$  is the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **right Quillen deformation retract** of  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form  $(\mathcal{M}_f, R, i)$  where  $\mathcal{M}_f$  is the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.3.I0** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *Left Quillen deformation retracts of  $\mathcal{M}$  exist.*
- *Right Quillen deformation retracts of  $\mathcal{M}$  exist.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

For each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , choose a fibrant cofibrant replacement  $(QX, p_X)$ ; such exist by [proposition 5.1.24](#). Then, for each non-identity morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exists a morphism  $Qf : QX \rightarrow QY$  making the diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} QX & \xrightarrow{p_X} & X \\ Qf \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ QY & \xrightarrow{p_Y} & Y \end{array}$$

because  $p_Y : QY \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration and  $QX$  is cofibrant; note that axiom CM2 implies  $Qf$  is a weak equivalence if (and only if!)  $f$  is. Thus, axioms DR1–2 are satisfied. For axiom DR3, we refer to [proposition 5.1.35](#). Finally, we simply need to observe that axiom DR4 is trivial. ■

**5.3.II** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *$(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  is a functorial left Quillen deformation for  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $(Q, p)$  is a cofibrant replacement functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *$(\mathcal{M}_f, R, i)$  is a functorial left Quillen deformation for  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $(R, i)$  is a cofibrant replacement functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**5.3.I2** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category, and let  $\gamma_{\mathcal{M}} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  and  $\gamma_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  be the respective localising functors. Suppose  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property and the special 2-out-of-4 property. If  $F : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a functor that sends trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then:*

- (i) *Any left Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ ; in particular, a total left derived functor for  $F$  exists.*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has a cofibrant replacement functor, then  $F$  is functorially left deformable and has a homotopical left approximation.*

- (iii) If  $(\mathbf{L}F, \alpha)$  is any total left derived functor for  $F$ , then the extension counit component  $\alpha_X : (\mathbf{L}F)\gamma_{\mathcal{M}}X \rightarrow \gamma_{\mathcal{C}}FX$  is an isomorphism for all cofibrant objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

Dually, if  $F : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a functor that sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then:

- (i') Any right Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right deformation retract for  $F$ ; in particular, a total right derived functor for  $F$  exists.
- (ii') If  $\mathcal{M}$  has a fibrant replacement functor, then  $F$  is functorially right deformable and has a homotopical right approximation.
- (iii') If  $(\mathbf{R}F, \beta)$  is any total right derived functor for  $F$ , then the extension counit component  $\beta_X : (\mathbf{R}F)\gamma_{\mathcal{M}}X \rightarrow \gamma_{\mathcal{C}}FX$  is an isomorphism for all fibrant objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* (i). Let  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  be a left Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then  $F$  sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$  by [lemma 5.1.33](#), so  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  is indeed a left deformation retract for  $\mathcal{C}$ . We may then apply [theorem 3.3.17](#) to obtain a total left derived functor.

(ii). By the same argument, if  $(Q, p)$  is a cofibrant replacement functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  is a functorial left deformation retract for  $F$ . We then appeal to [theorem 3.4.11](#).

(iii). The extension counit has the required property because, for all cofibrant objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the morphism  $Fp_X : FQX \rightarrow FX$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; but this is precisely the component of the extension counit at  $X$ . ■

**5.3.13 THEOREM.** *Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  be a Quillen adjunction.*

- (i) Any left Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{N}$  is a left deformation retract for  $F$ ; dually, any right Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right deformation retract for  $G$ .
- (ii)  $F \dashv G$  is a deformable adjunction; in particular, a derived adjunction exists.



(iii) If  $F \dashv G$  is a Quillen equivalence, then the derived adjunction

$$\mathbf{L}F \dashv \mathbf{R}G : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{N}$$

is an adjoint equivalence of categories; and if  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  are saturated derivable categories, then the converse is true.

*Proof.* (i). Since weak equivalences in derivable categories are closed under retracts (by axiom CM3), we may use [theorem 5.3.12](#).

(ii). That  $F \dashv G$  is a derivable adjunction follows immediately; then apply [theorem 3.3.24](#) for the existence of the derived adjunction.

(iii). This is a special case of [proposition 3.3.28](#). ■

**5.3.14** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{L}$ ,  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $\mathcal{N}$  be derivable categories.

- If  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  and  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}$  are left Quillen functors, then the composite  $(\mathbf{L}G)(\mathbf{L}F)$  is (the functor part of) a total left derived functor for  $GF$ .
- If  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}$  and  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  are right Quillen functors, then the composite  $(\mathbf{R}F)(\mathbf{R}G)$  is (the functor part of) a total right derived functor for  $FG$ .

Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\mathcal{N}$ , and  $\mathcal{L}$  have fibrant and cofibrant replacement functors:

- If  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  and  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}$  are left Quillen functors, then the composite  $(\mathbb{L}G)(\mathbb{L}F)$  is (the functor part of) a homotopical left approximation for  $GF$ .
- If  $F : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}$  and  $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  are right Quillen functors, then the composite  $(\mathbb{R}F)(\mathbb{R}G)$  is (the functor part of) a homotopical right approximation for  $FG$ .

*Proof.* Use theorems [3.3.17](#), [3.4.11](#), and [5.3.12](#) with [proposition 5.3.5](#). ■

**5.3.15** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category equipped with a model structure.

- The **injective model structure** on the functor category  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a model structure such that a morphism in  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a cofibration (resp. weak equivalence) if and only if all its components are cofibrations (resp. weak equivalences) in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- The **projective model structure** on the functor category  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a model structure such that a morphism in  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a fibration (resp. weak equivalence) if and only if all its components are fibrations (resp. weak equivalences) in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.3.16** REMARK. The injective (resp. projective) model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is unique if it exists, by [theorem 5.1.12](#).

**5.3.17** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category, and let  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  be the functor that sends an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  to the constant functor  $\Delta X : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  with value  $X$ .

- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has colimits for diagrams of shape  $\mathbb{A}$ , then  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a right Quillen functor with respect to the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  when it exists.
- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has limits for diagrams of shape  $\mathbb{A}$ , then  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a left Quillen functor with respect to the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  when it exists.

*Proof.*  $\Delta$  certainly preserves fibrations (resp. cofibrations) and weak equivalences with respect to the projective (resp. injective) model structure, so by [proposition 5.3.2](#),  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}} \dashv \Delta$  (resp.  $\Delta \dashv \lim_{\leftarrow \mathbb{A}}$ ) is a Quillen adjunction.<sup>[1]</sup> ■

**5.3.18** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category and let  $I$  be a set.

- The functor category  $[I, \mathcal{M}]$  admits a model structure that is simultaneously an injective model structure and a projective model structure.
- If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category (resp. saturated derivable category, model category), then  $[I, \mathcal{M}]$  equipped with the above model structure is a derivable category (resp. saturated derivable category, model category).

---

[1] Recall [proposition 0.1.12](#).

- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category and has products and coproducts for families of objects indexed by  $I$ , then  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [I, \mathcal{M}]$  is both a left Quillen functor and a right Quillen functor.*
- (iv) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model category, then the canonical exponential comparison functor  $\mathrm{Ho} [I, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [I, \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}]$  is an isomorphism of categories.*

*Proof.* (i). If we declare the cofibrations (resp. weak equivalences, fibrations) in  $[I, \mathcal{M}]$  to be precisely the morphisms that are cofibrations (resp. weak equivalences, fibrations) componentwise, then the axioms CM2–5 may be verified componentwise as well.

(ii). Axioms DC0, DC1, and CM1 can be verified componentwise. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is saturated, then we can use [lemma 3.1.11](#) to deduce that  $[I, \mathcal{M}]$  is also saturated.

(iii). Apply [proposition 5.3.17](#).

(iv). Use [theorem 5.4.1](#) and the fact that the congruence of homotopy is componentwise in  $[I, \mathcal{M}]$ . ■

**5.3.19** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a saturated derivable category and let  $I$  be a set.*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for families of objects indexed by  $I$ , then the product of an  $I$ -indexed family of weak equivalences between fibrant objects is also a weak equivalence between fibrant objects.*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for families of objects indexed by  $I$ , then the coproduct of an  $I$ -indexed family of weak equivalences between cofibrant objects is also a weak equivalence between cofibrant objects.*

*Proof.* Apply [lemma 5.1.33](#) to the previous proposition. ■

**5.3.20** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category and let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category.*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has coproducts for families of size  $\leq |\mathrm{mor} \mathbb{A}|$ , then the evaluation functors  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  are right Quillen functors with respect to the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  (if it exists).*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  has products for families of size  $\leq |\mathrm{mor} \mathbb{A}|$ , then the evaluation functors  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  are left Quillen functors with respect to the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  (if it exists).*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathbb{A}$  and let  $A^* : [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be the functor  $F \mapsto FA$ . It is not hard to check that  $A^*$  has a left adjoint  $A_! : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$ , namely the functor  $X \mapsto \mathbb{A}(A, -) \odot X$ . Since the class of cofibrations and the class of trivial cofibrations are both closed under coproducts, we see that  $A_! : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a left Quillen functor with respect to the injective model structure. Thus, by [proposition 5.3.2](#),  $A^* : [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a right Quillen functor. ■

**5.3.2I** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category and let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category. Suppose the injective and projective model structures on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  both exist. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has both coproducts and products for families of size  $\leq |\text{mor } \mathbb{A}|$ , then:*

- *Every fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in the projective model structure.*
- *Every cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in the injective model structure.*
- *The trivial adjunction*

$$\text{id} \dashv \text{id} : [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$$

*is a Quillen equivalence between the injective and projective model structures.* ■

## 5.4 The homotopy category

**Prerequisites.** §§5.1, 5.2, 5.3, A.4, A.5, A.6.

**5.4.1 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  be the localising functor.*

- (i)  *$\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is equivalent to the locally small category  $\mathcal{M}_h$  defined in [corollary 5.2.17](#), and  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category.*
- (ii) *If  $X$  and  $Y$  are cofibrant–fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the hom-set map  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(X, Y)$  induced by  $\gamma$  is surjective; and moreover for any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have  $\gamma f_0 = \gamma f_1$  if and only if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are homotopic.*

*Proof.* (i). This is Theorem 1.11 in [GJ, Ch. II], or Proposition 5.8 in [DS].

(ii). Implied by claim (i). □

**5.4.2 COROLLARY.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $f$  has a quasi-inverse in  $\mathcal{M}$  (in the sense of [definition 3.1.17](#)), then  $f$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* If  $f$  has a quasi-inverse in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then (the image of)  $f$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ ; but  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category, so  $f$  must be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**5.4.3 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  be the localising functor.*

- (i) *For any parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $X$  is cofibrant and  $Y$  is fibrant, we have  $\gamma f_0 = \gamma f_1$  if and only if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are homotopic.*
- (ii) *The full subcategory  $\mathcal{M}_{\text{cf}}$  of cofibrant–fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  has the Whitehead property (in the sense of [definition 3.1.21](#)).*

*Proof.* (i). As noted in [remark 5.2.5](#), if  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  are homotopic, then we must have  $\gamma f_0 = \gamma f_1$ . Conversely, suppose  $\gamma f_0 = \gamma f_1$  with  $X$  cofibrant and  $Y$  fibrant. Let  $(RX, i')$  be a cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $X$  and  $(QY, p')$  be a fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $Y$ . Then, there exists morphisms  $f'_0, f'_1 : RX \rightarrow QY$  such that  $f_0 = p' \circ f'_0 \circ i'$  and  $f_1 = p' \circ f'_1 \circ i'$ . Since  $i' : X \rightarrow RX$

and  $p' : QY \rightarrow Y$  are weak equivalences, we must have  $\gamma f'_0 = \gamma f'_1$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ . The theorem then implies  $f'_0$  and  $f'_1$  are homotopic; thus  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are also homotopic, by lemmas 5.2.14 and 5.2.16.

(ii). Apply theorem 3.1.22 in conjunction with lemma 5.2.9 and the above corollary. ■

**5.4.4 COROLLARY.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism between two cofibrant objects in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *The hom-set map  $\text{map } \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(f, Z) : \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(Y, Z) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(X, Z)$  is a bijection for all cofibrant–fibrant objects  $Z$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (iii) *The hom-set map  $\mathcal{M}_h(f, Z) : \mathcal{M}_h(Y, Z) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_h(X, Z)$  is a bijection for all cofibrant–fibrant objects  $Z$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , where  $\mathcal{M}_h(Y, Z)$  (resp.  $\mathcal{M}_h(X, Z)$ ) denotes the set of all morphisms  $Y \rightarrow Z$  (resp.  $X \rightarrow Z$ ) in  $\mathcal{M}$  modulo homotopy.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  becomes an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ , so in particular  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(f, Z) : \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(Y, Z) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(X, Z)$  must be a bijection.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Corollary 5.4.3 implies that the horizontal arrows in the following commutative diagram are bijections,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}_h(Y, Z) & \longrightarrow & \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(Y, Z) \\ \mathcal{M}'(f, Z) \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(f, Z) \\ \mathcal{M}_h(X, Z) & \longrightarrow & \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(X, Z) \end{array}$$

and so  $\mathcal{M}_h(f, Z)$  is a bijection if and only if  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(f, Z)$  is a bijection.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $(\hat{X}, i_X)$  is a cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $X$  and  $(\hat{Y}, i_Y)$  is a cofibrant fibrant replacement for  $Y$ . Then, (by axiom CM4) there exists a morphism  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ i_X \downarrow & & \downarrow i_Y \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

and by the 2-out-of-3 property,  $f$  is a weak equivalence if and only if  $\hat{f}$  is a weak equivalence. On the other hand, the following diagram also commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(\hat{Y}, Z) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(\hat{f}, Z)} & \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(\hat{X}, Z) \\ \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(i_Y, Z) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(i_X, Z) \\ \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(Y, Z) & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(f, Z)} & \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(X, Z) \end{array}$$

and so  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(f, Z)$  is a bijection if and only if  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(\hat{f}, Z)$  is a bijection; but  $\hat{X}$  and  $\hat{Y}$  are both cofibrant–fibrant objects, so if  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(f, Z)$  is a bijection for all cofibrant–fibrant objects  $Z$ , then  $\hat{f}$  must be a weak equivalence (because  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category). ■

**5.4.5 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small relative category, let  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $H : \mathcal{C}^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be defined by the following formula:*

$$H(C', C) = \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma C', \gamma Y) \times \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma C)$$

*Then the evident maps  $H(C, C) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  defined by composition exhibit  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  as the coend of  $H$ .*

*Proof.* By [proposition A.6.6](#), the coend  $\int^{C:C} \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma C, \gamma Y) \times \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(\gamma X, \gamma C)$  can be identified with the ensemble of connected components of the following category:

- The objects are pairs  $(g, C, f)$ , where  $C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $f : \gamma X \rightarrow \gamma C$  and  $g : \gamma C \rightarrow \gamma Y$  are morphisms in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ .
- The morphisms  $(g', C', f') \rightarrow (g, C, f)$  are morphisms  $h : C' \rightarrow C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $\gamma h \circ f' = f$  and  $g \circ \gamma h = g'$ .
- Identities and composition are inherited from  $\mathcal{C}$ .

Given any object  $(g, C, f)$  in this category, it is not hard to see that there is a zigzag of morphisms connecting  $(g, C, f)$  to  $(\mathrm{id}_Y, Y, g \circ f)$ . Thus, the canonical comparison map  $\int^{C:C} H(C, C) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$  is a bijection, as claimed. ■

**5.4.6** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally small relative category. Then the hom-functor*

$$\mathcal{C}(-, -) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

*admits a pointwise left Kan extension along the localising functor  $\gamma^{\text{op}} \times \gamma : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ , namely the hom-functor*

$$\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(-, -) : \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \text{Ho } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

*with unit  $\mathcal{C}(-, -) \Rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(\gamma -, \gamma -)$  induced by  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* By [theorem A.5.15](#), the value of a pointwise left Kan extension of  $\mathcal{C}(-, -)$  along  $\gamma^{\text{op}} \times \gamma$  is computed by the following coend,

$$\int^{(C', C) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C}} \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(\gamma C', \gamma -) \times \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(\gamma -, \gamma C) \times \mathcal{C}(C', C)$$

and by the interchange law ([theorem A.6.17](#)) and the Yoneda lemma ([proposition A.6.18](#)) for coends, there is a natural bijection between the above and the coend

$$\int^{C : \mathcal{C}} \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(\gamma C, \gamma -) \times \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}(\gamma -, \gamma C)$$

so the claim is a consequence of [proposition 5.4.5](#). ■

**5.4.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the class of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $\mathcal{V}$  be the class of trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Let  $(\mathcal{M}_c, Q, p)$  be a left Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$  be the localisation of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to the trivial cofibrations. Then the inclusion  $\mathcal{M}_c \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}$  induces a fully faithful functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$ , and  $(Q, p)$  induces a right adjoint for that functor.*
- *Let  $(\mathcal{M}_f, R, i)$  be a right Quillen deformation retract of  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$  be the localisation of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to the trivial fibrations. Then the inclusion  $\mathcal{M}_f \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}$  induces a fully faithful functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$ , and  $(R, i)$  induces a left adjoint for that functor.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [corollary 5.1.13](#),  $(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{U})$  admits a calculus of cospans, so we may use the fundamental theorem of calculi of cospans ([3.5.9](#)) and [lemma 5.1.8](#) to deduce that the canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$  is indeed fully faithful.



On the other hand, [lemma 5.1.33](#) says the localising functor  $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$  sends weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}_c$  to isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$ , so we may apply [proposition 3.3.19](#) to deduce that the canonical functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  has a fully faithful left adjoint defined by  $Q$ . Moreover, [proposition 5.1.35](#) implies that the canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is fully faithful with a *right* adjoint defined by  $Q$ . Thus, we have the following hom-set bijections,

$$\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c(X, QY) \cong \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(X, Y) \cong \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}](QX, Y)$$

and these bijections are moreover natural in  $X$ . Since  $X$  is a cofibrant object, the morphism  $p_X : QX \rightarrow X$  is invertible in  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$ ; and  $p$  defines a natural transformation of functors  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$ , so we have obtained from  $(Q, p)$  a right adjoint for the functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_c \rightarrow \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{U}^{-1}]$  induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{M}_c \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

The following proposition extends a result of Joyal [\[2010\]](#).

**5.4.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  be two saturated derivable categories with the same underlying category and let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  and  $\mathcal{M}'_f$  be the full subcategories of fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$ , respectively. Consider the following statements:*

- (i) *Every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'$ .*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{M}'_f$  is a full relative subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}_f$ .*
- (iii) *Every fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}'$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*If  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  have the same cofibrations, then (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii); we always have (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii); and if  $\mathcal{M}'$  is a saturated derivable category with the same cofibrations as  $\mathcal{M}$ , then (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i).*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Every trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}'$ , so every fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}'$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  have the same cofibrations, they also have the same trivial fibrations (by [theorem 5.1.12](#)), so [lemma 5.1.33](#) implies every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'_f$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ . But we assumed every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'_f$ , so this implies that a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}'_f$  is a weak equivalence if and only if it is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ , as required.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Since  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  have the same cofibrations,  $\mathcal{M}'_f$  is a full relative subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}_f$ , and [proposition 5.4.7](#) implies that the induced functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}'_f \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f$  has a left adjoint, say  $L : \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}'_f$ .

Let  $(R, i)$  and  $(R', i')$  be right Quillen deformations for  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$ , respectively. Axiom CM2 implies a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  (resp. in  $\mathcal{M}'$ ) if and only if  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  (resp.  $R'f : R'X \rightarrow R'Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'$ ). The uniqueness of left adjoints implies  $LR \cong R'$  as functors  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}'_f$ , where  $\mathcal{V}$  is the class of trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  (or  $\mathcal{M}'$ ), so if  $\mathcal{M}'$  is a saturated derivable category, it follows that every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . ■

**5.4.9 THEOREM** (Determination principle). *The model structure on a derivable category is uniquely determined by any one of the following sets of data:*

- (i) *The cofibrations and the weak equivalences.*
- (ii) *The cofibrations and the trivial cofibrations.*
- (iii) *The cofibrations and the fibrant objects.*
- (iv) *The cofibrations and the fibrations.*
- (v) *The trivial cofibrations and the trivial fibrations.*
- (i') *The fibrations and the weak equivalences.*
- (ii') *The fibrations and the trivial fibrations.*
- (iii') *The fibrations and the cofibrant objects.*

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). By [theorem 5.1.12](#), the fibrations are precisely the morphisms with the right lifting property with respect to every trivial cofibration.

(iii). Apply [proposition 5.4.8](#) and reduce to case (i).

(iv). The trivial cofibrations are precisely the morphisms with the left lifting property with respect to all fibrations, and the trivial fibrations are precisely the morphisms with the right lifting property with respect to all cofibrations, so this reduces to case (v).

(v). Axioms CM2 and CM5 imply that every weak equivalence is of the form  $p \circ i$  where  $i$  is a trivial cofibration and  $p$  is a trivial fibration. Thus, the trivial cofibrations and the trivial fibrations together determine the weak equivalences. On the other hand, the trivial cofibrations determine the fibrations, and the trivial fibrations determine the cofibrations, thus the entire model structure is determined. ■

## 5.5 Reedy diagrams

**Prerequisites.** §§0.2, 4.4, 0.5, A.3, A.5, A.6.

**5.5.1 DEFINITION.** A **Reedy category** is a category  $C$  equipped with two subcategories, the **direct subcategory**  $C_{\rightarrow}$  and the **inverse subcategory**  $C^{\leftarrow}$ , such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- $\text{ob } C = \text{ob } C_{\rightarrow} = \text{ob } C^{\leftarrow}$ .
- There exists a function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  simultaneously making  $C_{\rightarrow}$  a direct category and  $C^{\leftarrow}$  an inverse category.
- Every morphism in  $C$  admits a unique factorisation of the form  $\sigma \circ \delta$ , where  $\delta$  is in  $C^{\leftarrow}$  and  $\sigma$  is in  $C_{\rightarrow}$ .

A **Reedy diagram** in a category  $\mathcal{M}$  is a functor  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , where  $C$  is a Reedy category.

**5.5.2 REMARK.** Any direct (resp. inverse) category is a Reedy category in a trivial way: take the whole category as the direct (resp. inverse) subcategory, and take  $\text{disc ob } C$  as the inverse (resp. direct) subcategory.

**5.5.3 EXAMPLE.** The simplex category  $\Delta$  is a Reedy category, where the direct subcategory consists of all injective maps, and the inverse subcategory consists of all surjective maps; note that the unique factorisation condition is implied by [theorem I.I.4](#).

**5.5.4 REMARK.** The opposite of any Reedy category is automatically a Reedy category, after exchanging the direct and inverse subcategories.

**5.5.5 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  be a category, let  $C_{\rightarrow}$  and  $C^{\leftarrow}$  be subcategories with  $\text{ob } C = \text{ob } C_{\rightarrow} = \text{ob } C^{\leftarrow}$ , and let  $\leq$  be the smallest transitive binary relation on  $\text{ob } C$  such that  $A \leq B$  if there is either a morphism  $A \rightarrow B$  in  $C_{\rightarrow}$  or a morphism  $B \rightarrow A$  in  $C^{\leftarrow}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $C$  is a Reedy category with direct category  $C_{\rightarrow}$  and inverse category  $C^{\leftarrow}$ .
- (ii)  $C_{\rightarrow}$  is a direct category;  $C^{\leftarrow}$  is an inverse category;  $\leq$  is an antisymmetric relation on  $\text{ob } C$ ; and for any object  $A$  in  $C$ , there is a natural number  $\deg A$  such that, for any chain in  $\text{ob } C$  of the form below,

$$A_0 \leq \dots \leq A_n = A$$

if  $A_0, \dots, A_n$  are distinct, then  $n \leq \deg A$ ; (in particular,  $\leq$  is a well-founded partial order;) and every morphism in  $C$  admits a unique factorisation of the form  $\sigma \circ \delta$ , where  $\delta$  is in  $C^\leftarrow$  and  $\sigma$  is in  $C_\rightarrow$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**5.5.6** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a Reedy category, let  $\alpha : A \rightarrow B$  and  $\beta : B \rightarrow C$  be morphisms in  $C$ , let  $\delta : A \rightarrow D$  be in  $C^\leftarrow$  and let  $\sigma : D \rightarrow C$  be in  $C_\rightarrow$ .

- (i) If  $\beta \circ \alpha = \sigma \circ \delta$ , then  $\deg D \leq \deg B$ .
- (ii) If  $\beta \circ \alpha$  is in  $C_\rightarrow$ , then  $\alpha$  is also in  $C_\rightarrow$ .
- (iii) If  $\beta \circ \alpha$  is in  $C^\leftarrow$ , then  $\beta$  is also in  $C^\leftarrow$ .

*Proof.* See (the proof of) Lemma 2.9 in [Riehl and Verity, 2014].  $\blacksquare$

**5.5.7** DEFINITION. Let  $A$  be an object in a Reedy category  $C$ .

- The **latching category** of  $C$  at  $A$ , denoted by  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$ , is the largest full subcategory of the slice category  $(C_\rightarrow \downarrow A)$  that does *not* contain the object  $\text{id}_A : A \rightarrow A$ .
- The **matching category** of  $C$  at  $A$ , denoted by  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A}$ , is the largest full subcategory of the slice category  $(A \downarrow C^\leftarrow)$  that does *not* contain the object  $\text{id}_A : A \rightarrow A$ .

**5.5.8** REMARK. If  $C$  is a Reedy category whose direct (resp. inverse) subcategory is discrete, then all its latching (resp. matching) categories are empty.

**5.5.9** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a Reedy category with degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ . For any natural number  $n$ :

- (i) The full subcategory  $C_{\leq n}$  spanned by the objects  $A$  in  $C$  such that  $\deg A \leq n$  is a Reedy category.
- (ii) Let  $A$  be an object in  $C$  with  $\deg A = n + 1$ . Then the inclusion  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A} \hookrightarrow (C_{\leq n} \downarrow A)$  is cofinal, and the inclusion  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A} \hookrightarrow (A \downarrow C_{\leq n})$  is coinital.

*Proof.* (i). This is a straightforward exercise.

(ii). See Proposition 15.2.8 in [Hirschhorn, 2003].  $\square$

**5.5.10** DEFINITION. A **locally finite Reedy category** is a Reedy category such that every latching category and every matching category is finite.

**5.5.11** REMARK. The factorisation axiom implies that a locally finite Reedy category is a category whose hom-sets are finite; but not every Reedy category with that property is locally finite.

**5.5.12** EXAMPLE. The simplex category  $\Delta$  is a locally finite Reedy category.

**5.5.13** DEFINITION. Let  $A$  be an object in a small Reedy category  $C$ .

- The **boundary** of the representable functor  $h_A : C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the subfunctor  $\partial h_A \subseteq h_A$  consisting of all morphisms  $A' \rightarrow A$  in  $C$  that are *not* in the inverse subcategory  $C^-$ .
- The **boundary** of the representable functor  $h^A : C \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the subfunctor  $\partial h^A \subseteq h^A$  consisting of all morphisms  $A \rightarrow A'$  in  $C$  that are *not* in the direct subcategory  $C_+$ .

**5.5.14** REMARK. [Lemma 5.5.6](#) ensures that  $\partial h_A$  and  $\partial h^A$  are indeed subfunctors.

**5.5.15** LEMMA. Let  $A$  be an object in a small Reedy category  $C$ .

- Let  $P : \partial C_{\rightarrow A} \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the functor that sends objects  $A' \rightarrow A$  in  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$  to  $h_{A'}$ . Then the canonical morphism  $\lim_{\rightarrow \partial C_{\rightarrow A}} P \rightarrow h_A$  is a monomorphism and has  $\partial h_A$  as its image.
- Let  $P : (\partial C^{\leftarrow A})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [C, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the functor that sends objects  $A \rightarrow A'$  in  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A}$  to  $h^{A'}$ . Then the canonical morphism  $\lim_{\rightarrow (\partial C^{\leftarrow A})^{\text{op}}} P \rightarrow h^A$  is a monomorphism and has  $\partial h^A$  as its image.

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 5.5.9](#) to Observation 3.18 in [Riehl and Verity, 2014]. ■

**5.5.16** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category.

- A **Reedy-acyclic morphism** in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to every boundary inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ .
- A **Reedy-acyclic morphism** in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to every boundary inclusion  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ .

**5.5.17** REMARK. In the special case of the simplex category  $\Delta$ , we have  $\partial h_{[n]} = \partial \Delta^n$ , as expected. Thus, the Reedy-acyclic morphisms in  $[\Delta^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] = \mathbf{sSet}$  are the trivial Kan fibrations.

**5.5.18** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, and let  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram.

- A **latching object**  $L_A(X)$  is a weighted colimit  $\partial h_A \star_C X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The **latching morphism**  $L_A(X) \rightarrow XA$  is the morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ .
- A **matching object**  $M_A(X)$  is a weighted limit  $\{\partial h^A, X\}^C$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The **matching morphism**  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X)$  is the morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ .

**5.5.19** REMARK. Assuming existence, the latching object  $L_A(X)$  is functorial in  $A$  (as  $A$  varies in the direct subcategory), and the matching object  $M_A(X)$  is functorial in  $A$  (as  $A$  varies in the inverse subcategory). Of course, it should go without saying that  $L_A(X)$  and  $M_A(X)$  are both functorial in  $X$  (as  $X$  varies in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ ), and moreover, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}(L_A(X), -) &\cong M_A(\mathcal{M}(X, -)) \\ \mathcal{M}(-, M_A(X)) &\cong M_A(\mathcal{M}(-, X)) \end{aligned}$$

**5.5.20** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, and let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ .

- A **relative latching object**  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with a pullback diagram in  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}(L_A(X, Y, \varphi), -) & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h_A, \mathcal{M}(Y, -)\}^{C^{\text{op}}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \{\partial h_A, \mathcal{M}(\varphi, -)\}^{C^{\text{op}}} \\ \{h_A, \mathcal{M}(X, -)\}^{C^{\text{op}}} & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h_A, \mathcal{M}(X, -)\}^{C^{\text{op}}} \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ , the **relative latching morphism**  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  corresponds to  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$ , and the **insertion**  $XA \rightarrow L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  corresponds to  $\text{id} : L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$ .

- A **relative matching object**  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with a pullback diagram in  $[\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}(-, M_A(X, Y, \varphi)) & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h^A, \mathcal{M}(-, X)\}^c \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \{\partial h^A, \mathcal{M}(-, \varphi)\}^c \\ \{h^A, \mathcal{M}(-, Y)\}^c & \longrightarrow & \{\partial h^A, \mathcal{M}(-, Y)\}^c \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ , the **relative matching morphism**  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  corresponds to  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$ , and the **projection**  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  corresponds to  $\text{id} : M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$ .

**5.5.21** REMARK. Recalling lemma 5.5.15:

- If the latching category  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$  is empty, then we may identify the relative latching morphism  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  with the component  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$ .
- If the matching category  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A}$  is empty, then we may identify the relative matching morphism  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  with the component  $\varphi_A : XA \rightarrow YA$ .

**5.5.22** REMARK.

- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has enough colimits, then we have a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_A(X) & \longrightarrow & XA \\ L_A(\varphi) \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_A(Y) & \longrightarrow & L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \end{array}$$

where the right vertical arrow is the insertion.

- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has enough limits, then we have a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M_A(X, Y, \varphi) & \longrightarrow & M_A(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow M_A(\varphi) \\ YA & \longrightarrow & M_A(Y) \end{array}$$

where the left vertical arrow is the projection.



**5.5.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.

- A natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has the **Reedy left lifting property** with respect to a morphism  $g : M \rightarrow N$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  if the relative matching morphism  $\bar{h}^{YA} \rightarrow M_A(\bar{h}^Y, \bar{h}^X, \varphi^*)$  has the *right lifting property* with respect to  $g^* : \bar{h}^N \rightarrow \bar{h}^M$  in  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .
- A natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has the **Reedy right lifting property** with respect to a morphism  $g : M \rightarrow N$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  if the relative matching morphism  $\bar{h}_{XA} \rightarrow M_A(\bar{h}_X, \bar{h}_Y, \varphi_*)$  has the *right lifting property* with respect to  $g_* : \bar{h}_M \rightarrow \bar{h}_N$  in  $[\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .

**5.5.24** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\overline{(-)} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a fully faithful functor, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Assuming the relative latching object  $L_A(\overline{X}, \overline{Y}, \overline{\varphi})$  exists in  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$ ,  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  if and only if the relative latching morphism  $L_A(\overline{X}, \overline{Y}, \overline{\varphi}) \rightarrow \overline{Y}A$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $\overline{g} : \overline{M} \rightarrow \overline{N}$ .
- Assuming the relative matching object  $M_A(\overline{X}, \overline{Y}, \overline{\varphi})$  exists in  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$ ,  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  if and only if the relative matching morphism  $\overline{X}A \rightarrow M_A(\overline{X}, \overline{Y}, \overline{\varphi})$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $\overline{g} : \overline{M} \rightarrow \overline{N}$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**5.5.25** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small Reedy category and let

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$$

be an adjunction between locally small categories.

- Given a natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  and a morphism  $g : M \rightarrow M'$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $Gg : GM \rightarrow GM'$  if and only if  $F\varphi : FX \Rightarrow FY$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow M'$ .

- Given a natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  and a morphism  $g : N' \rightarrow N$  in  $\mathcal{N}$ ,  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $Fg : FN' \rightarrow FN$  if and only if  $G\varphi : GX \Rightarrow GY$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : N' \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**5.5.26** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .
- (ii) The morphism in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}(Y, M) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(X, M) \times_{\mathcal{M}(X, N)} \mathcal{M}(Y, N)$$

induced by the evident commutative square is a Reedy-acyclic morphism.

- (iii) The morphism in  $[[C, \mathcal{M}]^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}((-)A, M) \rightarrow M_A(\mathcal{M}(-, M), \mathcal{M}(-, N), \mathcal{M}(-, g))$$

induced by the relative matching morphisms has the right lifting property with respect to  $\varphi_* : h_X \rightarrow h_Y$ .

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .
- (ii') The morphism in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}(N, X) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(M, X) \times_{\mathcal{M}(M, Y)} \mathcal{M}(N, Y)$$

induced by the evident commutative square is a Reedy-acyclic morphism.

- (iii') The morphism in  $[[C, \mathcal{M}], \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}(N, (-)A) \rightarrow M_A(\mathcal{M}(N, -), \mathcal{M}(M, -), \mathcal{M}(g, -))$$

induced by the relative matching morphisms has the right lifting property with respect to  $\varphi^* : h^Y \rightarrow h^X$ .

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be any object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Consider the following commutative diagram in **Set**,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \mathcal{M}(XA, N) & & \\
 & \nearrow \mathcal{M}(XA, g) & \downarrow & \nwarrow \mathcal{M}(\varphi_A, N) & \\
 \mathcal{M}(XA, M) & & & & \mathcal{M}(YA, N) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(X, g)) & & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(X, N)) & & \downarrow \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(\varphi, N)) \\
 \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(X, M)) & \nearrow \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(\varphi, M)) & & \nwarrow \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, g)) & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, N)) \\
 & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, M)) & & & 
 \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are the respective matching morphisms. Let  $L$  be the limit of the above diagram. It is not hard to see that the induced diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 L & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, M), \mathcal{M}(X, M), \mathcal{M}(\varphi, M)) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{M}(YA, N) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, N), \mathcal{M}(X, N), \mathcal{M}(\varphi, N))
 \end{array}
 \quad (1)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 L & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}(XA, N) \times_{\mathcal{M}(XA, N)} \mathcal{M}(YA, N) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, M)) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(X, N) \times_{\mathcal{M}(X, N)} \mathcal{M}(Y, N))
 \end{array}
 \quad (2)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 L & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(Y, M), \mathcal{M}(Y, N), \mathcal{M}(Y, g)) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{M}(XA, M) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}_A(\mathcal{M}(X, M), \mathcal{M}(X, N), \mathcal{M}(X, g))
 \end{array}
 \quad (3)$$

are pullback diagrams in **Set**. Thus, by the Yoneda lemma, the set  $L$  can be identified with the following:

1. The set of all commutative squares of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} h^N & \longrightarrow & h^{YA} \\ g^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ h^M & \longrightarrow & M_A(h^Y, h^X, \varphi^*) \end{array}$$

in  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , where the right vertical arrow is the relative matching morphism.

2. The set of all commutative squares of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial h_A & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}(Y, M) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ h_A & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}(X, N) \times_{\mathcal{M}(X, N)} \mathcal{M}(Y, N) \end{array}$$

in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , where the right vertical arrow is induced by the evident commutative square.

3. The set of all commutative squares of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} h_X & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}((-)A, M) \\ \varphi_* \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ h_Y & \longrightarrow & M_A(\mathcal{M}(-, M), \mathcal{M}(-, N), \mathcal{M}(-, g)) \end{array}$$

in  $[[C, \mathcal{M}]^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , where the right vertical arrow is induced by the relative matching morphisms.

Thus, the surjectivity of the comparison map  $\mathcal{M}(YA, M) \rightarrow L$  is equivalent to each of conditions (i), (ii), and (iii). ■

**5.5.27 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $U : \mathcal{M}' \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be an orthogonality-reflecting functor between locally small categories, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}'$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}'$ .*

- *If  $U\varphi : UX \Rightarrow UY$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $Ug : UM \rightarrow UN$ , then  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .*

- If  $U\varphi : UX \Rightarrow UY$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $Ug : UM \rightarrow UN$ , then  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider the following commutative diagram in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}'(Y, M) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}'(X, M) \times_{\mathcal{M}'(X, N)} \mathcal{M}'(Y, N) \\ \downarrow U & & \downarrow U \\ \mathcal{M}(UY, UM) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{M}(UX, UM) \times_{\mathcal{M}(UX, UN)} \mathcal{M}(UY, UN) \end{array}$$

By lemma A.3.6, the above diagram is a pullback square in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , and by proposition 5.5.26,  $U\varphi : UX \Rightarrow UY$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $Ug : UM \rightarrow UN$  if and only if the bottom horizontal arrow in the diagram is a Reedy-acyclic morphism in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . Since the class of Reedy-acyclic morphisms is closed under pullback (by proposition A.3.19), we conclude that  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ . ■

**5.5.28** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.

- A diagram  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is **Reedy-projective** with respect to a morphism  $g : M \rightarrow N$  if the matching morphism  $\hbar^{YA} \rightarrow M_A(\hbar^Y)$  has the *right* lifting property with respect to  $g^* : \hbar^N \rightarrow \hbar^M$  in  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .
- A diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is **Reedy-injective** with respect to a morphism  $g : M \rightarrow N$  if the matching morphism  $\hbar_{XA} \rightarrow M_A(\hbar_X)$  has the *right* lifting property with respect to  $g_* : \hbar_M \rightarrow \hbar_N$  in  $[\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .

**5.5.29** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\overline{(-)} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \overline{\mathcal{M}}$  be a fully faithful functor, and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Assuming  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$  has an initial object  $0$ , a diagram  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  if and only if the unique natural transformation  $\Delta 0 \Rightarrow \overline{Y}$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $\overline{g} : \overline{M} \rightarrow \overline{N}$ .

- Assuming  $\overline{\mathcal{M}}$  has a terminal object 1, a diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  if and only if the unique natural transformation  $\overline{X} \Rightarrow \Delta 1$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $\overline{g} : \overline{M} \rightarrow \overline{N}$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\square$

**5.5.30** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category and let

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$$

be an adjunction.

- Given a diagram  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  and a morphism  $g : M \rightarrow M'$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $Y$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $Gg : GM \rightarrow GM'$  if and only if  $FY$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow M'$ .
- Given a diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  and a morphism  $g : N' \rightarrow N$  in  $\mathcal{N}$ ,  $X$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $Fg : FN' \rightarrow FN$  if and only if  $GX$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $g : N' \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**5.5.31** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The following are equivalent for a diagram  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ :

- (i)  $Y$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .
- (ii) The morphism in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}(Y, g) : \mathcal{M}(Y, M) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(Y, N)$$

has the right lifting property with respect to every boundary inclusion  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ .

- (iii) The morphism in  $[[C, \mathcal{M}]^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}((-)A, M) \rightarrow M_A(\mathcal{M}(-, M), \mathcal{M}(-, N), \mathcal{M}(-, g))$$

induced by the relative matching morphisms has the right lifting property with respect to the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow h_Y$ .

Dually, the following are equivalent for a diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ :

(i')  $X$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

(ii') The morphism in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}(g, X) : \mathcal{M}(N, X) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(M, X)$$

has the right lifting property with respect to every boundary inclusion  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ .

(iii') The morphism in  $[[C, \mathcal{M}], \mathbf{Set}]$

$$\mathcal{M}(N, (-)A) \rightarrow M_A(\mathcal{M}(N, -), \mathcal{M}(M, -), \mathcal{M}(g, -))$$

induced by the relative matching morphisms has the right lifting property with respect to the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow h^X$ .

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as [proposition 5.5.26](#). ■

**5.5.32** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $U : \mathcal{M}' \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be an orthogonality-reflecting functor between locally small categories, and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}'$ .

- Let  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}'$  be a diagram. If  $UY$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $Ug : UM \rightarrow UN$ , then  $Y$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .
- Let  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}'$  be a diagram. If  $UX$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $Ug : UM \rightarrow UN$ , then  $X$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as [proposition 5.5.27](#). ■

**5.5.33** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category.

- A **Reedy cell complex** (resp. **relative Reedy cell complex**) in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex (resp. relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex), where  $\mathcal{I}$  is the set of all boundary inclusions  $\partial h_A \hookrightarrow h_A$ .
- A **Reedy cell complex** (resp. **relative Reedy cell complex**) in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$  is an  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex (resp. relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex), where  $\mathcal{I}$  is the set of all boundary inclusions  $\partial h^A \hookrightarrow h^A$ .

**5.5.34** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category with degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , let  $C_{\leq n}$  be the full subcategory spanned by the objects  $A$  in  $C$  such that  $\deg A \leq n$ , and let  $j : C_{\leq n} \hookrightarrow C$  be the inclusion.*

- *The restriction functor  $j^* : [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [(C_{\leq n})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  preserves relative Reedy cell complexes.*
- *The restriction functor  $j^* : [C, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [C_{\leq n}, \mathbf{Set}]$  preserves relative Reedy cell complexes.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since  $j^* : [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [(C_{\leq n})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  preserve colimits, it suffices to verify that it sends boundary inclusions to relative Reedy cell complexes. Let  $A$  be an object in  $C$ . If  $\deg A \leq n$ , then  $j^* \partial h_A \hookrightarrow j^* h_A$  is (isomorphic to) a boundary inclusion in  $[(C_{\leq n})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . Otherwise,  $\deg A > n$ , and since no morphism  $A' \rightarrow A$  with  $\deg A' \leq n$  is in the inverse subcategory  $C^{\leftarrow}$ , we deduce that  $j^* \partial h_A \hookrightarrow j^* h_A$  is an isomorphism (so a relative Reedy cell complex *a fortiori*). ■

**5.5.35** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category.*

- *For any object  $A$  in  $C$ , both  $h_A$  and its boundary  $\partial h_A$  are Reedy cell complexes in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*
- *For any object  $A$  in  $C$ , both  $h^A$  and its boundary  $\partial h^A$  are Reedy cell complexes in  $[C, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .*

*Proof.* See Observation 6.2 in [Riehl and Verity, 2014]. □

**5.5.36** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a locally finite Reedy category with degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , let  $C_{\leq n}$  be the full subcategory spanned by the objects  $A$  in  $C$  such that  $\deg A \leq n$ , and let  $j : C_{\leq n} \hookrightarrow C$  be the inclusion.*

- *If  $\deg A = n + 1$ , then  $j^* \partial h_A$  is an  $\aleph_0$ -compact object in  $[(C_{\leq n})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .*
- *If  $\deg A = n + 1$ , then  $j^* \partial h^A$  is an  $\aleph_0$ -compact object in  $[C_{\leq n}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 0.2.46](#) to [lemma 5.5.15](#). (Recall that the latching category  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$  is finite by hypothesis.) ■



**5.5.37** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category.

- A morphism in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a relative Reedy cell complex if and only if its relative latching morphisms are injective maps.
- A morphism in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a relative Reedy cell complex if and only if its relative latching morphisms are injective maps.

*Proof.* See Corollary 6.8 in [Riehl and Verity, 2014].  $\square$

**5.5.38** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is cocomplete, if  $\alpha : F \rightarrow G$  is a relative Reedy cell complex in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  and  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ , then in the commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F \star_C X & \xrightarrow{\alpha \star_C \text{id}_X} & G \star_C X \\
 \text{id}_F \star_C \varphi \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_G \star_C \varphi \\
 F \star_C Y & \xrightarrow{\quad} & F \star_C Y \cup^{F \star_C X} G \star_C Y \\
 & \searrow \alpha \star_C \text{id}_Y & \nearrow \text{dashed} \\
 & & G \star_C Y
 \end{array}$$

where the square is a pushout, the indicated arrow

$$F \star_C Y \cup^{F \star_C X} G \star_C Y \rightarrow G \star_C Y$$

has the left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

- Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is complete, if  $\alpha : F \rightarrow G$  is a relative Reedy cell complex in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$  and  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ , then in the commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \{G, X\}^C & & \xrightarrow{\{G, \varphi\}^C} & & \{G, Y\}^C \\
 \downarrow \{\alpha, X\}^C & \searrow \text{dashed} & & \downarrow \{\alpha, Y\}^C & \\
 \{F, X\}^C & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{F, X\}^C \times_{\{F, Y\}^C} \{G, Y\}^C & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{G, Y\}^C \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \{\alpha, Y\}^C \\
 & & \{F, X\}^C & \xrightarrow{\{F, \varphi\}^C} & \{F, Y\}^C
 \end{array}$$

where the square is a pullback, the indicated arrow

$$\{G, X\}^C \rightarrow \{F, X\}^C \times_{\{F, Y\}^C} \{G, Y\}^C$$

has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.3.19](#) to Lemma 5.7 in [Riehl and Verity, 2014]. ■

**5.5.39** COROLLARY. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $\alpha : F \rightarrow G$  is a relative Reedy cell complex in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  and  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-projective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ , then the morphism*

$$\alpha \star_C \text{id}_Y : F \star_C Y \rightarrow G \star_C Y$$

*has the left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  (if it exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*

- *If  $\alpha : F \rightarrow G$  is a relative Reedy cell complex in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$  and  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-injective with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ , then the morphism*

$$\{\alpha, X\}^C : \{G, X\}^C \rightarrow \{F, X\}^C$$

*has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  (if it exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By enlarging the universe or shrinking  $\mathcal{M}$  if necessary, we may assume  $\mathcal{M}$  is a small category. The Yoneda embedding  $h^\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is then fully faithful and preserves all colimits that exist in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is a cocomplete locally small category. We then apply [lemma 5.5.29](#) and [proposition 5.5.38](#). ■

**5.5.40** COROLLARY. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $F$  is a Reedy cell complex in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  and  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ , then the morphism*

$$\text{id}_F \star_C \varphi : F \star_C X \rightarrow F \star_C Y$$

*has the left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  (if it exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*

- If  $F$  is a Reedy cell complex in  $[C, \mathbf{Set}]$  and  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ , then the morphism

$$\{F, \varphi\}^C : \{F, X\}^C \rightarrow \{F, Y\}^C$$

has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  (if it exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ ).

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By enlarging the universe or shrinking  $\mathcal{M}$  if necessary, we may assume  $\mathcal{M}$  is a small category. The Yoneda embedding  $\hat{h}^\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is then fully faithful and preserves all colimits that exist in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is a cocomplete locally small category. We then apply [lemma 5.5.24](#) and [proposition 5.5.38](#). ■

**5.5.41** COROLLARY. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category with degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ , let  $A$  be an object in  $C$  with  $\deg A = n + 1$ , let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If the restriction of  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  in  $[C_{\leq n}, \mathcal{M}]$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  and the relative latching object  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the insertion  $XA \rightarrow L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .
- If the restriction of  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  in  $[C_{\leq n}, \mathcal{M}]$  has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  and the relative matching object  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the projection  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By enlarging the universe or shrinking  $\mathcal{M}$  if necessary, we may assume  $\mathcal{M}$  is a small category. The Yoneda embedding  $\hat{h}^\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is then fully faithful and preserves all colimits that exist in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is a cocomplete locally small category. We may then apply [lemma 5.5.24](#) and replace  $\mathcal{M}$  with  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$ , i.e. we may assume  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cocomplete locally small category.

Now, as in [remark 5.5.22](#), we have a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_A(X) & \longrightarrow & XA \\ L_A(\varphi) \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_A(Y) & \longrightarrow & L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \end{array}$$

[Proposition 5.5.35](#) says that the boundary  $\partial h_A$  is a Reedy cell complex, so by [corollary 5.5.40](#),  $L_A(\varphi) : L_A(X) \rightarrow L_A(Y)$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ ; hence, by [proposition A.3.19](#), the right vertical arrow in the above pushout diagram has the same left lifting property. This proves the claim.  $\blacksquare$

**5.5.42** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a pair of subclasses of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{M}$  such that  $\mathcal{L} = \square \mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{L} \square$ , let  $\psi : Z \Rightarrow W$  be a morphism in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  that has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to (every morphism that is in)  $\mathcal{R}$ , and let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  that has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to (every morphism that is in)  $\mathcal{L}$ .*

- *If the relative latching objects  $L_A(Z, W, \psi)$  exist in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all objects  $A$  in  $C$ , then  $\varphi : Z \Rightarrow W$  has the left lifting property with respect to  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$ .*
- *If the relative matching objects  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exist in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all objects  $A$  in  $C$ , then  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $\psi : Z \Rightarrow W$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose we have a commutative square in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{\zeta} & X \\ \psi \downarrow & & \downarrow \varphi \\ W & \xrightarrow{\omega} & Y \end{array}$$

Choose a degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  and let  $A$  be an object in  $C$  with  $\deg A = n+1$ . Suppose we have defined for all objects  $A'$  in  $C_{\leq n}$  a morphism  $\eta_{A'} : X A' \rightarrow W A'$ , such that these morphisms constitute a natural transformation of diagrams  $C_{\leq n} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  such that the following diagram commute in  $[C_{\leq n}, \mathcal{M}]$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{\zeta} & X \\ \psi \downarrow & \nearrow \eta & \downarrow \varphi \\ W & \xrightarrow{\omega} & Y \end{array}$$

Note that the relative latching morphism  $L_A(Z, W, \psi) \rightarrow W A$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$  and is in  $\mathcal{L}$  by hypothesis. Thus (by passing through the Yoneda embedding  $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow$

$[\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  if necessary), there is an induced commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_A(Z, W, \psi) & \longrightarrow & XA \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ WA & \longrightarrow & M_A(X, Y, \varphi) \end{array}$$

in which the right vertical arrow has the right lifting property with respect to the left vertical arrow (by lemma 5.5.24). We thus obtain a morphism  $\eta_A : WA \rightarrow XA$  making the evident triangles commute. Using lemma 5.5.15, we deduce that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} XA' & \xrightarrow{\eta_{A'}} & WA' \\ X\delta \downarrow & & \downarrow W\delta \\ XA & \xrightarrow{\eta_A} & WA \end{array}$$

commutes for every morphism  $\delta : A' \rightarrow A$  in  $C_{\rightarrow}$ , and similarly, the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} XA & \xrightarrow{\eta_A} & WA \\ X\sigma \downarrow & & \downarrow W\sigma \\ XA' & \xrightarrow{\eta_{A'}} & WA' \end{array}$$

commutes for every morphism  $\sigma : A \rightarrow A'$  in  $C^{\leftarrow}$ ; so by using the factorisation axiom, we can extend  $\eta$  to a natural transformation of diagrams  $C_{\leq n+1}$ . Hence, by induction, we obtain a solution to our original lifting problem in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ . ■

**5.5.43 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a pair of subclasses of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{M}$  such that  $\mathcal{L} = \square \mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{L} \square$ .*

- *If  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-injective with respect to (every morphism that is in)  $\mathcal{L}$ ,  $\psi : Z \Rightarrow W$  is a morphism in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  that has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $\mathcal{R}$ , and the relative latching objects  $L_A(Z, W, \psi)$  exist in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all objects  $A$  in  $C$ , then  $X$  is injective with respect to  $\psi : Z \Rightarrow W$ .*
- *If  $W : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-projective with respect to (every morphism that is in)  $\mathcal{R}$ ,  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  that has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $\mathcal{L}$ , and the relative matching objects  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exist in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all objects  $A$  in  $C$ , then  $W$  is projective with respect to  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as that of [proposition 5.5.42](#). ■

**5.5.44** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be Reedy categories. Then  $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}$  is a Reedy category, with direct subcategory  $\mathcal{C}_{\rightarrow} \times \mathcal{D}_{\rightarrow}$  and inverse subcategory  $\mathcal{C}^{\leftarrow} \times \mathcal{D}^{\leftarrow}$ .*

*Proof.* See Proposition 15.1.6 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

**5.5.45** ¶ Given functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , let  $F \boxtimes G : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be the functor defined by  $(F \boxtimes G)(C, D) = F(C) \times G(D)$ . Note that we may identify  $h^{(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})}$  with  $h^{\mathcal{C}} \boxtimes h^{\mathcal{D}}$ .

**5.5.46** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be small Reedy categories.*

- *For any object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and any object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the following diagram is a pushout square in  $[\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial h_C \boxtimes \partial h_D & \hookrightarrow & \partial h_C \boxtimes h_D \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ h_C \boxtimes \partial h_D & \hookrightarrow & \partial(h_C \boxtimes h_D) \end{array}$$

- *For any object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and any object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the following diagram is a pushout square in  $[\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Set}]$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial h^C \boxtimes \partial h^D & \hookrightarrow & \partial h^C \boxtimes h^D \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ h^C \boxtimes \partial h^D & \hookrightarrow & \partial(h^C \boxtimes h^D) \end{array}$$

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**5.5.47** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be small Reedy categories, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category, let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{M}]$ , and let  $g : M \rightarrow N$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be the class of morphisms in  $[\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  that have the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ . Assuming the relative latching objects  $L_C(X, Y, \varphi)$  exist in  $[\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  for every object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the relative latching morphisms  $L_C(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YC$  are in  $\mathcal{L}$  if and only if  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  (regarded as a morphism in  $[\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{M}]$ ) has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .*

- Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be the class of morphisms in  $[D, \mathcal{M}]$  that have the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ . Assuming the relative matching objects  $M_C(X, Y, \varphi)$  exist in  $[D, \mathcal{M}]$  for every object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the relative matching morphisms  $XC \rightarrow M_C(X, Y, \varphi)$  are in  $\mathcal{R}$  if and only if  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  (regarded as a morphism in  $[C \times D, \mathcal{M}]$ ) has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By enlarging the universe or shrinking  $\mathcal{M}$  if necessary, we may assume  $\mathcal{M}$  is a small category. The Yoneda embedding  $\hat{h}^\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is then fully faithful and preserves all colimits that exist in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$  is a cocomplete locally small category. We may then apply [lemma 5.5.24](#) and replace  $\mathcal{M}$  with  $[\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}}$ , i.e. we may assume  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cocomplete locally small category.

Let  $C$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $\lambda_C : L_C(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YC$  be the relative latching morphism, and let  $D$  be an object in  $\mathcal{D}$ . It can be shown that the relative latching object  $L_D(L_C(X, Y, \varphi), YC, \lambda_C)$  is the colimit for the commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & X(C)(D) & & \\
 & \nearrow & & \nwarrow & \\
 L_D(XC) & & & & L_C(X)(D) \\
 \downarrow L_D(\varphi_C) & \nwarrow & L_D(L_C(X)) & \nearrow & \downarrow L_C(\varphi)_D \\
 L_D(YC) & & & & L_C(Y)(D) \\
 & \nwarrow & L_D(L_C(Y)) & \nearrow & \\
 & & L_D(L_C(Y)) & & 
 \end{array}$$

Indeed, by [remark 5.5.22](#) and [proposition A.6.15](#), we have the following pushout square in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 L_D(L_C(X)) & \longrightarrow & L_D(XC) \\
 L_D(L_C(\varphi)) \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 L_D(L_C(X)) & \longrightarrow & L_D(L_C(X, Y, \varphi))
 \end{array}$$

and since (weighted) colimits in  $[D, \mathcal{M}]$  can be computed componentwise, we also have the pushout square shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_C(X)(D) & \longrightarrow & X(C)(D) \\ L_C(\varphi)_D \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_C(Y)(D) & \longrightarrow & L_C(X, Y, \varphi)(D) \end{array}$$

On the other hand, by [lemma 5.5.46](#), the following are pushout squares in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_D(L_C(X)) & \longrightarrow & L_D(XC) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_C(X)(D) & \longrightarrow & L_{(C,D)}(X) \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} L_D(L_C(Y)) & \longrightarrow & L_D(YC) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_C(Y)(D) & \longrightarrow & L_{(C,D)}(Y) \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L_{(C,D)}(X) & \longrightarrow & X(C)(D) \\ L_{(C,D)}(\varphi) \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L_{(C,D)}(Y) & \longrightarrow & L_{(C,D)}(X, Y, \varphi) \end{array}$$

thus,

$$L_D(L_C(X, Y, \varphi), YC, \lambda_C) \cong L_{(C,D)}(X, Y, \varphi)$$

and moreover, this isomorphism is compatible with the relative latching morphisms. Thus, the relative latching morphisms  $\lambda_C : L_C(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YC$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  (for every  $C$ ) if and only if the relative latching morphisms  $L_{(C,D)}(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow Y(C)(D)$  have the left lifting property with respect to  $g : M \rightarrow N$  (for every  $C$  and  $D$ ), as claimed.  $\blacksquare$



## 5.6 Reedy model structures

**Prerequisites.** §§5.1, 5.3, 5.5.

**5.6.1** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure.

- A **Reedy weak equivalence** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a natural transformation such that all its components are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **Reedy cofibration** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a natural transformation that has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to all trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **Reedy trivial cofibration** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a natural transformation that has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to all fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **Reedy fibration** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a natural transformation that has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to all trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **Reedy trivial fibration** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a natural transformation that has the Reedy right lifting property with respect to all cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **Reedy-cofibrant object** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a diagram that is Reedy-projective with respect to all trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **Reedy-fibrant object** in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a diagram that is Reedy-injective with respect to all trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.6.2** REMARK. Since every trivial cofibration is a cofibration, every Reedy trivial fibration is a Reedy fibration; dually, since every trivial fibration is a fibration, every Reedy trivial cofibration is a Reedy cofibration.

**5.6.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure.*

- *If  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant diagram, then, for each object  $A$  in  $C$ , the object  $Y A$  is cofibrant in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *If  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-fibrant diagram, then, for each object  $A$  in  $C$ , the object  $X A$  is fibrant in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Recalling [proposition 5.5.35](#), this is a special case of [corollary 5.5.39](#). ■

**5.6.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure.*

- *If  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration) in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ , then, for each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphisms  $L_A(\varphi) : L_A(X) \rightarrow L_A(Y)$  (if it exists) and  $\varphi_A : X A \rightarrow Y A$  are cofibrations (resp trivial cofibrations).*
- *If  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy fibration (resp. Reedy trivial fibration) in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ , then, for each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphisms  $M_A(\varphi) : M_A(X) \rightarrow M_A(Y)$  (if it exists) and  $\varphi_A : X A \rightarrow Y A$  are fibrations (resp trivial fibrations).*

*Proof.* Recalling [proposition 5.5.35](#), this is a special case of [corollary 5.5.40](#). ■

**5.6.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure. For each object  $S$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , assuming  ${}^S/\mathcal{M}$  is equipped with the slice model structure:*

- (i) *A natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow {}^S/\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy weak equivalence if and only if the underlying natural transformation of diagrams*
- (ii) *A natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow {}^S/\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration, Reedy fibration, Reedy trivial fibration) if underlying natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is.*
- (iii) *A diagram  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow {}^S/\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant (resp. Reedy-fibrant) object if the underlying diagram  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is.*

*Dually, for each object  $T$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , assuming  $\mathcal{M}_{/T}$  is equipped with the slice model structure:*

- (i) *A natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{/T}$  is a Reedy weak equivalence if and only if the underlying natural transformation of diagrams*
- (ii) *A natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{/T}$  is a Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration, Reedy fibration, Reedy trivial fibration) if underlying natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is.*
- (iii) *A diagram  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{/T}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant (resp. Reedy-fibrant) object if the underlying diagram  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is.*

*Proof.* (i). This is an immediate consequence of the definition of weak equivalence in  ${}^S/\mathcal{M}$ .

(ii). The four subclaims are similar; we will prove the first.

Let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a natural transformation of diagrams  $C \rightarrow {}^S/\mathcal{M}$  and let  $U : {}^S/\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be the projection. By [proposition 5.5.27](#) and [lemma A.3.7](#), if  $U\varphi : UX \Rightarrow UY$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to all trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  has the Reedy left lifting property with respect to all trivial fibrations in  ${}^S/\mathcal{M}$ . In other words, if  $U\varphi : UX \Rightarrow UY$  is a Reedy cofibration in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ , then  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy cofibration in  $[C, {}^S/\mathcal{M}]$ .

(iii). The two subclaims are similar; we will prove the first.

Let  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a diagram (and let [proposition 5.5.27](#) and [lemma A.3.7](#)). By [proposition 5.5.32](#) (and [lemma A.3.7](#) again), if  $UY$  is Reedy-projective with respect to all trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $Y$  is Reedy-projective with respect to all trivial fibrations in  ${}^S/\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, if  $UY$  is a Reedy-cofibrant object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ , then  $Y$  is a Reedy-cofibrant object in  $[C, {}^S/\mathcal{M}]$ . ■

**5.6.6 DEFINITION.** Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure. A **sub-Reedy model structure** on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a model structure that satisfies the following conditions:

- The weak equivalences are the Reedy weak equivalences.
- Every cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration, fibration, trivial fibration) in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration, Reedy fibration, Reedy trivial fibration).
- Every cofibrant (resp. fibrant) object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a Reedy-cofibrant (resp. Reedy-fibrant) object.

**5.6.7 PROPOSITION.** Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  is a locally small category with a model structure, and let  $\mathcal{N}$  be a homotopically replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Given a sub-Reedy model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ , if  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  satisfies axiom DC0, then its restriction to  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  is a sub-Reedy model structure (with respect to the model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$  restricted from  $\mathcal{M}$ ), and  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  also satisfies axiom DC0.

*Proof.* By [proposition 5.1.28](#), the model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  restricted to  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  is a model structure, and if  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  satisfies axiom DC0, then so does  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$ ,

and moreover the cofibrant (resp. fibrant) objects in  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  are cofibrant (resp. fibrant) objects in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ .

It remains to be shown that the model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  is sub-Reedy if the model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is. Clearly, the Reedy weak equivalences in  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  are the Reedy weak equivalences in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  that are in  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$ . On the other hand, every Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration, etc.) in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  that is in  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  is also a Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration, etc.) in  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$ , so we indeed have a sub-Reedy model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$ . ■

**5.6.8 DEFINITION.** A **Reedy-admissible derivable category** is a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies the following additional axioms:

**RD0.** For any locally finite Reedy category  $C$  and any diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , there exist

- a Reedy trivial cofibration  $X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  where  $\hat{X}$  is a Reedy-fibrant object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ , and
- a Reedy trivial fibration  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  where  $\tilde{X}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ .

**RD1.** For any locally finite Reedy category  $C$  with degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$  and any object  $A$  in  $C$  with  $\deg A = n + 1$ :

- For every morphism  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  whose restriction is a Reedy trivial cofibration in  $[C_{\leq n}, \mathcal{M}]$ , the relative latching object  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- For every morphism  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  whose restriction is a Reedy trivial fibration in  $[C_{\leq n}, \mathcal{M}]$ , the relative matching object  $M_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**RD5.** For any locally finite Reedy category  $C$ , every morphism in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  can be factored in two ways:

- a Reedy trivial cofibration followed by a Reedy fibration, and
- a Reedy cofibration followed by a Reedy trivial fibration.

**5.6.9 REMARK.** By [remark 5.5.22](#), every model category automatically satisfies axiom RD1; and by [lemma 5.1.16](#), if a model category satisfies axiom RD5, then it also satisfies axiom RD0.

**5.6.10** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category that satisfies axiom RD1 (resp. axiom CMI\*).*

- *A morphism in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a Reedy trivial cofibration if and only if it is both a Reedy cofibration and a Reedy weak equivalence.*
- *A morphism in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a Reedy trivial fibration if and only if it is both a Reedy fibration and a Reedy weak equivalence.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

We have already noted that every Reedy trivial cofibration is a Reedy cofibration, and [proposition 5.6.4](#) says that every Reedy trivial cofibration is a componentwise trivial cofibration, hence is a Reedy weak equivalence *a fortiori*.

Now suppose  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a natural transformation of diagrams  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  that is both a Reedy cofibration and a Reedy weak equivalence. Choose a degree function  $\deg : \text{ob } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ . Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and suppose that the relative latching morphism  $L_{A'}(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow Y A'$  exists and is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  for any object  $A'$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with  $\deg A' < \deg A$ . Then, by [lemma 5.5.24](#), the restriction of  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  in  $[\mathcal{C}_{\leq \deg A-1}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a Reedy trivial cofibration, so the relative latching object  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  also exists in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Moreover, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 XA & & \\
 \downarrow & \searrow \varphi_A & \\
 L_A(X, Y, \varphi) & & YA
 \end{array}$$

and [corollary 5.5.41](#) says that the insertion  $XA \rightarrow L_A(X, Y, \varphi)$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so by axiom CM2,  $L_A(X, Y, \varphi) \rightarrow YA$  is a weak equivalence. But  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is a Reedy cofibration by hypothesis, so the relative latching morphism is also a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so this proves that the relative latching morphism is a trivial cofibration. Thus, by induction, we deduce that  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  is indeed a Reedy trivial cofibration in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ . ■

**5.6.11** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category that satisfies axiom RD1 (resp. axiom CMI\*).*

- *The Reedy trivial cofibrations in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  have the left lifting property with respect to the Reedy fibrations in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ .*
- *The Reedy cofibrations in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  have the left lifting property with respect to the Reedy trivial fibrations in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ .*

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 5.5.42](#). ■

**5.6.12** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure that satisfies axiom RD1 (resp. axiom CMI\*). Then there is at most one sub-Reedy model structure on  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ , namely the one defined by the following data:*

- *The weak equivalences are the Reedy weak equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the Reedy cofibrations.*
- *The fibrations are the Reedy fibrations.*

*This model structure (if it exists) is called the **Reedy model structure** on  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ . In addition, in the Reedy model structure:*

- (i) *The trivial cofibrations (resp. trivial fibrations) are the Reedy trivial cofibrations (resp. Reedy trivial fibrations).*
- (ii) *The cofibrant (resp. fibrant) objects are the Reedy-cofibrant (resp. Reedy-fibrant) objects in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose we have a sub-Reedy model structure on  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ . [Lemma 5.6.11](#) implies that every Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy fibration) in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  has the left lifting property (resp. right lifting property) with respect to every trivial fibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ , hence is a cofibration (resp. fibration) in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  (by [theorem 5.1.12](#)). To identify the trivial cofibrations and the trivial fibrations, we apply [lemma 5.6.10](#); and to identify the cofibrant objects and the fibrant objects, we apply [proposition 5.5.43](#). ■

**5.6.13** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category that satisfies axiom RD1. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-admissible derivable category.
- (ii) *For every locally finite Reedy category,  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  (with the Reedy model structure) is a derivable category where the cofibrant (resp. fibrant) objects are the Reedy-cofibrant (resp. Reedy-fibrant) objects.* ■

**5.6.14** COROLLARY. *Let  $C$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a Reedy-admissible derivable category (resp. a complete and cocomplete model category).*

- *If  $C = C_-$ , then the Reedy model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is the injective model structure.*
- *If  $C = C^+$ , then the Reedy model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  is the projective model structure.*

*Proof.* This follows from [corollary 5.6.13](#) and [remark 5.5.21](#). ■

**5.6.15** THEOREM (Kan). *Let  $C$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category with limits and colimits for finite (resp. small) diagrams. The following data define a model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the Reedy weak equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the Reedy cofibrations.*
- *The fibrations are the Reedy fibrations.*

*This model structure is called the **Reedy model structure** on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ . Moreover, if  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom CM5\*, then so does  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 5.2.5 in [Hovey, [1999](#)], or Theorem 15.3.4 in [Hirschhorn, [2003](#)]. □

**5.6.16** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model category, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-admissible derivable category.*

*Proof.* Combine [corollary 5.6.13](#) and [theorem 5.6.15](#). ■

**5.6.17** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category with a model structure.*

- *If the injective model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  exists, then the trivial adjunction*

$$\mathrm{id} \dashv \mathrm{id} : [C, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$$

*is a Quillen equivalence between the injective model structure and any sub-Reedy model structure.*

- *If the projective model structure on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  exists, then the trivial adjunction*

$$\mathrm{id} \dashv \mathrm{id} : [C, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$$

*is a Quillen equivalence between any sub-Reedy model structure and the projective model structure.*

*Proof.* This is an immediate consequence of [proposition 5.6.4](#). ■

**5.6.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  be derivable categories, let  $C$  be a small Reedy category, and let*

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$$

*be a Quillen adjunction.*

- *The induced left adjoint  $[C, F] : [C, \mathcal{N}] \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  preserves Reedy cofibrations, Reedy trivial cofibrations, and Reedy-cofibrant objects.*
- *The induced right adjoint  $[C, G] : [C, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{N}]$  preserves Reedy fibrations, Reedy trivial fibrations, and Reedy-fibrant objects.*

*In particular, the induced adjunction*

$$[C, F] \dashv [C, G] : [C, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{N}]$$

*is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the Reedy model structures on  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  and  $[C, \mathcal{N}]$  (if they exist).*

*Proof.* Apply lemmas [5.5.25](#) and [5.5.30](#). ■



**5.6.19** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category with limits and colimits for all finite (resp. small) diagrams.*

- *A diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-cofibrant if and only if every latching morphism  $L_A(X) \rightarrow XA$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *A diagram  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-fibrant if and only if every matching morphism  $XA \rightarrow M_A(X)$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $0$  be an initial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $1$  be a terminal object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . It is a standard fact that  $\Delta 0$  is an initial object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$  and  $\Delta 1$  is a terminal object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ , so the claims follow from lemma 5.1.16, remark 5.5.22, and the observation that the latching morphism  $L_A(\Delta 0) \rightarrow 0$  and the matching morphism  $1 \rightarrow M_A(\Delta 1)$  are isomorphisms for all objects  $A$  in  $C$ . ■

**5.6.20** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a locally finite Reedy category (resp. a small Reedy category) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category with limits and colimits for all finite (resp. small) diagrams.*

- *If  $Y : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy cofibrant diagram, then, for every object  $A$  in  $C$ , the latching object  $L_A(Y)$  are cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *If  $X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy fibrant diagram, then, for every object  $A$  in  $C$ , the matching object  $M_A(X)$  are fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Recalling proposition 5.5.35, this is a special case of corollary 5.5.39. ■

**5.6.21** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  and  $D$  be locally finite Reedy categories (resp. small Reedy categories) and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category with limits and colimits for finite (resp. small) diagrams. Then the canonical isomorphisms*

$$[C, [D, \mathcal{M}]] \cong [C \times D, \mathcal{M}] \cong [D, [C, \mathcal{M}]]$$

*are compatible with the respective (iterated) Reedy model structures.*

*Proof.* It is clear that the above isomorphisms are compatible with the weak equivalences in each model structure. To see that they are also compatible with the Reedy cofibrations and the Reedy fibrations, apply lemma 5.5.47. ■

**5.6.22** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a Reedy category.

- $C$  has **cofibrant constants** if, for every object  $A$  in  $C$ , the latching category  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$  has at most one connected component.
- $C$  has **fibrant constants** if, for every object  $A$  in  $C$ , the matching category  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A}$  has at most one connected component.

**5.6.23** EXAMPLE. Let  $C$  be a Reedy category.

- If  $C = C^{\leftarrow}$ , then  $C$  has cofibrant constants. (In fact, every latching category is empty.)
- If  $C = C_{\rightarrow}$ , then  $C$  has fibrant constants. (In fact, every matching category is empty.)

**5.6.24** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category, let  $C$  be a finite (resp. small) Reedy category, and assume  $\mathcal{M}$  has limits and colimits for all finite (resp. small) diagrams.

- If  $C$  has cofibrant constants, then the functor  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a left Quillen functor.
- If  $C$  has fibrant constants, then the functor  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a right Quillen functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the second version.

If the matching category  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A}$  is empty, then the matching object of  $\Delta X$  at  $A$  is a terminal object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so the relative matching morphism of  $\Delta f$  at  $A$  is isomorphic to  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in this case.

On the other hand, if the matching category  $\partial C^{\leftarrow A}$  of  $C$  has only one connected component, then the matching morphism  $X \rightarrow M_A(\Delta X)$  must be an isomorphism, so the relative matching morphism of  $\Delta f$  at  $A$  is an isomorphism, hence a (trivial) fibration in particular.

We now conclude that, for any fibration  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , every relative matching morphism of  $\Delta f : \Delta X \rightarrow \Delta Y$  is a fibration. Clearly, the functor  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  preserves weak equivalences, so this completes the proof that  $\Delta$  is a right Quillen functor. ■

**5.6.25** THEOREM (Hirschhorn). *Let  $C$  be a small Reedy category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $C$  has cofibrant constants.
- (ii)  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a left Quillen functor for all DHK model categories  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (iii) For every cofibrant object  $X$  in any DHK model category  $\mathcal{M}$ , the constant diagram  $\Delta X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy cofibrant.

*Dually, the following are equivalent:*

- (i')  $C$  has fibrant constants.
- (ii')  $\Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  is a right Quillen functor for all DHK model categories  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (iii') For every fibrant object  $X$  in any DHK model category  $\mathcal{M}$ , the constant diagram  $\Delta X : C \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is Reedy fibrant.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is [proposition 5.6.24](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Left Quillen functors preserve cofibrant objects, by [proposition 5.3.4](#).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Take  $\mathcal{M}$  to be **Set** equipped with the mono–epi model structure,<sup>[1]</sup> and consider the constant diagram  $\Delta 1$ . Since  $1$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\Delta 1$  must be a Reedy cofibrant object in  $[C, \mathcal{M}]$ . It is not hard to see that the latching object  $L_A(\Delta 1)$  is the set of connected components of the latching category  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$ , so by [lemma 5.6.19](#),  $\partial C_{\rightarrow A}$  has at most one connected component. ■

**5.6.26** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category and let  $C$  be a small Reedy category.*

- *If  $C$  has fibrant constants, then the adjunction  $\varinjlim_C \dashv \Delta : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$  is deformable.*
- *If  $C$  has cofibrant constants, then the adjunction  $\Delta \dashv \varprojlim_C : [C, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is deformable.*

*Proof.* Apply [theorem 5.3.13](#) to the above result. ■

[1] See [example 5.1.6](#).

For the remainder of this section, we follow [Barwick, 2007a] and discuss the functoriality of the Reedy model structure.

**5.6.27 DEFINITION.** Let  $C$  and  $D$  be Reedy categories. A **morphism of Reedy categories**  $C \rightarrow D$  is a functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  that sends every morphism in  $C_{\rightarrow}$  to  $D_{\rightarrow}$  and every morphism in  $C^{\leftarrow}$  to  $D^{\leftarrow}$ , or equivalently, a commutative diagram of functors of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C_{\rightarrow} & \xrightarrow{F_{\rightarrow}} & D_{\rightarrow} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ C & \xrightarrow{F} & D \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ C^{\leftarrow} & \xrightarrow{F^{\leftarrow}} & D^{\leftarrow} \end{array}$$

**5.6.28 LEMMA.** Let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  be a morphism of Reedy categories. If  $D$  is any object in  $D$ , then:

- There is a unique Reedy category structure on the comma category  $(F \downarrow D)$  making the projection  $(F \downarrow D) \rightarrow C$  a morphism of Reedy categories.
- There is a unique Reedy category structure on the comma category  $(D \downarrow F)$  making the projection  $(D \downarrow F) \rightarrow C$  a morphism of Reedy categories.

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

While it is true that any functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  induces a homotopical functor  $F^* : [D, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [C, \mathcal{M}]$ , even if  $F$  is a morphism of Reedy categories,  $F^*$  need not be either a left Quillen functor or a right Quillen functor. Instead, we must consider the following:

**5.6.29 DEFINITION.** Let  $C$  and  $D$  be Reedy categories.

- A **left fibration of Reedy categories** is a morphism  $F : C \rightarrow D$  such that, for any object  $D$  in  $D$ , the comma category  $(F \downarrow D)$  has fibrant constants.
- A **right fibration of Reedy categories** is a morphism  $F : C \rightarrow D$  such that, for any object  $D$  in  $D$ , the comma category  $(D \downarrow F)$  has cofibrant constants.

**5.6.30** REMARK. A Reedy category  $\mathcal{C}$  has fibrant (resp. cofibrant) constants if and only if the unique morphism  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is a left (resp. right) fibration.

**5.6.31** REMARK. A morphism  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  of Reedy categories is a left (resp. right) fibration if and only if  $F^{\text{op}} : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}$  is a right (resp. left) fibration.

**5.6.32** THEOREM (Barwick). *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a morphism between small Reedy categories. The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a left fibration of Reedy categories.*
- (ii) *For every object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  and every object  $(C, h)$  in  $(F \downarrow D)$ , the matching category  $\partial(F \downarrow D)^{\leftarrow(C, h)}$  has at most one connected component.*
- (iii) *The functor  $F^* : [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a right Quillen functor for all DHK model categories  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Dually, the following are equivalent:*

- (i') *The morphism  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a right fibration of Reedy categories.*
- (ii') *For every object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  and every object  $(C, h)$  in  $(D \downarrow F)$ , the latching category  $\partial(D \downarrow F)_{\rightarrow(C, h)}$  has at most one connected component.*
- (iii') *The functor  $F^* : [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  is a left Quillen functor for all DHK model categories  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* See Lemma 2.6 and Theorem 2.7 in [Barwick, 2007a], or Lemma 3.20 and Theorem 3.22 in [Barwick, 2010]. ■

## 5.7 Framings and resolutions

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.2, 1.5, 2.3, 5.1, 5.2, 5.3, 5.5, 5.6.

In homological algebra, one studies objects in categories without homotopical structure by embedding them in one that does, in such a way that objects in the original category become weakly equivalent to their presentations. The notion of ‘resolution’ in the sense of Dwyer and Kan [1980c] was invented for similar reasons: though not every model category has a simplicial enrichment, we can still replace objects with homotopically better-behaved simplicial (or co-simplicial) ones. It is also useful to simultaneously discuss the closely related notion of ‘framing’ introduced by Dwyer, Hirschhorn and Kan [DHK].

In this section, we follow [Hirschhorn, 2003, Ch. 16].

**5.7.1 ¶** Throughout this section,  $\mathbf{cM}$  and  $\mathbf{sM}$  will always be equipped with the Reedy model structure, which exists (by [theorem 5.6.15](#)) when  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model category.

**5.7.2 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *A cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-cofibrant if and only if, for all monomorphisms  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  between finite simplicial sets, the morphism*

$$i \star \mathrm{id}_B : Z \star B \rightarrow W \star B$$

*induced by  $i$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *A simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is Reedy-fibrant if and only if, for all monomorphisms  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  between finite simplicial sets, the morphism*

$$\{i, A\} : \{W, A\} \rightarrow \{Z, A\}$$

*induced by  $i$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

[Proposition 1.2.34](#) implies that the class of monomorphisms between finite simplicial sets is the smallest class of morphisms between finite simplicial sets that contains the boundary inclusions  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  and is closed under pushout and composition. Thus, by [corollary 5.5.40](#),  $i \star \mathrm{id}_B : Z \star B \rightarrow W \star B$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  for any monomorphism  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  between finite simplicial sets and any Reedy-cofibrant cosimplicial object  $B^\bullet$ . Conversely, any such cosimplicial object must be Reedy-cofibrant. ■

**5.7.3** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be any category.

(i) There exist adjunctions of the form below,

$$\begin{aligned} (-)^0 \dashv \text{cosk}^0 : \mathcal{M} &\rightarrow \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M} \\ \text{sk}_0 \dashv (-)_0 : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M} &\rightarrow \mathcal{M} \end{aligned}$$

where  $(-)^0 : \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is the functor that sends a cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  to the object  $A^0$ , and dually,  $(-)_0 : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is the functor that sends a simplicial object  $A_\bullet$  to the object  $A_0$ .

(ii) Moreover, if  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite powers, then  $(-)^0 : \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  has a left adjoint  $\text{sk}^0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$ ; dually, if  $\mathcal{M}$  has finite copowers, then  $(-)_0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  has a right adjoint  $\text{cosk}_0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* It is straightforward to verify that the following formulae work,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sk}_0(A)_n &= A & \text{cosk}_0(A)_n &= [n] \pitchfork A \\ \text{sk}^0(A)^n &= [n] \odot A & \text{cosk}^0(A)^n &= A \end{aligned}$$

where  $[n] \pitchfork A$  is the  $(n+1)$ -fold power of  $A$ , and  $[n] \odot A$  is the  $(n+1)$ -fold copower of  $A$ . ■

**5.7.4** DEFINITION. Let  $A$  be an object in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A **cosimplicial resolution** of  $A$  is a Reedy-cofibrant replacement in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$  for the cosimplicial object  $\text{cosk}^0(A)$ .
- A **simplicial resolution** of  $A$  is a Reedy-fibrant replacement in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  for the simplicial object  $\text{sk}_0(A)$ .

**5.7.5** REMARK. Proposition 5.7.2 implies that (in the case of a model category) the above definition is equivalent to the original definition of ‘resolution’ given by Dwyer and Kan [1980c].

**5.7.6** DEFINITION.

- A **cosimplicially resolvable category** is a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies the following additional axioms:
  - For every object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there is a cosimplicial resolution  $(\tilde{B}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  of  $B$  where  $p^\bullet : \tilde{B}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a degreewise trivial fibration.

- For every weak equivalence  $w : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exist a Reedy cofibration  $u^\bullet : \text{cosk}^0(A) \rightarrow \tilde{B}^\bullet$  and a degreewise trivial fibration  $v^\bullet : \tilde{B}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(B)$  such that  $v^\bullet \circ u^\bullet = \text{cosk}^0(w)$ .
- A **simplicially resolvable category** is a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies the following additional axioms:
  - For every object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there is a simplicial resolution  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  of  $A$  where  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(A) \rightarrow \hat{A}_\bullet$  is a Reedy trivial cofibration.
  - For every weak equivalence  $w : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exist a degreewise trivial cofibration  $u_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(A) \rightarrow \hat{A}_\bullet$  and a Reedy fibration  $v_\bullet : \hat{A}_\bullet \rightarrow \text{sk}_0(B)$  such that  $v_\bullet \circ u_\bullet = \text{sk}_0(w)$ .
- A **resolvable category** is a derivable category that is both a cosimplicially resolvable category and a simplicially resolvable category.

**5.7.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- (i) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-admissible derivable category, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a resolvable category.*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model category, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a resolvable category.*
- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a DHK model category, then cosimplicial resolutions and simplicial resolutions can both be chosen functorially.*

*Proof.* This follows from [proposition 5.1.24](#) and [theorem 5.6.15](#). ■

**5.7.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a resolvable category and let  $\mathcal{N}$  be a homotopically replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category, then so is  $\mathcal{N}$  (with the model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$  inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category, then so is  $\mathcal{N}$  (with the model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$  inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a resolvable category, then so is  $\mathcal{N}$  (with the model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$  inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*



*Proof.* The first two claims are formally dual and the third claim is their conjunction; we will prove the first claim.

By the proof of [proposition 5.6.7](#), Reedy-cofibrant objects (resp. Reedy cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{cM}$  are also Reedy-cofibrant objects (resp. Reedy cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{cN}$ , so  $\mathcal{N}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category if  $\mathcal{M}$  is. ■

**5.7.9** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be an object in a DHK model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *The full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathbf{cM}_{/\mathrm{cosk}_0(C)}$  spanned by the cosimplicial resolutions of  $C$  is homotopically contractible.*<sup>[1]</sup>
- *The full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathrm{sk}_0(C)/\mathbf{sM}$  spanned by the simplicial resolutions of  $A$  is homotopically contractible.*

*Proof.* This follows from [proposition 5.1.26](#) and [theorem 5.6.15](#). ■

**5.7.10** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- $\mathrm{cosk}_0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sM}$  is a right Quillen functor.
- $\mathrm{sk}^0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{cM}$  is a left Quillen functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 5.3.2](#), it is enough to show that  $(-)_0 : \mathbf{sM} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations. However, the latching category at  $[0]$  is empty, so if  $f : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is a Reedy cofibration, then  $f_0 : A_0 \rightarrow B_0$  must be a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since  $(-)_0$  preserves weak equivalences, it follows that  $(-)_0$  preserves trivial cofibrations. ■

**5.7.11** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *There is a unique natural transformation  $\Delta : \mathrm{sk}_0 \Rightarrow \mathrm{cosk}_0$  such that  $\epsilon_A \circ (\Delta_A)_0 \circ \eta_A = \mathrm{id}_A$  for all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , where  $\eta_A : A \rightarrow \mathrm{sk}_0(A)_0$  and  $\epsilon_A : \mathrm{cosk}_0(A)_0 \rightarrow A$  are the components of the unit and counit of the respective adjunctions.*
- *There is a unique natural transformation  $\nabla : \mathrm{sk}^0 \Rightarrow \mathrm{cosk}^0$  such that  $\epsilon_A \circ (\nabla_A)_0 \circ \eta_A = \mathrm{id}_A$  for all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , where  $\eta_A : A \rightarrow \mathrm{sk}^0(A)^0$  and  $\epsilon_A : \mathrm{cosk}^0(A)^0 \rightarrow A$  are the components of the unit and counit of the respective adjunctions.*

[1] See [definition 3.1.30](#).

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is not hard to check that  $\eta_A$  is an isomorphism, so  $\varepsilon_A \circ (\Delta_A)_0$  is uniquely determined. The universal property of  $\text{cosk}_0(A)$  implies  $\Delta_A : \text{sk}_0(A) \rightarrow \text{cosk}_0(A)$  is determined by its adjoint transpose  $\varepsilon_A \circ (\Delta_A)_0 : \text{sk}_0(A)_0 \rightarrow A$ , so  $\Delta_A$  is also uniquely determined.  $\blacksquare$

**5.7.12** DEFINITION. Let  $A$  be an object in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A **cosimplicial frame** on  $A$  is a pair  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$ , where  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence with  $p^0 : \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)^0$  an isomorphism, and  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant if  $A$  is cofibrant.
- A **simplicial frame** on  $A$  is a pair  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$ , where  $\hat{A}_\bullet$  is a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(A) \rightarrow \hat{A}_\bullet$  is a Reedy weak equivalence with  $i_0 : \text{sk}_0(A)_0 \rightarrow \hat{A}_0$  an isomorphism, and  $\hat{A}_\bullet$  is Reedy-fibrant if  $A$  is fibrant.
- A **left frame** on  $A$  is a tuple  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, i^\bullet, p^\bullet)$ , where  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence with  $p^0 : \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)^0$  an isomorphism,  $i^\bullet$  is a Reedy cofibration, and  $p^\bullet \circ i^\bullet = \nabla_A$ .
- A **right frame** on  $A$  is a tuple  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet, p_\bullet)$ , where  $\hat{A}_\bullet$  is a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(A) \rightarrow \hat{A}_\bullet$  is a Reedy weak equivalence with  $i_0 : \text{sk}_0(A)_0 \rightarrow \hat{A}_0$  an isomorphism,  $p_\bullet$  is a Reedy fibration, and  $p_\bullet \circ i_\bullet = \Delta_A$ .

**5.7.13** PROPOSITION. Let  $A$  be an object in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- (i) If  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, i^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a left frame on  $A$ , then  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on  $A$ .
- (ii) If  $A$  is cofibrant, then every cosimplicial frame on  $A$  is a cosimplicial resolution of  $A$ .
- (iii) If  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial resolution of  $A$ , then  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is (the underlying cosimplicial object of) a cosimplicial frame on  $\tilde{A}^0$ , and  $(\tilde{A}^0, p^0)$  is (isomorphic to) a cofibrant replacement for  $A$ .

*Dually:*

- (i') If  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet, p_\bullet)$  is a right frame on  $A$ , then  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial frame on  $A$ .

(ii') If  $A$  is fibrant, then every simplicial frame on  $A$  is a simplicial resolution of  $A$ .

(iii') If  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial resolution of  $A$ , then  $\hat{A}_\bullet$  is (the underlying simplicial object of) a simplicial frame on  $\hat{A}_0$ , and  $(\hat{A}_0, i_0)$  is (isomorphic to) a fibrant replacement for  $A$ .

*Proof.* (i). Suppose  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, i^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a left frame on  $A$ . Lemma 5.7.10 implies that  $\text{cosk}^0(A)$  is Reedy-cofibrant when  $A$  is cofibrant, so  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant when  $A$  is cofibrant. Thus  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is indeed a cosimplicial frame on  $A$ .

(ii). If  $A$  is cofibrant and  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on  $A$ , then  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant, and hence  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a Reedy-cofibrant replacement for  $\text{cosk}^0(A)$ .

(iii). Let  $q^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(\tilde{A}^0)$  be the component of the adjunction unit at  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$ . Since  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence, the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  implies  $q^\bullet$  is also a Reedy weak equivalence. Now,  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant by definition, it follows that  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, q^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on  $\tilde{A}^0$ .

Finally, we note that proposition 5.7.2 implies that  $\tilde{A}^0$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $p^0 : \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)^0$  is a weak equivalence by definition, so  $(\tilde{A}^0, p^0)$  is (isomorphic to) a cofibrant replacement for  $A$ . ■

**5.7.14** REMARK. The notions of ‘left frame’ and ‘right frame’ are originally due to Hovey [1999, § 5.2], but he calls them ‘cosimplicial frame’ and ‘simplicial frame’ and does not give a name to the weaker notion. It is explained in loc. cit. that a left (resp. right) frame on  $A$  is a cosimplicial (resp. simplicial) frame that is almost Reedy-cofibrant (resp. Reedy-fibrant), in the sense that all but one of its latching (resp. matching) morphisms are cofibrations (resp. fibrations). One consequence of this is given in proposition 5.7.21.

**5.7.15** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.

- A **left framing** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a tuple  $(Q^\bullet, i^\bullet, p^\bullet)$ , where  $Q^\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{cM}$  is a functor,  $i^\bullet : \text{sk}^0 \Rightarrow Q^\bullet$  and  $p^\bullet : Q^\bullet \Rightarrow \text{cosk}^0$  are natural transformations, and  $(Q^\bullet A, (i_A)^\bullet, (p_A)^\bullet)$  is a left frame for all *cofibrant* objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **right framing** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a tuple  $(R_\bullet, i_\bullet, p_\bullet)$ , where  $R_\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sM}$  is a functor,  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0 \Rightarrow R_\bullet$  and  $p_\bullet : R_\bullet \Rightarrow \text{cosk}_0$  are natural transformations, and  $(R_\bullet A, (i_A)_\bullet, (p_A)_\bullet)$  is a right frame for all *fibrant* objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

A **framed model category** is a model category equipped with a left framing and a right framing.

**5.7.16** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- (i) *On each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exist a left frame  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, i^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  and a right frame  $(\hat{A}_\bullet, i_\bullet, p_\bullet)$  such that  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a trivial Reedy fibration and  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(A) \rightarrow \hat{A}_\bullet$  is a trivial Reedy cofibration.*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom CM5\*, then the left and right frames in (i) can be chosen functorially; in particular, left and right framings for  $\mathcal{M}$  exist.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 5.2.8 in [Hovey, 1999]. □

**5.7.17** THEOREM. *Let  $A$  be an object in a DHK model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *The nerve of the full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}_{/\text{cosk}^0(A)}$  spanned by the cosimplicial frames on  $A$  is weakly contractible.*
- *The nerve of the full subcategory of the slice category  $\text{sk}^0(A)/\mathbf{s}\mathcal{A}$  spanned by the simplicial frames on  $A$  is weakly contractible.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 16.6.18 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

**5.7.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on  $A$ , then the morphism*

$$\Lambda_k^n \star \tilde{A} \rightarrow \Delta^n \star \tilde{A}$$

*induced by any horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial frame on  $B$ , then the morphism*

$$\{\Delta^n, \hat{B}\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, \hat{B}\}$$

*induced by any horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First, note that [proposition 5.7.2](#) implies that  $\Lambda_k^n \star \tilde{A} \rightarrow \Delta^n \star \tilde{A}$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence, the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  implies that the morphism  $\Delta^n \star \tilde{A} \rightarrow \Delta^0 \star \tilde{A}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all  $n \geq 0$ . It is clear that  $- \star \tilde{A}$  preserves finite colimits of finite simplicial sets, so we may then apply [lemma 1.5.22](#). □

**5.7.19** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be an anodyne extension between finite simplicial sets.*

- *If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on  $A$ , then the morphism*

$$i \star \text{id}_{\tilde{A}} : Z \star \tilde{A} \rightarrow W \star \tilde{A}$$

*induced by  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial frame on  $B$ , then the morphism*

$$\{i, \hat{B}\} : \{W, \hat{B}\} \rightarrow \{Z, \hat{B}\}$$

*induced by  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 1.4.12](#), the class of anodyne extensions between finite simplicial sets is generated by the boundary inclusions under composition, pushouts, and retracts. We already know that  $- \star \tilde{A}$  sends horn inclusions to trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and it is clear that  $- \star \tilde{A}$  preserves composition, pushouts, and retracts, so [theorem 5.1.12](#) and [proposition A.3.19](#) imply that  $i \star \text{id}_{\tilde{A}}$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

Cosimplicial frames and left frames (resp. simplicial frames and right frames) should be regarded as higher cylinder objects (resp. higher path objects). We can make this precise in two different ways:

**5.7.20** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *If  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on  $A$ , then  $(\tilde{A}^1, \delta^1, \delta^0, \sigma^0)$  is a cylinder object for  $\tilde{A}^0$  (and hence, isomorphic to a cylinder object for  $A$ ).*
- *If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial frame on  $B$ , then  $(\hat{B}_1, d_1, d_0, s_0)$  is a path object for  $\hat{B}_0$  (and hence, isomorphic to a path object for  $B$ ).*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is not hard to see that the morphism  $(\delta^1, \delta^0) : \tilde{A}^0 + \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^1$  is isomorphic to the morphism  $\partial\Delta^1 \star \tilde{A} \rightarrow \Delta^1 \star \tilde{A}$  induced by  $\partial\Delta^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$ , and the latter is a

cofibration by [proposition 5.7.2](#). On the other hand, the morphism  $\sigma^0 : \tilde{A}^1 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^0$  is a retraction for  $\delta^1 : \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^1$ , and [proposition 5.7.18](#) implies the latter is (isomorphic to) a trivial cofibration; thus, by the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences,  $\sigma^0 : \tilde{A}^1 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^0$  must be a weak equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**5.7.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *If  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, i^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a left frame on an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $(\tilde{A}^1, \delta^1, \delta^0, \sigma^0)$  is a cylinder object for  $\tilde{A}^0$ .*
- *If  $(\tilde{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet, p_\bullet)$  is a right frame on an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $(\tilde{B}_1, d_1, d_0, s_0)$  is a path object for  $\hat{B}_0$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is not hard to see that the morphism  $(\delta^1, \delta^0) : \tilde{A}^0 + \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^1$  is isomorphic to the relative latching morphism at [1] for  $i^\bullet : \text{sk}^0(A) \rightarrow \tilde{A}^\bullet$ , and the latter is a Reedy cofibration, so  $(\delta^1, \delta^0)$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . On the other hand, we have the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{A}^1 & \xrightarrow{p^1} & \text{cosk}^0(A)^1 \\ \sigma^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \sigma^0 \\ \tilde{A}^0 & \xrightarrow{p^0} & \text{cosk}^0(A)^0 \end{array}$$

where  $p^0$  and  $p^1$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Since  $\sigma^0 : \text{cosk}^0(A)^1 \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)^0$  is an isomorphism (and so a weak equivalence *a fortiori*), the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences implies  $\sigma^0 : \tilde{A}^1 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^0$  is also a weak equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**5.7.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $X$  be a finite simplicial set.*

- *If  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial frame on a cofibrant object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the cosimplicial object  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet$  is (the object part of) a cosimplicial frame on  $X \star \tilde{A}$ .*
- *If  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial frame on a fibrant object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the simplicial object  $(X \pitchfork \hat{B})_\bullet$  is (the object part of) a simplicial frame on  $\{X, \hat{B}\}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To show that the cosimplicial object  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet$  is indeed (the object part of) a cosimplicial frame on  $X \star \tilde{A}$ , it suffices to verify that  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant and all its codegeneracy operators are weak equivalences: the latter

condition ensures that the counit component  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0((X \odot \tilde{A})^0)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence, and we know that  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^0 \cong X \star \tilde{A}$ . By definition, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{M}(Z \star (X \odot \tilde{A}), B) &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(Z, \mathcal{M}((X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet, B)) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(Z, [X, \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, B)]) \\ &\cong \mathbf{sSet}(Z \times X, \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, B)) \\ &\cong \mathcal{M}((Z \times X) \star \tilde{A}, B) \end{aligned}$$

Since  $i \times \text{id}_X : Z \times X \rightarrow W \times X$  is a monomorphism between finite simplicial sets when  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is, we may then use [proposition 5.7.2](#) to deduce that  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet$  is indeed Reedy-cofibrant.

It remains to be shown that the codegeneracy operators of  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^\bullet$  are weak equivalences. The cosimplicial identities and axiom CM2 implies it is enough to show that each coface operator  $\delta_n^i : (X \odot \tilde{A})^{n-1} \rightarrow (X \odot \tilde{A})^n$  is a weak equivalence. Since the unique morphism  $\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$  is a (weak) homotopy equivalence, we can use [proposition 1.5.17](#) and the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences to deduce that, for each  $\delta_n^i : \Delta^{n-1} \rightarrow \Delta^n$ , the induced morphism  $\delta_n^i \times \text{id}_X : \Delta^0 \times X \rightarrow \Delta^n \times X$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. [Proposition 1.5.12](#) then says that  $\delta_n^i \times \text{id}_X$  is an anodyne extension, so by [corollary 5.7.19](#), the induced morphism  $(\Delta^{n-1} \times X) \star \tilde{A} \rightarrow (\Delta^n \times X) \star \tilde{A}$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, every coface operator  $(X \odot \tilde{A})^0 \rightarrow (X \odot \tilde{A})^n$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

## 5.8 Derived hom-spaces

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.5, 1.6, 3.1, 3.3, 5.1, 5.3, 5.5, 5.6, 5.7.

Given a cofibrant object  $A$  and a fibrant object  $B$  in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ , there ought to be a space of morphisms  $A \rightarrow B$ , at least well-defined up to weak equivalence, such that the set of connected components is in natural bijection with the hom-set  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(A, B)$ , while homotopy classes of paths correspond to homotopy classes of homotopies of morphisms  $A \rightarrow B$ , and so on. For this, we will use the notion of ‘resolution’ introduced in the previous section.

**5.8.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- A **weakly constant cosimplicial object** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that every coface and codegeneracy operator is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . We write  $\mathbf{c}_w \mathcal{M}$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{c} \mathcal{M}$  spanned by the weakly constant cosimplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **weakly constant simplicial object** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that every face and degeneracy operator is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . We write  $\mathbf{s}_w \mathcal{M}$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{s} \mathcal{M}$  spanned by the weakly constant simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.8.2** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- A cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is weakly constant if and only if  $d^0 : A^n \rightarrow A^{n+1}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  for every natural number  $n$ .
- A simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is weakly constant if and only if  $d_0 : B_{n+1} \rightarrow B_n$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  for every natural number  $n$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose  $d^0 : A^n \rightarrow A^{n+1}$  is a weak equivalence. Then, by the cosimplicial identities (theorem 1.1.4),  $d^0 \circ s^0 = \mathrm{id}_{A^n}$ , so by the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $s^0 : A^{n+1} \rightarrow A^n$  is also a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . But  $d^1 \circ s^0 = \mathrm{id}_{A^n}$ , so  $d^1 : A^n \rightarrow A^{n+1}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ , etc. ■



**5.8.3** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- Let  $A^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $p^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A^0)$  be the component of the adjunction unit at  $A^\bullet$ . Then  $A^\bullet$  is a weakly constant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the morphism  $p^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A^0)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence.
- Let  $B_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(B_0) \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be the component of the adjunction counit at  $B_\bullet$ . Then  $B_\bullet$  is a weakly constant simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the morphism  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(B_0) \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is a Reedy weak equivalence.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise in using the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences.  $\diamond$

**5.8.4** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.

- A **cosimplicial resolution** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicial object  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  for which there exist an object  $A$  and a morphism  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  such that  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial resolution on  $A$ . We write  $\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$  spanned by the cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A **simplicial resolution** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicial object  $\hat{B}_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  for which there exist an object  $B$  and a morphism  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(B) \rightarrow \hat{B}_\bullet$  such that  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial resolution on  $B$ . We write  $\mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M}$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  spanned by the simplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.8.5** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. Let  $A^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $p^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A^0)$  be the component of the adjunction unit at  $A^\bullet$ .

- $A^\bullet$  is a cosimplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $(A^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  is a cosimplicial resolution of  $A^0$ .
- $A^\bullet$  is a cosimplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $A^\bullet$  is Reedy-cofibrant and weakly constant.

Dually, let  $B_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(B_0) \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be the component of the adjunction counit at  $B_\bullet$ .

- $B_\bullet$  is a simplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $(B_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  is a simplicial resolution of  $B_0$ .

- (ii')  $B_\bullet$  is a simplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $B_\bullet$  is Reedy-fibrant and weakly constant.

*Proof.* These are straightforward consequences of the definitions and [proposition 5.7.13](#). ◆

**5.8.6** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.

- If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category, then there is a left deformation retract of  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  of the form  $(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}, Q^\bullet, p^\bullet)$ .
- If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category, then there is a right deformation retract of  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  of the form  $(\mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M}, R_\bullet, i_\bullet)$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward matter of unwinding the definitions. ◆

**5.8.7** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a homotopical category.

- The following adjunction is an adjoint homotopical equivalence of homotopical categories:

$$(-)^0 \dashv \text{cosk}^0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$$

In particular, we have an adjoint equivalence of homotopy categories:

$$\text{Ho}(-)^0 \dashv \text{Ho cosk}^0 : \text{Ho } \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$$

- The following adjunction is an adjoint homotopical equivalence of homotopical categories:

$$\text{sk}_0 \dashv (-)_0 : \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

In particular, we have an adjoint equivalence of homotopy categories:

$$\text{Ho sk}_0 \dashv \text{Ho } (-)_0 : \text{Ho } \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$$

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First of all, we note that  $\text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a weakly constant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  for every object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so the adjunction in [lemma 5.7.3](#) restricts to an adjunction between  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ . It is clear that the adjunction counit is a natural isomorphism, and [lemma 5.8.3](#) says that the adjunction unit is a natural weak equivalence, so we indeed have an adjoint homotopical equivalence of homotopical categories. Finally, we use [proposition 3.1.29](#) to deduce the claim about homotopy categories. ■

**5.8.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be locally small category.

- Let  $A^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $B$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The **left hom-complex**  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the simplicial set defined by the formula below:

$$(\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B))_n = \mathcal{M}(A^n, B)$$

- Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $B_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The **right hom-complex**  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the simplicial set defined by the formula below:

$$(\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B))_m = \mathcal{M}(A, B_m)$$

- Let  $A^\bullet$  be a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $B_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The **total hom-complex**  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the simplicial set defined by the formula below:

$$(\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B))_k = \mathcal{M}(A_k, B_k)$$

**5.8.9** REMARK. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small category.

- For each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following natural isomorphisms:

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(A), B) \cong \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(A, B)$$

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \text{sk}_0(B)) \cong \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(A, B)$$

- For each cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following natural isomorphism:

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \text{sk}_0(B)) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$$

- For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and each simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following natural isomorphism:

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(A), B) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$$

This justifies our use of the same notation for left, right, and total hom-complexes.

**5.8.10** REMARK. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.

- For each finite simplicial set  $Z$ , each cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following natural bijections:

$$\mathbf{sSet}(Z, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)) \cong \mathcal{M}(Z \star A, B) \cong \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}(A, Z \pitchfork B)$$

- For each finite simplicial set  $Z$ , each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and each simplicial object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following natural bijections:

$$\mathbf{sSet}(Z, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)) \cong \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}(Z \odot A, B) \cong \mathcal{M}(A, \{Z, B\})$$

**5.8.11** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with weak equivalences.

- Let  $A^\bullet$  be a weakly constant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $B$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Given a parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : A^0 \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that the corresponding vertices in the left hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  are in the same connected component, we have  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{M}$ , and  $f_0 : A^0 \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $f_1 : A^0 \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $B$  be a weakly constant simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Given a parallel pair  $f^0, f^1 : A \rightarrow B_0$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that the corresponding vertices in the right hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  are in the same connected component, we have  $f^0 = f^1$  in  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{M}$ , and  $f^0 : A \rightarrow B_0$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $f^1 : A \rightarrow B_0$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By induction, we may assume that there is an edge in  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ , i.e. that there is a morphism  $h : A^1 \rightarrow B$  making the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A^0 & \xrightarrow{f_0} & B \\ \delta^1 \downarrow & & \parallel \\ A^1 & \xrightarrow{h} & B \\ \delta^0 \uparrow & & \parallel \\ A^0 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & B \end{array}$$

Since  $A^\bullet$  is weakly constant, the coface operators  $\delta^0, \delta^1 : A^0 \rightarrow A^1$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; but  $\sigma^0 \circ \delta^0 = \sigma^0 \circ \delta^1 = \text{id}_{A^0}$ , so we must have  $f_0 = f_1$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ , as required. Similarly, the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences ensures that  $f_0 : A^0 \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $f_1 : A^0 \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.12** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *A cofibrant object with respect to any cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a degreewise cofibrant as a cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *A fibrant object with respect to any simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a degreewise fibrant as a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 5.6.3](#)  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.13** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *If  $i^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  is a Reedy cofibration (resp. trivial Reedy cofibration) in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p : C \rightarrow D$  is a trivial fibration (resp. fibration) in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, D) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, C) & \searrow i^* \square p_* & \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, D) \\
 & \bullet & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, D)
 \end{array}$$

*then the unique morphism  $i^* \square p_*$  making the diagram commute is a trivial Kan fibration.*

- *If  $i : A \rightarrow B$  is a cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p_\bullet : C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$  is a trivial Reedy fibration (resp. Reedy fibration) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$ , and the square*

in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, D) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, C) & \searrow i^* \square p_* & \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, D) \\
 & \bullet & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, D)
 \end{array}$$

then the unique morphism  $i^* \square p_*$  making the diagram commute is a trivial Kan fibration.

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 5.5.26](#). ■

**5.8.14** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.

- If  $B^\bullet$  is a Reedy-cofibrant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the left hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  to trivial Kan fibrations.
- If  $C_\bullet$  is a Reedy-fibrant simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the right hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, C) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  to trivial Kan fibrations.

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 5.5.31](#). ■

**5.8.15** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. For any cosimplicial resolution  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

- (i) The left hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends weak equivalences between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.
- (ii) The total hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathbf{sM} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between degreewise fibrant simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.

Dually, for any simplicial resolution  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

- (i') The right hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends weak equivalences between cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.
- (ii') The total hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : (\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between degreewise cofibrant cosimplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets.

*Proof.* (i). Apply lemma 5.1.33 to lemma 5.8.14.

(ii). Consider the functor  $\mathcal{M}(A^\bullet, -) : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{ssSet}$  that sends an object  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  to the bisimplicial set defined by the formula below:

$$(\mathcal{M}(A^\bullet, B_\bullet))_m = \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_m)$$

Then, by claim (i),  $\mathcal{M}(A^\bullet, -)$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between degree-wise fibrant simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to Reedy weak equivalences in  $\mathbf{ssSet}$ . We may then use lemma 1.6.8 and theorem 1.6.10 to deduce that the total hom-complex functor has the required property.  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.16 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- If  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is a cosimplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then for each fibrant object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there is a natural bijection

$$\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^0, B) \rightarrow \pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$$

sending the class (in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ ) of a morphism  $\tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  to the connected component of the corresponding vertex of  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$ .

- If  $\hat{B}_\bullet$  is a simplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then for each cofibrant object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , there is a natural bijection

$$\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(A, \hat{B}_0) \rightarrow \pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \hat{B}_\bullet)$$

sending the class (in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ ) of a morphism  $A \rightarrow \hat{B}_0$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  to the connected component of the corresponding vertex of  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \hat{B}_\bullet)$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  be a Reedy-cofibrant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{V}$  be the class of trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ . By lemma 5.8.14, know  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves trivial fibrations, and lemma 1.3.29 implies that  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends trivial Kan fibrations to bijections, so we have an induced functor

$$\pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, -) : \mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

and in particular, we have natural maps

$$\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}](\tilde{A}^0, B) \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}(\pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \tilde{A}^0), \pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B))$$

so by evaluating at the vertex of  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \tilde{A}^0)$  corresponding to  $\text{id} : \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow \tilde{A}^0$ , we obtain a natural map  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}](\tilde{A}^0, B) \rightarrow \pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$ . However, by propositions 5.1.35 and 5.4.7, the natural map

$$\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}](\tilde{A}^0, B) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^0, B)$$

induced by the localising functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is a bijection for each fibrant object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so we have a natural map  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^0, B) \rightarrow \pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$  of the required form.

Observe that we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Set}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^0, B) & \longrightarrow & \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^0, B) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^0, B) & \longrightarrow & \pi_0 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B) \end{array}$$

where the top horizontal arrow is the map that sends a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  to its class in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ . The bottom horizontal arrow is a surjective map, so the right vertical arrow must also be a surjective map. To complete the proof of the claim, it now suffices to show that it is also an injective map; but this is implied by lemma 5.8.11, so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.17 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *If  $A^\bullet$  is a degreewise cofibrant weakly constant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathbf{sM} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves Reedy weak equivalences between simplicial resolutions.*



- If  $B_\bullet$  is a degreewise fibrant weakly constant simplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : (\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  preserves Reedy weak equivalences between cosimplicial resolutions.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $A^\bullet$  be a degreewise cofibrant weakly constant cosimplicial object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $p^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A^0)$  be the component of the adjunction unit. By lemma 5.8.5,  $p^\bullet$  is a Reedy weak equivalence. Let  $f_\bullet : B_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$  be a Reedy weak equivalence between simplicial resolutions. We then have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(p, B)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(A^0), B) \\ \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, f) \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(A^0), f) \\ \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(p, C)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(A^0), C) \end{array}$$

Corollary 5.8.15 says that  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(p, B)$  and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(p, C)$  are weak homotopy equivalences; but recalling lemma 5.8.12, we may then use remark 5.8.9 to deduce that  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(A^0), f)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence. Finally, we apply the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences to conclude that  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, f)$  itself is a weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**5.8.18** COROLLARY. For any derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ , the total hom-complex functor

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}} : (\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

preserves weak equivalences.

*Proof.* Apply lemma 5.8.12 to proposition 5.8.17. ■

**5.8.19** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. If  $A^\bullet$  is a cosimplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $B_\bullet$  is a simplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then there is a natural diagram of weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  of the form below,

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_0) \longrightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B) \longleftarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A^0, B)$$

where  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_0)$  is the left hom-complex,  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A^0, B)$  is the right hom-complex,  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the total hom-complex, the rightward arrow is the morphism induced by the adjunction counit component  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(B_0) \rightarrow B_\bullet$ , and the leftward arrow is the morphism induced by the adjunction unit component  $p^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A^0)$ .

*Proof.* The two halves of the claim are formally dual; we will show that there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_0) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$ .

**Lemma 5.8.12** says that each  $B_m$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so by **lemma 5.8.5**,  $i_{\bullet} : \text{sk}_0(B_0) \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  is a Reedy weak equivalence between degreewise fibrant objects. Thus,  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \text{sk}_0(B_0)) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence, by **corollary 5.8.15**. Since the total hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \text{sk}_0(B_0))$  is naturally isomorphic to the left hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_0)$  (by **remark 5.8.9**), this is the required natural weak homotopy equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.20** **DEFINITION.** Let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A **left homotopy function complex** from  $A$  to  $B$  consists of the data  $(\tilde{A}^{\bullet}, p^{\bullet}, \hat{B}, i, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B}))$ , where  $(\tilde{A}^{\bullet}, p^{\bullet})$  is a cosimplicial resolution of  $A$ ,  $(\hat{B}, i)$  is a fibrant replacement for  $B$ , and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$  is the left hom-complex.
- A **right homotopy function complex** from  $A$  to  $B$  consists of the data  $(\tilde{A}, p, \hat{B}_{\bullet}, i_{\bullet}, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B}))$ , where  $(A, p)$  is a cofibrant replacement for  $A$ ,  $(\hat{B}_{\bullet}, i_{\bullet})$  is a simplicial resolution of  $B$ , and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$  is the right hom-complex.
- A **two-sided homotopy function complex** from  $A$  to  $B$  consists of the data  $(\tilde{A}^{\bullet}, p^{\bullet}, \hat{B}_{\bullet}, i_{\bullet}, \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B}))$ , where  $(\tilde{A}^{\bullet}, p^{\bullet})$  is a cosimplicial resolution of  $A$ ,  $(\hat{B}_{\bullet}, i_{\bullet})$  is a simplicial resolution of  $B$ , and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$  is the total hom-complex.

We will often abuse notation and say  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$  is a (left, right, or two-sided) homotopy function complex from  $A$  to  $B$ , omitting mention of the other data.

**5.8.21** **REMARK.** The weak homotopy type of  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$  depends only on the isomorphism class of  $A$  and  $B$  in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ , by **corollary 5.8.15**.

**5.8.22** **PROPOSITION.** Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Let  $(\hat{A}, i_A)$  and  $(\hat{B}, i_B)$  be fibrant replacements for  $A$  and  $B$ , respectively, and let  $\hat{f} : \hat{A} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  be any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{i_A} & \hat{A} \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{f} \\ B & \xrightarrow{i_B} & \hat{B} \end{array}$$

Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category,  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  if and only if the induced morphism of left homotopy function complexes

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, \hat{f}) : \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, \hat{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, \hat{B})$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence for all cosimplicial resolutions  $C^\bullet$ .

- Let  $(\tilde{A}, p_A)$  and  $(\tilde{B}, p_B)$  be cofibrant replacements for  $A$  and  $B$ , respectively, and let  $\tilde{f} : \tilde{A} \rightarrow \tilde{B}$  be any morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{A} & \xrightarrow{p_A} & A \\ \tilde{f} \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \tilde{B} & \xrightarrow{p_B} & B \end{array}$$

Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category,  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  if and only if the induced morphism of right homotopy function complexes

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{f}, C) : \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{B}, C) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, C)$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence for all simplicial resolutions  $C_\bullet$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First, suppose  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$ . Then, by [proposition 5.1.35](#),  $\hat{f} : \hat{A} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}_f$ , so we may use [corollary 5.8.15](#) (and [lemma 1.5.2](#)) to deduce that  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, \hat{f})$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for all cosimplicial resolutions  $C^\bullet$ .

Conversely, suppose  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, \hat{f})$  is a weak homotopy equivalence for all cosimplicial resolutions  $C^\bullet$ . [Proposition 5.8.16](#) then implies that the hom-set map

$$\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(C^0, \hat{f}) : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(C^0, \hat{A}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(C^0, \hat{B})$$

is a bijection for all cosimplicial resolutions  $C^\bullet$ ; but by hypothesis, every object in  $\mathcal{M}$  is weakly equivalent to one that occurs as  $C^0$  for some cosimplicial resolution  $C^\bullet$ , so  $\hat{f} : \hat{A} \rightarrow \hat{B}$  and  $f : A \rightarrow B$  are isomorphisms in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$ . ■

**5.8.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.

- Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category, a **derived left hom-space functor** for an object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a functor

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : (\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M})^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$$

equipped with natural isomorphisms

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A^\bullet, B) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \hat{B})$$

in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ , where  $A^\bullet$  varies over the cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $(\hat{B}, i)$  varies over the fibrant replacements for  $B$ , and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \hat{B})$  is the left hom-complex.

- Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category, a **derived right hom-space functor** for an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a functor

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$$

equipped with natural isomorphisms

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_0) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$$

in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ , where  $(\tilde{A}, p)$  varies over the cofibrant replacements for  $A$ ,  $B_\bullet$  varies over the simplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$  is the right hom-complex.

- Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is a resolvable category, a **derived hom-space functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a functor  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}} : (\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M})^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$  equipped with natural isomorphisms

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A^\bullet, B_0) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$$

in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ , where  $A^\bullet$  varies over the cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $B_\bullet$  varies over the simplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the total hom-complex.

We will often refer to the object  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  as a **derived hom-space**, omitting mention of the other data.

The name ‘derived hom-space’ is justified by the following theorem.

**5.8.24** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a resolvable category, let  $(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}, Q^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  be a left deformation retract of  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $(\mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M}, R_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  be a right deformation retract of  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i)  *$((\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M}, Q^\bullet \times R_\bullet, (p^\bullet, i_\bullet))$  is a right deformation retract for the total hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}} : (\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}} : (\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  has a total right derived functor; furthermore, if  $(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}, Q^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  and  $(\mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M}, R_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  are functorial deformation retracts, then  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}$  also has a homotopical right approximation.*
- (iii) *The functor  $\mathbf{R}\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(-), \text{sk}_0(-)) : (\text{Ho } \mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \text{Ho } \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$  is a derived hom-space functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). It suffices to show that the restriction the total hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}$  preserves weak equivalences as a functor  $(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ ; but this is a consequence of lemma 5.8.12 and corollary 5.8.18.

(ii). Apply theorems 3.3.17 and 3.4.11.

(iii). This follows from claims (i) and (ii). ■

**5.8.25** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a resolvable category. If  $B$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then:*

- (i) *The left hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : (\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends degreewise trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$  and Reedy weak equivalences in  $\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}$  to weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*
- (ii) *The left hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B) : (\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  admits a total right derived functor.*
- (iii) *The functor  $\mathbf{R}\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\text{cosk}^0(-), B) : (\text{Ho } \mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$  is a derived left hom-space functor.*

*Dually, if  $A$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then:*

- (i') *The right hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  sends degree-wise trivial fibrations in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  and Reedy weak equivalences in  $\mathbf{s}_r\mathcal{M}$  to weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .*

(ii') *The right hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, -) : \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  admits a total right derived functor.*

(iii') *The functor  $\mathbf{R}\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \mathrm{sk}_0(-)) : \mathrm{Ho}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}\mathbf{sSet}$  is a derived right hom-space functor.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $f^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow C^\bullet$  be a degreewise trivial cofibration in  $\mathbf{cM}$  (resp. Reedy weak equivalence in  $\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}$ ), and choose a simplicial resolution  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  of  $B$ . We then have a morphism of bisimplicial sets

$$\mathcal{M}(f^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet) : \mathcal{M}(C^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(A^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet)$$

and since each  $f^n : A^n \rightarrow C^n$  is a trivial cofibration (resp. weak equivalence) in  $\mathcal{M}$ , lemma 5.8.14 (resp. corollary 5.8.15) says that the components

$$\mathcal{M}(f^n, \hat{B}_\bullet) : \mathcal{M}(C^n, \hat{B}_\bullet) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(A^n, \hat{B}_\bullet)$$

are trivial Kan fibrations, hence weak homotopy equivalences *a fortiori*. Thus, applying lemma 1.6.8 and theorem 1.6.10, we deduce that the morphism

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(f, \hat{B}) : \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, \hat{B}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \hat{B})$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence. Using corollary 5.8.15, proposition 5.8.19, and the 2-out-of-3 property of weak homotopy equivalences, we then conclude that the morphism  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(f, B) : \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(C, B) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is indeed a weak homotopy equivalence.

(ii). By lemma 5.8.6, there is a left deformation retract  $(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M}, Q^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  of  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ ; and we have seen that  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, B)$  preserves weak equivalences as a functor  $(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M})^{\mathrm{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , so we may apply theorem 3.3.17.

(iii). The total derived functor theorem implies that  $\mathbf{R}\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\mathrm{cosk}^0(A), B)$  is naturally isomorphic to the weak homotopy type of  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B)$  for any co-simplicial resolution  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  of  $\mathrm{cosk}^0(A)$ , so  $\mathbf{R}\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\mathrm{cosk}^0(-), B)$  is indeed a derived left hom-space functor. ■

**5.8.26** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. A **cosimplicial resolution model structure** on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a model structure that satisfies the following conditions:

- $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category with this model structure.
- The weak equivalences in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  are the Reedy weak equivalences.
- Every fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a degreewise fibration (resp. degreewise trivial fibration) in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$ .
- Every cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy cofibration (resp. Reedy trivial cofibration) in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$ .
- Every cofibrant object in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-cofibrant object in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$ .
- If  $\tilde{A}^\bullet$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , then the left hom-complex functor

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, -) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

sends fibrations (resp. fibrant objects) in  $\mathcal{M}$  to Kan fibrations (resp. Kan complexes).

- If  $i^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  is a cofibration between cofibrant objects in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p : C \rightarrow D$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, D) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, C) & \searrow i^* \square p_* & \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, D) \\
 & \bullet & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, D)
 \end{array}$$

then the unique morphism  $i^* \square p_*$  making the diagram commute is a Kan fibration.

Dually, a **simplicial resolution model structure** on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a model structure that satisfies the following conditions:

- $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a derivable category with this model structure.
- The weak equivalences in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  are the Reedy weak equivalences.

- Every cofibration (resp. trivial cofibration) in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a degreewise cofibration (resp. degreewise trivial cofibration) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$ .
- Every fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy fibration (resp. Reedy trivial fibration) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$ .
- Every fibrant object in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy-fibrant object in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$ .
- If  $\hat{B}_\bullet$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , then the right hom-complex functor

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(-, \hat{B}) : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

sends cofibrations (resp. cofibrant objects) in  $\mathcal{M}$  to Kan fibrations (resp. Kan complexes).

- If  $i : A \rightarrow B$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p_\bullet : C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$  is a fibration between fibrant objects in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, D) \\
 \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, C) & \searrow i^* \square p_* & \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(i, D) \\
 & \bullet & \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, p)} & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, D)
 \end{array}$$

then the unique morphism  $i^* \square p_*$  making the diagram commute is a Kan fibration.

**5.8.27** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has initial and terminal objects, then the first condition on left hom-complexes (resp. right hom-complexes) is a special case of the second condition.

**5.8.28** REMARK. If there is a cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category; dually, if there is a simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category.



**5.8.29** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model category, then:

- A cofibrant object with respect to any cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A fibrant object with respect to any simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

Conversely, we will show (as [theorem 5.8.34](#)) that there exist a cosimplicial (resp. simplicial) resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  (resp.  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ ) where the cofibrant (resp. fibrant) objects are precisely the cosimplicial (resp. simplicial) resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.8.30** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.

- For any cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , the following adjunction is a Quillen equivalence of derivable categories:

$$(-)^0 \dashv \text{cosk}^0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$$

- For any simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , the following adjunction is a Quillen equivalence of derivable categories:

$$\text{sk}_0 \dashv (-)_0 : \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

[Proposition 5.6.4](#) implies that  $(-)^0 : \mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a left Quillen functor, so by [proposition 5.3.2](#), we indeed have a Quillen adjunction. Moreover, for any weakly constant cosimplicial object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and any object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , a morphism  $A^0 \rightarrow B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if its right adjoint transpose  $A^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , so the adjunction is a Quillen equivalence. ■

**5.8.31** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category and let  $\mathcal{N}$  be a homotopically replete full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Given a cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , its restriction to  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{N}$  is cosimplicial resolution model structure (with respect to the model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$  inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ ).

- Given a simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , its restriction to  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{N}$  is cosimplicial resolution model structure (with respect to the model structure on  $\mathcal{N}$  inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ ).

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 5.1.28](#), the model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  restricted to  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{N}$  is a model structure; and by the proof of [proposition 5.6.7](#), the weak equivalences (resp. cofibrations, trivial cofibrations, cofibrant objects) in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{N}$  are Reedy weak equivalences (resp. Reedy cofibrations, Reedy trivial cofibrations, Reedy-cofibrant objects), as required. Finally, it is clear that the conditions on left hom-complexes are satisfied by  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{N}$  if they are satisfied by  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.32** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- A morphism  $A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy cofibration if and only if the induced morphism

$$(W \star A) \cup^{W \star A} (Z \star B) \rightarrow W \star B$$

is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all monomorphisms  $Z \rightarrow W$  between finite simplicial sets.

- A morphism  $A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy fibration if and only if the induced morphism

$$\{W, A\} \rightarrow \{Z, A\} \times_{\{Z, B\}} \{W, B\}$$

is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  for all monomorphisms  $Z \rightarrow W$  between finite simplicial sets.

*Proof.* Since monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  are relative Reedy cell complexes (by [proposition 1.2.34](#)), this is just a special case of [proposition 5.5.38](#).  $\blacksquare$

**5.8.33** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- Given a Reedy cofibration  $A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  between cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the morphism

$$(\Delta^n \star A) \cup^{\Lambda_k^n \star A} (\Lambda_k^n \star B) \rightarrow \Delta^n \star B$$

induced by any horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Given a Reedy fibration  $A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  between simplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the morphism

$$\{\Delta^n, A\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, A\} \times_{\{\Lambda_k^n, B\}} \{\Delta^n, B\}$$

induced by any horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is a trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider the following commutative square in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Lambda_k^n \star A & \longrightarrow & \Lambda_k^n \star B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \Delta^n \star A & \longrightarrow & \Delta^n \star B \end{array}$$

Since  $A^\bullet$  and  $B^\bullet$  are cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we may apply [proposition 5.7.18](#) to deduce that the vertical arrows are trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, by axiom CM2 and [corollary 5.1.13](#), the morphism  $(\Delta^n \star A) \cup^{\Lambda_k^n \star A} (\Lambda_k^n \star B) \rightarrow \Delta^n \star B$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . It remains to be shown that the morphism is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; but that is a special case of [lemma 5.8.32](#), so we are done. ■

**5.8.34** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *The restriction of the Reedy model structure on  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *The restriction of the Reedy model structure on  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 5.1.28](#), the restriction of the Reedy model structure on  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$  makes  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  a derivable category where the weak equivalences, cofibrations, trivial cofibrations, and cofibrant objects are the expected ones. The condition on left hom-complexes remains to be verified; but recalling [lemma 5.8.33](#) and [remark 5.8.10](#), this is (essentially) a special case of [proposition 6.5.1](#). ■

**5.8.35** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category. If  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  has a cosimplicial resolution model structure and  $h_\bullet : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow [(\mathbf{c}_c\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]_h$  is the functor defined by

$$h_B(A) = \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$$

where  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the left hom-complex and  $\mathbf{c}_c\mathcal{M}$  is the full subcategory of cofibrant objects in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ , then:

- (i)  $h_\bullet$  sends fibrations (resp. fibrant objects, trivial fibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$  to componentwise Kan fibrations (resp. componentwise Kan complexes, componentwise trivial Kan fibrations).
- (ii)  $h_\bullet$  admits a total right derived functor.
- (iii) For each cofibrant object  $A^\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  and each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}h_B(A)$  is a derived hom-space  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A^0, B)$ .

Dually, if  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$  has a simplicial resolution model structure and  $h^\bullet : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\mathbf{s}_f\mathcal{M}, \mathbf{sSet}]_h$  is the functor defined by

$$h^A(B) = \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$$

where  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B)$  is the right hom-complex and  $\mathbf{s}_f\mathcal{M}$  is the full subcategory of fibrant objects in  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , then:

- (i')  $h^\bullet$  sends cofibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$  to componentwise Kan fibrations (resp. componentwise trivial Kan fibrations).
- (ii')  $h^\bullet$  admits a total right derived functor.
- (iii') For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  and each simplicial resolution  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\mathbf{R}h^A(B)$  is a derived hom-space  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(A, B_0)$ .

*Proof.* (i). The preservation of fibrations and fibrant objects is a consequence of the hypothesis that  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$  has a cosimplicial resolution model structure, and the preservation of trivial fibrations is [lemma 5.8.13](#); note that [corollary 5.8.15](#) implies that each  $h_B : (\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  indeed preserves weak equivalences.

(ii). Since the weak equivalences in  $[(\mathbf{c}_r\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]_h$  are componentwise (by definition), we may apply [theorem 5.3.12](#).

(iii). The total derived functor theorem implies that  $\mathbf{R}h_B(A)$  is isomorphic to the weak homotopy type of the left hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, \hat{B})$ , where  $(\hat{B}, i)$  is any fibrant replacement for  $B$ , so  $\mathbf{R}h_B(A)$  is a derived hom-space  $\mathbf{R}Hom_{\mathcal{M}}(A^0, B)$ . ■

**5.8.36** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  be derivable categories and let*

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

*be a Quillen adjunction.*

- *The induced functor  $\mathbf{c}F : \mathbf{c}\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{c}\mathcal{N}$  sends cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$  to cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{N}$ .*
- *The induced functor  $\mathbf{s}G : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{M}$  sends simplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{N}$  to simplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By propositions 5.3.4 and 5.6.18,  $\mathbf{c}F$  sends Reedy-cofibrant cosimplicial objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to Reedy-cofibrant cosimplicial objects in  $\mathcal{N}$ . Lemma 5.1.33 implies that  $\mathbf{c}F$  preserves weak constancy for degreewise cofibrant cosimplicial objects; but lemma 5.8.12 says cosimplicial resolutions are degreewise cofibrant, so we are done. ■

**5.8.37** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  be derivable categories, let*

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

*be a Quillen adjunction, and let*

$$\mathbf{L}F \dashv \mathbf{R}G : \mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{M}$$

*be the derived adjunction. If either*

- *both  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  are cosimplicially resolvable categories, or*
- *both  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  are simplicially resolvable categories,*

*then there are natural isomorphisms*

$$\mathbf{R}Hom_{\mathcal{N}}((\mathbf{L}F)A, B) \cong \mathbf{R}Hom_{\mathcal{M}}(A, (\mathbf{R}G)B)$$

*in  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$ , where  $A$  varies in  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  and  $B$  varies in  $\mathbf{Ho} \mathcal{N}$ .*

*Proof.* The two subclaims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\tilde{A}$  be a cosimplicial resolution in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $B$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{N}$ . Since  $F \dashv G$  is an adjunction, we have the following natural isomorphism of left hom-complexes;

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{N}}(F\tilde{A}, B) \cong \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, GB)$$

moreover, by [proposition 5.3.4](#) and [lemma 5.8.36](#), both simplicial sets are (part of) left homotopy function complexes. [Theorem 5.3.12](#) and [proposition 5.8.30](#) then imply we have the required natural isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho\,sSet}$ . ■

**5.8.38** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *If  $i^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  is a cofibration between cofibrant objects with respect to a cosimplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p : C \rightarrow D$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and the induced morphism*

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, C) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) \times_{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, D)} \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, D)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence, then  $p : C \rightarrow D$  has the right lifting property with respect to each  $i^n : A^n \rightarrow B^n$ .*

- *If  $i : A \rightarrow B$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p_\bullet : C_\bullet \rightarrow D_\bullet$  is a fibration between fibrant objects with respect to a simplicial resolution model structure on  $\mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M}$ , and the induced morphism*

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, C) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, C) \times_{\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(A, D)} \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(B, D)$$

*is a weak homotopy equivalence, then  $i : A \rightarrow B$  has the left lifting property with respect to each  $p_n : C_n \rightarrow D_n$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By definition, the indicated morphism of simplicial sets is a Kan fibration, so the hypothesis implies it is a trivial Kan fibration. Since every simplicial set is cofibrant, the morphism is a (split) epimorphism; thus, for each natural number  $n$ , the map

$$\mathcal{M}(B^n, C) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}(A^n, C) \times_{\mathcal{M}(A^n, D)} \mathcal{M}(B^n, D)$$

is a surjection. We may then apply [lemma A.3.2](#) to deduce that  $p : C \rightarrow D$  has the right lifting property with respect to each  $i^n : A^n \rightarrow B^n$ . ■

## 5.9 The Dwyer–Kan comparison theorem

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.5, 1.6, 1.9, 1.11, 2.12, 5.1, 5.6, 5.7, 5.8, A.4.

In this section, following Dwyer and Kan [1980c], we examine the relationship between the derived hom-spaces of a resolvable category  $\mathcal{M}$  and the hom-spaces of its hammock localisation  $\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{M})$ .

**5.9.1** **REMARK.** If we do not restrict our attention to small resolvable categories, then it will be necessary to work with categories that may not be essentially small as well as various simplicial ensembles constructed from the nerves of such categories. Fortunately, the main result of this section says that many of these (large) simplicial ensembles of interest are actually weakly homotopy equivalent to (small) simplicial sets.

**5.9.2** **THEOREM.** *Let  $C$  be an object in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Let  $(\mathcal{M}_{/C})_{c,w}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}_{/C}$  spanned by the cofibrant replacements for  $C$ . Then  $(\mathcal{M}_{/C})_{c,w}$  is an aspherical category.*
- *Let  $({}^C\mathcal{M})_{f,w}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}_{/C}$  spanned by the fibrant replacements for  $C$ . Then  $({}^C\mathcal{M})_{f,w}$  is an aspherical category.*

*Proof.* In view of [theorem 6.1.1](#), this is a special case of [theorem 4.5.2](#) (and its formal dual). ■

TODO: Write out the proof in detail for derivable categories.

It will be convenient to make the following definition:

**5.9.3** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with a model structure.

- A **marked zigzag type**  $(T, V', V'')$  is a zigzag type  $T$ , regarded as a relative category, equipped with a pair of subcategories  $V'$  and  $V''$  of the subcategory of weak equivalences.
- A **zigzag** in  $\mathcal{M}$  of type  $(T, V', V'')$  is a zigzag of type  $T$  where the morphisms in  $V'$  (resp.  $V''$ ) are mapped to trivial cofibrations (resp. trivial fibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**5.9.4 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category and let  $\mathcal{T}$  be the following category:*

- *The objects are zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the following type:*

$$\bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet$$

- *The morphisms are commutative diagrams in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \bullet \end{array}$$

*where the top row is the domain and the bottom row is the codomain. (We do not put any restrictions on the vertical arrows.)*

- *Composition and identities are inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Let  $\text{dom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  (resp.  $\text{codom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ ) be the functor defined by sending a zigzag to its leftmost (resp. rightmost) vertex.*

- *The functor  $\text{dom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Grothendieck fibration.*
- *The functor  $\text{codom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration.*

*Moreover:*

- *Let  $B$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{T}_B$  be the fibre of  $\text{codom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  over  $\{B\}$ . Then  $\text{dom} : \mathcal{T}_B \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Grothendieck fibration.*
- *Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{T}^A$  be the fibre of  $\text{dom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  over  $\{A\}$ . Then  $\text{codom} : \mathcal{T}^A \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Grothendieck fibration.*

*Proof.* The two parts of each set of claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version of each.

Consider a morphism in  $\mathcal{T}$ , i.e. a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A' & \longleftarrow & \tilde{A}' & \longrightarrow & \hat{B} & \longleftarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A & \longleftarrow & \tilde{A} & \longrightarrow & \hat{B} & \longleftarrow & B \end{array}$$



It is not hard to verify that this is a dom-prone morphism if (and only if) the leftmost square is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  and the arrows  $\hat{B}' \rightarrow \hat{B}$  and  $B' \rightarrow B$  are isomorphisms. Recalling [corollary 5.1.13](#), it follows that  $\text{dom} : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Grothendieck fibration. A similar argument shows that  $\text{dom} : \mathcal{T}_B \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a Grothendieck fibration (with the same prone morphisms). ■

**5.9.5 COROLLARY.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- (i) *There is a  $(\mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}})$ -indexed category whose fibre over  $(A, B)$  is the category  $\mathcal{T}(A, B)$  of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet$$

*where reindexing in the first variable is pullback and reindexing in the second variable is pushout.*

- (ii) *Assuming  $\mathcal{M}$  is small,  $(A, B) \mapsto \mathbf{N}(\mathcal{T}(A, B))$  defines a functor  $\mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho sSet}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This is a straightforward consequence of [proposition 5.9.4](#).

- (ii). Apply [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [corollary 1.5.5](#). ■

**5.9.6 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $C$  be an object in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Let  $(\mathcal{M}_{/C})_{\text{wf}}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}_{/C}$  spanned by the trivial fibrations  $B \rightarrow C$  and let  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  be a cosimplicial resolution of  $A$ . If  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(C)$  is a degreewise trivial fibration in  $\mathbf{cM}$ , then the corresponding functor  $P : \Delta \rightarrow (\mathcal{M}_{/C})_{\text{wf}}$  is a right aspherical functor.*
- *Let  $({}^C\mathcal{M})_{\text{wc}}$  be the full subcategory of  ${}^C\mathcal{M}$  spanned by the trivial cofibrations  $C \rightarrow A$  and let  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  be a simplicial resolution of  $C$ . If  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(C) \rightarrow \hat{B}_\bullet$  is a degreewise trivial cofibration in  $\mathbf{sM}$ , then the corresponding functor  $I : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow ({}^C\mathcal{M})_{\text{wc}}$  is a left aspherical functor.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version. We follow the proof of Proposition 6.12 in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980c].

Let  $(B, q)$  be an object in  $(\mathcal{M}_{/C})_{\text{wf}}$ , i.e. a trivial fibration  $q : B \rightarrow C$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . We must show that the comma category  $(P \downarrow (B, q))$  is aspherical, i.e. that the nerve  $\mathbf{N}((P \downarrow (B, q)))$  is weakly contractible. By [corollary 1.9.32](#),

$$\mathbf{N}((P \downarrow (B, q))) \simeq \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}_{/C}}((\tilde{A}, p), (B, q))$$

and we have the following pullback diagram in **sSet**,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}/C}((\tilde{A}, p), (B, q)) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}, q) \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, C) \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow corresponds to the vertex  $i^0 : \tilde{A}^0 \rightarrow C$  and (by [lemma 5.8.14](#)) the right vertical arrow is a trivial Kan fibration, so (by [proposition A.3.19](#)) the left vertical arrow is also a trivial Kan fibration. Thus,  $(P \downarrow (B, q))$  is indeed an aspherical category.  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.7 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C$  be an object in a derivable category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Let  $(\mathcal{M}/C)_{c, wf}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}/C$  spanned by the fibrant cofibrant replacements for  $C$ . If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category, then  $(\mathcal{M}/C)_{c, wf}$  is an aspherical category.*
- *Let  $({}^C\mathcal{M})_{f, wc}$  be the full subcategory of  ${}^C\mathcal{M}$  spanned by the cofibrant fibrant replacements for  $C$ . If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category, then  $({}^C\mathcal{M})_{f, wc}$  is an aspherical category.*

*Proof.* Since  $\Delta$  is aspherical (by [remark 1.11.10](#)), and cosimplicial (resp. simplicial) resolutions are degreewise cofibrant (resp. fibrant) by [lemma 5.8.12](#), the claim is a consequence of [proposition 1.11.20](#) and Quillen's Theorem A ([corollary 1.11.22](#)) applied to [proposition 5.9.6](#).  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a small derivable category and, for each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $\mathcal{T}(A, B)$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type:*

$$\bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet$$

- (i) *Let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $(\tilde{A}^\bullet, p^\bullet)$  be a cosimplicial resolution of  $A$ , and let  $(\hat{B}_\bullet, i_\bullet)$  be a simplicial resolution of  $B$ . If  $p^\bullet : \tilde{A}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(A)$  is a degreewise trivial fibration and  $i_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(B) \rightarrow \hat{B}_\bullet$  is a degreewise trivial cofibration, then we have a diagram of weak homotopy equivalences of the*

form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \lim_{\xrightarrow{n:\Delta^{\text{op}}} n:\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\xrightarrow{m:\Delta^{\text{op}}} m:\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^n, \hat{B}_m) & \\
 \swarrow & & \searrow \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B}) & & N(\mathcal{T}(A, B))
 \end{array}$$

(ii) Moreover, the above diagram is natural in the following sense: given commutative diagrams in  $\mathbf{cM}$  and  $\mathbf{sM}$  of the forms below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{cosk}^0(A) & \xleftarrow{p^\bullet} & \tilde{A}^\bullet \\
 \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
 \text{cosk}^0(A') & \xleftarrow{p'^\bullet} & \tilde{A}'^\bullet
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \hat{B}_\bullet & \xleftarrow{i_\bullet} & \text{sk}_0(B) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \hat{B}' & \xleftarrow{i'_\bullet} & \text{sk}_0(B')
 \end{array}$$

the following diagram commutes in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & \lim_{\xrightarrow{n:\Delta^{\text{op}}} n:\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\xrightarrow{m:\Delta^{\text{op}}} m:\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^n, \hat{B}_m) & & & \\
 \swarrow & & \downarrow & & \searrow \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B}) & & \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^n, \hat{B}'_m) & & N(\mathcal{T}(A, B)) \\
 \downarrow & & \swarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}', \hat{B}') & & \lim_{\xrightarrow{n:\Delta^{\text{op}}} n:\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\xrightarrow{m:\Delta^{\text{op}}} m:\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^n, \hat{B}'_m) & & N(\mathcal{T}(A', B'))
 \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are the evident induced morphisms.

*Proof.* (i). Considering  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B})$  as a diagram  $\Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ , by (lemma 1.9.29 and) corollary 1.9.31, we have a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\lim_{\xrightarrow{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$$

where we have used lemma 1.6.8 to identify the realisation  $|\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B})|$  with the two-sided hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$ ; similarly, by corollary 1.6.9, there is a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\lim_{\xrightarrow{\Delta^{\text{op}}} \Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^n, \hat{B}_\bullet) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}^n, \hat{B})$$

so applying Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6) to theorem 1.6.10 and proposition 1.9.19, we have a natural weak homotopy equivalence

$$\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B})$$

but by remark 1.8.5,

$$\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^n, \hat{B}_\bullet) \cong \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^n, \hat{B}_\bullet))$$

so Thomason's homotopy colimit theorem (1.11.24) yields a weak homotopy equivalence of the following type:

$$\lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet) \rightarrow \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta \mathbb{1}))$$

Now, let  $Q : (\mathcal{M}/_A)_{\text{wf}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  and  $R : ({}^B\mathcal{M})_{\text{wc}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  for the evident projections. Recalling lemma B.5.39 and corollary 1.11.25, Quillen's Theorem A (corollary 1.11.22) and propositions 1.11.34 and 5.9.6 imply that the induced functor

$$\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta \mathbb{1}) \\ & \rightarrow \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, ({}^B\mathcal{M})_{\text{wc}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(Q, R)), (\mathcal{M}/_A)_{\text{wf}}, \Delta \mathbb{1}) \end{aligned}$$

is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories; but it is straightforward to verify that the codomain is (isomorphic to)  $\mathcal{T}(A, B)$ , so we are done.

(ii). Naturality implies that the left half of the diagram in question commutes strictly, i.e.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}, \hat{B}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^\bullet, \hat{B}'_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{A}', \hat{B}') \end{array}$$

commutes in **sSet**; and similarly,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta \mathbb{1})) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{KB}} \lim_{\Delta^{\text{op}}}^{\text{BK}} \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^\bullet, \hat{B}'_\bullet) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{N}(\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^\bullet, \hat{B}'_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta \mathbb{1})) \end{array}$$

also commutes in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , so it suffices to verify that the evident diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta\mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta\mathbb{1})) & \longrightarrow & N(\mathcal{T}(A, B)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ N(\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta\mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^\bullet, \hat{B}'_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta\mathbb{1})) & \longrightarrow & N(\mathcal{T}(A', B')) \end{array}$$

commutes in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ . By pasting commutative diagrams, we may reduce the problem to the following two cases:

- Both  $\tilde{A}'^\bullet \rightarrow \tilde{A}^\bullet$  and  $A' \rightarrow A$  are identity morphisms.
- Both  $\hat{B}_\bullet \rightarrow \hat{B}'_\bullet$  and  $B \rightarrow B'$  are identity morphisms.

Furthermore, the two cases are formally dual, so it is enough to check the first case. But the universal property of pushouts yields a natural transformation fitting into the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta\mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}^\bullet, \hat{B}_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta\mathbb{1}) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{T}(A, B) \\ \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{G}(\Delta\mathbb{1}, \Delta^{\text{op}}, \text{disc } \mathcal{M}(\tilde{A}'^\bullet, \hat{B}'_\bullet)), \Delta, \Delta\mathbb{1}) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{T}(A, B') \end{array}$$

so the claim follows, by [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [corollary 1.5.5](#). ■

**5.9.9 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a small derivable category and, for each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $\mathcal{T}(A, B)$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type:*

$$\bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet$$

*Then the reduction morphism  $N(\mathcal{T}(A, B)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^{\mathbf{H}}(\mathcal{M})(A, B)$  is natural in the following sense: given morphisms  $A' \rightarrow A$  and  $B \rightarrow B'$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the following diagram commutes in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N(\mathcal{T}(A, B)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^{\mathbf{H}}(\mathcal{M})(A, B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ N(\mathcal{T}(A', B')) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^{\mathbf{H}}(\mathcal{M})(A', B') \end{array}$$

*where the vertical arrows are the evident induced morphisms.*

*Proof.* By pasting commutative diagrams, we may reduce the problem to the following two cases:

- $A' \rightarrow A$  is an identity morphism.
- $B \rightarrow B'$  is an identity morphism.

Furthermore, the two cases are formally dual, so it is enough to check the first case. Let  $\mathcal{H}_1(A, B')$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B'$  of the following type:

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet$$

It is clear that the two composites in question factor through the reduction morphism  $N(\mathcal{H}_1(A, B')) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{M})(A, B')$ , so recalling [lemma 1.3.10](#) and [corollary 1.5.5](#), it suffices to verify that there is a natural transformation fitting into the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}(A, B) & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathcal{T}(A, B) \\ \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{T}(A, B') & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}_1(A, B') \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow is the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism and the right vertical arrow is the evident functor defined by sending an object in  $\mathcal{T}(A, B)$ , say

$$A \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{A} \xrightarrow{f} \hat{B} \xleftarrow{u} B$$

to the following zigzag in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$A \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{A} \xrightarrow{f} \hat{B} \xleftarrow{u} B \longrightarrow B'$$

On the other hand, the composite through  $\mathcal{T}(A, B')$  sends the same object to

$$A \xleftarrow{v} \tilde{A} \xrightarrow{f'} \hat{B}' \xleftarrow{u'} B' \xlongequal{\quad} B'$$

fitting into a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{A} & \xrightarrow{f} & \hat{B} & \xleftarrow{u} & B \longrightarrow B' \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ A & \xleftarrow{v} & \tilde{A} & \xrightarrow{f'} & \hat{B}' & \xleftarrow{u'} & B' \xlongequal{\quad} B' \end{array}$$

where the middle-right square is a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, we have the required natural transformation. ■

**5.9.10** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, let  $\mathcal{H}_0$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the following type,

$$A \overset{\text{of type } S}{\rightsquigarrow} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \overset{\text{of type } T}{\rightsquigarrow} B$$

let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the following type,

$$A \overset{\text{of type } S}{\rightsquigarrow} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \overset{\text{of type } T}{\rightsquigarrow} B$$

let  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  be the functor that composes the two arrows in the middle of the zigzag, and let  $f$  be an object in  $\mathcal{H}_0$ , say:

$$A \rightsquigarrow C \xleftarrow{w} D \rightsquigarrow B$$

- If  $u^\bullet : \text{cosk}^0(D) \rightarrow \tilde{C}^\bullet$  is a Reedy cofibration in  $\mathbf{cM}$  and  $v^\bullet : \tilde{C}^\bullet \rightarrow \text{cosk}^0(C)$  is a degreewise trivial fibration in  $\mathbf{cM}$  such that  $v^\bullet \circ u^\bullet = \text{cosk}^0(w)$ , then  $u^\bullet$  and  $v^\bullet$  define a cosimplicial object in the comma category  $(f \downarrow d)$ , and the corresponding functor  $\tilde{F} : \Delta \rightarrow (f \downarrow d)$  is a right aspherical functor.
- If  $u_\bullet : \text{sk}_0(D) \rightarrow \hat{D}_\bullet$  is a degreewise trivial cofibration and  $v_\bullet : \hat{D}_\bullet \rightarrow \text{sk}_0(C)$  is a Reedy fibration in  $\mathbf{sM}$  in  $\mathbf{sM}$  such that  $v_\bullet \circ u_\bullet = \text{sk}_0(w)$ , then  $u_\bullet$  and  $v_\bullet$  define a simplicial object in the comma category  $(d \downarrow f)$ , and the corresponding functor  $\hat{F} : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow (d \downarrow f)$  is a left aspherical functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version. We follow paragraph 8.1 in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980c].

First, note that by [proposition 5.6.4](#), each  $u^n : D \rightarrow \tilde{C}^n$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and since  $u^n \circ u^n = w$ , axiom CM2 implies that each  $u^n : D \rightarrow \tilde{C}^n$  is a trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus  $u^\bullet$  and  $v^\bullet$  do indeed define a cosimplicial object  $(\tilde{f}^\bullet, \text{id})$  in  $(f \downarrow d)$ .

Let  $\tilde{F} : \Delta \rightarrow (f \downarrow d)$  be the functor corresponding to  $(\tilde{f}^\bullet, \text{id})$ , let  $g$  be an object in  $\mathcal{H}_1$ , say

$$A \rightsquigarrow K \xleftarrow{q} M \xleftarrow{j} L \rightsquigarrow B$$

and let  $h : f \rightarrow d(g)$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{H}_0$ , say:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \rightsquigarrow & C & \xleftarrow{w} & D & \rightsquigarrow & B \\ \parallel & & \downarrow k & & \downarrow l & & \parallel \\ A & \rightsquigarrow & K & \xleftarrow{q \circ j} & L & \rightsquigarrow & B \end{array}$$

We must show that the comma category  $(\tilde{F} \downarrow (g, h))$  is aspherical. But by [corollary 1.9.32](#),

$$N((\tilde{F} \downarrow (g, h))) \simeq \mathcal{H}om_{(f \downarrow d)}((\tilde{f}, \text{id}), (g, h))$$

and it is not hard to see that there is a pullback diagram in **sSet** of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{H}om_{(f \downarrow d)}(\tilde{f}, g) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om_{D/\mathcal{M}}((\tilde{C}, u), (M, j \circ l)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathcal{H}om_{D/\mathcal{M}}((\tilde{C}, v), q) \\ \Delta^0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om_{D/\mathcal{M}}((\tilde{C}, u), (K, l)) \end{array}$$

where the bottom horizontal arrow corresponds to the vertex  $k \circ v^0 : \tilde{C}^0 \rightarrow K$ ; thus (by [proposition A.3.19](#)) it suffices to prove that the right vertical arrow is a trivial Kan fibration. But by [proposition 5.6.5](#), the unique morphism  $(\text{cosk}^0(D), \text{id}) \rightarrow (\tilde{C}, u)$  in  $\text{cosk}^0(D)/\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$  is a Reedy cofibration in  $\mathbf{c}(D/\mathcal{M})$  (because  $u^\bullet : \text{cosk}^0(D) \rightarrow \tilde{C}^\bullet$  is a Reedy cofibration in  $\mathbf{c}\mathcal{M}$ ), so by [lemma 5.1.16](#),  $(\tilde{C}, u)$  is a Reedy-cofibrant object in  $\mathbf{c}(D/\mathcal{M})$ , and therefore

$$\mathcal{H}om_{D/\mathcal{M}}((\tilde{C}, v), q) : \mathcal{H}om_{D/\mathcal{M}}((\tilde{C}, v), (M, j \circ l)) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{D/\mathcal{M}}((\tilde{C}, v), (K, l))$$

is a trivial Kan fibration by [lemma 5.8.14](#). This shows that  $(\tilde{F} \downarrow (g, h))$  is an aspherical category, and since  $(g, h)$  is arbitrary, we conclude that  $\tilde{F} : \Delta \rightarrow (f \downarrow d)$  is a right aspherical functor.  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.II** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, let  $\mathcal{H}_0$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*and let  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  be the functor that composes the two arrows in the middle of the zigzag.*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cosimplicially resolvable category, then  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a left aspherical functor.*



- If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a simplicially resolvable category, then  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a right aspherical functor.

In particular, if  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

To show that  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a left aspherical functor, we must verify that the comma category  $(f \downarrow d)$  is aspherical for every object  $f$  in  $\mathcal{H}_0$ . Since  $\Delta$  is an aspherical category (by [remark 1.11.10](#)), it suffices to find a weak homotopy equivalence  $\Delta \rightarrow (f \downarrow d)$ ; but Quillen’s Theorem A ([corollary 1.11.22](#)) says any left or right aspherical functor is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, so the claim is a consequence of [lemma 5.9.10](#). ■

**5.9.12** REMARK. In view of Quillen’s Theorem A ([corollary 1.11.22](#)), the above proposition essentially says that the factorisation of a weak equivalence into a trivial cofibration and a trivial fibration (as in [lemma 5.1.10](#)) is homotopically unique: indeed, if we take  $S$  and  $T$  to be the trivial zigzag types of length 0, then  $\mathcal{H}_0$  is a discrete category, and since  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, the (strict) fibres of  $d$  must therefore be aspherical categories.

**5.9.13** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, let  $k$  be a natural number, let  $\mathcal{H}_i$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,

$$(i = 1) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(i = 2) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(i = 3) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(i = 4) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

and let  $\mathcal{H}'_i$  ( $0 \leq i \leq 4$ ) be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the following type:

$$(i = 1) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(i = 2) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(i = 3) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(i = 4) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

- Let  $s : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$  (resp.  $s : \mathcal{H}_3 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_4$ ) be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. There is a functor  $d : \mathcal{H}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  (resp.  $d : \mathcal{H}_4 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_3$ ) for which there is a natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_2} \Rightarrow s \circ d$  (resp.  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_4} \Rightarrow s \circ d$ ) where the component at an object, say

$$A \xrightarrow{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow{u} \bullet \longrightarrow \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{w} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} B$$

is given by the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u} & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{w} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} B \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & \downarrow u & & \downarrow u' \\ A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u} & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{w \circ u'} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} B \end{array}$$

where the middle squares are pushout diagrams in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Moreover,  $d \circ s \cong \text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_1}$  (resp.  $d \circ s \cong \text{id}_{\mathcal{H}_3}$ ).

- Let  $s : \mathcal{H}'_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'_2$  (resp.  $s : \mathcal{H}'_3 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'_4$ ) be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. There is a functor  $d : \mathcal{H}'_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'_1$  (resp.  $d : \mathcal{H}'_4 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'_3$ ) for which there is a natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{H}'_2} \Rightarrow s \circ d$  (resp.  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{H}'_4} \Rightarrow s \circ d$ ) where the component at an object, say

$$A \xrightarrow{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow{w} \bullet \longrightarrow \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} B$$

is given by the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{w \circ v'} & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} B \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & \downarrow v' & & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{w} & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \dots \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{v} \bullet \xrightarrow{\sim} B \end{array}$$

where the middle squares are pullback diagrams in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Moreover,  $d \circ s \cong \text{id}_{\mathcal{H}'_1}$  (resp.  $d \circ s \cong \text{id}_{\mathcal{H}'_3}$ ).

*Proof.* This is a straightforward consequence of [corollary 5.1.13](#). ◆

**5.9.14** COROLLARY. *With notation as in the lemma:*

- *The functors  $s : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$  and  $s : \mathcal{H}_3 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_4$  are weak homotopy equivalences of categories.*
- *The functors  $s : \mathcal{H}'_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'_2$  and  $s : \mathcal{H}'_3 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}'_4$  are weak homotopy equivalences of categories.*

*Proof.* Apply lemma 1.3.10 and proposition 1.5.4 to lemma 5.9.13. ■

**5.9.15** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $k$  and  $l$  be natural numbers, let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, let  $\mathcal{H}_0$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xrightarrow{l \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,*

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{l \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*and let  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  be the functor defined by inserting an identity morphism. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{H}_2$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{l \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

let  $s^2 : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$  be the functor defined by inserting two identity morphisms, and let  $d : \mathcal{H}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  be the functor defined by composing the two arrows in the middle. By factoring  $s^2$  appropriately, we may apply corollary 5.9.14 (twice) to deduce that  $s^2 : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_2$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories. On the other hand, by proposition 5.9.11, if  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then  $d : \mathcal{H}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories. It is clear that  $d \circ s^2 = s$ , so (by lemma 1.11.3)  $s : \mathcal{H}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  is also a weak homotopy equivalence of categories. ■

**5.9.16** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}$  admits a homotopical three-arrow calculus.
- (ii) Let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{H}(A, B)$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type:

$$\bullet \longleftarrow \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \longleftarrow \bullet$$

*Then the reduction morphism  $N(\mathcal{H}(A, B)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{M})(A, B)$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* (i). This is the special case of [proposition 5.9.15](#) where  $S$  and  $T$  are the degenerate zigzag type.

(ii). Apply the fundamental theorem of homotopical three-arrow calculi ([2.13.7](#)). ■

**5.9.17** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $k$  be a natural number, let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, and consider the categories of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following types:*

$$(\mathcal{H}_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } S]{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{\textit{k arrows}}]{\cdots} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } T]{\sim} \bullet$$

$$(\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } S]{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{\textit{k arrows}}]{\cdots} \bullet \xleftarrow[\text{t. cofib.}]{\sim} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } T]{\sim} \bullet$$

$$(\hat{\mathcal{H}}_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } S]{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow[\text{t. fib.}]{\sim} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{\textit{k arrows}}]{\cdots} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } T]{\sim} \bullet$$

*If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then:*

- The evident inclusion  $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.
- The evident inclusion  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}_0 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\mathcal{H}_1$  be the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following type,

$$\bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } S]{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{\textit{k arrows}}]{\cdots} \bullet \xleftarrow[\text{t. fib.}]{\sim} \bullet \xleftarrow[\text{t. cofib.}]{\sim} \bullet \xrightarrow[\text{of type } T]{\sim} \bullet$$

let  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  be the functor defined by composing the evident pair of morphism, and let  $s : \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  be defined by inserting an identity morphism. By [corollary 5.9.14](#),  $s : \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_1$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories, and [proposition 5.9.11](#) says that  $d : \mathcal{H}_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories if  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable; but it is clear that  $d \circ s : \tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0 \rightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is just the inclusion, so the claim follows (by [lemma 1.11.3](#)).  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.18** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $k$  be a natural number, let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, and consider the categories of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following types,*

$$(\mathcal{H}_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(\mathcal{H}'_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(\hat{\mathcal{H}}'_0) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

where in the middle we have  $k$  rightward-pointing arrows. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then:

- The evident inclusion  $\tilde{\mathcal{H}}_0 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{H}_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.
- The evident inclusion  $\hat{\mathcal{H}}'_0 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{H}'_0$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as [lemma 5.9.17](#).  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $k$  be a natural number, let  $S$  and  $T$  be possibly degenerate marked zigzag types, and consider the categories of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following types:*

$$(H) \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

$$(H'') \quad \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } S} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{k \text{ arrows}} \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet \xrightarrow{\text{of type } T} \bullet$$

*If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then the evident inclusion  $H'' \hookrightarrow H$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* Recalling that the class of weak homotopy equivalences of categories is closed under composition (by lemma 1.11.3), this is an immediate consequence of lemmas 5.9.17 and 5.9.18.  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.20** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and consider the categories of zigzags in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $A$  to  $B$  of the following types:*

$$(H) \quad \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{w.e.}} \bullet$$

$$(H'') \quad \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. fib.}} \bullet \longrightarrow \bullet \xleftarrow{\text{t. cofib.}} \bullet$$

*If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either cosimplicially or simplicially resolvable, then the evident inclusion  $H'' \hookrightarrow H$  is a weak homotopy equivalence of categories.*  $\blacksquare$

**5.9.21** THEOREM (Dwyer and Kan). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a small derivable category. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is either simplicially or cosimplicially resolvable, then*

$$\underline{\mathbf{Lo}}^H(\mathcal{M})((-)^0, (-)_0) : \mathbf{Ho}(\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{Ho} \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}$$

*is (the functor part of) a right derived functor for the total hom-complex functor  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}} : (\mathbf{c}_w\mathcal{M})^{\text{op}} \times \mathbf{s}_w\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$ .*

*Proof.* Recalling proposition 5.8.7, this is a consequence of propositions 5.9.8 and 5.9.9 with corollaries 5.9.16, and 5.9.20.  $\blacksquare$

## 5.10 Virtual cofibrancy and fibrancy

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 3.1, 3.3, 5.1, 5.6, A.1, A.5.

In this section, we follow [DHKS, §23]. As usual, for each natural number  $n$ , let  $[n]$  denote the category  $\{0 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow n\}$  corresponding to the finite ordinal  $\{0, \dots, n\}$ , and let  $\mathbf{\Delta}$  be the category whose objects are the  $[n]$  and whose morphisms are functors.

**5.10.1 DEFINITION.** The **category of simplices** of a (small) category  $\mathbb{C}$  is the category  $\mathbf{\Delta}(\mathbb{C})$  defined below:

- The objects are functors  $[n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ .
- The morphisms  $(f : [m] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}) \rightarrow (g : [n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C})$  are functors  $[m] \rightarrow [n]$  making the evident triangle commute (strictly).
- Composition and identities are the obvious ones.

We write  $\pi_{\mathbf{\Delta}} : \mathbf{\Delta}(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{\Delta}$  for the evident projection functor that sends an object  $[n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  in  $\mathbf{\Delta}(\mathbb{C})$  to the object  $[n]$  in  $\mathbf{\Delta}$ .

**5.10.2 ¶** To elucidate the above definition, it is helpful to introduce some notation for the objects in  $\mathbf{\Delta}(\mathbb{C})$ . It is not hard to see that a functor  $f : [n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the same thing as a string of  $n$  composable morphisms in  $\mathbb{C}$ , e.g.

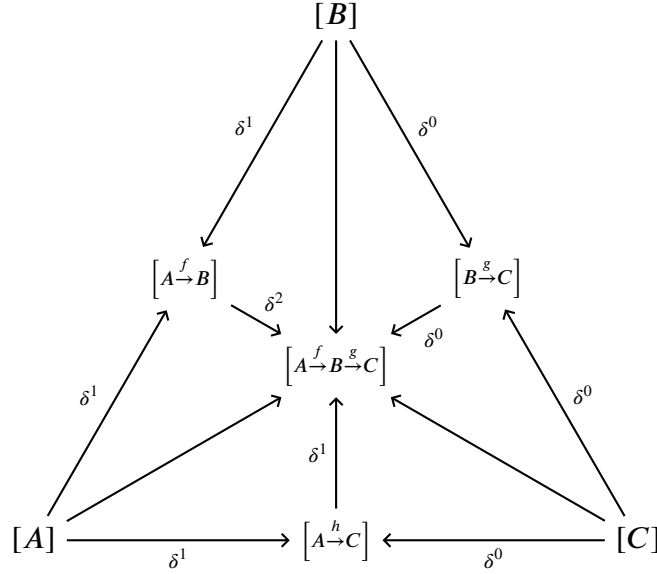
$$A_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} A_1 \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow A_{n-1} \xrightarrow{f_n} A_n$$

so let us write  $[A_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} A_1 \cdots A_{n-1} \xrightarrow{f_n} A_n]$  for the corresponding object in  $\mathbf{\Delta}(\mathbb{C})$ . Since the projection  $\pi_{\mathbf{\Delta}} : \mathbf{\Delta}(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{\Delta}$  is faithful, we may borrow the notation of § 1.1 and write e.g.  $\delta^1 : [A_0] \rightarrow [A_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} A_1]$  for the unique morphism whose image under  $\pi_{\mathbf{\Delta}}$  is  $\delta^1 : [0] \rightarrow [1]$ .

Observe that, given a commutative triangle in  $\mathbb{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & B & \\ f \nearrow & & \searrow g \\ A & \xrightarrow{h} & C \end{array}$$

we obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$ :



Similar phenomena occur for longer strings of composable morphisms. Thus, one may think of  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  as being a kind of barycentric subdivision of  $\mathbb{C}$ ; notice also that the Mac Lane subdivision category  $\mathbb{C}^s$  occurs as a subcategory of  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$ .

**5.10.3** REMARK. There is an obvious natural isomorphism  $\Delta(\mathbb{C}) \cong \Delta(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}})$  such that the following diagram of functors commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta(\mathbb{C}) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \Delta(\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}) \\ \pi_{\Delta} \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_{\Delta} \\ \Delta & \xrightarrow{(-)^{\text{op}}} & \Delta \end{array}$$

but in general there is no isomorphism between  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  and  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}$ .

**5.10.4** PROPOSITION. Let  $X$  be a simplicial set, and let  $\Delta^{\bullet} : \Delta \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  be the inclusion of the standard simplices.

- (i) The comma category  $(\Delta^{\bullet} \downarrow X)$  is a Reedy category, where the direct subcategory consists of all face operators and the inverse subcategory consists of all degeneracy operators.
- (ii) Moreover,  $(\Delta^{\bullet} \downarrow X)$  has fibrant constants.



*Proof.* (i). The evident projection  $(\Delta^\bullet \downarrow X) \rightarrow \Delta$  is a discrete right fibration, so the Reedy category structure on  $\Delta$  induces one on  $(\Delta^\bullet \downarrow X)$ .

(ii). See Proposition 15.10.4 in [Hirschhorn, 2003].  $\square$

**5.10.5** COROLLARY. *The category  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  of simplices of a (small) category  $\mathbb{C}$  admits a Reedy category structure with fibrant constants.*

*Proof.* It is not hard to see that the category  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  as defined above is isomorphic to the comma category  $(\Delta^\bullet \downarrow N(\mathbb{C}))$ , where  $N(\mathbb{C})$  is the nerve of  $\mathbb{C}$ .  $\blacksquare$

**5.10.6** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a DHK model category and  $\mathbb{C}$  is a small category, then:*

- *The functor  $\varinjlim_{\Delta(\mathbb{C})} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between Reedy-cofibrant diagrams to weak equivalences between cofibrant objects.*
- *The functor  $\varprojlim_{\Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between Reedy-fibrant diagrams to weak equivalences between fibrant objects.*

*Proof.* Apply Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6) and corollary 5.6.26.  $\blacksquare$

**5.10.7** LEMMA. *Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between (small) categories.*

- (i)  *$\Delta(F) : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \Delta(\mathbb{D})$  is a left fibration of Reedy categories.*
- (ii)  *$\Delta(F) : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \Delta(\mathbb{D})$  is a right fibration of Reedy categories.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $[D_0 \cdots D_n]$  be an object in  $\Delta(\mathbb{D})$ , let  $([C_0 \cdots C_m], h)$  be an object in the comma category  $(\Delta(F) \downarrow [D_0 \cdots D_n])$ . We will show that the matching category

$$\partial(( [C_0 \cdots C_m], h ) \downarrow ( \Delta(F) \downarrow [D_0 \cdots D_n] ))_{\leftarrow}$$

has at most one connected component.

First, note that the objects of this matching category are pairs  $(k, l)$ , where  $k$  is in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\leftarrow}$ ,  $k \neq \text{id}_{[C_0 \cdots C_m]}$ ,  $l$  is in  $\Delta(\mathbb{D})$ , and  $h = l \circ \Delta(F)k$ . Let  $(\sigma, \delta)$  be the codegeneracy-coface factorisation of  $\pi_\Delta h$  in  $\Delta$ .

- If  $\sigma = \text{id}_{[m]}$ , then the matching category must be empty.

- If  $\sigma \neq \text{id}_{[m]}$ , then we may lift  $(\sigma, \delta)$  along the respective  $\pi_\Delta$  projections to obtain a terminal object in the matching category, so the matching category is connected *a fortiori*.

Thus, by [theorem 5.6.32](#),  $\Delta(F) : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \Delta(\mathbb{D})$  is a left fibration of Reedy categories.

(ii). A similar argument shows that  $\Delta(F) : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \Delta(\mathbb{D})$  is a right fibration of Reedy categories. ■

**5.10.8** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

- (i) *The functor  $\Delta(F)^* : [\Delta(\mathbb{D}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}]$  is a right Quillen functor.*
- (ii) *The functor  $\Delta(F)^* : [\Delta(\mathbb{D}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}]$  is a left Quillen functor.*

*Proof.* Apply [theorem 5.6.32](#). ■

**5.10.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a (small) category and let  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  be its category of simplices.

- The **left projection functor**  $\pi_L : \Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the functor defined by evaluating objects  $f : [n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  at the initial object in  $[n]$ .
- The **right projection functor**  $\pi_R : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is the functor defined by evaluating objects  $f : [n] \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  at the terminal object in  $[n]$ .
- A **strong left equivalence** in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  is a morphism such that the underlying map in  $\Delta$  preserves the initial object.
- A **strong right equivalence** in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  is a morphism such that the underlying map in  $\Delta$  preserves the terminal object.
- The class of **weak left equivalences** in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  is the smallest subcategory that has the 2-out-of-6 property and contains all the strong left equivalences.
- The class of **weak right equivalences** in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  is the smallest subcategory that has the 2-out-of-6 property and contains all the strong right equivalences.

We write  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})_L$  for the category of simplices of  $\mathbb{C}$  regarded as a relative category with weak equivalences the strong left equivalences, and we write  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})_R$  for the category of simplices of  $\mathbb{C}$  regarded as a relative category with weak equivalences the strong right equivalences.

**5.10.10** REMARK. The strong left (resp. right) equivalences in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  are closed under composition, and the left (resp. right) projection to  $\mathbb{C}$  sends strong left (resp. right) equivalences to identity morphisms, so if we regard  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  as a relative category with weak equivalences the strong left (resp. right) equivalences, then the left (resp. right) projection functor becomes a relative functor.

Unfortunately, the subcategory of strong left (resp. right) equivalences in  $\Delta(\mathbb{C})$  does not generally have the 2-out-of-6 property, or even the 2-out-of-3 property; one may rectify this by instead considering the class of weak left (resp. right) equivalences. An example of a weak left equivalence that is not a strong left equivalence is the morphism  $\delta^0 : \left[ A \xrightarrow{\text{id}} A \right] \rightarrow [A]$ : this is a weak left equivalence because  $\sigma^0 : [A] \rightarrow \left[ A \xrightarrow{\text{id}} A \right]$  is a strong left equivalence and  $\delta^0 \circ \sigma^0 = \text{id}_{[A]}$ , but  $\delta^0$  is not a strong left equivalence because the underlying cosimplicial operator in  $\Delta$  sends 0 in  $[0]$  to 1 in  $[1]$ .

**5.10.11** REMARK. It is not hard to see that  $\Delta(-)$  is a functor  $\mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  and that  $\pi_L$  (resp.  $\pi_R$ ) defines a natural transformation  $\Delta(-)^{\text{op}} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$  (resp.  $\Delta(-) \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathbf{Cat}}$ ).

**5.10.12** LEMMA. Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor, let  $\pi_L : \Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the left projection functor, and let  $\pi_R : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  be the right projection functor. Then, for any object  $D$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ :

- The canonical comparison functor  $\Delta((D \downarrow F))^{\text{op}} \rightarrow (D \downarrow F\pi_L)$  is an isomorphism.
- The canonical comparison functor  $\Delta((F \downarrow D)) \rightarrow (F\pi_R \downarrow D)$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

As always, the comma category  $(D \downarrow F)$  fits into a comma square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (D \downarrow F) & \xrightarrow{P} & \mathbb{C} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow F \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{D} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

and the following diagram of functors commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta((D \downarrow F))^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{\Delta(P)^{\text{op}}} & \Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}} \\ \pi_L \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_L \\ (D \downarrow F) & \xrightarrow{P} & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

so the universal property of  $(D \downarrow F)$  gives us a canonical comparison functor  $\Delta((D \downarrow F))^{\text{op}} \rightarrow (D \downarrow F\pi_L)$ , as claimed. It is not hard to check that the second diagram is a pullback square, so the pasting lemma for comma squares implies that the comparison functor is an isomorphism. ■

**5.10.13** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.*

- *The functor  $\text{Ran}_{F\pi_L} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between Reedy-fibrant diagrams to componentwise weak equivalences between componentwise fibrant diagrams.*
- *The functor  $\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  sends Reedy weak equivalences between Reedy-cofibrant diagrams to componentwise weak equivalences between componentwise cofibrant diagrams.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the second version.

Using the formula for  $\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R}$  given by [theorem A.5.15](#), we see that, for each object  $D$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , the functor  $(\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} -)(D) : [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is naturally isomorphic to the functor  $\varinjlim : [(F\pi_R \downarrow D), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ ; but by [lemma 5.10.12](#), there is a canonical isomorphism  $(F\pi_R \downarrow D) \cong \Delta((F \downarrow D))$ , so  $(\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} -)(D)$  is in turn naturally isomorphic to  $\varinjlim : [\Delta((F \downarrow D)), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ . The claim now follows from [corollary 5.10.6](#). ■

**5.10.14** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category and let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.*

- *The adjunction shown below is deformable and satisfies the Quillen equivalence condition for homotopical categories:*

$$\pi_L^* \dashv \text{Ran}_{\pi_L} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C})_L^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]$$

- *The adjunction shown below is deformable and satisfies the Quillen equivalence condition for homotopical categories:*

$$\text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \dashv \pi_R^* : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{C})_R, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$$

*Proof.* See Proposition 23.2 in [DHKS].  $\square$

**5.10.15** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category and let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a small category.

- A **virtually cofibrant diagram**  $X : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is one for which there exists a Reedy-cofibrant diagram  $\tilde{X} : \Delta(\mathbb{C}) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  such that  $\tilde{X}$  is in  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\mathbf{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathbf{h}}$  and  $X \cong \text{Lan}_{\pi_{\mathbf{R}}} \tilde{X}$ .
- A **virtually fibrant diagram**  $Y : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is one for which there exists a Reedy-fibrant diagram  $\hat{Y} : \Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  such that  $\hat{Y}$  is in  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\mathbf{L}}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathbf{h}}$  and  $Y \cong \text{Ran}_{\pi_{\mathbf{L}}} \hat{Y}$ .

We write  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{vc}}$  for the full subcategory of  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the virtually cofibrant diagrams, and we write  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{vf}}$  for the full subcategory of  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the virtually fibrant diagrams.

**5.10.16** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category and let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories.

- The functor  $\text{Lan}_F : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  sends virtually cofibrant diagrams to componentwise cofibrant diagrams and preserves componentwise weak equivalences between such diagrams.
- If  $\text{Lan}_{\Delta(F)} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{D}), \mathcal{M}]$  moreover restricts to a functor  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\mathbf{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathbf{h}} \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{D})_{\mathbf{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathbf{h}}$ , then  $\text{Lan}_F : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  preserves virtually cofibrant diagrams.
- If  $(Q, p)$  is a cofibrant replacement functor for  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}]$ , then

$$([\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{vc}}, \text{Lan}_{\pi_{\mathbf{R}}} \circ Q \circ \pi_{\mathbf{R}}^*, \epsilon \bullet (\text{Lan}_{\pi_{\mathbf{R}}} \circ p \circ \pi_{\mathbf{R}}^*))$$

is a functorial left deformation retract for  $\text{Lan}_F$ , where  $\epsilon$  is the counit of the adjunction  $\text{Lan}_{\pi_{\mathbf{R}}} \dashv \pi_{\mathbf{R}}^*$ .

- The adjunction shown below is deformable:

$$\text{Lan}_F \dashv F^* : [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]$$

- Given another functor  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  between small categories,  $(\text{Lan}_G, \text{Lan}_F)$  is strongly left deformable.

Dually:

- (i') The functor  $\text{Ran}_F : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  sends virtually fibrant diagrams to componentwise fibrant diagrams and preserves componentwise weak equivalences between such diagrams.
- (ii') If  $\text{Ran}_{\Delta(F)} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{D})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]$  moreover restricts to a functor  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\text{L}}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{D})_{\text{L}}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$ , then  $\text{Lan}_F : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  preserves virtually cofibrant diagrams.
- (iii') If  $(R, i)$  is a fibrant replacement functor for  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}]$ , then

$$([\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{vf}}, \text{Ran}_{\pi_{\text{L}}} \circ R \circ \pi_{\text{L}}^*, (\text{Ran}_{\pi_{\text{L}}} \circ i \circ \pi_{\text{L}}^*) \bullet \eta)$$

is a functorial right deformation retract for  $\text{Ran}_F$ , where  $\eta$  is the unit of the adjunction  $\pi_{\text{L}}^* \dashv \text{Ran}_{\pi_{\text{L}}}$ .

- (iv') The adjunction shown below is deformable:

$$F^* \dashv \text{Ran}_F : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$$

- (v') Given another functor  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  between small categories,  $(\text{Ran}_G, \text{Ran}_F)$  is strongly right deformable.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\tilde{X}$  be a Reedy-cofibrant diagram  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  that is in  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\text{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$  and let  $X = \text{Lan}_{\pi_{\text{R}}} \tilde{X}$ . There is a canonical isomorphism  $\text{Lan}_{F\pi_{\text{R}}} \cong \text{Lan}_F \circ \text{Lan}_{\pi_{\text{R}}}$ , so [proposition 5.10.13](#) implies  $\text{Lan}_F X$  is a componentwise cofibrant diagram  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ .

Let  $\tilde{Y}$  be another Reedy-cofibrant diagram  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  that is in  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\text{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$ , let  $Y = \text{Lan}_{\pi_{\text{R}}} \tilde{Y}$ , and let  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow Y$  be a componentwise weak equivalence. [Proposition 3.3.28](#) applied to [theorem 5.10.14](#) implies the adjunction unit components  $\tilde{X} \rightarrow \pi_{\text{R}}^* X$  and  $\tilde{Y} \rightarrow \pi_{\text{R}}^* Y$  are Reedy weak equivalences. Using axiom CM2 and CM5, factor  $\tilde{Y} \rightarrow \pi_{\text{R}}^* Y$  as a trivial cofibration  $\theta : \tilde{Y} \rightarrow \tilde{Z}$  followed by a trivial fibration  $\tilde{Z} \rightarrow \pi_{\text{R}}^* Y$ ; then by axiom CM4 there exists a natural transformation  $\psi : \tilde{X} \Rightarrow \tilde{Z}$  making the diagram in  $[\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}]$  shown below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \tilde{X} & \overset{\psi}{\dashrightarrow} & \tilde{Z} & \overset{\theta}{\longleftarrow} & \tilde{Y} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \pi_{\text{R}}^*(X) & \xrightarrow{\pi_{\text{R}}^*(\varphi)} & \pi_{\text{R}}^*(Y) & \equiv & \pi_{\text{R}}^*(Y) \end{array}$$

Since  $\pi_R^*(\varphi)$  is a Reedy weak equivalence, it follows from axiom CM2 that  $\psi$  is also a Reedy weak equivalence. Transposing across the adjunction  $\text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \dashv \pi_R^*$ , we obtain a commutative diagram in  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{\text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \psi} & \text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \tilde{Z} & \xleftarrow{\text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \theta} & \text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \tilde{Y} \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y \end{array}$$

to which we may then apply  $\text{Lan}_F$ , yielding the following commutative diagram in  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{X} & \xrightarrow{\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \psi} & \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{Z} & \xleftarrow{\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \theta} & \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{Y} \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \text{Lan}_F X & \xrightarrow{\text{Lan}_F \varphi} & \text{Lan}_F Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & \text{Lan}_F Y \end{array}$$

Now,  $\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \psi : \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{X} \rightarrow \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{Z}$  and  $\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \theta : \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{Y} \rightarrow \text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} \tilde{Z}$  are componentwise weak equivalences between componentwise cofibrant diagrams, by [proposition 5.10.13](#), so we deduce that  $\text{Lan}_F \varphi$  is also a componentwise weak equivalence between componentwise cofibrant diagrams as claimed, using the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(ii). The following diagram of functors is commutative,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta(\mathbb{C}) & \xrightarrow{\Delta(F)} & \Delta(\mathbb{D}) \\ \pi_R \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_R \\ \mathbb{C} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

so there is a canonical natural isomorphism  $\text{Lan}_F \circ \text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \cong \text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \circ \text{Lan}_{\Delta(F)}$ . [Corollary 5.10.8](#) implies  $\text{Lan}_{\Delta(F)} : [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{D}), \mathcal{M}]$  preserves Reedy-cofibrant diagrams, so it follows from the hypothesis that the functor  $\text{Lan}_F : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]$  preserves virtually cofibrant diagrams.

(iii). Having proved claim (i), it is now enough to show that the natural transformation  $\varepsilon \bullet (\text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \circ p \circ \pi_R^*) : \text{Lan}_{\pi_R} \circ Q \circ \pi_R^* \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}]}$  is a natural weak equivalence; but this is also a consequence of [proposition 3.3.28](#) applied to [theorem 5.10.14](#).

(iv). The functor  $F^*$  is a homotopical functor, hence trivially right deformable, and claim (iii) implies  $\text{Lan}_F$  is left deformable.

(v). Since  $F^*$  and  $G^*$  are both homotopical functors,  $(F^*, G^*)$  is strongly right deformable, and we may deduce from claim (i) that  $(\text{Lan}_G, \text{Lan}_F)$  is laxly left deformable. Thus, by [lemma 3.1.11](#), [theorem 5.4.1](#), and [corollary 3.3.27](#), the composable pair  $(\text{Lan}_G, \text{Lan}_F)$  is strongly left deformable.  $\blacksquare$

**5.10.17** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories, and let  $D$  be an object in  $\mathbb{D}$ .*

- *Given the following comma square,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta((F \downarrow D)) & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ \Delta(P) \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow D \\ \Delta(\mathbb{C}) & \xrightarrow{F\pi_R} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

*the derived left Beck–Chevalley transformation*

$$\left( \text{Llim}_{\xrightarrow{\Delta((F \downarrow D))}} \right) \circ (\text{Ho } \Delta(P)^*) \Rightarrow (\text{Ho } D^*) \circ (\text{LLan}_{F\pi_R})$$

*is a natural isomorphism.*

*Dually:*

- *Given the following comma square,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Delta((D \downarrow F))^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{\Delta(P)^{\text{op}}} & \Delta(\mathbb{C})^{\text{op}} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow F\pi_L \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{D} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

*the derived right Beck–Chevalley transformation*

$$\left( \text{Rlim}_{\xleftarrow{\Delta((D \downarrow F))^{\text{op}}}} \right) \circ (\text{Ho } \Delta(P)^*) \Rightarrow (\text{Ho } D^*) \circ (\text{RRan}_{F\pi_L})$$

*is a natural isomorphism.*

*Proof.* [Lemma 5.10.7](#) says  $\Delta(P) : \Delta((F \downarrow D)) \rightarrow \Delta(\mathbb{C})$  is a right fibration of Reedy categories, so by [theorem 5.6.32](#),  $\Delta(P)^* : [\Delta((F \downarrow D)), \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}]$  preserves Reedy-cofibrant diagrams. [Proposition 8.1.19](#) implies that the left Beck–Chevalley transformation  $\lim_{\xrightarrow{(F\pi_R \downarrow D)}} (-\Delta(P)) \Rightarrow (\text{Lan}_{F\pi_R} -)(D)$  is a natural isomorphism, hence by [corollary 3.3.25](#), so too is its derived natural transformation.  $\blacksquare$



**5.10.18** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a DHK model category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be a functor between small categories, and let  $D$  be an object in  $\mathbb{D}$ .

- Given the following comma square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (F \downarrow D) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{1} \\ P \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow D \\ \mathbb{C} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

the derived left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\left( \mathbf{L}\lim_{\xrightarrow{(F \downarrow D)}} \right) \circ (\mathrm{Ho} P^*) \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Ho} D^*) \circ (\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_F)$$

is a natural isomorphism.

Dually:

- Given the following comma square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (D \downarrow F) & \xrightarrow{P} & \mathbb{C} \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow F \\ \mathbb{1} & \xrightarrow{D} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

the derived right Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\left( \mathbf{R}\lim_{\xleftarrow{(D \downarrow F)}} \right) \circ (\mathrm{Ho} P^*) \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Ho} D^*) \circ (\mathbf{R}\mathrm{Ran}_F)$$

is a natural isomorphism.

*Proof.* Consider the following diagram, where the 2-cells are the respective left Beck–Chevalley transformations:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\Delta(\mathbb{C})_{\mathbf{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathbf{h}} & \xrightarrow{\Delta(P)^*} & [\Delta((F \downarrow D))_{\mathbf{R}}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathbf{h}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ [\Delta(\mathbb{C}), \mathcal{M}] & \xrightarrow{\Delta(P)^*} & [\Delta((F \downarrow D)), \mathcal{M}] \\ \mathrm{Lan}_{\pi_{\mathbf{R}}} \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow \mathrm{Lan}_{\pi_{\mathbf{R}}} \\ [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] & \xrightarrow{P^*} & [(F \downarrow D), \mathcal{M}] \\ \mathrm{Lan}_F \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow \lim \\ [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}] & \xrightarrow{D^*} & \mathcal{M} \end{array}$$

## V. MODEL CATEGORIES

---

The pasting lemma (A.1.12) implies that left Beck–Chevalley transformations can be pasted together, and the preceding lemma says the derived left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\left( \mathbf{L}\lim_{\rightarrow \Delta((F \downarrow D))} \right) \circ (\mathrm{Ho} \, \Delta(P)^*) \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Ho} \, D^*) \circ (\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_{F\pi_R})$$

is a natural isomorphism; but theorem 5.10.14 says that the adjunctions

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Lan}_{\pi_R} \dashv \pi_R^* : [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] &\rightarrow [\Delta(\mathbb{C})_R, \mathcal{M}]_h \\ \mathrm{Lan}_{\pi_R} \dashv \pi_R^* : [(F \downarrow D), \mathcal{M}] &\rightarrow [\Delta((F \downarrow D))_R, \mathcal{M}]_h \end{aligned}$$

satisfy the Quillen equivalence condition, so the commutative diagram shown below automatically satisfies the derived left Beck–Chevalley condition,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] & \xrightarrow{P^*} & [(F \downarrow D), \mathcal{M}] \\ \pi_R^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_R^* \\ [\Delta(\mathbb{C})_R, \mathcal{M}]_h & \xrightarrow{\Delta(P)^*} & [\Delta((F \downarrow D))_R, \mathcal{M}]_h \end{array}$$

and therefore, by cancelling natural isomorphisms, we conclude that the derived left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\left( \mathbf{L}\lim_{\rightarrow (F \downarrow D)} \right) \circ (\mathrm{Ho} \, P^*) \Rightarrow (\mathrm{Ho} \, D^*) \circ (\mathbf{L}\mathrm{Lan}_F)$$

is a natural isomorphism, as claimed. ■

## TOPICS IN MODEL CATEGORIES

### 6.1 Proper model categories

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 4.1, 4.2, 5.1, 5.3, 5.4, 5.6.

**6.1.1** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects.*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{M}$  is a relative fibration category (with the given weak equivalences and fibrations).*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{M}_f$  is a category of fibrant objects (with the given weak equivalences and fibrations).*

*Proof.* (i). Axiom RF0 is a special case of axiom CM1, axiom RF1 is the same as axiom CM2, axiom RF2 and RF3 are consequences of [theorem 5.1.12](#) and [proposition A.3.19](#), and axiom RF4 is a special case of axiom CM5.

(ii). Apply [proposition 4.1.33](#). ■

**6.1.2** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a derivable category.*

- *Every trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  is homotopically quadrable.*
- *Every trivial cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  is homotopically coquadrable.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose  $p : E \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial fibration. By [corollary 5.1.13](#), we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} E'' & \xrightarrow{u} & E' & \longrightarrow & E \\ p'' \downarrow & & p' \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Y'' & \xrightarrow{v} & Y' & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

where both squares are pullbacks, and moreover,  $p' : E' \rightarrow Y'$  and  $p'' : E'' \rightarrow Y''$  are also trivial fibrations. Axiom CM2 then implies  $u : E'' \rightarrow E'$  is a weak equivalence if (and only if)  $v : Y'' \rightarrow Y'$  is a weak equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**6.1.3** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then the base change adjunction<sup>[1]</sup>*

$$\Sigma_f \dashv f^* : \mathcal{M}_{/Y} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{/X}$$

*is a Quillen adjunction.*

*Proof.* By [proposition 5.3.2](#), it suffices to verify that the dependent sum functor  $\Sigma_f : \mathcal{M}_{/X} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{/Y}$  preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations; but this is an immediate consequence of the definition of slice model structures.  $\blacksquare$

The following appears as Proposition 2.3 in [Rezk, 2002].

**6.1.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The following are equivalent:*

(i) *The pullback of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  along any fibration  $p : E \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . (In particular,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .)*

(ii) *The base change adjunction*

$$\Sigma_f \dashv f^* : \mathcal{M}_{/Y} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{/X}$$

*is a Quillen equivalence.*

(iii) *The derived base change adjunction*

$$\mathbf{L}\Sigma_f \dashv \mathbf{R}f^* : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}_{/Y} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}_{/X}$$

*is an adjoint equivalence of categories.*

[1] See [lemma A.2.17](#).

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Consider a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}_{/Y}$ , i.e. a fibration  $p : E \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then we have a pullback square in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f^*E & \xrightarrow{u} & E \\ f^*p \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

Let  $q : T \rightarrow X$  be a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$ , i.e. any morphism  $q : T \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  where  $T$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $u : f^*E \rightarrow E$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then (by axiom CM2) a morphism  $q \rightarrow f^*p$  in  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$  is a weak equivalence if and only if its right adjoint transpose  $\Sigma_f q \rightarrow p$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_{/Y}$ . Thus, recalling [lemma 6.1.3](#), condition (i) implies condition (ii).

Conversely, suppose  $(\tilde{E}, v)$  is a cofibrant replacement for  $f^*E$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Let  $q = f^*p \circ v$ . Then  $q : \tilde{E} \rightarrow X$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$  and  $v : q \rightarrow f^*p$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_{/X}$ ; so if the base change adjunction is a Quillen equivalence, then the right adjoint transpose  $\Sigma_f q \rightarrow p$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_{/Y}$ . But the underlying morphism of the right adjoint transpose is  $u \circ v : \tilde{E} \rightarrow E$ , and axiom CM2 implies  $u \circ v$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $u : f^*E \rightarrow E$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; thus condition (ii) implies condition (i).

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Since model categories are saturated homotopical categories (by [theorem 5.4.1](#)), we may apply [proposition 3.3.28](#). ■

**6.1.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category.

- A **right proper model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model structure where every fibration is homotopically quadrable.
- A **left proper model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model structure where every cofibration is homotopically coquadrable.
- A **proper model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  is a model structure that is both left proper and right proper.

The following appears as Proposition 2.5 in [Rezk, 2002].

**6.1.6** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right proper model category.
- (ii) The pullback of any weak equivalence  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  along any fibration  $p : E \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- (iii) For any weak equivalence  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , the derived base change adjunction

$$\mathbf{L}\Sigma_f \dashv \mathbf{R}f^* : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}_{/Y} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}_{/X}$$

*is an adjoint equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). The class of fibrations is closed under pullbacks, by [proposition A.3.19](#).

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Apply [proposition 6.1.4](#). ■

**6.1.7** PROPOSITION (Reedy). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *If all objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are cofibrant, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left proper model category.*
- *If all objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are fibrant, then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right proper model category.*

*Proof.* Use [proposition 4.2.7](#) and [theorem 6.1.1](#). ■

**6.1.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category and let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category.*

- (i) *If the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  exists and  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left proper model category, then  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  (with the injective model structure) is also a left proper model category.*
- (ii) *If the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  exists and  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left proper model category with products for families of size  $\leq |\mathrm{mor} \mathbb{A}|$ , then  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  (with the projective model structure) is also a left proper model category.*

*Dually:*

- (i') *If the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  exists and  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right proper model category, then  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  (with the projective model structure) is also a right proper model category.*

(ii') If the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  exists and  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right proper model category with coproducts for families of size  $\leq |\text{mor } \mathbb{A}|$ , then  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  (with the injective model structure) is also a right proper model category.

*Proof.* (i). Since cofibrations, weak equivalences, and pushouts are all defined componentwise in  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$ , left properness is indeed inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(ii). [Corollary 5.3.21](#) says that the cofibrations in the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  are also cofibrations in the injective model structure, so the projective model structure is left proper if the injective model structure is. ■

For the remainder of this section, we study pullbacks (resp. pushouts) in the context of left (resp. right) proper model categories.

**6.1.9 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.

- A **(right) derived pullback** for a pair of morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  consists of the following data:

- An object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $X \overset{\mathbf{R}}{\times}_Z Y$ .
- A pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \overset{\mathbf{R}}{\times}_Z Y & \longrightarrow & \hat{Y} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

where  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and  $\hat{g} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  are fibrations between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z & \xleftarrow{g} & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} & \xleftarrow{\hat{g}} & \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

We will often abuse notation and refer to  $X \overset{\mathbf{R}}{\times}_Z Y$  as the derived pullback.

- A **(left) derived pushout** for a pair of morphisms  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  consists of the following data:
  - An object in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $X \cup_L^Z Y$ .
  - A pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{Z} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{g}} & \tilde{Y} \\ \tilde{f} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \tilde{X} & \longrightarrow & X \cup_L^Z Y \end{array}$$

where  $\tilde{f} : \tilde{Z} \rightarrow \tilde{X}$  and  $\tilde{g} : \tilde{Z} \rightarrow \tilde{Y}$  are cofibrations between cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \tilde{X} & \xleftarrow{\tilde{f}} & \tilde{Z} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{g}} & \tilde{Y} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xleftarrow{f} & Z & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

We will often abuse notation and refer to  $X \cup_L^Z Y$  as the derived pushout.

**6.1.10** REMARK. The free cospan  $\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}$  is clearly an inverse category; dually, the free span  $\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}$  is a direct category.

**6.1.11** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *The injective model structure on the category of cospans in  $\mathcal{M}$  exists and coincides with the Reedy model structure.*
- *The projective model structure on the category of spans in  $\mathcal{M}$  exists and coincides with the Reedy model structure.*

*Proof.* In view of [remark 6.1.10](#), this is a special case of [corollary 5.6.14](#). ■



**6.1.12** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *The limit functor  $\varprojlim : [\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \leftarrow \bullet\}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  admits a right derived functor.*
- *The colimit functor  $\varinjlim : [\{\bullet \leftarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet\}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  admits a left derived functor.*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 5.3.2](#) and [theorem 5.3.12](#) to [proposition 5.3.17](#). ■

**6.1.13** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *A cospan in  $\mathcal{M}$  is injective-fibrant if and only if its vertices are fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  and its arrows are fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *A span in  $\mathcal{M}$  is projective-cofibrant if and only if its vertices are cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  and its arrows are cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [lemma 6.1.11](#) and the explicit description of cofibrations (resp. fibrations) in the Reedy model structure. ■

**6.1.14** REMARK. Thus, a derived pullback (resp. derived pushout) for a cospan (resp. span) is essentially the same thing as a injective-fibrant (resp. projective-cofibrant) replacement together with a pullback (resp. pushout) for the replacement cospan (resp. span). In particular, by [lemma 5.1.25](#) and Ken Brown's lemma ([5.3.6](#)), their underlying objects are unique up to weak equivalence.

**6.1.15** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.

- A **derived pullback diagram** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a commutative square in  $\mathcal{M}$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & Z \end{array}$$

such that the canonical comparison morphism  $W \rightarrow X \overset{\mathbf{R}}{\times}_Z Y$  is a weak equivalence for all derived pullbacks  $X \overset{\mathbf{R}}{\times}_Z Y$ .

- A **derived pushout diagram** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a commutative square in  $\mathcal{M}$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & W \end{array}$$

such that the canonical comparison morphism  $X \cup_L^Z Y \rightarrow W$  is a weak equivalence for all derived pushouts  $X \cup_L^Z Y$ .

**6.1.16 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category. Consider a commutative square in  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \\ x \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The square is a derived pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *The square is a homotopy pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Using axiom CM5, we may choose:

- a weak equivalence  $i_Z : Z \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  where  $\hat{Z}$  is a fibrant object,
- a fibration  $\hat{f} : \hat{X} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_X : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  such that  $\hat{f} \circ i_X = i_Z \circ f$ , and
- a fibration  $\hat{g} : \hat{Y} \rightarrow \hat{Z}$  and a weak equivalence  $i_Y : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  such that  $\hat{g} \circ i_Y = i_Z \circ f$ .

Form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \hat{W} & \xrightarrow{\hat{y}} & \hat{Y} \\ \hat{x} \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{g} \\ \hat{X} & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & \hat{Z} \end{array}$$

By [proposition 4.2.18](#), the above diagram is a homotopy pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, by axiom CM2, the original diagram is a derived pullback diagram if and only if it is a homotopy pullback diagram. ■

**6.1.17** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *Given any pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*if  $Z$  is fibrant and either  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  or  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically quadrable fibration, then the above diagram is also a derived pullback diagram.*

- *Given any pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & X \cup^Z Y \end{array}$$

*if  $Z$  is cofibrant and either  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  or  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically coquadrable cofibration, then the above diagram is also a derived pushout diagram.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically quadrable fibration. By axiom CM5, the morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  admits a factorisation  $g = p \circ v$  where  $p : Y' \rightarrow Z$  is a fibration and  $v : Y \rightarrow Y'$  is a weak equivalence. Thus, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & X \times_Z Y' & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y & \xrightarrow{v} & Y' & \xrightarrow{p} & Z \end{array}$$

where the two squares are pullbacks and the morphism  $X \times_Z Y \rightarrow X \times_Z Y'$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Recalling lemma 6.1.13, we see that the right square is (part of) a derived pullback for  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ , so remark 6.1.14 implies that the canonical comparison morphism  $X \times_Z Y \rightarrow X \times_Z^R Y$  is the composite of two weak equivalences, hence is itself a weak equivalence by axiom CM2. ■

**6.1.18** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *Let  $1$  be a terminal object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary products, then for any pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following derived pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & 1 \end{array}$$

*where the two non-trivial arrows are the product projections.*

- *Let  $0$  be an initial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary coproducts, then for any pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , we have the following derived pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & X + Y \end{array}$$

*where the two non-trivial arrows are the coproduct insertions.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 5.1.17](#), there are fibrant replacements  $(\hat{X}, i_X)$  and  $(\hat{Y}, i_Y)$  for  $X$  and  $Y$  (respectively), and by [remark 6.1.14](#), the diagram in question is a derived pullback diagram if and only if  $i_X \times i_Y : X \times Y \rightarrow \hat{X} \times \hat{Y}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; but we assumed that the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary products, so we are done. ■

**6.1.19** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *Consider a commutative square in  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} W & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*Assuming  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the square is a derived pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $q : W \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- Consider a commutative square in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & Y \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow j \\ X & \xrightarrow{i} & W \end{array}$$

Assuming  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the square is a derived pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $j : Y \rightarrow W$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* Apply lemma 4.2.19 and proposition 6.1.16. ■

**6.1.20** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.

- Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} W' & \xrightarrow{w} & W & \xrightarrow{q} & Y \\ p' \downarrow & & p \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X' & \xrightarrow{x} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

Assuming the right square is a derived pullback diagram, the outer rectangle is a derived pullback diagram if and only if the left square is a derived pullback diagram.

- Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & Y & \xrightarrow{y} & Y' \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow i & & \downarrow i' \\ X & \xrightarrow{j} & W & \xrightarrow{w} & W' \end{array}$$

Assuming the left square is a derived pushout diagram, the outer rectangle is a derived pushout diagram if and only if the right square is a derived pushout diagram.

*Proof.* Apply lemma 4.2.20 and proposition 6.1.16. ■

**6.1.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *Consider a commutative cube in  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 W' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y' & & \\
 \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
 & W & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Z' & & \\
 \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
 & X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Z & 
 \end{array}$$

*Assuming the diagonal arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the front face is a derived pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the back face is a derived pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *Consider a commutative cube in  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y' & & \\
 \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
 & Z & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & W' & & \\
 \downarrow & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
 & X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & W & 
 \end{array}$$

*Assuming the diagonal arrows are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the front face is a derived pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the back face is a derived pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* Apply lemmas 6.1.19 and 6.1.20 (twice for each direction of each claim). ■

**6.1.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category.*

- *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If every pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z
 \end{array}$$

is also a derived pullback diagram, then  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is a homotopically quadrable morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- Let  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If every pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & Y \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & X \cup^Z Y \end{array}$$

is also a derived pushout diagram, then  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  is a homotopically coquadrable morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 4.2.23](#). ■

The following appears as Proposition 2.7 in [Rezk, 1998]:

**6.1.23** PROPOSITION. *The following are equivalent for a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  in a right proper model category  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

- (i) *The morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Z$  is homotopically quadrable in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *Every pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \times_Z Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \end{array}$$

*is also a derived pullback diagram.*

*Dually, the following are equivalent for a morphism  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  in a left proper model category  $\mathcal{M}$ :*

- (i') *The morphism  $f : Z \rightarrow X$  is homotopically coquadrable in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii') *Every pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & Y \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & X \cup^Z Y \end{array}$$

*is also a derived pushout diagram.*

*Proof.* This is a special case of [proposition 4.2.24](#). ■

## 6.2 Combinatorial model categories

**Prerequisites.** §§0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 5.1, A.3.

**6.2.1** DEFINITION. A **cofibrantly generated model category** is a complete and cocomplete model category  $\mathcal{M}$  such that there exist a set  $\mathcal{I}$  of cofibrations and a set  $\mathcal{I}'$  of trivial cofibrations satisfying these conditions:

- $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{M})$  admits the small object argument, and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  is the class of all cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- $(\mathcal{I}', \mathcal{M})$  admits the small object argument, and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  is the class of all trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.2.2** REMARK. By Quillen's small object argument ([theorem 0.5.12](#)), any cofibrantly generated model category satisfies axiom CM5\* and thus is a DHK model category.

**6.2.3** THEOREM (Kan's recognition principle). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a complete and cocomplete locally small category, let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$  containing all the objects, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  be subsets of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{M}$ . Assume the following hypotheses:*

- $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts and has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{M})$  and  $(\mathcal{I}', \mathcal{M})$  both admit the small object argument.
- $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{W} \cap \text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$ .
- $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}' \subseteq \mathcal{W} \cap \text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$ .

*If, in addition, either*

- $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I} = \mathcal{W} \cap \text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$ , or
- $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}' = \mathcal{W} \cap \text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$ .

*then there exists a unique model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  is the class of cofibrations,  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  is the class of trivial cofibrations, and  $\mathcal{W}$  is the class of weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 11.3.1 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □



**6.2.4** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category, let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a set of cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $\mathcal{I}'$  be a set of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Assume the following hypotheses:*

- $\mathcal{M}$  is complete and cocomplete.
- $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{M})$  and  $(\mathcal{I}', \mathcal{M})$  both admit the small object argument.
- $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I} \subseteq \mathcal{W}$ .
- $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}' \subseteq \text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$ .

*If, in addition, either*

- $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I} = \mathcal{W} \cap \text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$ , or
- $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}' = \mathcal{W} \cap \text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$ .

*then there exists a unique model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  is the class of cofibrations,  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  is the class of trivial cofibrations, and  $\mathcal{W}$  is the class of weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* To use Kan's recognition principle (theorem 6.2.3), it suffices to verify that  $\text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{inj}^{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}' \subseteq \mathcal{W}$ . The first inclusion is a consequence of proposition A.3.3 and the assumption that every  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cofibration is a  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibration. To prove the second inclusion, recall that theorem 5.1.12 and proposition A.3.19 imply that the class of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under pushouts, transfinite composition, and retracts, so every  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cofibration is a trivial cofibration (hence a weak equivalence *a fortiori*). ■

**6.2.5** THEOREM (Kan's lifting theorem). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a complete and cocomplete locally small category and let  $\mathcal{N}$  be a cofibrantly generated model category. Assume the following hypotheses:*

- $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is an adjunction of categories.
- $\mathcal{J}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{J}'$ ) is a generating set of cofibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{M})$  and  $(\mathcal{I}', \mathcal{M})$  admit the small object argument, where  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  are the following sets:

$$\mathcal{I} = \{Ff \mid f \in \mathcal{J}\} \qquad \mathcal{I}' = \{Ff \mid f \in \mathcal{J}'\}$$

- $G$  sends relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

Then:

- (i) There is a unique model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  with  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  as the class of cofibrations and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  as the class of trivial cofibrations.
- (ii) A morphism  $g : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration, trivial fibration) in this model structure if and only if  $Gg : GA \rightarrow GB$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration, trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- (iii)  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is a Quillen adjunction with respect to this model structure.

*Proof.* See Theorem 11.3.2 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

**6.2.6 COROLLARY.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a complete and cocomplete locally small category, let  $\mathcal{N}$  be a cofibrantly generated model category. Assume the following hypotheses:

- $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is an adjunction of categories.
- $\mathcal{J}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{J}'$ ) is a generating set of cofibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- $(\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{M})$  and  $(\mathcal{I}', \mathcal{M})$  admit the small object argument, where  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  are the following sets:

$$\mathcal{I} = \{Ff \mid f \in \mathcal{J}\} \qquad \mathcal{I}' = \{Ff \mid f \in \mathcal{J}'\}$$

- $G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is fully faithful.
- $G$  sends relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{M}$  to cofibrations in  $\mathcal{N}$ .
- The adjunction unit  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{N}} \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural weak equivalence.

Then:

- (i) There is a unique model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  with  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  as the class of cofibrations and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  as the class of trivial cofibrations.
- (ii) A morphism  $g : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration, trivial fibration) in this model structure if and only if  $Gg : GA \rightarrow GB$  is a weak equivalence (resp. fibration, trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

(iii)  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is a Quillen equivalence with respect to this model structure.

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). Since  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{N}} \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural weak equivalence, a morphism  $f$  in  $\mathcal{N}$  is a weak equivalence if and only if  $GFf$  is a weak equivalence. Thus,  $GF : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  also preserves trivial cofibrations. In particular, if  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{J}'$ , then  $GFf$  is a trivial cofibration.

Next, consider a diagram  $X : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ . We have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{N}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 GXd & \longrightarrow & \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} GX \\
 \eta_{GXd} \downarrow & & \downarrow \eta_{\varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} GX} \\
 GFGXd & \longrightarrow & GF \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} GX \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \cong \\
 GFGXd & \longrightarrow & G \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} FGX \\
 \downarrow G\varepsilon_{Xd} & & \downarrow G \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} \varepsilon X \\
 GXd & \longrightarrow & G \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} X
 \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are either the components of the colimiting cocones or the images thereof. The right triangle identity says that the composite of the left column is  $\text{id}_{GXd}$ , so the composite of the right column must be the canonical comparison  $\varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} GX \rightarrow G \varinjlim_{\mathbb{D}} X$ ; but [proposition A.1.3](#) says  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$  is a natural isomorphism, so the canonical comparison morphism must be a weak equivalence.

It follows from the observations above (plus [theorem 5.1.12](#) and [proposition A.3.19](#)) that  $G$  sends relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complexes in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{N}$ . We may now apply Kan's lifting theorem ([6.2.5](#)) to deduce that  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  cofibrantly generate a model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  with the required properties.

(iii). We already know that  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  is a Quillen adjunction. To complete the proof, we simply appeal to [propositions 5.3.8](#) and [A.1.3](#). ■

**6.2.7 THEOREM** (Existence of cofibrantly generated projective model structures). *Let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cofibrantly generated model category, then the projective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  exists and is cofibrantly generated.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 11.6.1 in [Hirschhorn, 2003]. □

The following is due to Smith [1998].

**6.2.8** DEFINITION. A **combinatorial model category** is a cofibrantly generated model category that is also a locally presentable category.

**6.2.9** REMARK. Since locally presentable categories are automatically complete and cocomplete,<sup>[1]</sup> in light of [remark 0.5.9](#), to show that a locally presentable model category  $\mathcal{M}$  is a combinatorial model category, it is enough to verify that there exist sets  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  such that  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  is the class of all cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}'$  is the class of all trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.2.10** THEOREM (Smith's recognition principle). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally presentable category, let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$  containing all the objects, and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{M}$ . Assume the following hypotheses:*

- *$\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts and has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *Every  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- *The class  $\mathcal{W} \cap \text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  is closed under pushouts and transfinite composition.*
- *$\mathcal{W}$ , considered as a full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ , is an accessible subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ .*

TODO: Replace this with the solution set condition.

*Then there exists a unique model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  is the class of cofibrations and  $\mathcal{W}$  is the class of weak equivalences, and this makes  $\mathcal{M}$  a combinatorial model category.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 1.7 in [Beke, 2000]. □

**6.2.11** THEOREM (Existence of combinatorial injective model structures). *Let  $\mathbb{A}$  be a small category. If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a combinatorial model category, then the injective model structure on  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  exists and is cofibrantly generated.*

*Proof.* This theorem is due to Lurie; see [HTT, Proposition A.2.8.2]. □

---

[1] See [theorem 0.2.40](#).

**6.2.12** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals. A **strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category** is a combinatorial model category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies these axioms:

- $\mathcal{M}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable category, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ .
- $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$  is closed under finite limits in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- Each hom-set in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa(\mathcal{M})$  is  $\lambda$ -small.
- There exist  $\lambda$ -small sets of morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa(\mathcal{M})$  that cofibrantly generate the model structure of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.2.13** PROPOSITION. *For any combinatorial model category  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exist regular cardinals  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  making  $\mathcal{M}$  into a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category.*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 0.2.35](#), [lemma 0.2.38](#), and [remark 0.3.4](#). ■

**6.2.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category.*

- (i) *There exist (trivial cofibration, fibration)- and (cofibration, trivial fibration)-factorisation functors that are  $\kappa$ -accessible and strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible.*
- (ii) *Let  $\mathcal{F}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{F}'$ ) be the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the fibrations (resp. trivial fibrations). Then  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  are closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Since the weak factorisation systems on  $\mathcal{M}$  are cofibrantly generated by  $\lambda$ -small sets of morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa(\mathcal{M})$  and  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa(\mathcal{M})$  is locally  $\lambda$ -small, we may apply the small object argument of either Quillen ([theorem 0.5.12](#) and [corollary 0.5.14](#)) or Garner ([proposition 0.5.23](#) and [theorem 0.5.24](#)) to obtain the required functorial weak factorisation systems.

(ii). This is [corollary 0.5.27](#). ■

**6.2.15** THEOREM. *Let  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$  be functorial weak factorisation systems on a locally presentable category  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  be the full subcategories of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the morphisms in the right class of the weak factorisation systems induced by  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$ , respectively. Suppose  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  are regular cardinals satisfying the following hypotheses:*

- $\mathcal{M}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable category, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ .

- $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  are closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ .
- $R, R' : [2, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  are both  $\kappa$ -accessible and strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible.

Let  $\mathcal{C}'$  be the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the morphisms in the left class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(L', R)$  and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the preimage of  $\mathcal{F}'$  under the functor  $R : [2, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$ . Then:

- (i) The functorial weak factorisation systems  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$  restrict to functorial weak factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .
- (ii) The inclusions  $\mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  and  $\mathcal{F}' \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functors.
- (iii)  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ , and the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  is a strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functor.
- (iv)  $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \mathcal{W}$  if and only if the same holds in  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .
- (v)  $\mathcal{F}' = \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$  if and only if the same holds in  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .
- (vi)  $\mathcal{W}$  (regarded as a class of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ ) has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the same is true in  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .
- (vii) The weak factorisation systems induced by  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$  underlie a model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if the restrictions to  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$  underlie a model structure on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .

*Proof.* (i). It is clear that we can restrict  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$  to obtain functorial factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ , and these are functorial *weak* factorisation systems by [theorem A.3.37](#).

(ii). Since  $R, R' : [2, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  are both  $\kappa$ -accessible and strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible, we may use [proposition 0.5.28](#) to deduce that the inclusions  $\mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  and  $\mathcal{F}' \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible.

(iii). Since  $\mathcal{F}'$  is a replete subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ , we may use [proposition 0.3.30](#) to deduce that  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  and that the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  is a strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functor.

(iv). The endofunctor  $L' : [2, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  is strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible, and  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under colimits for small  $\lambda$ -filtered diagrams, so (recalling propositions

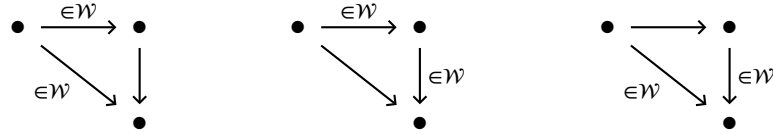
0.2.44 and 0.2.47) if  $L'$  sends the subcategory  $[2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})]$  to  $\mathcal{W}$ , then the entirety of the image of  $L'$  must be contained in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Proposition A.3.39 implies every object in  $\mathcal{C}'$  is a retract of an object in the image of  $L'$ , and claim (iii) implies  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts, so we may deduce that  $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \mathcal{W}$  if and only if  $\mathcal{C}' \cap [2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})] \subseteq \mathcal{W} \cap [2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})]$ .

(v). Claims (ii) and (iii) and proposition 0.3.30 imply the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  is strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible; but by propositions 0.2.47 and 0.3.29,

$$\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{F}') = \mathcal{F}' \cap [2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})] \quad \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}) = (\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}) \cap [2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})]$$

so  $\mathcal{F}' = \mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}$  if and only if  $\mathcal{F}' \cap [2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})] = (\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{F}) \cap [2, \mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})]$ .

(vi). Consider the three full subcategories  $\Lambda_i^2(\mathcal{W})$  (where  $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$ ) of  $[3, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned (respectively) by the diagrams of the form below:



By proposition 0.3.15, each inclusion  $\Lambda_i^2(\mathcal{W}) \hookrightarrow [3, \mathcal{M}]$  is the pullback of a strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible inclusion of a full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]^{\times 3}$  along the evident projection functor  $[3, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]^{\times 3}$ ; thus, each inclusion  $\Lambda_i^2(\mathcal{W}) \hookrightarrow [3, \mathcal{M}]$  is a strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functor. We may then use proposition 0.3.29 as above to prove the claim.

(vii). Apply lemmas 5.1.10 and 5.1.11 and theorem 5.1.12. ■

**6.2.16** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category. Then the full subcategory  $\mathcal{W}$  of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the weak equivalences is closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ , and the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  is a strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functor.*

*Proof.* Combine proposition 6.2.14 and theorem 6.2.15. ■

**6.2.17** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a combinatorial model category and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a set of cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If every  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence, then there exists a unique model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  with the same weak equivalences and  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  as the class of cofibrations, and this makes  $\mathcal{M}$  a combinatorial model category.*

*Proof.* Recalling [proposition 6.2.13](#) and [corollary 6.2.16](#), we see that the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an accessible subcategory. Furthermore, by [theorem 5.1.12](#) and [proposition A.3.19](#), the class of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under pushouts and transfinite composition, and the class of  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibrations that are weak equivalences is the intersection of  $\text{cof}_{\mathcal{M}} \mathcal{I}$  and the class of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, the class of  $\mathcal{I}$ -cofibrations that are weak equivalences is also closed under pushouts and transfinite composition, so we may apply Smith's recognition principle ([theorem 6.2.10](#)) to complete the proof. ■

**6.2.18** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals. A  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact model category is a model category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies these axioms:

- $\mathcal{M}$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated category, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ .
- $\mathcal{M}$  has limits for finite diagrams and colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams.
- Each hom-set in  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  is  $\lambda$ -small.
- There exist  $\lambda$ -small sets of morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}^{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  that cofibrantly generate the model structure of  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.2.19** PROPOSITION. *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category, then  $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact model category (with the weak equivalences, cofibrations, and fibrations inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ ).*

*Proof.* By [proposition 0.3.7](#),  $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  is a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compactly generated category, and [lemma 0.2.18](#) implies it is closed under colimits for  $\lambda$ -small diagrams in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Now, choose a pair of functorial factorisation systems as in [proposition 6.2.14](#), and recall that [theorem A.3.37](#) says a morphism is in the left (resp. right) class of a functorial weak factorisation system if and only if it is a retract of the left (resp. right) half of its functorial factorisation. Since we chose factorisation functors that are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible, it follows that the weak factorisation systems on  $\mathcal{M}$  restricts to weak factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$ . It is then clear that  $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  inherits a model structure from  $\mathcal{M}$ , and [lemma 0.5.30](#) implies the model structure on  $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  can be cofibrantly generated by  $\lambda$ -small sets of morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_{\kappa}(\mathcal{M})$ . The remaining axioms for a  $\lambda$ -compact model category are easily verified. ■



**6.2.20** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{K}$  be a  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -compact model category and let  $\mathcal{M}$  be the free  $\lambda$ -ind-completion  $\mathbf{Ind}^\lambda(\mathcal{K})$ . Then there is a unique way of making  $\mathcal{M}$  into a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category such that the canonical embedding  $\mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves and reflects the model structure.*

*Proof.* We will regard  $\mathcal{K}$  as a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$  via the canonical embedding  $\mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ . Let  $\mathcal{I}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{I}'$ ) be a  $\lambda$ -small set of morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa^\lambda(\mathcal{K})$  that generate the cofibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{K}$ . Let  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$  be functorial weak factorisation systems cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}'$  and  $\mathcal{I}$  respectively; by [corollary 0.5.14](#), we may assume  $R, R' : [2, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  preserve colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functors.

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  be the full subcategories of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the right class of the weak factorisation systems induced by  $(L', R)$  and  $(L, R')$ , respectively. It is not hard to see that any morphism in  $\mathcal{K}$  is an object in  $\mathcal{F}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{F}'$ ) if and only if it is a fibration (resp. trivial fibration) in  $\mathcal{K}$ . [Corollary 0.5.27](#) says  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  are closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ , so we may now apply [theorem 6.2.15](#) to deduce that  $\mathcal{F}$  and  $\mathcal{F}'$  induce a model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . It is clear that  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with this model structure is then a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category in a way that is compatible with the canonical embedding  $\mathcal{K} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ .

Finally, to see that the above construction is the unique way of making  $\mathcal{M}$  into a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category satisfying the given conditions, we simply have to observe that the model structure of a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category is necessarily cofibrantly generated by the cofibrations and trivial cofibrations in (a small skeleton of)  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa(\mathcal{M})$  (independently of the choice of  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$ ). ■

**6.2.21** REMARK. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  and  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be universes, with  $\mathbf{U} \in \mathbf{U}^+$ , let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and let  $\mathcal{M} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}^+$  be a  $(\kappa, \mathbf{U}, \mathbf{U}^+)$ -extension. By combining [propositions 6.2.19](#) and [6.2.20](#), we may deduce that there is a unique way of making  $\mathcal{M}^+$  into a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -category such that the embedding  $\mathcal{M} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}^+$  preserves and reflects the model structure. In other words, combinatorial model categories are stable under universe enlargement.

## 6.3 Algebraic model categories

**Prerequisites.** §§0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 5.1, 6.2, A.3.

Though model categories equipped with functorial factorisations are better-behaved than general model categories, one can often extract a bit more structure by using Garner’s small object argument (theorem 0.5.24). This leads to the notion of ‘algebraic model structure’, due to Riehl [2011a,b].

**6.3.1 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category. An **algebraic model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  consists of a pair of algebraic factorisation systems  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$  and  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  on  $\mathcal{M}$  and a morphism  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  satisfying the following condition:

- There exists a model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  such that the cofibrations are the left class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  and the fibrations are the right class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$ .

An **algebraic model category** is a category with limits and colimits for all finite diagrams and equipped with an algebraic model structure.

The following lemma, originally part of Theorem 3.8 in [Riehl, 2011b], is useful in the construction of algebraic model structures:

**6.3.2 LEMMA.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a category with a model structure, let  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  be an algebraic factorisation system on  $\mathcal{M}$ , and suppose  $\mathcal{I}'$  is a generating set of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If the left class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  is the class of cofibrations, then there exists a subset  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$  with the following properties:*

- $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$  has at most as many elements as  $\mathcal{I}'$ .
- The weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{M}$  cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}'$  coincides with the one cofibrantly generated by  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}$ .
- Each morphism in  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$  can be equipped with an  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra structure.

*In particular, if  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$  is a free algebraic factorisation system cofibrantly generated by  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$ , then there must exist a morphism  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}' = \{Le \mid e \in \mathcal{I}'\}$ . Since  $\mathbf{L}$  is a comonad, every morphism in  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$  admits an  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra structure. Consider the following commutative diagram

in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{Le} & W' \\ e \downarrow & & \downarrow R'e \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W \end{array}$$

Since  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  is a trivial cofibration and  $Re : W' \rightarrow W$  is a trivial fibration, there exists a morphism  $i : W \rightarrow W'$  filling in the diagram. Hence, every morphism in  $\mathcal{I}'$  is a retract of one in  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$ , so by propositions A.3.3 and A.3.19, we have  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'^{\square} \subseteq \mathcal{I}'^{\square}$ . On the other hand, axiom CM2 implies  $Le : Z \rightarrow W'$  is a trivial cofibration, and so  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}' \subseteq \square(\mathcal{I}'^{\square})$ . Thus, we have  $\mathcal{I}'^{\square} \subseteq \tilde{\mathcal{I}}'^{\square}$  as well. ■

**6.3.3 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a combinatorial model category and let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a set of generating cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{I}$  cofibrantly generates an algebraically free algebraic factorisation system  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  on  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *There exists a set  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$  of generating trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that  $\tilde{\mathcal{I}}'$  cofibrantly generates an algebraically free algebraic factorisation system  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$  on  $\mathcal{M}$  with a morphism  $\theta : (\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$ .*

*In particular,  $\mathcal{M}$  is the underlying model category of an algebraic model category.*

*Proof.* (i). Apply Garner's small object argument (theorem 0.5.24).

(ii). Use lemma 6.3.2. ■

**6.3.4 DEFINITION.** Let  $\kappa$  and  $\lambda$  be regular cardinals. A **strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -algebraic model category** is an algebraic model category  $\mathcal{M}$  that satisfies these axioms:

- $\mathcal{M}$  is a locally  $\kappa$ -presentable category, and  $\kappa \triangleleft \lambda$ .
- $\mathbf{K}_{\lambda}(\mathcal{M})$  is closed under finite limits in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- The underlying endofunctors of the two given algebraic factorisation systems on  $\mathcal{M}$  preserve colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functors.
- The full subcategory  $\mathcal{F}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{F}'$ ) of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the fibrations (resp. trivial fibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ .

**6.3.5** PROPOSITION. *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -combinatorial model category, then there exist algebraic factorisation systems making  $\mathcal{M}$  a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -algebraic model category.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{I}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{I}'$ ) be a  $\lambda$ -small set of morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_\kappa(\mathcal{M})$  that generate the cofibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Replacing  $\mathcal{I}$  with  $\mathcal{I} \cup \mathcal{I}'$  if necessary, we may assume  $\mathcal{I}' \subseteq \mathcal{I}$ . Garner's small object argument (0.5.24) says that algebraically free algebraic factorisation systems cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}$  and  $\mathcal{I}'$  exist and are free, and since  $\mathcal{I}' \subseteq \mathcal{I}$ , the universal property of free algebraic factorisation systems ensures we have the required morphism of algebraic factorisation systems. Lemma 0.3.36 and proposition 0.5.23 then say that the underlying endofunctors of the algebraic factorisation systems preserve colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams and are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible. Finally, by corollary 0.5.27, the two full subcategories of  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$  spanned by the fibrations and trivial fibrations are closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ . ■

**6.3.6** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a strongly  $(\kappa, \lambda)$ -algebraic model category.*

- (i) *The algebraic model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  restricts to an algebraic model structure on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .*
- (ii) *The inclusions  $\mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  and  $\mathcal{F}' \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functors.*
- (iii)  *$\mathcal{W}$  is closed under colimits for small  $\kappa$ -filtered diagrams in  $[2, \mathcal{M}]$ , and the inclusion  $\mathcal{W} \hookrightarrow [2, \mathcal{M}]$  is a strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible functor.*

*Proof.* (i). By definition, the underlying endofunctors of the given algebraic factorisation systems are strongly  $\lambda$ -accessible and so send morphisms in  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$  back to  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ . Thus, we obtain algebraic factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ , and it is clear that the given morphism of algebraic factorisation systems on  $\mathcal{M}$  restricts to a morphism of algebraic factorisation systems on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ . Since  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{M}$ , it follows that the restricted data define an algebraic model structure on  $\mathbf{K}_\lambda(\mathcal{M})$ .

(ii) and (iii). Apply theorem 6.2.15. ■

## 6.4 Cisinski model categories

**Prerequisites.** §0.5, 3.1, 3.5, 5.1, 6.2, A.3, A.4.

In this section we follow [Cisinski, 2002] and [Cisinski, 2006, Ch. 1].

**6.4.1** DEFINITION. A **Cisinski model category** is a combinatorial model category whose underlying category is a Grothendieck topos and whose cofibrations are the monomorphisms.

**6.4.2** REMARK. Grothendieck toposes are always locally presentable categories, so we may replace ‘combinatorial’ with ‘cofibrantly generated’ in the above definition.

**6.4.3** EXAMPLE. The Kan–Quillen model structure on **sSet** makes it into a Cisinski model category.

**6.4.4** REMARK. In any topos, the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow X$  is always a monomorphism; thus, in a Cisinski model category, every object is cofibrant.

**6.4.5** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a Grothendieck topos and let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be a class of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . There is at most one model structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  making it a Cisinski model category with  $\mathcal{M}_f$  as the class of fibrant objects.

*Proof.* This is a special case of proposition 5.4.8. ■

**6.4.6** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be cofibrations in a Cisinski model category  $\mathcal{M}$ . Suppose the square in the diagram below is a pushout square in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \times Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_X \times g} & X \times W \\
 f \times \text{id}_Z \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 Y \times Z & \xrightarrow{\quad} & (X \times W) \cup^{X \times Z} (Y \times Z) \\
 & \searrow \text{id}_Y \times g & \nearrow f \times \text{id}_W \\
 & & Y \times W
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A dashed arrow labeled  $f \sqcup g$  also points from  $(X \times W) \cup^{X \times Z} (Y \times Z)$  to  $Y \times W$ .)

- (i) The unique morphism  $f \sqcup g$  making the diagram commute is a cofibration.
- (ii) Assuming the class of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary products, if either  $f$  or  $g$  is a trivial cofibration, then  $f \sqcup g$  is a trivial cofibration.

*Proof.* (i). The claim is certainly true when  $\mathcal{M}$  is a presheaf topos, and since the associated sheaf functor preserves colimits and finite limits, the claim holds for all sheaf toposes as well.

(ii). The two cases are symmetrical; we will assume  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a trivial cofibration. Clearly,  $f \times \text{id}_Z : X \times Z \rightarrow Y \times Z$  and  $f \times \text{id}_W : X \times W \rightarrow Y \times W$  are monomorphisms, so the hypothesis implies they are trivial cofibrations. The class of trivial cofibrations is closed under pushouts (by [proposition A.3.19](#)), so the morphism  $X \times W \rightarrow (X \times W) \cup^{X \times Z} (Y \times Z)$  is also a trivial cofibration. The 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences then implies  $f \sqcup g$  must be a weak equivalence as well; hence, by claim (i), it is a trivial cofibration. ■

**6.4.7 ¶** We will now see how to build Cisinski model structures. Throughout this section,  $\mathcal{M}$  will be a Grothendieck topos, say  $\mathcal{M} = \mathbf{Sh}(\mathbb{C}, J)$  for a small category  $\mathbb{C}$  equipped with a Grothendieck topology  $J$ .

**6.4.8 DEFINITION.** A **Cisinski cylinder functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is a quadruple  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  where  $I : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a functor,  $\iota^0, \iota^1 : \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}} \Rightarrow I$  and  $\rho : I \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}$  are natural transformations, such that:

- $\rho \circ \iota^0 = \rho \circ \iota^1 = \text{id}_{\text{id}_{\mathcal{M}}}$ .
- The induced morphism  $\iota_X = (\iota_X^0, \iota_X^1) : X \amalg X \rightarrow IX$  is a monomorphism for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

We will often abuse notation and simply say that  $I$  is a cylinder functor, with the natural transformations  $\iota^0, \iota^1$ , and  $\rho$  understood.

**6.4.9 REMARK.** By symmetry,  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  is a Cisinski cylinder functor if and only if  $(I, \iota^1, \iota^0, \rho)$  is a Cisinski cylinder functor.

**6.4.10 DEFINITION.** Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be a Cisinski cylinder functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ . An  **$I$ -homotopy** in  $\mathcal{M}$  from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$  is a morphism  $H : IX \rightarrow Y$  such that  $H \circ \iota_X^0 = f_0$  and  $H \circ \iota_X^1 = f_1$ . We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are  **$I$ -homotopic** if there is a zigzag of  $I$ -homotopies connecting  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ .

**6.4.II** PROPOSITION. Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be a Cisinski cylinder functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ , and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- (i) For any morphism  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are  $I$ -homotopic, then so are  $g \circ f_0$  and  $g \circ f_1$ .
- (ii) For any morphism  $g : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are  $I$ -homotopic, then so are  $f_0 \circ g$  and  $f_1 \circ g$ .

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**6.4.I2** DEFINITION. Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be a Cisinski cylinder functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ . The  **$I$ -homotopy category** of  $\mathcal{M}$  is the category  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  defined below:

- The objects of  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  are those of  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- The hom-set  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}(X, Y)$  is  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y)$  modulo  $I$ -homotopy.
- Composition and identities are inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.4.I3** PROPOSITION. Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be a Cisinski cylinder functor and let  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  be the functor that sends a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  to its  $I$ -homotopy class.

- (i) The functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  is full.
- (ii) Let  $\mathcal{H}$  be the class of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  that  $\gamma$  sends to isomorphisms. If  $\gamma\rho : \gamma I \Rightarrow \gamma$  is a natural isomorphism, then  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  exhibits  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  as a localisation of  $\mathcal{M}$  at  $\mathcal{H}$ .

*Proof.* (i). Obvious.

(ii). Consider any functor  $F : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that  $F\rho : FI \Rightarrow F$  is a natural isomorphism. Then, we have  $F\iota^0 = F\iota^1$ , so  $F$  factors through  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  in a unique way. In particular, if  $\gamma\rho : \gamma I \Rightarrow \gamma$  itself is a natural isomorphism, then  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  has the universal property of a localisation of  $\mathcal{M}$  at  $\mathcal{H}$ . ■

**6.4.I4** DEFINITION. A **Cisinski trivial fibration** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to all monomorphisms.

**6.4.15** PROPOSITION. *Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a Cisinski trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i) *There exists a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $p \circ s = \text{id}_Y$ .*
- (ii) *For any such  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  and any Cisinski cylinder functor  $(I, i^0, i^1, \rho)$  for  $\mathcal{M}$ , there exists an  $I$ -homotopy from  $\text{id}_X$  to  $s \circ p$ .*
- (iii) *The morphism  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  becomes an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). The unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism in any topos, so the right lifting property of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  guarantees the existence of a section.

(ii). Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \amalg X & \xrightarrow{(\text{id}_X, s \circ p)} & X \\ \iota_X \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ IX & \xrightarrow{p \circ \rho_X} & Y \end{array}$$

By definition,  $\iota_X : X \amalg X \rightarrow IX$  is a monomorphism, so the right lifting property of  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  yields a morphism  $H : IX \rightarrow X$  such that  $H \circ \iota_X = (\text{id}_X, s \circ p)$  and  $p \circ H = p \circ \rho_X$ ; in particular,  $H$  is an  $I$ -homotopy from  $\text{id}_X$  to  $s \circ p$ .

(iii). Clearly, the morphisms  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  become mutual inverses in  $\text{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$ . ■

**6.4.16** ¶ Let  $\Omega$  be a subobject classifier for  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\top, \perp : 1 \rightarrow \Omega$  be the morphisms classifying the top and bottom subobjects of  $1$ , respectively. Then the following diagram is a pullback square by definition,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \top \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{\perp} & \Omega \end{array}$$

so the induced morphism  $(\top, \perp) : 1 \amalg 1 \rightarrow \Omega$  is a monomorphism. Since monomorphisms are stable under pullback, the following definition is legitimate:



**6.4.17** DEFINITION. The **Lawvere cylinder functor** for  $\mathcal{M}$  is the cylinder functor  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  defined below:

- $I : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is the functor  $\Omega \times -$ .
- The morphism  $\iota_X^0 : X \rightarrow \Omega \times X$  corresponds to  $\top \times \text{id}_X$ .
- The morphism  $\iota_X^1 : X \rightarrow \Omega \times X$  corresponds to  $\perp \times \text{id}_X$ .
- The morphism  $\rho_X : \Omega \times X \rightarrow X$  is the product projection.

**6.4.18** PROPOSITION. Let  $X$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\Omega$  be the subobject classifier for  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- The product projection  $p_X : \Omega \times X \rightarrow X$  is a Cisinski trivial fibration.
- For any Cisinski cylinder functor  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$ , there exists a commutative diagram of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \amalg X & \xrightarrow{(\top, \perp) \times \text{id}_X} & \Omega \times X \\ \iota_X \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow p_X \\ IX & \xrightarrow{\rho_X} & X \end{array}$$

*Proof.* (i). Since the class of Cisinski trivial fibrations is closed under pullbacks (by [proposition A.3.19](#)), it suffices to show that the morphism  $p_1 : \Omega \times 1 \rightarrow 1$  is a trivial fibration. However,  $\Omega$  is canonically an injective object in  $\mathcal{M}$  (with respect to the class of monomorphisms), i.e. the unique morphism  $\Omega \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to all monomorphisms, so  $p_1$  is indeed a Cisinski trivial fibration.

(ii). This follows from claim (i) and the requirement that  $\iota_X : X \amalg X \rightarrow IX$  be a monomorphism. ■

**6.4.19** REMARK. Thus, any pair of morphisms that are homotopic with respect to the Lawvere cylinder functor must also be  $I$ -homotopic for any Cisinski cylinder functor  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$ .

**6.4.20** PROPOSITION. *Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be a cylinder functor for  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $\mathcal{V}$  be the class of Cisinski trivial fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i) *There is a canonical identity-on-objects functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  compatible with the localising functors, and it is a full functor.*
- (ii) *If the natural morphism  $\rho_X : IX \rightarrow X$  is a Cisinski trivial fibration for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the canonical functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  is an isomorphism of categories.*
- (iii) *If  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  is the Lawvere cylinder functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the canonical functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  is an isomorphism of categories.*

*Proof.* (i). Recall that Cisinski trivial fibrations are  $I$ -homotopy equivalences (by [proposition 6.4.15](#)), so there is indeed a canonical identity-on-objects functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  compatible with the localising functors. Since the localising functor  $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  is full, the functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  must also be full.

(ii). The hypothesis implies any two  $I$ -homotopic morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  are equal as morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}]$ , so the canonical functor  $\mathcal{M}[\mathcal{V}^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}$  is indeed fully faithful and bijective on objects, as required.

(iii). [Proposition 6.4.18](#) says that the natural morphism  $\rho_X : IX \rightarrow X$  is a Cisinski trivial fibration for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  when  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  is the Lawvere cylinder for  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**6.4.21** DEFINITION. An **elementary Cisinski homotopy structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  is a Cisinski cylinder functor  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  satisfying these axioms:

**DH1.** The functor  $I : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves monomorphisms and colimits for all small diagrams.

**DH2.** For all monomorphisms  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the following diagrams are pullback squares:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & W \\ \iota_Z^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow \iota_W^0 \\ IZ & \xrightarrow{Ig} & IW \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & W \\ \iota_Z^1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \iota_W^1 \\ IZ & \xrightarrow{Ig} & IW \end{array}$$

**6.4.22** PROPOSITION. *The Lawvere cylinder functor is an elementary Cisinski homotopy structure.*

*Proof.* The functor  $A \times -$  always preserves monomorphisms, and toposes are cartesian closed, so for any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the functor  $A \times -$  preserves colimits. Thus the Lawvere cylinder functor satisfies axiom DH1. It is clear that axiom DH2 is also satisfied.  $\blacksquare$

**6.4.23** DEFINITION. Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be an elementary Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . A **class of  $I$ -anodyne extensions** is a class  $\mathcal{A}$  of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfying these axioms:

**An0.** There exists a subset  $\Lambda \subseteq \mathcal{A}$  such that the members of  $\Lambda$  are monomorphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{A} = \square(\Lambda^\square)$ . We say  $\Lambda$  is a **generating set** for  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**An1.** If  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $e \in \{0, 1\}$ , then given a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z & \xrightarrow{\iota_Z^e} & IZ \\
 g \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 W & \longrightarrow & V_e(g) \\
 & \searrow \scriptstyle \iota_W^e & \nearrow \scriptstyle Ig \\
 & & IW
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A dashed arrow  $j_e : V_e(g) \rightarrow IW$  is also present in the original diagram.)

where the top-left square is a pushout square,  $j_e : V_e(g) \rightarrow IW$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**An2.** If  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ , then given a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z \amalg Z & \xrightarrow{\iota_Z} & IZ \\
 g \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 W \amalg W & \longrightarrow & U(g) \\
 & \searrow \scriptstyle \iota_W & \nearrow \scriptstyle Ig \\
 & & IW
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A dashed arrow  $j : U(g) \rightarrow IW$  is also present in the original diagram.)

where the top-left square is a pushout square,  $j : U(g) \rightarrow IW$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**6.4.24** REMARK. Since  $I$  preserves colimits for all small diagrams,  $I0$  must be an initial object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Thus, by taking  $Z = 0$ , we see that the morphisms  $\iota_W^0, \iota_W^1 : W \rightarrow IW$  are always in any class of  $I$ -anodyne extensions.

**6.4.25** PROPOSITION. *Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be an elementary Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ , let  $\mathcal{A}$  be a class of  $I$ -anodyne extensions, and let  $\Lambda$  be a generating set for  $\mathcal{A}$ .*

(i) *There exists a functorial factorisation system on  $\mathcal{M}$  with  $\mathcal{A}$  as its left class.*

(ii)  *$\mathcal{A}$  is the smallest class of morphisms containing  $\Lambda$  that is closed under pushouts, transfinite composition, and retracts.*

(iii) *Every morphism that is in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a monomorphism.*

*Proof.* (i). Apply Quillen's small object argument (theorem 0.5.12).

(ii). This is corollary 0.5.13.

(iii). The class of monomorphisms in a Grothendieck topos is closed under pushouts, transfinite composition, and retracts because the class of injections in **Set** is closed under the same operations. Since  $\Lambda$  is a collection of monomorphisms, so too is  $\mathcal{A}$ . ■

**6.4.26** DEFINITION. A **Cisinski homotopy structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  is an elementary Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$  together with a class of anodyne extensions.

**6.4.27** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the class of anodyne extensions of a Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . An  **$\mathcal{A}$ -fibrant object** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an object  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**6.4.28** DEFINITION. Let  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  be a Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . A **weak equivalence** with respect to  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  is a morphism  $f : W \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that, for every  $\mathcal{A}$ -fibrant object  $X$ , the induced map

$$\mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}(f, X) : \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}(Z, X) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho}_I \mathcal{M}(W, X)$$

is a bijection of sets.

**6.4.29** PROPOSITION.  $\mathcal{M}$  together with the class of weak equivalences with respect to a Cisinski homotopy structure  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  constitute a saturated homotopical category.

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**6.4.30** PROPOSITION. Let  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  be a Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then every morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a weak equivalence with respect to  $(I, \mathcal{A})$ .

*Proof.* See Proposition 2.23 in [Cisinski, 2002]. □

**6.4.31** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the class of weak equivalences with respect to  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  and let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ . If  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are  $I$ -homotopic, then  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  become equal in  $\text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{W})$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to verify the case where there is an  $I$ -homotopy  $H : IX \rightarrow Y$  from  $f_0$  to  $f_1$ . By remark 6.4.24, the morphisms  $i_X^0, i_X^1 : X \rightarrow IX$  are anodyne extensions, and so are invertible in  $\text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{W})$ . We have  $\rho_X \circ i_X^0 = \rho_X \circ i_X^1 = \text{id}_X$  by definition, so  $i_X^0$  and  $i_X^1$  must be equal in  $\text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{W})$ ; but  $H \circ i_X^0 = f_0$  and  $H \circ i_X^1 = f_1$ , so  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  must be equal in  $\text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{W})$ . ■

**6.4.32** THEOREM. Let  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  be a Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a combinatorial model category where

- the cofibrations are the monomorphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,
- the weak equivalences are the weak equivalences with respect to  $(I, \mathcal{A})$ , and
- the fibrations are the morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to the trivial cofibrations.

This is the **Cisinski model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  defined by  $(I, \mathcal{A})$ .

*Proof.* See Théorème 2.13 in [Cisinski, 2002]. □

**6.4.33** DEFINITION. An  $\mathcal{M}$ -**localiser** is a class  $\mathcal{W}$  of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfying the following axioms:

- L1.**  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- L2.** Every Cisinski trivial fibration is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

**L3.** The class of monomorphisms that are in  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under pushout and transfinite composition.

A **generating set** for  $\mathcal{W}$  is a set  $S$  such that  $\mathcal{W}$  is the smallest  $\mathcal{M}$ -localiser containing  $S$ . An **accessible  $\mathcal{M}$ -localiser** is an  $\mathcal{M}$ -localiser that admits a generating set.

**6.4.34** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a class of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfying the following axioms:*

**FS1.** *For any object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the morphism  $\text{id} : X \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

**FS2.**  *$\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

**FS3.**  *$\mathcal{W}$  has the special 2-out-of-4 property in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *Every Cisinski trivial fibration is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (ii) *Let  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  be the Lawvere cylinder functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ . For all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the morphism  $\rho_X : IX \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .*
- (iii) *There exists a Cisinski cylinder functor  $(I, \iota^0, \iota^1, \rho)$  for  $\mathcal{M}$  such that the morphism  $\rho_X : IX \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This was shown in [proposition 6.4.18](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a Cisinski trivial fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$ . [Proposition 6.4.15](#) then says that there exists a morphism  $s : Y \rightarrow X$  and an  $I$ -homotopy from  $\text{id}_X$  to  $s \circ p$ , i.e. a morphism  $H : IX \rightarrow X$  such that  $H \circ \iota_X^0 = \text{id}_X$  and  $H \circ \iota_X^1 = s \circ p$ . Since  $\rho_X : IX \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $\rho_X \circ \iota_X^0 = \rho_X \circ \iota_X^1 = \text{id}_X$ , axioms FS1 and FS2 imply that  $\iota_X^0, \iota_X^1 : X \rightarrow IX$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and so  $H : IX \rightarrow X$  is also in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and hence  $s \circ p : X \rightarrow X$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  as well. We may now use axiom FS3 to deduce that  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . ■

**6.4.35** PROPOSITION. *Let  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  be a Cisinski homotopy structure on  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then the class of weak equivalences with respect to  $(I, \mathcal{A})$  is an accessible  $\mathcal{M}$ -localiser.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 3.8 in [Cisinski, [2002](#)]. □

**6.4.36** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be any accessible  $\mathcal{M}$ -localiser. Then  $\mathcal{M}$  is a combinatorial model category where*

- *the cofibrations are the monomorphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,*
- *the weak equivalences are the morphisms that are in  $\mathcal{W}$ , and*
- *the fibrations are the morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to the trivial cofibrations.*

*This is the **Cisinski model structure** on  $\mathcal{M}$  associated with  $\mathcal{W}$ .*

*Proof.* See Théorème 3.9 in [Cisinski, 2002]. □

**6.4.37** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is any  $\mathcal{M}$ -localiser (not necessarily accessible), then  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts.*

*Proof.* See Corollaire 3.10 in [Cisinski, 2002]. □

## 6.5 Monoidal model categories

**Prerequisites.** §§5.1, 5.2, 5.3, B.1, B.4.

**6.5.1 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be categories with pullbacks, let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a category with pushouts, and let  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{J} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{D}$  and  $\mathcal{K} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{E}$  be subensembles. Suppose we have the following functors*

$$\otimes : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$$

$$\pitchfork : \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

$$\lrcorner : \mathcal{E} \times \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$$

and natural bijections:

$$\mathcal{E}(\mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{D}, E) \cong \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D} \pitchfork E)$$

$$\mathcal{E}(\mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{D}, E) \cong \mathcal{D}(\mathcal{D}, E \lrcorner \mathcal{C})$$

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D} \pitchfork E) \cong \mathcal{D}(\mathcal{D}, E \lrcorner \mathcal{C})$$

Then the following are equivalent:

- (i) If  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$  is in  $\mathcal{I}$ ,  $g : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$  is in  $\mathcal{J}$ , and the square in the diagram below is a pushout square in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes g} & \mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{D}' \\ f \otimes \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{C}' \otimes \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & (\mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{D}') \cup^{C \otimes D} (\mathcal{C}' \otimes \mathcal{D}) \\ & \searrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}'} \otimes g & \downarrow f \otimes \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}'} \\ & & \mathcal{C}' \otimes \mathcal{D}' \end{array}$$

(A dashed arrow  $f \sqcup g$  points from  $(\mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{D}') \cup^{C \otimes D} (\mathcal{C}' \otimes \mathcal{D})$  to  $\mathcal{C}' \otimes \mathcal{D}'$ .)

then the unique morphism  $f \sqcup g$  making the diagram commute is in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

- (ii) If  $g : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$  is in  $\mathcal{J}$ ,  $h : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}'$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$ , and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}' \pitchfork \mathcal{E} & \xrightarrow{g \pitchfork \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}}} & \mathcal{D} \pitchfork \mathcal{E} \\ \downarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}'} \pitchfork h & \swarrow g \sqcup h & \downarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \pitchfork h \\ \mathcal{D}' \pitchfork \mathcal{E}' & \xrightarrow{g \pitchfork \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}'}} & \mathcal{D} \pitchfork \mathcal{E}' \end{array}$$

(A middle square is a pullback in  $\mathcal{C}$  with vertices  $(\mathcal{D}' \pitchfork \mathcal{E}') \times_{\mathcal{D} \pitchfork \mathcal{E}'} (\mathcal{D} \pitchfork \mathcal{E})$  and  $\mathcal{D}' \pitchfork \mathcal{E}$ .)



then the unique morphism  $g \sqcup h$  making the diagram commute is in  $\mathcal{I}^\square$ .

- (iii) If  $h : E \rightarrow E'$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$ ,  $f : C \rightarrow C'$  is in  $\mathcal{I}$  and the square in the diagram below is a pullback square in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 E \circ C' & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_E \circ f \quad} & & & E \circ C \\
 \downarrow h \circ \text{id}_C & \searrow h \sqcup f & & & \downarrow h \circ \text{id}_C \\
 & (E' \circ C') \times_{E' \circ C} (E \circ C) & \longrightarrow & & E \circ C \\
 & \downarrow & & & \downarrow h \circ \text{id}_C \\
 & E' \circ C' & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_{E'} \circ f \quad} & & E' \circ C
 \end{array}$$

then the unique morphism  $h \sqcup f$  making the diagram commute is in  $\mathcal{J}^\square$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $f : C \rightarrow C'$  be in  $\mathcal{I}$ , let  $g : D \rightarrow D'$  be in  $\mathcal{J}$ , let  $h : E \rightarrow E'$  be in  $\mathcal{K}$ , and suppose we have a commutative diagram of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 C & \longrightarrow & D' \pitchfork E \\
 f \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow g \sqcup h \\
 C' & \longrightarrow & (D' \pitchfork E') \times_{D \pitchfork E'} (D \pitchfork E)
 \end{array}$$

By the universal property of pullbacks, this corresponds to a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 C & \longrightarrow & D' \pitchfork E & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_{D'} \pitchfork h \quad} & D' \pitchfork E' \\
 f \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow g \pitchfork \text{id}_E & & \downarrow g \pitchfork \text{id}_{E'} \\
 C' & \longrightarrow & D \pitchfork E & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_D \pitchfork h \quad} & D \pitchfork E'
 \end{array}$$

and, by adjoint transposition, to a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 C \otimes D & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_C \otimes g \quad} & C \otimes D' & \xrightarrow{\quad f \otimes \text{id}_{D'} \quad} & E \\
 f \otimes \text{id}_D \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow h \\
 C' \otimes D & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_{C'} \otimes g \quad} & C' \otimes D' & \xrightarrow{\quad f \otimes \text{id}_{D'} \quad} & E'
 \end{array}$$

whence, by the universal property of pushouts, commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (C \otimes D') \cup^{C \otimes D} (C' \otimes D) & \longrightarrow & E \\ f \sqcup g \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow h \\ C' \otimes D' & \longrightarrow & E' \end{array}$$

But  $(f \sqcup g) \sqsupseteq h$ , so we conclude that  $f \sqsupseteq (g \sqcup h)$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii), (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). A similar argument works. ■

**6.5.2 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $\mathcal{E}$  be three model categories. A **Quillen adjunction of two variables** consists of three functors  $\otimes, \pitchfork, \circ$  with natural bijections as in the proposition satisfying the following (equivalent) axioms:

- (a) If  $h : E \rightarrow E'$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $f : C \rightarrow C'$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the morphism  $h \sqcup f : E \circ C' \rightarrow (E' \circ C') \times_{E' \circ C} (E \circ C)$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{D}$ , which is a weak equivalence if either  $h$  or  $f$  is.
- (b) If  $f : C \rightarrow C'$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $g : D \rightarrow D'$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then the morphism  $f \sqcup g : C \otimes D \rightarrow (C \otimes D') \cup^{C \otimes D} (C' \otimes D)$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{E}$ , which is a weak equivalence if either  $f$  or  $g$  is.
- (c) If  $g : D \rightarrow D'$  is a cofibration in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $h : E \rightarrow E'$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then the morphism  $g \sqcup h : D' \pitchfork E \rightarrow (D' \pitchfork E') \times_{D \pitchfork E'} (D \pitchfork E)$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{C}$ , which is a weak equivalence if either  $g$  or  $h$  is.

**6.5.3 PROPOSITION.** Let  $(\otimes, \pitchfork, \circ)$  be a Quillen adjunction of two variables as above.

- (i) For each cofibrant object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the adjunction

$$C \otimes (-) \dashv (-) \circ C : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$$

is a Quillen adjunction.

- (ii) For each cofibrant object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the adjunction

$$(-) \otimes D \dashv D \pitchfork (-) : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

is a Quillen adjunction.

(iii) For each fibrant object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , the adjunction

$$E \circ (-) \dashv (-) \pitchfork E : \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

is a Quillen adjunction.

*Proof.* Immediate from the definitions. ◆

**6.5.4** COROLLARY.

- (i) For each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $C \otimes (-)$  preserves weak equivalences between cofibrant objects, and  $(-) \otimes C$  preserves weak equivalences between fibrant objects.
- (ii) For each object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,  $(-) \otimes D$  preserves weak equivalences between cofibrant objects, and  $D \pitchfork (-)$  preserves weak equivalences between fibrant objects.
- (iii) For each object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,  $E \circ (-)$  sends weak equivalences between cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to weak equivalences between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $(-) \pitchfork E$  sends weak equivalences between cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{D}$  to weak equivalences between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

*Proof.* Apply Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6). ■

**6.5.5** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category, let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a model category with fibrant and cofibrant replacement functors, and let  $p : \tilde{I} \rightarrow I$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$ , where  $I$  is the monoidal unit of  $\mathcal{V}$ .

If  $\mathcal{M}$  has a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action  $\otimes$  and right adjoint right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action  $\circ$  such that the adjunction

$$\tilde{I} \otimes (-) \dashv (-) \circ \tilde{I} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

is a Quillen adjunction, then the following are equivalent:

- (i) For all cofibrant objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p \otimes \text{id}_X : \tilde{I} \otimes X \rightarrow I \otimes X$  is a weak equivalence.
- (ii) For all fibrant objects  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\text{id}_Y \circ p : Y \circ I \rightarrow Y \circ \tilde{I}$  is a weak equivalence.

If  $\mathcal{M}$  has a right  $\mathcal{V}$ -action  $\odot$  and a right adjoint left  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action  $\multimap$  such that the adjunction

$$(-) \odot \tilde{I} \dashv \tilde{I} \multimap (-) : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

is a Quillen adjunction, then the following are equivalent:

- (i') For all cofibrant objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $\mathrm{id}_X \otimes p : X \otimes \tilde{I} \rightarrow X \otimes I$  is a weak equivalence.
- (ii') For all fibrant objects  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ ,  $p \multimap \mathrm{id}_Y : I \multimap Y \rightarrow \tilde{I} \multimap Y$  is a weak equivalence.

*Proof.* Since  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow I \otimes X$  is a natural isomorphism, the adjunction

$$I \otimes (-) \dashv (-) \multimap I : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

is an adjoint equivalence of categories, and *a fortiori* a Quillen equivalence, and the natural transformations  $p \otimes (-)$  and  $(-) \multimap p$  constitute a conjugate pair. [Theorem 3.3.24](#) says that the derived natural transformations for  $p \otimes (-)$  and  $(-) \multimap p$  constitute a conjugate pair of natural transformations between the derived adjunctions. Applying [proposition 3.3.28](#) to [theorem 5.3.13](#), we deduce that the following are equivalent:

- For all cofibrant objects  $X$ ,  $p \otimes \mathrm{id}_X$  is a weak equivalence.
- The left derived natural transformation for  $p \otimes (-)$  is a natural isomorphism.
- The right derived natural transformation for  $(-) \otimes p$  is a natural isomorphism.
- For all fibrant objects  $Y$ ,  $\mathrm{id}_Y \multimap p$  is a weak equivalence. ■

The following definition is due to Hovey [[1999](#), §4.2]:

**6.5.6 DEFINITION.** A **monoidal model category** is a biclosed monoidal category  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with a model structure satisfying the following additional axioms:

- **Pushout–product axiom.** The right  $\mathcal{M}$ -hom system  $(\otimes, \multimap, \multimap)$ , where  $\multimap$  (resp.  $\multimap$ ) is the right (resp. left) internal hom functor of  $\mathcal{M}$ , is a Quillen adjunction of two variables.
- **Unit axiom.** For each cofibrant replacement  $(\tilde{I}, p)$  of the monoidal unit  $I$  and each cofibrant object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the morphisms  $p \otimes \mathrm{id}_X : \tilde{I} \otimes X \rightarrow I \otimes X$  and  $\mathrm{id}_X \otimes p : X \otimes \tilde{I} \rightarrow X \otimes I$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.5.7** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a biclosed monoidal category equipped with a model structure satisfying the pushout–product axiom, and let  $X$  be any object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *There exists a cofibrant replacement  $(\tilde{I}, p)$  of the monoidal unit  $I$  such that  $p \otimes \text{id}_X$  and  $\text{id}_X \otimes p$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (ii) *There exists a fibrant cofibrant replacement  $(QI, q)$  of the monoidal unit  $I$  such that  $q \otimes \text{id}_X$  and  $\text{id}_X \otimes q$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*
- (iii) *For any cofibrant replacement  $(\tilde{I}, p)$  of the monoidal unit  $I$ , both  $p \otimes \text{id}_X$  and  $\text{id}_X \otimes p$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $(QI, q)$  be a fibrant cofibrant replacement of  $I$ ; such exists by [proposition 5.1.24](#). Since  $\tilde{I}$  is cofibrant, axiom CM5 implies there is a morphism  $w : \tilde{I} \rightarrow QI$  such that  $q \circ w = p$ , and the 2-out-of-3 property implies  $w$  is a weak equivalence. [Corollary 6.5.4](#) says  $w \otimes \text{id}_X$  and  $\text{id}_X \otimes w$  are weak equivalences, thus by the 2-out-of-3 property again  $q \otimes \text{id}_X$  and  $\text{id}_X \otimes q$  must be weak equivalences.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). A similar argument works.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Obvious, given the existence of cofibrant replacements. ■

**6.5.8** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a biclosed monoidal category equipped with a model structure. If the monoidal unit  $I$  is a cofibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{M}$  is a monoidal model category.*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{M}$  satisfies the pushout–product axiom.* ■

**6.5.9** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a monoidal model category, let  $I$  be the monoidal unit, and let  $\multimap : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be the right internal hom functor. If  $I$  is a cofibrant object and  $(J, i_0, i_1, p)$  is a cylinder object for  $I$ , then  $(J \multimap X, i, p_0, p_1)$  is a path object for all fibrant  $X$ , where  $i : X \rightarrow [J, X]$  is the morphism induced by  $p : J \rightarrow I$ , and  $p_0, p_1 : [J, X] \rightarrow X$  are (respectively) the morphisms induced by  $i_0, i_1 : I \rightarrow J$ .*

TODO: State the version without the assumption that the unit is cofibrant.

*Proof.* Since  $I$  is a cofibrant object,  $I+I$  is cofibrant (by [proposition A.3.19](#)), and hence  $J$  itself is cofibrant. [Corollary 6.5.4](#) says the functor  $(-)\rightarrowtail X : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  sends weak equivalences between cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to weak equivalences between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  when  $X$  is fibrant, so it follows that the morphism  $i : X \rightarrow [J, X]$  is a weak equivalence. Similarly, since the morphism  $I+I \rightarrow J$  induced by  $i_0$  and  $i_1$  is a cofibration, the morphism  $[J, X] \rightarrow X \times X$  induced by  $p_0$  and  $p_1$  is a fibration, so  $([J, X], i, p_0, p_1)$  is indeed a path object for  $X$ . ■

The following definition can be found in [Rezk, 2010, §2] and [Simpson, 2012, §7.7].

**6.5.10** DEFINITION. A **cartesian model category** is a cartesian closed category  $\mathcal{M}$  equipped with a model structure satisfying the following additional axioms:

- **Pushout–product axiom.** The left  $\mathcal{M}$ -hom system  $(\times, [-, -], [-, -])$  is a Quillen adjunction of two variables.
- **Cofibrant unit axiom.** Every terminal object in  $\mathcal{M}$  is cofibrant.

**6.5.11** EXAMPLE. The Kan–Quillen model structure on **sSet** makes it a cartesian model category: **sSet** is a cartesian closed combinatorial model category (*a fortiori* a DHK model category), all simplicial sets are cofibrant, and the pushout–product axiom is just [proposition 1.4.15](#).

**6.5.12** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a Cisinski model category.<sup>[1]</sup> The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cartesian model category.
- (ii) The class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary products.
- (iii) The class of trivial cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary products.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Since all objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are cofibrant, [corollary 6.5.4](#) implies that, for any object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the functor  $(-) \times Y : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves weak equivalences. Thus, the class of weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$  is closed under binary products.

---

[1] See [definition 6.4.1](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). The class of monomorphisms is always closed under binary products, so the class of trivial cofibrations (i.e. monic weak equivalences) is closed under binary products if the class of weak equivalences is.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). This is the content of [proposition 6.4.6](#). ■

**6.5.13** THEOREM. *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a monoidal model category, then there is an induced monoidal biclosed structure on  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  where the monoidal product is the left derived functor of the monoidal product in  $\mathcal{M}$  and the coherence data is inherited from  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 4.3.2 in [Hovey, 1999]. □

**6.5.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a cartesian model category and let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects.*

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}_f$  is closed under products of small families of objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and  $[X, Y]$  is fibrant if  $X$  is cofibrant and  $Y$  is fibrant.
- (ii) The localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  preserves products of small families of objects; in particular,  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  has products for all small families of objects.
- (iii)  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  is a cartesian closed category, and  $\gamma[X, Y]$  is naturally isomorphic to  $[\gamma X, \gamma Y]$  when  $X$  is cofibrant and  $Y$  is fibrant.
- (iv) Let  $\Gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be the functor  $\mathcal{M}(1, -)$  and let  $\tau_0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be the functor  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}(\gamma 1, \gamma -)$ . The functor  $\tau_0$  preserves small products in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ , and the component  $\chi_Y : \Gamma Y \Rightarrow \tau_0 Y$  of the natural transformation  $\chi : \Gamma \Rightarrow \tau_0$  induced by the functor  $\gamma$  is surjective for all fibrant objects  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* (i). That  $\mathcal{M}_f$  is closed in  $\mathcal{M}$  under small products is a straightforward consequence of [proposition A.3.19](#), and pushout–product axiom for cartesian model structures implies the other half of the claim.

(ii). [Proposition 5.3.18](#) says  $\mathrm{Ho}[I, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [I, \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}]$  is an equivalence of categories for all sets  $I$ , so products in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  coincide with homotopy products. Homotopy products in  $\mathcal{M}_f$  coincide with ordinary products, hence the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{M}$  preserves small products. Since every object in  $\mathcal{M}$  is

weakly equivalent to one in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ , it follows that  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  has products for all small families of objects.

(iii). Apply [theorem 6.5.13](#).

(iv). As a representable functor,  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\gamma 1, -) : \text{Ho } \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves small products, and by claim (ii),  $\gamma : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  preserves small products, so  $\tau_0 : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  indeed preserves small products. [Theorem 5.1.31](#) says that the localising functor induces hom-set maps  $\mathcal{M}(X, Y) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\gamma X, \gamma Y)$  that are surjective when  $X$  is cofibrant and  $Y$  is fibrant; since  $1$  is cofibrant by hypothesis, it follows that the map  $\chi_Y : \Gamma Y \rightarrow \tau_0 Y$  is surjective for all cofibrant objects  $Y$ . ■

Under stronger hypotheses, the homotopy category of a cartesian model category admits a description à la Hurewicz:

**6.5.15 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a cartesian model category, let  $\mathcal{M}_f$  be the full subcategory of fibrant objects, and let  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f$  be the localisation of  $\mathcal{M}_f$  at the weak equivalences. If all fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are cofibrant, then:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{M}_f$  is a cartesian closed category.
- (ii) The natural transformation  $\chi : \Gamma \Rightarrow \tau_0$  induces a functor  $\mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}_f}]$  that is a bijection on objects, full, and preserves small products and exponential objects.
- (iii) Let  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ . Then  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are (right) homotopic if and only if they are sent to the same morphism in  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}_f}]$ .
- (iv) The canonical functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}_f}]$  is an isomorphism of categories.

*Proof.* (i). Since all fibrant objects are cofibrant, the exponential object  $[X, Y]$  is fibrant for all  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ ; and by [proposition 6.5.14](#),  $\mathcal{M}_f$  is closed under products of small objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so it follows that  $\mathcal{M}_f$  is a cartesian closed category.

(ii). This is a straightforward consequence of the fact that  $\tau_0 : \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves small products, that we have a natural bijection  $\Gamma[X, Y] \cong \mathcal{M}(X, Y)$  for all objects  $X$  and  $Y$ , and that  $\chi_Z : \Gamma Z \rightarrow \tau_0 Z$  is a surjection for all fibrant objects  $Z$ .



(iii). Suppose  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  are related by a right homotopy, i.e. there exists a path object  $(P, i, p_0, p_1)$  for  $Y$  and a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow P$  such that  $p_0 \circ f = f_0$  and  $p_1 \circ f = f_1$ . Since  $p_0, p_1 : P \rightarrow Y$  are retractions of the weak equivalence  $i : Y \rightarrow P$ , the two maps  $\tau_0[X, P] \rightarrow \tau_0[X, Y]$  induced by  $p_0$  and  $p_1$  must be equal. In particular,  $\chi_{[X, Y]} : \Gamma[X, Y] \rightarrow \tau_0[X, Y]$  must map  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  to the same element.

Conversely, if  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are sent to the same morphism in  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f]$ , then there must exist a cylinder object  $(J, i_0, i_1, p)$  for  $I$  and a morphism  $h : J \rightarrow [X, Y]$  such that  $h \circ i_0$  (resp.  $h \circ i_1$ ) is the exponential transpose of  $f_0$  (resp.  $f_1$ ). Taking exponential transposes again and using the fact that  $[J, Y]$  is a path object for  $Y$ , we deduce that  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic.

(iv). The formal Whitehead theorem implies that weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}_f$  are mapped to isomorphisms in  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f]$ , so the functor  $\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f]$  induces a functor  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}_f \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f]$ . A standard argument then shows that it is an isomorphism: see e.g. [theorem 5.4.1](#). ■

**6.5.16 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a cartesian model category. If all objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are cofibrant, then:*

- (i) *The functors  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  and  $\tau_0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  both preserve finite products.*
- (ii) *A morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence if and only if the induced maps*

$$\tau_0[f, Z] : \tau_0[Y, Z] \rightarrow \tau_0[X, Z]$$

*are bijections for all fibrant objects  $Z$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (iii) *The inclusion  $\mathcal{M}_f \hookrightarrow \mathcal{M}$  induces a fully faithful functor  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f] \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  with a left adjoint.*

*Proof.* (i). It suffices to show that  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  preserves finite products; that  $\tau_0 : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products will follow automatically. It is not hard to check that  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  preserves terminal objects for all model categories  $\mathcal{M}$ , and we will now show that  $\gamma$  preserves binary products.

The pushout-product axiom implies that, for all cofibrant objects  $Y$ , the functor  $- \times Y : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  is a left Quillen functor. Since we are assuming that all objects are cofibrant, [corollary 6.5.4](#) implies that  $- \times Y$  preserves weak equivalences. We may then deduce that  $- \times - : \mathcal{M} \times \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  preserves all weak

equivalences, and hence that it is a homotopical left approximation for itself. Thus, the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  indeed preserves binary products.

(ii). If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence, then  $[f, Z] : [Y, Z] \rightarrow [X, Z]$  is a weak equivalence for all fibrant objects  $Z$ , and hence  $\tau_0[f, Z]$  must be a bijection. Conversely, suppose  $\tau_0[f, Z]$  is a bijection for all fibrant objects  $Z$ . Let  $R : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  be a fibrant replacement functor for  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then, the morphism  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  also induces bijections  $\tau_0[Rf, Z]$  for all fibrant objects  $Z$ , and since  $RX$  and  $RY$  are in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ , the Yoneda lemma implies that  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  is sent to an isomorphism in  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f]$ , and hence must be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}_f$ . The 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences then implies  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

(iii). It is clear that the induced functor  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f] \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}]$  is indeed fully faithful, and it is not hard to check that a fibrant replacement functor provides the required left adjoint  $\tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}] \rightarrow \tau_0[\underline{\mathcal{M}}_f]$ . ■

**6.5.17** DEFINITION.

- An **isofibration** is a functor that is injective on objects.
- An **isofibration** is a functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  such that, for every object  $C$  in  $C$  and every isomorphism  $f : FC \rightarrow D$  in  $D$ , there exists an isomorphism  $\tilde{f} : C \rightarrow \tilde{D}$  in  $C$  such that  $F\tilde{f} = f$ .

**6.5.18** PROPOSITION. *Let **Cat** be the category of small categories. The following data constitute a model structure on **Cat**:*

- *The weak equivalences are the functors that are fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*
- *The cofibrations are the isofibrations.*
- *The fibrations are the isofibrations.*

*Moreover, the factorisations for axiom CM5 may be chosen functorially, so that **Cat** becomes a DHK model category. This model structure is called the **canonical model structure on Cat**.*

*Proof.* It is not hard to show that **Cat** has limits and colimits for all small diagrams, so axiom CM1\* is satisfied. It is also clear that the announced class of

weak equivalences has the 2-out-of-3 property, so by [theorem 5.1.12](#), it is enough to show that we have a pair of compatible weak factorisation systems.

Let  $I : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  be an isofibration and  $P : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be an isofibration, and suppose we have a commutative diagram of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathbb{C} \\ I \downarrow & & \downarrow P \\ \mathbb{B} & \xrightarrow{G} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

First, suppose  $P$  is a weak equivalence. Then,  $P$  must be surjective on objects, so we may define a map  $H : \text{ob } \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \text{ob } \mathbb{C}$  by taking  $HB = FA$  if  $B = IA$  for some  $A$ , and if  $B$  is not in the image of  $A$ , define  $HB$  to be any object in  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $PHB = GB$ ; there is then a unique way of extending  $H$  to a functor  $\mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  making the evident diagram commute.

Next, instead suppose  $I$  is a weak equivalence. Then,  $I$  may be regarded as the inclusion of a full subcategory that is essentially surjective on objects. For each object  $B$  in  $\mathbb{B}$  that is not in the image of  $I$ , fix an object  $A$  in  $\mathbb{A}$  and an isomorphism  $IA \xrightarrow{\cong} B$ . Since  $P$  is an isofibration, for each such  $B$  we may also choose an object  $C$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  and an isomorphism  $FA \xrightarrow{\cong} C$  whose image under  $P$  is  $GIA \xrightarrow{\cong} GB$ . There is then a unique functor  $H : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  that makes the evident diagram commute and sends  $B$  to the chosen  $C$  and  $IA \xrightarrow{\cong} B$  to  $FA \xrightarrow{\cong} C$ .

It remains to be shown that every functor can be factorised in the required manner. Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  be any functor. Consider the iso-comma category  $(F \wr \mathbb{D})$ :

- The objects are triples  $(C, D, \alpha)$ , where  $C$  is an object in  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $D$  is an object in  $\mathbb{D}$ , and  $\alpha : FC \rightarrow D$  is an *isomorphism* in  $\mathbb{D}$ .
- The morphisms  $(C, D, \alpha) \rightarrow (C', D', \alpha')$  is a morphism  $f : C \rightarrow C'$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  together with a morphism  $g : D \rightarrow D'$  in  $\mathbb{D}$  such that  $g \circ \alpha = \alpha' \circ Ff$ .<sup>[2]</sup>
- Composition and identities are inherited from  $\mathbb{C}$  and  $\mathbb{D}$ .

There is an evident isofibration  $I : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow (F \wr \mathbb{D})$  sending an object  $C$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  to the object  $(C, FC, \text{id}_{FC})$ , and it is easy to see that  $I$  is a weak equivalence. On the other hand, the projection  $P : (F \wr \mathbb{D}) \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is an isofibration by construction, and obviously  $F = PI$ . Thus, we have factored  $F$  as a trivial isofibration

[2] However, because  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha'$  are isomorphisms,  $f$  freely and uniquely determines  $g$ .

followed by an isofibration, and it is clear that this construction is functorial in  $F$ .

Now, consider instead the category  $\mathbf{M}(F)$  defined below:

- $\text{ob } \mathbf{M}(F) = \text{ob } \mathbb{C} \amalg \text{ob } \mathbb{D}$ .
- If  $C$  and  $C'$  are objects in  $\mathbb{C}$ , while  $D$  and  $D'$  are objects in  $\mathbb{D}$ , then:

$$\text{Hom}(C, C') = \mathbb{D}(FC, FC')$$

$$\text{Hom}(C, D') = \mathbb{D}(FC, D')$$

$$\text{Hom}(D, C') = \mathbb{D}(D, FC')$$

$$\text{Hom}(D, D') = \mathbb{D}(D, D')$$

- Composition and identities are inherited from  $\mathbb{D}$ .

There is an evident isocofibration  $I : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{M}(F)$  that sends an object  $C$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  to the corresponding object in  $\mathbf{M}(F)$  and sends a morphism  $f : C \rightarrow C'$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  to the morphism in  $\mathbf{M}(F)$  corresponding to  $Ff : FC \rightarrow FC'$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ . On the other hand, there is an evident projection  $P : \mathbf{M}(F) \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  that is fully faithful and surjective on objects, i.e.  $P$  is a trivial isofibration. Of course,  $F = PI$ , so this is a factorisation of  $F$  as an isocofibration followed by a trivial isofibration, and it is clear that this construction is functorial in  $F$ . ■

**6.5.19 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathbf{Cat}$  be considered as a model category via the canonical model structure.*

- (i) *Every object in  $\mathbf{Cat}$  is both cofibrant and fibrant.*
- (ii)  *$\mathbf{Cat}$  is a combinatorial model category.*
- (iii)  *$\mathbf{Cat}$  is a cartesian model category.*

*Proof.* (i). The unique functor  $\emptyset \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  is vacuously an isocofibration, and the unique functor  $\mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is certainly an isofibration.

(ii).  $\mathbf{Cat}$  is a locally finitely presentable category,<sup>[3]</sup> and it remains to be shown that the canonical model structure is a cofibrantly generated model structure.

---

[3] — because e.g.  $\mathbf{Cat}$  is the category of models for a finite limit sketch; see Proposition 1.51 in [LPAC], or Proposition 5.6.4 in [Borceux, 1994b], or theorem 0.5.34.

By the very definition of isofibration, the set  $\{\{0\} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{I2}\}$  is a generating set of trivial isofibrations, where  $\mathbf{I2}$  is the groupoid containing only a pair of non-trivial isomorphisms. It is also straightforward to see that a functor is ...

- ... surjective on objects if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to the unique functor  $\emptyset \rightarrow 1$ ;
- ... full if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to the inclusion  $\text{disc } 2 \rightarrow 2$ ; and
- ... faithful if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to the surjective functor  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow 2$ , where  $\mathbb{E}$  is the category with a parallel pair of non-trivial morphisms.

However, a functor is a trivial isofibration if and only if it is fully faithful and surjective on objects, so  $\{\emptyset \rightarrow 1, \text{disc } 2 \rightarrow 2, \mathbb{E} \rightarrow 2\}$  is a set of generating isofibrations.

(iii). Let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}'$  and  $G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{D}'$  be isofibrations, and consider the functor  $F \boxtimes G$  defined by the diagram below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\mathbb{C}} \times G} & \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}' \\
 F \times \text{id}_{\mathbb{D}} \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \mathbb{C}' \otimes \mathbb{D} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & (\mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}') \cup^{\mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}} (\mathbb{C}' \times \mathbb{D}) \\
 & \searrow \text{id}_{\mathbb{C}'} \times G & \nearrow F \times \text{id}_{\mathbb{D}'} \\
 & & \mathbb{C}' \times \mathbb{D}'
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A dashed arrow labeled  $F \boxtimes G$  also points from  $\mathbb{C}' \otimes \mathbb{D}$  to  $\mathbb{C}' \times \mathbb{D}'$ .)

The functor  $\text{ob} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  has both left and right adjoints, so it is easy to see that  $F \boxtimes G$  is an isofibration. Moreover, if  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}'$  is a trivial isofibration, one may directly verify that  $F \times \text{id}_{\mathbb{D}} : \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}' \times \mathbb{D}$  and  $F \times \text{id}_{\mathbb{D}'} : \mathbb{C} \times \mathbb{D}' \rightarrow \mathbb{C}' \times \mathbb{D}'$  are trivial isofibrations; but trivial isofibrations are closed under pushout, so applying the 2-out-of-3 property of weak equivalences, we conclude that  $F \boxtimes G$  is a trivial isofibration if  $F$  is. The symmetrical argument shows that  $F \boxtimes G$  is a trivial isofibration if  $G$  is.

Having shown that  $\mathbf{Cat}$  satisfies the pushout-product axiom, we must now verify that  $\mathbf{Cat}$  is cartesian closed and has a cofibrant unit; but the former is a very well-known fact, and the latter follows from claim (i). ■

**6.5.20** THEOREM. Let **Grpd** be the category of small groupoids.

(i) The following data constitute a model structure on **Grpd**:

- The weak equivalences are the functors that are fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.
- The cofibrations are the isocofibrations.
- The fibrations are the isofibrations.

This model structure is called the **canonical model structure** on **Grpd**.

(ii) Every object in **Grpd** is both cofibrant and fibrant.

(iii) **Grpd** is a combinatorial model category.

(iv) **Grpd** is a cartesian model category.

(v) The inclusion  $\text{und} : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  preserves and reflects weak equivalences, isocofibrations, and isofibrations; moreover, it is both a left Quillen functor and a right Quillen functor.

*Proof.* (i). The proof of [proposition 6.5.18](#) goes through for **Grpd** without modifications.

(ii)–(iv). These can be proven in essentially the same way as [proposition 6.5.18](#), though one should note that the generating isocofibrations and generating trivial isocofibrations for **Grpd** are different.

(v). It is clear that  $\text{und} : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  has the announced preservation and reflection properties. One may check that  $\text{und}$  has a left adjoint  $\mathbf{I} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$  and a right adjoint  $\text{iso} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$ , so  $\text{und}$  is both a left Quillen functor and a right Quillen functor. ■

## 6.6 Bousfield localisation

**Prerequisites.** §§5.1, 5.3, 5.8, 6.1, 6.2.

**6.6.1** DEFINITION. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- An  **$S$ -local object** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a fibrant object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that, for every morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  that is in  $S$ , the induced morphism

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(g, X) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, X) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(Z, X)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ .

- An  **$S$ -colocal object** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a cofibrant object  $W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that, for every morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  that is in  $S$ , the induced morphism

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, f) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, X) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, Y)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ .

**6.6.2** LEMMA. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence between fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $X$  is an  $S$ -local object in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $Y$  is  $S$ -local.
- If  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is a weak equivalence between cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then  $Z$  is an  $S$ -colocal object in  $\mathcal{M}$  if and only if  $W$  is  $S$ -colocal.

*Proof.* Immediate, because  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}$  is a functor  $(\mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{M})^{\mathrm{op}} \times \mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho sSet}$ . ■

**6.6.3** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  be model categories and let

$$F \dashv G : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

be a Quillen adjunction.

- If  $S$  is a class of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathbf{L}F : \mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{N}$  sends morphisms in (the image of)  $S$  to isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{N}$ , then  $G : \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$  sends fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{N}$  to  $S$ -local objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- If  $\mathcal{T}$  is a class of morphisms in  $\mathcal{N}$  and  $\mathbf{R}G : \mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  sends morphisms in (the image of)  $\mathcal{T}$  to isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ , then  $F : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{N}$  sends cofibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  to  $\mathcal{T}$ -colocal objects in  $\mathcal{N}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By [proposition 5.3.4](#),  $G$  sends fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{N}$  to fibrant objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and by [theorem 5.8.37](#), we have natural isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$  of the form below:

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{N}}((\mathbf{L}F)Z, B) \cong \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(Z, (\mathbf{R}G)B)$$

But  $(\mathbf{R}G)B$  is isomorphic to  $GB$  in  $\mathbf{Ho M}$  when  $B$  is fibrant (by [theorem 5.3.12](#)), so  $GB$  is indeed an  $S$ -local object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**6.6.4** DEFINITION. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- An  **$S$ -local equivalence** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that the induced morphism

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(g, X) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, X) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(Z, X)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$  for all  $S$ -local objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- An  **$S$ -colocal equivalence** in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  such that the induced morphism

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, f) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, X) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathcal{M}}(W, Y)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$  for all  $S$ -colocal objects  $W$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.6.5** REMARK. For any given model category  $\mathcal{M}$  and any class  $S$  of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ , the class of  $S$ -local equivalences (resp.  $S$ -colocal equivalences) is saturated (by [lemma 3.1.8](#)). Note that every morphism that is in  $S$  is automatically an  $S$ -local equivalence (resp.  $S$ -colocal equivalence), as is every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.6.6** LEMMA. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- A morphism between  $S$ -local objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence if and only if it is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .
- A morphism between  $S$ -colocal objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -colocal equivalence if and only if it is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

It is clear that every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence. Conversely, suppose  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence between  $S$ -local objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ . [Corollary 5.8.15](#) then implies that  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  induces bijections

$$\mathbf{Ho M}(g, X) : \mathbf{Ho M}(W, X) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho M}(Z, X)$$



for all  $S$ -local objects  $X$ , so  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  must be an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ . Since  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category (by [theorem 5.4.1](#)), we may then deduce that  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**6.6.7** DEFINITION. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$  and let  $X$  be an object in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- An  **$S$ -local replacement** for  $X$  is a pair  $(\hat{X}, i)$  where  $\hat{X}$  is an  $S$ -local object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence.
- An  **$S$ -colocal replacement** for  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a pair  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  where  $\tilde{X}$  is an  $S$ -colocal object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $p : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is an  $S$ -colocal equivalence.
- A **cofibrant  $S$ -local replacement** for  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -local replacement  $(\hat{X}, i)$  where  $i : X \rightarrow \hat{X}$  is cofibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  (and also an  $S$ -local equivalence).
- A **fibrant  $S$ -colocal replacement** for  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -colocal replacement  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  where  $p : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  is a fibration in  $\mathcal{M}$  (and also an  $S$ -local equivalence).

**6.6.8** PROPOSITION. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- If every cofibrant–fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  admits an  $S$ -local replacement, then the full subcategory of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  spanned by the  $S$ -local objects is a reflective subcategory of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ .
- If every cofibrant–fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  admits an  $S$ -colocal replacement, then the full subcategory of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  spanned by the  $S$ -colocal objects is a coreflective subcategory of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be the full subcategory of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  spanned by the  $S$ -local objects. If  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ , then [corollary 5.8.15](#) implies that  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  induces bijections

$$\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(g, X) : \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(W, X) \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(Z, X)$$

for all  $S$ -local objects  $X$ . Thus, for any  $S$ -local replacement  $(\hat{Z}, i)$ , we have natural bijections

$$\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(\hat{Z}, X) \cong \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}(Z, X)$$

where  $X$  varies among the  $S$ -local objects in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ . [Proposition 5.1.24](#) implies every object in  $\mathcal{M}$  is weakly equivalent to a cofibrant–fibrant object, so this implies that the inclusion  $\mathcal{L} \hookrightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  has a left adjoint, as required.  $\blacksquare$

**6.6.9 LEMMA.** *Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left proper model category, then every  $S$ -local object is injective with respect to the class of cofibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  that are also  $S$ -local equivalences.*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a right proper model category, then every  $S$ -colocal object is projective with respect to the class of fibrations in  $\mathcal{M}$  that are also  $S$ -colocal equivalences.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  that is a cofibration and also an  $S$ -local equivalence. Using axiom CM5 and [theorem 5.6.15](#), we may choose cosimplicial resolutions  $(\tilde{Z}^\bullet, p_Z^\bullet)$  and  $(\tilde{W}^\bullet, p_W^\bullet)$  for  $Z$  and  $W$  (respectively) and a Reedy cofibration  $\tilde{i}^\bullet : \tilde{Z}^\bullet \rightarrow \tilde{W}^\bullet$  such that the following diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$  commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{Z}^0 & \xrightarrow{p_Z^0} & Z \\ \tilde{i}^0 \downarrow & & \downarrow i \\ \tilde{W}^0 & \xrightarrow{p_W^0} & W \end{array}$$

Let  $X$  be an  $S$ -local object. We wish to show that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $i : Z \rightarrow W$ . Since  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence, the induced morphism of left homotopy function complexes

$$\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{i}, X) : \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{W}, X) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{Z}, X)$$

is a homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes; but  $\tilde{i}^\bullet : \tilde{Z}^\bullet \rightarrow \tilde{W}^\bullet$  is a Reedy cofibration between cosimplicial resolutions in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $X$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , so [lemma 5.8.38](#) says the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $\tilde{i}^0 : \tilde{Z}^0 \rightarrow \tilde{W}^0$ .

Now, suppose the square in the diagram below is a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{M}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \tilde{Z}^0 & \xrightarrow{p_Z^0} & Z \\
 \downarrow i^0 & & \downarrow i' \\
 \tilde{W}^0 & \longrightarrow & W' \\
 & \searrow p_W^0 & \nearrow i \\
 & & W
 \end{array}$$

(Note: A dashed arrow labeled  $g$  also points from  $W'$  to  $W$ .)

Since  $\mathcal{M}$  is a left proper model category, axiom CM2 implies  $g : W' \rightarrow W$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$ . [Proposition A.3.19](#) says the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  also has the right lifting property with respect to  $i' : Z \rightarrow W'$ , so we may use [lemma 5.1.20](#) to deduce that  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $i : Z \rightarrow W$ . ■

**6.6.10** DEFINITION. Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .

- The **left Bousfield localisation** of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to  $S$  is a model category  $\mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M}$  whose underlying category and cofibrations are the same as  $\mathcal{M}$  and whose weak equivalences are the  $S$ -local equivalences.
- The **right Bousfield localisation** of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to  $S$  is a model category  $\mathbf{R}_S \mathcal{M}$  whose underlying category and fibrations are the same as  $\mathcal{M}$  and whose weak equivalences are the  $S$ -colocal equivalences.

**6.6.11** REMARK. The left (resp. right) Bousfield localisation of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to  $S$  is unique *if it exists*, by [theorem 5.1.12](#). Note that the theorem also implies that the trivial fibrations in  $\mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M}$  (resp. trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{R}_S \mathcal{M}$ ) are the same as the trivial fibrations (resp. trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathcal{M}$ .

**6.6.12** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  be model categories with the same underlying category.*

- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  have the same cofibrations and  $\text{weq } \mathcal{M} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{M}'$ , then the model structure on  $\mathcal{M}'$  is the left Bousfield localisation of the model structure of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to  $\text{weq } \mathcal{M}'$ .*
- *If  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{M}'$  have the same fibrations and  $\text{weq } \mathcal{M} \subseteq \text{weq } \mathcal{M}'$ , then the model structure on  $\mathcal{M}'$  is the right Bousfield localisation of the model structure of  $\mathcal{M}$  with respect to  $\text{weq } \mathcal{M}'$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $S = \text{weq } \mathcal{M}'$ . It suffices to prove that every  $S$ -local equivalence is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . The hypotheses (plus [proposition 5.3.2](#)) imply that the trivial adjunction

$$\text{id} \dashv \text{id} : \mathcal{M}' \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

is a Quillen adjunction. Let  $Y$  be a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}'$  and let  $\hat{Y}_\bullet$  be a simplicial resolution of  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . Then  $Y$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\hat{Y}_\bullet$  is a simplicial resolution of  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , by ([proposition 5.3.4](#) and) [lemma 5.8.36](#). On the other hand, given an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , any fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}$  is also a fibrant cofibrant replacement for  $X$  in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . Thus, if  $(\tilde{X}, p)$  is a cofibrant replacement for  $X$ , then the right hom-complex  $\mathcal{H}om_{\mathcal{M}}(\tilde{X}, \hat{Y})$  computes both  $\mathbf{R}Hom_{\mathcal{M}}(X, Y)$  and  $\mathbf{R}Hom_{\mathcal{M}'}(X, Y)$ . Hence, by [proposition 5.8.22](#), every fibrant object in  $\mathcal{M}'$  is an  $S$ -local object in  $\mathcal{M}$ , and every  $S$ -local equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}'$ . ■

**6.6.13** PROPOSITION. *Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If the left Bousfield localisation  $\mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M}$  exists, then the trivial adjunction*

$$\text{id} \dashv \text{id} : \mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

*is a Quillen adjunction, and the right derived functor  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is fully faithful.*

- *If the right Bousfield localisation  $\mathbf{R}_S \mathcal{M}$  exists, then the trivial adjunction*

$$\text{id} \dashv \text{id} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{R}_S \mathcal{M}$$

*is a Quillen adjunction, and the left derived functor  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{R}_S \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$  is fully faithful.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By definition,  $\text{id} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M}$  preserves cofibrations, and since every weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence,  $\text{id} : \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathbf{L}_S \mathcal{M}$  also preserves trivial cofibrations. [Proposition 5.3.2](#) then says the trivial adjunction is indeed a Quillen adjunction. We then use [theorem 5.3.12](#) and [proposition 3.3.28](#) to deduce that the derived counit is an isomorphism; thus, by [proposition A.1.3](#), the right derived functor is fully faithful. ■

**6.6.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $S$  be a class of morphisms in a model category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- *If the left Bousfield localisation  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$  exists, then fibrant objects in  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$  are  $S$ -local objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; in addition, if  $\mathcal{M}$  is left proper, then  $S$ -local objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are fibrant objects in  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$ .*
- *If the right Bousfield localisation  $\mathbf{R}_S\mathcal{M}$  exists, then cofibrant objects in  $\mathbf{R}_S\mathcal{M}$  are  $S$ -colocal objects in  $\mathcal{M}$ ; in addition, if  $\mathcal{M}$  is right proper, then  $S$ -colocal objects in  $\mathcal{M}$  are cofibrant objects in  $\mathbf{R}_S\mathcal{M}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider the Quillen adjunction of [proposition 6.6.13](#):

$$\mathrm{id} \dashv \mathrm{id} : \mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$$

Since every morphism that is in  $S$  is an  $S$ -local equivalence, [proposition 6.6.3](#) says every fibrant object in  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$  is an  $S$ -local object in  $\mathcal{M}$ . Conversely, if  $\mathcal{M}$  is left proper, then [lemma 6.6.9](#) says every  $S$ -local object in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a fibrant object in  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$ . ■

**6.6.15** THEOREM (Existence of left Bousfield localisations). *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a left proper combinatorial model category and let  $S$  be a set of morphisms in  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i) *The left Bousfield localisation  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$  exists.*
- (ii)  *$\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$  is a left proper combinatorial model category.*
- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is the underlying model category of a simplicial model category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ ,<sup>[1]</sup> then the left Bousfield localisation  $\mathbf{L}_S\mathcal{M}$  is also a simplicial model structure on  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$ .*

*Proof.* This theorem is due to Smith. See Theorem 2.11 and Theorem 3.18 in [Barwick, 2007b], or Theorem 4.7 and Theorem 4.46 in [Barwick, 2010]. (By [remark 2.4.13](#), the weak equivalences in the left Bousfield localisation of a simplicial model category  $\underline{\mathcal{M}}$  with respect to  $S$  are precisely the  $S$ -local equivalences in  $\mathcal{M}$ .) □

---

[1] See §2.4.



## QUASICATEGORIES

Quasicategories were first defined by Boardman and Vogt [BV] as simplicial classes that satisfy the “restricted Kan condition”. The modern name is due to Joyal [2002], who worked out much of the basic theory.

As the word itself suggests, a quasicategory is a structure that is like a category. More precisely, it is a model for an  $(\infty, 1)$ -category, i.e. a weak higher category with  $n$ -morphisms for all  $n \geq 0$ , such that every  $n$ -morphism with  $n > 1$  is (weakly) invertible; alternatively, one may think of quasicategories as being homotopy-coherent categories, i.e. a structure which is like a category but only up to a specified, coherent system of homotopies.

### 7.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §§0.1, 1.1, 1.2, A.2.

In this section we use the explicit universe convention.

- 7.1.1** **DEFINITION.** A **quasicategory** is a simplicial set  $X$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  has the right lifting property with respect to all inner horn inclusions.
- 7.1.2** ¶ Quasicategories are also called  **$\infty$ -categories** (by e.g. Lurie [HTT]) or **weak Kan complexes** (by e.g. Cordier and Porter [1986]). We will usually use *bold upright* calligraphic letters to denote quasicategories, e.g.  $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}, \dots$ . As with ‘category’, the word ‘quasicategory’ always means a quasicategory that is not necessarily small, even when we are using the implicit universe convention.

**7.1.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a category and let  $N(C)$  be its nerve. For  $n \geq 2$  and  $0 < k < n$ , the unique morphism  $N(C) \rightarrow 1$  is right orthogonal to the inner horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ ; in particular,  $N(C)$  is a quasicategory.*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise using induction on  $n$ . ◇

**7.1.4** ¶ We will often refer to vertices of a quasicategory as **objects**, and edges as **morphisms**. The **domain** of a morphism  $f$  in a quasicategory is the object  $d_1(f)$ , and the **codomain** of  $f$  is the object  $d_0(f)$ . An **identity morphism** is a degenerate edge; we define  $f : x \rightarrow y$  to mean that  $x$  is the domain of  $f$  and  $y$  is the codomain of  $f$ . The **identity morphism** of an object  $x$  in a quasicategory is the degenerate edge  $s_0(x)$ , which we also denote by  $\text{id}_x$ . Note that all this terminology is compatible with the identification of categories  $C$  with their nerves  $N(C)$ .

It is not hard to check that a simplicial set  $X$  is a quasicategory if and only if the simplicial set  $X^{\text{op}}$  is a quasicategory.<sup>[1]</sup> Thus, we may make the following definition:

**7.1.5** DEFINITION. The **opposite** of a quasicategory  $\mathcal{C}$  is the simplicial set  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}$  (regarded as a quasicategory).

**7.1.6** DEFINITION. Let  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a quasicategory.

- We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **left homotopic** if there exists a 2-simplex  $\alpha$  such that  $d_1(\alpha) = f_0$ ,  $d_0(\alpha) = f_1$ , and  $d_2(\alpha) = s_0(d_0(f_0))$ .
- We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **right homotopic** if there exists a 2-simplex  $\alpha$  such that  $d_2(\alpha) = f_0$ ,  $d_1(\alpha) = f_1$ , and  $d_0(\alpha) = s_0(d_0(f_0))$ .
- We say  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are **homotopic** if they are both left and right homotopic, and we write  $f_0 \sim f_1$  in this case.

Obviously, two edges are left homotopic in a quasicategory  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if they are right homotopic in  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}$ . In fact:

---

[1] Recall [definition 1.1.8](#).



**7.1.7** LEMMA. Let  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a quasicategory  $\mathcal{C}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are left homotopic.
- (ii)  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic.
- (iii)  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are homotopic.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). By duality, it suffices to show that (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $\alpha$  be a 2-simplex of  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $d_1(\alpha) = f$ ,  $d_0(\alpha) = f'$ , and  $d_2(\alpha) = s_0(d_0(f))$ . Using the right lifting property of  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow 1$  with respect to the inner horn inclusion  $\Lambda_1^3 \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , it is straightforward to obtain a 3-simplex  $\xi$  such that  $d_2(\xi) = \alpha$ ,  $d_3(\xi) = s_0(f_1)$ , and  $d_0(\xi) = s_1(f_1)$ ; thus the 2-simplex  $d_1(\xi)$  is the required witness for the claim that  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  are right homotopic.

(i) and (ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). This is by definition. ■

**7.1.8** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a quasicategory. The relation of homotopy is an equivalence relation on the set of edges of  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* See Proposition 1.2.3.5 in [HTT], or Lemma 4.11 in [BV]. □

**7.1.9** DEFINITION. The **homotopy category** of a quasicategory  $\mathcal{C}$  is the category  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  defined below:

- The objects are the objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- A morphism  $x \rightarrow y$  is a homotopy class of morphisms  $f : x \rightarrow y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- The identity morphism  $x \rightarrow x$  is the homotopy class of the morphism  $\mathrm{id}_x$ .
- Composition is induced by the existence of fillers for the inner horn  $\Lambda_1^2$ : if  $\alpha$  is a 2-simplex of  $\mathcal{C}$ , then we have  $d_0(\alpha) \circ d_2(\alpha) = d_1(\alpha)$ .

**7.1.10** LEMMA. The above construction is indeed a category.

*Proof.* See Proposition 1.2.3.8 in [HTT]. □

**7.1.11** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -small quasicategory** is a quasicategory whose underlying simplicial set is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.

**7.1.12** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{sSet}$  be the category of simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathbf{Cat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories.

(i) The functor  $N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  that sends a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{C}$  to its nerve  $N(\mathbb{C})$  has a left adjoint  $\tau_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  that sends a simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -set  $X$  to its fundamental category  $\tau_1 X$ .

(ii) The functor  $\tau_1 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  preserves finite products.

(iii) For each quasicategory  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a canonical isomorphism  $\tau_1 \mathcal{C} \cong \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* Claims (i) and (ii) were previously proven in [proposition 1.2.2](#), and claim (iii) is essentially a consequence of the fact that  $\tau_1 X$  can be presented explicitly in terms of generators and relations as in [remark 1.2.4](#).  $\square$

**7.1.13** ¶ Henceforth, we will regard all ordinary categories as quasicategories by implicitly identifying a category  $\mathcal{C}$  with its nerve  $N(\mathcal{C})$ . Continuing the terminological conventions in [paragraph 7.1.4](#), we now define functors and natural transformations in the context of quasicategories.

**7.1.14** DEFINITION. A **functor** between quasicategories is a morphism of simplicial sets whose domain and codomain are quasicategories.

Recall that [theorem A.2.22](#) implies that the category of simplicial  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets is cartesian closed for all universes  $\mathbf{U}$ . For brevity, we will identify morphisms  $X \rightarrow Y$  with vertices of the exponential object  $[X, Y]$ ; thus, a functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  will be both a morphism between simplicial sets and an vertex in  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$ .

**7.1.15** DEFINITION. Let  $f_0, f_1 : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be functors between quasicategories.

- A **natural transformation**  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  is an edge  $\alpha : f_0 \rightarrow f_1$  in the exponential object  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$ .
- Two natural transformations are **homotopic** if they are *isomorphic* in the fundamental category  $\tau_1[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$ .

**7.1.16** REMARK. It is a fact that the exponential object  $[X, Y]$  is a quasicategory when  $Y$  is quasicategory: see [corollary 7.2.14](#). Thus the fundamental category  $\tau_1[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$  can be computed using the homotopy category construction.

**7.1.17** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a quasicategory. An **equivalence** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a morphism  $f$  whose homotopy class is invertible in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ , and a **quasi-inverse** for  $f$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  whose homotopy class is an inverse for (the homotopy class of)  $f$  in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$ .

One of the requirements for a model of the theory of  $(\infty, 1)$ -categories is that the groupoid-like instances should be models of  $\infty$ -groupoids. If by ‘ $\infty$ -groupoid’ one means a (weak) homotopy type of Kan complexes, then the following result is relevant:

**7.1.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a quasicategory. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  (as a simplicial set) is a Kan complex.
- (ii) Every morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an equivalence.
- (iii)  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  is a groupoid.

*Proof.* See Corollary 1.5 in [Joyal, 2002]. □

There is also a homotopy-coherent notion of equivalence. Let  $\mathbf{I2}$  be the groupoid obtained by freely inverting the arrows in the category  $\mathbf{2}$  freely generated by a morphism  $0 \rightarrow 1$ .

**7.1.19** DEFINITION. A **homotopy-coherent equivalence** in a quasicategory  $\mathcal{C}$  is a functor  $\mathbf{I2} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .

**7.1.20** REMARK. More explicitly, a homotopy-coherent equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  consists of the following data:

- A pair of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say  $x$  and  $y$ .
- A pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say  $f : x \rightarrow y$  and  $g : y \rightarrow x$ .
- A pair of 2-simplices, say  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , witnessing the fact that  $\mathrm{id}_x \sim g \circ f$  and  $f \circ g \sim \mathrm{id}_y$ .
- A pair of 3-simplices witnessing the fact that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  satisfy (versions of) the triangle identities for adjunctions.
- etc.

That is, for each natural number  $n$ , we have a pair of  $(n + 1)$ -simplices witnessing a coherence axiom for the given pair of  $n$ -simplices. Note that the data for  $n \leq 2$  already determine a mutually quasi-inverse pair of equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; we will refer to  $f : x \rightarrow y$  as the **underlying morphism** of the homotopy-coherent equivalence.

When  $\mathcal{C}$  is an ordinary category, the 2-simplices are unique *if* they exist, and given the 2-simplices, the required  $n$ -simplices exist and are unique for  $n \geq 2$ .

In other words, every isomorphism in an ordinary category can be equipped with the structure of a homotopy-coherent equivalence. It turns out the same is true for quasicategories:

**7.1.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a quasicategory. If  $f$  is an equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then there is a homotopy-coherent equivalence whose underlying morphism is  $f$ .*

*Proof.* See Corollary 1.6 in [Joyal, 2002], or Theorem 4.14 in [TQA]. □

**7.1.22** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. The **homotopy 2-category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small quasicategories** is the following 2-category  $\mathfrak{Qcat}$ :

- The objects are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small quasicategories.
- The category of morphisms  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is the fundamental category  $\tau_1[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$ , which we also denote by  $\mathbf{QFun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$ .
- Composition and identity morphisms are induced by  $\tau_1$  from the cartesian closed structure of  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

The construction of the 2-category  $\mathfrak{Qcat}$  enables us to apply definitions from formal category theory to the context of quasicategories.

**7.1.23** DEFINITION. Let  $f_0, f_1 : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be functors between quasicategories. A **natural equivalence** is a natural transformation  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  whose image in the fundamental category  $\tau_1[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$  is an isomorphism.

As with natural transformations of functors between ordinary categories, natural transformations of functors between quasicategories have components. It is a non-trivial fact that a natural transformation is a natural equivalence if and only if its components are equivalences:

**7.1.24** THEOREM. Let  $f_0, f_1 : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be functors between quasicategories and let  $\alpha : f_0 \Rightarrow f_1$  be a natural transformation. Then  $\alpha$  is a natural equivalence if and only if, for every object  $c$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the morphism  $\alpha_c : f_0(x) \rightarrow f_1(x)$  is an equivalence in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

*Proof.* See Theorem 5.14 in [TQA], or Lemma 2.3.8 in [Riehl and Verity, 2013a]  $\square$

**7.1.25** DEFINITION. An **equivalence of quasicategories** is an equivalence in the 2-category  $\mathbf{Qcat}$ , i.e. a tuple  $(f, g, \eta, \epsilon)$  where:

- $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $g : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  are functors between quasicategories.
- $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  are natural equivalences.

We will often abuse notation and say that  $f$  is an equivalence of quasicategories, omitting mention of the other data.

**7.1.26** DEFINITION. An **adjunction of quasicategories** is an adjunction in the 2-category  $\mathbf{Qcat}$ , i.e. a tuple  $(f, g, \eta, \epsilon)$  where:

- $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $g : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  are functors between quasicategories.
- $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow g \circ f$  and  $\epsilon : f \circ g \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  are natural transformations.
- The triangle identities are satisfied:

$$\begin{aligned} (\epsilon \circ \text{id}_f) \bullet (\text{id}_g \circ \eta) &= \text{id}_f && \text{in } \mathbf{QFun}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \\ (\text{id}_g \circ \epsilon) \bullet (\eta \circ \text{id}_g) &= \text{id}_g && \text{in } \mathbf{QFun}(\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{C}) \end{aligned}$$

**7.1.27** REMARK. There also exist homotopy-coherent versions of the above definitions, but it is a theorem of Riehl and Verity [2013b] that every adjunction of quasicategories can be extended to a homotopy-coherent adjunction.

**7.1.28** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe, let  $\mathbf{Cat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories, and let  $\mathbf{Qcat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small quasicategories. The functor  $\text{Ho} : \mathbf{Qcat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is isomorphic to (the underlying functor of) a representable 2-functor  $\mathbf{Qcat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ .

*Proof.* This is an immediate consequence of the natural isomorphism  $[1, -] \cong \text{id}_{\mathbf{Qcat}}$  and the fact that  $\mathbf{QFun}(1, -)$  is a 2-functor  $\mathbf{Qcat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ .  $\blacksquare$

## 7.2 The Joyal model structure

**Prerequisites.** §§0.5, 1.4, 1.5, 5.1, 6.5, 7.1, A.2, A.4.

Just as there is a model structure on **Cat** whose homotopy category is the category of small categories modulo natural isomorphism of functors, there is a model structure on **sSet**, due to Joyal [TQ1], whose homotopy category is the category of small quasicategories modulo natural equivalence of functors.

**7.2.1 ¶** Throughout this section,  $\tau_0$  denotes the functor **sSet**  $\rightarrow$  **Set** that sends a simplicial set  $X$  to the set of isomorphism classes of objects in the fundamental category  $\tau_1 X$ . Note that it can be factored as  $\pi_0 \circ \text{iso} \circ \tau_1$ , where  $\text{iso} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$  is the *right* adjoint of the inclusion  $\mathbf{Grpd} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ .

**7.2.2** **DEFINITION.** A **weak categorical equivalence** is a morphism  $f : Z \rightarrow W$  of simplicial sets such that the induced map

$$\tau_0[f, \mathcal{K}] : \tau_0[W, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow \tau_0[Z, \mathcal{K}]$$

is a bijection for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ .

**7.2.3** **LEMMA.** *Every weak categorical equivalence is also a weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $f : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism in **sSet**. Every Kan complex is a quasicategory, so if the map

$$\tau_0[f, \mathcal{K}] : \tau_0[W, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow \tau_0[Z, \mathcal{K}]$$

is a bijection for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ , then

$$\pi_0[f, K] : \pi_0[W, K] \rightarrow \pi_0[Z, K]$$

is a bijection for all Kan complexes  $K$ : indeed, [corollary 1.4.16](#) says  $[W, K]$  and  $[Z, K]$  are Kan complexes if  $K$  is a Kan complex, and [lemma 1.4.4](#) implies that  $\pi_0$  and  $\tau_0$  are naturally isomorphic for Kan complexes. ■

**7.2.4** **LEMMA.** *Let  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor between small quasicategories. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$f$  is (part of) an equivalence of quasicategories.*
- (ii)  *$f$  is a weak categorical equivalence.*

(iii) For all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ , the induced map

$$\tau_0[\mathcal{K}, f] : \tau_0[\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \tau_0[\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{D}]$$

is a bijection.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). It is not hard to see that  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is (part of) an equivalence of quasicategories if and only if the induced functor

$$\tau_1[f, \mathcal{K}] : \tau_1[\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow \tau_1[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{K}]$$

is (part of) an equivalence of categories for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ . The functor  $\pi_0 \circ \text{iso} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends equivalences to bijections, so we may deduce that  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a weak categorical equivalence.

(i)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). The proof is similar to that of (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i), (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). These are straightforward exercises in chasing identity morphisms. ■

**7.2.5 PROPOSITION.** **sSet** with the class of weak categorical equivalences constitute a saturated relative category; in particular, the class of weak categorical equivalences has the 2-out-of-6 property.

*Proof.* The collection of functors  $\tau_0[-, \mathcal{K}] : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , as  $\mathcal{K}$  varies over the small quasicategories, jointly reflect isomorphisms as weak categorical equivalences, so the class of weak categorical equivalences must be saturated. For the 2-out-of-6 property, see [corollary A.4.15](#). ■

**7.2.6 DEFINITION.** An **inner fibration** of simplicial sets is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  with the right lifting property with respect to the inner horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  for all  $n \geq 2$  and  $0 < i < n$ .

**7.2.7 REMARK.** It is clear that a simplicial set  $X$  is a quasicategory if and only if the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is an inner fibration. Unfortunately, these are *not* the fibrations in the Joyal model structure.

**7.2.8** DEFINITION. An **inner anodyne extension of simplicial sets** is a member of the smallest class  $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathbf{sSet}$  satisfying the following conditions:

- Every inner horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  is in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under pushouts.
- $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.
- $\mathcal{A}$  is closed under retracts.

**7.2.9** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{I}'$  be the set of inner horn inclusions.*

- (i) *The inner anodyne extensions are precisely the  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cofibrations, i.e. the morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  that have the left lifting property with respect to all inner fibrations.*
- (ii) *Every inner anodyne extension is a retract of a relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complex.*
- (iii) *Every inner anodyne extension is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  and bijective on vertices.*

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). [Proposition A.3.19](#) implies that every inner anodyne extension has the left lifting property with respect to all inner fibrations; for the converse, see [corollary 0.5.13](#).

(iii). The functor  $(-)_0 : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves colimits, so the class of morphisms that are bijective on vertices is closed under pushouts, transfinite composition, and retracts. Similarly, the class of monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is closed under the same operations. It is clear that the inner horn inclusions are monomorphisms that are bijective on vertices, so we deduce the same is true for inner anodyne extensions. ■

**7.2.10** REMARK. The proposition above implies that the class of monomorphisms that are weak categorical equivalences *strictly* contains the class of inner anodyne extensions: indeed, the inclusion  $\{0\} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{I}2$  is both a monomorphism and a categorical equivalence but *not* bijective on vertices.



**7.2.II** PROPOSITION. *There exist an  $\aleph_0$ -accessible functor  $M : [2, \mathbf{sSet}] \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and two natural transformations  $i : \text{dom} \Rightarrow M$  and  $p : M \Rightarrow \text{codom}$  such that, for all objects  $f$  in  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$ :*

- $f = p_f \circ i_f$ .
- $i_f$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}'$ -cell complex, where  $\mathcal{I}'$  is the set of inner horn inclusions.
- $p_f$  is an inner fibration of simplicial sets.

*Proof.* Using [proposition 0.2.46](#), it is not hard to see that the inner horn inclusions are  $\aleph_0$ -compact as objects in  $[2, \mathbf{sSet}]$ . We then apply [corollary 0.5.14](#). ■

**7.2.I2** COROLLARY. *There exist an  $\aleph_0$ -accessible functor  $R : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  and a natural transformation  $i : \text{id}_{\mathbf{sSet}} \Rightarrow R$  such that, for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :*

- $RX$  is a small quasicategory.
- $i_X : X \rightarrow RX$  is an inner anodyne extension. ■

**7.2.I3** THEOREM. *Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  and let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be an inner fibration. Suppose we have a commutative diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 [W, X] & \xrightarrow{\quad [i, X] \quad} & & & \\
 \downarrow [W, p] & \searrow q & L(i, p) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & [Z, X] \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow [Z, p] \\
 & & [W, Y] & \xrightarrow{\quad [i, Y] \quad} & [Z, Y]
 \end{array}$$

where the square in the lower right is a pullback square.

- (i) *The unique morphism  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, p)$  making the diagram commute is an inner fibration.*
- (ii) *If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an inner anodyne extension, then  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, p)$  is a trivial Kan fibration.*
- (iii) *If  $p : Z \rightarrow W$  is a trivial Kan fibration, then so is  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, p)$ .*

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). See Theorem 2.18 in [\[TQA\]](#), or Propositions 2.5 and 2.6 in [\[Dugger and Spivak, 2011\]](#).

(iii). This is a special case of [proposition 1.4.15](#). □

**7.2.14** COROLLARY.

- (i) If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an inner fibration, then for all simplicial sets  $W$ , the morphism  $[W, p] : [W, X] \rightarrow [W, Y]$  is also an inner fibration.
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism (resp. inner anodyne extension) and  $\mathcal{K}$  is a small quasicategory, then the morphism  $[i, \mathcal{K}] : [W, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow [Z, \mathcal{K}]$  is an inner fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration).
- (iii) If  $W$  is any simplicial set and  $\mathcal{K}$  is a small quasicategory, then  $[W, \mathcal{K}]$  is also a small quasicategory.

*Proof.* The proof is similar to that of [corollary 1.4.16](#). ■

**7.2.15** COROLLARY. **Qcat** is an exponential ideal of **sSet**; in particular, **Qcat** is a cartesian closed category. ■

**7.2.16** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : W \rightarrow Z$  be a morphism in **sSet**. The following are equivalent:

- (i) For all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ , the induced functor

$$[f, \mathcal{K}] : [Z, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow [W, \mathcal{K}]$$

is (part of) an equivalence of quasicategories.

- (ii) For all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ , the induced functor

$$\mathrm{Ho} [f, \mathcal{K}] : \mathrm{Ho} [Z, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} [W, \mathcal{K}]$$

is (part of) an equivalence of categories.

- (iii) The morphism  $f : W \rightarrow Z$  is a weak categorical equivalence.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is a corollary of [lemma 7.1.28](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Any equivalence of categories must induce a bijection on isomorphism classes of objects.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $f : W \rightarrow Z$  is a weak categorical equivalence, i.e. that the induced map

$$\tau_0[f, \mathcal{K}] : \tau_0[Z, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow \tau_0[W, \mathcal{K}]$$

is a bijection of sets for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ . Then, for all simplicial sets  $X$  and all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ , the induced map

$$\tau_0[f, [X, \mathcal{K}]] : \tau_0[Z, [X, \mathcal{K}]] \rightarrow \tau_0[W, [X, \mathcal{K}]]$$

is a bijection, because  $[X, \mathcal{K}]$  is a quasicategory by [corollary 7.2.15](#). [Proposition A.2.11](#) then implies that the induced map

$$\tau_0[X, [f, \mathcal{K}]] : \tau_0[X, [Z, \mathcal{K}]] \rightarrow \tau_0[X, [W, \mathcal{K}]]$$

is a bijection for all simplicial sets  $X$  and all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ . Thus, by [lemma 7.2.4](#), the induced functor  $[f, \mathcal{K}] : [Z, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow [W, \mathcal{K}]$  is an equivalence of quasicategories. ■

**7.2.17** PROPOSITION. *The class of weak categorical equivalences is closed under binary products.*

*Proof.* Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be weak categorical equivalences. Since  $f \times g = (\text{id}_Y \times g) \circ (f \times \text{id}_Z)$ , it suffices (by symmetry) to show that  $f \times \text{id}_Z : X \times Z \rightarrow Y \times Z$  is a weak categorical equivalence, i.e. that the induced map

$$\tau_0[f \times \text{id}_Z, \mathcal{K}] : \tau_0[Y \times Z, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow \tau_0[X \times Z, \mathcal{K}]$$

is a bijection for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ . By [proposition A.2.11](#), it is the same to show that

$$\tau_0[f, [Z, \mathcal{K}]] : \tau_0[Y, [Z, \mathcal{K}]] \rightarrow \tau_0[X, [Z, \mathcal{K}]]$$

is a bijection for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ ; but [corollary 7.2.15](#) says that the exponential object  $[Z, \mathcal{K}]$  is a small quasicategory and  $f$  is a weak categorical equivalence, so the maps are indeed bijections. ■

**7.2.18** PROPOSITION. *Trivial Kan fibrations are weak categorical equivalences.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 1.22 in [\[TQA\]](#). □

**7.2.19** COROLLARY. *Inner anodyne extensions are weak categorical equivalences.*

*Proof.* Let  $f : Z \rightarrow W$  be an inner anodyne extension. By [corollary 7.2.14](#), the morphism  $[f, \mathcal{K}] : [W, \mathcal{K}] \rightarrow [Z, \mathcal{K}]$  is a trivial Kan fibration for all small quasicategories  $\mathcal{K}$ ; hence, by [propositions 7.2.16](#) and [7.2.18](#),  $f : Z \rightarrow W$  is a weak categorical equivalence. ■

**7.2.20** REMARK. It is *a priori* not clear whether the notion of weak categorical equivalence is stable under universe enlargement, but in fact it is. First, notice that the notion of weak categorical equivalence *between quasicategories* is stable under universe enlargement, by [lemma 7.2.4](#). Given any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in **sSet**, we may apply the functor  $R$  of [corollary 7.2.12](#) to get a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{i_X} & RX \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ Y & \xrightarrow{i_Y} & RY \end{array}$$

and [proposition 7.2.5](#) implies that the class of weak categorical equivalences has the 2-out-of-3 property, so  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak categorical equivalence if and only if  $Rf : RX \rightarrow RY$  is an equivalence of quasicategories. Since  $R$  and  $i$  are stable under universe enlargement, it follows that the property of  $f$  being a weak categorical equivalence is also stable.

**7.2.21** DEFINITION. An **isofibration** of quasicategories is a functor  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  with the following properties:

- $f$  (as a morphism of simplicial sets) is an inner fibration.
- $f$  has the right lifting property with respect to the inclusion  $\{0\} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{I2}$ .

**7.2.22** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor between small quasicategories.

- (i) If  $f$  (as a morphism of simplicial sets) has the right lifting property with respect to all monomorphisms in **sSet**, then  $f$  is an isofibration.
- (ii) If  $\mathcal{D}$  is an ordinary category, then  $f$  is an inner fibration.
- (iii) Assuming  $f$  (as a morphism of simplicial sets) is an inner fibration,  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is an isofibration if and only if  $\mathrm{Ho} f : \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{D}$  is an isofibration.

*Proof.* (i). This is an immediate consequence of the fact that isofibrations are morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to certain monomorphisms in **sSet**.

(ii). See Proposition 2.2 in [\[TQA\]](#).

(iii). See Proposition 4.5 in [\[TQA\]](#). □

**7.2.23** THEOREM (Joyal). *Let  $f : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor between small quasicategories. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$f$  is an isofibration of quasicategories.*
- (ii)  *$f$  (as a morphism of simplicial sets) has the right lifting property with respect to all monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  that are weak categorical equivalences.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 6.11 in [TQA], or combine Proposition 2.2.5.8 and Corollary 2.4.6.5 in [HTT]. □

**7.2.24** THEOREM (Joyal). *The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the weak categorical equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the monomorphisms.*
- *The fibrations are the morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to monomorphisms that are weak categorical equivalences.*

*This model structure is called the **Joyal model structure for quasicategories**, and the fibrant objects are the quasicategories.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 6.12 in [TQA] or Theorem 2.13 in [Dugger and Spivak, 2011], or combine Proposition 2.2.5.8 with Theorems 2.2.5.1 and 2.4.6.1 in [HTT]. □

**7.2.25** REMARK. Joyal’s determination principle (proposition 5.4.8) implies the Joyal model structure is stable under universe enlargement. Indeed, the claim is obvious for the class of cofibrations, the class of fibrant objects, and lemma 7.2.4 implies that the class of weak equivalences between fibrant objects is stable under universe enlargement; but this is enough data to uniquely determine a model structure.

**7.2.26** PROPOSITION. *The Joyal model structure for quasicategories is cartesian.*

*Proof.* The Joyal model structure for quasicategories is a Cisinski model structure, so we may apply proposition 6.5.12 to proposition 7.2.17 to deduce the claim. ■

**7.2.27** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{Cat}$  be the category of small categories, let  $\mathbf{Qcat}$  be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  spanned by the small quasicategories, and let  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Qcat}$  be the localisation of  $\mathbf{Qcat}$  at the weak categorical equivalences.

(i) The adjunction

$$\tau_1 \dashv N : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$$

is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the canonical model structure on  $\mathbf{Cat}$  and the Joyal model structure on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

(ii) The functors  $\tau_1$  and  $N$  preserve weak equivalences, and the induced adjunction

$$\mathrm{Ho} \tau_1 \dashv \mathrm{Ho} N : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Qcat}$$

exhibits  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Cat}$  as a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Qcat}$ .

*Proof.* (i). See Proposition 6.14 in [TQA].

(ii). Apply theorem 6.5.19, Ken Brown's lemma (5.3.6), propositions 6.5.14 and A.2.13, and the 2-functoriality of  $\mathrm{Ho}$  (corollary A.4.20). ■

**7.2.28** COROLLARY. If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an inner anodyne extension of simplicial sets, then  $\tau_1 f : \tau_1 X \rightarrow \tau_1 Y$  is an isomorphism of categories.

*Proof.* Proposition 7.2.9 says that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is bijective on vertices, so  $\tau_1 f : \tau_1 X \rightarrow \tau_1 Y$  is bijective on objects; but corollary 7.2.19 and proposition 7.2.27 imply that  $\tau_1 f : \tau_1 X \rightarrow \tau_1 Y$  is fully faithful, so we may deduce that it is an isomorphism of categories. ■

**7.2.29** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ . If  $X$  and  $Y$  are Kan complexes, the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak homotopy equivalence.
- (ii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is (part of) an intrinsic homotopy equivalence.
- (iii)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is (part of) a categorical equivalence.
- (iv)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak categorical equivalence.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). See [proposition 1.5.4](#).

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). [Lemma 1.4.4](#) and [corollary 1.4.16](#) imply that  $\tau_1[X, X]$  and  $\tau_1[Y, Y]$  are groupoids; thus, the two notions of equivalence coincide.

(iii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iv). See [lemma 7.2.4](#). ■

**7.2.30 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathbf{sSet}_{\text{Jo}}$  be the category  $\mathbf{sSet}$  equipped with the Joyal model structure, let  $\mathbf{sSet}_{\text{KQ}}$  be the category  $\mathbf{sSet}$  equipped with the Kan–Quillen model structure, let  $\mathbf{Qcat}$  and  $\mathbf{Kan}$  be the respective full subcategories of fibrant objects, and let  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Qcat}$  and  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Kan}$  be the respective localisations.*

(i) *The Kan–Quillen model structure on  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a left Bousfield localisation of the Joyal model structure on  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .<sup>[1]</sup>*

(ii) *The trivial adjunction*

$$\text{id} \dashv \text{id} : \mathbf{sSet}_{\text{KQ}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}_{\text{Jo}}$$

*is a Quillen adjunction between the Kan–Quillen model structure (on the left) and the Joyal model structure (on the right), and the right derived functor is fully faithful.*

(iii) *There is an adjunction*

$$\text{Ho } \text{Ex}^\infty \dashv \text{Ho } U : \text{Ho } \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{Qcat}$$

*where  $U : \mathbf{Kan} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Qcat}$  is the inclusion, and  $\text{Ho } U : \text{Ho } \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{Qcat}$  is fully faithful.*

*Proof.* (i). By definition, the Kan–Quillen model structure and the Joyal model structure have the same cofibrations; and [lemma 7.2.3](#) says every weak categorical equivalence is a weak homotopy equivalence, so by [proposition 6.6.12](#), the Kan–Quillen model structure is a left Bousfield localisation of the Joyal model structure.

(ii). Apply [proposition 6.6.13](#).

---

[1] See [definition 6.6.10](#).

(iii). Recalling the explicit construction afforded by [proposition 3.3.14](#) and [theorem 5.3.13](#), consider the derived adjunction:

$$\mathbf{L} \dashv \mathbf{R} : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{KQ}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{Jo}}$$

Given a simplicial set  $Y$ , we may compute  $\mathbf{R}Y$  as a fibrant replacement for  $Y$  in the Kan–Quillen model structure, regarded as an object in the Joyal model structure. In particular, for Kan complexes  $Y$ ,  $\mathbf{R}Y$  is naturally isomorphic to  $Y$  (as objects in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{Jo}}$ ); thus,  $\mathbf{R} : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Qcat}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathrm{Ho} U : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Qcat}$ . In particular,  $\mathrm{Ho} U : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Kan} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Qcat}$  is fully faithful.

On the other hand, for any simplicial set  $X$ , we may compute  $\mathbf{L}X$  as  $X$  itself, regarded as an object in the Kan–Quillen model structure. But (by [theorem 1.7.18](#))  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  is a fibrant replacement functor for the Kan–Quillen model structure, so  $\mathbf{L}X$  is naturally isomorphic to  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$ . Thus,  $\mathbf{L} : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{Jo}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{Jo}}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{Jo}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}_{\mathrm{KQ}}$ . We thus have the required adjunction. ■



## DERIVATORS

### 8.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 3.6, A.1, A.5.

The notion of derivator has a somewhat complicated history; the name and the original idea are due to Grothendieck [1983, 1991], but Heller [1988] studied essentially the same thing independently. The distinguishing characteristic of the theory of derivators is its agnosticism: a derivator is a way of studying homotopy-coherent diagrams and their limits/colimits without using any particular model for homotopical algebra.

In this section, we use the explicit universe convention, all 2-categories and 2-functors will be strict unless otherwise stated, and for simplicity, we say ‘coproduct’, ‘product’, ‘pullback’, etc. instead of ‘2-coproduct’, ‘2-product’, ‘2-pullback’ etc., i.e. we tacitly assume that these have the relevant 2-dimensional universal property in addition to the usual 1-dimensional universal property.

**8.1.1** DEFINITION. A **derivator domain** is 2-category  $\mathfrak{K}$  satisfying these axioms:

**D0.**  $\mathfrak{K}$  has an initial object 0, a terminal object 1, and tensors with the category  $\mathbb{2} = \{0 \rightarrow 1\}$ .

**D1.**  $\mathfrak{K}$  has finite coproducts and pullbacks.

**D2.**  $\mathfrak{K}$  has comma objects of the form  $(u \downarrow b)$  and  $(b \downarrow u)$  for all morphisms  $u : A \rightarrow B$  and  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$ .

A **subdomain** of a derivator domain is a 2-full 2-subcategory that is closed under constructions specified in the above axioms.

**8.1.2** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a universe. A **U-small prederivator** on  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a 2-functor  $\mathcal{D} : \mathfrak{K}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ , where  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a derivator domain and  $\mathbf{Cat}$  is the 2-category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories. A **prederivator** is a 2-functor that is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small prederivator for some universe  $\mathbf{U}$ .

We write  $\mathcal{D}^A$  for the value of  $\mathcal{D}$  at an object  $A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , and we write either  $\mathcal{D}^u$  or  $u^*$  for the functor  $\mathcal{D}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  induced by a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ . If  $f : x \rightarrow y$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{D}^B$ , then we may sometimes write  $f \upharpoonright u : x \upharpoonright u \rightarrow y \upharpoonright u$  instead of  $u^*(f) : u^*(x) \rightarrow u^*(y)$ . The **underlying category** of a prederivator  $\mathcal{D}$  is the category  $\mathcal{D}^1$ , where  $1$  is any terminal object of  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

**8.1.3** REMARK. While it is true that  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a derivator domain if and only if  $\mathfrak{K}^{\text{co}}$  is a derivator domain, the duality principle for general prederivators is somewhat subtle: because  $(-)^{\text{op}}$  is a 2-functor  $\mathbf{Cat}^{\text{co}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ , the opposite of a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}^{\text{co}}$ , which is in general not isomorphic or even equivalent to  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

One should be aware that some authors (e.g. Cisinski [2003]) define prederivators to be 2-functors  $\mathfrak{K}^{\text{coop}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ ; readers should take care to dualise results appropriately when translating between the two conventions.

**8.1.4** DEFINITION. A **semiderivator** on  $\mathfrak{K}$  is prederivator  $\mathcal{D} : \mathfrak{K}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  satisfying the following axioms:

**Der1.**  $\mathcal{D}$  sends coproducts of finite families of objects in  $\mathfrak{K}$  to products in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .

**Der2.** Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$  and let  $f : x \rightarrow y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{D}^A$ . Then,  $f$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{D}^A$  if and only if, for all morphisms  $a : 1 \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the morphism  $f \upharpoonright a : x \upharpoonright a \rightarrow y \upharpoonright a$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{D}^1$ .

**8.1.5** EXAMPLE. If  $B$  is an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$  and  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small 2-category, then the 2-functor  $\mathfrak{K}(-, B) : \mathfrak{K}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is a prederivator. We say  $\mathfrak{K}(-, B)$  is the **prederivator represented by  $B$** .

**8.1.6** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small relative category. The **prederivator** of  $\mathcal{C}$ , denoted by  $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{C})$ , is the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small prederivator on  $\mathbf{RelCat}$  (or any subdomain thereof) defined by  $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{C})^A = \text{Ho}[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}}$ .

**8.1.7** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ . If  $A$  is an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$  and  $\mathbb{C}$  is a category for which the tensor  $\mathbb{C} \odot A$  exists, then there is a canonical comparison functor  $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{C} \odot A} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{D}^A]$ .*

*Proof.* By definition, the object  $\mathbb{C} \odot A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  induces isomorphisms

$$\mathfrak{K}(\mathbb{C} \odot A, B) \cong [\mathbb{C}, \mathfrak{K}(A, B)]$$

that are 2-natural in  $B$ . Since  $\mathcal{D}$  is a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , it induces a functor  $\mathfrak{K}(A, B) \rightarrow [\mathcal{D}^B, \mathcal{D}^A]$  that is 2-natural in  $A$  and in  $B$ , so we obtain a 2-natural functor  $\mathfrak{K}(\mathbb{C} \odot A, B) \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, [\mathcal{D}^B, \mathcal{D}^A]]$  by composition; but we have 2-natural isomorphisms

$$[\mathbb{C}, [\mathcal{D}^B, \mathcal{D}^A]] \cong [\mathbb{C} \times \mathcal{D}^B, \mathcal{D}^A] \cong [\mathcal{D}^B, [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{D}^A]]$$

so, taking  $B = \mathbb{C} \odot A$ , we obtain the required functor  $\mathcal{D}^{\mathbb{C} \odot A} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{D}^A]$ .  $\blacksquare$

**8.1.8** DEFINITION. A **strong semiderivator** on  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a semiderivator that satisfies the additional axiom below:

**Der5.** For any object  $A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the canonical functor  $\mathcal{D}^{2 \odot A} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{D}^A]$  is full and essentially surjective on objects (but not necessarily faithful).

**8.1.9** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{D}$  is the prederivator represented by an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then  $\mathcal{D}$  automatically satisfies axioms Der1 and Der5; and if  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a 2-full 2-subcategory of  $\mathbf{Cat}$  with the same terminal object, then  $\mathcal{D}$  will also satisfy axiom Der2.

**8.1.10** LEMMA. *If  $C$  is a uni-fractionable category, then the canonical comparison functor  $\mathrm{Ho} [\min 2, C]_{\mathrm{h}} \rightarrow [2, \mathrm{Ho} C]$  is full and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be subcategories of  $\mathrm{weq} C$  such that  $C$  admits a three-arrow calculus with respect to  $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ , and let  $\bar{f} : X \rightarrow Y$  be any morphism in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$ . By the fundamental theorem of three-arrow calculi (3.6.9), there exist  $u : Y \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ ,  $v : \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $f : \tilde{X} \rightarrow \hat{Y}$  such that  $\bar{f} = u^{-1} \circ f \circ v^{-1}$  in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$ , i.e. such that the following diagram in  $\mathrm{Ho} C$  commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{v^{-1}} & \tilde{X} \\ \bar{f} \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ Y & \xrightarrow{u} & \hat{Y} \end{array}$$

## VIII. DERIVATORS

It immediately follows that  $\text{Ho}[\min 2, C]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow [2, C]$  is essentially surjective on objects.

It remains to be shown that  $\text{Ho}[\min 2, C]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow [2, C]$  is a full functor. Let  $x : X_1 \rightarrow X_2$  and  $y : Y_1 \rightarrow Y_2$  be morphisms in  $C$ , let  $\bar{f}_1 : X_1 \rightarrow Y_1$  and  $\bar{f}_2 : X_2 \rightarrow Y_2$  be morphisms in  $\text{Ho } C$ , and suppose we have  $\bar{f}_2 \circ x = y \circ \bar{f}_1$ ; note this constitutes a morphism in  $[2, C]$  between objects in the image of the functor  $\text{Ho}[\min 2, C]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow [2, C]$ . As before, we may choose  $u_1 : Y_1 \rightarrow \hat{Y}_1$  and  $u_2 : Y_2 \rightarrow \hat{Y}_2$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ ,  $v_1 : \tilde{X}_1 \rightarrow X_1$  and  $v_2 : \tilde{X}_2 \rightarrow X_2$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $f_1 : \tilde{X}_1 \rightarrow \hat{Y}_1$  and  $f_2 : \tilde{X}_2 \rightarrow \hat{Y}_2$  in  $C$  such that the equations below hold in  $\text{Ho } C$ :

$$\bar{f}_1 = u_1^{-1} \circ f_1 \circ v_1^{-1} \qquad \bar{f}_2 = u_2^{-1} \circ f_2 \circ v_2^{-1}$$

Using axioms A2 and A3, there exist  $u'_2 : Y_2 \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ ,  $v'_1 : W \rightarrow X_1$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $z : \hat{Y}_1 \rightarrow Z$  and  $w : W \rightarrow \tilde{X}_2$  making the following diagrams in  $C$  commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X_1 & \xleftarrow{v_1} & \tilde{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & \hat{Y}_1 & \xleftarrow{u_1} & Y_1 \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & \downarrow z & & \downarrow y \\ X_1 & \xleftarrow{v_1} & \tilde{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{z \circ f_1} & Z & \xleftarrow{u'_2} & Y_2 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X_1 & \xleftarrow{v'_1} & W & \xrightarrow{f_2 \circ w} & \hat{Y}_2 & \xleftarrow{u_2} & Y_2 \\ x \downarrow & & \downarrow w & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ X_2 & \xleftarrow{v_2} & \tilde{X}_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & \hat{Y}_2 & \xleftarrow{u_2} & Y_2 \end{array}$$

and since  $\bar{f}_2 \circ x = y \circ \bar{f}_1$ , the fundamental theorem says there exist a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X_1 & \xleftarrow{v'_1} & W & \xrightarrow{f_2 \circ w} & \hat{Y}_2 & \xleftarrow{u_2} & Y_2 \\ \parallel & & \uparrow v_3 & & \uparrow v_4 & & \parallel \\ X_1 & \xleftarrow{v_5} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_5} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_6} & Y_2 \\ \parallel & & \downarrow w_3 & & \downarrow w_4 & & \parallel \\ X_1 & \xleftarrow{v_6} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{f_6} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_6} & Y_2 \\ \parallel & & \uparrow u_3 & & \uparrow u_4 & & \parallel \\ X_1 & \xleftarrow{v_1} & \tilde{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{z \circ f_1} & Z & \xleftarrow{u'_2} & Y_2 \end{array}$$

where  $u_3, u_4, u_5, u_6$  are in  $\mathcal{U}$ ,  $v_3, v_4, v_5, v_6$  are in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $w_3, w_4$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

It is easy to verify that the following diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccc}
 X_1 & \xleftarrow{v'_1} & W & \xlongequal{\quad} & W & \xleftarrow{v_3} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{w_3} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_3} & \tilde{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & \hat{Y}_1 & \xleftarrow{u_1} & Y_1 \\
 x \downarrow & & w \downarrow & & f_2 \circ w \downarrow & & f_5 \downarrow & & f_6 \downarrow & & z \circ f_1 \downarrow & & z \downarrow & & y \downarrow \\
 X_2 & \xleftarrow{v_2} & \tilde{X}_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & \hat{Y}_2 & \xleftarrow{v_4} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{w_4} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_4} & Z & \xlongequal{\quad} & Z & \xleftarrow{u'_2} & Y_2
 \end{array}$$

and this is the required lift of  $(\bar{f}_1, \bar{f}_2)$  to  $\text{Ho}[\min 2, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}}$ , because the diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  shown below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccccccc}
 X_1 & \xlongequal{\quad} & X_1 & \xlongequal{\quad} & X_1 & \xlongequal{\quad} & X_1 & \xlongequal{\quad} & X_1 & \xleftarrow{v_1} & \tilde{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & \hat{Y}_1 & \xleftarrow{u_1} & Y_1 \\
 \parallel & & v'_1 \uparrow & & v'_1 \uparrow & & v_5 \uparrow & & v_6 \uparrow & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 X_1 & \xleftarrow{v'_1} & W & \xlongequal{\quad} & W & \xleftarrow{v_3} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{w_3} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_3} & \tilde{X}_1 & \xrightarrow{f_1} & \hat{Y}_1 & \xleftarrow{u_1} & Y_1 \\
 x \downarrow & & w \downarrow & & f_2 \circ w \downarrow & & f_5 \downarrow & & f_6 \downarrow & & z \circ f_1 \downarrow & & z \downarrow & & y \downarrow \\
 X_2 & \xleftarrow{v_2} & \tilde{X}_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & \hat{Y}_2 & \xleftarrow{v_4} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{w_4} & \bullet & \xleftarrow{u_4} & Z & \xlongequal{\quad} & Z & \xleftarrow{u'_2} & Y_2 \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & & u_5 \uparrow & & u_6 \uparrow & & u'_2 \uparrow & & u'_2 \uparrow & & \parallel \\
 X_2 & \xleftarrow{v_2} & \tilde{X}_2 & \xrightarrow{f_2} & \hat{Y}_2 & \xleftarrow{u_2} & Y_2 & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y_2 & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y_2 & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y_2 & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y_2
 \end{array}$$

We may therefore conclude that  $\text{Ho}[\min 2, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is indeed full.  $\blacksquare$

**8.1.II PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the prederivator of a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small relative category  $\mathcal{M}$ .*

- (i)  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom *Der1*.
- (ii) *Moreover, if  $\mathcal{M}$  is a (necessarily saturated) homotopical category and each homotopical functor category  $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$  admits a three-arrow calculus, then  $\mathcal{D}$  is a strong semiderivator.*

*Proof.* (i). [Proposition A.4.19](#) implies  $\mathcal{D}$  sends finite coproducts in  $\mathbf{RelCat}$  to products in  $\mathbf{Cat}^+$ , so axiom *Der1* is satisfied.

(ii). Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $\text{Ho}[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$  such that all its components are isomorphisms in  $\text{Ho} \mathcal{M}$ . The fundamental theorem of three-arrow

calculi (3.6.9) says  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  may be represented by a zigzag in  $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$  of the form below,

$$X \xleftarrow{\psi} \tilde{X} \xrightarrow{\theta} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{\varphi} Y$$

where  $\psi$  and  $\varphi$  are natural weak equivalences. Thus, if  $A$  is an object in  $\mathcal{A}$ , then the following zigzag represents an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{M}$ :

$$XA \xleftarrow{\psi_A} \tilde{X}A \xrightarrow{\theta_A} \hat{Y}A \xleftarrow{\varphi_A} YA$$

However, proposition 3.6.10 says  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category, so  $\theta_A$  must be a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{M}$  as well; hence,  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } [\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$ . This shows that  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom Der2.

Finally, observe that  $[\min 2 \times \mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}} \cong [\min 2, [\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}]_{\text{h}}$ , and the hypothesis says  $[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\text{h}}$  admits a three-arrow calculus, so we apply lemma 8.1.10 to deduce that axiom Der5 is satisfied.  $\blacksquare$

**8.1.12** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , let  $u : A \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , and let  $X$  be an object in  $\mathcal{D}^A$ .

- A **left  $\mathcal{D}$ -extension** of  $X$  along  $u$  is an initial object in the comma category  $(X \downarrow u^*)$ .
- A **right  $\mathcal{D}$ -extension** of  $X$  along  $u$  is a terminal object in the comma category  $(u^* \downarrow X)$ .
- We say  $\mathcal{D}$  has **left extensions** along  $u$  if the functor  $u^* : \mathcal{D}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  has a left adjoint, which we denote by  $u_! : \mathcal{D}^A \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^B$ .
- We say  $\mathcal{D}$  has **right extensions** along  $u$  if the functor  $u^* : \mathcal{D}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  has a right adjoint, which we denote by  $u_* : \mathcal{D}^A \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^B$ .

We may refer to left and right  $\mathcal{D}$ -extensions generically as **homotopy Kan extensions** in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

**8.1.13** REMARK. It is straightforward to check that  $\mathcal{D}$  has left (resp. right) extensions along  $u$  if and only if, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{D}^A$ , there exists a left (resp. right)  $\mathcal{D}$ -extension of  $X$  along  $u$ .

**8.1.14** EXAMPLE. If  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a 2-full 2-subcategory of  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  is the prederivator represented by an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then  $\mathcal{D}$ -extensions are exactly the same thing as Kan extensions in the usual sense.

As we saw in [theorem A.5.15](#), pointwise left (resp. right) Kan extensions can be computed as colimits (resp. limits) of certain diagrams whose shapes are comma categories. We shall shortly see that more is true.

**8.1.15** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$  and suppose we have a diagram in  $\mathfrak{K}$  of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} D & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array}$$

- We say the square is a **left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square** if  $\mathcal{D}$  has left extensions along  $u : A \rightarrow C$  and  $q : D \rightarrow B$  and the induced diagram shown below satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{v^*} & \mathcal{D}^B \\ u^* \downarrow & \theta^* \nearrow & \downarrow q^* \\ \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{p^*} & \mathcal{D}^D \end{array}$$

- We say the square is a **right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square** if  $\mathcal{D}$  has right extensions along  $v : B \rightarrow C$  and  $p : D \rightarrow A$  and the induced diagram shown below satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{u^*} & \mathcal{D}^A \\ v^* \downarrow & \nwarrow_{\theta^*} & \downarrow p^* \\ \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{q^*} & \mathcal{D}^D \end{array}$$

- A  **$\mathcal{D}$ -exact square** in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a diagram in  $\mathfrak{K}$  that is both left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact and right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact.

**8.I.16** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ . Given the following diagram in  $\mathfrak{K}$ ,

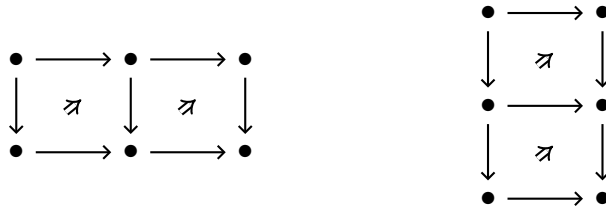
$$\begin{array}{ccc} D & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array}$$

if  $\mathcal{D}$  has left extensions along  $u : A \rightarrow C$  and  $q : D \rightarrow B$ , and  $\mathcal{D}$  has right extensions along  $v : B \rightarrow C$  and  $p : D \rightarrow A$ , then the following are equivalent:

- (i) The diagram is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.
- (ii) The diagram is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.
- (iii) The diagram is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

*Proof.* Statement (i) is just the conjunction of statements (ii) and (iii), and when the required left and right adjoints exist, [proposition A.I.13](#) implies that statements (ii) and (iii) are equivalent. ■

**8.I.17** LEMMA (Pasting exact squares). Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator, and consider pasting diagrams of the following forms in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :



In either diagram, if both squares are left (resp. right)  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact squares, then the rectangle obtained by pasting the two squares is also a left (resp. right)  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

*Proof.* Apply [lemma A.I.12](#). ■



**8.1.18** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. If  $\mathcal{D}$  is the prederivator of  $\mathbf{Set}$  restricted to the subdomain  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ , then every comma square in  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

*Proof.* Suppose we have the following comma square in  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (u \downarrow v) & \xrightarrow{q} & \mathbb{B} \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

Let  $Y : \mathbb{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a functor and let  $(Z, \varepsilon)$  be a right Kan extension of  $Y$  along  $v$ , i.e. a terminal object in the comma category  $(v^* \downarrow Y)$ . In view of [lemma A.1.11](#), to deduce the claim, it is enough to show that  $(u^*(Z), q^*(\varepsilon) \bullet \theta_Z^*)$  is a terminal object in the comma category  $(p^* \downarrow q^*(Y))$ , i.e. a right Kan extension of  $Yq$  along  $p$ ; but this was done in [lemma A.5.8](#).  $\blacksquare$

**8.1.19** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the prederivator of  $\mathcal{M}$  restricted to  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ .

- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, then every comma square in  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.
- If  $\mathcal{M}$  has limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, then every comma square in  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider a comma square in  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{D} & \xrightarrow{q} & \mathbb{B} \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{u} & \mathbb{C} \end{array}$$

If  $\mathcal{M}$  has colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, then [theorem A.5.15](#) implies that, for any functor  $X : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}$ , the left Kan extension of  $X$  along  $u$  exists and is pointwise, and same is true for the left Kan extension of  $p^*(X)$  along  $q$ . Thus, for any object  $M$  in  $\mathcal{M}$ , if  $h_M : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^+$  is the representable functor  $\mathcal{M}(-, M)$ , we may use [lemma A.1.11](#) to deduce that the following (commutative!) diagrams

satisfy the *right* Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] & \xrightarrow{[\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, h_M]} & [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+] \\
 (u^{\text{op}})^* \downarrow & & \downarrow (u^{\text{op}})^* \\
 [\mathbb{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] & \xrightarrow{[\mathbb{A}^{\text{op}}, h_M]} & [\mathbb{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+]
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] & \xrightarrow{[\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, h_M]} & [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+] \\
 (q^{\text{op}})^* \downarrow & & \downarrow (q^{\text{op}})^* \\
 [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] & \xrightarrow{[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, h_M]} & [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+]
 \end{array}$$

On the other hand, lemma 8.1.18 says the diagram below satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+] & \xrightarrow{(v^{\text{op}})^*} & [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+] \\
 (u^{\text{op}})^* \downarrow & \swarrow_{(\theta^{\text{op}})^*} & \downarrow (q^{\text{op}})^* \\
 [\mathbb{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+] & \xrightarrow{(\rho^{\text{op}})^*} & [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}^+]
 \end{array}$$

and the family  $\{h_M : \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^+ \mid M \in \text{ob } \mathcal{M}\}$  is jointly conservative, so we deduce that the right Beck–Chevalley condition for the following diagram is satisfied,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] & \xrightarrow{(v^{\text{op}})^*} & [\mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] \\
 (u^{\text{op}})^* \downarrow & \swarrow_{(\theta^{\text{op}})^*} & \downarrow (q^{\text{op}})^* \\
 [\mathbb{A}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}] & \xrightarrow{(\rho^{\text{op}})^*} & [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{M}^{\text{op}}]
 \end{array}$$

and therefore this diagram satisfies the *left* Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [\mathbb{C}, \mathcal{M}] & \xrightarrow{v^*} & [\mathbb{B}, \mathcal{M}] \\
 u^* \downarrow & \nearrow_{\theta^*} & \downarrow q^* \\
 [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] & \xrightarrow{p^*} & [\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{M}]
 \end{array}$$

We then conclude that every comma square in  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.  $\blacksquare$

**8.1.20 DEFINITION.** A  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete semiderivator is a semiderivator  $\mathcal{D}$  on  $\mathfrak{K}$  satisfying these additional axioms:

**Der3L.**  $\mathcal{D}$  has left extensions along every morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

**Der4L.** Every comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$  of the form below is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 (u \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & 1 \\
 \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow c \\
 A & \xrightarrow{u} & C
 \end{array}$$

Dually, a  **$\mathfrak{K}$ -complete  $\mathbf{U}$ -semiderivator** is one satisfying these axioms:

**Der3R.**  $\mathcal{D}$  has right extensions along every morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

**Der4R.** Every comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$  of the form below is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (c \downarrow v) & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{c} & C \end{array}$$

**8.1.21 THEOREM.** *Let  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be a universe with  $\mathbf{U} \subseteq \mathbf{U}^+$ , let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small category, and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the prederivator of  $\mathcal{M}$  restricted to  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ .*

- (i)  $\mathcal{D}$  is a strong semiderivator.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ -cocomplete (resp.  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ -complete) if and only if  $\mathcal{M}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete (resp.  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete).

*Proof.* (i). This can be shown using the same arguments as [remark 8.1.9](#).

(ii). This is the content of [proposition 8.1.19](#). ■

Finally, we come to the definition of the subject of this chapter:

**8.1.22 DEFINITION.** A **derivator** on  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a semiderivator that is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete and  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete, and a **strong derivator** is one that satisfies axiom Der5.

**8.1.23 REMARK.** The definition of ‘subdomain’ ensures that the restriction of any derivator (resp. semiderivator, complete semiderivator, cocomplete semiderivator) on  $\mathfrak{K}$  to any subdomain of  $\mathfrak{K}$  is again a derivator (resp. semiderivator, complete semiderivator, cocomplete semiderivator).

**8.1.24 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , and let  $u \dashv v : B \rightarrow A$  be an adjunction in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , with unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_A \Rightarrow v \circ u$  and counit  $\epsilon : u \circ v \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_B$ .*

- (i) *We have an adjunction  $v^* \dashv u^* : \mathcal{D}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$ , with unit  $\eta^* : \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}^A} \Rightarrow u^* \circ v^*$  and counit  $\epsilon^* : v^* \circ u^* \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}^B}$ ; in particular,  $\mathcal{D}$  has left extensions along  $u : A \rightarrow B$  and right extensions along  $v : B \rightarrow A$ .*

(ii) Consider the following commutative diagrams in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & 1 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{q} & 1 \\ v \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id} \\ A & \xrightarrow{p} & 1 \end{array}$$

The diagram on the left is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square, and the diagram on the right is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

(iii) Moreover, if  $\mathcal{D}$  has left extensions along  $p : A \rightarrow 1$  and  $q : A \rightarrow 1$ , then the diagram on the right is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square; and if  $\mathcal{D}$  has right extensions along  $p : A \rightarrow 1$  and  $q : A \rightarrow 1$ , then the diagram on the left is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

*Proof.* (i). Since  $\mathcal{D}$  is a 2-functor, it preserves the triangle identities; thus  $v^* \dashv u^*$  is indeed an adjunction. (The left and right adjoints are exchanged because  $\mathcal{D}$  is contravariant.)

(ii). The two halves of the claim are formally dual; we will prove the first version. By claim (i), we may take  $u_! = v^*$ ; but the left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$u_! p^* \Rightarrow u_! p^* \text{id}_1^* \text{id}_! \Rightarrow u_! u^* q^* \text{id}_! \Rightarrow q^* \text{id}_!$$

is then equal to  $\varepsilon^* q^* : v^* u^* q^* \Rightarrow q^*$ , and  $\varepsilon^* q^* = (q\varepsilon)^* = \text{id}$ , because 1 is a terminal object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ . Thus the left Beck–Chevalley condition is satisfied.

(iii). This is a special case of [proposition 8.1.16](#). ■

**8.1.25 THEOREM.** Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a semiderivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$  that satisfies axioms *Der3L* and *Der3R*, and let 1 be a terminal object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\mathcal{D}$  is a derivator.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom *Der4L*.
- (iii) Every comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact.
- (iv)  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom *Der4R*.
- (v) Every comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact.

*Proof.* Obviously, statement (i) implies statements (ii)–(v), and the conjunction of statements (iii) and (v) implies statement (i). We are assuming that  $\mathcal{D}$  has left and right extensions along all morphisms in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , so the equivalence of statements (iii) and (v) is just [proposition 8.1.16](#). It remains to be shown that (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii) and (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v), but the two implications are formally dual, so it is enough to prove just one; we prove the former.

Consider a general comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (u \downarrow v) & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array}$$

Let  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , and let  $c = v \circ b$ , and consider the following pasting diagrams,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (q \downarrow b) & \xrightarrow{t} & 1 \\ s \downarrow & \tau \nearrow & \downarrow b \\ (u \downarrow v) & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} (u \downarrow c) & \xrightarrow{r} & 1 \\ j \downarrow & \parallel & \downarrow b \\ (u \downarrow v) & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array}$$

where the upper square of the diagram on the left is a comma square, and the upper square of the diagram on the right is a 2-pullback square; note that the pasting lemma for comma squares implies that the outer rectangle of the diagram on the right is also a comma square.

Let  $\pi = p \circ j$  and let  $\lambda = \theta \circ \text{id}_j$ . By the universal property of comma objects, there is a unique morphism  $f : (q \downarrow b) \rightarrow (u \downarrow c)$  such that  $\pi \circ f = p \circ s$ ,  $r \circ f = t$ , and  $\lambda \circ \text{id}_f = (\text{id}_v \circ \tau) \bullet (\theta \circ \text{id}_s)$ ; and similarly there is a unique morphism  $g : (u \downarrow c) \rightarrow (q \downarrow b)$  such that  $s \circ g = j$ ,  $t \circ g = r$ , and  $\tau \circ \text{id}_g = \text{id}_{q \circ j} = \text{id}_{b \circ r}$ . Then,

$$\pi \circ (f \circ g) = p \circ s \circ g = p \circ j = \pi \qquad r \circ (f \circ g) = r$$

so  $f \circ g = \text{id}_{(u \downarrow c)}$ ; and since  $p \circ s = p \circ s \circ g \circ f$ , we may think of  $\text{id}_{p \circ s}$  as a 2-cell  $\beta : p \circ s \Rightarrow p \circ s \circ g \circ f$ , whereas  $b \circ t = q \circ s \circ g \circ f$ , so  $\tau : q \circ s \Rightarrow b \circ t$  is also a 2-cell  $\gamma : q \circ s \Rightarrow q \circ s \circ g \circ f$ , but then

$$(\theta \circ \text{id}_{s \circ g \circ f}) \bullet (\text{id}_u \circ \beta) = \theta \circ \text{id}_j \circ \text{id}_f = \lambda \circ \text{id}_f = (\text{id}_v \circ \gamma) \bullet (\theta \circ \text{id}_s)$$

## VIII. DERIVATORS

so by the 2-universal property of  $(u \downarrow v)$ , there is a unique 2-cell  $\alpha : s \Rightarrow s \circ g \circ f$  such that  $\text{id}_p \circ \alpha = \beta$  and  $\text{id}_q \circ \alpha = \gamma$ ; and furthermore,

$$(\tau \circ \text{id}_{g \circ f}) \bullet (\text{id}_q \circ \alpha) = (\text{id}_b \circ \text{id}_{t \circ g \circ f}) \bullet \tau$$

therefore there is a unique 2-cell  $\eta : \text{id}_{(q \downarrow b)} \Rightarrow g \circ f$  such that  $\text{id}_s \circ \eta = \alpha$  and  $\text{id}_t \circ \eta = \text{id}_{t \circ g \circ f}$ .

We will now show that we have an adjunction  $f \dashv g : (u \downarrow c) \rightarrow (q \downarrow b)$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ ; since  $f \circ g = \text{id}_{(u \downarrow c)}$ , it is enough to check that  $\text{id}_f \circ \eta = \text{id}_f$  and  $\eta \circ \text{id}_g = \text{id}_g$ . By construction,  $\text{id}_\pi \circ (\text{id}_f \circ \eta) = \text{id}_p \circ \text{id}_s \circ \eta = \text{id}_{p \circ s}$ , and  $\text{id}_r \circ (\text{id}_f \circ \eta) = \text{id}_t$ , so indeed  $\text{id}_f \circ \eta = \text{id}_f$ ; and  $\text{id}_s \circ (\eta \circ \text{id}_g) = \text{id}_s$  and  $\text{id}_t \circ (\eta \circ \text{id}_g) = \text{id}_t$ , so  $\eta \circ \text{id}_g = \text{id}_g$  as well. Thus, by [proposition 8.1.24](#), the commutative diagram in  $\mathfrak{K}$  shown below on the left is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (u \downarrow c) & \xrightarrow{r} & 1 \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id} \\ (q \downarrow b) & \longrightarrow & 1 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} (q \downarrow b) & \xrightarrow{t} & 1 \\ s \downarrow & \nearrow \tau & \downarrow b \\ (u \downarrow v) & \xrightarrow{q} & B \end{array}$$

and the diagram on the right is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square by hypothesis, so by the pasting lemma ([8.1.17](#)), the following commutative diagram is also a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (u \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ j \downarrow & & \downarrow b \\ (u \downarrow v) & \xrightarrow{q} & B \end{array}$$

The hypothesis also implies that this diagram satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ u^* \downarrow & \nearrow \lambda^* & \downarrow r^* \\ \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{\pi^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(u \downarrow c)} \end{array}$$

but the pasting lemma ([A.1.12](#)) says that the left Beck–Chevalley transformation  $r_! \pi^* \Rightarrow c^* u_!$  is obtained by pasting together the left Beck–Chevalley transformations of the squares in the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{v^*} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{b^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ u^* \downarrow & \nwarrow \theta^* & \downarrow q^* & \nearrow & \downarrow r^* \\ \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{p^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(u \downarrow v)} & \xrightarrow{j^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(u \downarrow c)} \end{array}$$

TODO: Justify this more carefully...

and so, allowing  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$  to vary, we deduce that every component of the left Beck–Chevalley transformation  $v^*u_i \Rightarrow q_i p^*$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{D}^1$ . We may then apply axiom Der2 to conclude that the comma square we started with is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square. ■

## 8.2 Homotopy limits and colimits

**Prerequisites.** §§3.3, 5.1, 5.10, 8.1.

**8.2.1 ¶** In this section, we use the two-universe convention.

**8.2.2 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , let  $1$  be a terminal object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , let  $\Delta_A : \mathcal{D}^1 \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  be the functor induced by the unique morphism  $A \rightarrow 1$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , and let  $X$  be an object in  $\mathcal{D}^A$ .

- A  $\mathcal{D}$ -**colimit** for  $X$  is an initial object in the comma category  $(X \downarrow \Delta_A)$ .
- A  $\mathcal{D}$ -**limit** for  $X$  is a terminal object in the comma category  $(\Delta_A \downarrow X)$ .
- We say  $\mathcal{D}$  **has colimits for diagrams of shape  $A$**  if  $\Delta_A : \mathcal{D}^1 \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  has a left adjoint, which we denote by  $\text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} : \mathcal{D}^A \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^1$ .
- We say  $\mathcal{D}$  **has limits for diagrams of shape  $A$**  if  $\Delta_A : \mathcal{D}^1 \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  has a right adjoint, which we denote by  $\text{holim}_{\leftarrow A} : \mathcal{D}^A \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^1$ .

We may refer to  $\mathcal{D}$ -colimits (resp.  $\mathcal{D}$ -limits) generically as **homotopy colimits** (resp. homotopy limits) in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

**8.2.3 REMARK.** Of course, homotopy colimits (resp. homotopy limits) in  $\mathcal{D}$  are a special case of homotopy left (resp. right) Kan extensions in  $\mathcal{D}$ ; in particular,  $\mathcal{D}$  has colimits (resp. limits) for diagrams of shape  $A$  if and only if, for every object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{D}^A$ , there exists a  $\mathcal{D}$ -colimit (resp.  $\mathcal{D}$ -limit) for  $X$ .

**8.2.4 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a moderate model category and let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the prederivator of  $\mathcal{M}$  restricted along  $\min : \mathfrak{Cat} \rightarrow \mathfrak{RelCat}$ .

- (i)  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom *Der1*.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom *Der5* at the terminal category  $\mathbb{1}$ , i.e. the canonical comparison functor  $\mathcal{D}^2 \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{D}^1]$  is full and essentially surjective on objects.
- (iii) Moreover, if  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom *CM5\**, then  $\mathcal{D}$  is a strong semiderivator.

*Proof.* (i). [Proposition A.4.19](#) implies  $\mathcal{D}$  sends finite coproducts in  $\mathfrak{RelCat}$  to products in  $\mathfrak{Cat}^+$ , and the embedding  $\min : \mathfrak{Cat} \rightarrow \mathfrak{RelCat}$  preserves finite coproducts, so axiom *Der1* is satisfied.



(ii). By [theorem 5.1.31](#),  $\mathcal{M}$  admits a three-arrow calculus, so the claim follows from [lemma 8.1.10](#).

(iii). Moreover, if  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies axiom CM5\*, then  $\mathcal{M}$  admits a *functorial* three-arrow calculus, so by [proposition 3.6.8](#), each  $[\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]_{\mathfrak{h}}$  admits a component-wise three-arrow calculus. [Theorem 5.4.1](#) implies  $\mathcal{M}$  is a saturated homotopical category, so we deduce that  $\mathcal{D}$  is a strong semiderivator using [proposition 8.1.11](#). ■

**8.2.5 THEOREM.** *If  $\mathcal{M}$  is a locally small DHK model category, then the restriction of  $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{M})$  to  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  is a strong derivator.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the restriction of  $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{M})$  to  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ . We have already shown in [proposition 8.2.4](#) that  $\mathcal{D}$  is a strong semiderivator, so it remains to be proven that  $\mathcal{D}$  is cocomplete and complete. Cocompleteness and completeness are formally dual, so it suffices to demonstrate just one half of the claim; we will show that  $\mathcal{D}$  is cocomplete.

By [theorem 5.10.16](#), for every functor  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  between small categories, the functor  $\text{Lan}_u : [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{B}, \mathcal{M}]$  is left deformable, so [theorem 3.3.24](#) implies the functor  $\text{Ho } u^* : \text{Ho } [\mathbb{B}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}]$  has a left adjoint, namely the total left derived functor  $\mathbf{L}(\text{Lan}_u) : \text{Ho } [\mathbb{A}, \mathcal{M}] \rightarrow \text{Ho } [\mathbb{B}, \mathcal{M}]$ . Thus  $\mathcal{D}$  satisfies axiom Der3L.

Finally, to conclude, we note that [proposition 5.10.18](#) is precisely the statement that axiom Der4L is satisfied. This completes the proof that  $\mathcal{D}$  is cocomplete. ■

**8.2.6 THEOREM (Cisinski).** *Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a locally small model category and let  $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{M})$  be its associated prederivator. If  $\mathcal{M}$  has colimits and limits for all small diagrams, then the restriction of  $\mathcal{D}(\mathcal{M})$  to the 2-category of small categories is a derivator.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 6.11 in [Cisinski, 2003]. □

**8.2.7 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

- A  **$\mathcal{D}$ -cofinal morphism** is a morphism  $v : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  such that the diagram below is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ v \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id} \\ A & \longrightarrow & 1 \end{array}$$

i.e. such that the left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ u^* \Rightarrow \operatorname{holim}_{\rightarrow A}$$

is a natural isomorphism.

- A  **$\mathcal{D}$ -coinitial morphism** is a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  such that the diagram below is a right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{id}} & 1 \end{array}$$

i.e. such that the right Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\operatorname{holim}_{\leftarrow B} \Rightarrow \operatorname{holim}_{\leftarrow A} \circ u^*$$

is a natural isomorphism.

**8.2.8** EXAMPLE. For any derivator  $\mathcal{D}$  on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , every right adjoint (resp. left adjoint) in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -cofinal (resp.  $\mathcal{D}$ -coinitial) morphism: this is the content of [proposition 8.1.24](#).

**8.2.9** EXAMPLE. A category  $\mathbb{A}$  has a terminal object if and only if the unique functor  $\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  has a right adjoint  $t : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$ ; thus, for any derivator on  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ , if  $\mathbb{A}$  is a small category with a terminal object, then the left Beck–Chevalley transformation  $t^* \Rightarrow \operatorname{holim}_{\rightarrow \mathbb{A}}$  is a natural isomorphism.

**8.2.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ . A  **$\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence** is a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  satisfying the following condition:

- For all  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{D}^1$ , the map  $\mathcal{D}^B(\Delta_B X, \Delta_B Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A(\Delta_A X, \Delta_A Y)$  induced by  $u^* : \mathcal{D}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A$  is a bijection.

**8.2.11** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a prederivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$  and let  $u : A \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$ . If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete semiderivator, then the following are equivalent:

- (i) The morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.

- (ii) For  $\eta^B$  the unit of  $\text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \dashv \Delta_B$  and  $\varepsilon^A$  the counit of  $\text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \dashv \Delta_A$ , the natural transformation

$$\left( \varepsilon^A \circ \text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ \Delta_B \right) \bullet \left( \text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \circ u^* \circ \eta^B \circ \Delta_B \right) : \text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \circ \Delta_A \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ \Delta_B$$

is a natural isomorphism.

- (iii) For  $\varepsilon^u$  the counit of  $u_! \dashv u^*$ , the natural transformation

$$\text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ \varepsilon^u \circ \Delta_B : \text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \circ \Delta_A \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ \Delta_B$$

is a natural isomorphism.

Dually, if  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete semiderivator, then the following are equivalent:

- (i') The morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.  
 (ii') For  $\eta^A$  the unit of  $\Delta_A \dashv \text{holim}_{\leftarrow A}$  and  $\varepsilon^B$  the counit of  $\Delta_B \dashv \text{holim}_{\leftarrow B}$ , the natural transformation

$$\left( \text{holim}_{\leftarrow A} \circ u^* \circ \varepsilon^B \circ \Delta_B \right) \bullet \left( \eta^A \circ \text{holim}_{\leftarrow B} \circ \Delta_B \right) : \text{holim}_{\leftarrow B} \circ \Delta_B \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\leftarrow A} \circ \Delta_A$$

is a natural isomorphism.

- (iii') For  $\eta^u$  the unit of  $u^* \dashv u_*$ , the natural transformation

$$\text{holim}_{\leftarrow B} \circ \eta^u \circ \Delta_B : \text{holim}_{\leftarrow B} \circ \Delta_B \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\leftarrow A} \circ \Delta_A$$

is a natural isomorphism.

*Proof.* The two sets of claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Observe that every morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  induces a commutative diagram of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^1\left(\text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \Delta_B X, Y\right) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{D}^B(\Delta_B X, \Delta_B Y) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{D}^1\left(\text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \Delta_A X, Y\right) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{D}^A(\Delta_A X, \Delta_A Y) \end{array}$$

Thus, a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  satisfies condition (ii) if and only if it is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence. By factoring the counit  $\varepsilon^A : \text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \Delta_A \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}^1}$  in terms of the counit  $\varepsilon^u : u_! u^* \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}^B}$  and using the left triangle identity, we deduce that

$$\left( \varepsilon^A \circ \text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ \Delta_B \right) \bullet \left( \text{holim}_{\rightarrow A} \circ u^* \circ \eta^B \circ \Delta_B \right) = \text{holim}_{\rightarrow B} \circ \varepsilon^u \circ \Delta_B$$

and so condition (ii) is satisfied if and only if condition (iii) is satisfied. ■

**8.2.12** COROLLARY.

- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete semiderivator, then every  $\mathcal{D}$ -cofinal morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.
- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete semiderivator, then every  $\mathcal{D}$ -coinitial morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence. ■

**8.2.13** REMARK. In particular:

- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete semiderivator, then every right adjoint morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.
- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete semiderivator, then every left adjoint morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.

**8.2.14** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain and let  $\mathcal{K}$  be the underlying 1-category of  $\mathfrak{K}$ . For any prederivator  $\mathcal{D}$  on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the category  $\mathcal{K}$  with the class of  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences in  $\mathfrak{K}$  constitute a saturated homotopical category.

*Proof.* We will assume that, for every object  $A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the category  $\mathcal{D}^A$  is locally small, but there is no loss of generality in doing so because we may always enlarge the universe.

Observe that, for all objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{D}^1$ , the functor  $\mathcal{K}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  defined by  $C \mapsto \mathcal{D}^C(\Delta_C X, \Delta_C Y)$  sends every  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence in  $\mathfrak{K}$  to a bijection. Thus, if  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  that becomes invertible in the localisation of  $\mathcal{K}$  at  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences, then for all objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{D}^1$ , the map  $\mathcal{D}^B(\Delta_B X, \Delta_B Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^A(\Delta_A X, \Delta_A Y)$  induced by  $u$  must be a bijection, so  $u$  must be a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence. ■

**8.2.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a semiderivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

- Given a commutative triangle in  $\mathfrak{K}$  as below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \\ & \searrow p & \swarrow q \\ & C & \end{array}$$

if  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete and, for every morphism  $c : 1 \rightarrow C$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the morphism  $u_c : (p \downarrow c) \rightarrow (q \downarrow c)$  induced by  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence, then  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is itself a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.

- Given a commutative triangle in  $\mathfrak{K}$  as below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \\ & \searrow p & \swarrow q \\ & C & \end{array}$$

if  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete and, for every morphism  $c : 1 \rightarrow C$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the morphism  ${}^c u : (c \downarrow p) \rightarrow (c \downarrow q)$  induced by  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence, then  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is itself a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.

*Proof.* We will use the characterisation of  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences afforded by [proposition 8.2.II](#). We wish to show that the natural transformation defined by the following pasting diagram is a natural isomorphism:

$$(I) \quad \begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{\text{holim}} & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \searrow \wr & \searrow \Delta & \searrow \wr & \searrow \Delta & \searrow \text{id} \\ & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{u^*} & \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{\text{holim}} \mathcal{D}^1 \end{array}$$

By factoring  $A \rightarrow 1$  and  $B \rightarrow 1$  through  $C \rightarrow 1$  and applying the left triangle identity, we see that it is enough to show that the natural transformation defined below is a natural isomorphism:

$$(2) \quad \begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{q_!} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathcal{D}^C \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \searrow \wr & \searrow q^* & \searrow \wr & \searrow p^* & \searrow \text{id} \\ & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{u^*} & \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{p_!} \mathcal{D}^C \end{array}$$

Axiom Der4L says that the following comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (p \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ r \downarrow & \wr & \downarrow c \\ A & \xrightarrow{p} & C \end{array}$$

i.e. the left Beck–Chevalley transformation it induces is a natural isomorphism:

$$(3) \quad \begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{p_!} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 & & \\ & \searrow \wr & \searrow p^* & \searrow \wr & \searrow \Delta & \searrow \text{id} & \\ & \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{r^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(p \downarrow c)} & \xrightarrow{\text{holim}} & \mathcal{D}^1 \end{array}$$

## VIII. DERIVATORS

Similarly, the comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$  shown below

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (q \downarrow c) & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ s \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow c \\ B & \xrightarrow{q} & C \end{array}$$

induces a left Beck–Chevalley transformation that is a natural isomorphism:

$$(4) \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{q_!} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow q^* & \nearrow & \downarrow \Delta \\ & & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{s^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(q \downarrow c)} \xrightarrow{\text{holim}} \mathcal{D}^1 \end{array}$$

Our hypothesis is that unique morphism  $u_c : (p \downarrow c) \rightarrow (q \downarrow c)$  making the following diagram commute is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (p \downarrow c) & \xrightarrow{u_c} & (q \downarrow c) \\ r \downarrow & & \downarrow s \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \end{array}$$

i.e. the natural transformation defined below is a natural isomorphism:

$$(5) \quad \begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^{(q \downarrow c)} & \xrightarrow{\text{holim}} & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow \Delta & \nearrow & \downarrow \Delta & \nearrow \text{id} & \downarrow \Delta \\ & & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^{(q \downarrow c)} & \xrightarrow{(u_c)^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(p \downarrow c)} \xrightarrow{\text{holim}} \mathcal{D}^1 \end{array}$$

However, the natural transformations defined by the following pasting diagrams are equal,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ q^* \downarrow & \cong & \downarrow p^* & \nearrow & \downarrow \Delta \\ \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{u^*} & \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{r^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(p \downarrow c)} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\ q^* \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow \Delta & \cong & \downarrow \Delta \\ \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{s^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(q \downarrow c)} & \xrightarrow{(u_c)^*} & \mathcal{D}^{(p \downarrow c)} \end{array}$$

so, the natural transformation obtained by pasting together (2) and (3) is equal to the natural transformation obtained by pasting together (4) and (5); but the latter

is a natural isomorphism, so we deduce that the former is a natural isomorphism as well. Thus,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{q_!} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1 \\
 & \searrow \text{id} & & \searrow \theta & \downarrow q^* & \Downarrow & \downarrow p^* & \nearrow \text{id} & \searrow \text{id} \\
 & & \mathcal{D}^1 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{u^*} & \mathcal{D}^A & \xrightarrow{p_!} & \mathcal{D}^C & \xrightarrow{c^*} & \mathcal{D}^1
 \end{array}$$

defines a natural isomorphism. Since  $c : 1 \rightarrow C$  was arbitrary, we may use axiom Der2 to deduce that (I) itself defines a natural isomorphism, as claimed. ■

**8.2.16 LEMMA.** *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a semiderivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ . Consider a diagram of the following form in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 E & \longrightarrow & 1 \\
 \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow b \\
 1 & \xrightarrow{a} & C
 \end{array}$$

*If  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete (resp.  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete), then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The diagram above is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square (resp. right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square).*
- (ii) *The morphism  $w : E \rightarrow (a \downarrow b)$  induced by the universal property of  $(a \downarrow b)$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By definition, the diagram above is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square if and only if the left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\text{holim}_{\longrightarrow_E} \Delta_E \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\longrightarrow_E} \Delta_E a^* a_! \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\longrightarrow_E} \Delta_E b^* a_! \Rightarrow b^* a_!$$

is a natural isomorphism. However,  $\Delta_E = w^* \Delta_{(a \downarrow b)}$ , and axiom Der4L says the left Beck–Chevalley transformation

$$\text{holim}_{\longrightarrow_{(a \downarrow b)}} \Delta_{(a \downarrow b)} \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\longrightarrow_{(a \downarrow b)}} \Delta_{(a \downarrow b)} a^* a_! \Rightarrow \text{holim}_{\longrightarrow_{(a \downarrow b)}} \Delta_{(a \downarrow b)} b^* a_! \Rightarrow b^* a_!$$

is a natural isomorphism, so using the counit of the adjunction  $w_! \dashv w^*$ , [proposition 8.2.11](#), and the 2-out-of-3 property of natural isomorphisms, we may deduce that conditions (i) and (ii) are equivalent. ■

**8.2.17** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a semiderivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ . Consider the following diagram in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :

$$(□) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} D & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array}$$

If  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete (resp.  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete), then the following are equivalent:

- (i) Diagram  $(□)$  is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square (resp. right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square).
- (ii) For all morphisms  $a : 1 \rightarrow A$  and  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$ , for all diagrams of the form below in  $\mathfrak{K}$ ,

$$(*) \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} E & \longrightarrow & (q \downarrow b) & \longrightarrow & 1 \\ \downarrow & \text{p.b.} & \downarrow & \beta \nearrow & \downarrow b \\ (a \downarrow p) & \longrightarrow & D & \xrightarrow{q} & B \\ \downarrow & \alpha \nearrow & \downarrow p & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow v \\ 1 & \xrightarrow{a} & A & \xrightarrow{u} & C \end{array}$$

where the top-left square is a pullback square and the squares inhabited by  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are comma squares, the outer square is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square (resp. right  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square).

- (iii) For all diagrams of the form  $(*)$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the morphism  $E \rightarrow (u \circ a \downarrow v \circ b)$  induced by the universal property of  $(u \circ a \downarrow v \circ b)$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). The pasting lemma for comma diagrams implies the left rect-angle of  $(*)$  is a comma diagram, and we may apply [lemma 8.1.17](#) and [theorem 8.1.25](#) to deduce that the outer square of  $(*)$  is a left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact square.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). This is a special case of the previous lemma.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Using axioms Der2 and Der4L as well as the 2-out-of-3 property for natural isomorphisms, we may deduce that diagram  $(□)$  is left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact if every diagram of the form  $(*)$  is left  $\mathcal{D}$ -exact. ■



**8.2.18** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be a semiderivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ . If  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete, then the following are equivalent for a morphism  $v : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :*

- (i) *The morphism  $v : B \rightarrow A$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -cofinal morphism.*
- (ii) *For every morphism  $a : 1 \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the unique morphism  $(a \downarrow v) \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence.*

*Dually, if  $\mathcal{D}$  is  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete, then the following are equivalent for a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :*

- (i) *The morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -coinital morphism.*
- (ii) *For every morphism  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the unique morphism  $(u \downarrow b) \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence. ■*

## 8.3 Basic localisers

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 8.1.

**8.3.1** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain and let  $\mathcal{K}$  be its underlying 1-category. A **basic right localiser** (resp. **basic left localiser**) for  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a subcategory  $\mathcal{W}$  of  $\mathcal{K}$  satisfying these axioms:

**LF1.** Every identity morphism in  $\mathcal{K}$  is also in  $\mathcal{W}$ ,  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property in  $\mathcal{K}$ , and  $\mathcal{W}$  is closed under retracts in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

**LF2.** For any object  $A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , if the unique morphism  $A \rightarrow 1$  has a right adjoint (resp. left adjoint), then  $A \rightarrow 1$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

**LF3.** Given a commutative triangle in  $\mathfrak{K}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \\ & \searrow p & \swarrow q \\ & C & \end{array}$$

if, for every morphism  $c : 1 \rightarrow C$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the morphism  $u_c : (p \downarrow c) \rightarrow (q \downarrow c)$  (resp.  ${}^c u : (c \downarrow p) \rightarrow (c \downarrow q)$ ) induced by  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then  $u : A \rightarrow B$  itself is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

A **basic localiser** for  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a subcategory of  $\mathcal{K}$  that is both a basic left localiser and a basic right localiser.

**8.3.2** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be either a basic left localiser or a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ . A  **$\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence** is a morphism that is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . A  **$\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical object** is an object  $A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  such that the unique morphism  $A \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.

**8.3.3** ¶ The above terminology is non-standard: it is more conventional to refer to basic right localisers as ‘basic localisers’ and ignore basic left localisers; cf. [Cisinski, 2004]. However, this is unproblematic in the case where  $\mathfrak{K} = \mathfrak{Cat}$ : one can show that all three notions coincide then. The chirality of the above terminology is chosen to agree with the chirality of the induced asphericity structures (cf. [Maltsiniotis, 2005]).

**8.3.4** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain.

- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -cocomplete semiderivator, then the class of  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences is a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ .
- If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a  $\mathfrak{K}$ -complete semiderivator, then the class of  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences is a basic left localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Proposition 8.2.14 implies that the class of  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences satisfies axiom LF1, and proposition 8.2.15 says that axiom LF3 is satisfied. Axiom LF2 remains to be verified, so suppose  $A$  is an object in  $\mathfrak{K}$  such that the unique morphism  $p : A \rightarrow 1$  has a right adjoint, say  $t : 1 \rightarrow A$ . By remark 8.2.13,  $t$  is a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence; but  $p \circ t = \text{id}_1$  since  $1$  is a terminal object in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , so we may deduce that  $p : A \rightarrow 1$  is also a  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalence by using axiom LF1. ■

**8.3.5** COROLLARY. If  $\mathcal{D}$  is a derivator on  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then the class of  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences is a basic localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ . ■

**8.3.6** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be the prederivator of **Set** (restricted to **Cat**). By theorem 8.1.21,  $\mathcal{D}$  is a derivator, and it is straightforward to verify that the  $\mathcal{D}$ -equivalences are precisely the functors  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  that induce bijections  $\pi_0 u : \pi_0 \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \pi_0 \mathbb{B}$ , where  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the connected components functor.<sup>[1]</sup>

**8.3.7** REMARK. It is not hard to see that the intersection of any family of basic localisers (resp. basic left localisers, basic right localisers) for a derivator domain  $\mathfrak{K}$  is automatically a basic localiser (resp. basic left localiser, basic right localiser) for  $\mathfrak{K}$ ; thus, there is a unique minimal basic localiser (resp. basic left localiser, basic right localiser) for  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

**8.3.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be either a basic left localiser or a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ .

- A **right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism** is a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  such that, for all morphisms  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the unique morphism  $(u \downarrow b) \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.
- A **left  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism** is a morphism  $v : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  such that, for all morphisms  $a : 1 \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$ , the unique morphism  $(a \downarrow v) \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.

[1] Recall proposition A.2.15.

**8.3.9** REMARK. In view of [corollary 8.2.18](#), one might also call right (resp. left)  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphisms  $\mathcal{W}$ -**cointial** (resp.  $\mathcal{W}$ -**cofinal**).

**8.3.10** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain.*

- *If a morphism  $u : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  has a right adjoint, then for any morphism  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$ , the unique morphism  $(u \downarrow b) \rightarrow 1$  has a right adjoint.*
- *If a morphism  $v : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathfrak{K}$  has a left adjoint, then for any morphism  $a : 1 \rightarrow A$ , the unique morphism  $(a \downarrow v) \rightarrow 1$  has a left adjoint.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose the following diagram is a comma square in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (u \downarrow b) & \xrightarrow{q} & 1 \\ p \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow b \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \end{array}$$

Let  $v : B \rightarrow A$  be a right adjoint of  $u : A \rightarrow B$ , say with counit  $\varepsilon : u \circ v \Rightarrow \text{id}_B$ . Consider the morphism  $t : 1 \rightarrow (u \downarrow b)$  induced by the diagram in  $\mathfrak{K}$  shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 1 & \xrightarrow{v \circ b} & 1 \\ \text{id} \downarrow & \varepsilon \circ b \nearrow & \downarrow b \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \end{array}$$

Via the 2-dimensional universal property of  $(u \downarrow b)$ ,  $\theta : u \circ p \Rightarrow b \circ q$  induces a 2-cell  $\eta : \text{id}_{(u \downarrow b)} \Rightarrow t \circ q$ , and using the 2-dimensional Yoneda lemma, it is straightforward to check that  $\eta$  is the unit of an adjunction  $q \dashv t : 1 \rightarrow (u \downarrow b)$ . Thus, the unique morphism  $(u \downarrow b) \rightarrow 1$  indeed has a right adjoint.  $\blacksquare$

**8.3.11** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain.*

- *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then every morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  that has a right adjoint is a right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism.*
- *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic left localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then every morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  that has a left adjoint is a left  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism.*  $\blacksquare$

**8.3.12** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathfrak{K}$  be a derivator domain.*

- *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then every right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence; in particular every morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  that has a right adjoint is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*
- *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic left localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then every left  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence; in particular every morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$  that has a left adjoint is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose  $u : A \rightarrow B$  is a right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical morphism. Consider the following commutative triangle in  $\mathfrak{K}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{u} & B \\ & \searrow u & \swarrow \text{id} \\ & B & \end{array}$$

Let  $b : 1 \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathfrak{K}$ . Since the unique morphism  $(u \downarrow b) \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence, axioms LF1 and LF2 and [lemma 8.3.10](#) imply the induced morphism  $u_b : (u \downarrow b) \rightarrow (\text{id}_B \downarrow b)$  is also a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence. We may then apply axiom LF3 to deduce that  $u : A \rightarrow B$  itself is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**8.3.13** LEMMA. *Let  $A$  be an object in a derivator domain  $\mathfrak{K}$ . If  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic left or right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then the morphism  $p : 2 \odot A \rightarrow 1 \odot A \cong A$  induced by the unique functor  $2 \rightarrow 1$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* The unique functor  $2 \rightarrow 1$  has both a left adjoint and a right adjoint, so the induced morphism  $p : 2 \odot A \rightarrow A$  has both a left adjoint and a right adjoint. [Proposition 8.3.12](#) then implies that it is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**8.3.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $u_0, u_1 : A \rightarrow B$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in a derivator domain  $\mathfrak{K}$  and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be either a basic left localiser or a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ . If there exists a 2-cell  $\alpha : u_0 \Rightarrow u_1$ , then the following are equivalent:*

- The morphism  $u_0 : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*
- The morphism  $u_1 : A \rightarrow B$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $i_0, i_1 : A \rightarrow \mathbb{2} \odot A$  be the morphisms induced by the left and right adjoints of the unique functor  $\mathbb{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$ ; note that functoriality yields  $p \circ i_0 = \text{id}_A = p \circ i_1$ . The previous lemma says that  $p$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence, so we may then use axiom LF1 to deduce that  $i_0$  and  $i_1$  are both  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalences.

By definition, there is a bijection

$$\mathcal{K}(\mathbb{2} \odot A, B) \cong \text{Fun}(\mathbb{2}, \mathfrak{K}(A, B))$$

that is natural in  $B$ ; thus, the 2-cell  $\alpha : u_0 \Rightarrow u_1$  corresponds to a morphism  $h : \mathbb{2} \odot A \rightarrow B$  such that  $h \circ i_0 = u_0$  and  $h \circ i_1 = u_1$ . Axiom LF1 then implies that  $u_0$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence if and only if  $u_1$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence. ■

**8.3.15** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic left or right localiser for a derivator domain  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then every left or right adjoint in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* One half of the claim was proved in [proposition 8.3.12](#); it now suffices to show that, if  $\mathcal{W}$  is a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{K}$ , then every right adjoint in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence. We already know that every left adjoint in  $\mathfrak{K}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence, so axiom LF1 and the above proposition together imply that right adjoints are also  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalences. ■

## 8.4 The minimal basic localiser

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.5, 1.9, 1.11, 8.1, 8.2, 8.3.

In this section, we follow [Cisinski, 2004, §2.2].

**8.4.1** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a basic left or right localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ . For any functor  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$ , the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The functor  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*
- (ii) *The functor  $u^{\text{op}} : \mathbb{A}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}^{\text{op}}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 1.2.6 in [Cisinski, 2004]. □

**8.4.2** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subcategory of  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{W}$  is a basic localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ .*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{W}$  is a basic right localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ .*
- (iii)  *$\mathcal{W}$  is a basic left localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ .* ■

**8.4.3** ¶ Throughout this section, let  $\mathcal{W}$  be any basic localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ . We write  $\mathcal{W}_{\infty}$  for the class of weak homotopy equivalences of categories.

**8.4.4** THEOREM.  $\mathcal{W}_{\infty}$  is a basic localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$ .

*Proof.* By lemma 1.11.3 (resp. remark 1.11.10, theorem 1.11.21),  $\mathcal{W}_{\infty}$  satisfies axiom LF1 (resp. LF2, LF3). ■

**8.4.5** LEMMA. *If  $\mathbb{A}$  is a small category with a terminal object, then the category  $\Delta(\mathbb{A})$  is  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical.*

*Proof.* Straightforward. (This is Lemme 2.2.2 in [Cisinski, 2004].) □

**8.4.6** LEMMA (Grothendieck). *For all small categories  $\mathbb{A}$ , the right projection  $\pi_R : \Delta(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical; in particular, it is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* Let  $a$  be an object in  $\mathbb{A}$ . Lemma 5.10.12 says that the canonical comparison functor  $\Delta(\mathbb{A}_{/a}) \rightarrow (\pi_R \downarrow a)$  is an isomorphism, and lemma 8.4.5 implies  $\Delta(\mathbb{A}_{/a})$  is  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical, so the induced functor  $(\pi_R \downarrow a) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_{/a}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence. Thus,  $\pi_R : \Delta(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow \mathbb{A}$  is right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical. ■

**8.4.7** COROLLARY. *A functor  $u : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{B}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence if and only if the functor  $\Delta(u) : \Delta(\mathbb{A}) \rightarrow \Delta(\mathbb{B})$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* Use the naturality of  $\pi_R$  and axiom LF1. ■

**8.4.8** ¶ Now, let  $\mathcal{W}_\Delta$  be the subcategory of  $\mathbf{sSet}$  consisting of those morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  such that  $\Delta(f) : \Delta(X) \rightarrow \Delta(Y)$  are  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalences.

**8.4.9** PROPOSITION. *For all simplicial sets  $X$  and all natural numbers  $n$ , the projection  $\pi : X \times \Delta^n \rightarrow X$  is a  $\mathcal{W}_\Delta$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* Since  $\Delta^m \times \Delta^n \cong N([m] \times [n])$ , lemma 8.4.5 implies  $\Delta(\Delta^m \times \Delta^n)$  is  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical. Now, let  $x$  be an  $m$ -simplex of  $X$ , and consider the comma category  $(\Delta(\pi) \downarrow x)$ . It is not hard to see that  $(\Delta(\pi) \downarrow x)$  is isomorphic to  $\Delta(\Delta^m \times \Delta^n)$ , and so the induced functor  $(\Delta(\pi) \downarrow x) \rightarrow \Delta(X)_{/x}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence. Thus,  $\Delta(\pi) : \Delta(X \times \Delta^n) \rightarrow \Delta(X)$  is right  $\mathcal{W}$ -aspherical, and in particular  $\pi : X \times \Delta^n \rightarrow X$  is a  $\mathcal{W}_\Delta$ -equivalence. ■

**8.4.10** COROLLARY. *Every trivial Kan fibration is a  $\mathcal{W}_\Delta$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* Apply proposition 1.5.21. ■

**8.4.11** PROPOSITION. *Every trivial cofibration in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  is a  $\mathcal{W}_\Delta$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 2.2.9 in [Cisinski, 2004]. □

**8.4.12** THEOREM (Cisinski). *Any  $\mathcal{W}_\infty$ -equivalence is also a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence.*

*Proof.* Propositions 1.4.7 and 1.5.12 together imply that every weak homotopy equivalence in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  can be factored as a trivial cofibration followed by a trivial Kan fibration, so applying corollaries 8.4.7 and 8.4.10 and proposition 8.4.11, we deduce that every  $\mathcal{W}_\infty$ -equivalence is a  $\mathcal{W}$ -equivalence. ■

We thus obtain a proof of Grothendieck's conjecture ([1983, §81]):

**8.4.13** COROLLARY. *The minimal basic localiser for  $\mathfrak{Cat}$  is  $\mathcal{W}_\infty$ .* ■



## HOMOLOGICAL ALGEBRA

*To the memory of Alexander Grothendieck  
(28 March 1928 – 13 November 2014)*

### 9.1 Basics

**Prerequisites.** §§A.7, A.8.

**9.1.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a pointed category.

- A **chain complex**  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a (possibly finite) sequence of objects and morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  indexed by consecutive integers, say

$$\cdots \longrightarrow C_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} C_n \xrightarrow{\partial_n} C_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

such that  $\partial_n \circ \partial_{n+1} = 0$  for all  $n$ . The **differentials** (or **boundary operators**) of this chain complex are the morphisms  $\partial_n$ ; we often omit the subscript  $n$  when it is clear from context.

- A **cochain complex**  $C^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a (possibly finite) sequence of objects and morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  indexed by consecutive integers, say

$$\cdots \longrightarrow C^{n-1} \xrightarrow{\partial^n} C^n \xrightarrow{\partial^{n+1}} C^{n+1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

such that  $\partial^{n+1} \circ \partial^n = 0$  for all  $n$ . The **differentials** (or **coboundary operators**) of this cochain complex are the morphisms  $\partial^n$ ; we often omit the superscript  $n$  when it is clear from context.

By default, chain complexes and cochain complexes will be **unbounded**, i.e. infinite in both directions.

**9.I.2** REMARK. Given a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , we can define a cochain complex  $C^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  by reversing the indices, i.e.

$$C^n = C_{-n} \qquad \partial^n = \partial_{-(n-1)}$$

and vice versa. In other words, up to reindexing, chain complexes are the same as cochain complexes. We use the term **complex** to refer to both chain complexes and cochain complexes.

**9.I.3** REMARK. On the other hand, chain complexes in  $\mathcal{C}$  are the same as cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}$ . Thus, up to reindexing, the notion of (co)chain complex is self-dual.

**9.I.4** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- Let  $C_\bullet$  be a (possibly finite) chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  and let  $n$  be an integer. Assuming  $C_{n-1}$ ,  $C_n$ , and  $C_{n+1}$  are defined, we say  $C_\bullet$  is **exact at  $C_n$**  if  $\text{im } \partial_{n+1} = \ker \partial_n$  (as subobjects of  $C_n$ ).
- An **exact sequence** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a (possibly finite) cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  that is exact at every interior vertex.
- A **left exact sequence** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is an exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below:

$$0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow C$$

- A **right exact sequence** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is an exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below:

$$A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$

- A **short exact sequence** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is an exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below:

$$0 \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow 0$$

**9.I.5** REMARK. Using [theorem A.8.37](#), we can often reduce questions of exactness in an abelian category  $\mathcal{A}$  to the special case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Ab}$ .

**9.1.6** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

(i) A diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C$$

is a left exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  if and only if  $f = \ker g$ .

(ii) A diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0$$

is a right exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  if and only if  $g = \operatorname{coker} f$ .

(iii) A diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0$$

is a short exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  if and only if  $f = \ker g$  and  $g = \operatorname{coker} f$ .

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). Use lemmas [A.8.28](#) and [A.8.30](#) and [proposition A.8.34](#).

(iii). Combine (i) and (ii). ■

**9.1.7** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a short exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$0 \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C \longrightarrow 0$$

The following are equivalent:

- (i) The morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a split monomorphism.
- (ii) The morphism  $g : B \rightarrow C$  is a split epimorphism.
- (iii) There exist morphisms  $r : B \rightarrow A$  and  $s : C \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfying the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} r \circ f &= \operatorname{id}_A & r \circ s &= 0 \\ g \circ f &= 0 & g \circ s &= \operatorname{id}_C \\ f \circ r + s \circ g &= \operatorname{id}_B \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Suppose  $r \circ f = \text{id}_A$ . Then,  $(\text{id}_B - f \circ r) \circ f = 0$ ; but by lemma 9.1.6,  $g = \text{coker } f$ , so there is a unique morphism  $s : C \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $s \circ g = \text{id}_B - f \circ r$ . Moreover,

$$g \circ s \circ g = g \circ (\text{id}_B - f \circ r) = g$$

and  $g : B \rightarrow C$  is an epimorphism, so  $g \circ s = \text{id}_B$ , as required.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Suppose  $g \circ s = \text{id}_B$ . Then,  $g \circ (\text{id}_B - s \circ g) = 0$ , and  $f = \ker g$ , so there is a unique morphism  $r : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $f \circ r = \text{id}_B - s \circ g$ . Moreover,

$$f \circ r \circ f = (\text{id}_B - s \circ g) \circ f = f$$

and  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a monomorphism, so  $r \circ f = \text{id}_A$ . Furthermore,  $f \circ r + s \circ g = \text{id}_B$  by construction, and

$$r \circ s = r \circ (f \circ r + s \circ g) \circ s = r \circ f \circ r \circ s + r \circ s \circ g \circ s = r \circ s + r \circ s$$

so  $r \circ s = 0$ , as required.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Immediate. ■

**9.1.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $n$  be an integer.

- Consider a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , say:

$$\cdots \longrightarrow C_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} C_n \xrightarrow{\partial_n} C_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

The  **$n$ -th boundary object** is  $B_n(C) = \text{Im } \partial_{n+1}$  and the  **$n$ -th cycle object** is  $Z_n(C) = \text{Ker } \partial_n$ .

- Consider a cochain complex  $C^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , say:

$$\cdots \longrightarrow C^{n-1} \xrightarrow{\partial^n} C^n \xrightarrow{\partial^{n+1}} C^{n+1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

The  **$n$ -th coboundary object** is  $B^n(C) = \text{Im } \partial^n$  and the  **$n$ -th cocycle object** is  $Z^n(C) = \text{Ker } \partial^{n+1}$ .

**9.1.9** REMARK. Since  $\partial \circ \partial = 0$ , the inclusion  $B_n(C) \rightarrowtail C_n$  (resp.  $B^n(C) \rightarrowtail C^n$ ) factors through the inclusion  $Z_n(C) \rightarrowtail C_n$  (resp.  $Z^n(C) \rightarrowtail C^n$ ).

**9.1.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $n$  be an integer.

- The  **$n$ -th homology object** of a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the object in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined below:

$$H_n(C) = \text{Coker}(B_n(C) \rightarrowtail Z_n(C))$$

- The  **$n$ -th cohomology object** of a cochain complex  $C^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the object in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined below:

$$H^n(C) = \text{Coker}(B^n(C) \rightarrowtail Z^n(C))$$

**9.1.11** REMARK. Despite the names, the notion of boundary (resp. cycle, homology) object is *not* dual to the notion of coboundary (resp. cocycle, cohomology) object! Rather, in view of [remark 9.1.2](#), they are the *same* notion up to reindexing.

**9.1.12** PROPOSITION. Consider a diagram of the form below in an abelian category  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$A \xrightarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} C$$

Assuming  $g \circ f = 0$ , there is a natural induced morphism

$$\text{Coker}(\text{Im } f \rightarrowtail \text{Ker } g) \rightarrow \text{Ker}(\text{Coker } f \twoheadrightarrow \text{Coim } g)$$

and it is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

*Proof.* See Lemma 4.5.1 in [Borceux and Bourn, [2004](#)]. □

**9.1.13** REMARK. In other words, [proposition 9.1.12](#) says that the  $n$ -th homology object of a chain complex in an abelian category  $\mathcal{A}$  can be identified with the  $n$ -th cohomology object of the corresponding cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}$ . Thus we conclude that homology and cohomology are dual notions, *despite* their definitions.

**9.1.14** REMARK. In particular, a diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  is an exact sequence if and only if the corresponding diagram in  $\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}$  is an exact sequence.

**9.1.15** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- Let  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  be unbounded chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . A **morphism of chain complexes** (or **chain map**)  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is an integer-indexed sequence of morphisms  $f_n : A_n \rightarrow B_n$  such that the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_n & \xrightarrow{f_n} & B_n \\ \partial_n \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial_n \\ A_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f_{n-1}} & B_{n-1} \end{array}$$

commute for every integer  $n$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Ch}_*(\mathcal{A})$  for the category of unbounded chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

- Let  $A^\bullet$  and  $B^\bullet$  be unbounded cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . A **morphism of cochain complexes** (or **cochain map**)  $f^\bullet : A^\bullet \rightarrow B^\bullet$  is an integer-indexed sequence of morphisms  $f^n : A^n \rightarrow B^n$  such that the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A^{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f^{n-1}} & B^{n-1} \\ \partial^n \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial^n \\ A^n & \xrightarrow{f^n} & B^n \end{array}$$

commute for every integer  $n$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Ch}^*(\mathcal{A})$  for the category of unbounded cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**9.1.16** REMARK. In view of [remark 9.1.2](#), we have the following natural isomorphism:

$$\mathbf{Ch}_*(\mathcal{A}) \cong \mathbf{Ch}^*(\mathcal{A})$$

As such, there is no danger in writing  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  for both. On the other hand,

$$\mathbf{Ch}_*(\mathcal{A})^{\text{op}} \cong \mathbf{Ch}^*(\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}})$$

so  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})^{\text{op}} \cong \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}})$ .

**9.1.17** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- (i)  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  has limits and colimits for finite diagrams, which can be computed degreewise in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- (ii)  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category.
- (iii) For each integer  $n$ , we have additive functors  $B_n, Z_n, H_n : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  sending chain complexes  $C_\bullet$  to their  $n$ -th boundary, cycle, and homology objects (respectively).

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**9.1.18** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- (i) If  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB3, then  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  also satisfies axiom AB3, and colimits for small diagrams in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  can be computed degreewise in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- (ii) If  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB4, then the functors  $B_n, Z_n, H_n : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserve coproducts for small families.
- (iii) If  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5, then the functors  $B_n, Z_n, H_n : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserve colimits for small filtered diagrams.

*Dually:*

- (i') If  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB3\*, then  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  also satisfies axiom AB3\*, and limits for small diagrams in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  can be computed degreewise in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- (ii') If  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB4\*, then the functors  $B^n, Z^n, H^n : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserve products for small families.
- (iii') If  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5\*, then the functors  $B^n, Z^n, H^n : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserve limits for cofiltered diagrams.

*Proof.* (i). Straightforward.

(ii). Let  $n$  be an integer and let  $I$  be a set. By [proposition A.8.35](#), the functor  $\bigoplus : [I, \mathcal{A}] \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserves finite limits, and it always preserves colimits, so it follows that  $\bigoplus$  commutes with the construction of  $B_n, Z_n$ , and  $H_n$ .

(iii). Let  $n$  be an integer and let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small filtered category. The same argument shows that  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{A}] \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserves finite limits as well as all colimits, so  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}}$  indeed commutes with the construction of  $B_n, Z_n$ , and  $H_n$ . ■

**9.1.19** LEMMA (Five lemma). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} A_1 & \longrightarrow & B_1 & \longrightarrow & C_1 & \longrightarrow & D_1 & \longrightarrow & E_1 \\ a \downarrow & & b \downarrow & & \downarrow c & & \downarrow d & & \downarrow e \\ A_0 & \longrightarrow & B_0 & \longrightarrow & C_0 & \longrightarrow & D_0 & \longrightarrow & E_0 \end{array}$$

where the rows are exact sequences. If  $a$  is a monomorphism,  $b$  and  $d$  are isomorphisms, and  $e$  is an epimorphism, then  $c$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* See Lemma 4 in [CWM, Ch. VIII, §4]. □

**9.1.20** LEMMA (Long exact sequence in homology). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. For each exact sequence in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , say*

$$0 \longrightarrow A_\bullet \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} B_\bullet \xrightarrow{g_\bullet} C_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$

we have a natural long exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below:

$$\cdots \longrightarrow H_{n+1}(B) \xrightarrow{H_{n+1}(g)} H_{n+1}(C) \xrightarrow{\delta_{n+1}} H_n(A) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(B) \xrightarrow{H_n(g)} H_n(C) \longrightarrow \cdots$$

*Proof.* Let  $\text{Fib}(f)_\bullet$  be the chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined below,

$$\text{Fib}(f)_n = A_n \oplus B_{n+1}$$

with differential given by the following matrix,

$$\partial_n = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix}$$

and let  $h_n : \text{Fib}(f)_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$  be defined on summands by  $0 : A_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$  and  $g_{n+1} : B_{n+1} \rightarrow C_{n+1}$ . Then,

$$h_n \circ \partial_n = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & g_n \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} \partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -g_n \circ \partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = -\partial_{n+1} \circ h_{n+1}$$

so if we define  $(\Omega C)_\bullet$  to be the chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  where

$$(\Omega C)_n = C_{n+1}$$

with differential  $\partial_n : (\Omega C)_n \rightarrow (\Omega C)_{n-1}$  given by  $-\partial_{n+1} : C_{n+1} \rightarrow C_n$ , then  $h_\bullet : \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow (\Omega C)_\bullet$  is a morphism of chain complexes.



Let  $(\Omega B)_\bullet$  be defined analogously, so that  $(\Omega B)_\bullet$  is a subcomplex of  $\text{Fib}(f)_\bullet$ . Recalling lemmas 9.1.7 and A.8.15, it is not hard to see that we have the following exact sequence in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,

$$0 \longrightarrow (\Omega B)_\bullet \xrightarrow{i_\bullet} \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet \xrightarrow{\text{fib}(f)_\bullet} A_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$

where  $i_\bullet : (\Omega B)_\bullet \rightarrow \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet$  is the inclusion and  $\text{fib}(f)_\bullet : \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow A_\bullet$  is the projection. Let  $(\Omega g)_n : (\Omega B)_n \rightarrow (\Omega C)_n$  be  $g_{n+1} : B_{n+1} \rightarrow C_{n+1}$ . We then obtain the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} H_n(\Omega B) & \xrightarrow{H_n(i)} & H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(f))} & H_n(A) & \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} & H_n(B) \xrightarrow{H_n(g)} H_n(C) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow H_n(h) & & & & \\ H_n(\Omega B) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\Omega g)} & H_n(\Omega C) & & & & \\ \parallel & & \parallel & & & & \\ H_{n+1}(B) & \xrightarrow{H_{n+1}(g)} & H_{n+1}(C) & & & & \end{array}$$

so to prove the claim, it suffices to prove that the top row is an exact sequence and that  $H_n(h) : H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) \rightarrow H_n(\Omega C)$  is an isomorphism. Moreover, recalling theorem A.8.37, it suffices to consider the case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Ab}$ .

To begin, note that  $H_n(g) \circ H_n(f) = 0$ , so  $\text{Im } H_n(f) \subseteq \text{Ker } H_n(g)$ . Let  $b' \in Z_n(B)$  and suppose  $g(b) \in B_n(C)$ , i.e.  $g(b') = \partial(c)$  for some  $c \in C_{n+1}$ . Then, there is some  $b \in B_{n+1}$  such that  $g(b) = c$ , and

$$g(b' - \partial(b)) = g(b') - \partial(g(b)) = g(b') - \partial(c) = 0$$

so there is a unique  $a' \in A_n$  such that  $f(a') = b' - \partial(b)$ . Moreover,

$$f(\partial(a')) = \partial(f(a')) = \partial(b' - \partial(b)) = 0$$

so  $\partial(a') = 0$ . This shows that  $\text{Im } H_n(f) \supseteq \text{Ker } H_n(g)$ , so we conclude that

$$H_n(A) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(B) \xrightarrow{H_n(g)} H_n(C)$$

is an exact sequence. The same argument shows that

$$H_n(\Omega B) \xrightarrow{H_n(i)} H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(f))} H_n(A)$$

is an exact sequence.

Next, observe that  $(a', b) \in Z_n(\text{Fib}(f))$  if and only if  $\partial(a') = 0$  and  $f(a') = -\partial(b) = 0$ , so  $H_n(f) \circ H_n(\text{fib}(f)) = 0$ , and therefore  $\text{Im } H_n(\text{fib}(f)) \subseteq \text{Ker } H_n(f)$ . Now, let  $a' \in Z_n(A)$  and suppose  $f(a') \in B_n(B)$ , i.e.  $f(a') = -\partial(b)$  for some  $b \in B_{n+1}$ . Then,  $(a', b) \in Z_n(\text{Fib}(f))$  and  $\text{fib}(f)(a', b) = a'$ , so we have  $\text{Im } H_n(\text{fib}(f)) \supseteq \text{Ker } H_n(f)$  as well. Hence,

$$H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(f))} H_n(A) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(B)$$

is an exact sequence.

It remains to be shown that  $H_n(h) : H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) \rightarrow H_n(\Omega C)$  is an isomorphism. Let  $(a', b) \in Z_n(\text{Fib}(f))$  and suppose  $h(a', b) \in B_n(C)$ , i.e.  $h(a', b) = \partial(\tilde{c})$  for some  $\tilde{c} \in C_{n+2}$ . Then there is  $\tilde{b} \in B_{n+2}$  such that  $g(\tilde{b}) = -\tilde{c}$ , and

$$g(b + \partial(\tilde{b})) = h(a', b) + \partial(g(\tilde{b})) = h(a', b) - \partial(\tilde{c}) = 0$$

so there is a unique  $a \in A_{n+1}$  such that  $-f(a) = b + \partial(\tilde{b})$ . Moreover,

$$f(\partial(a)) = -\partial(b + \partial(\tilde{b})) = -\partial(b) = f(a')$$

so  $\partial(a) = a'$ , and

$$-f(a) - \partial(\tilde{b}) = b + \partial(\tilde{b}) - \partial(\tilde{b}) = b$$

hence  $\partial(a, \tilde{b}) = (a', b)$ , and therefore  $H_n(h)$  is injective. Now, let  $c \in Z_{n+1}(C)$ . Then there is some  $b \in B_{n+1}$  such that  $g(b) = c$ , and  $g(\partial(b)) = 0$ , so there is a unique  $a' \in A_n$  such that  $f(a') = -\partial(b)$ . Moreover,  $f(\partial(a')) = 0$ , so  $\partial(a') = 0$ ; thus,  $(a', b) \in Z_n(\text{Fib}(f))$ . By construction,  $h(a', b) = g(b) = c$ , so we conclude that  $H_n(h)$  is also surjective. This completes the proof.  $\blacksquare$

**9.1.21** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- A **connective chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $C_n = 0$  for all  $n < 0$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by the connective chain complexes.

- A **coconnective chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $C_n = 0$  for all  $n > 0$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by the coconnective chain complexes.

- A **connective cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a cochain complex  $C^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $C^n = 0$  for all  $n > 0$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Ch}^{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by the connective cochain complexes.

- A **coconnective cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a cochain complex  $C^\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $C^n = 0$  for all  $n < 0$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Ch}^{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by the coconnective cochain complexes.

**9.1.22** REMARK. Up to reindexing (as in [remark 9.1.2](#)), connective (resp. coconnective) chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  are the same as connective (resp. coconnective) cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . On the other hand, connective (resp. coconnective) chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  correspond to coconnective (resp. connective) cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}$ . Thus, up to reindexing, connective chain complexes and coconnective chain complexes are dual notions.

**9.1.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- *The inclusion  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  admits a left adjoint  $\text{sk}_{\geq 0}$  and a right adjoint  $\tau_{\geq 0}$ .*
- *The inclusion  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A}) \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  admits a left adjoint  $\tau_{\leq 0}$  and a right adjoint  $\text{cosk}_{\leq 0}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $C_\bullet$  be a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ , let  $\text{sk}_{\geq 0}(C)_\bullet$  and  $\tau_{\geq 0}(C)_\bullet$  be the following subcomplexes of  $C_\bullet$ :

$$\text{sk}_{\geq 0}(C)_n = \begin{cases} 0 & n < 0 \\ C_n & n \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\tau_{\geq 0}(C)_n = \begin{cases} 0 & n < 0 \\ Z_0(C) & n = 0 \\ C_n & n > 0 \end{cases}$$

These define functors  $\text{sk}_{\geq 0} : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  and  $\tau_{\geq 0} : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ , and it is straightforward to check that the evident epimorphism  $C_\bullet \twoheadrightarrow \text{sk}_{\geq 0}(C)_\bullet$  (resp. the evident inclusion  $\tau_{\geq 0}(C)_\bullet \hookrightarrow C_\bullet$ ) is the unit (resp. counit) of an adjunction. ■

**9.1.24** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  is closed in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  under limits and colimits for finite diagrams; in particular,  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category.
- $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  is closed in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  under limits and colimits for finite diagrams; in particular,  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category. ■

**9.1.25** DEFINITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- A **bounded-above chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C_{\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  for which there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C_n = 0$  for all  $n > N$ .  
We write  $\mathbf{Ch}_{-}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by bounded-above chain complexes.
- A **bounded-below chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C_{\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  for which there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C_n = 0$  for all  $n < N$ .  
We write  $\mathbf{Ch}_{+}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by bounded-below chain complexes.
- A **bounded chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex that is both bounded above and bounded below.  
We write  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by bounded chain complexes.
- A **bounded-above cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C^{\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  for which there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^n = 0$  for all  $n > N$ .  
We write  $\mathbf{Ch}^{-}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by bounded-above cochain complexes.
- A **bounded-below cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C^{\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  for which there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^n = 0$  for all  $n < N$ .  
We write  $\mathbf{Ch}^{+}(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by bounded-below cochain complexes.
- A **bounded cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a cochain complex that is both bounded above and bounded below.  
We write  $\mathbf{Ch}^b(\mathcal{A})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  spanned by bounded cochain complexes.

**9.1.26** REMARK. Up to reindexing (as in [remark 9.1.2](#)), bounded (resp. bounded-above, bounded-below) chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  are the same as bounded (resp. bounded-below, bounded-above) cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ ; in other words, we have the following natural isomorphisms:

$$\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A}) \cong \mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A}) \quad \mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A}) \cong \mathbf{Ch}^-(\mathcal{A}) \quad \mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A}) \cong \mathbf{Ch}^b(\mathcal{A})$$

On the other hand, bounded (resp. bounded-above, bounded-below) chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  correspond to bounded (resp. bounded-above, bounded-below) cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}$ , i.e.:

$$\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})^{\text{op}} \cong \mathbf{Ch}^-(\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}) \quad \mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})^{\text{op}} \cong \mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}) \quad \mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})^{\text{op}} \cong \mathbf{Ch}^b(\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}})$$

Thus, up to reindexing, bounded-above chain complexes and bounded-below chain complexes are dual notions, whereas the notion of bounded chain complex is self-dual.

**9.1.27** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- (i)  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$  is closed in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  under limits and colimits for finite diagrams; in particular,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category.
- (ii)  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$  is closed in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  under limits and colimits for finite diagrams; in particular,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category.
- (iii)  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  is closed in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  under limits and colimits for finite diagrams; in particular,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category.

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**9.1.28** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- An **acyclic chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex whose homology objects are all zero, i.e.  $A_\bullet$  where  $H_n(A) = 0$  for every integer  $n$ .
- An **acyclic cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a cochain complex whose cohomology objects are all zero, i.e.  $A^\bullet$  where  $H^n(A) = 0$  for every integer  $n$ .

**9.I.29** REMARK. By lemma A.8.30, a (co)chain complex is acyclic if and only if it is an exact sequence. More precisely,

$$\cdots \longrightarrow A_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial} A_n \xrightarrow{\partial} A_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

is exact at  $A_n$  if and only if  $H_n(A) = 0$ .

**9.I.30** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $C_\bullet$  be a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $\zeta_n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ . If the following equation holds for every integer  $n$ ,

$$\text{id}_{C_n} = \partial_{n+1} \circ \zeta_n + \zeta_{n-1} \circ \partial_n$$

then  $C_\bullet$  is acyclic.

*Proof.* Let  $n$  be an integer and let  $c : X \rightarrow C_n$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ . If  $\partial_n \circ c = 0$ , then  $c = \partial_{n+1} \circ \zeta_n \circ c$ , so

$$C_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial_{n+1}} C_n \xrightarrow{\partial_n} C_{n-1}$$

is an exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ , hence  $H_n(C) = 0$  as required. ■

## 9.2 The derived category

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 4.1, 9.1, A.3, A.4, A.7, A.8.

**9.2.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. A **quasi-isomorphism** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a morphism  $f_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  such that  $H_n(f) : H_n(A) \rightarrow H_n(B)$  is an isomorphism for every integer  $n$ .

**9.2.2** REMARK. Of course, a chain complex  $C_{\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is acyclic if and only if the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow C_{\bullet}$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a quasi-isomorphism.

**9.2.3** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Then  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , with the class of quasi-isomorphisms, is a saturated homotopical category. In particular, the class of weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial sets has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts.*

*Proof.* Apply lemma 3.1.8. ■

**9.2.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. The following are equivalent for morphisms  $f_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  and  $g_{\bullet} : C_{\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet}$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ :*

- (i) *Both  $f_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  and  $g_{\bullet} : C_{\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet}$  are quasi-isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .*
- (ii) *The morphism  $f_{\bullet} \oplus g_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \oplus C_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet} \oplus D_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is an immediate consequence of the fact that the functors  $H_n : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  are additive (proposition 9.1.17).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). It is not hard to see that  $f_{\bullet}$  and  $g_{\bullet}$  are both retracts of  $f_{\bullet} \oplus g_{\bullet}$ , so we may apply lemma 9.2.3. ■

**9.2.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A'_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & B'_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & C'_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & B_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & C_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

*where the rows are short exact sequences. If any two of the three vertical arrows are quasi-isomorphisms, then so is the third.*

*Proof.* Apply the five lemma (9.1.19) to the long exact sequence in homology (lemma 9.1.20). ■

**9.2.6** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a short exact sequence in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ :

$$0 \longrightarrow A_{\bullet} \xrightarrow{f_{\bullet}} B_{\bullet} \xrightarrow{g_{\bullet}} C_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

- $A_{\bullet}$  is acyclic if and only if  $g_{\bullet} : B_{\bullet} \rightarrow C_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism.
- $C_{\bullet}$  is acyclic if and only if  $f_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By lemma 9.1.20, we have the following exact sequence for every integer  $n$ :

$$H_n(A) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(B) \xrightarrow{H_n(g)} H_n(C) \xrightarrow{\delta_n} H_{n-1}(A)$$

Thus,  $H_n(g)$  is an isomorphism if and only if both  $H_n(f) = 0$  and  $\delta_n = 0$ . But we also have the exact sequence shown below,

$$H_{n+1}(C) \xrightarrow{\delta_{n+1}} H_n(A) \xrightarrow{H_n(f)} H_n(B)$$

so  $H_n(A) = 0$  if and only if both  $\delta_{n+1} = 0$  and  $H_n(f) = 0$ . ■

**9.2.7** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $C_{\bullet}$  be a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and for each natural number  $p$ , let  $F_p C_{\bullet}$  be a subcomplex of  $C_{\bullet}$ . Suppose the following conditions are satisfied:

- For each natural number  $p$ ,  $F_p C_{\bullet} \leq F_{p+1} C_{\bullet}$  (as subcomplexes of  $C_{\bullet}$ ).
- For each natural number  $p$ , the chain complex  $\text{Coker}(F_p C_{\bullet} \rightarrow F_{p+1} C_{\bullet})$  is acyclic.
- For each integer  $q$ , there is a natural number  $p$  such that  $F_p C_q = C_q$  (as subobjects of  $C_q$ ).

Then the inclusion  $F_0 C_{\bullet} \rightarrow C_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

*Proof.* Let  $n$  be an integer. First, observe that lemma 9.2.6 implies that the inclusion  $F_p C_{\bullet} \rightarrow F_{p+1} C_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism for every natural number  $p$ ; in particular, by lemma 9.2.3, the inclusion  $F_0 C_{\bullet} \rightarrow F_m C_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism for every natural number  $m$ .



Now, let  $m$  a natural number large enough that  $F_m C_q = C_q$  for  $n - 1 \leq q \leq n + 1$ . Clearly, the morphism  $H_n(F_m C) \rightarrow H_n(C)$  induced by the inclusion  $F_m C_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$  is an isomorphism. On the other hand,  $F_0 C_\bullet \rightarrow F_m C_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism, so we deduce that the morphism  $H_n(F_0 C) \rightarrow H_n(C)$  induced by the inclusion  $F_0 C_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$  is indeed an isomorphism as required. ■

**9.2.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- An **injective cofibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a monomorphism.
- An **projective fibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is an epimorphism.
- An **injective trivial cofibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a quasi-isomorphism that is also a monomorphism.
- An **projective trivial fibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a quasi-isomorphism that is also an epimorphism.
- An **split-injective cofibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a *degreewise* split monomorphism.
- An **split-projective fibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a *degreewise* split epimorphism.
- A **split-injective trivial cofibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a quasi-isomorphism that is also a *degreewise* split monomorphism.
- A **split-projective trivial fibration** in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a quasi-isomorphism that is also a *degreewise* split epimorphism.

**9.2.9** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. The following are equivalent for a morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be an morphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ :

- (i) The morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is a projective trivial fibration in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .
- (ii) The chain complex  $\text{Ker } f_\bullet$  is acyclic and, for every integer  $n$ , the morphism  $f_n : A_n \rightarrow B_n$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- (iii) For any integer  $n$ , we have a weak pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & Z_n(A) \\ f_{n+1} \downarrow & & \downarrow Z_n(f) \\ B_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & Z_n(B) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by the differentials.

*Proof.* Recalling [theorem A.8.37](#), it suffices to prove the claim in the case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Ab}$ .

(i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). This is [lemma 9.2.6](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Let  $n$  be any integer, let  $b \in B_{n+1}$  and let  $a' \in Z_n(A)$  with  $f(a') = \partial(b)$ . Since  $f_{n+1} : A_{n+1} \rightarrow B_{n+1}$  is surjective, there is  $a \in A_{n+1}$  such that  $f(a) = b$ , and

$$f(\partial(a)) = \partial(f(a)) = \partial(b) = f(a')$$

so  $a' - \partial(a) \in \text{Ker } f_n$ . But  $\partial(a' - \partial(a)) = 0$ , and

$$\text{Ker } f_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Ker } f_n \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Ker } f_{n-1}$$

is an exact sequence (by [remark 9.1.29](#)), so there must be  $z \in \text{Ker } f_{n+1}$  such that  $\partial(z) = a' - \partial(a)$ . Moreover,  $f(a + z) = b$  and  $\partial(a + z) = a'$ . This shows that the evident map

$$A_{n+1} \rightarrow \{(a', b) \in Z_n(A) \times B_{n+1} \mid f(a') = \partial(b)\}$$

is surjective, so we are done.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $n$  be any integer. First, we will show that  $f_{n+1} : A_{n+1} \rightarrow B_{n+1}$  is surjective. Let  $b \in B_{n+1}$ . Then  $\partial(b) \in B_n$  and  $d(\partial(b)) = 0$ , so there is  $a' \in A_n$  such that  $f(a') = \partial(b)$  and  $d(a') = 0$ , so there is  $a \in A_{n+1}$  such that  $f(a) = b$  (and  $\partial(a) = a'$ ), as required.

Now, consider  $a' \in \text{Ker } f_n$  such that  $\partial(a') = 0$ . Then  $f(\partial(a')) = \partial(f(a')) = 0$ , so there is an  $a \in A_{n+1}$  such that  $f(a) = 0$  and  $\partial(a) = a'$ . Hence,

$$\text{Ker } f_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Ker } f_n \xrightarrow{\partial} \text{Ker } f_{n-1}$$

is an exact sequence, so  $H_n(\text{Ker } f) = 0$  as required. ■

**9.2.10 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- (i) *The class of epimorphisms (resp. projective trivial fibrations) in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  contains all isomorphisms.*
- (ii) *The class of epimorphisms (resp. projective trivial fibrations) in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is closed under composition.*

- (iii) *The class of epimorphisms (resp. projective trivial fibrations) in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is closed under pullbacks.*
- (iv) *The class of epimorphisms (resp. projective trivial fibrations) in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is closed under retracts.*
- (v) *The class of epimorphisms (resp. projective trivial fibrations) in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is closed under finite products.*

*Proof.* Recalling [theorem A.8.37](#), it suffices to prove the claims in the case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Ab}$ .

For each integer  $n$ , let  $\tilde{D}_\bullet^n$  be the chain complex where

$$\tilde{D}_m^n = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z} & \text{if } m = n \text{ or } m = n - 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

with differential  $\partial_n = \text{id}_{\mathbb{Z}}$ . It is easy to see that we have natural isomorphisms

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ch}}(\tilde{D}_\bullet^n, C) \cong C_n$$

for every chain complex  $C_\bullet$ , so if we define the following subset of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{Ch}$ ,

$$\mathcal{I}' = \{0 \rightarrow \tilde{D}_\bullet^n \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

we find that  $\mathcal{I}'^\square$  is the class of epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}$ . Similarly, let  $\tilde{S}_\bullet^n$  be the chain complex where

$$\tilde{S}_m^n = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z} & \text{if } m = n \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and observe that we have natural isomorphisms

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ch}}(\tilde{S}_\bullet^n, C) \cong Z_n(C)$$

for every chain complex  $C_\bullet$ , so if we define the following subset of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{Ch}$ ,

$$\mathcal{I} = \{\tilde{S}_\bullet^n \rightarrow \tilde{D}_\bullet^{n+1} \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

where  $\tilde{S}_\bullet^n \rightarrow \tilde{D}_\bullet^{n+1}$  is the evident inclusion, [lemma 9.2.9](#) implies that  $\mathcal{I}^\square$  is the class of projective trivial fibrations in  $\mathbf{Ch}$ . Thus, the claimed closure properties are special cases of [proposition A.3.19](#). ■

**9.2.II** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- The **mapping cylinder object** of a morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is the chain complex  $\text{Cyl}(f)_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  where

$$\text{Cyl}(f)_n = A_n \oplus A_{n-1} \oplus B_n$$

with differentials defined by the following matrix,

$$\partial_n = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_n & \text{id}_{A_{n-1}} & 0 \\ 0 & -\partial_{n-1} & 0 \\ 0 & -f_{n-1} & \partial_n \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e.  $\partial(a, a', b) = (\partial(a) + a', -\partial(a'), \partial(b) - f(a'))$ .

In the special case where  $f_\bullet = \text{id}_{C_\bullet}$ , we may write  $\text{Cyl}(C)_\bullet$  instead of  $\text{Cyl}(\text{id}_C)_\bullet$ .

- The **mapping path object** of a morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is the chain complex  $\text{Path}(f)_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  where

$$\text{Path}(f)_n = A_n \oplus B_{n+1} \oplus B_n$$

with differentials defined by the following matrix,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \partial_n & 0 & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} & \text{id}_{B_n} \\ 0 & 0 & \partial_n \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e.  $\partial(a, b', b) = (\partial(a), -f(a) - \partial(b') + b, \partial(b))$ .

In the special case where  $f_\bullet = \text{id}_{C_\bullet}$ , we may write  $\text{Path}(C)_\bullet$  instead of  $\text{Path}(\text{id}_C)_\bullet$ .

**9.2.I2** REMARK. The mapping cylinder object of a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the same as the mapping path object of the corresponding cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}$  (considered as a chain complex by reindexing as in [remark 9.1.2](#)).

**9.2.13** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $f_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

- (i) If  $A_{\bullet}$  and  $B_{\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ , then so is  $\mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (ii) If  $A_{\bullet}$  and  $B_{\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ , then so is  $\mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (iii) If  $A_{\bullet}$  and  $B_{\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_{-}(\mathcal{A})$ , then so are  $\mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$  and  $\mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (iv) If  $A_{\bullet}$  and  $B_{\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_{+}(\mathcal{A})$ , then so are  $\mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$  and  $\mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (v) If  $A_{\bullet}$  and  $B_{\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ , then so are  $\mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$  and  $\mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet}$ .

*Proof.* Immediate, by definition. □

**9.2.14** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $f_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

- (i) There is a natural split-injective cofibration  $i_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (ii) There is a natural split-injective cofibration  $j_{\bullet} : B_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (iii) The induced morphism  $(i_{\bullet}, j_{\bullet}) : A_{\bullet} \oplus B_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$  is a split-injective cofibration.
- (iv) There is a natural projective trivial fibration  $p_{\bullet} : \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet} \twoheadrightarrow B_{\bullet}$ .
- (v) We have  $p_{\bullet} \circ i_{\bullet} = f_{\bullet}$  and  $p_{\bullet} \circ j_{\bullet} = \mathrm{id}_{B_{\bullet}}$ .

*Dually:*

- (i') There is a natural split-projective fibration  $p_{\bullet} : \mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet} \rightarrow A_{\bullet}$ .
- (ii') There is a natural split-projective fibration  $q_{\bullet} : \mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$ .
- (iii') The induced morphism  $\langle p_{\bullet}, q_{\bullet} \rangle : \mathrm{Path}(f)_{\bullet} \rightarrow A_{\bullet} \oplus B_{\bullet}$  is a split-projective fibration.
- (iv') There is a natural injective trivial cofibration  $i_{\bullet} : A_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet}$ .
- (v') We have  $p_{\bullet} \circ i_{\bullet} = \mathrm{id}_{A_{\bullet}}$  and  $q_{\bullet} \circ i_{\bullet} = f_{\bullet}$ .

*Proof.* (i), (ii), and (iii). We define  $i_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(f)_\bullet$  and  $j_\bullet : B_\bullet \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(f)_\bullet$  by  $i(a) = (a, 0, 0)$  and  $j(b) = (0, 0, b)$ ; it is straightforward to verify the required properties.

(iv). Let  $p_\bullet : \text{Cyl}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be the morphism defined by  $p(a, a', b) = f(a) + b$ . To show that  $p_\bullet$  is a projective trivial fibration, we will apply lemma 9.2.9. Let  $n$  be any integer, let  $a' : X \rightarrow A_n$ ,  $a'' : X \rightarrow A_{n-1}$ ,  $b : X \rightarrow B_{n+1}$ , and  $b' : X \rightarrow B_n$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Suppose the following equations hold:

$$\begin{aligned} \partial \circ a' + a'' &= 0 \\ -\partial \circ a'' &= 0 \\ \partial \circ b' - f \circ a'' &= 0 \\ f \circ a' + b' &= \partial \circ b \end{aligned}$$

Then  $\langle a', a'', b' \rangle : X \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(f)_n$  factors through the inclusion  $Z_n(\text{Cyl}(f)) \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(f)_n$ , and

$$\begin{aligned} \partial \circ 0 + a' &= a' \\ -\partial \circ a'' &= a'' \\ \partial \circ b - f \circ a' &= b' \\ f(0) + b &= b \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $\langle 0, a', b \rangle : X \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(f)_{n+1}$  is a generalised element such that  $\partial \circ \langle 0, a', b \rangle = \langle a', a'', b' \rangle$  and  $p \circ \langle 0, a', b \rangle = \langle a', a'', b' \rangle$ . Thus,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Cyl}(f)_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & Z_n(\text{Cyl}(f)) \\ p_{n+1} \downarrow & & \downarrow Z_n(p) \\ B_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & Z_n(B) \end{array}$$

is indeed a weak pullback diagram, as required.

(v). Immediate, by construction. ■

**9.2.15** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- Morphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ ) can be functorially factored as a split-injective cofibration followed by a split projective trivial fibration.

- Morphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ ) can be functorially factored as a split injective trivial cofibration followed by a split-projective fibration.

*Proof.* Apply lemma 9.2.13 and proposition 9.2.14. ■

**9.2.16** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- Quasi-isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ ) can be functorially factored as a split-injective trivial cofibration followed by a split projective trivial fibration.
- Quasi-isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ ) can be functorially factored as a split injective trivial cofibration followed by a split projective trivial fibration.

*Proof.* Apply the 2-out-of-3 property (lemma 9.2.3) and corollary 9.2.15. ■

**9.2.17** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

- The **cofibre** of  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is the chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined below,

$$\mathrm{Cofib}(f)_n = A_{n-1} \oplus B_n$$

with differentials defined by the following matrix:

$$\partial_n = \begin{pmatrix} -\partial_{n-1} & 0 \\ -f_{n-1} & \partial_n \end{pmatrix}$$

We write  $\mathrm{cofib}(f)_\bullet : B_\bullet \rightarrow \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_\bullet$  for the evident inclusion.

- The **fibre** of  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is the chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined below,

$$\mathrm{Fib}(f)_n = A_n \oplus B_{n+1}$$

with differentials defined by the following matrix:

$$\partial_n = \begin{pmatrix} \partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix}$$

We write  $\mathrm{fib}(f)_\bullet : \mathrm{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow A_\bullet$  for the evident projection.

**9.2.18** REMARK. More abstractly,

$$\mathrm{Cofib}(f)_\bullet = \mathrm{Coker}(A_\bullet \rightarrowtail \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_\bullet)$$

where  $A_\bullet \rightarrowtail \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_\bullet$  is the canonical split-injective cofibration, and

$$\mathrm{Fib}(f)_\bullet = \mathrm{Ker}(\mathrm{Path}(f)_\bullet \twoheadrightarrow B_\bullet)$$

where  $\mathrm{Path}(f)_\bullet \twoheadrightarrow B_\bullet$  is the canonical split-projective fibration.

**9.2.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a commutative square in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A'_\bullet & \xrightarrow{f'_\bullet} & B'_\bullet \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_\bullet & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & B_\bullet \end{array}$$

*If the vertical arrows are quasi-isomorphisms, then:*

- *The induced morphism  $\mathrm{Cofib}(f')_\bullet \rightarrow \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism.*
- *The induced morphism  $\mathrm{Fib}(f')_\bullet \rightarrow \mathrm{Fib}(f)_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First, observe that we have the following commutative square in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Cyl}(f') & \twoheadrightarrow & B'_\bullet \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{Cyl}(f) & \twoheadrightarrow & B_\bullet \end{array}$$

where the two horizontal arrows are the projective trivial cofibrations of [proposition 9.2.14](#); since the right vertical arrow is a quasi-isomorphism, the 2-out-of-3 property ([lemma 9.2.3](#)) implies that the left vertical arrow is also a quasi-isomorphism. Hence, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  as below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & A'_\bullet & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Cyl}(f')_\bullet & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Cofib}(f')_\bullet \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \simeq \downarrow & & \simeq \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & A_\bullet & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Cyl}(f)_\bullet & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_\bullet \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

where the two indicated arrows are quasi-isomorphisms, so by [proposition 9.2.5](#), the induced morphism  $\mathrm{Cofib}(f')_\bullet \rightarrow \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism. ■



**9.2.20** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- Let  $C_\bullet$  be a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . The **suspension object**  $(\Sigma C)_\bullet$  and the **loop object**  $(\Omega C)_\bullet$  are the chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined by degree shift as follows,

$$(\Sigma C)_n = C_{n-1} \qquad (\Omega C)_n = C_{n+1}$$

with  $\partial_{n+1} : (\Sigma C)_{n+1} \rightarrow (\Sigma C)_n$  and  $\partial_{n-1} : (\Omega C)_{n-1} \rightarrow (\Omega C)_{n-2}$  being defined to be  $-\partial_n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$ .

- Let  $C^\bullet$  be a cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . The **suspension object**  $(\Sigma C)^\bullet$  and the **loop object**  $(\Omega C)^\bullet$  are the cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined by degree shift as follows,

$$(\Sigma C)^n = C^{n+1} \qquad (\Omega C)^n = C^{n-1}$$

with  $\partial^{n-1} : (\Sigma C)^{n-2} \rightarrow (\Sigma C)^{n-1}$  and  $\partial^{n+1} : (\Omega C)^n \rightarrow (\Omega C)^{n+1}$  being defined to be  $-\partial^n : C^{n-1} \rightarrow C^n$ .

**9.2.21** REMARK. More abstractly:

$$(\Sigma C)_\bullet = \text{Cofib}(C \rightarrow 0)_\bullet \qquad (\Omega C)_\bullet = \text{Fib}(0 \rightarrow C)_\bullet$$

In particular,  $(\Sigma C)_\bullet$  is a quotient of  $\text{Cyl}(C)_\bullet$  and  $(\Omega C)_\bullet$  is a subcomplex of  $\text{Path}(C)_\bullet$ .

**9.2.22** REMARK. Although a sign is introduced in the differentials of  $(\Sigma C)_\bullet$  and  $(\Omega C)_\bullet$ , for a morphism  $f_\bullet$ , we define  $(\Sigma C)_\bullet$  and  $(\Omega f)_\bullet$  in the obvious way, i.e. *without* introducing a sign.

**9.2.23** REMARK. The suspension (resp. loop) object of a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the same as the loop (resp. suspension) object of the corresponding cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}^{\text{op}}$ . On the other hand, up to reindexing (as in [remark 9.1.2](#)), suspension (resp. loop) objects of chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$  are the same as suspension (resp. loop) objects of cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**9.2.24** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

- There is a natural isomorphism  $\mathrm{Fib}(f)_\bullet \cong (\Omega \mathrm{Cofib}(f))_\bullet$ .
- There is a natural isomorphism  $(\Sigma \mathrm{Fib}(f))_\bullet \cong \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_\bullet$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are equivalent; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\varsigma_n : \mathrm{Fib}(f)_n \rightarrow \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_{n+1}$  be defined by the following matrix:

$$\varsigma_n = \begin{pmatrix} -\mathrm{id}_{A_n} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{id}_{B_{n+1}} \end{pmatrix}$$

Clearly, each  $\varsigma_n$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Moreover,

$$-\partial_{n+1} \circ \varsigma_n = - \begin{pmatrix} -\partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & \partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} -\mathrm{id}_{A_n} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{id}_{B_{n+1}} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\varsigma_{n-1} \circ \partial_n = \begin{pmatrix} -\mathrm{id}_{A_{n-1}} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{id}_{B_n} \end{pmatrix} \circ \begin{pmatrix} \partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\partial_n & 0 \\ -f_n & -\partial_{n+1} \end{pmatrix}$$

so, recalling that  $\partial_n : (\Omega \mathrm{Cofib}(f))_n \rightarrow (\Omega \mathrm{Cofib}(f))_{n-1}$  is defined to be  $-\partial_{n+1} : \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_{n+1} \rightarrow \mathrm{Cofib}(f)_n$ , it follows that  $\varsigma_\bullet : \mathrm{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow (\Omega \mathrm{Cofib}(f))_\bullet$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ . ■

**9.2.25** REMARK. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a short exact sequence in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ :

$$0 \longrightarrow A_\bullet \longrightarrow B_\bullet \longrightarrow C_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$

We will now show that the connecting morphism  $\delta_{n+1} : H_{n+1}(C) \rightarrow H_n(A)$  constructed in the proof of [lemma 9.1.20](#) is self-dual.

Consider the following diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathrm{Fib}(f)_n & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{fib}(f)_n} & A_n \\ h_n \downarrow & & \downarrow k_{n+1} \\ C_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{cofib}(g)_{n+1}} & \mathrm{Cofib}(g)_{n+1} \end{array}$$

where  $h_n : \mathrm{Fib}(f)_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$  is defined on summands by  $0 : A_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$  and  $g_{n+1} : B_{n+1} \rightarrow C_{n+1}$  and  $k_{n+1} : A_n \rightarrow \mathrm{Cofib}(g)_{n+1}$  is defined in components by  $f_n : A_n \rightarrow B_n$  and  $0 : A_n \rightarrow C_{n+1}$ . (Note that  $h_\bullet : \mathrm{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow (\Omega C)_\bullet$  and



- Moreover, there is an isomorphism  $\varsigma_\bullet : \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow (\Omega \text{Cofib}(f))_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  making the following diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  commute for every integer  $n$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 H_{n+1}(B) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{n+1}} & H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(f))} & H_n(A) \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow H_n(\varsigma) & & \parallel \\
 H_{n+1}(B) & \xrightarrow{H_{n+1}(\text{cofib}(f))} & H_{n+1}(\text{Cofib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{\delta'_{n+1}} & H_n(A)
 \end{array}$$

*Proof.* By [proposition 9.2.14](#) and [remark 9.2.18](#), we have the following natural commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & A_\bullet & & \\
 & & \downarrow i_\bullet & \searrow \text{id} & \\
 \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{Path}(f)_\bullet & \xrightarrow{p_\bullet} & A_\bullet \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{f}_\bullet & & \\
 0 & \longrightarrow & B_\bullet & & 
 \end{array}$$

where the square is a pullback diagram,  $p_\bullet : \text{Path}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow A_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism, the composite of the middle column is  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$ , and the composite of the middle row is  $\text{fib}(f)_\bullet : \text{Fib}(f)_\bullet \rightarrow A_\bullet$ . By [lemma 9.1.20](#), we have the following natural long exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,

$$\cdots \longrightarrow H_{n+1}(\text{Path}(f)) \longrightarrow H_{n+1}(B) \xrightarrow{\delta_{n+1}} H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) \longrightarrow H_n(A) \longrightarrow \cdots$$

but  $H_n(i) : H_n(A) \rightarrow H_n(\text{Path}(f))$  and  $H_n(p) : H_n(\text{Path}(f)) \rightarrow H_n(A)$  are a mutually inverse pair of natural isomorphisms, so we obtain a natural long exact sequence of the desired form.

By duality, we also obtain a natural long exact sequence for  $\text{Cofib}(f)_\bullet$ . Let  $\tilde{f}_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow \text{Cyl}(f)_\bullet$  be the inclusion. We have the following commutative square in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A_\bullet & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}_\bullet} & \text{Cyl}(f)_\bullet \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \simeq \\
 A_\bullet & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & B_\bullet
 \end{array}$$

so by [proposition 9.2.19](#), the induced morphism  $k_{\bullet} : \text{Fib}(\tilde{f})_{\bullet} \rightarrow \text{Fib}(f)_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism. Thus, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  as below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & (\Omega \text{Cyl}(f))_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & \text{Fib}(\tilde{f})_{\bullet} & \xrightarrow{\text{fib}(\tilde{f})_{\bullet}} & A_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & (\Omega q)_{\bullet} \downarrow & & k_{\bullet} \downarrow & & \parallel \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & (\Omega B)_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & \text{Fib}(f) & \xrightarrow{\text{fib}(f)_{\bullet}} & A_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

where the rows are exact sequences and  $q_{\bullet} : \text{Cyl}(f)_{\bullet} \twoheadrightarrow B_{\bullet}$  is the canonical projective trivial fibration. Recalling the construction of the connecting morphism in the long exact sequence in homology, we see that the following diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H_{n+1}(\text{Cofib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{\delta'_{n+1}} & H_n(A) \\ H_n(h) \uparrow & & \parallel \\ H_n(\text{Fib}(\tilde{f})) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(\tilde{f}))} & H_n(A) \\ H_n(k) \downarrow & & \parallel \\ H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(f))} & H_n(A) \end{array}$$

where  $h_{\bullet} : \text{Fib}(\tilde{f})_{\bullet} \rightarrow (\Omega \text{Cofib}(f))_{\bullet}$  is the quasi-isomorphism defined in degree  $n$  on summands by  $0 : A_n \rightarrow \text{Cofib}(f)_{n+1}$  and the projection  $\text{Cyl}(f)_{n+1} \rightarrow \text{Cofib}(f)_{n+1}$ . (Note that all vertical arrows in the diagram are isomorphisms.) Now, consider the following diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & (\Omega \text{Cofib}(f))_{\bullet} \\ & \nearrow h_{\bullet} & \uparrow \varsigma_{\bullet} \\ \text{Fib}(\tilde{f})_{\bullet} & & \\ & \searrow k_{\bullet} & \downarrow \\ & & \text{Fib}(f)_{\bullet} \end{array}$$

where  $\varsigma_{\bullet} : \text{Fib}(f)_{\bullet} \rightarrow (\Omega \text{Cofib}(f))_{\bullet}$  defined in (the proof of) [lemma 9.2.24](#). In general, the above diagram does *not* commute. However, consider morphisms  $a', c' : X \rightarrow A_n$ ,  $a : X \rightarrow A_{n+1}$ , and  $b : X \rightarrow B_{n+1}$  such that  $\langle c', a, a', b \rangle : X \rightarrow \text{Fib}(\tilde{f})_n$  factors through the inclusion  $Z_n(\text{Fib}(\tilde{f})) \hookrightarrow \text{Fib}(\tilde{f})_n$ , i.e.  $\partial_n \circ c' = 0$ ,  $-c' - \partial_{n+1} \circ a - a' = 0$ ,  $\partial_n \circ a' = 0$ , and  $f_n \circ a' - \partial_{n+1} \circ b = 0$ . Then,

$$\varsigma_n \circ k_n \circ \langle c', a, a', b \rangle = \langle -c', f_{n+1} \circ a + b \rangle$$

$$h_n \circ \langle c', a, a', b \rangle = \langle a', b \rangle$$

but noting that  $\partial_{n+1} : (\Omega \text{Cofib}(f))_{n+1} \rightarrow (\Omega \text{Cofib}(f))_n$  is defined by  $-\partial_{n+2} : \text{Cofib}(f)_{n+2} \rightarrow \text{Cofib}(f)_{n+1}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} (\zeta_n \circ k_n - h_n) \circ \langle c', a, a', b \rangle &= \langle -a' - c', f_{n+1} \circ a \rangle \\ &= \langle \partial_{n+1} \circ a, f_{n+1} \circ a \rangle \\ &= -\partial_{n+2} \circ \langle a, 0 \rangle \end{aligned}$$

so  $H_n(\zeta) \circ H_n(k) = H_n(h)$ , and therefore the following diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{H_n(\text{fib}(f))} & H_n(A) \\ H_n(\zeta) \downarrow & & \parallel \\ H_{n+1}(\text{Cofib}(f)) & \xrightarrow{\delta'_{n+1}} & H_n(A) \end{array}$$

By duality, we deduce that the diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  shown below also commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H_{n+1}(B) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{n+1}} & H_n(\text{Fib}(f)) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow H_n(\zeta) \\ H_{n+1}(B) & \xrightarrow{H_{n+1}(\text{cofib}(f))} & H_{n+1}(\text{Cofib}(f)) \end{array}$$

and this completes the proof. ■

**9.2.27** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism.*
- (ii) *The fibre  $\text{Fib}(f)_\bullet$  is an acyclic chain complex.*
- (iii) *The cofibre  $\text{Cofib}(f)_\bullet$  is an acyclic chain complex.* ■

**9.2.28** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Then  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ ) is a category of fibrant objects, where*

- *the weak equivalences are the quasi-isomorphisms,*
- *the fibrations are the epimorphisms, and*

- the trivial fibrations are the projective trivial fibrations.

Moreover,  $C_\bullet \mapsto \text{Path}(C)_\bullet$  is (the functor part of) a path object functor for  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (resp.  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\leq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$ ,  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$ ).

*Proof.* Axiom A is satisfied by lemma 9.2.3, axioms B and C are satisfied by propositions 9.1.27 and 9.2.10, axiom D is a special case of lemma 9.2.13 and proposition 9.2.14 (plus the 2-out-of-3 property), and axiom E is trivial. ■

**9.2.29** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- The **derived category** of  $\mathcal{A}$  is the category  $\mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A}) = \text{Ho } \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , i.e. the category obtained by freely inverting the quasi-isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .
- The **bounded-above derived category** of  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $\mathbf{D}^-(\mathcal{A}) = \text{Ho } \mathbf{Ch}^-(\mathcal{A})$ .
- The **bounded-below derived category** of  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $\mathbf{D}^+(\mathcal{A}) = \text{Ho } \mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A})$ .
- The **bounded derived category** of  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $\mathbf{D}^b(\mathcal{A}) = \text{Ho } \mathbf{Ch}^b(\mathcal{A})$ .

REMARK. For historical reasons, the terminology above uses cohomological conventions instead of homological conventions. (Derived categories originated in the study of sheaf cohomology.)

**9.2.30** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- (i)  $\mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive category and the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive functor.
- (ii)  $\mathbf{D}^-(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive category and the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathbf{Ch}^-(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}^-(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive functor.
- (iii)  $\mathbf{D}^+(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive category and the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}^+(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive functor.
- (iv)  $\mathbf{D}^b(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive category and the localising functor  $\gamma : \mathbf{Ch}^b(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}^b(\mathcal{A})$  is an additive functor.

*Proof.* The proofs of the four claims are similar; we will prove the first version.

It is not hard to see that  $\mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  has a zero object and  $\gamma : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  preserves zero objects; it remains to be shown that  $\mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  has biproducts and  $\gamma :$

$\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  preserves biproducts. But by [proposition 9.1.17](#), the diagonal functor

$$\Delta : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \times \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$$

has a simultaneous left and right adjoint, so [proposition A.4.19](#) and [corollary A.4.20](#) imply that the diagonal functor

$$\Delta : \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A}) \times \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$$

has a simultaneous left and right adjoint. Moreover, by considering the units and counits of these adjunctions, we see that this implies the existence of biproducts in  $\mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  and the preservation of biproducts by  $\gamma : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$ . ■

**9.2.31** REMARK. However,  $\mathbf{D}(\mathcal{A})$  fails to be an abelian category in general: see [Proposition 1.3.6](#) in [Verdier, 1996, Ch. II].

**9.2.32** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. Consider a commutative square in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & C_{\bullet} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ B_{\bullet} & \longrightarrow & D_{\bullet} \end{array}$$

- Assuming the square is a pushout diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , if  $A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism and  $A_{\bullet} \rightarrow C_{\bullet}$  is a monomorphism, then  $C_{\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet}$  is also a quasi-isomorphism.
- Assuming the square is a pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , if  $C_{\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism and  $B_{\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet}$  is an epimorphism, then  $A_{\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the second version.

By [theorem 9.2.28](#),  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a category of fibrant objects where the weak equivalences are the quasi-isomorphisms and the fibrations are the epimorphisms, so the claim is a special case of [proposition 4.2.7](#). ■



**9.2.33** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $C_\bullet$  be a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $0_{C_\bullet}$  be the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow C_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .*

(i) *We have the following exact sequence in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,*

$$0 \longrightarrow (\Omega C)_\bullet \longrightarrow \text{Path}(0_{C_\bullet})_\bullet \longrightarrow C_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$

*where  $(\Omega C)_\bullet \rightarrow \text{Path}(0_{C_\bullet})_\bullet$  is the evident inclusion and  $\text{Path}(0_{C_\bullet})_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$  is the evident projection.*

(ii) *We have the following pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (\Omega C)_\bullet & \hookrightarrow & \text{Path}(C)_\bullet \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & C_\bullet \oplus C_\bullet \end{array}$$

*where the top horizontal arrow is the evident inclusion and the right vertical arrow is the evident projection.*

(iii)  $(\Omega C)_\bullet$  *is (the object part of) a homotopy pullback of  $0_{C_\bullet}$  and  $0_{C_\bullet}$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .*

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

### 9.3 Double complexes

**Prerequisites.** §§3.1, 9.1, 9.2, A.7, A.8.

**9.3.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- A **double chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex in the category of chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ , i.e. a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 \cdots & \longleftarrow & C_{p,q-1} & \xleftarrow{\partial^{\leftarrow}} & C_{p,q} & \longleftarrow & \cdots \\
 & & \downarrow \partial^{\downarrow} & & \downarrow \partial^{\downarrow} & & \\
 \cdots & \longleftarrow & C_{p-1,q-1} & \xleftarrow{\partial^{\leftarrow}} & C_{p-1,q} & \longleftarrow & \cdots \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $\partial^{\downarrow} \circ \partial^{\downarrow} = 0$  and  $\partial^{\leftarrow} \circ \partial^{\leftarrow} = 0$ .

- A **double cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a cochain complex in the category of cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ , i.e. a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & \\
 & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
 \cdots & \longrightarrow & C^{p+1,q} & \xrightarrow{\partial_{\rightarrow}} & C^{p+1,q+1} & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\
 & & \uparrow \partial_{\uparrow} & & \uparrow \partial_{\uparrow} & & \\
 \cdots & \longrightarrow & C^{p,q} & \xrightarrow{\partial_{\rightarrow}} & C^{p+1,q} & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\
 & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
 & & \vdots & & \vdots & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $\partial_{\uparrow} \circ \partial_{\uparrow} = 0$  and  $\partial_{\rightarrow} \circ \partial_{\rightarrow} = 0$ .

**9.3.2** REMARK. Another definition, used in e.g. [Weibel, 1994], has *anticommutative* diagrams instead of commutative diagrams, i.e.  $\partial^{\downarrow} \circ \partial^{\leftarrow} + \partial^{\leftarrow} \circ \partial^{\downarrow} = 0$  and  $\partial_{\uparrow} \circ \partial_{\rightarrow} + \partial_{\rightarrow} \circ \partial_{\uparrow} = 0$ .

**9.3.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- A **bounded double chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a double chain complex  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that, for all integers  $n$  and *all but finitely many* integers  $p$ ,  $C_{p,n-p} = 0$ .
- A **bounded double cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a double chain complex  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that, for all integers  $n$  and *all but finitely many* integers  $p$ ,  $C^{p,n-p} = 0$ .
- A **first-quadrant double chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a double chain complex  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $C_{p,q} = 0$  if  $p < 0$  or  $q < 0$ .
- A **first-quadrant double cochain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a double cochain complex  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  such that  $C^{p,q} = 0$  if  $p < 0$  or  $q < 0$ .

**9.3.4** REMARK. A first-quadrant double (co)chain complex is the same thing as a (co)connective (co)chain complex in the category of (co)connective (co)chain complexes. Moreover, every first-quadrant double (co)chain complex is a bounded double (co)chain complex. In particular, bounded double (co)chain complexes may have infinitely many non-zero components.

**9.3.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  has enough coproducts, the **total chain complex** of a double chain complex  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the chain complex  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$  defined as follows,

$$\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_n = \bigoplus_{p+q=n} C_{p,q}$$

with differential  $\partial_n : \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_n \rightarrow \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_{n-1}$  defined on the summand  $C_{p,q}$  by  $\partial^\leftarrow + (-1)^p \partial^\downarrow : C_{p,q} \rightarrow C_{p-1,q} \oplus C_{p,q-1}$ .

- Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  has enough products, the **total cochain complex** of a double cochain complex  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the cochain complex  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)_\bullet$  defined as follows,

$$\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^n = \prod_{p+q=n} C^{p,q}$$

with differential  $\partial^n : \text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^n \rightarrow \text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^{n+1}$  defined in the factor  $C^{p,q}$  by  $\partial_\rightarrow + (-1)^p \partial_\uparrow : C_{p-1,q} \times C_{p,q-1} \rightarrow C_{p,q}$ .

**9.3.6** REMARK. The above formulae do define (co)chain complexes. Indeed, on the summand  $C_{p+1,q+1}$ :

$$(\partial^\leftarrow + (-1)^p \partial^\downarrow) \circ \partial^\leftarrow + (\partial^\leftarrow + \partial^\downarrow) \circ (-1)^{p+1} \partial^\downarrow = (-1)^p \partial^\downarrow \circ \partial^\leftarrow + (-1)^{p+1} \partial^\leftarrow \circ \partial^\downarrow = 0$$

Dually, in the factor  $C^{p-1,q-1}$ :

$$(\partial_\rightarrow + (-1)^p \partial_\uparrow) \circ \partial_\rightarrow + (\partial_\rightarrow + \partial_\uparrow) \circ (-1)^{p-1} \partial_\uparrow = (-1)^p \partial_\uparrow \circ \partial_\rightarrow + (-1)^{p-1} \partial_\rightarrow \circ \partial_\uparrow = 0$$

**9.3.7** REMARK. The total chain (resp. cochain) complex of a bounded double chain (resp. cochain) complex in an abelian category  $\mathcal{A}$  always exists. Moreover, if  $\mathcal{A}$  has countable coproducts (resp. products), then the total chain (resp. cochain) complex of any double chain (resp. cochain) complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  exists.

**9.3.8** LEMMA. Let  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double cochain complex in  $\mathbf{Ab}$ . If

- either for each integer  $p$ , the cochain complex  $C^{p,\bullet}$  is acyclic and, for each integer  $n$ , there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^{n-q,q} = 0$  for  $q > N$ ,
- or for each integer  $q$ , the cochain complex  $C^{\bullet,q}$  is acyclic and, for each integer  $n$ , there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^{p,n-p} = 0$  for  $p > N$ ,

then the total cochain complex  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^\bullet$  is acyclic.

*Proof.* Assume that  $C^{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic cochain complex for every integer  $p$ ; the other case can be proven similarly. For each  $(p, q)$ , let  $\bar{\partial}^\uparrow : C^{p,q} \rightarrow C^{p,q+1}$  be defined by  $(-1)^p \partial^\uparrow$ , and note that the cochain complex

$$\dots \longrightarrow C^{p,q-1} \xrightarrow{\bar{\partial}^\uparrow} C^{p,q} \xrightarrow{\bar{\partial}^\uparrow} C^{p,q+1} \longrightarrow \dots$$

is acyclic because the column  $C^{p,\bullet}$  is acyclic.

Let  $n$  be an integer. By hypothesis, there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^{n-q,q} = 0$  for  $q > N$ . Moreover, by choosing  $N$  large enough, we also have  $C^{n-N+1,N} = 0$ , and by reindexing if necessary, we may assume  $n = N = 0$ . Then:

$$\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^n = \prod_{p \geq 0} C^{p,-p}$$

Let  $c \in \text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^0$  and let  $c_p$  be the component of  $c$  in  $C^{p,-p}$ . (Note that  $c_p = 0$  for  $p < 0$ .) Suppose  $\partial(c) = 0$ , i.e.

$$\partial_\rightarrow(c_{p-1}) + \bar{\partial}_\uparrow(c_p) = 0$$

for all  $p \geq 0$ . Let  $\tilde{c}_p = 0 \in C^{p,-p}$  for  $p < 0$ . By assumption,  $C_{1,0} = 0$ , so this implies  $\bar{\partial}_\uparrow(c_0) = 0$ . Thus, we may choose  $\tilde{c}_0 \in C_{0,-1}$  such that  $\bar{\partial}_\uparrow(\tilde{c}_0) = c_0$ . By induction on  $p$  (for  $p \geq 0$ ), we may choose  $\tilde{c}_{p+1} \in C_{p+1,-p}$  satisfying the following equation,

$$\bar{\partial}_\uparrow(\tilde{c}_{p+1}) = c_{p+1} - \partial_\rightarrow(\tilde{c}_p)$$

because:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\partial}_\uparrow(c_{p+1} - \partial_\rightarrow(\tilde{c}_p)) &= \bar{\partial}_\uparrow(c_{p+1}) + \partial_\rightarrow(\bar{\partial}_\uparrow(\tilde{c}_p)) \\ &= \bar{\partial}_\uparrow(c_{p+1}) + \partial_\rightarrow(c_p - \partial_\rightarrow(\tilde{c}_{p-1})) \\ &= \bar{\partial}_\uparrow(c_{p+1}) + \partial_\rightarrow(c_p) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\tilde{c}$  be the unique element of  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)_{-1}$  whose component in  $C^{p,-p-1}$  is  $\tilde{c}_p$ . By construction,

$$\partial_\rightarrow(\tilde{c}_{p-1}) + \bar{\partial}_\uparrow(\tilde{c}_p) = c_p$$

so  $\partial(\tilde{c}) = c$ . We conclude that  $H_0(\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)) = 0$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

**9.3.9 COROLLARY.** *Let  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a bounded double cochain complex in  $\mathbf{Ab}$ . If*

- *either  $C^{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic cochain complex in  $\mathbf{Ab}$  for every integer  $p$ ,*
- *or  $C^{\bullet,q}$  is an acyclic cochain complex in  $\mathbf{Ab}$  for every integer  $q$ ,*

*then the total cochain complex  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^\bullet$  is acyclic.*  $\blacksquare$

**9.3.10 LEMMA (Bounded acyclic assembly lemma).** *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- *Let  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a bounded double chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . If*
  - *either  $C_{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for every integer  $p$ ,*
  - *or  $C_{\bullet,q}$  is an acyclic chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for every integer  $q$ ,*

*then the total chain complex  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$  is acyclic.*

- *Let  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a bounded double cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . If*
  - *either  $C^{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for every integer  $p$ ,*
  - *or  $C^{\bullet,q}$  is an acyclic cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for every integer  $q$ ,*

*then the total cochain complex  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)_\bullet$  is acyclic.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Consider  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  as a double cochain complex  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  by taking  $C^{-p,-q} = C_{p,q}$ . Clearly,  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  is a bounded double cochain complex because  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  is a bounded double chain complex. Moreover, by boundedness, the canonical comparison morphisms

$$\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(C)_n \rightarrow \mathrm{Tot}^\Pi(C)^{-n}$$

are isomorphisms, so it suffices to show that the total cochain complex  $\mathrm{Tot}^\Pi(C)^\bullet$  is acyclic. We may then use [theorem A.8.37](#) to reduce to [corollary 9.3.9](#). ■

**9.3.II** LEMMA (Unbounded acyclic assembly lemma). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- *Let  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5, if*

- *either  $C_{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for each integer  $p$  and there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C_{p,\bullet} = 0$  for  $p < N$ ,*
- *or  $C_{\bullet,q}$  is an acyclic chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for each integer  $q$  and there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C_{\bullet,q} = 0$  for  $q < N$ ,*

*then the total chain complex  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$  is acyclic.*

- *Let  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5\*, if*

- *either  $C^{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  for each integer  $p$  and there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^{p,\bullet} = 0$  for  $p < N$ ,*
- *or  $C^{\bullet,q}$  is an acyclic cochain complex for each integer  $q$  and there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C^{\bullet,q} = 0$  for  $q < N$ ,*

*then the total cochain complex  $\mathrm{Tot}^\Pi(C)_\bullet$  is acyclic.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Assume that  $C_{p,\bullet}$  is an acyclic chain complex for every integer  $p$ ; the other case can be proven similarly. For each integer  $n$ , let  $F_n C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be the following double subcomplex of  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$ :

$$F_n C_{p,q} = \begin{cases} 0 & q < n \\ Z_n(C_p) & q = n \\ C_{p,q} & q > n \end{cases}$$

By construction,  $F_n C_{\bullet, \bullet}$  is a double chain complex such that each column  $F_n C_{p, \bullet}$  is acyclic, and if there is an integer  $N$  such that  $C_{p, q} = 0$  for all  $p < N$ , then each  $F_n C_{\bullet, \bullet}$  is a bounded double chain complex. Thus, by [lemma 9.3.10](#), each  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(F_n C)$  is acyclic. On the other hand, we have the following sequence of double subcomplexes of  $C_{\bullet, \bullet}$ ,

$$F_0 C_{\bullet, \bullet} \hookrightarrow F_{-1} C_{\bullet, \bullet} \hookrightarrow F_{-2} C_{\bullet, \bullet} \hookrightarrow \dots$$

and it is clear that the inclusions  $F_n C_{\bullet, \bullet} \hookrightarrow C_{\bullet, \bullet}$  exhibit  $C_{\bullet, \bullet}$  as the filtered colimit  $\varinjlim_{n \geq 0} F_n C_{\bullet, \bullet}$ ; but colimits preserve colimits, so  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)$  is the filtered colimit  $\varinjlim_{n \geq 0} \text{Tot}^\oplus(F_n C)$ , and it follows by [proposition 9.1.18](#) that  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)$  is acyclic.  $\blacksquare$

**9.3.12** EXAMPLE. Consider the following diagram in **Ab**,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & \ddots & & \vdots & & 0 \\
 & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 \dots & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 0 & \longleftarrow & C_2 & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & 0 \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & 0 & \longleftarrow & C_2 & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & 0 \\
 & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & 0 & \longleftarrow & C_2 & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & 0 \\
 & & & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & & & 0 & \longleftarrow & C_2 & \longleftarrow & \mathbb{Z} & \longleftarrow & \dots \\
 & & & & & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \ddots \\
 & & & & & & & & 0 & & \vdots & & \ddots
 \end{array}$$

where each arrow  $\mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  is  $x \mapsto 2x$  and every row and every column is exact. The above diagram is then an unbounded chain complex  $C_{\bullet, \bullet}$ , and one may verify that  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$  is *not* a acyclic chain complex.

**9.3.13** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- *Consider a short exact sequence of double chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ :*

$$0 \longrightarrow A_{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{f_{\bullet,\bullet}} B_{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{g_{\bullet,\bullet}} C_{\bullet,\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

*Assuming the respective total chain complexes exist in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*

$$\mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(A)_{\bullet} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(f)_{\bullet}} \mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(B)_{\bullet} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(g)_{\bullet}} \mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(C)_{\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

*is a right exact sequence of chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and if*

- (i) *either  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB4,*
  - (ii) *or both  $A_{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $B_{\bullet,\bullet}$  are bounded double chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*
  - (iii) *or each  $f_{p,q} : A_{p,q} \rightarrow B_{p,q}$  is a split monomorphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*
- then  $\mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(f)_{\bullet} : \mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(A)_{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Tot}^{\oplus}(B)_{\bullet}$  is a monomorphism of chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ .*

- *Consider a short exact sequence of double chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ :*

$$0 \longrightarrow A^{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{f^{\bullet,\bullet}} B^{\bullet,\bullet} \xrightarrow{g^{\bullet,\bullet}} C^{\bullet,\bullet} \longrightarrow 0$$

*Assuming the respective total cochain complexes exist in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(A)^{\bullet} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(f)^{\bullet}} \mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(B)^{\bullet} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(g)^{\bullet}} \mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(C)^{\bullet}$$

*is a left exact sequence of cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and if*

- (i') *either  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB4\*,*
  - (ii') *or both  $A^{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $B^{\bullet,\bullet}$  are bounded double cochain complexes,*
  - (iii') *or each  $g^{p,q} : B^{p,q} \rightarrow C^{p,q}$  is a split epimorphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*
- then  $\mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(g)^{\bullet} : \mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(B)^{\bullet} \rightarrow \mathrm{Tot}^{\Pi}(C)^{\bullet}$  is an epimorphism of cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since colimits preserve cokernels, we indeed have the indicated right exact sequence. Moreover:



- In case (i), coproducts preserve monomorphisms, so each  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(f)_n$  is a monomorphism.
- Finite coproducts are also finite products, so in case (ii), each  $\text{Tot}^\oplus$  is a monomorphism.
- Coproducts of split monomorphisms are split monomorphisms, so in case (iii), each  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(f)_n$  is a monomorphism. ■

**9.3.14** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.*

- *Let  $h_{\bullet,\bullet} : A_{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a morphism of double chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming*

(i) *either  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5 and there is an integer  $N$  such that  $A_{p,\bullet} = C_{p,\bullet} = 0$  for  $p < N$ ,*

(ii) *or both  $A_{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A}))$ ,*

*if  $h_{p,\bullet} : A_{p,\bullet} \rightarrow C_{p,\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  for each integer  $p$ , then  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(h)_\bullet : \text{Tot}^\oplus(A)_\bullet \rightarrow \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$  is also a quasi-isomorphism.*

- *Let  $h^{\bullet,\bullet} : A^{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a morphism of double cochain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming*

(i) *either  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5\* and there is an integer  $N$  such that  $A^{p,\bullet} = C^{p,\bullet} = 0$  for  $p < N$ ,*

(ii) *or both  $A^{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathbf{Ch}^+(\mathcal{A}))$ ,*

*if  $h^{p,\bullet} : A^{p,\bullet} \rightarrow C^{p,\bullet}$  is a quasi-isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  for each integer  $p$ , then  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(h)^\bullet : \text{Tot}^\Pi(A)^\bullet \rightarrow \text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^\bullet$  is also a quasi-isomorphism.*

*Proof.* The two claims are dual; we will prove the first version.

By [corollary 9.2.16](#), we can factor  $h_{\bullet,\bullet}$  as  $f_{\bullet,\bullet} : A_{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow B_{\bullet,\bullet}$  followed by  $g_{\bullet,\bullet} : B_{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow C_{\bullet,\bullet}$ , where each  $f_{p,\bullet}$  is a split-injective trivial cofibration and each  $g_{p,\bullet}$  is a split projective trivial fibration. (Note that if  $A_{p,\bullet} = C_{p,\bullet} = 0$ , then  $B_{p,\bullet} = 0$  as well, and if both  $A_{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  are in  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A}))$ , then so is  $B_{\bullet,\bullet}$ .) Then, by [lemma 9.1.7](#) and [proposition 9.3.13](#),

$$0 \longrightarrow \text{Tot}^\oplus(A) \xrightarrow{\text{Tot}^\oplus(f)} \text{Tot}^\oplus(B) \longrightarrow \text{Tot}^\oplus(\text{Coker } f) \longrightarrow 0$$

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(\mathrm{Ker} g) \longrightarrow \mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(B) \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(g)} \mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(C) \longrightarrow 0$$

are short exact sequences in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ; but by lemma 9.2.6,  $\mathrm{Coker} f_{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $\mathrm{Ker} g_{\bullet,\bullet}$  are double chain complexes with acyclic columns, and the acyclic assembly lemma (lemma 9.3.11 in case (i) and lemma 9.3.10 in case (ii)) implies that the total chain complexes  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(\mathrm{Coker} f)$  and  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(\mathrm{Ker} f)$  are acyclic, so it follows that  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(f)$  and  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(g)$  are quasi-isomorphisms. Hence, (using lemma 9.2.3)  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(h) = \mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(g) \circ \mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(f)$  is indeed a quasi-isomorphism. ■

**9.3.15** DEFINITION. An **additive monoidal category** (resp. **abelian monoidal category**) is a monoidal category  $(\mathcal{A}, I, \otimes, \lambda, \rho, \alpha)$  satisfying the following additional axioms:

- $\mathcal{A}$  is an additive category (resp. abelian category).
- For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the functors  $(-) \otimes A, A \otimes (-) : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  are both additive.

Similarly, an **additive symmetric monoidal category** (resp. **abelian symmetric monoidal category**) is a symmetric monoidal category  $(\mathcal{A}, I, \otimes, \lambda, \rho, \alpha, \gamma)$  satisfying the above axioms.

**9.3.16** EXAMPLE. **Ab** (with the usual tensor product) is an abelian symmetric monoidal category.

**9.3.17** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian symmetric monoidal category. Given chain complexes  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the **Koszul product**  $(A \otimes B)_\bullet$  is the total chain complex  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(A \otimes B)_\bullet$  (assuming it exists), where  $A_\bullet \otimes B_\bullet$  is the double complex obtained by applying the monoidal product in  $\mathcal{A}$  degreewise.

**9.3.18** REMARK. If  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  are connective (resp. bounded-above, bounded-below, bounded) chain complexes, then so is  $\mathrm{Tot}^\oplus(A \otimes B)_\bullet$ .

**9.3.19** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian symmetric monoidal category, let  $I$  be the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $D_\bullet^1$  be the following chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,

$$D_n^1 = \begin{cases} I \oplus I & n = 0 \\ I & n = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

with differential  $\partial_1 : D_1^1 \rightarrow D_0^1$  given by the matrix  $(\mathrm{id} \quad -\mathrm{id})$ . Then, for any chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , we have  $\mathrm{Cyl}(C)_\bullet \cong (D^1 \otimes C)_\bullet$ .

**9.3.20 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian monoidal category. If  $\mathcal{A}$  has coproducts for countable families of objects and, for each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the functors  $(-) \otimes A, A \otimes (-) : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserve these coproducts, then:*

- (i)  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category.
- (ii)  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category.
- (iii)  $\mathbf{Ch}_-(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category.
- (iv)  $\mathbf{Ch}_+(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category.
- (v)  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category.

*Proof.* (i). By [proposition 9.1.17](#),  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is an abelian category, and it is clear that the Koszul product is additive in each variable. Let  $I$  be the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{A}$  and let  $I_\bullet$  be the chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined below:

$$I_n = \begin{cases} I & n = 0 \\ 0 & n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

Given any chain complex  $A_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the Koszul product  $(A \otimes I)_\bullet$  can be identified with the chain complex  $A_\bullet \otimes I$  (with the obvious differentials, i.e.  $\partial \otimes \text{id}_I$ ), so we may define the right unitor for the Koszul product in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  degreewise using the right unitor in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Similarly, the Koszul product  $(I \otimes A)_\bullet$  can be identified with the chain complex  $I \otimes A_\bullet$  (with the obvious differentials), and we define the left unitor in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  analogously.

Now, let  $A_\bullet$ ,  $B_\bullet$ , and  $C_\bullet$  be chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Using the fact that  $\otimes$  preserves countable coproducts in  $\mathcal{A}$  in each variable, we may make the following identifications:

$$\begin{aligned} ((A \otimes B) \otimes C)_n &= \text{Tot}^\oplus(\text{Tot}^\oplus(A \otimes B) \otimes C)_n = \bigoplus_{p+q+r=n} (A_p \otimes B_q) \otimes C_r \\ (A \otimes (B \otimes C))_n &= \text{Tot}^\oplus(A \otimes \text{Tot}^\oplus(B \otimes C))_n = \bigoplus_{p+q+r=n} A_p \otimes (B_q \otimes C_r) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the associator in  $\mathcal{A}$  induces an evident isomorphism  $((A \otimes B) \otimes C)_n \rightarrow (A \otimes (B \otimes C))_n$ , and it is a straightforward calculation to see that this defines an isomorphism  $((A \otimes B) \otimes C)_\bullet \rightarrow (A \otimes (B \otimes C))_\bullet$ .

Finally, we must verify the coherence axioms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , but it is clear from our definitions that they are consequences of the coherence axioms in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

(ii)–(v). By [corollary 9.1.24](#) and [proposition 9.1.27](#), the categories in question are abelian categories, and we may use [remark 9.3.18](#) to reduce to (i). ■

**9.3.21** REMARK. In fact, a more careful version of the above proof shows that  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category if  $\mathcal{A}$  is, without any assumption on the existence or preservation of countable coproducts. (Of course, the definition of abelian monoidal category ensures that the monoidal product in  $\mathcal{A}$  preserves *finite* coproducts in each variable.)

**9.3.22** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian symmetric monoidal category. If  $\mathcal{A}$  has coproducts for countable families of objects and, for each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , the functors  $(-) \otimes A, A \otimes (-) : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  preserve these coproducts, then  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian symmetric monoidal category.*

*Proof.* [Proposition 9.3.20](#) says that  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product) is an abelian monoidal category; it remains to be shown that the Koszul product is symmetric. Let  $\gamma$  be the symmetry isomorphism in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Given chain complexes  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , we define the isomorphism  $(\gamma_{A,B})_n : (A \otimes B)_n \rightarrow (B \otimes A)_n$  on the summand  $A_p \otimes B_q$  by  $(-1)^{pq} \gamma_{A_p, B_q} : A_p \otimes B_q \rightarrow B_q \otimes A_p$ . It is a straightforward calculation to see that this defines an isomorphism  $(A \otimes B)_\bullet \rightarrow (B \otimes A)_\bullet$ .

We must now verify the coherence axioms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ . Let  $A_\bullet, B_\bullet$  and  $C_\bullet$  be chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . The verification of the two hexagon axioms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  essentially reduces to showing that the following diagrams commute in  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & A_p \otimes (B_q \otimes C_r) & & \\
 & \nearrow \alpha_{A_p, B_q, C_r} & & \searrow (-1)^{p(q+r)} \gamma_{A_p, B_q \otimes C_r} & \\
 (A_p \otimes B_q) \otimes C_r & & & & (B_q \otimes C_r) \otimes A_p \\
 \downarrow (-1)^{pq} \gamma_{A_p, B_q} \otimes \text{id}_{C_r} & & & & \downarrow \alpha_{B_q, C_r, A_p} \\
 (B_q \otimes A_p) \otimes C_r & & & & B_q \otimes (C_r \otimes A_p) \\
 \searrow \alpha_{B_q, A_p, C_r} & & & \nearrow \text{id}_{B_q} \otimes (-1)^{pr} \gamma_{A_p, C_r} & \\
 & & B_q \otimes (A_p \otimes C_r) & & 
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & (A_p \otimes B_q) \otimes C_r & \\
 \alpha_{A_p, B_q, C_r}^{-1} \nearrow & & \searrow (-1)^{(p+q)r} \gamma_{A_p \otimes B_q, C_r} \\
 A_p \otimes (B_q \otimes C_r) & & C_r \otimes (A_p \otimes B_q) \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_{A_p} \otimes (-1)^{qr} \gamma_{B_q, C_r} & & \downarrow \alpha_{B_q, C_r, A_p}^{-1} \\
 A_p \otimes (C_r \otimes B_q) & & (C_r \otimes A_p) \otimes B_q \\
 \alpha_{B_q, A_p, C_r}^{-1} \searrow & & \nearrow (-1)^{pr} \gamma_{A_p, C_r} \otimes \text{id}_{B_q} \\
 & (A_p \otimes C_r) \otimes B_q &
 \end{array}$$

It is clear that the triangle axiom is satisfied in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ , and we certainly have  $(\gamma_{B,A})_\bullet \circ (\gamma_{A,B})_\bullet = \text{id}_{(A \otimes B)_\bullet}$ , so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**9.3.23** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian monoidal category, let  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  be chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $(p, q)$  be a pair of integers. Assuming the Koszul product  $(A \otimes B)_\bullet$  exists, if the monoidal product in  $\mathcal{A}$  preserves cokernels in each variable, then:

- (i) There is a unique morphism  $Z_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) \rightarrow Z_{p+q}(A \otimes B)$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Z_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) & \dashrightarrow & Z_{p+q}(A \otimes B) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 A_p \otimes B_q & \hookrightarrow & (A \otimes B)_{p+q}
 \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the natural inclusion  $Z_n \Rightarrow \text{id}$  and the bottom horizontal arrow is the evident inclusion.

- (ii) There exist a unique morphism  $B_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) \rightarrow B_{p+q}(A \otimes B)$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) & \dashrightarrow & B_{p+q}(A \otimes B) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 A_p \otimes B_q & \hookrightarrow & (A \otimes B)_{p+q}
 \end{array}$$

and a unique morphism  $Z_p(A) \otimes B_q(B) \rightarrow B_{p+q}(A \otimes B)$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z_p(A) \otimes B_q(B) & \dashrightarrow & B_{p+q}(A \otimes B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ A_p \otimes B_q & \rightarrow & (A \otimes B)_{p+q} \end{array}$$

where (in both diagrams) the vertical arrows are induced by the natural inclusion  $B_n \Rightarrow \text{id}$  and the bottom horizontal arrow is the evident inclusion.

- (iii) There is a unique morphism  $H_p(A) \otimes H_q(B) \rightarrow H_{p+q}(A \otimes B)$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) & \longrightarrow & Z_{p+q}(A \otimes B) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ H_p(A) \otimes H_q(B) & \dashrightarrow & H_{p+q}(A \otimes B) \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the natural quotient  $Z_n \Rightarrow H_n$  and the top horizontal arrow is defined as in (i).

*Proof.* (i). Uniqueness is automatic, since  $Z_{p+q}(A \otimes B) \rightarrow (A \otimes B)_{p+q}$  is a monomorphism. For existence, it suffices to verify that the composite

$$Z_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) \longrightarrow A_p \otimes B_q \rightarrow (A \otimes B)_{p+q} \xrightarrow{\partial} (A \otimes B)_{p+q-1}$$

is zero, which is straightforward.

(ii). We will prove the first half of the claim; the second half is similar. As before, uniqueness is automatic. For existence, note that  $(-) \otimes Z_q(B)$  preserves epimorphisms (because it preserves cokernels), and the following diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A_{p+1} \otimes Z_q(B) & \rightarrow & (A \otimes B)_{p+q+1} \\ \downarrow \partial_{p+1} \otimes \text{id}_{Z_q(B)} & & \downarrow \partial_{p+q+1} \\ A_p \otimes Z_q(B) & \rightarrow & (A \otimes B)_{p+q} \end{array}$$

so we indeed have a morphism  $B_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) \rightarrow B_{p+q}(A \otimes B)$  of the required form.

(iii). By the definition of homology objects, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 B_p(A) \otimes B_q(B) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(A) \otimes B_q(B) & \longrightarrow & H_p(A) \otimes B_q(B) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 B_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) & \longrightarrow & H_p(A) \otimes Z_q(B) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 B_p(A) \otimes H_q(B) & \longrightarrow & Z_p(A) \otimes H_q(B) & \longrightarrow & H_p(A) \otimes H_q(B) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 0 & & 0 & & 0 & & 
 \end{array}$$

where the rows and columns are exact sequences. By [lemma A.8.39](#), the lower-right square is a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$ , so the claim follows by combining (i) and (ii).  $\blacksquare$

**9.3.24 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian (symmetric) monoidal category and let  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  be chain complexes in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  has coproducts for countable families of objects, if the monoidal product in  $\mathcal{A}$  preserves cokernels and countable coproducts in each variable, then:*

(i)  $Z_0 : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is a (symmetric) lax monoidal functor.

(ii)  $H_0 : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is a (symmetric) lax monoidal functor.

*Proof.* Let  $I$  be the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{A}$  and let  $I_\bullet$  be the unit for the Koszul product. It is clear that  $I \cong Z_0(I) \cong H_0(I)$ , and [lemma 9.3.23](#) gives us natural transformations  $Z_0(-) \otimes Z_0(-) \Rightarrow Z_0(- \otimes -)$  and  $H_0(-) \otimes H_0(-) \Rightarrow H_0(- \otimes -)$ . The coherence axioms are straightforward to verify, using the natural inclusion  $Z_0 \Rightarrow \text{id}$  and the natural quotient  $Z_0 \Rightarrow B_0$ .  $\blacksquare$

**9.3.25 DEFINITION.**

- An **additive symmetric monoidal closed category** (resp. **abelian symmetric monoidal closed category**) is a symmetric monoidal closed category that is also an additive category (resp. abelian category).
- An **abelian cosmos** is an abelian symmetric monoidal closed category that also has limits and colimits for all small diagrams.

**9.3.26** REMARK. In a symmetric monoidal closed category, the monoidal product preserves colimits in each variable. Thus, in an additive or abelian symmetric monoidal closed category, the monoidal product is automatically additive in each variable.

**9.3.27** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian symmetric monoidal closed category. Given chain complexes  $B_\bullet$  and  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  has enough products, the **Koszul hom-complex**  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_\bullet$  is defined as follows,

$$\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_r = \prod_q \mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_{q+r})$$

where  $\mathcal{H}om$  is the internal hom in  $\mathcal{A}$ , with differential  $\partial_r : \underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_r \rightarrow \underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_{r-1}$  defined in the factor  $\mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_{q+r-1})$  by:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{H}om(B_q, \partial_{q+r}) - (-1)^r \mathcal{H}om(\partial_q, C_{q+r-1}) : \\ \mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_{q+r}) \times \mathcal{H}om(B_{q-1}, C_{q+r-1}) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_{q+r-1}) \end{aligned}$$

**9.3.28** REMARK. If  $B_\bullet$  and  $C_\bullet$  are bounded chain complexes, then  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_\bullet$  (exists and) is also a bounded chain complex. Similarly, if  $B_\bullet$  is bounded above (resp. bounded below) and  $C_\bullet$  is bounded below (resp. bounded above), then  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_\bullet$  is bounded below (resp. bounded above), assuming it exists.

**9.3.29** REMARK. Let  $I$  be the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Observe that  $\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_0 = \prod_q \mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_q)$ , so we have the following natural isomorphism:

$$\mathcal{A}(I, \underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_0) \cong \prod_q \mathcal{A}(B_q, C_q)$$

On the other hand,

$$\mathcal{A}(I, Z_0(\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C))) \cong \text{Hom}_{\text{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(B, C)$$

so we should think of  $Z_0(\underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C))$  as being the (sub)object of chain complex morphisms  $B_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$ .



**9.3.30** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian symmetric monoidal closed category, let  $I$  be the monoidal unit in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $D_\bullet^1$  be the following chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,

$$D_n^1 = \begin{cases} I \oplus I & n = 0 \\ I & n = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

with differential  $\partial_1 : D_1^1 \rightarrow D_0^1$  given by the matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{id} \\ -\text{id} \end{pmatrix}$ . Then, for any chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , we have  $\text{Path}(C)_\bullet \cong \underline{\text{Hom}}(D^1, C)_\bullet$ . (However, note that one has to account for some sign differences in the isomorphism.)

**9.3.31** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian symmetric monoidal closed category.

- (i) If  $\mathcal{A}$  has products and coproducts for countable families of objects, then  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product and the Koszul hom-complex) is an abelian symmetric monoidal closed category.
- (ii)  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  (with the Koszul product and the Koszul hom-complex) is an abelian symmetric monoidal closed category.

*Proof.* (i). For each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers, let  $f_{p,q} : A_p \otimes B_q \rightarrow C_{p+q}$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$  and let  $g_{p,q} : A_p \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_{p+q})$  be the adjoint transpose. Then,

$$\partial_{p+q} \circ f_{p,q} = f_{p-1,q} \circ (\partial_p \otimes \text{id}_{B_q}) + (-1)^p f_{p,q-1} \circ (\text{id}_{A_p} \otimes \partial_q)$$

if and only if

$$\mathcal{H}om(B_q, \partial_{p+q}) \circ g_{p,q} = g_{p-1,q} \circ \partial_p + (-1)^p \mathcal{H}om(\partial_q, C_{p+q-1}) \circ g_{p,q-1}$$

if and only if

$$\mathcal{H}om(B_q, \partial_{p+q}) \circ g_{p,q} - (-1)^p \mathcal{H}om(\partial_q, C_{p+q-1}) \circ g_{p,q-1} = g_{p-1,q} \circ \partial_p$$

so we have a chain complex morphism  $f_\bullet : (A \otimes B)_\bullet \rightarrow C_\bullet$  defined on the summand  $A_p \otimes B_q$  by  $f_{p,q}$  if and only if we have a chain complex morphism  $g_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow \underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C)_\bullet$  defined in the factor  $\mathcal{H}om(B_q, C_{p+q})$  by  $g_{p,q}$ . Thus, we have an isomorphism

$$\text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(A \otimes B, C) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(A, \underline{\text{Hom}}(B, C))$$

and it is natural in  $A_\bullet$ ,  $B_\bullet$ , and  $C_\bullet$ . Recalling [proposition 9.3.22](#), this completes the proof that  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  is a symmetric monoidal closed category.

(ii). Recalling [remarks 9.3.21](#) and [9.3.28](#), the above calculation also shows that  $\mathbf{Ch}_b(\mathcal{A})$  is a symmetric monoidal closed category. ■

**9.3.32** REMARK. It is straightforward to check that the action of  $\underline{\mathrm{Hom}} : \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \times \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  on morphisms (as induced by the adjunction) is the one defined by the obvious formula:

$$\underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(g, h)_r = \prod_q \underline{\mathrm{Hom}}(g_q, h_{q+r})$$

## 9.4 Filtered complexes

**Prerequisites.** §§9.1, 9.2, 9.3, A.7, A.8.

**9.4.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- An **ascending filtration**  $F_{\bullet}C$  on an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an increasing integer-indexed sequence of subobjects of  $C$ :

$$\cdots \leq F_{n-1}C \leq F_nC \leq F_{n+1}C \leq \cdots \leq C$$

- A **descending filtration**  $F^{\bullet}C$  on an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a decreasing integer-indexed sequence of subobjects of  $C$ :

$$\cdots \leq F^{n+1}C \leq F^nC \leq F^{n-1}C \leq \cdots \leq C$$

**9.4.2** REMARK. Clearly, any descending filtration  $F^{\bullet}C$  can be made into an ascending filtration  $F_{\bullet}C$  by taking  $F_nC = F^{-n}C$ . For the rest of this section, **filtration** always means ascending filtration.

**9.4.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- An **exhaustive filtration** on an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a filtration  $F_{\bullet}C$  on  $C$  such that

$$\sup \{ F_nC \mid n \in \mathbb{Z} \} = C \text{ in } \text{Sub}_{\mathcal{C}}(C)$$

i.e. for any subobject  $C' \leq C$ , if  $F_nC \leq C'$  for all integers  $n$ , then  $C' = C$ .

- A **separated filtration** on an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a filtration  $F_{\bullet}C$  on  $C$  such that

$$\inf \{ F_nC \mid n \in \mathbb{Z} \} = \perp \text{ in } \text{Sub}_{\mathcal{C}}(C)$$

i.e. for any subobject  $C' \leq C$ , if  $C' \leq F_nC$  for all integers  $n$ , then  $C' = \perp$ .

**9.4.4** REMARK. The above definition works verbatim for both ascending and descending filtrations.

**9.4.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $M$  be a monoid.

- A  **$M$ -graded object**  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an  $M$ -indexed family  $(C_m \mid m \in M)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- Let  $A_\bullet$  and  $B_\bullet$  be  $M$ -graded objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $d$  be an element of  $M$ . A  **$M$ -graded morphism**  $f_\bullet : A_\bullet \rightarrow B_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  of **degree**  $d$  is an  $M$ -indexed family  $(f_m \mid m \in M)$  of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , where each  $f_m$  is a morphism  $A_m \rightarrow B_{m+d}$ .
- The **category of  $M$ -graded objects** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is the category  $\mathbf{Grd}_M(\mathcal{C})$  whose objects are  $M$ -graded objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  and whose morphisms are  $M$ -graded morphisms of all degrees.

We say ‘graded’ instead of ‘ $\mathbb{Z}$ -graded’ and ‘bigraded’ instead of ‘ $(\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z})$ -graded’.

**9.4.6** REMARK. Let  $\mathbb{B}M$  be the one-object category corresponding to  $M$ . Then  $\mathbf{Grd}_M(\mathcal{C})$  is isomorphic to the Grothendieck construction<sup>[1]</sup>  $\mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathbb{1}, \mathbb{B}M, \mathbb{F})$  where  $\mathbb{F}$  is the  $\mathbb{B}M^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category corresponding to evident left  $M$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}^M$ .

**9.4.7** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $F_\bullet C$  be a filtration on an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $n$  be an integer.

- The  **$n$ -th layer** of  $F_\bullet C$  is the object  $\text{gr}(FC)_n = \text{Coker}(F_{n-1}C \rightarrowtail F_n C)$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- The **associated graded object** is the graded object  $\text{gr}(FC)_\bullet$ .

**9.4.8** REMARK. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $C$  be an object in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $F_\bullet C$  be a filtration on  $C$ . For every integer  $n$ , we have the following exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,

$$0 \longrightarrow F_{n-1}C \xrightarrow{i_n} F_n C \xrightarrow{j_n} \text{gr}(C)_n \longrightarrow 0$$

where  $i_n : F_{n-1}C \rightarrowtail F_n C$  is the inclusion and  $j_n : F_n C \rightarrow \text{gr}(C)_n$  is the cokernel. Then  $i_\bullet : F_\bullet C \rightarrow F_\bullet C$  is a graded morphism of degree 1 and  $j_\bullet : F_\bullet C \rightarrow \text{gr}(C)_\bullet$  is a graded morphism of degree 0.

The following notion is due to Massey [1952].

---

[1] See [definition B.5.35](#).

**9.4.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $r$  be an integer. An **exact couple** in  $\mathcal{A}$  of **degree**  $r$  consists of the following data:

- Bigraded objects  $D_{\bullet,\bullet}$  and  $E_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- A bigraded morphism  $i_{\bullet,\bullet} : D_{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $(1, -1)$ .
- A bigraded morphism  $j_{\bullet,\bullet} : D_{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow E_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $(-r, r)$ .
- A bigraded morphism  $k_{\bullet,\bullet} : E_{\bullet,\bullet} \rightarrow D_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $(-1, 0)$ .

These data are required to satisfy the following condition:

- For every pair  $(p, q)$  of integers,

$$E_{p,q} \xrightarrow{k_{p,q}} D_{p-1,q} \xrightarrow{i_{p-1,q}} D_{p,q-1} \xrightarrow{j_{p,q-1}} E_{p-r,q+r-1} \xrightarrow{k_{p-r,q+r-1}} D_{p-r-1,q+r-1}$$

is an exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

**9.4.10** REMARK. Let  $\partial_{p,q} : E_{p,q} \rightarrow E_{p-r-1,q+r}$  be  $j_{p-1,q} \circ k_{p,q}$ . Then,

$$\partial_{p,q} \circ \partial_{p+r+1,q-r} = j_{p-1,q} \circ k_{p,q} \circ j_{p+r,q-r} \circ k_{p+r+1,q-r} = 0$$

so we obtain a chain complex:

$$\cdots \longrightarrow E_{p+r+1,q-r} \xrightarrow{\partial_{p+r+1,q-r}} E_{p,q} \xrightarrow{\partial_{p,q}} E_{p-r-1,q+r} \longrightarrow \cdots$$

**9.4.11** LEMMA (Derived couples). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $r$  be an integer, and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $r$ . With  $\partial_{p,q} = j_{p-1,q} \circ k_{p,q}$ , we define the following:*

- $D'_{p,q} = \text{Im}(i_{p-1,q+1})$ .
- $E'_{p,q} = \text{Coker}(\text{Im}(\partial_{p+r+1,q-r}) \rightarrow \text{Ker}(\partial_{p,q}))$ .
- $i'_{p,q} : D'_{p,q} \rightarrow D'_{p+1,q-1}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} D'_{p,q} & \xrightarrow{i'_{p,q}} & D'_{p+1,q-1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ D_{p,q} & \xrightarrow{i_{p,q}} & D_{p+1,q-1} \end{array}$$

- $j'_{p,q} : D'_{p,q} \rightarrow E'_{p-r-1,q+r+1}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 D'_{p,q} & \xrightarrow{j'_{p,q}} & E'_{p-r-1,q+r+1} \\
 \uparrow \text{coim}(i_{p-1,q+1}) & & \uparrow \\
 D_{p-1,q+1} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \text{Ker}(\partial_{p-r-1,q+r+1}) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 D_{p-1,q+1} & \xrightarrow{j_{p-1,q+1}} & E_{p-r-1,q+r+1}
 \end{array}$$

- $k'_{p,q} : E'_{p,q} \rightarrow D'_{p-1,q}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 E'_{p,q} & \xrightarrow{k'_{p,q}} & D'_{p-1,q} \\
 \uparrow & & \parallel \\
 \text{Ker}(\partial_{p,q}) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & D'_{p-1,q} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 E_{p,q} & \xrightarrow{k_{p,q}} & D_{p-1,q}
 \end{array}$$

Then  $(D'_{\bullet,\bullet}, E'_{\bullet,\bullet}, i'_{\bullet,\bullet}, j'_{\bullet,\bullet}, k'_{\bullet,\bullet})$  is an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $r+1$ , called the **derived couple** of  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$ .

*Proof.* The claim is that for every pair  $(p, q)$  of integers,

$$E'_{p,q} \xrightarrow{k'_{p,q}} D'_{p-1,q} \xrightarrow{i'_{p-1,q}} D'_{p,q-1} \xrightarrow{j'_{p,q-1}} E'_{p-r-1,q+r} \xrightarrow{k'_{p-r-1,q+r}} D'_{p-r-2,q+r}$$

is an exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and recalling [theorem A.8.37](#), it suffices to prove this in the case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Ab}$ . For ease of notation, we will suppress subscript indices in this proof.

To begin, observe that by pasting the commutative diagrams defining  $i' : D' \rightarrow D'$ ,  $j' : D' \rightarrow E'$  and  $k' : E' \rightarrow D'$ , we may deduce that  $j' \circ i' = 0$ ,  $k' \circ j' = 0$ , and  $i' \circ k' = 0$ . Thus,  $\text{Im } i' \subseteq \text{Ker } j'$ ,  $\text{Im } j' \subseteq \text{Ker } k'$ , and  $\text{Im } k' \subseteq \text{Ker } i'$ ; the opposite inclusions remain to be shown.

Let  $d \in D$ . Suppose  $d = i(\tilde{d})$  for some  $\tilde{d} \in D$  and  $j(\tilde{d}) \in \text{Im } \partial$ . So there is some  $e \in E$  such that  $j(\tilde{d}) = \partial(e)$ , and  $j(\tilde{d} - k(e)) = j(\tilde{d}) - \partial(e) = 0$ , so  $\tilde{d} - k(e) \in D' = \text{Im } i = \text{Ker } j$ . Thus,  $\text{Im } i' \supseteq \text{Ker } j'$ .

Let  $e \in E$ . Suppose  $k(e) = 0$ . Then there is some  $d \in D$  such that  $j(d) = e$ , and therefore  $\text{Im } j' \supseteq \text{Ker } k'$ .

Let  $d \in D$ . Suppose  $i(d) = 0$ . Then there is  $e \in E$  such that  $k(e) = d$ , and moreover, if  $d \in D' = \text{Im } i = \text{Ker } j$ , then  $\partial(e) = j(k(e)) = j(d) = 0$ , so  $e \in \text{Ker } \partial$ . It follows that  $\text{Im } k' \supseteq \text{Ker } i'$ .  $\blacksquare$

**9.4.12 LEMMA** (Iterated derived couples). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $r$  be an integer, and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $r$ .*

(i) *Let  $\partial_{\bullet,\bullet} = j_{\bullet,\bullet} \circ k_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathbf{Grd}_{\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{A})$ . Then,*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Im}(\partial_{p+r+1, q-r}) &= \text{Im}(j_{p+r, q-r} \circ \ker(i_{p+r, q-r})) \\ \text{Ker}(\partial_{p, q}) &= \text{Ker}(\text{coker}(i_{p-2, q+1}) \circ k_{p, q}) \end{aligned}$$

*as subobjects of  $E_{p, q}$ .*

(ii) *For each positive integer  $n$ , let  $i_{\bullet,\bullet}^{s,n}$  be the  $s$ -fold composite  $i_{\bullet,\bullet} \circ \dots \circ i_{\bullet,\bullet}$  in  $\mathbf{Grd}_{\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}}(\mathcal{A})$ , and let  $B_{p, q}^s$  and  $Z_{p, q}^s$  be the following subobjects of  $E_{p, q}$ :*

$$\begin{aligned} B_{p, q}^s &= \text{Im}(j_{p+r, q-r} \circ \ker(i_{p+r, q-r}^{s,n})) \\ Z_{p, q}^s &= \text{Ker}(\text{coker}(i_{p-s-1, q+s}^{s,n}) \circ k_{p, q}) \end{aligned}$$

*Then,*

$$B_{p, q}^1 \leq B_{p, q}^2 \leq B_{p, q}^3 \leq \dots \leq Z_{p, q}^3 \leq Z_{p, q}^2 \leq Z_{p, q}^1$$

*as subobjects of  $E_{p, q}$ .*

(iii) *Moreover,  $\text{Im}(j_{p+r, q-r}) \leq Z_{p, q}^s$  (as subobjects of  $E_{p, q}$ ) for all positive integers  $s$ .*

(iv) *Let  $(D'_{\bullet,\bullet}, E'_{\bullet,\bullet}, i'_{\bullet,\bullet}, j'_{\bullet,\bullet}, k'_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be the derived couple and let  $B'_{p, q}{}^s$  and  $Z'_{p, q}{}^s$  be the following subobjects of  $E_{p, q}$ :*

$$\begin{aligned} B'_{p, q}{}^s &= \text{Im}(j'_{p+r+1, q-r-1} \circ \ker(i'_{p+r+1, q-r-1}{}^{s,n})) \\ Z'_{p, q}{}^s &= \text{Ker}(\text{coker}(i'_{p-n-1, q+n}{}^{s,n}) \circ k'_{p, q}) \end{aligned}$$

*Then, we have the following pullback diagrams in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B_{p, q}^{s+1} & \longrightarrow & B'_{p, q}{}^s \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Z_{p, q}^1 & \longrightarrow & E'_{p, q} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} Z_{p, q}^{s+1} & \longrightarrow & Z'_{p, q}{}^s \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Z_{p, q}^1 & \longrightarrow & E'_{p, q} \end{array}$$

where  $Z_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow E'_{p,q}$  is  $\text{coker}(B_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow Z_{p,q}^1)$ .

(v) Let  $n$  be a positive integer and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}^{(s)}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}^{(s)}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}^{(s)}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}^{(s)}, k_{\bullet,\bullet}^{(s)})$  be the  $s$ -th derived couple. Then there is a natural short exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below,

$$0 \longrightarrow B_{p,q}^s \longrightarrow Z_{p,q}^s \longrightarrow E_{p,q}^{(s)} \longrightarrow 0$$

where  $B_{p,q}^s \rightarrow Z_{p,q}^s$  is the inclusion.

*Proof.* (i). It is not hard to see that

$$\text{Im}(\partial_{p+r+1,q-r}) = \text{Im}(j_{p+r,q-r} \circ \text{im}(k_{p+r+1,q-r}))$$

and since  $\text{im}(k_{p+r+1,q-r}) = \ker(i_{p+r,q-r})$  by definition, it follows that

$$\text{Im}(\partial_{p+r+1,q-r}) = \text{Im}(j_{p+r+1,q-r} \circ \ker(i_{p+r,q-r}))$$

as claimed. Similarly, it is straightforward to see that

$$\text{Ker}(\partial_{p,q}) = \text{Ker}(\text{coker}(\ker(j_{p-1,q})) \circ k_{p,q})$$

and since  $\ker(j_{p-1,q}) = \text{im}(i_{p-2,q+1})$  by definition,

$$\text{Ker}(\partial_{p,q}) = \text{Ker}(\text{coker}(\text{im}(i_{p-2,q+1})) \circ k_{p,q})$$

but  $\text{coker} \text{im}(i_{p-2,q+1}) = \text{coker}(i_{p-2,q+1})$ , therefore:

$$\text{Ker}(\partial_{p,q}) = \text{Ker}(\text{coker}(i_{p-2,q+1}) \circ k_{p,q})$$

(ii). Since  $k_{p,q} \circ j_{p+r,q-r} = 0$ , we must have  $B_{p,q}^s \leq Z_{p,q}^s$ . Clearly,  $\text{Ker}(i_{p+r,q-r}^{\circ s}) \leq \text{Ker}(i_{p+r,q-r}^{\circ(s+1)})$ , so  $B_{p,q}^s \leq B_{p,q}^{s+1}$ . Similarly,  $\text{Im}(i_{p-s-2,q+s+1}^{\circ(s+1)}) \leq \text{Im}(i_{p-s-1,q+s}^{\circ s})$ , so  $Z_{p,q}^{s+1} \leq Z_{p,q}^s$ .

(iii). By definition,  $\text{Im}(j_{p+r,q-r}) = \text{Ker}(k_{p,q})$ , and  $\text{Ker}(k_{p,q}) \leq Z_{p,q}^s$ , so the claim follows.

(iv). Recalling [theorem A.8.37](#), it suffices to prove this claim in the case where  $\mathcal{A} = \mathbf{Ab}$ . For ease of notation, we will suppress subscript indices on morphisms.



Let  $e_{p,q} \in Z_{p,q}^1$  and let  $[e_{p,q}]$  be its image in  $E'_{p,q}$ . First, suppose  $e_{p,q} \in B_{p,q}^{s+1}$ , i.e.  $e_{p,q} = j(d_{p+r,q-r})$  for some  $d_{p+r,q-r} \in D_{p+r,q-r}$  such that  $i^{\circ(s+1)}(d_{p+r,q-r}) = 0$ . Then, by definition,

$$[e_{p,q}] = [j(d_{p+r,q-r})] = j'(i(d_{p+r,q-r}))$$

so  $[e_{p,q}] \in B_{p,q}'^s$ .

Conversely, suppose  $[e_{p,q}] \in B_{p,q}'^s$ , i.e.  $[e_{p,q}] = j'(d_{p+r+1,q-r-1})$  for some  $d_{p+r+1,q-r-1} \in D'_{p+r+1,q-r-1}$  such that  $i'^{\circ s}(d_{p+r+1,q-r-1}) = 0$ . By definition, there is some  $d_{p+r,q-r} \in D_{p+r,q-r}$  such that  $d_{p+r+1,q-r-1} = i(d_{p+r,q-r})$ , and moreover,

$$[e_{p,q}] = j'(d_{p+r+1,q-r-1}) = [j(d_{p+r,q-r})]$$

so  $e_{p,q} - j(d_{p+r,q-r}) \in \text{Im}(\partial_{p,q})$ , i.e. for some  $e_{p+r+1,q-r} \in E_{p+r+1,q-r}$ ,  $e_{p,q} = j(d_{p+r,q-r} + k(e_{p+r+1,q-r}))$ . But  $i^{\circ(s+1)}(d_{p+r,q-r} + k(e_{p+r+1,q-r})) = 0$ , so we indeed have  $e_{p,q} \in B_{p,q}^{s+1}$ .

Now, suppose  $e_{p,q} \in Z_{p,q}^{n+1}$ , i.e. there exists  $d_{p-s-1,q+s+1} \in D_{p-s-1,q+s+1}$  such that  $k(e_{p,q}) = i^{\circ(s+1)}(d_{p-s-2,q+s+1})$ . Then,

$$k'([e_{p,q}]) = k(e_{p,q}) = i^{\circ s}(i(d_{p-s-2,q+s+1}))$$

so  $[e_{p,q}] \in Z_{p,q}^s$ .

Conversely, suppose  $[e_{p,q}] \in Z_{p,q}^s$ , i.e. there exists  $d_{p-s,q+s} \in D'_{p-s,q+s}$  such that  $k'([e_{p,q}]) = i^{\circ s}(d_{p-s,q+s})$ . By definition, there is  $d_{p-s-1,q+s+1} \in D_{p-s-1,q+s+1}$  such that  $d_{p-s,q+s} = i(d_{p-s-1,q+s+1})$ , and

$$k(e_{p,q}) = k'([e_{p,q}]) = i^{\circ s}(d_{p-s,q+s}) = i^{\circ(s+1)}(d_{p-s-1,q+s+1})$$

so we indeed have  $e_{p,q} \in Z_{p,q}^{s+1}$ .

(v). For  $s = 1$ , the claim is a consequence of (i); in general, use induction and [lemma A.8.39](#). ■

**9.4.I3** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $r$ , and for each positive integer  $s$  and each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers, let  $B_{p,q}^s$  and  $Z_{p,q}^s$  be the following subobjects of  $E_{p,q}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} B_{p,q}^s &= \text{Im}(j_{p+r,q-r} \circ \ker(i_{p+r,q-r}^{\circ s})) \\ Z_{p,q}^s &= \text{Ker}\left(\text{coker}\left(i_{p-n-1,q+n}^{\circ s}\right) \circ k_{p,q}\right) \end{aligned}$$

- We say the exact couple is **regular** if, for each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers, there is a positive integer  $N$  such that

$$\dots = Z_{p,q}^{N+3} = Z_{p,q}^{N+2} = Z_{p,q}^{N+1}$$

as subobjects of  $E_{p,q}$ .

- We say the exact couple is **weakly convergent** if the following conditions are satisfied for each integer  $n$ :

- The colimit  $H_n$  of the following diagram exists in  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$\dots \longrightarrow D_{p-1,n-p+1} \xrightarrow{i_{p-1,n-p+1}} D_{p,n-p} \xrightarrow{i_{p,n-p}} D_{p+1,n-p-1} \longrightarrow \dots$$

- The filtration  $F_{\blacktriangleright} H_n$  defined by  $F_p H_n = \text{Im}(D_{p+r,n-p-r} \rightarrow H_n)$  is (exhaustive and) separated.
- For each integer  $p$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ker}(D_{p,n-p} \rightarrow H_n) &= \sup \{ B_{p,n-p}^s \mid s \geq 1 \} \\ \text{Ker}(k_{p,q}) &= \inf \{ Z_{p,n-p}^s \mid s \geq 1 \} \end{aligned}$$

as subobjects of  $E_{p,n-p}$ .

In this situation, we say that the exact couple **abuts to** or **approaches**  $F_{\blacktriangleright} H_{\bullet}$ .

**9.4.I4** REMARK. Assuming  $H_n$  exists, the filtration  $F_{\blacktriangleright} H_n$  is always exhaustive. Indeed, suppose  $X$  is a subobject of  $H_n$  such that  $F_p H_n \leq X$  for all integers  $p$ . The diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  shown below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} D_{p+r,n-p-r} & \xrightarrow{i_{p+r,n-p-r}} & D_{p+r+1,n-p-r-1} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ F_p H_n & \hookrightarrow & F_{p+1} H_n \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are the evident coimages, so the universal property of  $H_n$  yields a section of the inclusion  $X \rightarrowtail H_n$ . Thus,  $X \rightarrowtail H_n$  must be an isomorphism, so

$$\sup \{ F_p H_n \mid p \in \mathbb{Z} \} = H_n$$

as subobjects of  $H_n$ , as claimed.

**9.4.15** LEMMA (Abutment of exact couples). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $r$  be an integer, and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree  $r$ . With other notation as in [definition 9.4.13](#), for each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers:*

(i) *Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5,*

$$K_{p,q} = \sup \{ \text{Ker}(i_{p,q}^{s}) \mid s \geq 1 \}$$

*as subobjects of  $E_{p,q}$ .*

(ii) *We have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & K_{p+r-1,q-r+1} & \longrightarrow & D_{p+r-1,q-r+1} & \longrightarrow & F_{p-1}H_{p+q} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow i_{p+r-1,q-r+1} & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & K_{p+r,q-r} & \longrightarrow & D_{p+r,q-r} & \longrightarrow & F_p H_{p+q} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & B_{p,q} & \longrightarrow & Z_{p,q} & \longrightarrow & \text{gr}(F H_{p+q})_p \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

*where the rows are short exact sequences, the columns are exact,  $Z_{p,q} = \text{Im}(j_{p+r,q-r}) = \text{Ker}(k_{p,q})$ , and  $B_{p,q} = \text{Im}(K_{p+r,q-r} \rightarrow D_{p+r,q-r} \rightarrow Z_{p,q})$ .*

*Proof.* (i). We have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & 0 & & 0 & & 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \dots & \longrightarrow & \text{Ker}(i_{p,q}^{s(s-1)}) & \longrightarrow & \text{Ker}(i_{p,q}^{sn}) & \longrightarrow & \text{Ker}(i_{p,q}^{s(s+1)}) \longrightarrow \dots \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \dots & \xlongequal{\quad} & D_{p,q} & \xlongequal{\quad} & D_{p,q} & \xlongequal{\quad} & D_{p,q} \xlongequal{\quad} \dots \\ & & \downarrow i_{p,q}^{s(s-1)} & & \downarrow i_{p,q}^{sn} & & \downarrow i_{p,q}^{s(s+1)} \\ \dots & \longrightarrow & D_{p+s-1,q-s+1} & \xrightarrow{i} & D_{p+s,q-s} & \xrightarrow{i} & D_{p+s+1,q-s-1} \longrightarrow \dots \end{array}$$

where the columns are exact sequences; thus, by axiom AB5, the colimit of the second row must be the kernel of the morphism between the colimits of the third and fourth rows. This proves the claim.

(ii). Clearly,  $\ker(D_{p+r,q-r} \rightarrow H_{p+q}) = \ker(D_{p+r,q-r} \twoheadrightarrow F_p H_{p+q})$  for all pairs  $(p, q)$  of integers, so the rows in the following commutative diagram are short exact sequences in  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & K_{p+r-1,q-r+1} & \longrightarrow & D_{p+r-1,q-r+1} & \longrightarrow & F_{p-1} H_{p+q} & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow i_{p+r-1,q-r+1} & & \downarrow & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & K_{p+r,q-r} & \longrightarrow & D_{p+r,q-r} & \longrightarrow & F_p H_{p+q} & \longrightarrow & 0 \end{array}$$

Recalling that

$$D_{p-1,q+1} \xrightarrow{i_{p-1,q+1}} D_{p,q} \xrightarrow{j_{p,q}} E_{p-r,q+r}$$

is an exact sequence, we deduce that  $\text{Coker}(i_{p-1,q+1}) = Z_{p,q}$ . A similar argument shows that  $\text{Coker}(K_{p-1,q+1} \rightarrow K_{p,q}) = B_{p,q}$ . Thus, by [lemma 9.1.20](#), the induced diagram

$$0 \longrightarrow B_{p,q} \longrightarrow Z_{p,q} \longrightarrow \text{gr}(F H_{p+q})_p \longrightarrow 0$$

is a short exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$ , as required. ■

**9.4.16** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

- We say the exact couple is **bounded above** if for each integer  $n$ , there is an integer  $N$  such that  $i_{p,n-p} : D_{p,n-p} \rightarrow D_{p+1,n-p-1}$  is an isomorphism for  $p > N$ .
- We say the exact couple is **bounded below** if for each integer  $n$ , there is an integer  $M$  such that  $D_{p,n-p} = 0$  for  $p < M$ .
- We say the exact couple is **bounded** if it is both bounded above and bounded below.

**9.4.17** REMARK. If both  $E_{p+1,q} = 0$  and  $E_{p-r+1,q+r-1} = 0$ , then  $i_{p,q}$  is an isomorphism, because

$$E_{p+1,q} \xrightarrow{k_{p+1,q}} D_{p,q} \xrightarrow{i_{p,q}} D_{p+1,q-1} \xrightarrow{j_{p+1,q-1}} E_{p-r+1,q+r-1}$$

is an exact sequence; conversely, if both  $i_{p+r-1,q-r+1}$  and  $i_{p-1,q}$  are isomorphisms, then  $E_{p,q} = 0$ , because

$$D_{p+r-1,q-r+1} \xrightarrow{i_{p+r-1,q-r+1}} D_{p+r,q-r} \xrightarrow{j_{p+r,q-r}} E_{p,q} \xrightarrow{k_{p,q}} D_{p-1,q} \xrightarrow{i_{p-1,q}} D_{p,q-1}$$

is an exact sequence.

**9.4.18** LEMMA (Convergence of bounded exact couples). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}, E_{\bullet,\bullet}, i_{\bullet,\bullet}, j_{\bullet,\bullet}, k_{\bullet,\bullet})$  be an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$ . With other notation as in [definition 9.4.13](#):*

- (i) *If there is an integer  $p$  such that  $D_{p+r,n-p-r} = 0$ , then  $F_{\blacktriangleright} H_n$  is a separated filtration on  $H_n$ .*
- (ii) *If the exact couple is bounded above, then for each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers, there is an integer  $N$  such that the colimiting cocone component*

$$D_{p+s,q-s} \rightarrow H_{p+q}$$

*is an isomorphism for  $s > N$  and*

$$B_{p,q}^{N+1} = B_{p,q}^{N+2} = B_{p,q}^{N+3} = \dots$$

*as subobjects of  $E_{p,q}$ .*

- (iii) *If the exact couple is bounded below, then for each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers, there is an integer  $N$  such that*

$$\text{Ker}(k_{p,q}) = \dots = Z_{p,q}^{N+3} = Z_{p,q}^{N+2} = Z_{p,q}^{N+1}$$

*as subobjects of  $E_{p,q}$ ; in particular, the exact couple is regular.*

- (iv) *If the exact couple is bounded below and  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5, then the exact couple is weakly convergent.*
- (v) *If the exact couple is bounded, then for each pair  $(p, q)$  of integers, there is an integer  $N$  such that, for  $s > N$ , we have a natural short exact sequence in  $\mathcal{A}$  of the form below:*

$$0 \longrightarrow B_{p,q}^s \longrightarrow Z_{p,q}^s \longrightarrow \text{gr}(F H_{p+q})_p \longrightarrow 0$$

*Moreover, the exact couple is weakly convergent in this case.*

*Proof.* (i). If  $D_{p+r,n-p-r} = 0$ , then we must also have  $F_p H_n = 0$ . Hence,

$$\inf \{ F_p H_n \mid p \in \mathbb{Z} \} = 0$$

as subobjects of  $H_n$ , as claimed.

(ii) and (iii). Straightforward.

(iv) and (v). Apply [lemma 9.4.15](#). ■

**9.4.19** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- A **filtered chain complex** in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  equipped with a filtration  $F_\bullet C_\bullet$  (as an object in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ).
- A **canonically bounded-above filtration** on a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a filtration  $F_\bullet C_\bullet$  such that  $F_p C_q = C_q$  for all integers  $q$  and all  $p \geq q$ .
- A **canonically bounded-below filtration** on a chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is a filtration  $F_\bullet C_\bullet$  such that  $F_p C_\bullet = 0$  for all integers  $p < 0$ .
- A **canonically bounded filtration** on a chain complex is a filtration that is both canonically bounded above and canonically bounded below.

**9.4.20** REMARK. If  $C_\bullet$  is a chain complex that admits a canonically bounded filtration, then  $C_\bullet$  must be a connective chain complex.

**9.4.21** THEOREM (Exact couple of a filtered complex). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $C_\bullet$  be a chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $F_\bullet C_\bullet$  be a filtration on  $C_\bullet$  (as an object in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ ). We define the following:*

- $D_{p,q}^1 = H_{p+q}(F_p C)$ .
- $E_{p,q}^1 = H_{p+q}(\text{gr}(FC)_p)$ .
- $i_{p,q}^1 : D_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow D_{p+1,q-1}^1$  is the morphism  $H_{p+q}(F_p C) \rightarrow H_{p+q}(F_{p+1} C)$  induced by the inclusion  $F_p C_\bullet \hookrightarrow F_{p+1} C_\bullet$ .
- $j_{p,q}^1 : D_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow E_{p,q}^1$  is the morphism  $H_{p+q}(F_p C) \rightarrow H_{p+q}(\text{gr}(FC)_p)$  induced by the cokernel  $F_p C_\bullet \twoheadrightarrow \text{gr}(FC)_p$ .
- $k_{p,q}^1 : E_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow D_{p-1,q}^1$  is the connecting morphism  $\delta_{p+q} : H_{p+q}(\text{gr}(FC)_p) \rightarrow H_{p+q-1}(F_{p-1} C)$  in the long exact sequence of lemma 9.1.20.

Then:

- (i)  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, E_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, i_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, j_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, k_{\bullet,\bullet}^1)$  is an exact couple in  $\mathcal{A}$  of degree 0.
- (ii) Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  satisfies axiom AB5, if  $F_\bullet C_\bullet$  is an exhaustive filtration on  $C_\bullet$ , then the canonical morphism from

$$\varinjlim \left( \cdots \longrightarrow D_{p-1,n-p+1} \xrightarrow{i_{p-1,n-p+1}^1} D_{p,n-p} \xrightarrow{i_{p,n-p}^1} D_{p+1,n-p-1} \longrightarrow \cdots \right)$$

to  $H_n(C)$  is an isomorphism for every integer  $n$ .

- (iii) If  $F_{\blacktriangleright}C_{\bullet}$  is canonically bounded above, then the exact couple is bounded above.
- (iv) If  $F_{\blacktriangleright}C_{\bullet}$  is canonically bounded below, then the exact couple is bounded below.
- (v) If  $F_{\blacktriangleright}C_{\bullet}$  is canonically bounded, then the exact couple is bounded. In particular, it is weakly convergent.

*Proof.* (i). This is an immediate consequence of [lemma 9.1.20](#).

(ii). Apply [proposition 9.1.18](#).

(iii) and (iv). Straightforward.

(v). Apply [lemma 9.4.18](#). ■

**9.4.22** REMARK. We may use [proposition 9.2.26](#) to extend the above theorem to the case of an arbitrary sequence of morphisms in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

**9.4.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category.

- Let  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  has enough co-products, the **filtration by columns**  ${}^I F_{\blacktriangleright} \text{Tot}^{\oplus}(C)_{\bullet}$  is defined as follows,

$${}^I F_m \text{Tot}^{\oplus}(C)_n = \bigoplus_{\substack{p+q=n \\ p \leq m}} C_{p,q}$$

and the **filtration by rows**  ${}^{II} F_{\blacktriangleright} \text{Tot}^{\oplus}(C)_{\bullet}$  is defined as follows:

$${}^{II} F_m \text{Tot}^{\oplus}(C)_n = \bigoplus_{\substack{p+q=n \\ q \leq m}} C_{p,q}$$

- Let  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double cochain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ . Assuming  $\mathcal{A}$  has enough products, the **filtration by columns**  ${}^I F_{\blacktriangleright} \text{Tot}^{\Pi}(C)_{\bullet}$  is defined as follows,

$${}^I F_m \text{Tot}^{\Pi}(C)_n = \prod_{\substack{p+q=n \\ p \leq m}} C_{p,q}$$

and the **filtration by rows**  ${}^{II} F_{\blacktriangleright} \text{Tot}^{\Pi}(C)_{\bullet}$  is defined as follows:

$${}^{II} F_m \text{Tot}^{\Pi}(C)_n = \prod_{\substack{p+q=n \\ q \leq m}} C_{p,q}$$

**9.4.24** REMARK.

- If  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  is a first-quadrant double chain complex, then both the filtration by columns and the filtration by rows are canonically bounded filtrations on  $\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$ .
- If  $C^{\bullet,\bullet}$  is a first-quadrant double cochain complex, then both the filtration by columns and the filtration by rows are canonically bounded filtrations on  $\text{Tot}^\Pi(C)^\bullet$ .

**9.4.25** REMARK. Let  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double chain complex. Then, for all integers  $m$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{gr}({}^1F\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_n)_m &\cong C_{m,n-m} \\ \text{gr}({}^\Pi F\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_n)_m &\cong C_{n-m,m}\end{aligned}$$

and these isomorphisms are natural in  $n$  and  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$ . In other words,

$$\begin{aligned}(\Omega^m \text{gr}({}^1F\text{Tot}^\oplus(C))_m)_\bullet &\cong C_{m,\bullet} \\ (\Omega^m \text{gr}({}^\Pi F\text{Tot}^\oplus(C))_m)_\bullet &\cong C_{\bullet,m}\end{aligned}$$

as chain complexes.

**9.4.26** THEOREM (Exact couple of a double complex). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category satisfying axiom AB5, let  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  be a double chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, E_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, i_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, j_{\bullet,\bullet}^1, k_{\bullet,\bullet}^1)$  be the exact couple of  ${}^1F_\blacktriangleright \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$ , as defined in [theorem 9.4.21](#).*

- There are natural isomorphisms  $E_{p,q}^1 \cong H_q(C_p)$ .*
- Let  $(D_{\bullet,\bullet}^2, E_{\bullet,\bullet}^2, i_{\bullet,\bullet}^2, j_{\bullet,\bullet}^2, k_{\bullet,\bullet}^2)$  be the derived exact couple. Then there are natural isomorphisms  $E_{p,q}^2 \cong H_p^\leftarrow(H_q^\downarrow(C))$ .*
- If  $C_{\bullet,\bullet}$  is a first-quadrant double chain complex, then the exact couple is bounded. In particular, it is weakly convergent.*

*Proof.* (i). Apply [remark 9.4.25](#).

(ii). It suffices to show that the isomorphisms  $E_{p,q}^1 \cong H_q(C_p)$  identify  $k^1 \circ j^1 : E_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow E_{p-1,q}^1$  with  $H_q(\pm\partial^\leftarrow) : H_q(C_p) \rightarrow H_q(C_{p-1})$ . Consider the evident short exact sequence:

$$0 \longrightarrow {}^1F_{p-1}\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet \xrightarrow{f_{p,\bullet}} {}^1F_p\text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet \xrightarrow{g_{p,\bullet}} (\Sigma^p C_p)_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$



By definition,  $j^1 : E_{p,q}^1 \rightarrow D_{p-1,q}^1$  is the induced connecting morphism

$$\delta : H_{p+q}(\Sigma^p C_p) \rightarrow H_{p+q}({}^1F_{p-1} \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet)$$

of [lemma 9.1.20](#): we have a split-projective fibration  $\text{Fib}(f_p)_\bullet \rightarrow {}^1F_{p-1} \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)_\bullet$  and a split-projective trivial fibration  $v_{p,\bullet} : \text{Fib}(f_p)_\bullet \rightarrow (\Sigma^{p-1} C_p)_\bullet$  yielding the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H_{p+q-1}(\text{Fib}(f_p)) & \longrightarrow & H_{p+q-1}({}^1F_{p-1} \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)) \\ \cong \downarrow & \nearrow \delta & \\ H_{p+q-1}(\Sigma^{p-1} C_p) & & \end{array}$$

On the other hand,  $k^1 : D_{p-1,q}^1 \rightarrow E_{p-1,q}^1$  is the induced morphism

$$H_{p-1,q}(g_{p-1}) : H_{p-1,q}({}^1F_{p-1} \text{Tot}^\oplus(C)) \rightarrow H_{p-1,q}(\Sigma^{p-1} C_{p-1})$$

and for any  $c : X \rightarrow C_{p,q}$  such that  $\partial^\downarrow \circ c = 0$ , the induced morphism  $\langle \partial^\leftarrow \circ c, c \rangle : X \rightarrow \text{Fib}(f_p)_{p+q-1}$  satisfies  $\partial \circ \langle \partial^\leftarrow \circ c, c \rangle = 0$  and  $v_{p,p+q-1} \circ \langle \partial^\leftarrow \circ c, c \rangle = \pm c$ , so we may conclude that indeed  $k^1 \circ j^1 = \pm \partial^\leftarrow$ .

(iii). Apply [remark 9.4.24](#) to [theorem 9.4.21](#). ■

## 9.5 Simplicial objects

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 3.1, 9.1, A.7, A.8.

**9.5.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $G_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{A}$ . The **unnormalised Moore complex** of  $G_\bullet$  is the connective chain complex  $C(G)_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined as follows,

$$C(G)_n = G_n$$

with  $\partial_n = \sum_{i=0}^n (-1)^i d_i^n$ .

**9.5.2** LEMMA. *The unnormalised Moore complex of a simplicial object in an abelian category is indeed a chain complex.*

*Proof.* Let  $n$  be a natural number. By corollary 1.1.6:

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_n \circ \partial_{n+1} &= \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=0}^{n+1} (-1)^{i+j} d_i^n \circ d_j^{n+1} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=0}^i (-1)^{i+j} d_i^n \circ d_j^{n+1} + \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=i+1}^{n+1} (-1)^{i+j} d_i^n \circ d_j^{n+1} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=0}^i (-1)^{i+j} d_i^n \circ d_j^{n+1} + \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=i+1}^{n+1} (-1)^{i+j} d_{j-1}^n \circ d_i^{n+1} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=0}^i (-1)^{i+j} d_i^n \circ d_j^{n+1} - \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=i}^n (-1)^{i+j} d_j^n \circ d_i^{n+1} = 0 \quad \blacksquare \end{aligned}$$

**9.5.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category, let  $G_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{A}$ , and for each natural number  $n$ , let  $D(G)_n$  be the subobject  $G_n$  defined below,*

$$D(G)_n = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{Im } s_i^{n-1}$$

where  $\sum$  denotes the sum of subobjects. (Note that  $D(G)_0 = 0$ .)

- (i)  $D(G)_\bullet$  is a subcomplex of the unnormalised Moore complex  $C(G)_\bullet$ .
- (ii)  $D(G)_\bullet$  is an acyclic chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ .
- (iii) The cokernel  $\text{coker}(D(G)_\bullet \rightarrow C(G)_\bullet)$  is a quasi-isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .

*Proof.* (i). Let  $n$  be a natural number and let  $0 \leq j \leq n$ . By [corollary 1.1.6](#),

$$\begin{aligned}
 \partial_{n+1} \circ s_j^n &= \sum_{i=0}^{n+1} (-1)^i d_i^{n+1} \circ s_j^n \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{j-1} (-1)^i d_i^{n+1} \circ s_j^n + (-1)^j \text{id}_{G_n} - (-1)^j \text{id}_{G_n} + \sum_{i=j+2}^{n+1} (-1)^i d_i^{n+1} \circ s_j^n \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{j-1} (-1)^i s_{j-1}^{n-1} \circ d_i^n + \sum_{i=j+2}^{n+1} (-1)^i s_j^{n-1} \circ d_{i-1}^n \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{j-1} (-1)^i s_{j-1}^{n-1} \circ d_i^n - \sum_{i=j+1}^n (-1)^i s_j^{n-1} \circ d_i^n
 \end{aligned}$$

so  $\partial_{n+1} : G_{n+1} \rightarrow G_n$  indeed restricts to a morphism  $\partial_{n+1} : D(G)_{n+1} \rightarrow D(G)_n$ .

(ii). Let  $F_p D(G)_q$  be the subobject of  $G_q$  defined as follows:

$$F_p D(G)_q = \sum_{i=0}^{\min\{p,q\}-1} \text{Im } s_i^{q-1}$$

Note that  $F_0 D(G)_q = 0$  for every natural number  $q$ , and  $F_p D(G)_q = D(G)_q$  if  $p \geq q$ . The calculation in (i) shows that  $\partial_{q+1} : G_{q+1} \rightarrow G_q$  restricts to a morphism  $\partial_{q+1} : F_p D(G)_{q+1} \rightarrow F_p D(G)_q$  for every  $p$  and  $q$ , so  $F_p D(G)_\bullet$  is a subcomplex of  $D(G)_\bullet$  for every  $p$ .

By construction,  $F_p D(G)_\bullet \leq F_{p+1} D(G)_\bullet$  (as subcomplexes of  $D(G)_\bullet$ ), and  $F_0 D(G)_\bullet = 0$ , so by [lemma 9.2.7](#), to show that  $D(G)_\bullet$  is acyclic, it suffices to show that the chain complexes  $E_{p,\bullet} = \text{Coker}(F_p D(G)_\bullet \rightarrow F_{p+1} D(G)_\bullet)$  are acyclic.

Let  $p$  and  $q$  be natural numbers. Observe that if  $p \geq q$ , then  $E_{p,q} = 0$ . On the other hand, for  $p < q$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_p^{q-1} \circ \partial_q \circ s_p^{q-1} &= \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} (-1)^i s_p^{q-1} \circ s_{p-1}^{q-2} \circ d_i^{q-1} - \sum_{i=p+1}^{q-1} (-1)^i s_p^{q-1} \circ s_p^{q-2} \circ d_i^{q-1} \\
 \partial_{q+1} \circ s_p^q \circ s_p^{q-1} &= \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} (-1)^i s_{p-1}^{q-1} \circ d_i^q \circ s_p^{q-1} - \sum_{i=p+1}^q (-1)^i s_p^{q-1} \circ d_i^q \circ s_p^{q-1} \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} (-1)^i s_{p-1}^{q-1} \circ s_{p-1}^{q-2} \circ d_i^{q-1} + (-1)^p s_p^{q-1} + \sum_{i=p+1}^q (-1)^i s_p^{q-1} \circ s \circ s_p^{q-2} d_i^q
 \end{aligned}$$

and therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( \partial_{q+1} \circ s_p^q + s_p^{q-1} \circ \partial_q \right) \circ s_p^{q-1} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} (-1)^i s_p^{q-1} \circ s_{p-1}^{q-2} \circ d_i^{q-1} + \sum_{i=0}^{p-1} (-1)^i s_{p-1}^{q-1} \circ s_{p-1}^{q-2} \circ d_i^{q-1} + (-1)^p s_p^{q-1} \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, for  $i < p < q$ ,  $s_p^q \circ s_i^{q-1} = s_i^q \circ s_{p-1}^q$ , so there is a unique morphism  $\zeta_p^q : E_{p,q} \rightarrow E_{p,q+1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 & \longrightarrow & F_p D(G)_q & \longrightarrow & F_{p+1} D(G)_q & \longrightarrow & E_{p,q} \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow (-1)^p s_p^q & & \downarrow (-1)^p s_p^q & & \downarrow \zeta_p^q \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & F_p D(G)_{q+1} & \longrightarrow & F_{p+1} D(G)_{q+1} & \longrightarrow & E_{p,q+1} \longrightarrow 0 \end{array}$$

where the rows are the evident exact sequences. Set  $\zeta_p^q = 0$  for  $p \geq q$ . Then, for all  $p$  and  $q$ ,

$$\partial_{q+1} \circ \zeta_p^q + \zeta_p^{q-1} \circ \partial_q = \text{id}_{E_{p,q}}$$

and thus we may apply [lemma 9.1.30](#) to deduce that  $E_{p,\bullet}$  is acyclic, as required.

(iii). Apply [lemma 9.2.6](#). ■

**9.5.4 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $G_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{A}$ . The **normalised Moore complex** of  $G_\bullet$  is the connective chain complex  $\tilde{C}(G)_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  defined as follows,

$$\tilde{C}(G)_n = \bigcap_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{Ker } d_i^n$$

with  $\partial_n = (-1)^n d_n^n$ , where  $\bigcap$  denotes the intersection of subobjects. (Note that  $\tilde{C}(G)_0 = G_0$ .)

**9.5.5 REMARK.** Let  $i < n$ . Since  $d_i^n \circ s_i^{n-1} = \text{id}_{G_{n-1}}$ , we must have

$$\text{ker } d_i^n = \text{im}(\text{id}_{G_n} - s_i^{n-1} \circ d_i^n)$$

as subobjects of  $G_n$ .

**9.5.6 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $G_\bullet$  be a simplicial object in  $\mathcal{A}$ .*

- (i) *The normalised Moore complex  $\tilde{C}(G)_\bullet$  is indeed a chain complex and is moreover a subcomplex of the unnormalised Moore complex  $C(G)_\bullet$ .*
- (ii) *Let  $D(G)_\bullet$  be the subcomplex of  $C(G)_\bullet$  defined below,*

$$D(G)_n = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{Im } s_i^{n-1}$$

*where  $\sum$  denotes the sum of subobjects. Then the evident morphism*

$$\tilde{C}(G)_\bullet \oplus D(G)_\bullet \rightarrow C(G)_\bullet$$

*is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ .*

- (iii) *The inclusion  $\tilde{C}(G)_\bullet \rightarrow C(G)_\bullet$  is a quasi-isomorphism.*

*Proof.* (i). First, we must verify that  $d_n^n : G_n \rightarrow G_{n-1}$  restricts to a morphism  $d_n^n : \tilde{C}(G)_n \rightarrow \tilde{C}(G)_{n-1}$ . Let  $i < n - 1$ . If  $g : X \rightarrow G_n$  is a morphism such that  $d_i^n \circ x = 0$ , then

$$d_i^{n-1} \circ d_n^n \circ g = d_{n-1}^{n-1} \circ d_i^n \circ x = 0$$

so we do indeed get a morphism  $d_n^n : \tilde{C}(G)_n \rightarrow \tilde{C}(G)_{n-1}$ . It is easy to see that the following diagram in  $\mathcal{A}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \tilde{C}(G)_n & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C(G)_n \\ \partial_n \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial_n \\ \tilde{C}(G)_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C(G)_{n-1} \end{array}$$

so  $\tilde{C}(G)_\bullet$  is a subcomplex of  $C(G)_\bullet$ , as claimed.

- (ii). See Lemma 8.3.7 in [Weibel, 1994].

- (iii). By (ii) and lemma A.8.19, we have a short exact sequence in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$  of the form below:

$$0 \longrightarrow \tilde{C}(G)_\bullet \longrightarrow C(G)_\bullet \longrightarrow D(G)_\bullet \longrightarrow 0$$

The claim follows by applying lemma 9.2.6 to proposition 9.5.3. □

**9.5.7** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. The **Dold–Kan object** of a connective chain complex  $C_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  is the simplicial object  $K(C)_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$  as follows:

- $K(C)_n = \bigoplus_{p \leq n} D_p^n \odot C_p$ , where  $D_p^n$  is the set of surjections  $[n] \rightarrow [p]$  in  $\Delta$ .
- For  $0 \leq i \leq n$ , the degeneracy operator  $s_i^n : K(C)_n \rightarrow K(C)_{n+1}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{A}$  making the diagram below commute for every surjection  $\alpha : [n] \rightarrow [p]$  in  $\Delta$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\alpha\} \odot C_p & \xrightarrow{\quad} & K(C)_n \\ \downarrow \scriptstyle !\odot \text{id} & & \downarrow \scriptstyle !s_i^n \\ \{\alpha \circ \sigma_n^i\} \odot C_p & \xrightarrow{\quad} & K(C)_{n+1} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the evident inclusions and the left vertical arrow is induced by  $\text{id}_{C_p}$ .

- The face operator  $d_n^n : K(C)_n \rightarrow K(C)_{n-1}$  is defined on the summand  $\{\text{id}_{[n]}\} \odot C_n$  by  $(-1)^n \partial_n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$  and by zero on the other summands.
- For  $0 \leq i < n$ , the face operator  $d_i^n : K(C)_n \rightarrow K(C)_{n-1}$  is zero on the summand  $\{\text{id}_{[n]}\} \odot C_n$  and defined by the simplicial identities<sup>[1]</sup> otherwise.

**9.5.8** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category and let  $C_\bullet$  be a connective chain complex in  $\mathcal{A}$ .

- (i) For  $0 \leq i < n$ , let  $d_i^n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$  be zero, and let  $d_n^n : C_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}$  be  $(-1)^n \partial_n$ . Then the following identities hold for  $0 \leq i \leq j \leq n$ :

$$d_i^n \circ d_{j+1}^{n+1} = d_j^n \circ d_i^{n+1} = 0$$

- (ii) Let  $\tilde{K}(C)_\bullet$  be the semisimplicial object in  $\mathcal{A}$  with  $\tilde{K}(C)_n = C_n$  and face operators defined as above. Defining  $\tilde{C} : [(\Delta_\rightarrow)^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{A}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$  by analogy with the normalised Moore complex of simplicial objects, we have the following natural isomorphism for all semisimplicial objects  $G_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$[(\Delta_\rightarrow)^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{A}](\tilde{K}(C), G) \cong \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(C, \tilde{C}(G))$$

- (iii) Moreover,  $\text{id} : \tilde{K}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow \tilde{K}(C)_\bullet$  maps to an isomorphism  $C_\bullet \rightarrow \tilde{C}(\tilde{K}(C))$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$ .

[1] Recall [corollary 1.1.6](#).

(iv) The Dold–Kan object  $K(C)_\bullet$  is the left Kan extension of  $\tilde{K}(C)_\bullet$  along the inclusion  $\Delta_\rightarrow \hookrightarrow \Delta$ .

(v) We have the following natural isomorphism for all simplicial objects  $G_\bullet$  in  $\mathcal{A}$ :

$$\mathbf{sA}(K(C), G) \cong \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})}(C, \tilde{C}(G))$$

*Proof.* (i). The only non-trivial case is  $d_n^n \circ d_{n+1}^n$ , but this is equal to  $-\partial_n \circ \partial_{n+1}$  and is therefore zero.

(ii). Consider a morphism  $f_\bullet : \tilde{K}(C)_\bullet \rightarrow G_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{sA}$ . For  $0 \leq i \leq n$ , we have  $f_{n-1} \circ d_i^n = d_i^n \circ f_n$ , so for  $0 \leq i < n$ , we have  $d_i^n \circ f_n = 0$ . Hence, each  $f_n : C_n \rightarrow G_n$  factors through the inclusion  $\tilde{C}(G)_n \hookrightarrow G_n$ , and this defines a morphism  $f'_\bullet : C_\bullet \rightarrow \tilde{C}(G)_\bullet$  in  $\mathbf{Ch}(\mathcal{A})$ . The map  $f_\bullet \mapsto f'_\bullet$  defines the required natural isomorphism.

(iii). This is a straightforward verification.

(iv). Apply [proposition I.I.12](#).

(v). Combine (ii) and (iv). ■

**9.5.9** THEOREM (Dold–Kan correspondence). *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be an abelian category. We have an adjunction of the form below,*

$$K \dashv \tilde{C} : \mathbf{sA} \rightarrow \mathbf{Ch}_{\geq 0}(\mathcal{A})$$

*and it is an equivalence of categories.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 8.4.1 in [Weibel, 1994]. □





## HOMOTOPY TOPOSES

### 10.1 Internal Kan complexes

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.4, 1.7, 2.3, 4.1, A.7.

To do homotopy theory inside a topos, we need a model for homotopy types. One of the simplest options is to internalise the theory of Kan complexes. This was first done in the case of sheaves on a topological space by Brown [1973], then extended to the general case of an effective regular category by van Osdol [1977].

**10.1.1 DEFINITION.** An **internal Kan fibration** (resp. **internal trivial Kan fibration**) in a regular category  $\mathcal{S}$  is a morphism  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  with the following property:

- If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  (resp. a boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ ) and the square in the diagram below is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{S}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{W, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{W, p\}} & \{W, Y\} \\ \{i, X\} \downarrow & & \downarrow \{i, Y\} \\ \{Z, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{Z, p\}} & \{Z, Y\} \end{array}$$

**10.1.2 REMARK.** If  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , then an internal Kan fibration (resp. internal trivial Kan fibration) is just a Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration) in the usual sense, by lemma A.3.2. If  $\mathcal{S} = [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  for a small category  $\mathbb{C}$ , then an internal Kan fibration (resp. internal trivial Kan fibration) in  $\mathcal{S}$  is the same thing as a componentwise Kan fibration (resp. trivial Kan fibration), because limits and colimits in  $[\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  are computed componentwise.

**10.1.3** DEFINITION. An **internal Kan complex** in a regular category  $\mathcal{S}$  is an object  $X$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  is an internal Kan fibration. We write  $\mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$  for the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  spanned by the internal Kan complexes in  $\mathcal{S}$ .

**10.1.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a regular category.*

- (i) *The class of internal Kan fibrations (resp. internal trivial Kan fibrations) in  $\mathcal{S}$  contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ .*
- (ii) *The class of internal Kan fibrations (resp. internal trivial Kan fibrations) in  $\mathcal{S}$  is closed under composition.*
- (iii) *The class of internal Kan fibrations (resp. internal trivial Kan fibrations) in  $\mathcal{S}$  is closed under pullbacks.*
- (iv) *The class of internal Kan fibrations (resp. internal trivial Kan fibrations) in  $\mathcal{S}$  is closed under retracts.*
- (v) *The class of internal Kan fibrations (resp. internal trivial Kan fibrations) in  $\mathcal{S}$  is closed under finite products.*

*Proof.* (i). Obvious.

(ii) and (iii). Apply the weak pullback lemma (A.7.17).

(iv) and (v). By proposition A.7.15, the class of regular epimorphisms in  $\mathcal{S}$  is closed under retracts (resp. finite products), so the class of weak pullback squares in  $\mathcal{S}$  is also closed under retracts (resp. finite products). ■

**10.1.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a regular category, let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism between finite simplicial sets, and let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ . Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{S}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{W, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{W, p\}} & \{W, Y\} \\ \{i, X\} \downarrow & & \downarrow \{i, Y\} \\ \{Z, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{Z, p\}} & \{Z, Y\} \end{array}$$

- (i) *If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension and  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal Kan fibration, then the diagram is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*

- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is a monomorphism and  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration, then the diagram is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{S}$ .

*Proof.* The proofs of the two claims are similar; we will prove claim (i).

By [proposition 1.4.12](#), the class of anodyne extensions between finite simplicial sets is the smallest class of morphisms containing the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  that is closed under composition, pushouts, and retracts; but the class of regular epimorphisms  $\mathcal{S}$  is closed under composition, pullbacks, and retracts (by [proposition A.7.15](#)), and  $\{-, X\}$  sends colimits in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  to limits in  $\mathcal{S}$ , so we are done.  $\blacksquare$

**10.1.6 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a regular category, let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a monomorphism between finite simplicial sets, and let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be an internal Kan fibration in  $\mathcal{S}$ . Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sS}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 W \pitchfork X & & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_W \pitchfork p \quad} & & W \pitchfork Y \\
 & \searrow \text{dashed } i \boxtimes p & & & \downarrow i \pitchfork \text{id}_Y \\
 & (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & & \\
 & \downarrow & & & \\
 & Z \pitchfork X & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id}_Z \pitchfork p \quad} & & Z \pitchfork Y \\
 & \uparrow i \pitchfork \text{id}_X & & & \\
 W \pitchfork X & & & & 
 \end{array}$$

where the square is a pullback.

- (i) The morphism  $i \boxtimes p : W \pitchfork X \rightarrow (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y)$  is an internal Kan fibration.
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension, then  $i \boxtimes p$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration.
- (iii) If  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration, then  $i \boxtimes p$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration.

*Proof.* The proofs of the three claims are similar; we will prove claim (i).

Let  $j : K \rightarrow L$  be a morphism of finite simplicial sets, and consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{S}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & \{L, W \pitchfork X\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{L, W \pitchfork Y\} & \\
 & \swarrow & \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow \\
 \{K, W \pitchfork X\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{K, W \pitchfork Y\} & & \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & \{L, Z \pitchfork X\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{L, Z \pitchfork Y\} & \\
 \swarrow & \downarrow & \swarrow & \downarrow & \\
 \{K, Z \pitchfork X\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{K, Z \pitchfork Y\} & & 
 \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are induced by  $p : X \rightarrow Y$ , the vertical arrows are induced by  $i : Z \rightarrow W$ , and the diagonal arrows are induced by  $j : K \rightarrow L$ . We wish to show that the following diagram is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{S}$  when  $j : K \rightarrow L$  is any horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \{L, W \pitchfork X\} & \xrightarrow{\{L, i \sqcup p\}} & \{L, (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y)\} \\
 \downarrow \{j, W \pitchfork X\} & & \downarrow \{j, (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y)\} \\
 \{K, W \pitchfork X\} & \xrightarrow{\{K, i \sqcup p\}} & \{K, (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y)\}
 \end{array}$$

It is not hard to see that this amounts to showing that the comparison morphism

$$\{L, W \pitchfork X\} \rightarrow \{K, W \pitchfork X\} \times_{\{K, Z \pitchfork Y\}} \{L, Z \pitchfork X\} \times_{\{K, Z \pitchfork Y\}} \{L, W \pitchfork Y\}$$

is a regular epimorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$ . Via the natural isomorphism  $\{K, Z \pitchfork X\} \cong \{K \times Z, X\}$ , this is in turn equivalent to showing that the following diagram is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{S}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \{L \times W, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{j \sqcup i, X\}} & \{(K \times W) \cup^{K \times Z} (L \times Z), X\} \\
 \downarrow \{L \times W, p\} & & \downarrow \{(K \times W) \cup^{K \times Z} (L \times Z), p\} \\
 \{L \times W, Y\} & \xrightarrow{\{j \sqcup i, Y\}} & \{(K \times W) \cup^{K \times Z} (L \times Z), Y\}
 \end{array}$$

where  $j \sqcup i : (K \times W) \cup^{K \times Z} (L \times Z) \rightarrow L \times W$  is the evident monomorphism of finite simplicial sets. But propositions 1.4.15 and 2.4.4 say  $j \sqcup i$  is an anodyne extension, so we may apply proposition 10.1.5 to deduce the claim.  $\blacksquare$

**10.1.7** COROLLARY (Internal path spaces). *Let  $S$  be a regular category and let  $X$  be an internal Kan complex in  $S$ .*

- (i)  $\Delta^1 \pitchfork X$  is an internal Kan complex in  $S$ .
- (ii) The morphism  $\Delta^1 \pitchfork X \rightarrow \partial\Delta^1 \pitchfork X$  induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^1 \hookrightarrow \Delta^1$  is an internal Kan fibration in  $S$ .
- (iii) The morphisms  $\Delta^1 \pitchfork X \rightarrow \Delta^0 \pitchfork X$  induced by the two vertex inclusions  $\Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$  are internal trivial Kan fibrations in  $S$ . ■

**10.1.8** LEMMA. *Let  $S$  be a regular category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of internal Kan complexes in  $S$ . Given a commutative square of finite simplicial sets, say*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K' & \longrightarrow & K \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L' & \longrightarrow & L \end{array}$$

*if  $K' \rightarrow K$  and  $K \cup^{K'} L' \rightarrow L$  are monomorphisms, then the induced morphism*

$$(K \pitchfork X) \times_{K \pitchfork Y} (L \pitchfork Y) \rightarrow (K' \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y)$$

*is an internal Kan fibration.*

*Proof.* Let  $M$  be the pushout  $K \cup^{K'} L'$ . Since  $X$  (resp.  $Y$ ) is an internal Kan complex and  $K' \rightarrow K$  (resp.  $M \rightarrow L$ ) is a monomorphism, the induced morphism  $K \pitchfork X \rightarrow K' \pitchfork X$  (resp.  $L \pitchfork Y \rightarrow M \pitchfork Y$ ) is an internal Kan fibration, by [proposition 10.1.6](#). Since  $(-)\pitchfork Y$  sends pushout squares to pullback squares, we have a canonical isomorphism  $M \pitchfork Y \cong (K \pitchfork Y) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y)$ ; and in the following commutative diagrams,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} (K \pitchfork X) \times_{K \pitchfork Y} (L \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & L \pitchfork Y & & & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & & & \\ (K \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & (K \pitchfork Y) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & L' \pitchfork Y & & \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ K \pitchfork X & \longrightarrow & K \pitchfork Y & \longrightarrow & K' \pitchfork Y & & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 (K \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & K \pitchfork X \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 (K' \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y) & \longrightarrow & K' \pitchfork X \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 L' \pitchfork Y & \longrightarrow & K' \pitchfork Y
 \end{array}$$

every square is a pullback square, so by [proposition 10.1.4](#), the two morphisms

$$(K \pitchfork X) \times_{K \pitchfork Y} (L \pitchfork Y) \rightarrow (K \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y)$$

$$(K \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y) \rightarrow (K' \pitchfork X) \times_{K' \pitchfork Y} (L' \pitchfork Y)$$

are internal Kan fibrations, and their composite is the internal Kan fibration we seek. ■

Let  $D^{n+1}$  be the relative cylinder  $C(\Delta^n, \partial\Delta^n)$ , as in [definition 1.3.34](#), and let  $j_0, j_1 : \Delta^n \rightarrow D^{n+1}$  be the two canonical embeddings.

**10.1.9 DEFINITION.** A **Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence** in a regular category  $\mathcal{S}$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$  such that the morphism

$$\{\Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\Delta^n, Y\}} \{D^{n+1}, Y\} \longrightarrow \{\partial\Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$$

induced by the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{D^{n+1}, Y\} & & \\
 \downarrow & \searrow \text{dashed} & \downarrow & \searrow \{j_0, Y\} & \\
 & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{\Delta^n, Y\} & \\
 & \downarrow & \downarrow \{j_1, Y\} & & \\
 \{\Delta^n, X\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{\Delta^n, Y\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{\Delta^n, Y\} \\
 & \searrow & \downarrow \{\Delta^n, f\} & \searrow & \downarrow \\
 & \{\partial\Delta^n, X\} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \{\partial\Delta^n, Y\} & \\
 & & \downarrow \{\partial\Delta^n, f\} & & 
 \end{array}$$

is a regular epimorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$ .

**10.1.10** REMARK. If  $S = \mathbf{Set}$ , then a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence is precisely a weak homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes in the usual sense, by [theorem 1.4.35](#). If  $S = [\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  for a small category  $\mathbb{C}$ , then an Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence of internal Kan complexes in  $S$  is the same thing as a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence between componentwise Kan complexes, because limits and colimits in  $[\mathbb{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  are computed componentwise.

**10.1.11** PROPOSITION. *Let  $S$  be a regular category.*

- (i) *The class of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences in  $S$  contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$ .*
- (ii) *The class of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences in  $S$  is closed under retracts.*
- (iii) *The class of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences in  $S$  is closed under finite products.*

*Proof.* The class of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences (considered as a class of objects in the category  $[2, \mathbf{Kan}(S)]$ ) is defined by an internal right lifting property, so we may use the same methods used in the proof of [proposition 10.1.4](#). ■

**10.1.12** PROPOSITION. *Let  $F : S \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  be a regular functor.*

- (i) *The induced functor  $sF : sS \rightarrow s\mathcal{T}$  preserves internal Kan complexes, internal Kan fibrations, and internal trivial Kan fibrations.*
- (ii) *The induced functor  $\mathbf{Kan}(F) : \mathbf{Kan}(S) \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{T})$  preserves Brown factorisations and Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences.*
- (iii) *If  $F : S \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  is conservative, then  $sF : sS \rightarrow s\mathcal{T}$  reflects internal Kan complexes, internal Kan fibrations, and internal trivial Kan fibrations, and  $\mathbf{Kan}(F) : \mathbf{Kan}(S) \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{T})$  reflects Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences.*

*Proof.* These are immediate consequences of the fact that these definitions can be phrased in terms of properties of constructions using only finite limits and regular epimorphisms. ■

**10.1.13** THEOREM. *Let  $S$  be a regular category.*

- (i)  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$ , equipped with the class of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences, is a saturated homotopical category.
- (ii) An internal Kan fibration of internal Kan complexes in  $S$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration if and only if it is also a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence.
- (iii)  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$  is a category of fibrant objects where the weak equivalences are the Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences and the fibrations are the internal Kan fibrations.

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). The claims are known in the case where  $S = \mathbf{Set}$ , by [remark 10.1.2](#) and theorems [1.4.27](#) and [1.4.31](#). Clearly, the same is true for  $S = \mathbf{Set}^B$  for any set  $B$ . On the other hand, if  $S$  is any small regular category, we may apply the classical completeness theorem ([A.7.22](#)) and [proposition 10.1.12](#) to reduce to the case of  $\mathbf{Set}^B$ , so we are done in this case. In general, we may assume  $S$  is small by appealing to the universe axiom<sup>[1]</sup> and the fact that the properties of being an internal Kan fibration, internal trivial Kan fibration, or Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence are defined without reference to a choice of universe.

(iii). We have just verified axiom A, [proposition 10.1.4](#) implies axioms B and C are satisfied, [corollary 10.1.7](#) is axiom D, and axiom E is satisfied by definition. ■

**10.1.14** LEMMA. *Let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a monomorphism of finite simplicial sets and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism of internal Kan complexes in a regular category  $S$ . Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{s}S$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 W \pitchfork X & & & & \\
 \downarrow \text{dashed } q & \searrow i \pitchfork \text{id}_X & & & \\
 & L(i, f) & \longrightarrow & Z \pitchfork X & \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_W \pitchfork f & \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_Z \pitchfork f & \\
 W \pitchfork Y & \xrightarrow{i \pitchfork \text{id}_Y} & & Z \pitchfork Y & 
 \end{array}$$

where the square in the lower right is a pullback square.

[1] See §0.1.



- (i) If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence, then so is  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, f)$ .
- (ii) If  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  is an anodyne extension of finite simplicial sets, then  $q : [W, X] \rightarrow L(i, f)$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence.

*Proof.* The claim is known in the case where  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , by [theorem 1.4.35](#) and [lemma 1.4.33](#); and in general, we appeal to [proposition 10.1.12](#) and the classical completeness theorem ([A.7.22](#)). ■

We have so far avoided discussing homotopy groups for internal Kan complexes. This is because they need not exist in a general regular category: clearly, if we are able to take quotients of internal equivalence relations, then we can construct  $\pi_0$ ; and conversely, because internal equivalence relations define internal Kan complexes, being able to construct  $\pi_0$  implies we can take quotients of internal equivalence relations. This suggests that the right setting for these constructions is an effective regular category.

**10.1.15** PROPOSITION. *If  $X$  is an internal Kan complex in a regular category  $\mathcal{S}$ , then the regular image of the morphism  $\langle d_1, d_0 \rangle : X_1 \rightarrow X_0 \times X_0$  defines an equivalence relation on  $X_0$ .*

*Proof.* For  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , this is a special case of [proposition 1.4.17](#); and in general, we appeal to [proposition 10.1.12](#) and the classical completeness theorem ([A.7.22](#)). ■

**10.1.16** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a regular category and let  $(-)_0 : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  be the functor that sends a simplicial object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{S}$  to the object  $X_0$  in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*

- (i) *The functor  $(-)_0 : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  has both a left adjoint  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  and a right adjoint  $\text{codisc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ .*
- (ii) *The functor  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  is fully faithful.*
- (iii) *For each morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{S}$ , the morphism  $\text{disc } f : \text{disc } X \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  is an internal Kan fibration in  $\mathcal{S}$ . In particular, each  $\text{disc } X$  is an internal Kan complex in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  be the functor that sends an object  $X$  to the constant simplicial object defined by  $X$  and let  $\text{codisc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  be the functor that sends an object  $X$  to the simplicial object defined by the formula  $[n] \mapsto X^{n+1}$ .

It is straightforward to check that  $\text{disc}$  is a left adjoint for  $(-)_0$  and  $\text{codisc}$  is a right adjoint for  $(-)_0$ .

(ii). The functor  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{sS}$  is fully faithful because  $\Delta$  is connected.

(iii). Since the face and degeneracy operators of  $\text{disc } Y$  are isomorphisms, the morphisms  $\{\Delta^n, \text{disc } Y\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{disc } Y\}$  induced by the horn inclusions  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  must also be isomorphisms. Thus, the induced morphism

$$\{\Delta^n, \text{disc } X\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, X\} \times_{\{\Lambda_k^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$$

is an isomorphism (and a regular epimorphism *a fortiori*). ■

**10.1.17 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be an effective regular category and let  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$  be a left adjoint for the functor  $(-)_0 : \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S}) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ .*

(i) *The functor  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$  has a left adjoint,  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S}) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ .*

(ii) *If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{S}$ , then the morphism  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* (i). We define the functor  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S}) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  by the following coequaliser diagram:

$$X_1 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{d_1} \\ \xrightarrow{d_0} \end{array} X_0 \longrightarrow \pi_0 X$$

Note that such coequalisers exist, by [proposition 10.1.15](#) and [lemma A.7.25](#). It is straightforward to verify that  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S}) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  is indeed a left adjoint for  $\text{disc} : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$ .

(ii). In the case  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , we may apply [corollary 1.3.16](#) and [theorem 1.4.35](#); and in general, we appeal to [proposition 10.1.12](#) and the classical completeness theorem ([A.7.22](#)). ■

**10.1.18 DEFINITION.** Let  $n$  be a positive integer and let  $X$  be an internal Kan complex in an effective regular category  $\mathcal{S}$ .

- The **internal based  $n$ -loop fibration** on  $X$  is the internal Kan fibration  $\Omega^n(X) \rightarrow X$  defined by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^n(X) & \longrightarrow & \Delta^n \pitchfork X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \longrightarrow & \partial \Delta^n \pitchfork X \end{array}$$

where  $\Delta^n \pitchfork X \rightarrow \partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X$  is the internal Kan fibration induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$  and  $X \rightarrow \partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X$  is the morphism induced by  $\partial\Delta^n \rightarrow \Delta^0$ .

- Let  $x$  be a morphism  $\text{disc } T \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$ . The **internal based  $n$ -loop space** of  $(X, x)$  is the internal Kan complex  $\Omega^n(X, x)$  in  $S_{/T}$  defined by the following pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Omega^n(X, x) & \longrightarrow & \Omega^n(X) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{disc } T & \xrightarrow{x} & X \end{array}$$

The **internal  $n$ -th homotopy group** of  $(X, x)$  is the object  $\pi_n(X, x) = \pi_0\Omega^n(X, x)$  in  $S_{/T}$ .

**10.1.19** REMARK. It is clear that the above constructions are functorial. Moreover,  $\pi_n(X, x)$  admits a natural internal group structure (in  $S_{/T}$ ); but we do not need this fact.

**10.1.20** LEMMA. *Let  $S$  be an effective regular category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$ . If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence, then the induced morphism  $\Omega^n(f) : \Omega^n(X) \rightarrow \Omega^n(Y)$  is also a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence.*

*Proof.* Since  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$  is a category of fibrant objects (theorem 10.1.13), by Ken Brown’s lemma (4.1.39), it suffices to prove that claim in the special case where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration of internal Kan complexes. In that case, we have the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Kan}(S)$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \Delta^n \pitchfork X & \longrightarrow & \partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X & \longleftarrow & X \\ \text{id}_{\Delta^n} \pitchfork f \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{\partial\Delta^n} \pitchfork f & & \downarrow f \\ \Delta^n \pitchfork Y & \longrightarrow & \partial\Delta^n \pitchfork Y & & Y \end{array}$$

and by proposition 10.1.6, all the vertical arrows are internal trivial Kan fibrations in  $S$ . Thus, by lemma 4.2.11, the induced morphism  $\Omega^n(f) : \Omega^n(X) \rightarrow \Omega^n(Y)$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence. ■

**10.1.21** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be an effective regular category and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence.
- (ii)  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$  and, for all positive integers  $n$ , all objects  $T$  in  $\mathcal{S}$ , and all morphisms  $x : \text{disc } T \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$ ,  $\pi_n f : \pi_n(X, x) \rightarrow \pi_n(Y, f \circ x)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{S}_T$ .
- (iii)  $\pi_0 f : \pi_0 X \rightarrow \pi_0 Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$  and, for all positive integers  $n$ ,  $\pi_n f : \pi_n(X, \bar{x}) \rightarrow \pi_n(Y, f \circ \bar{x})$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{S}_{X_0}$ , where  $\bar{x} : \text{disc } X_0 \rightarrow X$  is the component of the adjunction counit.

*Proof.* Apply the classical completeness theorem (A.7.22) to [theorem 1.4.35](#). ■

**10.1.22** REMARK. It should be emphasised that the weak equivalences in  $\mathbf{Kan}(\mathcal{S})$  really are *weak* equivalences: Bezem and Coquand [2013] have constructed an internal Kan fibration over  $\Delta^1 \odot 1$  in the presheaf topos  $\mathcal{S} = [\mathbb{3}, \mathbf{Set}]$  such that the two canonical fibres are not homotopy equivalent. (Of course, the two fibres are weakly homotopy equivalent, because internal weak homotopy equivalences are closed under pullbacks along internal Kan fibrations, by [proposition 4.2.5](#) and [theorem 10.1.13](#).) Furthermore, since 1 is projective in  $\mathcal{S}$ , (non-)existence in the naïve sense coincides with (non-)existence in sheaf semantics.

We now move on to the problem of internal fibrant replacement. Recall the simplicial sets  $N(P^n)$  defined in paragraph 1.7.1.

**10.1.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a (locally small) category with finite limits. An **extension** of a simplicial object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{S}$  is a simplicial object  $\text{Ex}(X)$  equipped with bijections

$$S(T, \text{Ex}(X)_n) \cong \text{Ex}(S(T, X))_n = \mathbf{sSet}(N(P^n), S(T, X))$$

that are natural in both  $n$  and  $T$ . The **canonical embedding**  $i_X : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}(X)$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathbf{sS}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S(T, X) & \xlongequal{\quad} & S(T, X) \\ S(T, i_X) \downarrow & & \downarrow i \\ S(T, \text{Ex}(X)) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \text{Ex}(S(T, X)) \end{array}$$

where  $i : S(T, X) \rightarrow \text{Ex}(S(T, X))$  is the canonical embedding in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

**10.1.24** REMARK. The above definition makes sense because finite weighted limits exist in  $\mathcal{S}$  and each  $N(P^n)$  is a finite simplicial set. Note that  $\text{Ex}(X)$  is unique up to unique isomorphism, so we obtain a functor  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ ; and the natural transformation  $i : \text{id} \Rightarrow \text{Ex}$  in  $\mathbf{sSet}$  induces a natural transformation of the same form in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ . Also note that  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  preserves all degreewise limits that exist in  $\mathcal{S}$ .

**10.1.25** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  be categories with finite limits. If  $F : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  is a functor that preserves finite limits, then the induced functor  $\mathbf{s}F : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{T}$  preserves extensions and canonical embeddings.*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**10.1.26** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a simplicial object in a regular category  $\mathcal{S}$ . Consider the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{S}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}(X)\} \times_{\{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\}} \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\} & \longrightarrow & \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}(X)\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Lambda_k^n, i_{\text{Ex}(X)}\}} & \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\} \end{array}$$

where the morphism  $\{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\}$  is induced by the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ . Then  $\{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}(X)\} \times_{\{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\}} \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^2(X)\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}(X)\}$  is a regular epimorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$ .

*Proof.* In the case where  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , the claim is a reformulation of lemma 1.7.9; and in general, we appeal to proposition 10.1.25 and the classical completeness theorem (A.7.22). ■

**10.1.27** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a regular category. The functor  $\text{Ex} : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  preserves internal Kan fibrations and internal trivial Kan fibrations. In particular, it preserves internal Kan complexes.*

*Proof.* The claim is known in the case where  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , by lemmas 1.7.10 and 1.7.11; and in general, we appeal to propositions 10.1.12 and 10.1.25 and the classical completeness theorem (A.7.22). ■

**10.1.28** LEMMA. *For any internal Kan complex  $X$  in a regular category  $\mathcal{S}$ , the canonical embedding  $i_X : X \rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}(X)$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*

*Proof.* The claim is known in the case where  $\mathcal{S} = \mathbf{Set}$ , by lemma 1.7.13; and in general, we appeal to propositions 10.1.12 and 10.1.25 and the classical completeness theorem (A.7.22). ■

**10.1.29** ¶ Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a (locally small) category with limits for finite diagrams and colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences. For each simplicial object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{S}$ , we define  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty(X)$  to be the colimit of the diagram below:

$$X \xrightarrow{i_X} \mathrm{Ex}(X) \xrightarrow{i_{\mathrm{Ex}(X)}} \mathrm{Ex}^2(X) \xrightarrow{i_{\mathrm{Ex}^2(X)}} \mathrm{Ex}^3(X) \longrightarrow \dots$$

The above defines a functor  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  and a natural transformation  $i^\infty : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty$ .

**10.1.30** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  be categories with limits for finite diagrams and colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences. If  $F : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  is a functor that preserves finite limits, then:*

- (i) *For each simplicial object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{S}$ , there is a natural comparison morphism of the form  $\mathrm{Ex}(\mathbf{s}F(X)) \rightarrow \mathbf{s}F(\mathrm{Ex}(X))$ , and it is compatible with the natural transformation  $i^\infty : \mathrm{id} \Rightarrow \mathrm{Ex}^\infty$ .*
- (ii) *Moreover, if  $F : \mathcal{S} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  preserves colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences, then the above morphism is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**10.1.31** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a regular category with colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences. If  $\varinjlim : [\omega, \mathcal{S}] \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  preserves finite limits, then the following classes of morphisms are closed under colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ :*

- *The class of internal Kan fibrations in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*
- *The class of internal trivial Kan fibrations in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*
- *The class of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{S}$ .*

*Proof.* Colimits commute with colimits, so  $\varinjlim : [\omega, S] \rightarrow S$  always preserves regular epimorphisms. Thus, the hypothesis implies  $\varinjlim : [\omega, S] \rightarrow S$  is a regular functor. On the other hand, the functor  $[\omega, S] \rightarrow [\text{ob } \omega, S]$  induced by restriction along the inclusion  $\text{ob } \omega \hookrightarrow \omega$  is a conservative regular functor, so [proposition 10.1.12](#) implies the internal Kan fibrations (resp. internal trivial Kan fibrations, Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences) in  $[\omega, S]$  are just the componentwise ones. We use the same proposition again to deduce that the indicated classes of morphisms in  $\mathbf{s}S$  are closed under colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences. ■

**10.1.32 THEOREM.** *Let  $S$  be a regular category with colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences. If  $\varinjlim : [\omega, S] \rightarrow S$  preserves finite limits, then:*

- (i) *For any simplicial object  $X$  in  $S$ , the simplicial object  $\text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is an internal Kan complex.*
- (ii) *For any internal Kan complex  $X$  in  $S$ , the morphism  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence.*
- (iii) *The functor  $\text{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{s}S \rightarrow \mathbf{s}S$  preserves internal Kan fibrations, internal trivial Kan fibrations, and finite limits.*

*Proof.* (i). If  $\varinjlim : [\omega, S] \rightarrow S$  preserves finite limits, then for any finite simplicial set  $Z$ , the functor  $\{Z, -\} : \mathbf{s}S \rightarrow S$  preserves colimits for  $\omega$ -sequences. In particular, we have a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \varinjlim_{m:\omega} \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^\infty(X)\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \varinjlim_{m:\omega} \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^\infty(X)\} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical comparisons and the vertical arrows are induced by the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ . [Lemma 10.1.26](#) gives us the following pullback square in  $S$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)\} \times_{\{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\}} \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\} & \longrightarrow & \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Lambda_k^n, i_{\text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)}\}} & \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\} \end{array}$$

where  $\{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)\} \times_{\{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\}} \{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)\}$  is a regular epimorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$ . It is easy to see that

$$\varinjlim_{m:\omega} \{\Lambda_k^n, i_{\text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)}\} : \varinjlim_{m:\omega} \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)\} \rightarrow \varinjlim_{m:\omega} \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^{m+2}(X)\}$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$ , so  $\{\Delta^n, \text{Ex}^\infty(X)\} \rightarrow \{\Lambda_k^n, \text{Ex}^\infty(X)\}$  is indeed a regular epimorphism in  $\mathcal{S}$ , as required.

(ii). [Theorem 10.1.13](#) and [lemma 10.1.28](#) imply that the composite morphism

$$X \xrightarrow{i_X} \text{Ex}(X) \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow \text{Ex}^m(X) \xrightarrow{i_{\text{Ex}^m(X)}} \text{Ex}^{m+1}(X)$$

is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence, and since  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is a colimit for the  $\omega$ -sequence of these composites, we may apply [lemma 10.1.31](#) to deduce that it is also an internal weak homotopy equivalence.

(iii). Recalling [remark 10.1.24](#) and [lemma 10.1.27](#), an argument similar to the above proves the claim. ■

**10.1.33** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be a  $\sigma$ -pretopos. An **internal weak homotopy equivalence** of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{S}$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$  such that  $\text{Ex}^\infty(f) : \text{Ex}^\infty(X) \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(Y)$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence.

**10.1.34** REMARK. Recalling the 2-out-of-3 property of Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences, [theorem 10.1.32](#) implies that the internal weak homotopy equivalences of internal Kan complexes are precisely the Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences.

**10.1.35** REMARK. [Lemma 3.1.8](#) and [theorem 10.1.13](#) imply that  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{S}$ , equipped with the class of internal weak homotopy equivalences, is a saturated homotopical category.

**10.1.36** REMARK. [Theorems 10.1.13](#) and [10.1.32](#) imply that an internal Kan fibration  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence if and only if  $\text{Ex}^\infty(p) : \text{Ex}^\infty(X) \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(Y)$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration (of internal Kan complexes). In particular, if  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration, then so is  $\text{Ex}^\infty(p) : \text{Ex}^\infty(X) \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(Y)$ , and therefore  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence.



**10.1.37** REMARK. If  $S = \mathbf{Set}$ , then an internal weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $S$  is precisely a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial sets in the usual sense, by [proposition 1.5.7](#). Similarly, if  $S = [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  for a small category  $C$ , then an internal weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $S$  is the same thing as a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial presheaves on  $C$ .

**10.1.38** PROPOSITION. *Let  $S$  and  $\mathcal{T}$  be  $\sigma$ -pretoposes and let  $F : S \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  be a regular functor that preserves colimits for countable diagrams.*

- (i) *The induced functor  $sF : sS \rightarrow s\mathcal{T}$  preserves internal weak homotopy equivalences.*
- (ii) *If  $F : S \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$  is conservative, then  $sF : sS \rightarrow s\mathcal{T}$  reflects internal weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* Combine [propositions 10.1.12](#) and [10.1.30](#). ■

**10.1.39** THEOREM. *Let  $S$  be a  $\sigma$ -pretopos. For any simplicial object  $X$  in  $S$ , the morphism  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence.*

*Proof.* First, we prove the claim in the case of a Grothendieck topos  $\mathcal{E}$ . Let  $C$  be the *opposite* of the category of finite simplicial sets. It is not hard to see that the functor  $[C, \mathcal{E}] \rightarrow s\mathcal{E}$  obtained by restricting along  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$  itself restricts to an equivalence between the full subcategory of finite-limit-preserving functors  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and the category  $s\mathcal{E}$  itself. Thus by Diaconescu's theorem,<sup>[2]</sup> for each simplicial object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , there is a functor  $x^* : [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  such that  $x^*$  is a finite-limit-preserving left adjoint and  $X \cong x^*M$ , where  $M$  is the simplicial object in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  obtained by composing  $\Delta^\bullet : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$  and the Yoneda embedding  $C \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ .

Recalling [proposition 10.1.38](#), we see that the canonical embedding  $i_X^\infty : X \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(X)$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{E}$  as soon as the universal canonical embedding  $i_M^\infty : M \rightarrow \text{Ex}^\infty(M)$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence in  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . But by [remark 10.1.37](#), this is a special case of [theorem 1.7.18](#). Thus the claim is proved in the case where  $\mathcal{E}$  is a Grothendieck topos.

[2] See Lemma 3.2.5 and Theorem 3.2.7 in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part B], or Corollary 3 in [ML–M, Ch. VII, §9].

Now, let  $S$  be small  $\sigma$ -pretopos. Then there exist a Grothendieck topos  $\mathcal{E}$  and a fully faithful functor  $S \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  that preserves limits for all diagrams and colimits for countable diagrams: see [proposition A.7.31](#). Applying [proposition 10.1.38](#), we then deduce the claim for  $S$  from the result for  $\mathcal{E}$  proved above. In general, we may assume  $S$  is small by appealing to the universe axiom.<sup>[3]</sup> ■

**10.1.40** COROLLARY. *Let  $S$  be a  $\sigma$ -pretopos. There exist a functor  $R : \mathbf{s}S \rightarrow \mathbf{s}S$  and a natural transformation  $i : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{s}S} \Rightarrow R$  such that, for all simplicial objects  $X$  in  $S$ ,  $RX$  is an internal Kan complex and  $i_X : X \rightarrow RX$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence. Moreover, any such functor  $R$  preserves and reflects weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* By theorems [10.1.32](#) and [10.1.39](#), we may take  $(R, i)$  to be  $(\mathrm{Ex}^\infty, i^\infty)$ . The 2-out-of-3 property of internal weak homotopy equivalences ([remark 10.1.35](#)) implies the remainder of the claim. ■

---

[3] See §0.1.

## 10.2 Hypercovers

**Prerequisites.** §§0.5, 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 10.1.

**10.2.1** ¶ Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small category, let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $\mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C}) = [\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  be the category of presheaves (of sets) on  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $\mathbf{Sh}(\mathcal{C}, J)$  be the full subcategory of  $J$ -sheaves (of sets) on  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let

$$j^* \dashv j_* : \mathbf{Sh}(\mathcal{C}, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C})$$

be the induced adjunction, where  $j_* : \mathbf{Sh}(\mathcal{C}, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C})$  is the inclusion. Note that the left adjoint  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(\mathcal{C}, J)$  preserves finite limits. In addition, we define the following subset  $\mathcal{I} \subset \text{mor } \mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$ :

$$\mathcal{I} = \{ \partial \Delta^n \odot h_C \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_C \mid n \geq 0, C \in \text{ob } \mathcal{C} \}$$

**10.2.2** DEFINITION. A **cellular simplicial presheaf** on  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $X$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  for which the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow X$  is a relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex.

**10.2.3** REMARK. It is not hard to see that every relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex is a projective cofibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  (in the sense of [definition 5.3.15](#)). In particular, every cellular simplicial presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$  is cofibrant in the projective model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$ .

**10.2.4** REMARK. If  $V$  is a representable presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $\text{disc } V$  is a cellular simplicial presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**10.2.5** LEMMA. Let  $X : \Delta^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C})$  be the left Kan extension of a functor  $I : \Delta_{\rightarrow}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C})$  along the inclusion  $\Delta_{\rightarrow} \hookrightarrow \Delta$ . If  $I$  is degreewise a coproduct of representable presheaves on  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $X$  is a cellular simplicial presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$  and is also degreewise a coproduct of representable presheaves.

*Proof.* By [proposition 1.1.12](#), there are isomorphisms

$$X_n \cong \coprod_{m \leq n} D_m^n \odot I_m$$

where  $D_m^n$  is the set of surjections  $[n] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ , so  $X$  is degreewise a coproduct of representable presheaves if  $I$  is. Furthermore, this decomposition yields a sequence of simplicial subpresheaves of  $X$ , say

$$0 = X^{(-1)} \subseteq X^{(0)} \subseteq X^{(1)} \subseteq X^{(2)} \subseteq \dots$$

such that, for each natural number  $n$ , we have a pushout diagram in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot I_n & \hookrightarrow & \Delta^n \odot I_n \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X^{(n-1)} & \hookrightarrow & X^{(n)} \end{array}$$

Thus  $X$  is indeed an  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complex. ■

**10.2.6 DEFINITION.** A  **$J$ -local epimorphism** is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  such that  $j^*f : j^*X \rightarrow j^*Y$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ .

**10.2.7 PROPOSITION.**

- (i) *The class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms contains all presheaf epimorphisms.*
- (ii) *The class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms is closed under composition.*
- (iii) *The class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms is closed under pullbacks.*
- (iv) *The class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms is closed under retracts.*
- (v) *The class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms is closed under finite products.*

*Proof.* (i). Since  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  preserves epimorphisms, every presheaf epimorphism is a  $J$ -local epimorphism.

(ii). The class of epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  is closed under composition, so the class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms is also closed under composition.

(iii), (iv), and (v). These are consequences of the fact that  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  preserves finite limits and the fact that epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  are closed under the same operations. ■

**10.2.8 DEFINITION.**

- A  **$J$ -local isomorphism** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that  $j^*f : j^*X \rightarrow j^*Y$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ .
- A  **$J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that  $j^*f : j^*X \rightarrow j^*Y$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ .

**10.2.9** LEMMA. *Componentwise weak homotopy equivalences are  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* The functor  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  preserves finite limits and all colimits, so we may apply [proposition 10.1.38](#) to [remark 10.1.37](#). ■

**10.2.10** DEFINITION.

- A  **$J$ -local Kan fibration** is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that  $j^*f : j^*X \rightarrow j^*Y$  is an internal Kan fibration of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ .
- A  **$J$ -local trivial Kan fibration** is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that  $j^*f : j^*X \rightarrow j^*Y$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ .

**10.2.11** DEFINITION. A  **$J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaf** on  $C$  is an object  $X$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is a  $J$ -local Kan fibration.

**10.2.12** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *The class of  $J$ -local Kan fibrations (resp.  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations) contains all  $J$ -local isomorphisms.*
- (ii) *The class of  $J$ -local Kan fibrations (resp.  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations) is closed under composition.*
- (iii) *The class of  $J$ -local Kan fibrations (resp.  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations) is closed under pullbacks.*
- (iv) *The class of  $J$ -local Kan fibrations (resp.  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations) is closed under retracts.*
- (v) *The class of  $J$ -local Kan fibrations (resp.  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations) is closed under finite products.*

*Proof.* These are immediate consequences of [proposition 10.1.4](#). ■

**10.2.13** LEMMA.

- (i) *Every componentwise Kan fibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a  $J$ -local Kan fibration.*
- (ii) *Every componentwise trivial Kan fibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration.*

*Proof.* (i). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be an componentwise Kan fibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ , let  $n$  be a natural number, and let  $0 \leq k \leq n$ . We wish to show that the following diagram is a weak pullback square in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\Delta^n, j^* X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Delta^n, j^* f\}} & \{\Delta^n, j^* Y\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\Lambda_k^n, j^* X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Lambda_k^n, j^* f\}} & \{\Lambda_k^n, j^* Y\} \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the horn inclusion  $\Lambda_k^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , and since  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  preserves finite limits and epimorphisms, it suffices to verify that the diagram below is a weak pullback square in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\Delta^n, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Delta^n, f\}} & \{\Delta^n, Y\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\Lambda_k^n, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Lambda_k^n, f\}} & \{\Lambda_k^n, Y\} \end{array}$$

But limits and colimits in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  can be computed componentwise, so the claim can be reduced to [lemma A.3.2](#).

(ii). An analogous proof works. ■

**10.2.14** THEOREM (Dugger–Isaksen). *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ . If  $X$  and  $Y$  are  $J$ -locally fibrant, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence.*
- (ii) *For any presheaf  $V$  on  $C$  and any natural number  $n$ , given a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot V & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \Delta^n \odot V & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

*there exist a  $J$ -local epimorphism  $p : U \rightarrow V$  in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  and morphisms  $x : \Delta^n \odot U \rightarrow X$  and  $h : D^{n+1} \odot U \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that the following*

diagrams commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \Delta^n \odot U & \xrightarrow{x} & X \\
 j_1 \odot \text{id}_U \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
 D^{n+1} \odot U & \xrightarrow{h} & Y
 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \partial \Delta^n \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\partial \Delta^n} \odot p} & \partial \Delta^n \odot V \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial x \\
 \Delta^n \odot U & \xrightarrow{x} & X
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \Delta^n \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\Delta^n} \odot p} & \Delta^n \odot V \\
 j_0 \odot \text{id}_U \downarrow & & \downarrow y \\
 D^{n+1} \odot U & \xrightarrow{h} & Y
 \end{array}$$

where  $D^{n+1}$  is the relative cylinder  $C(\Delta^n, \partial \Delta^n)$  and  $j_0, j_1 : \Delta^n \rightarrow D^{n+1}$  are the two canonical embeddings.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By adjointness, the given commutative diagram defines a morphism

$$V \rightarrow \{\partial \Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial \Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$$

and since  $j^* f : j^* X \rightarrow j^* Y$  is a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence of internal Kan complexes in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  (by [remark 10.1.34](#)), the canonical morphism

$$\{\Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\Delta^n, Y\}} \{D^{n+1}, Y\} \longrightarrow \{\partial \Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial \Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$$

is a  $J$ -local epimorphism; but by [proposition 10.2.7](#), the class of  $J$ -local epimorphisms is closed under pullbacks, so the required  $J$ -local epimorphism  $p : U \rightarrow V$  and morphisms  $x : \Delta^n \odot U \rightarrow X$  and  $h : D^{n+1} \odot U \rightarrow Y$  indeed exist.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). By considering the universal instance where  $V = \{\partial \Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial \Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$ , we see that  $j^* f : j^* X \rightarrow j^* Y$  must be a Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalence of internal Kan complexes in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ , and so  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence. ■

**10.2.15** DEFINITION. A  **$J$ -hypercov**er of a presheaf  $V$  on  $C$  is a simplicial presheaf  $U$  on  $C$  equipped with a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$ , such that each  $U_n$  is a coproduct (in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$ ) of representable presheaves on  $C$ .

**10.2.16** REMARK. Propositions [10.1.16](#) and [10.2.12](#) imply that the underlying simplicial presheaf of a  $J$ -hypercover is  $J$ -locally fibrant.

**10.2.17** ¶ Given a presheaf  $X$  on  $\mathcal{C}$ , we define  $|X| = \sum_{C \in \text{ob } \mathcal{C}} |X(C)|$ ; and for a simplicial presheaf  $X$  on  $\mathcal{C}$ , we define  $|X| = \sum_{n \geq 0} |X_n|$ .

**10.2.18** LEMMA. *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $J$ -local epimorphism of presheaves on  $\mathcal{C}$ . For each morphism  $y : V \rightarrow Y$ , there exist a projective object  $U$  in  $\mathbf{Psh}(\mathcal{C})$ , a  $J$ -local epimorphism  $p : U \rightarrow V$ , and a morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{x} & X \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ V & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

Moreover, we may choose  $U$  so that it is a coproduct of  $\leq |V|$  representable presheaves.

*Proof.* Let  $S$  be the set of all pairs  $(C, v)$  where  $C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $v$  is an element of  $V(C)$  such that  $y_C(v)$  is in the presheaf image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ . Clearly,  $|S| \leq |V|$ . Let  $U = \coprod_{(C,v) \in S} h_C$  and let  $p : U \rightarrow V$  be the evident projection. By construction, the presheaf image of  $p : U \rightarrow V$  is the preimage under  $y : V \rightarrow Y$  of the presheaf image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , so we may apply [proposition 10.2.7](#) to deduce that  $p : U \rightarrow V$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism. The construction also ensures the existence of a presheaf morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$  making the given diagram commute. ■

**10.2.19** LEMMA. *If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration, then the component  $f_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism of presheaves on  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the induced morphism  $j^*f : j^*X \rightarrow j^*Y$  in  $\mathbf{sSh}(\mathcal{C}, J)$ . By definition,  $j^*f$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration, so the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\Delta^0, j^*X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Delta^0, j^*f\}} & \{\Delta^0, j^*Y\} \\ \{i, j^*X\} \downarrow & & \downarrow \{i, j^*Y\} \\ \{\partial\Delta^0, j^*X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\partial\Delta^0, j^*f\}} & \{\partial\Delta^0, j^*Y\} \end{array}$$

induced by the boundary inclusion  $i : \partial\Delta^0 \hookrightarrow \Delta^0$  is a weak pullback square in  $\mathbf{Sh}(\mathcal{C}, J)$ ; but  $\partial\Delta^0$  is the initial object in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ , so  $\{\partial\Delta^0, j^*X\} \rightarrow \{\partial\Delta^0, j^*Y\}$  is an isomorphism. Hence,  $\{\Delta^0, j^*X\} \rightarrow \{\Delta^0, j^*Y\}$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathbf{Sh}(\mathcal{C}, J)$ , and therefore  $f_0 : X_0 \rightarrow Y_0$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism. ■



**10.2.20 LEMMA.** *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration and let  $y : V \rightarrow Y$  be any morphism in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ . There exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$  on  $C$ , a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$ , and a morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{x} & X \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ V & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

Moreover, we may choose  $U$  so that each  $U_n$  is a coproduct of representable presheaves and  $|U| \leq \kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is an infinite cardinal such that  $|V| \leq \kappa$  and  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $C$ .

*Proof.* We construct  $U$ ,  $p$ , and  $x$  by induction. To begin, observe that lemmas 10.2.18 and 10.2.19 imply we have a diagram of form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U'_0 & \xrightarrow{x'_0} & X_0 \\ p'_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow f_0 \\ V_0 & \xrightarrow{y_0} & Y_0 \end{array}$$

where  $U'_0$  is a coproduct of  $\leq \kappa$  representable presheaves, hence  $|U'_0| \leq \kappa$ , and  $p' : U'_0 \rightarrow V_0$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism. Let  $U_0 = U'_0$ ,  $p_0 = p'_0$ , and  $x_0 = x'_0$ .

Now, suppose we have defined  $U$ ,  $p$ , and  $x$  up to degree  $n - 1$ . It is not hard to verify that  $\{\partial\Delta^n, X\}$  depends on  $X$  only up to degree  $n - 1$ , so  $\{\partial\Delta^n, U\}$  is well-defined. Since  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration, the canonical morphism  $\{\Delta^n, X\} \rightarrow \{\partial\Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism, so we may use lemma 10.2.18 to choose a presheaf  $U'_n$  and morphisms  $x'_n : U'_n \rightarrow X_n$  and  $p'_n : U'_n \rightarrow \{\partial\Delta^n, U\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U'_n & \xrightarrow{x'_n} & \{\Delta^n, X\} \\ p'_n \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\partial\Delta^n, U\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\} & \longrightarrow & \{\partial\Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\} \end{array}$$

where  $p'_n : U'_n \rightarrow \{\partial\Delta^n, U\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism. Clearly, there is a monomorphism  $\{\partial\Delta^n, U\} \rightarrow (U_{n-1})^{n+1}$ , so  $|\{\partial\Delta^n, U\}| \leq |U_{n-1}|^{n+1} \leq \kappa$ ; and  $|V_n| \leq \kappa$  by hypothesis, so  $U'_n$  can be chosen to be a coproduct of  $\leq \kappa$  representable presheaves; note we then have  $|U'_n| \leq \kappa$ .

Let  $U_n = \coprod_{m \leq n} D_m^n \odot U'_m$ , where  $D_m^n$  is the set of surjections  $[n] \rightarrow [m]$  in  $\Delta$ . Since each  $D_m^n$  is finite and  $|U'_m| \leq \kappa$  for each  $m$ , we also have  $|U_n| \leq \kappa$ . There are evident degeneracy operators  $U_{n-1} \rightarrow U_n$  induced by composition in  $\Delta$ , and we define the face operators  $U_n \rightarrow U_{n-1}$  using the simplicial identities on the degenerate part and the composite of  $p'_n : U'_n \rightarrow \{\partial \Delta^n, U\} \times_{\{\partial \Delta^n, V\}} \{\Delta^n, V\}$  and the evident projections on the non-degenerate part. We also define  $p_n : U_n \rightarrow V_n$  in a similar fashion. Using the various  $x'_m : U'_m \rightarrow \{\Delta^m, X\}$ , we can define a morphism  $x_n : U_n \rightarrow X_n$  such that the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U_n & \xrightarrow{x_n} & X_n \\ p_n \downarrow & & \downarrow f_n \\ V_n & \xrightarrow{y_n} & Y_n \end{array}$$

In the above, note that we can choose  $p_n : U_n \rightarrow V_n$  and  $x_n : U_n \rightarrow X_n$  compatible with all the face and degeneracy operators so far.

We thus obtain simplicial presheaf morphisms  $p : U \rightarrow V$  and  $x : U \rightarrow X$  making the announced diagram commute, and by construction, the simplicial presheaf  $U$  satisfies the required conditions. (Note that  $U$  is cellular by the proof of [lemma 10.2.5](#).) Moreover, the induced morphism  $U_n \rightarrow \{\partial \Delta^n, U\} \times_{\{\partial \Delta^n, V\}} \{\Delta^n, V\}$  is a  $J$ -local epimorphism because  $p'_n : U'_n \rightarrow \{\partial \Delta^n, U\} \times_{\{\partial \Delta^n, V\}} \{\Delta^n, V\}$  is, so  $p : U \rightarrow V$  is indeed a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration.  $\blacksquare$

**10.2.21** DEFINITION. Let  $V$  be a presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$ . A **refinement** of a  $J$ -hypercover  $f : X \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  is a  $J$ -hypercover  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  and a morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  such that  $p = f \circ x$ . We say that  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  **refines**  $f : X \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  if there exists such a morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$ .

**10.2.22** REMARK. Unlike the topos-theoretic situation with ‘ $J$ -dense subobjects’ instead of ‘ $J$ -hypercovers’, the morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$  need not be unique (if it exists). However, we can prove something weaker: see [proposition 10.5.7](#).

**10.2.23** PROPOSITION. Let  $V$  be a presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $f : X \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  is a  $J$ -hypercover of  $V$ , then there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$  and a  $J$ -hypercover  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  that refines  $f : X \rightarrow \text{disc } V$ , such that  $|U| \leq \kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is an infinite cardinal such that  $|V| \leq \kappa$  and  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* This is a special case of [lemma 10.2.20](#).  $\blacksquare$

**10.2.24** PROPOSITION. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration and let  $i : Z \rightarrow W$  be a monomorphism between finite simplicial sets. For any simplicial presheaf  $V$  on  $\mathcal{C}$ , given a commutative square in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z \odot V & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i \odot \text{id}_V \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W \odot V & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$ , a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$  and a morphism  $h : W \odot U \rightarrow X$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_Z \odot p} & Z \odot V & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ i \odot \text{id}_U \downarrow & & \nearrow h & & \downarrow f \\ W \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_W \odot p} & W \odot V & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

Moreover, we may choose  $U$  so that each  $U_n$  is a coproduct of representable presheaves and  $|U| \leq \kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is an infinite cardinal such that  $|V| \leq \kappa$  and  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* By adjunction, the we obtain a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  of the following form:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \xrightarrow{\quad} & W \pitchfork Y \\ \downarrow i & \nearrow \tilde{l} & \downarrow i \pitchfork \text{id}_Y \\ (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & W \pitchfork Y \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Z \pitchfork X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_Z \pitchfork f} & Z \pitchfork Y \end{array}$$

Thus, it suffices to find a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$  and a morphism  $\tilde{l} : U \rightarrow W \pitchfork X$  making the diagram below commute;

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{\tilde{l}} & W \pitchfork X \\ p \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V & \xrightarrow{\quad} & (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y) \end{array}$$

but [proposition 10.1.6](#) implies that  $W \pitchfork X \rightarrow (Z \pitchfork X) \times_{Z \pitchfork Y} (W \pitchfork Y)$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration, so we may apply [lemma 10.2.20](#). ■

**10.2.25** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaves on  $C$ , let  $L$  be a finite simplicial set, and let  $K$  be a simplicial subset of  $L$ . Given a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , for any simplicial presheaf  $V$  and any commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  of the form below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K \odot V & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ L \odot V & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

*there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$ , a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$ , and morphisms  $x : L \odot U \rightarrow X$  and  $h : C(L, K) \odot U \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that the following diagrams commute,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} L \odot U & \xrightarrow{x} & X \\ j_1 \odot \text{id}_U \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ C(L, K) \odot U & \xrightarrow{h} & Y \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_K \odot p} & K \odot V \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial x \\ L \odot U & \xrightarrow{x} & X \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} L \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\Delta^n} \odot p} & L \odot V \\ j_0 \odot \text{id}_U \downarrow & & \downarrow y \\ C(L, K) \odot U & \xrightarrow{h} & Y \end{array}$$

*where  $C(L, K)$  is the relative cylinder and  $j_0, j_1 : L \rightarrow C(L, K)$  are the two canonical embeddings. Moreover, we may choose  $U$  so that each  $U_n$  is a coproduct of representable presheaves and  $|U| \leq \kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is an infinite cardinal such that  $|V| \leq \kappa$  and  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $C$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(L, K) \pitchfork X & \longrightarrow & (L \pitchfork X) \times_{L \pitchfork Y} (C(L, K) \pitchfork Y) \\ j_0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ L \pitchfork X & \longrightarrow & (K \pitchfork X) \times_{K \pitchfork Y} (L \pitchfork Y) \end{array}$$

where the top horizontal arrow is induced by  $j_1 : \Delta^n \rightarrow D^{n+1}$ , the bottom horizontal arrow is induced by the inclusion  $K \hookrightarrow L$ , and the vertical arrows are induced by the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K & \hookrightarrow & L \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow j_1 \\ L & \xrightarrow{j_0} & C(L, K) \end{array}$$

Note that the canonical comparison  $L \cup^K L \rightarrow C(L, K)$  is a monomorphism, so by [lemma 10.1.8](#), the right vertical arrow is a  $J$ -local Kan fibration; moreover, [proposition 10.1.6](#) implies that all the objects in the diagram are  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaves. Since  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, we may use [lemma 10.1.14](#) to deduce that both horizontal arrows are  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences; and  $j_0 : L \rightarrow C(L, K)$  is an anodyne extension, so  $j_0 \pitchfork \text{id}_X : C(L, K) \pitchfork X \rightarrow L \pitchfork X$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration. Thus, the 2-out-of-3 property of  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences ([remark 10.1.35](#)) and [theorem 10.1.13](#) imply that the morphism

$$(L \pitchfork X) \times_{L \pitchfork Y} (C(L, K) \pitchfork Y) \rightarrow (K \pitchfork X) \times_{K \pitchfork Y} (L \pitchfork Y)$$

is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration. Thus, by adjointness and [lemma 10.2.20](#), we can obtain the required  $p : U \rightarrow V$ ,  $x : L \odot U \rightarrow X$ , and  $h : C(L, K) \odot U \rightarrow Y$ . ■

Observe that we can regard a morphism of simplicial presheaves of the form  $X \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  as a simplicial object in the slice category  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)_{/Y}$ .

**10.2.26** DEFINITION. A **bounded  $J$ -hypercov**er of a presheaf  $V$  on  $C$  is a  $J$ -hypercov $er$   $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  for which there exists a natural number  $n$  such that, for all  $k > n$ , the morphism

$$\{\Delta^k, p\} \rightarrow \{\partial\Delta^k, p\}$$

induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^k \hookrightarrow \Delta^k$  is an isomorphism in the slice category  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)_{/V}$ . The **height** of a bounded hypercov $er$   $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  is the least such  $n$ .

**10.2.27** LEMMA. Let  $X$  be a presheaf on  $C$  and let  $\check{U}(X)$  be the simplicial presheaf on  $C$  defined by the formula below:

$$\check{U}(X)_n = [n] \pitchfork X$$

If  $V$  is the presheaf image of the unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$ , then there is a unique morphism  $\check{U}(X) \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  and it is a componentwise trivial Kan fibration.

*Proof.* Since limits in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  can be computed componentwise, it suffices to prove the claim in the case where  $C$  is the terminal category  $\mathbb{1}$ ; so we may as well replace  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  with  $\mathbf{Set}$  and  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  with  $\mathbf{sSet}$ .

There are two cases. If  $X$  is empty, then the claim is trivial. Otherwise,  $X$  is non-empty, so  $V$  is a singleton and  $\check{U}(X)$  is a contractible Kan complex (because it is the nerve of a contractible groupoid). Either way, there is a unique morphism  $\check{U}(X) \rightarrow V$  and it is a trivial Kan fibration (by [proposition 1.5.10](#)), as required. ■

**10.2.28** DEFINITION. The **Čech nerve** of a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  is the morphism  $p : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  corresponding to the simplicial object in the slice category  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)_{/Y}$  defined as in [lemma 10.2.27](#).

**10.2.29** LEMMA. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$ , let  $V$  be the presheaf image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , and let  $\overline{V}$  be the  $J$ -image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , i.e. the subpresheaf of  $Y$  where  $y \in \overline{V}(C)$  if and only if the sieve

$$\{c \in C(C', C) \mid \exists x \in X(C'). c^*(y) = f(x)\}$$

is  $J$ -covering. Then  $V \subseteq \overline{V}$ , and the inclusion  $V \hookrightarrow \overline{V}$  is a  $J$ -local isomorphism.

*Proof.* It is clear that  $V \subseteq \overline{V}$ . We know that  $j^*V \rightarrow j^*\overline{V}$  must be a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ , so it suffices to prove that it is also an epimorphism; for this, we can use [proposition A.3.28](#) and the fact that there is an orthogonal (epi, mono)-factorisation system on  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ . ■

**10.2.30** PROPOSITION. Let  $p : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  be the Čech nerve of a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  and let  $\bar{y} : \overline{V} \rightarrow Y$  be the  $J$ -image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ .

- (i) We have  $p = (\text{disc } \bar{y}) \circ q$  for a unique morphism  $\bar{q} : X \rightarrow \text{disc } \overline{V}$ , and  $\bar{q} : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } \overline{V}$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration.
- (ii) Assuming  $C$  has pullbacks, if  $Y$  is a representable presheaf and  $X$  is a coproduct of representable presheaves, then  $\bar{q} : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } \overline{V}$  is a  $J$ -hypercove of height 0.

*Proof.* (i). Let  $y : V \rightarrow Y$  be the presheaf image of  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ . By [lemma 10.2.29](#), the inclusion  $V \hookrightarrow \overline{V}$  is a  $J$ -local isomorphism, hence a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration *a fortiori* (by [proposition 10.2.12](#)). So, recalling [lemma 10.2.13](#), it suffices to show that  $p : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } Y$  factors as  $p = (\text{disc } y) \circ q$  for a componentwise trivial Kan fibration  $q : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } V$ . But the property of being a componentwise trivial Kan fibration is stable under slicing, so we may assume that  $Y$  is terminal; the claim then reduces to [lemma 10.2.27](#).

(ii). Since pullbacks distribute over coproducts in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$ , each  $U_n$  is the coproduct of an iterated fibred product of representable presheaves; but the Yoneda embedding  $C \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(C)$  is fully faithful and preserves pullbacks, so (iterated) fibred products of representable presheaves are themselves representable. Thus  $\bar{q} : \check{U}(f) \rightarrow \text{disc } \bar{V}$  is a  $J$ -hypercov, and by construction it is of height 0. ■

## 10.3 Stacks and hypersheaves

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.5, 2.4, 5.1, 6.6, 10.1, 10.2, A.3.

**10.3.1 ¶** We continue use the notation set up in paragraph 10.2.1. In addition, we will often refer the Bousfield–Kan (i.e. projective) and Heller (i.e. injective) model structures on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  (tacitly identified with  $[C^{\mathrm{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ ): see theorems 1.9.13 and 1.9.14.

**10.3.2 DEFINITION.** A simplicial presheaf  $F$  on  $C$  satisfies the **descent condition** for a morphism  $p : U \rightarrow V$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  if the induced morphism of derived hom-spaces<sup>[1]</sup>

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(p, F) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(V, F) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(U, F)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho\,sSet}$ .

**10.3.3 REMARK.** Assuming  $F$  is an injective-fibrant simplicial presheaf on  $C$ ,  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $p : U \rightarrow V$  if and only if the induced morphism of hom-spaces

$$\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(p, F) : \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, F) \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, F)$$

is (half of) a homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes: this follows from [theorem 2.4.9](#), because all simplicial presheaves are injective-cofibrant.

Similarly, assuming  $F$  is a projective-fibrant simplicial presheaf on  $C$ , if  $U$  and  $V$  are projective-cofibrant simplicial presheaves (e.g. cellular simplicial presheaves, by [remark 10.2.3](#)), then  $F$  satisfies the descent condition with respect to  $p : U \rightarrow V$  if and only if the induced morphism of hom-spaces is (half of) a homotopy equivalence of Kan complexes.

**10.3.4 DEFINITION.** A  **$J$ -stack of  $\infty$ -groupoids** on  $C$  is a simplicial presheaf on  $C$  that satisfies the descent condition for all morphisms of the form  $\mathrm{disc}\,p : \mathrm{disc}\,U \rightarrow \mathrm{disc}\,h_C$  where  $p : U \rightarrow h_C$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  that is a  $J$ -local epimorphism and  $C$  is an object in  $C$ .

---

[1] — with respect to either the Bousfield–Kan or Heller model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ ; since the weak equivalences in both model structures coincide, so do the derived hom-spaces.



**10.3.5** ¶ What we have defined above is perhaps more properly called a ‘*split J-stack* of  $\infty$ -groupoids’, as we are requiring it to be a functor  $C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{sSet}$  in the ordinary (i.e. strict) sense. Nonetheless, for brevity, we will simply refer to them as ‘*J-stacks*’.

**10.3.6** REMARK. Given a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ , it is clear that  $X$  is a *J-stack* if and only if  $Y$  is a *J-stack*. Thus, by [proposition 5.1.28](#), the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  spanned by the *J-stacks* inherits the injective and projective model structures on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  (and hence admits the structure of a derivable category in two ways).

**10.3.7** REMARK. A simplicial presheaf of the form  $\text{disc } F$  is a *J-stack* if and only if  $F$  is a *J-sheaf* (of sets): indeed,  $\text{disc } F$  is an injective-fibrant simplicial presheaf, so by applying [remark 10.3.3](#), we find that  $\text{disc } F$  is a *J-stack* if and only if the induced morphism of hom-sets

$$\mathbf{Psh}_C(p, F) : \mathbf{Psh}_C(h_C, F) \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}_C(U, F)$$

is a bijection for all monomorphisms  $p : U \rightarrow h_C$  that are *J-local* epimorphisms and all objects  $C$  in  $C$ , which is precisely the *J-sheaf* condition.

**10.3.8** DEFINITION. A **weak *J-stack* equivalence** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that the induced morphism

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(f, F) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(Y, F) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(X, F)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$  for all *J-stacks*  $F$ .

**10.3.9** REMARK. Clearly, every componentwise weak homotopy equivalence is also a weak *J-stack* equivalence. Conversely, (the proof of) [lemma 6.6.6](#) shows that every weak *J-stack* equivalence between *J-stacks* is a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence.

**10.3.10** THEOREM. *Let  $S$  be the class of morphisms of the form  $\text{disc } p : \text{disc } U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  where  $p : U \rightarrow h_C$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  that is a *J-local* epimorphism and  $C$  is an object in  $C$ .*

- (i) *The left Bousfield localisation of the Heller model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  with respect to  $S$  exists. The localised model structure is called the **injective model structure for *J-stacks* of  $\infty$ -groupoids**, and the fibrant objects are the injective-fibrant *J-stacks*.*

- (ii) *The left Bousfield localisation of the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  with respect to  $S$  exists. The localised model structure is called the **projective model structure for  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids**, and the fibrant objects are the projective-fibrant  $J$ -stacks.*

*In either case:*

- *The localised model structure is left proper, combinatorial, and simplicial.*
- *The weak equivalences are the weak  $J$ -stack equivalences.*

*Proof.* It is easy to see that there is a set of representatives of isomorphism classes of elements in  $S$ , and the Heller (resp. Bousfield–Kan) model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is left proper (by propositions 6.1.7 and 6.1.8) and combinatorial, so we may apply proposition 6.6.14 and theorem 6.6.15. ■

**10.3.11** PROPOSITION. *The adjunction unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}j_*\mathbf{s}j^*$  is a natural weak  $J$ -stack equivalence.*

*Proof.* See (the proof of) Proposition A.2 in [Dugger, Hollander and Isaksen, 2004]. (The cited proof does not require  $C$  to have pullbacks.) □

**10.3.12** COROLLARY. *Every  $J$ -local isomorphism of simplicial presheaves on  $C$  is a weak  $J$ -stack equivalence.* ■

**10.3.13** THEOREM. *Let  $F$  be a simplicial presheaf on  $C$ . If  $C$  has pullbacks, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$F$  is a  $J$ -stack.*
- (ii)  *$F$  satisfies the descent condition for all  $J$ -hypercovers of height 0.*
- (iii)  *$F$  satisfies the descent condition for all bounded  $J$ -hypercovers.*
- (iv)  *$F$  satisfies the descent condition for all components of the adjunction unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}j_*\mathbf{s}j^*$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem A.6 in [Dugger, Hollander and Isaksen, 2004]. □

**10.3.14** DEFINITION. A **strong  $J$ -stack of  $\infty$ -groupoids** on  $C$  is a simplicial  $J$ -sheaf on  $C$  that is also a  $J$ -stack of  $\infty$ -groupoids.

TODO: Does this really need  $C$  to have pullbacks?

**10.3.15** THEOREM. *The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the weak  $J$ -stack equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the monomorphisms.*
- *The fibrations are the morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  that are fibrations in the injective model structure (on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ ) for  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids.*

*This model structure is called the **injective model structure for strong  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids**, and the adjunction*

$$\mathbf{sj}^* \dashv \mathbf{sj}_* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$$

*is a Quillen equivalence between this model structure and the injective model structure for  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids.*

*Proof.* We have the following facts:

- The functor  $\mathbf{sj}_* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is fully faithful.
- Both  $\mathbf{sj}^* : \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  and  $\mathbf{sj}_* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  preserve monomorphisms, and the class of monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  is closed under pushouts, transfinite composition, and retracts.
- The adjunction unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)} \Rightarrow \mathbf{sj}_* \mathbf{sj}^*$  is a natural weak  $J$ -stack equivalence, by [proposition 10.3.11](#).

We may thus apply [corollary 6.2.6](#) to [theorem 10.3.10](#). In particular, note that every monomorphism is a cofibration in the model structure so constructed: indeed, if  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ , then  $j_* f : j_* X \rightarrow j_* Y$  is an injective cofibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ , so  $j^* j_* f : j^* j_* X \rightarrow j^* j_* Y$  is a cofibration in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ ; but the adjunction counit  $\varepsilon : \mathbf{sj}^* \mathbf{sj}_* \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)}$  is a natural isomorphism (by [proposition A.1.3](#)), so  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  itself must be a cofibration. ■

**10.3.16** THEOREM. *The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the weak  $J$ -stack equivalences.*
- *The trivial fibrations are the morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  that are component-wise trivial Kan fibrations.*

- The cofibrations are the morphisms that have the left lifting property with respect to the trivial fibrations.

This model structure is called the **projective model structure for strong  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids**, and the adjunction

$$sj^* \dashv sj_* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$$

is a Quillen equivalence between this model structure and the projective model structure for  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids.

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the following subset of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ :

$$\mathcal{I} = \{j^*(\partial\Delta^n \odot h_C \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_C) \mid n \geq 0, C \in \text{ob } C\}$$

By [proposition A.3.28](#), the  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  are precisely the morphisms that are componentwise trivial Kan fibrations; and by [theorem 10.3.15](#), each element of  $\mathcal{I}$  is a trivial cofibration (in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ ) for the injective model structure for strong  $J$ -stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids. We may then obtain the required model structure by applying [proposition 6.2.17](#). The construction ensures that  $sj^* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  preserves cofibrations, so by [proposition 5.3.8](#), the displayed adjunction is indeed a Quillen equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

**10.3.17** DEFINITION. A  **$J$ -hypersheaf** on  $C$  is a simplicial presheaf on  $C$  that satisfies the descent condition for all  $J$ -hypercovers of presheaves of the form  $h_C$  where  $C$  is an object in  $C$ .

**10.3.18** REMARK. Given a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ , it is clear that  $X$  is a  $J$ -hypersheaf if and only if  $Y$  is a  $J$ -hypersheaf. Thus, by [proposition 5.1.28](#), the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  spanned by the  $J$ -hypersheaves inherits the injective and projective model structures on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  (and hence admits the structure of a derivable category in two ways).

**10.3.19** DEFINITION. A **weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that the induced morphism

$$\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(f, F) : \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(Y, F) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(X, F)$$

is an isomorphism in  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$  for all  $J$ -hypersheaves  $F$ .

**10.3.20** REMARK. Clearly, every componentwise weak homotopy equivalence is also a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence. Conversely, (the proof of) lemma 6.6.6 shows that every weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence between  $J$ -hypersheaves is a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence.

**10.3.21** PROPOSITION. *Every  $J$ -hypersheaf is also a  $J$ -stack.*

*Proof.* Let  $F$  be a  $J$ -hypersheaf, let  $C$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $q : V \rightarrow h_C$  be a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$  that is a  $J$ -local epimorphism. We wish to show that  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $\text{disc } q : \text{disc } V \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$ . To begin, observe that  $q : V \rightarrow h_C$  is a  $J$ -local isomorphism: indeed, since  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  preserves finite limits,  $j^*q : j^*V \rightarrow j^*h_C$  is both a (regular) monomorphism and an epimorphism, hence must be an isomorphism. In particular,  $\text{disc } q : \text{disc } V \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration.

Now, using lemma 10.2.20 (for the minimal topology, not  $J$ ), we may obtain a componentwise trivial Kan fibration  $U \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  whose composite with  $\text{disc } q : \text{disc } V \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  yields (by proposition 10.2.12 and lemma 10.2.13) a  $J$ -hypercover  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$ . Thus, we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(\text{disc } h_C, F) & \xrightarrow{q^*} & \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(\text{disc } V, F) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(\text{disc } h_C, F) & \xrightarrow[p^*]{} & \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(U, F) \end{array}$$

where  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(\text{disc } V, F) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(C)}(U, F)$  is an isomorphism. Thus,  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  if and only if  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $\text{disc } q : \text{disc } V \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$ . ■

**10.3.22** COROLLARY. *Every weak  $J$ -stack equivalence is also a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence.* ■

**10.3.23** REMARK. The converse of proposition 10.3.21 is not true in general: there exist a Grothendieck site  $(C, J)$  and a  $J$ -stack  $F$  such that  $F$  is *not* a  $J$ -hypersheaf. For details, see Example A.10 in [Dugger, Hollander and Isaksen, 2004].

**10.3.24** LEMMA. Let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal such that  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . For any simplicial presheaf  $F$  on  $\mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $F$  is a  $J$ -hypersheaf.
- (ii)  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for all  $J$ -hypercovers  $U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  where  $U$  is a cellular simplicial presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii)  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for all  $J$ -hypercovers  $U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  where  $U$  is a cellular simplicial presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $|U_n| \leq \kappa$  for all  $n$ , and  $C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii), (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $f : X \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  be a  $J$ -hypercover. By [proposition 10.2.23](#), there is a  $J$ -hypercover  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  such that  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $p$  and  $p$  refines  $f$ . We then have the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})}(\text{disc } h_C, F) & \xrightarrow{f^*} & \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})}(X, F) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})}(\text{disc } h_C, F) & \xrightarrow{p^*} & \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})}(U, F) \end{array}$$

where  $\mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})}(X, F) \rightarrow \mathbf{RHom}_{\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})}(U, F)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathbf{Ho sSet}$ . Thus,  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $f : X \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  if (and only if)  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $p : U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$ . ■

**10.3.25** THEOREM. Let  $S$  be the class of  $J$ -hypercovers of presheaves of the form  $\text{disc } h_C$  where  $C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- (i) The left Bousfield localisation of the Heller model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  with respect to  $S$  exists. The localised model structure is called the **injective model structure for  $J$ -hypersheaves**, and the fibrant objects in the localised model structure are the injective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaves.
- (ii) The left Bousfield localisation of the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  with respect to  $S$  exists. The localised model structure is called the **projective model structure for  $J$ -hypersheaves**, and the fibrant objects in the localised model structure are the projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaves.

In either case:

- The localised model structure is left proper, combinatorial, and simplicial.
- The weak equivalences are the weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalences.

*Proof.* Let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal such that  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $\mathcal{S}'$  be the class of all  $J$ -hypercovers of the form  $U \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  where  $U$  is a cellular simplicial presheaf on  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $|U_n| \leq \kappa$  for all  $n$ , and  $C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . It is clear that there is a set of representatives of isomorphism classes of elements of  $\mathcal{S}'$ , and lemma 10.3.24 implies that  $\mathcal{S}'$ -local objects are the same thing as  $\mathcal{S}$ -local objects. Thus, it suffices to construct the left Bousfield localisation with respect to  $\mathcal{S}'$ . But the Heller (resp. Bousfield–Kan) model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is left proper (by propositions 6.1.7 and 6.1.8) and combinatorial, so we may apply proposition 6.6.14 and theorem 6.6.15. ■

**10.3.26** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaves and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  that has the right lifting property with respect to all projective cofibrations that are weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalences. If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, then  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a componentwise trivial Kan fibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$ .*

*Proof.* It suffices to show that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  has the right lifting property with respect to  $\partial\Delta^n \odot V \rightarrow \Delta^n \odot V$ , where  $V = \text{disc } h_C$ , for all natural numbers  $n$  and all objects  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Consider a lifting problem of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot V & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \Delta^n \odot V & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

Remark 10.3.20 implies that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a fibration in the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$ , so it is a  $J$ -local Kan fibration, by lemma 10.2.13. Similarly,  $X$  and  $Y$  are  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaves, so we may use theorem 10.1.13 to deduce that  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration. Proposition 10.2.24 then yields a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$  and  $J$ -hypercov  $p : U \rightarrow V$  and a morphism  $h : \Delta^n \odot U \rightarrow X$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\partial\Delta^n} \odot p} & \partial\Delta^n \odot V & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ \downarrow & & \searrow h & & \downarrow f \\ \Delta^n \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\Delta^n} \odot p} & \Delta^n \odot V & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

Now, consider the commutative diagram of hom-spaces induced by the two lifting problems:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, \Delta^n \pitchfork X) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, (\partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X) \times_{\partial\Delta^n \pitchfork Y} (\Delta^n \pitchfork Y)) \\ p^* \downarrow & & \downarrow p^* \\ \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, \Delta^n \pitchfork X) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, (\partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X) \times_{\partial\Delta^n \pitchfork Y} (\Delta^n \pitchfork Y)) \end{array}$$

The horizontal arrows are Kan fibrations, because the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is simplicial and both  $U$  and  $V$  are projective-cofibrant (by remarks 10.2.3 and 10.2.4). Since the left Bousfield localisation with respect to  $J$ -hypercovers is a simplicial model structure (by theorem 10.3.25),  $\Delta^n \pitchfork X$  and  $(\partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X) \times_{\partial\Delta^n \pitchfork Y} (\Delta^n \pitchfork Y)$  are  $J$ -hypersheaves, and hence the vertical arrows in the above diagram are weak homotopy equivalences. Thus, we may deduce that the image of the upper horizontal arrow meets the connected component of the vertex defined by our original lifting problem, and the path lifting property of Kan fibrations implies that there is a solution for that lifting problem. ■

**10.3.27** THEOREM. *Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence.*
- (ii)  *$f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence.*

*Proof.* The following proof is due to Dugger, Hollander and Isaksen [2004].

Remarks 10.1.35, 10.3.18, and 10.3.20 plus lemma 10.2.9 imply that we may assume that  $X$  and  $Y$  are projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaves (by applying a functorial fibrant replacement in  $\mathbf{sSet}$ ). Moreover, theorem 10.3.25 implies that there is a factorisation of the form  $f = q \circ i$  where  $i : X \rightarrow E$  is a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence between  $J$ -hypersheaves and  $q : E \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism that has the right lifting property with respect to all projective cofibrations that are weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalences. By remark 10.3.20,  $i : X \rightarrow E$  is a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence, so  $q : E \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence (resp. weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence) if and only if  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence (resp. weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence). It is therefore enough to prove that the two conditions are equivalent for  $q : E \rightarrow Y$ .



(i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $q : E \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, then we can use [lemma 10.3.26](#) to deduce that  $q : E \rightarrow Y$  is a componentwise trivial Kan fibration, hence a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence *a fortiori*.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). If  $q : E \rightarrow Y$  is a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence, then we can use [remark 10.3.20](#) to deduce that  $q : E \rightarrow Y$  is a componentwise weak homotopy equivalence, hence a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence by [lemma 10.2.9](#). ■

**10.3.28** COROLLARY. *Let  $F$  be a simplicial presheaf on  $C$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $F$  is a  $J$ -hypersheaf.
- (ii)  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalences.
- (iii)  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences.
- (iv)  $F$  satisfies the descent condition for  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Every hypersheaf satisfies the descent condition for weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalences (by definition).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Every  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence is a weak  $J$ -hypersheaf equivalence (by [theorem 10.3.27](#)).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). Every  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence (by [remark 10.1.36](#)).

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Every  $J$ -hypercover is a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration (by definition). ■

## 10.4 Hypersheaf model structures

**Prerequisites.** §§0.5, 1.4, 1.5, 5.1, 5.3, 6.2, 10.1, A.7.

In this section, we study model structures for hypersheaves on a Grothendieck site. The first such model structure was constructed by Joyal [1984] and generalises the injective model structure of Heller [1988] on the category of simplicial presheaves.<sup>[1]</sup> We will mostly follow Joyal’s original proof, but it should be noted that there is another proof due to Jardine [1987], who also constructs a Quillen-equivalent model structure on the category of simplicial *presheaves*.

We will *not* use the theory of hypersheaves in this section; instead we work with the homotopy theory of internal Kan complexes. The two approaches are equivalent by a theorem of Dugger, Hollander and Isaksen [2004]: see [theorem 10.3.27](#). In particular, the Jardine (resp. Blander) local model structure on simplicial presheaves can be constructed as the left Bousfield localisation of the Heller (resp. Bousfield–Kan) model structure with respect to the class of  $J$ -hypercovers of representable presheaves.

**10.4.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a Grothendieck topos and let  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  be the category of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

- A **weak homotopy equivalence** in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is an internal weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ .
- An **injective cofibration** in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$ .
- An **injective trivial cofibration** in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is an injective cofibration in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  that is also a weak homotopy equivalence.
- An **injective fibration** in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is a morphism in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  with the right lifting property with respect to the injective trivial cofibrations.
- An **injective trivial fibration** in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is a morphism in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  with the right lifting property with respect to the injective cofibrations.

**10.4.2** REMARK. It is well known that  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is a Grothendieck topos if  $\mathcal{E}$  is, so  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  with the Heller–Joyal model structure (once it is shown to exist) is a Cisinski model category.<sup>[2]</sup> In particular, injective trivial fibrations in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  are (by definition) the same thing as Cisinski trivial fibrations in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$ .

---

[1] See also [theorem 1.9.14](#).

[2] See [definition 6.4.1](#).

**10.4.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  be Grothendieck toposes and let  $u : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  be a geometric morphism. Then the inverse image functor  $u^* : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  induces a functor  $su^* : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  that preserves injective cofibrations, injective trivial cofibrations, and weak homotopy equivalences.*

*Proof.* By definition,  $u^* : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is a functor that preserves finite limits and has a right adjoint. Thus,  $su^* : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  preserves injective cofibrations (i.e. monomorphisms), and to complete the proof, it suffices to show that  $su^* : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  preserves weak homotopy equivalences. But by [proposition 10.1.30](#),  $su^*$  commutes with  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty$ , so we may use the argument in the proof of [lemma 10.1.31](#) to deduce that  $su^*$  indeed preserves weak homotopy equivalences. ■

**10.4.4** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a Grothendieck topos. The class of weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is closed under colimits for small filtered diagrams (in  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$ ).*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a small filtered category. Since  $\mathcal{E}$  is a Grothendieck topos,  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{E}] \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  preserves finite limits. Thus, by [proposition 10.4.3](#),  $\lim_{\rightarrow \mathcal{J}}$  preserves weak homotopy equivalences, and it is not hard to see that a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{E}]$  is precisely a morphism that is componentwise a weak homotopy equivalence of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ . ■

**10.4.5** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a Grothendieck topos.*

- (i) *The class of injective cofibrations (resp. injective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$ .*
- (ii) *The class of injective cofibrations (resp. injective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.*
- (iii) *The class of injective cofibrations (resp. injective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is closed under retracts.*
- (iv) *The class of injective cofibrations (resp. injective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is closed under pushouts.*
- (v) *The class of injective cofibrations (resp. injective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is closed under coproducts.*

*Proof.* The claims for the class of injective cofibrations are well known; we will prove the claims for the class of injective trivial cofibrations.

(i). Obvious.

(ii) and (iii). It suffices to show that the class of weak homotopy equivalences is closed under the relevant operations; but this was done in [remark 10.1.35](#) and [lemma 10.4.4](#).

(iv). Use the classical completeness theorem for separable theories.

TODO: Fill in the details...

(v). By [lemma 0.5.6](#), a class of morphisms that is closed under transfinite composition and pushouts is also closed under coproducts. ■

**10.4.6** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a Grothendieck topos. Every injective trivial fibration in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is an internal trivial Kan fibration of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  be an injective trivial fibration in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  and let  $n$  be a natural number. We wish to show that the following diagram is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{E}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \{\Delta^n, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\Delta^n, p\}} & \{\Delta^n, Y\} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \{\partial\Delta^n, X\} & \xrightarrow{\{\partial\Delta^n, p\}} & \{\partial\Delta^n, Y\} \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ , so it suffices to verify that the morphism

$$\{\Delta^n, X\} \rightarrow \{\partial\Delta^n, X\} \times_{\{\partial\Delta^n, Y\}} \{\Delta^n, Y\}$$

is a *split* epimorphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Let  $L$  denote the codomain of this morphism. By adjointness, we find that  $\{\Delta^n, X\} \rightarrow L$  splits if and only if there is a morphism  $\Delta^n \odot L \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^n \odot L & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & \nearrow & \downarrow p \\ \Delta^n \odot L & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

where  $\partial\Delta^n \odot L \rightarrow \Delta^n \odot L$  is induced by the boundary inclusion  $\partial\Delta^n \hookrightarrow \Delta^n$ ,  $\partial\Delta^n \odot L \rightarrow X$  is the left adjoint transpose of the projection  $L \rightarrow \partial\Delta^n \pitchfork X$ , and

$\Delta^n \odot L \rightarrow Y$  is the left adjoint transpose of the projection  $L \rightarrow \Delta^n \pitchfork Y$ . But  $\partial\Delta^n \odot L \rightarrow \Delta^n \odot L$  is an injective cofibration and  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is an injective trivial cofibration, hence the required morphism  $\Delta^n \odot L \rightarrow X$  indeed exists. ■

**10.4.7** LEMMA. *Let  $S$  be a Grothendieck topos. There exist a set  $I$  of monomorphisms in  $S$  such that the relative  $I$ -cell complexes are precisely the monomorphisms in  $S$ .*

*Proof.* We may assume without loss of generality that  $S = \mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ , where  $C$  is a small category and  $J$  is a subcanonical Grothendieck topology on  $C$ . Consider the class of all monomorphisms  $U \rightarrow V$  in  $S$  where  $V$  is a quotient (in  $S$ ) of some representable sheaf: since  $S$  is well-powered and well-copowered, we may choose a set  $I$  of representatives of isomorphism classes of such monomorphisms. The argument in the proof of [proposition 0.5.20](#) then shows that every monomorphism in  $S$  is a relative  $I$ -cell complex. ■

**10.4.8** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a Grothendieck topos. The full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$  spanned by the weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is an accessible subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$ .*

*Proof.* It is not hard to see that  $\mathrm{Ex} : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is an accessible functor, so the same is true for  $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$ . Thus, by applying [proposition 0.3.30](#), it suffices to show that the full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$  spanned by the Dugger–Isaksen weak equivalences is an accessible subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$ . Clearly, this subcategory is the category of models (in  $\mathcal{E}$ ) of a small (geometric) sketch, so it is closed in  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$  under colimits for small filtered diagrams, and we may apply Theorem 2.60 in [\[LPAC\]](#) to deduce that it is indeed an accessible category. □

**10.4.9** THEOREM (Heller, Joyal). *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a Grothendieck topos. The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the internal weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ .*
- *The cofibrations are the injective cofibrations, i.e. the monomorphisms.*
- *The fibrations are the injective fibrations, i.e. the morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to monomorphisms that are weak homotopy equivalences.*

*This model structure is called the **Heller–Joyal model structure**.*

*Proof.* We have shown the following:

- The class of weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts, by [remark 10.1.35](#).
- The class of injective cofibrations is the class of relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes for a subset  $\mathcal{I} \subset \mathbf{mor}\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$ , by [lemma 10.4.7](#), and every injective trivial fibration is a weak homotopy equivalence, by [remark 10.1.36](#) and [lemma 10.4.6](#).
- The class of injective trivial cofibrations is closed under pushouts and transfinite composition, by [lemma 10.4.5](#).
- The full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}]$  spanned by the weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  is accessible, by [lemma 10.4.8](#).

Thus, we may apply Smith's recognition principle ([theorem 6.2.10](#)) to deduce that we have the required cofibrantly generated model structure.  $\blacksquare$

**10.4.10** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  be Grothendieck toposes. Given a geometric morphism  $u : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ , the induced adjunction*

$$su^* \dashv su_* : \mathbf{s}\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{s}\mathcal{F}$$

*is a Quillen adjunction (with respect to the Heller–Joyal model structures on  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{F}$ ).*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition 5.3.2](#) to [proposition 10.4.3](#).  $\blacksquare$

**10.4.11** REMARK. The fact that we have a model structure implies that the injective trivial fibrations in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  are precisely the injective fibrations in  $\mathbf{s}\mathcal{E}$  that are also weak homotopy equivalences.

Next, we transfer the Heller–Joyal model structure to the category of simplicial presheaves, obtaining the Jardine local model structure.

**10.4.12** DEFINITION. In the notation of paragraph [10.2.1](#), recalling [definition 10.2.8](#):

- An  **$J$ -local injective trivial cofibration** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is an injective cofibration in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  that is also a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence.
- An  **$J$ -local injective fibration** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a morphism in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  that has the right lifting property with respect to the  $J$ -local injective trivial fibrations.

**10.4.13** REMARK. By [remark 10.1.37](#), the componentwise weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  are the internal weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$ ; thus, they are the weak equivalences in the Heller–Joyal model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ , and the Heller–Joyal model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  can be identified with the injective model structure on  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$ .

**10.4.14** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ .*

- (i) *The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  contains all  $J$ -local isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ .*
- (ii) *The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.*
- (iii) *The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is closed under retracts.*
- (iv) *The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is closed under pushouts.*
- (v) *The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is closed under coproducts.*

*Proof.* As noted in paragraph [10.2.1](#), the associated sheaf functor preserves finite limits, so it preserves monomorphisms in particular. On the other hand, it is a left adjoint, so it also preserves all colimits. We may therefore deduce the announced properties of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  from the corresponding properties of injective trivial cofibrations in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ , which were established in [lemma 10.4.5](#). ■

**10.4.15** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ . The full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sPsh}(C)]$  spanned by the  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is an accessible subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sPsh}(C)]$ .*

*Proof.* The associated sheaf functor is automatically an accessible functor, so we may apply [proposition 0.3.30](#) to [lemma 10.4.8](#) to deduce the claim. ■

**10.4.16** THEOREM (Jardine). *Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ . The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the injective cofibrations, i.e. the monomorphisms.*
- *The fibrations are the  $J$ -local injective fibrations, i.e. the morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to monomorphisms that are  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences.*

*This model structure is called the  **$J$ -local Jardine model structure**.*

*Proof.* We have the following facts:

- The class of  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts, by [remark 10.1.35](#) and [lemma A.4.14](#).
- The class of injective cofibrations is the class of relative  $\mathcal{I}$ -cell complexes for a subset  $\mathcal{I} \subset \text{mor } \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ , by [proposition 0.5.20](#), and every injective trivial fibration is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, by [lemma 10.2.9](#).
- The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations is closed under pushouts and transfinite composition, by [lemma 10.4.14](#).
- The full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sPsh}(C)]$  spanned by the  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences is accessible, by [lemma 10.4.8](#).

Thus, we may apply Smith's recognition principle ([theorem 6.2.10](#)) to deduce that we have the required cofibrantly generated model structure. ■

**10.4.17** REMARK. The  $J$ -local Jardine model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is the left Bousfield localisation of the Heller model structure with respect to the class of  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences, and it makes  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  into a Cisinski model category.

**10.4.18** PROPOSITION. *In the notation of paragraph 10.2.1, the induced adjunction*

$$\mathbf{s}j^* \dashv \mathbf{s}j_* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$$

*is a Quillen equivalence between the Heller–Joyal model structure on  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  and the  $J$ -local Jardine model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ .*



*Proof.* By construction, the associated sheaf functor  $\mathbf{s}j^* : \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  is a left Quillen functor, so we indeed have a Quillen adjunction (by [proposition 5.3.2](#)). To complete the proof, we simply appeal to [propositions 5.3.8](#) and [A.I.3](#).  $\blacksquare$

**10.4.19** PROPOSITION. *Let  $(C, J)$  and  $(D, K)$  be small Grothendieck sites. If  $u : D \rightarrow C$  is a flat functor that sends  $K$ -covering sieves to  $J$ -covering sieves, then:*

(i) *The induced adjunction*

$$\mathbf{sLan}_u \dashv \mathbf{su}^* : \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(D)$$

*is a Quillen adjunction with respect to the local Jardine model structures.*

(ii) *Moreover, it is a Quillen equivalence if the corresponding geometric morphism*

$$u_! \dashv u^* : \mathbf{Sh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(D, K)$$

*is an adjoint equivalence of toposes.*

*Proof.* (i). The hypotheses imply that  $u^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Psh}(D)$  sends  $J$ -sheaves to  $K$ -sheaves, so we have the following (strictly) commutative diagram of right adjoints:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{s}j_*} & \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \\ \mathbf{su}^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathbf{su}^* \\ \mathbf{sSh}(D, K) & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{s}k_*} & \mathbf{sPsh}(D) \end{array}$$

Thus, the diagram of left adjoints commutes up to a canonical natural isomorphism. We then use [proposition 10.4.3](#) to deduce that  $\mathbf{sLan}_u : \mathbf{sPsh}(D) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  is a left Quillen functor. This completes the proof (by [proposition 5.3.2](#)).

(ii). If  $u^* : \mathbf{Sh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(D, K)$  is (half of) an equivalence of categories, then  $\mathbf{su}^* : \mathbf{sSh}(C, J) \rightarrow \mathbf{sSh}(D, K)$  must have the same property. Since the Heller–Joyal model structure is invariant under equivalence of categories, [proposition 10.4.18](#) implies that the derived adjunction

$$\mathbf{LsLan}_u \dashv \mathbf{Rsu}^* : \mathbf{Ho} \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Ho} \mathbf{sPsh}(D)$$

is an adjoint equivalence of categories; thus, we may apply [proposition 3.3.28](#) and deduce that

$$\mathbf{sLan}_u \dashv \mathbf{su}^* : \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(D)$$

is a Quillen equivalence.  $\blacksquare$

Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $\mathcal{C}$ . Recall that the Bousfield–Kan model structure on  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{sSet}]$  has weak equivalences and fibrations that are defined componentwise. We will now construct the left Bousfield localisation of this model structure with respect to the  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences.

**10.4.20** DEFINITION.

- A  **$J$ -local projective trivial cofibration** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is a projective cofibration that is also a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence.
- A  **$J$ -local projective fibration** in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is a morphism in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  that has the right lifting property with respect to the  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations.

**10.4.21** REMARK. By [corollary 5.3.21](#), every projective cofibration is an injective cofibration; hence, every local injective fibration is a local projective fibration. Similarly, by [lemma 10.2.9](#), every projective trivial cofibration is a local projective trivial cofibration, so every local projective fibration is a projective fibration.

**10.4.22** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) *The class of projective cofibrations (resp.  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  contains all isomorphisms in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$ .*
- (ii) *The class of projective cofibrations (resp.  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is closed under (finite and) transfinite composition.*
- (iii) *The class of projective cofibrations (resp.  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is closed under retracts.*
- (iv) *The class of projective cofibrations (resp.  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is closed under pushouts.*
- (v) *The class of projective cofibrations (resp.  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations) in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(\mathcal{C})$  is closed under coproducts.*

*Proof.* The claims for the class of projective cofibrations are consequences of [theorem 6.2.7](#) and [proposition A.3.19](#). Moreover, [remark 10.4.21](#) implies that a  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibration is precisely a projective cofibration that is also a  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibration, so we may deduce the claims for the class of  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations from [lemma 10.4.14](#) (plus the claims for the class of projective cofibrations). ■

**10.4.23** THEOREM (Blander). *Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ . The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences.*
- *The cofibrations are the projective cofibrations, i.e. the morphisms that have the left lifting property with respect to componentwise trivial Kan fibrations.*
- *The fibrations are the  $J$ -local projective fibrations, i.e. the morphisms that have the right lifting property with respect to the  $J$ -local projective trivial cofibrations.*

*This model structure is called the  **$J$ -local Blander model structure**.*

*Proof.* We have the following facts:

- The class of  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts, by [remark 10.1.35](#) and [lemma A.4.14](#).
- The class of projective cofibrations is the left class of a cofibrantly generated weak factorisation system, by [theorem 6.2.7](#), and the every projective trivial fibration is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, by [lemma 10.2.9](#).
- The class of  $J$ -local injective trivial cofibrations is closed under pushouts and transfinite composition, by [lemma 10.4.22](#).
- The full subcategory of  $[2, \mathbf{sPsh}(C)]$  spanned by the  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalences is accessible, by [lemma 10.4.8](#).

Thus, we may apply Smith's recognition principle ([theorem 6.2.10](#)) to deduce that we have the required cofibrantly generated model structure. ■

**10.4.24** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ . The trivial adjunction*

$$\mathrm{id} \dashv \mathrm{id} : \mathbf{sPsh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}(C)$$

*is a Quillen equivalence between the  $J$ -local Jardine model structure and the  $J$ -local Blander model structure.*

*Proof.* Since the weak equivalences in the two model structures are the same, it suffices to prove that we have the announced Quillen adjunction; but this is an immediate consequence of [proposition 5.3.2](#) and [remark 10.4.21](#). ■

**10.4.25** THEOREM (Blander). *Let  $C$  be a small category and let  $J$  be a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ . The following data constitute a cofibrantly generated model structure on  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ :*

- *The weak equivalences are the internal weak homotopy equivalences of simplicial objects in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ .*
- *The trivial fibrations are the morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  that are component-wise trivial Kan fibrations.*
- *The cofibrations are the morphisms that have the left lifting property with respect to the trivial fibrations.*

*This model structure is called the **Blander model structure**.*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be the following subset of  $\text{mor } \mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ :

$$\mathcal{I} = \{j^*(\partial\Delta^n \odot h_C \hookrightarrow \Delta^n \odot h_C) \mid n \geq 0, C \in \text{ob } C\}$$

By [proposition A.3.28](#), the  $\mathcal{I}$ -injective morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  are precisely the morphisms that are componentwise trivial Kan fibrations. Since  $j^* : \mathbf{Psh}(C) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$  preserves finite limits,  $\mathcal{I}$  is a set of injective cofibrations in  $\mathbf{Sh}(C, J)$ . We may thus apply [proposition 6.2.17](#) and [theorem 10.4.9](#) to construct the required model structure on  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$ . ■

**10.4.26** REMARK. In fact, the fibrations in the Blander model structure are precisely the morphisms in  $\mathbf{sSh}(C, J)$  that are  $J$ -local projective fibrations in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ : see Theorem 2.1 in [Blander, 2001].

## 10.5 Verdier's hypercovering theorem

**Prerequisites.** §§ 1.1, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 2.5, 10.1, 10.2, 10.3.

Although the small object argument provides a functorial choice of what one might call “associated hypersheaves”, it is difficult to compute the weak homotopy types of its components (which are well defined, by [remark 10.3.20](#)). Indeed, this problem encompasses sheaf cohomology: for instance, if  $X$  is the simplicial presheaf constant at  $K(A, n)$  and  $\hat{X}$  is its associated hypersheaf, then  $\pi_0 \hat{X}(C)$  is the sheaf cohomology group  $H^n(C, A)$  (where we have identified  $A$  with the constant sheaf at  $A$ ). Verdier's hypercovering theorem gives us a formula for  $\pi_0$  and the homotopy groups of  $\hat{X}(C)$  in terms of  $X$  and hypercovers of  $C$ . We will follow the proof of Dugger, Hollander and Isaksen [2004, §8].

**10.5.1** ¶ In this section, we use the notation set up in paragraph 10.2.1.

**10.5.2** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaves on  $C$ , let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, let  $L$  be a finite simplicial set, and let  $K$  be a simplicial subset of  $L$ .*

- (i) *For any simplicial presheaf  $V$  on  $C$  and any  $\partial\alpha : K \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, X)$ , if  $\beta : L \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, Y)$  is a morphism whose restriction along  $K \hookrightarrow L$  is  $\partial\beta = f_* \circ \partial\alpha$ , then there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$  and a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$  such that  $p^* \circ \beta$  is in the image of the map*

$$f_* : \pi_{(L,K)}(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, X), \partial\alpha) \rightarrow \pi_{(L,K)}(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, Y), p^* \circ \partial\beta)$$

*induced by  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ .*

- (ii) *Given morphisms  $\alpha_0, \alpha_1 : L \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, Y)$  whose restrictions along  $K \hookrightarrow L$  are  $\partial\alpha : K \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, X)$ , if*

$$f_* \circ \alpha_0 = f_* \circ \alpha_1 \text{ in } \pi_{(L,K)}(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, Y), \partial\beta)$$

*where  $\partial\beta = f_* \circ \partial\alpha$ , then there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$  and a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$  such that:*

$$p^* \circ \alpha_0 = p^* \circ \alpha_1 \text{ in } \pi_{(L,K)}(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, X), p^* \circ \partial\alpha)$$

*Proof.* (i). By adjointness,  $\partial\alpha : K \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}_C(V, X)$  and  $\beta : L \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}_C(V, Y)$  correspond to morphisms  $\partial x : K \odot V \rightarrow X$  and  $y : L \odot V \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K \odot V & \xrightarrow{\partial x} & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ L \odot V & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

The claim is then seen to be precisely [proposition 10.2.25](#).

(ii). By adjointness,  $\alpha_0, \alpha_1 : L \rightarrow \mathbf{sPsh}_C(V, X)$  correspond to morphisms  $x_0, x_1 : L \odot V \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K \odot V & \hookrightarrow & L \odot V \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow x_1 \\ L \odot V & \xrightarrow{x_0} & X \end{array}$$

It suffices to prove the claim in the special case where there is a morphism  $l : C(L, K) \odot V \rightarrow Y$  such that  $l \circ (j_0 \odot \text{id}_V) = f \circ x_0$  and  $l \circ (j_1 \odot \text{id}_V) = f \circ x_1$ , where  $j_0, j_1 : L \rightarrow C(L, K)$  are the two canonical embeddings.

Let  $\partial x : (L \cup^K L) \odot V \rightarrow X$  be the morphism induced by  $x_0, x_1 : L \odot V \rightarrow X$ . Then [proposition 10.2.25](#) gives  $p : U \rightarrow V$  and  $x : C(L, K) \odot U \rightarrow X$  such that the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (L \cup^K L) \odot U & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{L \cup^K L} \odot p} & (L \cup^K L) \odot V \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \partial x \\ C(L, K) \odot U & \dashrightarrow_x & X \end{array}$$

where  $L \cup^K L \rightarrow C(L, K)$  is the morphism induced by  $j_0, j_1 : L \rightarrow C(L, K)$ . Thus, we have  $p^* \circ \alpha_0 = p^* \circ \alpha_1$  in  $\pi_{(L, K)}(\mathbf{sPsh}_C(U, X), p^* \circ \partial\alpha)$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

**10.5.3 COROLLARY.** *Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaves on  $C$  and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence.*

- (i) *For any simplicial presheaf  $V$  on  $C$  and any morphism  $y : V \rightarrow Y$ , there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$ , a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$ , a morphism  $x : U \rightarrow X$ , and a simplicial homotopy  $y \circ p \Rightarrow f \circ x$ ,*

or in other words, a morphism  $h : \Delta^1 \odot U \rightarrow \hat{X}$  such that the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} U & \xrightarrow{j_0} & \Delta^1 \odot U & \xleftarrow{j_1} & U \\ \downarrow p & & \downarrow h & & \downarrow x \\ V & \xrightarrow{y} & Y & \xleftarrow{f} & X \end{array}$$

where  $j_0, j_1 : U \rightarrow \Delta^1 \odot U$  are the morphisms induced by the coface morphisms  $\delta^1, \delta^0 : \Delta^0 \rightarrow \Delta^1$ , respectively.

- (ii) If  $x_0, x_1 : V \rightarrow X$  are morphisms in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  and there is a simplicial homotopy  $f \circ x_0 \Rightarrow f \circ x_1$ , then there exist a cellular simplicial presheaf  $U$ , a  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibration  $p : U \rightarrow V$ , and a simplicial homotopy  $x_0 \circ p \Rightarrow x_1 \circ p$ .

Moreover, in each case, we may choose  $U$  so that each  $U_n$  is a coproduct of representable presheaves and  $|U| \leq \kappa$ , where  $\kappa$  is an infinite cardinal such that  $|V| \leq \kappa$  and  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $C$ . ■

**10.5.4** DEFINITION. Let  $V$  be a presheaf on  $C$ . The **category of  $J$ -hypercovers** of  $V$  is the full subcategory  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  of the slice category  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)_{/\text{disc } V}$  spanned by the hypercovers of  $V$ .

**10.5.5** ¶ Recalling [definition 2.1.21](#), the slice category  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)_{/\text{disc } V}$  has a canonical simplicial enrichment, which is inherited by  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ . We define  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  to be the category  $\pi_0[\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)]$ : its objects are  $J$ -hypercovers of  $V$  and its morphisms are simplicial homotopy classes of morphisms in  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ . More generally, given any object  $q$  in  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ , we define  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)_{/q}$  to be the category  $\pi_0[\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)_{/q}]$ .

**10.5.6** REMARK. If  $C$  has pullbacks, then  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)$  is contravariantly pseudofunctorial in  $C$ : indeed, by [proposition 10.2.12](#), pullbacks of  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations are again  $J$ -local trivial Kan fibrations; and for any pullback diagram in  $\mathbf{Psh}(C)$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U' & \longrightarrow & U \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ V' & \longrightarrow & V \end{array}$$

if  $U$ ,  $V$ , and  $V'$  are representable presheaves on  $C$ , then so is  $U'$ ; thus, the pullback of a  $J$ -hypercover of  $h_C$  along any morphism  $h_f : h_{C'} \rightarrow h_C$  is a  $J$ -hypercover of  $C'$ . Furthermore, since pullback in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  respects simplicial homotopy, so  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)$  is also contravariantly pseudofunctorial in  $C$ .

**10.5.7 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $V$  be a presheaf on  $C$ , let  $\kappa$  be an infinite cardinal such that  $|V| \leq \kappa$  and  $|h_C| \leq \kappa$  for all  $C$  in  $C$ , and let  $\mathcal{K}$  (resp.  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{K}$ ) be the full subcategory of  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  (resp.  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ ) spanned by those hypercovers  $p : U \rightarrow \mathrm{disc} V$  where  $U$  is cellular and  $|U| \leq \kappa$ .*

- (i)  *$V$  admits a  $J$ -hypercover that is in  $\mathcal{K}$ , and any two  $J$ -hypercovers of  $V$  admit a common refinement that is in  $\mathcal{K}$ .*
- (ii) *The projection  $\pi : \mathbf{Hc}_J(V) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  is a coinital functor.<sup>[1]</sup>*
- (iii)  *$\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)^{\mathrm{op}}$  is a filtered category,<sup>[2]</sup> and for any object  $q$  in  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ ,  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)_{/q}^{\mathrm{op}}$  is also filtered.*
- (iv)  *$\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{K}^{\mathrm{op}}$  is an essentially small filtered category.*
- (v)  *$\mathcal{K}$  (resp.  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{K}$ ) is a coinital subcategory of  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  (resp.  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ ).*

*Proof.* (i). These are immediate consequences of [lemma 10.2.20](#).

(ii). We must show that the comma category  $(\pi \downarrow p)$  is connected for every  $J$ -hypercover  $p : U \rightarrow \mathrm{disc} V$ . It is inhabited: after all, the projection  $\pi : \mathbf{Hc}_J(V) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  is bijective on objects. Thus, the fact that any two  $J$ -hypercovers of  $V$  admit a common refinement implies that  $(\pi \downarrow p)$  is indeed connected.

(iii). We will show that  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)^{\mathrm{op}}$  is filtered; similar arguments work for  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)_{/q}^{\mathrm{op}}$ . In view of claim (i), by [lemma 0.2.4](#), it suffices to show the following: for any two  $J$ -hypercovers of  $V$ , say  $p : U \rightarrow \mathrm{disc} V$  and  $p' : U' \rightarrow \mathrm{disc} V$ , given a parallel pair of morphisms  $f_0, f_1 : U' \rightarrow U$  in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that  $p \circ f_0 = p \circ f_1 = p'$ , there exist a morphism  $e : U'' \rightarrow U$  such that  $p'' = p' \circ e$  is a  $J$ -hypercover of  $V$  that is in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $f_0 \circ e = f_1 \circ e$  in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ .

---

[1] See [definition A.5.31](#).

[2] See [definition 0.2.1](#).



Consider the following commutative diagram in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \partial\Delta^1 \odot U' & \xrightarrow{f} & U \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ \Delta^1 \odot U' & \xrightarrow{q'} & \text{disc } V \end{array}$$

where  $f : \partial\Delta^1 \odot U' \rightarrow U$  is induced by the parallel pair  $f_0, f_1 : U' \rightarrow U$  and the morphism  $q' : \Delta^1 \odot U' \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  is induced by  $\Delta^1 \rightarrow \Delta^0$  and  $p' : U' \rightarrow V$ . We can then apply [proposition 10.2.24](#) to obtain morphisms  $e : U'' \rightarrow U'$  and  $h : \Delta^1 \odot U'' \rightarrow U$  such that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \partial\Delta^1 \odot U'' & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\partial\Delta^1} \odot e} & \partial\Delta^1 \odot U' & \xrightarrow{f} & U \\ \downarrow & & \searrow h & & \downarrow p \\ \Delta^1 \odot U'' & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{\Delta^1} \odot e} & \Delta^1 \odot U' & \xrightarrow{q'} & \text{disc } V \end{array}$$

and  $p'' = p' \circ e : U'' \rightarrow \text{disc } V$  is a  $J$ -hypercover. Thus, we have a simplicial homotopy  $f_0 \circ e \Rightarrow f_1 \circ e$  in the slice category  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)_{/\text{disc } V}$ , as required.

(iv). It is not hard to see that  $\mathcal{K}$  is an essentially small category. We know that every  $J$ -hypercover of  $V$  can be refined by one that is in  $\mathcal{K}$ , so the filteredness of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{K}^{\text{op}}$  is a consequence of the filteredness of  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)^{\text{op}}$ .

(v). As with claim (ii), the fact that any two  $J$ -hypercovers of  $V$  admit a common refinement that is in  $\mathcal{K}$  implies that  $\mathcal{K}$  (resp.  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{K}$ ) is indeed a coinital subcategory of  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  (resp.  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$ ).  $\blacksquare$

**10.5.8 LEMMA.** *Let  $X$  be a  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaf on  $C$  and let  $Y$  be a projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf on  $C$ . Given a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , there is an induced bijection*

$$\varinjlim_{\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)^{\text{op}}} \pi_0 \mathbf{sPsh}_C(U, X) \rightarrow \pi_0 \mathbf{sPsh}_C(\text{disc } V, Y)$$

for each representable presheaf  $V$ , where  $U : \text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(V) \rightarrow \pi_0[\mathbf{sPsh}(C)]$  is the functor that sends a hypercover of  $V$  to its domain. Moreover, this bijection is natural in  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ; and if  $C$  has pullbacks, then it is also natural in  $V$  (as  $V$  varies in the full subcategory of representable presheaves).

*Proof.* By [proposition 1.5.20](#) and [remark 10.3.3](#), the diagram  $\pi_0 \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, Y) : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V) \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends morphisms in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)$  to bijections; hence, the canonical comparison

$$\lim_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)^{\mathrm{op}}} \pi_0 \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, Y) \rightarrow \pi_0 \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(\mathrm{disc} V, Y)$$

is a bijection. Thus, composition with  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  induces a map

$$\lim_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(V)^{\mathrm{op}}} \pi_0 \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, X) \rightarrow \pi_0 \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(\mathrm{disc} V, Y)$$

and it is clearly natural in  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and also in  $V$  if  $C$  has pullbacks. It remains to be shown that this map is a bijection, but (recalling the explicit construction of colimits for filtered diagrams in  $\mathbf{Set}$ ) this is a straightforward consequence of ([lemma 10.2.13](#) and) [corollary 10.5.3](#). ■

**10.5.9** COROLLARY. *Let  $X$  be a  $J$ -locally fibrant (resp. projective-fibrant) simplicial presheaf on  $C$  and let  $Y$  be a projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf on  $C$ . Given a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , there is an induced bijection*

$$\lim_{\mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)^{\mathrm{op}}} \pi_0 \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(Z \odot U, X) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}(Z, Y(C))$$

for any object  $C$  in  $C$  and any finite (resp. arbitrary) simplicial set  $Z$ , where  $U : \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C) \rightarrow \pi_0[\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}(C)]$  is the functor that sends a hypercover of  $h_C$  to its domain. Moreover, this bijection is natural in  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and in  $Z$ ; and if  $C$  has pullbacks, then it is also natural in  $C$ .

*Proof.* By definition, there are natural isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(Z \odot V, X) \cong [Z, \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, X)] \cong \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(V, Z \pitchfork X)$$

and [proposition 10.1.6](#) (resp. [corollary 1.4.16](#) plus [proposition 1.5.17](#)) implies  $Z \pitchfork X$  is a  $J$ -locally fibrant (resp. projective-fibrant) simplicial presheaf; but

$$\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(h_C, Z \pitchfork Y) \cong [Z, \underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(h_C, Y)] \cong [Z, Y(C)]$$

by the Yoneda lemma, and [remark 1.5.28](#) implies

$$\pi_0[Z, Y(C)] \cong \mathrm{Ho} \mathbf{sSet}(Z, Y(C))$$

so (using the fact that  $Z \pitchfork Y$  is a projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf) we can construct the required natural bijection using [lemma 10.5.8](#). ■

**10.5.10** REMARK. Given a discrete presheaf  $X$  on  $C$ , if  $Y$  is the associated  $J$ -sheaf, then the canonical morphism  $X \rightarrow Y$  is a  $J$ -local isomorphism and hence a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence. Since  $\text{disc } X$  and  $\text{disc } Y$  are projective-fibrant as simplicial presheaves, we can compute the sets  $Y(C)$  as follows:

$$Y(C) \cong \varinjlim_{\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{sPsh}_C(U, \text{disc } X)$$

Note that  $\mathbf{sPsh}_C(U, \text{disc } X)$  is discrete as a simplicial set, so applying  $\pi_0$  is the same as taking the set of vertices.

**10.5.11** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X$  be a projective-fibrant simplicial presheaf on  $C$  and let  $C$  be an object in  $C$ . Consider the functor*

$$H_X = \varinjlim_{\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)^{\text{op}}} \pi_0 \mathbf{sPsh}_C((-) \odot U, X) : \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

where  $U : \text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C) \rightarrow \pi_0[\mathbf{sPsh}(C)]$  is the functor that sends a hypercover of  $h_C$  to its domain.

- (i)  $H_X : \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  factors through the localising functor  $\mathbf{sSet} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}$  (in a unique way).
- (ii)  $H_X : \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is representable.
- (iii) For any projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf  $Y$  on  $C$ , if there is a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence  $X \rightarrow Y$ , then (the weak homotopy type of)  $Y(C)$  represents  $H_X : \text{Ho } \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

*Proof.* (i). It is (necessary and) sufficient to show that  $H_X : \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends weak homotopy equivalences to bijections. By [proposition 10.5.7](#), we can replace  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)$  with a full subcategory whose objects are  $J$ -hypercovers of  $h_C$  whose domains are cellular simplicial presheaves. But if  $U$  is a cellular simplicial presheaf, then (by [corollary 2.4.5](#), [proposition 2.4.17](#), and [remark 10.2.4](#)) so is  $Z \odot U$ ; and recalling [corollary 2.4.6](#) and [lemma 2.4.8](#), we may deduce that  $\pi_0 \mathbf{sPsh}_C((-) \odot U, X) : \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends weak homotopy equivalences to bijections. Thus, by cofinality, we deduce that  $H_X : \mathbf{sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  indeed sends weak homotopy equivalences to bijections.

(ii) and (iii). By [theorem 10.3.25](#) (and [proposition 5.1.24](#)), there exist a projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf  $Y$  and a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence  $X \rightarrow Y$ .

Thus, we may apply [corollary 10.5.9](#) to deduce that  $Y(C)$  indeed represents  $H_X : \text{Ho sSet}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ . ■

**10.5.12** LEMMA. *Let  $X$  be a  $J$ -locally fibrant simplicial presheaf on  $C$ , let  $Y$  be a projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf on  $C$ , let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a  $J$ -local weak homotopy equivalence, let  $C$  be an object in  $C$ , let  $q : V \rightarrow \text{disc } h_C$  be a  $J$ -hypercover, and let  $x : V \rightarrow X$  and  $y : \text{disc } h_C \rightarrow Y$  be morphisms in  $\mathbf{sPsh}(C)$  such that the following diagram commutes:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} V & \xrightarrow{x} & X \\ q \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \text{disc } h_C & \xrightarrow{y} & Y \end{array}$$

For each positive integer  $n$ , there is an induced bijection

$$\lim_{\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)_{/q}^{\text{op}}} \pi'_n(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, X), x \circ g) \rightarrow \pi_n(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(\text{disc } h_C, Y), y)$$

where  $\pi'_n$  abbreviates  $\pi_{(\Delta^n/\partial\Delta^n, *)}$ ,  $U$  is the domain of the underlying  $J$ -hypercover of an object of  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)_{/q}$ , and  $g : U \rightarrow V$  is its underlying morphism.

*Proof.* First, note that  $\pi'_n(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, X), x \circ g)$  does indeed send simplicially homotopic morphisms in  $\mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)_{/q}$  to equal maps, so we have a diagram of the announced shape. On the other hand,  $Y$  is a projective-fibrant  $J$ -hypersheaf, so (by [remark 10.3.3](#) and [theorem 1.4.29](#)) the diagram

$$\pi_n(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(U, Y), y \circ q \circ g) : \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)_{/q}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

is isomorphic to the constant diagram at  $\pi_n(\underline{\mathbf{sPsh}}_C(\text{disc } h_C, Y), y)$ . [Proposition 10.5.7](#) says  $\text{Ho } \mathbf{Hc}_J(h_C)_{/q}^{\text{op}}$  is filtered, so (recalling the explicit description of colimits for filtered diagrams in  $\mathbf{Set}$ ) this is a straightforward consequence of ([lemma 10.2.13](#) and) [lemma 10.5.2](#). ■

## GENERALITIES

### A.I Adjoints and mates

We begin by recalling a standard definition:

**A.I.1** DEFINITION. An **adjunction of categories** consists of the following data:

- A functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$ , called the **left adjoint**.
- A functor  $G : D \rightarrow C$ , called the **right adjoint**.
- A natural transformation  $\eta : \text{id}_C \Rightarrow GF$ , called the **unit**.
- A natural transformation  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_D$ , called the **counit**.

These are moreover required to satisfy the **triangle identities**:

$$\varepsilon F \bullet F \eta = \text{id}_F \qquad G \varepsilon \bullet \eta G = \text{id}_G$$

If such data exist, we write

$$F \dashv G : D \rightarrow C$$

and say that  $F$  is a left adjoint of  $G$ , and  $G$  is a right adjoint of  $F$ .

**A.I.2** PROPOSITION. *Let  $F \dashv G : D \rightarrow C$  be an adjunction, with unit  $\eta : \text{id}_C \Rightarrow GF$  and counit  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_D$ . The following are equivalent for an object  $X$  in  $C$ :*

- (i) *The morphism  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow GFX$  is a monomorphism.*
- (ii) *For all objects  $T$  in  $C$ , the hom-set map  $C(T, X) \rightarrow D(FT, FX)$  induced by  $F : C \rightarrow D$  is injective.*

Dually, the following are equivalent for an object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ :

- (i') The morphism  $\varepsilon_A : FGA \rightarrow A$  is an epimorphism.
- (ii') For all objects  $B$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the hom-set map  $\mathcal{D}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(GA, GB)$  is injective.

*Proof.* Consider the hom-set map  $\mathcal{C}(T, X) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(T, GFX)$  defined by  $x \mapsto \eta_X \circ x$ . By naturality,

$$\eta_X \circ x = GFx \circ \eta_X$$

but the left triangle identity implies

$$\varepsilon_{FX} \circ F(\eta_X \circ x) = Fx$$

and so  $\eta_X \circ x_0 = \eta_X \circ x_1$  if and only if  $Fx_0 = Fx_1$ . ■

**A.I.3** PROPOSITION. Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an adjunction with unit  $\eta$  and counit  $\varepsilon$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i) The left adjoint  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is fully faithful.
- (ii) The adjunction unit  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural isomorphism.
- (iii) The natural transformation  $F\eta G : FG \Rightarrow FGFG$  is a natural isomorphism,  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is conservative, and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is essentially surjective on objects.

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i') The right adjoint  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is fully faithful.
- (ii') The adjunction counit  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  is a natural isomorphism.
- (iii') The natural transformation  $G\varepsilon F : GFGF \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural isomorphism,  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is conservative, and  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is essentially surjective on objects.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By naturality, we have  $\eta_Y \circ f = GFf \circ \eta_X$ ; but the triangle identities imply the hom-set map  $\mathcal{D}(FX, B) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(X, GB)$  given by  $g \mapsto Gg \circ \eta_X$  is also a bijection, so we deduce that the hom-set map  $\mathcal{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(X, GFY)$  given by  $f \mapsto \eta_Y \circ f$  is a bijection if and only if the hom-set map  $\mathcal{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{D}(FX, FY)$  given by  $f \mapsto Ff$  is

a bijection because  $F$  is fully faithful. We may then deduce that  $\eta$  is a natural isomorphism if and only if  $F$  is fully faithful.

(i)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). We have already shown that  $\eta : \text{id}_C \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural isomorphism, so in particular  $F\eta G : FG \Rightarrow FGFG$  is a natural isomorphism. Fully faithful functors are conservative, so  $F$  is conservative. On the other hand, since  $\eta$  is a natural isomorphism,  $G$  is essentially surjective on objects.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $F$  is conservative and  $F\eta G$  is a natural isomorphism, then  $\eta G$  is also a natural isomorphism. Since every object in  $C$  is isomorphic to one in the image of  $G$ , it follows that  $\eta$  is a natural isomorphism. ■

**A.I.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $F \dashv G : D \rightarrow C$  be an adjunction with unit  $\eta$  and counit  $\epsilon$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The left adjoint  $F : C \rightarrow D$  is fully faithful.*
- (ii) *The adjunction unit  $\eta : \text{id}_C \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural isomorphism.*
- (iii) *There exists a natural isomorphism  $\alpha : \text{id}_C \Rightarrow GF$ .*

*Dually, the following are equivalent:*

- (i') *The right adjoint  $G : D \rightarrow C$  is fully faithful.*
- (ii') *The adjunction counit  $\epsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_D$  is a natural isomorphism.*
- (iii') *There exists a natural isomorphism  $\beta : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_D$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). See [proposition A.I.3](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $\eta' = \alpha^{-1} \bullet \eta$ , let  $\mu = G\epsilon F$ , and let  $\mu' = \alpha^{-1} \bullet \mu \bullet (\alpha \circ \alpha)$ . The left triangle identity implies that  $\mu \bullet GF\eta = \text{id}_{GF}$ , so it follows that  $\mu' \bullet \eta' = \text{id}_{\text{id}_C}$ ; but  $\eta' \bullet \mu' = \mu' \bullet \eta'$  by naturality, so  $\eta$  is indeed a natural isomorphism. ■

**A.I.5** PROPOSITION. Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be an adjunction.

- $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is fully faithful if and only if, for all categories  $\mathcal{E}$ , the induced functor  $F^* : [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{E}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}]$  is fully faithful.
- $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is fully faithful if and only if, for all categories  $\mathcal{E}$ , the induced functor  $G^* : [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{E}]$  is fully faithful.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Suppose  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is fully faithful. By [proposition A.I.3](#), the adjunction counit  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  must be a natural isomorphism. On the other hand, we have an induced adjunction  $G^* \dashv F^* : [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{E}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}]$  with counit induced by  $\varepsilon$ , so the same proposition implies  $F^*$  must be fully faithful.

Conversely, suppose  $F^* : [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{E}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}]$  is a fully faithful functor for all categories  $\mathcal{E}$ . Then the induced adjunction counit  $\varepsilon^* : G^* F^* \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}]}$  is a natural isomorphism. In particular, this is true when  $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{D}$ , so by considering the component of  $\varepsilon^*$  at  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ , we see that  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  itself is a natural isomorphism. Thus  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  must be fully faithful. ■

**A.I.6** PROPOSITION. Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $F' \dashv G' : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$  be adjunctions, let  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow GF$  and  $\eta' : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}'} \Rightarrow G'F'$  be the respective units, and let  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  and  $\varepsilon' : F'G' \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}'}$  be the respective counits. Let  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$  and  $K : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$  be functors, and let  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  be natural transformations as in the diagrams below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \\ F \downarrow & \wr_{\varphi} & \downarrow F' \\ \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \\ G \downarrow & \wr_{\psi} & \downarrow G' \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \end{array}$$

Then, the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\varepsilon' K F \bullet F' \psi F \bullet F' H \eta = \varphi$ .
- (ii)  $\psi F \bullet H \eta = G' \varphi \bullet \eta' H$ .
- (iii)  $\psi = G' K \varepsilon \bullet G' \varphi G \bullet \eta' H G$ .
- (iv)  $\varepsilon' K \bullet F' \psi = K \varepsilon \bullet \varphi G$ .



*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(i)} \Rightarrow \text{(ii)}. \quad G' \varphi \bullet \eta' H &= G' \varepsilon' K F \bullet G' F' \psi F \bullet G' F' H \eta \bullet \eta' H \\
 &= G' \varepsilon' K F \bullet \eta' G' K F \bullet \psi F \bullet H \eta \\
 &= \psi F \bullet H \eta
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(ii)} \Rightarrow \text{(iii)}. \quad G' K \varepsilon \bullet G' \varphi G \bullet \eta' H G &= G' K \varepsilon \bullet \psi F G \bullet H \eta G \\
 &= \psi \bullet H G \varepsilon \bullet H \eta G \\
 &= \psi
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(iii)} \Rightarrow \text{(iv)}. \quad \varepsilon' K \bullet F' \psi &= \varepsilon' K \bullet F' G' K \varepsilon \bullet F' G' \varphi G \bullet F' \eta' H G \\
 &= K \varepsilon \bullet \varphi G \bullet \varepsilon' H G \bullet F' \eta' H G \\
 &= K \varepsilon \bullet \varphi G
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(iv)} \Rightarrow \text{(i)}. \quad \varepsilon' K F \bullet F' \psi F \bullet F' H \eta &= K \varepsilon F \bullet \varphi G F \bullet F' H \eta \\
 &= K \varepsilon F \bullet K F \eta \bullet \varphi \\
 &= \varphi
 \end{aligned}$$

**A.I.7** DEFINITION. A **conjugate pair of natural transformations** is a pair  $(\varphi, \psi)$  satisfying the equivalent conditions of the above proposition. Given such, we say  $\varphi$  is the **left mate** of  $\psi$ , and  $\psi$  is the **right mate** of  $\varphi$ .

**A.I.8** DEFINITION. Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $F' \dashv G' : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$  be adjunctions, let  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$  and  $K : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$  be functors, and let  $\varphi$  and  $\psi$  be a conjugate pair of natural transformations as in the diagrams below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \\
 F \downarrow & \wr_{\varphi} & \downarrow F' \\
 \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}'
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \\
 G \downarrow & \wr_{\psi} & \downarrow G' \\
 \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}'
 \end{array}$$

We say the diagram on the right satisfies the **left Beck–Chevalley condition** if the left mate  $\varphi$  is a natural isomorphism, and we say the diagram on the left satisfies the **right Beck–Chevalley condition** if the right mate  $\psi$  is a natural isomorphism. More generally, the **local left Beck–Chevalley condition** is satisfied at an object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  if the component  $\varphi_C : F' H C \rightarrow K F C$  is an isomorphism, and the **local right Beck–Chevalley condition** is satisfied at an object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  if the component  $\psi_D : H G D \rightarrow G' K D$  is an isomorphism.

**A.I.9** REMARK. Unfortunately, the Beck–Chevalley conditions are not vacuous. For example, consider the following (strictly!) commutative diagram of forgetful functors:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{CRing} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Ab} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathbf{Set} \end{array}$$

The left mate of the trivial natural transformation in the above diagram is the group homomorphism  $\mathbb{Z}X \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[X]$  that sends a generator in  $\mathbb{Z}X$  to the corresponding generator in  $\mathbb{Z}[X]$ ; clearly, this is never an isomorphism. However, this is unsurprising: we do not expect the free abelian group generated by  $X$  to be naturally isomorphic to the additive group of free commutative ring generated by  $X$ .

**A.I.10** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with pullbacks, and suppose the following diagram is a pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

Let  $\Sigma_f : \mathcal{C}_{/X} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/Y}$  etc. be the functor that sends an object  $p : E \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}_{/X}$  to the object  $f \circ p : E \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y}$ , and consider the induced (strictly!) commutative diagram of functors:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}_{/Z} & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_z} & \mathcal{C}_{/X} \\ \Sigma_g \downarrow & & \downarrow \Sigma_f \\ \mathcal{C}_{/W} & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_w} & \mathcal{C}_{/Y} \end{array}$$

Since  $\mathcal{C}$  has pullbacks,  $\Sigma_g$  and  $\Sigma_f$  have right adjoints,<sup>[1]</sup> and the pullback pasting lemma then implies that the above square satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition.

---

[1] See lemma A.2.17.

**A.I.II** LEMMA. Given a diagram of functors and natural transformations of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \\ G \downarrow & \psi \nearrow & \downarrow G' \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \end{array}$$

where  $\psi : HG \Rightarrow G'K$  is a natural isomorphism,  $F \dashv G$ , and  $F' \dashv G'$ , for each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i) The diagram satisfies the local left Beck–Chevalley condition at  $C$ .
- (ii) The functor  $(C \downarrow G) \rightarrow (HC \downarrow G')$  sending an object  $(D, f)$  in the comma category  $(C \downarrow G)$  to the object  $(KD, \psi_D \circ Hf)$  in  $(HC \downarrow G')$  preserves initial objects.

*Proof.* We know  $(FC, \eta_C)$  is an initial object of  $(C \downarrow G)$  and  $(F'HC, \eta'_{HC})$  is an initial object of  $(HC \downarrow G')$ , so there is a unique morphism  $\varphi_C : F'HC \rightarrow KFC$  such that  $G'\varphi_C \circ \eta'_{HC} = \psi_{FC} \circ H\eta_C$ . However, we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_C &= \varphi_C \circ \varepsilon'_{F'HC} \circ F'\eta'_{HC} \\ &= \varepsilon'_{KFC} \circ F'G'\varphi_C \circ F'\eta'_{HC} \\ &= \varepsilon'_{KFC} \circ F'\psi_{FC} \circ F'H\eta_C \end{aligned}$$

so  $\varphi_C$  is precisely the component at  $C$  of the left mate of  $\psi$ . ■

**A.I.I2** LEMMA (Pasting conjugate pairs).

- (i) Let  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $F' \dashv G' : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$ , and  $F'' \dashv G'' : \mathcal{D}'' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}''$  be adjunctions, let  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$ ,  $H' : \mathcal{C}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}''$ ,  $K : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$ , and  $K' : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{D}''$  be functors, and let  $\varphi, \varphi', \psi, \psi'$  be natural transformations as in the following pasting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \xrightarrow{H'} \mathcal{C}'' \\ F \downarrow & \varphi \nearrow & \downarrow F' \nearrow \varphi' \downarrow F'' \\ \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \xrightarrow{K'} \mathcal{D}'' \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \xrightarrow{K'} \mathcal{D}'' \\ G \downarrow & \psi \nearrow & \downarrow G' \nearrow \psi' \downarrow G'' \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \xrightarrow{H'} \mathcal{C}'' \end{array}$$

Let  $\bar{\varphi} = K'\varphi \circ \varphi'H$  and  $\bar{\psi} = \psi'K \circ H'\psi$ . If  $(\varphi, \psi)$  and  $(\varphi', \psi')$  are conjugate pairs, then  $(\bar{\varphi}, \bar{\psi})$  is also a conjugate pair.

## A. GENERALITIES

- (ii) Let  $F_1 \dashv G_1 : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $F_2 \dashv G_2 : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ ,  $F'_1 \dashv G'_1 : \mathcal{D}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$ , and  $F'_2 \dashv G'_2 : \mathcal{E}' \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$  be adjunctions, let  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$ ,  $K : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}'$ , and  $L : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}'$  be functors, and let  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \psi_1, \psi_2$  be natural transformations as in the following pasting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}' \\
 F_1 \downarrow & \searrow \varphi_1 & \downarrow F'_1 \\
 \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \\
 F_2 \downarrow & \searrow \varphi_2 & \downarrow F'_2 \\
 \mathcal{E} & \xrightarrow{L} & \mathcal{E}'
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{E} & \xrightarrow{L} & \mathcal{E}' \\
 G_2 \downarrow & \searrow \psi_2 & \downarrow G'_2 \\
 \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{K} & \mathcal{D}' \\
 G_1 \downarrow & \searrow \psi_1 & \downarrow G'_1 \\
 \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathcal{C}'
 \end{array}$$

Let  $\varphi = \varphi_2 F_1 \cdot F'_2 \varphi_1$  and  $\psi = G'_1 \psi_2 \cdot \psi_1 G_2$ . If  $(\varphi_1, \psi_1)$  and  $(\varphi_2, \psi_2)$  are conjugate pairs, then  $(\varphi, \psi)$  is also a conjugate pair.

*Proof.* These are straightforward exercises in using the triangle identities.  $\blacklozenge$

**A.I.I.3** PROPOSITION. Let  $u_! \dashv u^* : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$ ,  $q_! \dashv q^* : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ ,  $v^* \dashv v_* : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and  $p^* \dashv p_* : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be adjunctions, and let  $\theta : u^* p^* \Rightarrow v^* q^*$  be a natural transformation.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{v^*} & \mathcal{B} \\
 u^* \downarrow & \searrow \theta & \downarrow q^* \\
 \mathcal{A} & \xrightarrow{p^*} & \mathcal{D}
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{u^*} & \mathcal{A} \\
 v^* \downarrow & \searrow \theta & \downarrow p^* \\
 \mathcal{B} & \xrightarrow{q^*} & \mathcal{D}
 \end{array}$$

The following are equivalent:

- (i) The diagram on the left satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition.
- (ii) The diagram on the right satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition.

*Proof.* Let  $\varphi : q_! p^* \Rightarrow v^* u_!$  be the left mate of  $\theta$ , and let  $\psi : u^* v_* \Rightarrow p_* q^*$  be the right mate of  $\theta$ . Then, by [proposition A.I.6](#),

$$\begin{aligned}
 \theta u_! \cdot p^* \eta^u &= q^* \varphi \cdot \eta^q p^* & \varepsilon^q v^* \cdot q_! \theta &= v^* \varepsilon^u \cdot \varphi u^* \\
 \psi v^* \cdot u^* \eta^v &= p_* \theta \cdot \eta^p u^* & \varepsilon^p q^* \cdot p^* \psi &= q^* \varepsilon^v \cdot \theta v_*
 \end{aligned}$$

where the  $\eta$  denote the various adjunction units and the  $\varepsilon$  denote the various adjunction counits, thus:

$$\psi v^* u_! \cdot (u^* \eta^v u_! \cdot \eta^u) = p_* \theta u_! \cdot \eta^p u^* u_! \cdot \eta^u$$

$$\begin{aligned}
p_* \theta u_! \bullet p_* p^* \eta^u \bullet \eta^p &= p_* q^* \varphi \bullet (p_* \eta^q p^* \bullet \eta^p) \\
(\varepsilon^q \bullet q_! \varepsilon^p q^*) \bullet q_! p^* \psi &= \varepsilon^q \bullet q_! q^* \varepsilon^v \bullet q_! \theta v_* \\
\varepsilon^v \bullet \varepsilon^q v^* v_* \bullet q_! \theta v_* &= (\varepsilon^v \bullet v^* \varepsilon^u v_*) \bullet \varphi u^* v_*
\end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $(\varphi, \psi)$  is a conjugate pair of natural transformations between the adjunctions  $v^* u_! \dashv u^* v_*$  and  $q_! p^* \dashv p_* q^*$ . It follows (by [lemma A.I.12](#)) that  $\varphi$  is a natural isomorphism if and only if  $\psi$  is a natural isomorphism. ■

## A.2 Cartesian closed categories

**A.2.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with binary products, and let  $Y$  and  $Z$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ . An **exponential object** for  $Y$  and  $Z$  is an object  $[Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and a morphism  $\text{ev}_{Y,Z} : [Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}} \times Y \rightarrow Z$  with the following universal property:

- For all morphisms  $f : X \times Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a unique morphism  $\bar{f} : X \rightarrow [Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}}$  such that  $\text{ev}_{Y,Z} \circ (\bar{f} \times \text{id}_Y) = f$ .

An **exponentiable object** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $Y$  such that, for all objects  $Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the exponential object  $[Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}}$  exists. We may write  $[Y, Z]$  or  $Z^Y$  instead of  $[Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}}$  if there is no risk of confusion.

**A.2.2** LEMMA. *Let  $Y$  be an object in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  with binary products. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$Y$  is an exponentiable object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *The functor  $- \times Y : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has a right adjoint  $[Y, -]_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and the counit of this adjunction is  $\text{ev}_{Y,-}$ .*

*Proof.* Immediate from the definitions. ◆

**A.2.3** DEFINITION. A **cartesian closed category** is a category with finite products, in which every object is exponentiable. A **locally cartesian closed category** is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  such that, for every object  $I$ , the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/I}$  is a cartesian closed category.

**A.2.4** EXAMPLE. **Set** is cartesian closed category; in fact, it is even a locally cartesian closed category.

**A.2.5** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a cartesian closed category.*

- (i) *The assignment  $(Y, Z) \mapsto [Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}}$  extends to a functor  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *For each object  $Z$ , the functor  $[-, Z]_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a contravariant right adjoint for itself.*

*Proof.* (i). This is an instance of the parametrised adjunction theorem.<sup>[1]</sup>

---

[1] See Theorem 3 in [CWM, Ch. IV, § 7].

(ii). We have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} C(X, [Y, Z]) &\cong C(X \times Y, Z) \\ &\cong C(Y \times X, Z) \\ &\cong C(Y, [X, Z]) \end{aligned}$$

**A.2.6 LEMMA.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be cartesian closed categories. If  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a functor that preserves binary products, then:*

- (i) *For any two objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a unique morphism  $\varphi_{X,Y} : F[X, Y]_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow [FX, FY]_{\mathcal{D}}$  such that the following diagram commutes:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F[X, Y]_{\mathcal{C}} \times FX & \xrightarrow{\cong} & F([X, Y]_{\mathcal{C}} \times X) \\ \varphi_{X,Y} \times \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow F\text{ev}_{X,Y} \\ [FX, FY]_{\mathcal{D}} \times FX & \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_{FX,FY}} & FY \end{array}$$

- (ii) *The morphism  $\varphi_{Y,Z}$  is natural in both  $Y$  and  $Z$ .*

*Proof.* The existence and uniqueness of  $\varphi_{X,Y}$  follows from the universal property of  $[FX, FY]_{\mathcal{D}}$  as an exponential object, and a standard argument proves naturality.  $\blacklozenge$

**A.2.7 DEFINITION.** A **cartesian closed functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  between cartesian closed categories such that the canonical comparison morphisms  $\varphi_{X,Y} : F[X, Y]_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow [FX, FY]_{\mathcal{D}}$  described above are isomorphisms.

**A.2.8 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be cartesian closed categories, and let  $Y$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $Z$  be an object in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Suppose we have an adjunction  $F \dashv G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  with unit  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow GF$  and counit  $\varepsilon : \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}} \Rightarrow FG$ ; then:*

- (i) *If  $\psi_{FY,Z} : G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow [GFY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}$  is the canonical comparison morphism, then  $\theta_{Y,Z} = [\eta_Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \circ \psi_{FY,Z}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  making the following diagram commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \eta_Y} & G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times GFY \\ \theta_{Y,Z} \times \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ [Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \times Y & & G([FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times FY) \\ \text{ev}_{Y,GZ} \downarrow & & \downarrow G\text{ev}_{FY,Z} \\ GZ & \xlongequal{\quad\quad\quad} & GZ \end{array}$$

## A. GENERALITIES

- (ii) If the canonical comparison morphism  $F(X \times Y) \rightarrow FX \times FY$  is an isomorphism for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and  $\varphi_{Y,GZ} : F[Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow [FY, FGZ]_{\mathcal{D}}$  is the canonical comparison morphism, then  $\chi_{Y,Z} = [FY, \varepsilon_Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \circ \varphi_{Y,GZ}$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{D}$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F[Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \times FY & \xrightarrow{\cong} & F([Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \times Y) \\
 \chi_{Y,Z} \times \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{ev}_{Y,GZ} \\
 [FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times FY & & FGZ \\
 \text{ev}_{FY,Z} \downarrow & & \downarrow \varepsilon_Z \\
 Z & \xlongequal{\quad} & Z
 \end{array}$$

Moreover, under this hypothesis,  $G\chi_{Y,Z} \circ \eta_{[Y,GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}}$  is a two-sided inverse for  $\theta_{Y,Z}$ .

- (iii) If  $\theta_{Y,Z}$  is an isomorphism for all objects  $Z$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then for all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the canonical comparison morphism  $F(X \times Y) \rightarrow FX \times FY$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* (i). The claim is proven by the commutativity of the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \eta_Y} & G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times GFY & \xrightarrow{\cong} & G([FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times FY) \\
 \psi_{FY,Z} \times \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi_{FY,Z} \times \text{id} & & \downarrow G\text{ev}_{FY,Z} \\
 [GFY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \times Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \eta_Y} & [GFY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \times GFY & & \\
 [\eta_Y, Z]_{\mathcal{C}} \downarrow & & \searrow \text{ev}_{GFY,GZ} & & \downarrow \\
 [Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} & \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_{Y,GZ}} & & & GZ
 \end{array}$$

- (ii). To show that  $\chi_{Y,Z}$  makes the diagram commute, one uses the fact that  $\text{ev}_{FY,Z} : [FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \times FY \rightarrow Z$  is natural in  $Z$ . Since  $F$  preserves products with  $Y$ , we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{C}(X, G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}}) &\cong \mathcal{D}(FX, [FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}}) \cong \mathcal{D}(FX \times FY, Z) \\
 &\cong \mathcal{D}(F(X \times Y), Z) \cong \mathcal{C}(X \times Y, GZ) \cong \mathcal{C}(X, [Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}})
 \end{aligned}$$

One obtains explicit isomorphisms by chasing  $\text{id}_X$  in both directions. Taking  $X = [Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}$ , we find that the isomorphism  $[Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}}$  is precisely  $G\chi_{Y,Z} \circ \eta_{[Y,GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}}$ , and taking  $X = G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}}$ , we find that the inverse is



the right exponential transpose of

$$G(\text{ev}_{FY,Z} \circ (\varepsilon_{[FY,Z]_D} \times \text{id}_Y)) \circ \eta_{G[FY,Z]_D \times Y}$$

where we have suppressed the comparison isomorphism  $F(G[FY, Z]_D \times Y) \cong FG[FY, Z]_D \times FY$ ; but naturality of the comparison morphisms for binary products gives us the commutative diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 G[FY, Z]_D \times Y & \xrightarrow{\eta} & GF(G[FY, Z]_D \times Y) & & \\
 \parallel & & \cong \downarrow & & \\
 & & G(FG[FY, Z]_D \times FY) & \xrightarrow{G(\varepsilon \times \text{id})} & G([FY, Z]_D \times FY) \\
 & & \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\
 G[FY, Z]_D \times Y & \xrightarrow{\eta \times \eta} & GFG[FY, Z]_D \times GFY & \xrightarrow{G\varepsilon \times \text{id}} & G[FY, Z]_D \times GFY \\
 & \searrow \text{id} \times \eta & & & \\
 & & & & 
 \end{array}$$

so, suppressing the comparison isomorphisms, we obtain the following equation:

$$G(\varepsilon_{[FY,Z]_D} \times \text{id}_{FY}) \circ \eta_{G[FY,Z]_D \times Y} = \text{id}_{G[FY,Z]_D} \times \eta_Y$$

Thus, the isomorphism  $G[FY, Z]_D \rightarrow [GY, Z]_C$  is indeed  $\theta_{Y,Z}$ , as claimed.

(iii). Now, suppose  $\theta_{Y,Z} : G[FY, Z]_D \rightarrow [GY, Z]_C$  is an isomorphism for all  $Z$ . Then, we have the natural bijections

$$\begin{aligned}
 D(FX \times FY, Z) &\cong D(FX, [FY, Z]_D) \cong C(X, G[FY, Z]_D) \\
 &\cong C(X, [Y, GZ]_C) \cong C(X \times Y, GZ) \cong D(F(X \times Y), Z)
 \end{aligned}$$

and by chasing  $\text{id}_Z$  for  $Z = FX \times FY$ , we conclude that the *canonical* comparison morphism  $F(X \times Y) \rightarrow FX \times FY$  is an isomorphism.  $\blacksquare$

**A.2.9 DEFINITION.** A **Frobenius adjunction of cartesian closed categories** is an adjunction  $F \dashv G : D \rightarrow C$  where  $C$  and  $D$  are cartesian closed categories, such that the natural morphisms  $\theta_{Y,Z} : G[FY, Z]_D \rightarrow [Y, GZ]_C$  described above are isomorphisms, or equivalently, such that the left adjoint  $F : C \rightarrow D$  preserves binary products.

## A. GENERALITIES

**A.2.I0** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are cartesian closed categories and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is any functor that preserves finite products, then  $G$  induces a  $\mathcal{C}$ -enrichment of  $\mathcal{D}$  from the cartesian closed structure of  $\mathcal{D}$ , and the exponential comparison morphisms  $\psi_{Y,Z} : G[Y, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow [GY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}$  makes  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  into a  $\mathcal{C}$ -enriched functor.

Now, suppose  $G$  has a left adjoint  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ . The adjunction  $F \dashv G$  is a Frobenius adjunction precisely when it is compatible with the  $\mathcal{C}$ -enrichments of  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$ . (Of course, this means  $F$  is also a  $\mathcal{C}$ -enriched functor.)

However, not all enriched adjunctions between cartesian closed categories are of the above form.

**A.2.II** PROPOSITION. *Let  $X, Y$ , and  $Z$  be any three objects in a cartesian closed category  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- (i) *There is a unique morphism  $\lambda_{X,Y,Z} : [X \times Y, Z] \rightarrow [X, [Y, Z]]$  making the following diagram commute:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 ([X \times Y, Z] \times X) \times Y & \xrightarrow{\cong} & [X \times Y, Z] \times (X \times Y) \\
 (\lambda_{X,Y,Z} \times \text{id}_X) \times \text{id}_Y \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{ev}_{X \times Y, Z} \\
 ([X, [Y, Z]] \times X) \times Y & & \\
 \text{ev}_{X, [Y, Z]} \times \text{id}_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 [Y, Z] \times Y & \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_{Y, Z}} & Z
 \end{array}$$

- (ii) *The morphisms  $\lambda_{X,Y,Z} : [X \times Y, Z] \rightarrow [X, [Y, Z]]$  constitute a natural isomorphism.*

*Proof.* The existence and uniqueness of  $\lambda_{X,Y,Z}$  follows from the universal property of  $[X, [Y, Z]]$  and  $[Y, Z]$  as exponential objects, and a standard argument shows that  $\lambda_{X,Y,Z}$  is natural in  $X, Y$ , and  $Z$ . By the associativity of cartesian products, we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{C}(T, [X \times Y, Z]) &\cong \mathcal{C}(T \times (X \times Y), Z) \\
 &\cong \mathcal{C}((T \times X) \times Y, Z) \cong \mathcal{C}(T \times X, [Y, Z]) \cong \mathcal{C}(T, [X, [Y, Z]])
 \end{aligned}$$

Chasing  $\text{id}_T$  for  $T = [X \times Y, Z]$ , we find that  $\lambda_{X,Y,Z}$  is an isomorphism. ■

**A.2.I2** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a cartesian closed category. An **exponential ideal** of  $C$  is a full subcategory  $D \subseteq C$  such that, for all objects  $Y$  in  $C$ , if  $Z$  is in  $D$ , then the exponential object  $[Y, Z]_C$  is (isomorphic to) an object in  $D$ . A **reflective exponential ideal** of  $C$  is an exponential ideal  $D$  such that the inclusion  $D \hookrightarrow C$  has a left adjoint.

The following is a special case of a result of Day [1972]:

**A.2.I3** PROPOSITION. Let  $C$  be a cartesian closed category, let  $G : D \rightarrow C$  be the inclusion of a full subcategory, and suppose  $G$  has a left adjoint  $F : C \rightarrow D$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $F$  preserves finite products.
- (ii)  $F$  preserves binary products.
- (iii)  $D$  is a reflective exponential ideal of  $C$ .
- (iv)  $D$  is a cartesian closed category,  $G : D \rightarrow C$  is a cartesian closed functor, and the canonical morphisms  $G[FY, Z]_D \rightarrow [Y, GZ]_C$  are isomorphisms.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Immediate.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Under our hypotheses, the product of two objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $D$  can be computed as  $F(GX \times GY)$ . Let  $\eta : \text{id}_C \rightarrow GF$  be the unit of the adjunction. We have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} C(X, [Y, GZ]_C) &\cong C(X \times Y, GZ) \\ &\cong D(FX \times FY, Z) \\ &\cong D(FGF X \times FY, Z) \\ &\cong C(GFX \times Y, GZ) \\ &\cong C(GFX, [Y, GZ]_C) \end{aligned}$$

By chasing these maps explicitly, we find that every morphism  $X \rightarrow [Y, GZ]_C$  factors through  $\eta_X : X \rightarrow GFX$  in a unique way. In particular, we have

$$\text{id}_{[Y, GZ]_C} = r_{Y, Z} \circ \eta_{[Y, GZ]_C}$$

for a unique  $r_{Y, Z} : GF[Y, GZ]_C \rightarrow [Y, GZ]_C$ . The triangle identity then implies  $Fr_{Y, Z} = \varepsilon_{F[Y, GZ]_C}$ , thus,

$$\eta_{[Y, GZ]_C} \circ r_{Y, Z} = GF r_{Y, Z} \circ \eta_{GF[Y, GZ]_C} = G\varepsilon_{F[Y, GZ]_C} \circ \eta_{GF[Y, GZ]_C} = \text{id}_{GF[Y, GZ]_C}$$

and therefore  $r_{Y,Z}$  is an isomorphism.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). It is a standard fact that a reflective subcategory is closed under all limits that exist in  $\mathcal{C}$ , so  $\mathcal{D}$  must have finite products and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves them. If  $\mathcal{D}$  is an exponential ideal, then  $\eta_{[Y,GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}} : [Y,GZ]_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow GF[Y,GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}$  must be an isomorphism, so we obtain natural bijections

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D}(X \times Y, Z) &\cong \mathcal{C}(GX \times GY, GZ) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(GX, [GY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(GX, GF[GY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{D}(FGX, F[GY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{D}(X, F[GY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \end{aligned}$$

and therefore we may take  $[Y, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} = F[GY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}$ . Obviously, this makes  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  into a cartesian closed functor. We also have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}(X, G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}}) &= \mathcal{C}(X, GF[GFY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(X, [GFY, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(GFY, [X, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(GFY, GF[X, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(Y, GF[X, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(Y, [X, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \\ &\cong \mathcal{C}(X, [Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}) \end{aligned}$$

and so the canonical morphism  $G[FY, Z]_{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow [Y, GZ]_{\mathcal{C}}$  is an isomorphism.

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Since  $\mathcal{D}$  has a terminal object and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  preserves it,  $F1$  must be a terminal object in  $\mathcal{D}$ . Now apply [proposition A.2.8](#). ■

**A.2.14** COROLLARY. *If  $\mathcal{E}$  is a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathcal{D}$ , and  $\mathcal{D}$  is a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $\mathcal{E}$  is also a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathcal{C}$ .* ■

**A.2.15** PROPOSITION. *Let **Cat** be the category of small categories, and let **Grpd** be the full subcategory of groupoids.*

(i) *There exist adjunctions*

$$\pi_0 \dashv \text{disc} \dashv \text{ob} \dashv \text{codisc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

where  $\text{ob } \mathbb{C}$  is the set of objects in a category  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $\text{disc } X$  is the category with  $\text{ob } \text{disc } X = X$  and all arrows trivial, and  $\text{codisc } X$  is the category with  $\text{ob } \text{codisc } X = X$  and a unique arrow between any two objects.

- (ii) The functor  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is fully faithful and exhibits  $\mathbf{Set}$  as a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .
- (iii) The functor  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products.
- (iv) There exist adjunctions

$$\mathbf{I} \dashv \text{und} \dashv \text{iso} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$$

where  $\text{und} : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is the inclusion and  $\text{iso } \mathbb{C}$  is the maximal subgroupoid of a category  $\mathbb{C}$ .

- (v)  $\mathbf{Grpd}$  is a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .
- (vi) The functor  $\mathbf{I} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$  preserves finite products.
- (vii) The adjunctions in (i) factor through  $\mathbf{Grpd}$ , yielding adjunctions

$$\pi_0 \dashv \text{disc} \dashv \text{ob} \dashv \text{codisc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$$

where  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  again preserves finite products.

- (viii) The functor  $\mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  that sends a category  $\mathbb{C}$  to the set of isomorphism classes in  $\mathbb{C}$  preserves finite products.

*Proof.* (i). The functor  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  obviously satisfies the solution set condition, so the general adjoint functor theorem gives us a left adjoint  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ ; the existence of the other adjunctions is obvious.

(ii). It is clear that  $\text{disc} : \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is fully faithful, and direct computation shows that  $[\mathbb{C}, \text{disc } X]$  is a discrete category for any  $\mathbb{C}$ , so  $\mathbf{Set}$  is indeed a reflective exponential ideal of  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .

(iii). Thus, by [proposition A.2.13](#),  $\pi_0 : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  must preserve finite products.

(iv). It is not hard to check that the inclusion  $\mathbf{Grpd} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  satisfies the solution set condition, so the general adjoint functor theorem gives us a left adjoint  $\mathbf{I} :$

## A. GENERALITIES

---

**Cat**  $\rightarrow$  **Grpd**; the fact that  $\text{iso} : \mathbf{Cat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Grpd}$  is right adjoint to the inclusion is obvious.

(v). Direct computation shows that  $[\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{G}]$  is a groupoid whenever  $\mathbb{G}$  is, so **Grpd** is indeed a reflective exponential ideal of **Cat**.

(vi). Thus, **I** : **Cat**  $\rightarrow$  **Grpd** must preserve finite products.

(vii). Clearly,  $\text{disc } X$  and  $\text{codisc } X$  are already groupoids, so the adjunctions do indeed factor through **Grpd**.

(viii). The set of isomorphism classes of objects in  $\mathbb{C}$  is precisely  $\pi_0 \text{ iso } \mathbb{C}$ . ■

**A.2.I6** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be any category. The **dependent sum** of an object  $p : X \rightarrow I$  in  $C_{/I}$  along a morphism  $j : I \rightarrow J$  in  $C$  is the object  $j \circ p : X \rightarrow J$  in  $C_{/J}$ , and we write  $\Sigma_j : C_{/I} \rightarrow C_{/J}$  for the functor sending an object to its dependent sum along  $j$ .

**A.2.I7** LEMMA. Let  $j : I \rightarrow J$  be a morphism in a category  $C$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $C$  has pullbacks along  $j$ .
- (ii) There exists an adjunction

$$\Sigma_j \dashv j^* : C_{/J} \rightarrow C_{/I}$$

where  $\Sigma_j$  is the dependent sum functor, and the right adjoint  $j^* : C_{/J} \rightarrow C_{/I}$  is the pullback functor.

*Proof.* This is just a matter of unwinding the definitions. ◆

**A.2.I8** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a category with pullbacks. A **dependent product** of an object  $p : X \rightarrow I$  in  $C_{/I}$  along a morphism  $j : I \rightarrow J$  in  $C$  is an object  $\Pi_j p$  in  $C_{/J}$  and a morphism  $\text{ev}_{j,p} : j^* \Pi_j p \rightarrow p$  in  $C_{/I}$  with the following universal property:

- For all morphisms  $f : j^* q \rightarrow p$  in  $C_{/I}$ , there exists a unique morphism  $\tilde{f} : q \rightarrow \Pi_j p$  in  $C_{/J}$  such that  $\text{ev}_{j,p} \circ j^* \tilde{f} = f$ .

A  **$\Sigma\Pi$ -category** is a category  $C$  with finite limits such that, for every morphism  $j : I \rightarrow J$  in  $C$ , dependent products along  $j$  exist.

**A.2.19** LEMMA. *Let  $j : I \rightarrow J$  be a morphism in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  with pullbacks. The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *For all objects  $p : X \rightarrow I$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , a dependent product of  $p$  along  $j$  exists.*
- (ii) *The pullback functor  $j^* : \mathcal{C}_{/J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/I}$  has a right adjoint  $\Pi_j : \mathcal{C}_{/I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/J}$  that sends an object to its dependent product along  $j$ , and the counit of this adjunction is  $\text{ev}_{j,-}$ .*

*Proof.* This is just a matter of unwinding the definitions. ◆

**A.2.20** COROLLARY. *If  $j : I \rightarrow J$  is a morphism in a  $\Sigma\Pi$ -category  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the pullback functor  $j^* : \mathcal{C}_{/J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/I}$  preserves all limits and colimits.* ■

**A.2.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with a terminal object. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\Sigma\Pi$ -category.*
- (ii)  *$\mathcal{C}$  is a locally cartesian closed category.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 9.20 in [Awodey, 2010]. □

**A.2.22** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a small category, and let  $\mathcal{C} = [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ . Then:*

- (i)  *$\mathcal{C}$  has limits and colimits for all small diagrams, and these can be constructed componentwise in  $\mathbf{Set}$ : a cone (resp. cocone) in  $\mathcal{C}$  over (resp. under) a diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a limiting cone (resp. colimiting cocone) if and only if it is so in every component.*
- (ii) *Every internal equivalence relation in  $\mathcal{C}$  is the kernel pair of its coequaliser.*
- (iii) *For all morphisms  $j : I \rightarrow J$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the pullback functor  $j^* : \mathcal{C}_{/J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/I}$  preserves all limits and colimits.*
- (iv) *The Yoneda embedding  $h_\bullet : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a dense functor; i.e. for every presheaf  $X : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the tautological cocone<sup>[2]</sup> from the canonical diagram  $(h_\bullet \downarrow X) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  to  $X$  is a colimiting cocone.*
- (v)  *$\mathcal{C}$  is a locally finitely presentable category.*

---

[2] See definition A.5.7.

(vi)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\Sigma\Pi$ -category.

*Proof.* (i). This is a standard fact about presheaf categories.

(ii) and (iii). The claims are true for **Set**, and hence for  $\mathcal{C}$  by claim (i).

(iv). See [proposition A.5.25](#).

(v). See [theorem 0.2.40](#).

(vi). Apply [theorem 0.2.50](#) to construct a right adjoint for  $j^* : \mathcal{C}_{/J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/I}$ . ■

**A.2.23** REMARK. The Yoneda lemma gives us an explicit description of the exponential objects in  $[\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ : given two presheaves  $Y, Z : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , if  $Z^Y$  is their exponential object, then we must have

$$Z^Y(d) \cong [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](h_d, Z^Y) \cong [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](h_d \times Y, Z)$$

and so we may define  $Y^Z$  by  $Y^Z(d) = [\mathbb{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](h_d \times Y, Z)$ .

**A.2.24** DEFINITION. Let  $Y$  and  $Z$  be topological spaces, and let  $[Y, Z]$  be the set of all *continuous* maps  $Y \rightarrow Z$ . The **compact–open topology** on  $[Y, Z]$  is the coarsest topology such that the subsets

$$V(K, U) = \{f \in [Y, Z] \mid K \subseteq f^{-1}U\}$$

are open in  $[Y, Z]$  for all compact subsets  $K \subseteq X$  and all open subsets  $U \subseteq Y$ .

**A.2.25** REMARK. If  $Y$  is a discrete space, then the compact–open topology on  $[Y, Z]$  coincides with the product topology on  $Z^Y$ .

**A.2.26** DEFINITION. A **compactly generated Hausdorff space** is a Hausdorff topological space  $X$  such that a subset  $U \subseteq X$  is open if and only if, for every continuous map  $f : K \rightarrow X$  where  $K$  is a compact Hausdorff space,  $f^{-1}U$  is an open subset of  $K$ . We write **CGHaus** for the category of compactly generated Hausdorff spaces and continuous maps.



**A.2.27** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *If  $Y$  is a locally compact Hausdorff space, then for all topological spaces  $Z$ , the set of all continuous maps  $Y \rightarrow Z$ , equipped with the compact-open topology, is an exponential object  $[Y, Z]$  in **Top**.*
- (ii) **Top** is not a cartesian closed category.
- (iii) **CGHaus** is a cartesian closed category.

*Proof.* Claim (i) follows from Theorems 46.10 and 46.11 in [Munkres, 2000], and claim (ii) is Proposition 7.1.2 in [Borceux, 1994a], and claim (iii) is proved in [GZ, Ch. III, §2]. □

### A.3 Factorisation systems

**A.3.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Given a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

a **lift** is a morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $f \circ h = w$  and  $h \circ g = z$ .

- We say  $g$  has the **left lifting property** with respect to  $f$  and  $f$  has the **right lifting property** with respect to  $g$ , and we write  $g \sqsubset f$ , if every commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form above has a lift.
- We say  $f$  is **left orthogonal** to  $g$  and  $g$  is **right orthogonal** to  $f$ , and we write  $g \perp f$  if lifts exist *and* are unique.
- Given  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , we define the following subensembles of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ :

$$\sqsubset \mathcal{I} = \{f \in \text{mor } \mathcal{C} \mid \forall g \in \mathcal{I}. f \sqsubset g\}$$

$$\mathcal{I}^\sqsubset = \{g \in \text{mor } \mathcal{C} \mid \forall f \in \mathcal{I}. f \sqsubset g\}$$

$$^\perp \mathcal{I} = \{f \in \text{mor } \mathcal{C} \mid \forall g \in \mathcal{I}. f \perp g\}$$

$$\mathcal{I}^\perp = \{g \in \text{mor } \mathcal{C} \mid \forall f \in \mathcal{I}. f \perp g\}$$

**A.3.2** LEMMA. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in a locally small category  $\mathcal{C}$ . Consider the commutative diagram in **Set** shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}(W, X) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \mathcal{C}(W, Y) \\ \downarrow g^* & \searrow & \downarrow g^* \\ & \bullet & \\ \downarrow & \downarrow & \\ \mathcal{C}(Z, X) & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \mathcal{C}(Z, Y) \end{array}$$

where the inner square is a pullback diagram.

- (i) The dashed arrow is a surjection if and only if  $g \sqsupseteq f$ .
- (ii) The dashed arrow is a bijection if and only if  $g \perp f$ .

*Proof.* This is just a restatement of the definition. ■

**A.3.3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a category.*

- (i) If  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , then  ${}^\perp\mathcal{R} \subseteq \sqsupseteq\mathcal{R}$ .
- (ii) If  $\mathcal{R}' \subseteq \mathcal{R} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , then  $\sqsupseteq\mathcal{R}' \supseteq \sqsupseteq\mathcal{R}$ .
- (iii) If  $\mathcal{R}' \subseteq \mathcal{R} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , then  ${}^\perp\mathcal{R}' \supseteq {}^\perp\mathcal{R}$ .

*Dually:*

- (i') If  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , then  $\mathcal{L}^\perp \subseteq \sqsupseteq\mathcal{L}$ .
- (ii') If  $\mathcal{L}' \subseteq \mathcal{L} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , then  $\mathcal{L}'^\perp \supseteq \sqsupseteq\mathcal{L}$ .
- (iii') If  $\mathcal{L}' \subseteq \mathcal{L} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ , then  $\mathcal{L}'^\perp \supseteq \mathcal{L}^\perp$ .

*Moreover, we have the following antitone Galois connections:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L} \subseteq \sqsupseteq\mathcal{R} & \text{ if and only if } \mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L}^\perp \\ \mathcal{L} \subseteq {}^\perp\mathcal{R} & \text{ if and only if } \mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L}^\perp \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**A.3.4** COROLLARY. *We have the following identities:*

$$\begin{aligned} \sqsupseteq(\sqsupseteq\mathcal{R})^\perp &= \sqsupseteq\mathcal{R} & {}^\perp({}^\perp\mathcal{R})^\perp &= {}^\perp\mathcal{R} \\ (\sqsupseteq(\mathcal{L}^\perp))^\perp &= \mathcal{L}^\perp & ({}^\perp(\mathcal{L}^\perp))^\perp &= \mathcal{L}^\perp \end{aligned}$$

*Proof.* This is a standard fact about (antitone) Galois connections. ■

**A.3.5** DEFINITION. A **orthogonality-reflecting functor** is a functor  $U : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  with the following property:

- Given a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

for each morphism  $h : UW \rightarrow UX$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} UZ & \xrightarrow{Uz} & UX \\ U_g \downarrow & \nearrow h & \downarrow Uf \\ UW & \xrightarrow{Uw} & UY \end{array}$$

there is a *unique* morphism  $\tilde{h} : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $U\tilde{h} = h$ ,  $f \circ h = w$ , and  $h \circ g = z$ .

**A.3.6** LEMMA. Let  $U : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor between locally small categories. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $U : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a orthogonality-reflecting functor.
- (ii) For any morphisms  $Z \rightarrow W$  and  $X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the induced commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}(W, X) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{C}(Z, X) \times_{\mathcal{C}(Z, Y)} \mathcal{C}(W, Y) \\ U \downarrow & & \downarrow U \\ \mathcal{D}(UW, UX) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{D}(UZ, UX) \times_{\mathcal{D}(UZ, UY)} \mathcal{D}(UW, UY) \end{array}$$

is a pullback square in **Set**.

*Proof.* This is just a restatement of the definition. ■

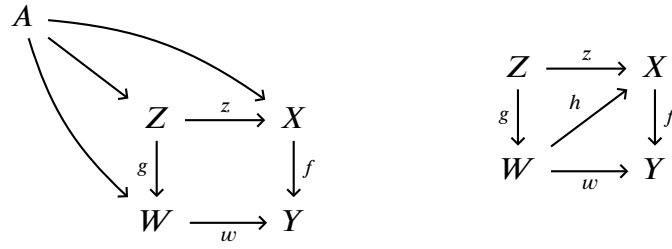
**A.3.7** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- For any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the projection  $A/\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is an orthogonality-reflecting functor.

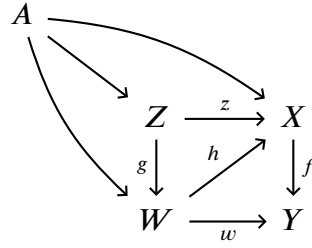
- For any object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the projection  $\mathcal{C}_{/B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is an orthogonality-reflecting functor.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Since the forgetful functor  $\mathcal{A}/\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is faithful, the uniqueness clause in the definition is automatically satisfied; it thus suffices to verify existence. Suppose we have the following commutative diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ :



Then the following diagram also commutes:



This completes the proof. ■

**A.3.8 PROPOSITION.** Let  $U : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be an orthogonality-reflecting functor and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

1. If  $Ug \sqcap Uf$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $g \sqcap f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
2. If  $Ug \perp Uf$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then  $g \perp f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**A.3.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be a subensemble of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . An  **$\mathcal{R}$ -projective object** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $W$  such that, for every diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X & \\ & \downarrow f & \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

if  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , then there is a morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $f \circ h = w$ .

- Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be a subensemble of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . An  **$\mathcal{L}$ -injective object** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an object  $X$  such that, for every diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ \downarrow g & & \\ W & & \end{array}$$

if  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then there is a morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ g = z$ .

**A.3.10** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category. For any  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  and any object  $W$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $W$  is an  $\mathcal{R}$ -projective object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) For any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{R}$ , the map

$$C(W, f) : C(W, X) \rightarrow C(W, Y)$$

is surjective.

- (iii) (Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  has an initial object  $0$ .) The unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow W$  is in  $\square_{\mathcal{R}}$ .

Dually, for any  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  and any object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $X$  is an  $\mathcal{L}$ -injective object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii') For any morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{L}$ , the map

$$C(g, X) : C(W, X) \rightarrow C(Z, X)$$

is surjective.

(iii') (Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  has a terminal object  $1$ .) The unique morphism  $X \rightarrow 1$  is in  $\mathcal{L}^\square$ .

*Proof.* These are just restatements of the definition. ■

**A.3.II** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.

- A **strong monomorphism** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a monomorphism that is right orthogonal to all epimorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- A **strong epimorphism** in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a monomorphism that is left orthogonal to all monomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**A.3.I2** LEMMA. Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in a category  $\mathcal{C}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $f$  is an isomorphism.
- (ii)  $f$  is right orthogonal to any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii)  $f$  has the right lifting property with respect to any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iv)  $f$  has the right lifting property with respect to itself.

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $f$  is an isomorphism.
- (ii')  $f$  is left orthogonal to any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii')  $f$  has the left lifting property with respect to any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iv')  $f$  has the left lifting property with respect to itself.

## A. GENERALITIES

---

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Suppose  $r : Y \rightarrow X$  is a morphism such that  $r \circ f = \text{id}_X$ . Then, for any commutative square as below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

we have  $(r \circ w) \circ g = r \circ f \circ z = z$ ; but if  $f \circ r = \text{id}_Y$  as well, then  $f \circ (r \circ w) = w$ ; thus  $r \circ w : W \rightarrow X$  is the required lift. It is clearly unique, as  $f$  is monic.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii), (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). Obvious.

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Consider the following commutative square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y \end{array}$$

Since  $f$  has the right lifting property with respect to itself, there exists a morphism  $h : Y \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ f = \text{id}_X$  and  $f \circ h = \text{id}_Y$ . ■

### A.3.13 COROLLARY.

- A morphism is both a monomorphism and a strong epimorphism if and only if it is an isomorphism.
- A morphism is both a epimorphism and a strong monomorphism if and only if it is an isomorphism. ■

### A.3.14 DEFINITION. A **weak factorisation system** for a category $\mathcal{C}$ is a pair $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ of subensembles of $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ satisfying these conditions:

- For each morphism  $f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  there exists a pair  $(g, h)$  with  $g \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $h \in \mathcal{R}$  such that  $f = h \circ g$ . Such a pair is a  **$(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ -factorisation** of  $f$ .
- A morphism is in  $\mathcal{L}$  if and only if it has the left lifting property with respect to every morphism in  $\mathcal{R}$ , i.e.  $\mathcal{L} = \square \mathcal{R}$ .
- A morphism is in  $\mathcal{R}$  if and only if it has the right lifting property with respect to every morphism in  $\mathcal{L}$ , i.e.  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{L} \square$ .



An **orthogonal factorisation system** is defined like a weak factorisation system, except for replacing ‘... has the left/right lifting property with respect to ...’ with ‘... is left/right orthogonal to ...’.

**A.3.15** REMARK. Obviously,  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system for  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $(\mathcal{R}^{\text{op}}, \mathcal{L}^{\text{op}})$  is a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system for  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}$ .

**A.3.16** PROPOSITION. Let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$ . If either

- every morphism in  $\mathcal{R}$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , or
- every morphism in  $\mathcal{L}$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

then  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system.

*Proof.* The two hypotheses are formally dual, so it is enough to check the first case. Observe that, given a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & \nearrow h & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism, for any  $h' : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $f \circ h' = w$ , we must have  $h = h'$ . Thus, for any monomorphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g \sqsubset f$  if and only if  $g \perp f$ . Hence,  $\mathcal{L} = \sqsubset \mathcal{R} = {}^\perp \mathcal{R}$ . On the other hand,  $\mathcal{L}^\perp \subseteq \mathcal{L} \sqsubset = \mathcal{R}$ , so  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{L}^\perp$  as well. ■

**A.3.17** DEFINITION. A **proper factorisation system** on a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is an orthogonal factorisation system  $(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{M})$  on  $\mathcal{C}$  such that every morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  is an epimorphism and every morphism in  $\mathcal{M}$  is a monomorphism.

**A.3.18** EXAMPLE. In **Set**, if  $\mathcal{E}$  is the class of surjective maps and  $\mathcal{M}$  is the class of injective maps, then  $(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{M})$  is a proper factorisation system.

**A.3.19** PROPOSITION (Closure properties). *Let  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  and suppose either  $\mathcal{L} = \boxdot \mathcal{R}$  or  $\mathcal{L} = {}^\perp \mathcal{R}$ .*

(i) *Given a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  as below,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z' & \xrightarrow{i_Z} & Z \\ g' \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ W' & \xrightarrow{i_W} & W \end{array}$$

*if the morphism  $g'$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then  $g$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ .*

(ii) *Let  $I$  be a set. If  $g_i : Z_i \rightarrow W_i$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{L}$  for all  $i$  in  $I$  and the coproduct  $\coprod_i g_i : \coprod_i Z_i \rightarrow \coprod_i W_i$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $\coprod_i g_i$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ .*

(iii) *Given a commutative diagram of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \text{id} & & \\ & \searrow & \text{---} & \searrow & \\ Z' & \xrightarrow{i_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{r_Z} & Z' \\ g' \downarrow & & g \downarrow & & \downarrow g' \\ W' & \xrightarrow{i_W} & W & \xrightarrow{r_W} & W' \\ & \swarrow & \text{---} & \swarrow & \\ & & \text{id} & & \end{array}$$

*if  $g$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then so is  $g'$ ; in other words,  $\mathcal{L}$  is closed under retracts.*

(iv)  $\mathcal{L}$  is closed under composition.

(v) *Let  $\gamma$  be an ordinal and let  $Z : \gamma \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a colimit-preserving functor. We write  $Z_\alpha$  for  $Z(\alpha)$ , where  $\alpha < \gamma$ , and  $g_{\alpha,\beta} : Z_\alpha \rightarrow Z_\beta$  for the morphism  $Z(\alpha \rightarrow \beta)$ , where  $\alpha < \beta < \gamma$ . If  $\lambda$  is a colimiting cocone from  $Z$  to  $W$  and each  $g_{\alpha,\beta}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then each component  $\lambda_\alpha : Z_\alpha \rightarrow W$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Suppose  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , and consider the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z' & \xrightarrow{i_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g' \downarrow & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow f \\ W' & \xrightarrow{i_W} & W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

There exists  $h' : W' \rightarrow X$  such that  $h' \circ g' = z \circ i_Z$  and  $f \circ h' = w \circ i_W$ . In particular, there exists a unique morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ g = z$  and

$h \circ i_W = h'$ , by the universal property of pullbacks. Thus  $f \circ h \circ i_W = f \circ h' = w \circ i_W$  and  $f \circ h \circ g = f \circ z = w \circ g$ , but  $i_W$  and  $g$  are jointly epic, so  $f \circ h = w$ . This shows  $h$  is the required lift, and  $h$  is unique if  $h'$  is.

(ii). We may construct the required lift componentwise.

(iii). Suppose  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , and consider the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} Z' & \xrightarrow{i_Z} & Z & \xrightarrow{r_Z} & Z' & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g' \downarrow & & g \downarrow & & g' \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W' & \xrightarrow{i_W} & W & \xrightarrow{r_W} & W' & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

There exists  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ g = z \circ r_Z$  and  $f \circ h = w \circ r_W$ , and so for  $h' = h \circ i_W$ :

$$\begin{aligned} f \circ h' &= f \circ h \circ i_W = w \circ r_W \circ i_W = w \\ h' \circ g' &= h \circ i_W \circ g' = h \circ g \circ i_Z = z \circ r_Z \circ i_Z = z \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $h' : W' \rightarrow X$  is the required lift, and  $h'$  is unique if  $h$  is (because  $r_W$  is split epic).

(iv). Suppose  $g' : Z' \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  are in  $\mathcal{L}$  and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Consider the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z' & \xrightarrow{z'} & X \\ g' \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ Z & & \\ g \downarrow & & \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

There must exist a morphism  $z : Z \rightarrow X$  such that  $z \circ g' = z'$  and  $f \circ z' = w \circ g$ , and hence a morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ g = z$  and  $f \circ h = w$ . Obviously,  $h \circ (g' \circ g) = z'$ , so  $h$  is the required lift. Moreover,  $h$  unique if  $\mathcal{L} = {}^\perp \mathcal{R}$ .

(v). We may assume without loss of generality that  $\alpha = 0$ , since any non-empty terminal segment of  $\gamma$  is cofinal in  $\gamma$ . Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$  and consider

## A. GENERALITIES

---

the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z_0 & \xrightarrow{z_0} & X \\ \lambda_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

For each  $\alpha < \gamma$ , given  $z_\alpha$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z_\alpha & \xrightarrow{z_\alpha} & & & X \\ g_{\alpha,\alpha+1} \downarrow & & & & \downarrow f \\ Z_{\alpha+1} & \xrightarrow{\lambda_{\alpha+1}} & W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

choose a lift  $z_{\alpha+1} : Z_{\alpha+1} \rightarrow X$ ; for each limit ordinal  $\beta < \gamma$ , let  $z_\beta : Z_\beta \rightarrow X$  be the unique morphism such that  $z_\beta \circ g_{\alpha,\beta} = z_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \beta$ . (Such  $z_\beta$  exist and are unique because  $Z_\beta = \varinjlim_{\alpha < \beta} Z_\alpha$ .) Note that the universal property of  $W$  then guarantees that  $w \circ \lambda_\beta = f \circ z_\beta$ .

Having constructed morphisms  $z_\alpha : Z_\alpha \rightarrow X$  for all  $\alpha < \gamma$  as above, we may now obtain  $h : W \rightarrow X$  as the unique morphism such that  $h \circ \lambda_\alpha = z_\alpha$  for all  $\alpha < \gamma$ , and again we automatically have  $f \circ h = w$ . It is also clear that  $h$  is unique if  $\mathcal{L} = {}^\perp \mathcal{R}$ . ■

**A.3.20** PROPOSITION (Cancellation properties). *For any  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i) *Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be either  $\square \mathcal{R}$  or  ${}^\perp \mathcal{R}$ , let  $e : A \rightarrow Z$  be an epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $g \circ e$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then so is  $g$ .*
- (ii) *Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be  ${}^\perp \mathcal{R}$  and let  $f : A \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Assuming every morphism that is in  $\mathcal{R}$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , if  $g \circ f$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then so is  $g$ .*
- (iii) *Let  $\mathcal{L}$  be  $\square \mathcal{R}$ , let  $f : A \rightarrow Z$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Assuming every morphism that is in  $\mathcal{R}$  has  $\mathcal{L}$ -injective codomain, if both  $g \circ f$  and  $g$  are in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then  $f$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ .*
- (iv) *Suppose  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{R}$ , and let  $e : A \rightarrow Z$  be in  $\mathcal{L}$ . Then, a morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$  if and only if  $g \circ e$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ .*

Dually, for any  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ :

- (i') Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be either  $\mathcal{L}^\square$  or  $\mathcal{L}^\perp$ , let  $m : Y \rightarrow B$  be an monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $m \circ f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , then so is  $f$ .
- (ii') Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be  $\mathcal{L}^\perp$  and let  $g : Y \rightarrow B$  and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Assuming every morphism that is in  $\mathcal{L}$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , if  $g \circ f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , then so is  $f$ .
- (iii') Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be  $\mathcal{L}^\square$  and let  $g : Y \rightarrow B$  and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Assuming every morphism that is in  $\mathcal{L}$  has  $\mathcal{R}$ -projective domain, if both  $g \circ f$  and  $f$  are in  $\mathcal{R}$ , then  $g$  is also in  $\mathcal{R}$ .
- (iv') Suppose  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{R}$ , and let  $m : Y \rightarrow B$  be in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Then, a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$  if and only if  $m \circ f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ .

*Proof.* (i). The epimorphism  $e : A \rightarrow Z$  induces a bijection between solutions of lifting problems in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

and solutions of lifting problems of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{z \circ e} & X \\ g \circ e \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

so  $g \square f$  (resp.  $g \perp f$ ) if and only if  $g \circ e \square f$  (resp.  $g \circ e \perp f$ ).

(ii). The proof is similar to that of claim (i).

(iii). Consider a lifting problem in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{a} & X \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ Z & \xrightarrow{z} & Y \end{array}$$

## A. GENERALITIES

where  $p : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Since  $Y$  is an  $\mathcal{L}$ -injective object and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , there is a morphism  $w : W \rightarrow Y$  such that  $w \circ g = z$ . But  $g \circ f : A \rightarrow W$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ , so there is a morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $h \circ g \circ f = a$  and  $p \circ h = w$ . Moreover,  $p \circ h \circ g = w \circ g = z$ , so  $h \circ g : Z \rightarrow X$  is a solution to the lifting problem under consideration.

(iv). By [proposition A.3.19](#), we know  $g \circ e$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$  if both  $g$  and  $e$  are in  $\mathcal{L}$ ; the converse remains to be shown. Let  $r \circ l$  be an  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ -factorisation of  $g$ . If  $g \circ e$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$ , then there exists a unique  $s$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{l \circ e} & M \\ g \circ e \downarrow & \nearrow s & \downarrow r \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W \end{array}$$

so  $r \circ s = \text{id}_W$ , but then we also have

$$\begin{aligned} r \circ (s \circ r) &= r \\ (s \circ r) \circ (l \circ e) &= s \circ (g \circ e) = l \circ e \end{aligned}$$

and  $l \circ e \perp r$ , so we must have  $s \circ r = \text{id}_M$ . Hence,  $g$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}$ . ■

**A.3.21** PROPOSITION (The retract argument). *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a pair of subclasses of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  such that  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \square \mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L} \square$ . If every morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  admits an  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ -factorisation, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is a weak factorisation system.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{L}$  and  $\mathcal{R}$  are both closed under retracts in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This is a special case of [proposition A.3.19](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is in  $\mathcal{L} \square$ . Let  $p \circ i$  be an  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ -factorisation of  $f$ . Then, there must exist a morphism  $r$  such that  $r \circ i = \text{id}_X$  and  $f \circ r = p$ , as in the diagram below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ i \downarrow & \nearrow r & \downarrow f \\ Z & \xrightarrow{p} & Y \end{array}$$

Hence, we have the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \text{id} & & \\
 & \curvearrowright & & \curvearrowleft & \\
 X & \xrightarrow{i} & Z & \xrightarrow{r} & X \\
 f \downarrow & & p \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y
 \end{array}$$

Since  $\mathcal{R}$  is closed under retracts, we deduce that  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Thus,  $\mathcal{L}^\square \subseteq \mathcal{R}$ . The dual argument proves that  $\square\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L}$ , so  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is indeed a weak factorisation system. ■

**A.3.22** COROLLARY. *Every orthogonal factorisation system is also a weak factorisation system.*

*Proof.* Let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be an orthogonal factorisation system on a category  $\mathcal{C}$ . [Proposition A.3.3](#) implies  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \square\mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L}^\square$ , and [proposition A.3.19](#) says  $\mathcal{L}$  and  $\mathcal{R}$  are both closed under retracts, so we may use the earlier proposition to deduce that  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is a weak factorisation system. ■

**A.3.23** LEMMA. *Let  $A$  be an object in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  with a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ . Then the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$  has a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system where a morphism is in the left or right class if and only if it is so in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [lemma A.3.7](#) and the retract argument ([proposition A.3.21](#)). ■

**A.3.24** DEFINITION. A weak factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  on a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is **cofibrantly generated** by a subensemble  $\mathcal{I} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  if  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{I}^\square$ . Dually,  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is **fibrantly generated** by a subensemble  $\mathcal{F} \subseteq \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$  if  $\mathcal{L} = \square\mathcal{F}$ .

**A.3.25** REMARK. Of course,  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is always cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{L}$ . The condition is most useful when  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is cofibrantly generated by a (small) subset of  $\mathcal{L}$ , but it is convenient to have the more general definition available.

**A.3.26** DEFINITION. Let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a weak factorisation system on a category  $\mathcal{C}$ . An **extension** of  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  along a functor  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  is a weak factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}^+, \mathcal{R}^+)$  on  $\mathcal{C}^+$  with the following properties:

- A morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$  if and only if  $if : iX \rightarrow iY$  is in  $\mathcal{R}^+$ .
- A morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}$  if and only if  $ig : iZ \rightarrow iW$  is in  $\mathcal{L}^+$ .

**A.3.27** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a full subcategory of a category  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $(\mathcal{L}^+, \mathcal{R}^+)$  be a weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}^+$ .*

- (i) *If  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \mathcal{L}^+$ , then  $\mathcal{R} \supseteq \mathcal{R}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii) *If  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  and  $(\mathcal{L}^+, \mathcal{R}^+)$  are both cofibrantly generated by the same ensemble  $\mathcal{I}$ , then  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{R}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*

*Dually:*

- (i') *If  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{R}^+$ , then  $\mathcal{L} \supseteq \mathcal{L}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*
- (ii') *If  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  and  $(\mathcal{L}^+, \mathcal{R}^+)$  are both fibrantly generated by the same ensemble  $\mathcal{F}$ , then  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .*

*Moreover:*

- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \mathcal{L}^+$  and  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{R}^+$ , then  $(\mathcal{L}^+, \mathcal{R}^+)$  is an extension of  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $\mathcal{C}$  is a full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}^+$ , if  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  and  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  are morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then any lifting problem of the following form in  $\mathcal{C}^+$  is already in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

and moreover any solution to the above lifting problem in  $\mathcal{C}^+$  is also a solution in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus,  $g \sqsupseteq f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if  $g \sqsupseteq f$  in  $\mathcal{C}^+$ .

(i). Suppose  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ . Then  $f$  has the right lifting property in  $\mathcal{C}^+$  with respect to every morphism in  $\mathcal{L}^+$ , and in particular,  $f$  has the right lifting property in  $\mathcal{C}$  with respect to every morphism in  $\mathcal{L}$ ; hence  $f$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , and therefore  $\mathcal{R} \supseteq \mathcal{R}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .

(ii). A morphism is in  $\mathcal{R}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{R}^+$ ) if and only if it has the right lifting property in  $\mathcal{C}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{C}^+$ ) with respect to every morphism in  $\mathcal{I}$ , so by our initial observation, we must have  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{R}^+ \cap \text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ .

(iii). Immediately follows from claims (i) and (i'). ■



**A.3.28** PROPOSITION. Let  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  be a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system for a category  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $(\mathcal{L}', \mathcal{R}')$  be a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system for a category  $\mathcal{C}'$ . Given an adjunction

$$F \dashv U : \mathcal{C}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $F$  sends morphisms in  $\mathcal{L}$  to morphisms in  $\mathcal{L}'$ .
- (ii)  $U$  sends morphisms in  $\mathcal{R}'$  to morphisms in  $\mathcal{R}$ .

*Proof.* The adjunction induces a bijection between solutions to the two lifting problems shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FZ & \longrightarrow & X \\ Fg \downarrow & \nearrow ? & \downarrow f \\ FW & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & UX \\ g \downarrow & \nearrow ? & \downarrow Uf \\ W & \longrightarrow & UY \end{array}$$

Thus,  $Fg \sqsubseteq f$  (resp.  $Fg \perp f$ ) if and only if  $g \sqsubseteq Uf$  (resp.  $g \perp Uf$ ). ■

**A.3.29** ¶ Let  $\mathbb{2}$  be the category  $\{0 \rightarrow 1\}$  and let  $\mathbb{3}$  be  $\{0 \rightarrow 1 \rightarrow 2\}$ . Thus, given a category  $\mathcal{C}$ , the functor category  $[\mathbb{2}, \mathcal{C}]$  is the category of arrows and commutative squares in  $\mathcal{C}$ . There are three embeddings  $d^0, d^1, d^2 : \mathbb{2} \rightarrow \mathbb{3}$ :

$$\begin{array}{lll} d^0(0) = 1 & d^1(0) = 0 & d^2(0) = 0 \\ d^0(1) = 2 & d^1(1) = 2 & d^2(1) = 1 \end{array}$$

These then induce (by precomposition) three functors  $d_0, d_1, d_2 : [\mathbb{3}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{2}, \mathcal{C}]$ .

**A.3.30** DEFINITION. A **functorial factorisation system** on a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a pair of functors  $L, R : [\mathbb{2}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{2}, \mathcal{C}]$  for which there exists a (necessarily unique) functor  $F : [\mathbb{2}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow [\mathbb{3}, \mathcal{C}]$  satisfying the following equations:

$$d_2 F = L \quad d_1 F = \text{id}_{[\mathbb{2}, \mathcal{C}]} \quad d_0 F = R$$

A **functorial weak** (resp. **orthogonal**) **factorisation system** on  $\mathcal{C}$  is a weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  together with a functorial factorisation system  $(L, R)$  such that  $Lf \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $Rf \in \mathcal{R}$  for all morphisms  $f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We will often abuse notation and refer to the functorial factorisation system  $(L, R)$  as a functorial weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system, omitting mention of the weak (resp. orthogonal) factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ .

## A. GENERALITIES

---

**A.3.31** LEMMA. Let  $A$  be an object in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $\Sigma_A : \mathcal{C}_{/A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be the projection from the slice category.

- (i) For each functorial factorisation system  $(L, R)$  on  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exists a unique functorial factorisation system  $(L_A, R_A)$  on  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$  such that

$$[2, \Sigma_A] \circ L_A = L \circ [2, \Sigma_A] \quad [2, \Sigma_A] \circ R_A = R \circ [2, \Sigma_A]$$

where  $[2, \Sigma_A] : [2, \mathcal{C}_{/A}] \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is the evident induced functor.

- (ii) If  $(L, R)$  is part of a functorial weak or orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $(L_A, R_A)$  is compatible with the induced weak or orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$  as well.

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**A.3.32** PROPOSITION. Any orthogonal factorisation system can be extended to a functorial one.

*Proof.* For each morphism  $f$  in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  with an orthogonal factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ , choose a factorisation  $f = Rf \circ Lf$  with  $Lf \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $Rf \in \mathcal{R}$ . Given a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

the lifting property ensures that the dashed arrow in the diagram below exists,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ Lg \downarrow & & \downarrow Lf \\ \bullet & \dashrightarrow & \bullet \\ Rg \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

and orthogonality ensures uniqueness and hence functoriality. ■

**A.3.33** COROLLARY. *If  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system on a category  $\mathcal{C}$ , then, for any category  $\mathcal{J}$ , there exists an orthogonal factorisation system on the functor category  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  where a natural transformation is in the left (resp. right) class if and only if all its components are in  $\mathcal{L}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{R}$ ).*

*Proof.* Obviously, every morphism in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  admits such a factorisation, since  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$ -factorisations in  $\mathcal{C}$  are functorial. By considering a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & X' & & \\
 \downarrow g' & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
 & Z & \xrightarrow{\quad} & X & \\
 & \downarrow g & \downarrow f' & \downarrow f & \\
 W' & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y' & & \\
 & \searrow & \downarrow & \searrow & \\
 & W & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $f$  and  $f'$  are in  $\mathcal{R}$  while  $g$  and  $g'$  are in  $\mathcal{L}$ , using the fact that  $(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{M})$  is an *orthogonal* factorisation system, one may show that lifting problems in  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$  admit unique solutions, and that these solutions are moreover constructed componentwise. Thus,  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  induces an orthogonal factorisation system on  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$ . ■

The following characterisation of functorial orthogonal factorisation systems is due to Grandis and Tholen [2006]:

**A.3.34** THEOREM. *Let  $(L, R)$  be a functorial factorisation system on a category  $\mathcal{C}$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$L$  is the underlying endofunctor of an idempotent comonad on  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$  with counit given by  $\epsilon_k = (\text{id}_{\text{dom } k}, Rk)$ , and  $R$  is the underlying endofunctor of an idempotent monad on  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$  with unit given by  $\eta_h = (h, \text{id}_{\text{codom } h})$ .*
- (ii) *For all morphisms  $h$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $RLh$  and  $LRh$  are isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- (iii) *For any two morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say  $h$  and  $k$ , we have  $Lk \perp Rh$ .*
- (iv)  *$(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  extending  $(L, R)$ , where:*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{L} &= \{g \in \text{mor } \mathcal{C} \mid Rg \text{ is an isomorphism in } \mathcal{C}\} \\
 \mathcal{R} &= \{f \in \text{mor } \mathcal{C} \mid Lf \text{ is an isomorphism in } \mathcal{C}\}
 \end{aligned}$$

## A. GENERALITIES

---

(v) *There exists an orthogonal factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  extending  $(L, R)$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). This is a standard fact about idempotent (co)monads.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Now, consider the following lifting problem:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

Since  $(L, R)$  is a functorial factorisation system, we get a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ Lg \downarrow & & \downarrow Lf \\ W' & \xrightarrow{t} & X' \\ Rg \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

but  $Rg$  and  $Lf$  are isomorphisms, so  $(Lf)^{-1} \circ t \circ (Rg)^{-1}$  is the required lift  $W \rightarrow X$ . On the other hand, if  $s : W \rightarrow X$  is any morphism such that  $f \circ s = w$  and  $s \circ g = z$ , then by taking  $(L, R)$ -factorisations of the vertical arrows in the following diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} Z & \xrightarrow{g} & W & \xrightarrow{s} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id} & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W & \xrightarrow{s} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

we find it must be the case that  $Lf \circ s \circ Rg = t$ , so we indeed have  $g \perp f$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). In particular,  $g \perp Rg$  and  $Lf \perp f$ , so there must exist morphisms  $i$  and  $r$  making the diagrams below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{Lg} & W' \\ g \downarrow & \nearrow i & \downarrow Rg \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ Lf \downarrow & \nearrow r & \downarrow f \\ X' & \xrightarrow{Rf} & Y \end{array}$$

We then obtain the following equations,

$$(i \circ Rg) \circ Lg = Lg \qquad (Lf \circ r) \circ Lf = Lf$$

$$Rg \circ (i \circ Rg) = Rg$$

$$Rf \circ (Lf \circ r) = Rf$$

and since  $Lg \perp Rg$  and  $Lf \perp Rf$ , we must have  $i \circ Rg = \text{id}_{W'}$  and  $Lf \circ r = \text{id}_{X'}$ . Thus,  $g \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $f \in \mathcal{R}$ , and the same argument now shows that  ${}^\perp\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L}$  and  $\mathcal{L}^\perp \subseteq \mathcal{R}$ .

It remains to be shown that  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq {}^\perp\mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{L}^\perp$ . First, suppose  $g \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $f \in \mathcal{R}$ , and consider the following lifting problem:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

With  $r$  and  $i$  as in the previous paragraph, we obtain a commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ \downarrow g & & \downarrow Lg & & \downarrow Lf & \nearrow r & \downarrow f \\ & & W' & \xrightarrow{t} & X' & & \\ & \nearrow i & \downarrow Rg & & \downarrow Rf & & \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y \end{array}$$

where the arrow  $t$  is obtained by the functoriality of  $(L, R)$ -factorisations. Thus,  $r \circ t \circ i$  is the required lift  $W \rightarrow X$ , and it is unique, since  $Rg$  and  $Lf$  are isomorphisms. (Recall the proof of (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii).) We conclude that  $\mathcal{L} = {}^\perp\mathcal{R}$  and  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{L}^\perp$ .

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v). Immediate.

(v)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). If  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $Lf \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $Rf \in \mathcal{R}$  for all morphisms  $f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then we must have  $Lk \perp Rh$  for all  $h$  and  $k$  in  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , as required.

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Immediate. ■

**A.3.35** REMARK. It is clear that a functorial factorisation system is associated with *at most one* orthogonal factorisation system: indeed, if  $(\mathcal{L}', \mathcal{R}')$  is any orthogonal factorisation system extending a functorial factorisation system  $(L, R)$ , and  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is the induced orthogonal factorisation system as in the theorem, then each morphism in  $\mathcal{L}$  (resp.  $\mathcal{R}$ ) is a retract of some morphism in  $\mathcal{L}'$  (resp.  $\mathcal{R}'$ ); but by [proposition A.3.19](#), this implies  $\mathcal{L} \subseteq \mathcal{L}'$  and  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathcal{R}'$ , and applying [proposition A.3.3](#), we also get  $\mathcal{L} \supseteq \mathcal{L}'$  and  $\mathcal{R} \supseteq \mathcal{R}'$ .

**A.3.36** COROLLARY. *If  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an orthogonal factorisation system on a category  $C$ , then:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{L}$ , considered as a full subcategory of  $[2, C]$ , is replete and coreflective.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{L}$  is closed under all colimits in  $[2, C]$ .
- (iii) If a diagram in  $\mathcal{L}$  has a limit in  $[2, C]$ , then it also has a limit in  $\mathcal{L}$ .

*Dually:*

- (i')  $\mathcal{R}$ , considered as a full subcategory of  $[2, C]$ , is replete and reflective.
- (ii')  $\mathcal{R}$  is closed under all limits in  $[2, C]$ .
- (iii') If a diagram in  $\mathcal{R}$  has a colimit in  $[2, C]$ , then it also has a colimit in  $\mathcal{R}$ .

*Proof.* Using [proposition A.3.32](#) and [theorem A.3.34](#), the above claims amount to standard facts about the Eilenberg–Moore category for idempotent (co)monads. ■

There is a similar characterisation of functorial weak factorisation systems, due to Rosický and Tholen [\[2002\]](#):

**A.3.37** THEOREM. *Let  $(L, R)$  be a functorial factorisation system on a category  $C$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i) *For any two morphisms in  $C$ , say  $h$  and  $k$ ,  $Lk \sqcap Rh$ .*
- (ii)  *$(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  is an weak factorisation system on  $C$  extending  $(L, R)$ , where:*

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L} &= \{g \in \text{mor } C \mid \exists i \in \text{mor } C. i \circ g = Lg \wedge Rg \circ i = \text{id}_{\text{codom } g}\} \\ \mathcal{R} &= \{f \in \text{mor } C \mid \exists r \in \text{mor } C. f \circ r = Rf \wedge r \circ Lf = \text{id}_{\text{dom } f}\}\end{aligned}$$

(iii) *There exists a weak factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  extending  $(L, R)$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is essentially the same as that of [theorem A.3.34](#). ■

**A.3.38** REMARK. As with orthogonal factorisation systems, there is *at most one* weak factorisation system extending any functorial factorisation system.

**A.3.39** PROPOSITION. *Let  $(L, R)$  be a functorial factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $\lambda : \text{id}_{[2, \mathcal{C}]} \Rightarrow R$  and  $\rho : L \Rightarrow \text{id}_{[2, \mathcal{C}]}$  be the natural transformations whose component at an object  $f$  in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  correspond to the following commutative squares in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{Lf} & \bullet \\ f \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\ \bullet & \xlongequal{\quad} & \bullet \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xlongequal{\quad} & \bullet \\ Lf \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{Rf} & \bullet \end{array}$$

*Suppose  $(L, R)$  extends to a functorial weak factorisation system. Then the following are equivalent for a morphism  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i) *The morphism  $g$  is in the left class of the induced weak factorisation system.*
- (ii) *There exists a morphism  $i$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that the diagram below commutes:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z & \xlongequal{\quad} & Z & \xlongequal{\quad} & Z \\ g \downarrow & & Lg \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ W & \xrightarrow{i} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{Rg} & W \\ & \searrow \text{id} & & \nearrow & \end{array}$$

- (iii) *The object  $g$  in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  admits a coalgebra structure for the copointed endofunctor  $(L, \rho)$ .*

*Dually, the following are equivalent for a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :*

- (i') *The morphism  $f$  is in the right class of the induced weak factorisation system.*
- (ii') *There exists a morphism  $r$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that the diagram below commutes:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & X \\ & \searrow Lf & \downarrow Rf & & \downarrow f \\ Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y \end{array}$$

(iii') *The object  $f$  in  $[2, C]$  admits an algebra structure for the pointed endofunctor  $(R, \lambda)$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Consider the following commutative diagram in  $C$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{Lg} & \bullet \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow Rg \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W \end{array}$$

Thus, a morphism  $i$  of the required form exists in  $C$  as soon as  $g \sqsupseteq Rg$ .

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). This is simply the definition of  $(L, \rho)$ -coalgebra.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). By definition, the morphism  $Lf$  is in the left class of the induced weak factorisation system; but the given diagram exhibits  $f$  as a retract of  $Lf$ , so we may apply [proposition A.3.19](#) to deduce that  $f$  is also in the left class.  $\blacksquare$

The results above motivate the following definition:

**A.3.40** DEFINITION. A **natural weak factorisation system**<sup>[1]</sup> on a category  $C$  is a pair  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  satisfying the following conditions:

- $\mathbf{L} = (L, \varepsilon, \delta)$  is a comonad on  $[2, C]$ , where  $\varepsilon_k = (\text{id}_{\text{dom } k}, Rk)$ .
- $\mathbf{R} = (R, \eta, \mu)$  is a monad on  $[2, C]$ , where  $\eta_h = (Lh, \text{id}_{\text{codom } h})$ .
- $(L, R)$  constitute a functorial factorisation system on  $C$ .

Given natural weak factorisation systems  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$  and  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  on  $C$ , a **morphism**  $\theta : (\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  is a pair  $(\theta^L, \theta^R)$ , where  $\theta^L : L' \Rightarrow L$  and  $\theta^R : R \Rightarrow R'$  are natural transformations such that the equations below hold,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \varepsilon \cdot \theta^L = \varepsilon' & (\theta^L \circ \theta^L) \cdot \delta' = \delta \cdot \theta^L \\ \theta^R \cdot \eta = \eta' & \mu' \cdot (\theta^R \circ \theta^R) = \theta^R \cdot \mu \end{array}$$

and furthermore we require  $d_0 \theta^L = d_1 \theta^R$ .

---

[1] — in the sense of Grandis and Tholen [\[2006\]](#), *not* Garner [\[2009\]](#).



**A.3.41** REMARK. In other words, a morphism of natural weak factorisation systems is a natural transformation of functors  $[2, C] \rightarrow [3, C]$  such that the left half is a morphism of comonads and the right half is a morphism of monads. In particular, we must have  $d_1\theta^L = \text{id}$  and  $d_0\theta^R = \text{id}$ ; so for every object  $f$  in  $[2, C]$ , we obtain a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \bullet & \xlongequal{\quad} & \bullet \\
 L'f \downarrow & \theta_f \rightarrow & \downarrow Lf \\
 \bullet & & \bullet \\
 Rf \downarrow & & \downarrow R'f \\
 \bullet & \xlongequal{\quad} & \bullet
 \end{array}$$

**A.3.42** PROPOSITION. Any functorial orthogonal factorisation system extends to a natural weak factorisation system in a unique way; conversely, a natural weak factorisation system induces an orthogonal factorisation system if and only if the underlying comonad and monad are both idempotent.

*Proof.* This follows from the definition above and [theorem A.3.34](#). ■

**A.3.43** PROPOSITION. Let  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  be an natural weak factorisation system on a category  $C$ .

- (i) Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be objects in  $[2, C]$ . If  $\alpha : Rf \rightarrow f$  is a  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebra structure and  $\beta : g \rightarrow Lg$  is a  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra structure, then  $d_0(\alpha) : Y \rightarrow Y$  and  $d_1(\beta) : Z \rightarrow Z$  are identity morphisms, and we have the following identities:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 d_1(\alpha) \circ Lf = \text{id}_X & Rg \circ d_0(\beta) = \text{id}_W \\
 f \circ d_1(\alpha) = Rf & d_0(\beta) \circ g = Lg
 \end{array}$$

- (ii) If  $f$  admits a  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra structure and  $g$  admits an  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebra structure, then  $f \sqsupseteq g$ .
- (iii) There exists a (unique) weak factorisation system  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})$  on  $C$  such that  $Lk \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $Rh \in \mathcal{R}$  for all  $h$  and  $k$  in  $\text{mor } C$ .

*Proof.* (i). The claim follows from the  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra counitality axiom and the  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebra unitality axiom:

$$\alpha \circ \eta_f = \text{id}_f \qquad \varepsilon_g \circ \beta = \text{id}_g$$

(ii). It then follows that the diagram below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\
\downarrow g & & \downarrow Lg & & \downarrow Lf & \nearrow \alpha_0 & \downarrow f \\
& & W' & \xrightarrow{t} & X' & & \\
& \nearrow \beta_1 & \downarrow Rg & & \downarrow Rf & & \\
W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y
\end{array}$$

where the arrow  $t$  is obtained by the functoriality of  $(L, R)$ -factorisations; clearly,  $\alpha_0 \circ t \circ \beta_1$  is the required lift.

(iii). Finally, for any two morphisms in  $C$ , say  $h$  and  $k$ , we simply note that  $\delta_k : Lk \rightarrow LLk$  is an  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra structure and  $\mu_h : RRh \rightarrow Rh$  is an  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebra structure, so we may apply [theorem A.3.37](#) to obtain the conclusion.  $\blacksquare$

**A.3.44 PROPOSITION.** *Let  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$  and  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  be natural weak factorisation systems on a category  $C$ . If there exists a morphism  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$ , then:*

- *Every morphism in the left class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$  is also in the left class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$ .*
- *Every morphism in the right class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$  is also in the right class of the weak factorisation system induced by  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R})$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $L$  (resp.  $L'$ ) be the underlying endofunctor of  $\mathbf{L}$  (resp.  $\mathbf{L}'$ ) and let  $\varepsilon$  (resp.  $\varepsilon'$ ) be the counit of  $\mathbf{L}$  (resp.  $\mathbf{L}'$ ). Suppose we have a morphism  $\theta : (\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}')$ . By [proposition A.3.39](#), it suffices to show that every morphism that admits a  $(L', \varepsilon')$ -coalgebra structure also admits a  $(L, \varepsilon)$ -coalgebra structure. But if  $i$  is a  $(L', \varepsilon')$ -coalgebra structure on  $g$ , then  $\theta_g^L \circ i$  is a  $(L, \varepsilon)$ -coalgebra structure on  $g$ , because  $\varepsilon_g \circ \theta_g^L = \varepsilon'_g$ .  $\blacksquare$

**A.3.45** REMARK. Let  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  be a natural weak factorisation system. Then, for each morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , we have a commutative diagram of the following form in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X \\
Lf \downarrow & \xrightarrow{d_0(\delta_f)} & \downarrow LLf \\
\bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet \\
LRf \downarrow & \searrow \text{id} & \downarrow RLf \\
\bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(\mu_f)} & \bullet \\
RRf \downarrow & & \downarrow Rf \\
Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y
\end{array}$$

where the upper square corresponds to  $\delta_f : Lf \rightarrow LLf$  and the lower square corresponds to  $\mu_f : RRf \rightarrow Rf$ ; note that the middle square commutes because  $(\varepsilon \circ \text{id}_L) \cdot \delta = \text{id}_L$  and  $\mu \cdot (\eta \circ \text{id}_R) = \text{id}_R$ . Thus, we obtain a canonical natural transformation  $\xi : LR \Rightarrow RL$ .

The following definition is due to Garner [2009]:

**A.3.46** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category. An **algebraic factorisation system** on  $\mathcal{C}$  is a pair  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  satisfying the following conditions:

- $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  is a natural weak factorisation system; in particular,  $\mathbf{L} = (L, \varepsilon, \delta)$  is a comonad on  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  and  $\mathbf{R} = (R, \eta, \mu)$  is a monad on  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ .
- The canonical natural transformation  $\xi : LR \Rightarrow RL$  is a **distributive law**, i.e.

$$(\text{id}_{d_0} \circ \delta) \cdot (\text{id}_{d_1} \circ \mu) = (\text{id}_{d_1} \circ \mu \circ \text{id}_L) \cdot (\text{id}_M \circ \xi) \cdot (\text{id}_{d_0} \circ \delta \circ \text{id}_R)$$

where  $M = d_0 L = d_1 R$ .

**A.3.47** ¶ Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $U : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  be a functor. We define a category  $\mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U)$  over  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  as follows:

- The objects in  $\mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U)$  are morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a coherent choice of liftings, i.e. a pair  $(f, \Phi)$  where  $f$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a chosen morphism  $\Phi(e, h) : d_0(Ue) \rightarrow d_1(f)$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  for each morphism

## A. GENERALITIES

$h : Ue \rightarrow f$  in  $[2, C]$  such that the following diagram in  $C$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(h)} & \bullet \\
 Ue \downarrow & \nearrow \Phi(e,h) & \downarrow f \\
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_0(h)} & \bullet
 \end{array}$$

and furthermore, for each morphism  $k : e' \rightarrow e$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ , we require that the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(Uk)} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(h)} & \bullet \\
 Ue' \downarrow & & \downarrow & \nearrow \Phi(e,h) & \downarrow f \\
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_0(Uk)} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_0(h)} & \bullet
 \end{array}$$

- The morphisms in  $\mathbf{RLP}_C(U)$  are commutative squares in  $C$  that are compatible with the chosen liftings, i.e. a morphism  $l : (f', \Phi') \rightarrow (f, \Phi)$  is a morphism  $l : f' \rightarrow f$  in  $[2, C]$  such that, for all morphisms  $h' : Ue \rightarrow f'$  in  $[2, C]$ , the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(h')} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_1(l)} & \bullet \\
 Ue \downarrow & \nearrow \Phi(e,h') & \downarrow & \nearrow \Phi(e,l \circ h') & \downarrow f \\
 \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_0(h')} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{d_0(l)} & \bullet
 \end{array}$$

- Composition and identities are inherited from  $[2, C]$ .
- The structure functor  $\mathbf{RLP}_C(U) \rightarrow [2, C]$  is the evident forgetful functor sending  $(f, \Phi)$  to  $f$ .

Note that the construction of  $\mathbf{RLP}_C(U)$  is contravariantly functorial in  $U$ .

**A.3.48** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, let  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  be a natural weak factorisation system on  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $\mathcal{L}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebras, and let  $\mathcal{R}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebras in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$ . Then there is a natural functor  $T : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U_{\mathbf{L}})$  making the diagram below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{R} & \xrightarrow{\quad T \quad} & \mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U_{\mathbf{L}}) \\ & \searrow U^{\mathbf{R}} \quad \swarrow U & \\ & [2, \mathcal{C}] & \end{array}$$

where  $U_{\mathbf{L}} : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$ ,  $U^{\mathbf{R}} : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  and  $U : \mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U_{\mathbf{L}}) \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  are the respective forgetful functors.

*Proof.* Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $(r, \text{id}) : Rf \rightarrow f$  be an  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebra structure on  $f$ , and let  $(\text{id}, i) : g \rightarrow Lf$  be an  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebra structure on  $g$ . Given a commutative square in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ g \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

we choose the lifting  $W \rightarrow X$  defined by the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} Z & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & X \\ \downarrow g & & \downarrow Lg & & \downarrow Lf & \nearrow r & \downarrow f \\ & & W' & \longrightarrow & X' & & \\ & \nearrow i & \downarrow Rg & & \downarrow Rf & & \\ W & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y \end{array}$$

where the morphism  $W' \rightarrow X'$  is the one given by the functorial factorisation. It is not hard to see that this choice of liftings is compatible with the morphisms in  $\mathcal{L}$ , so we have an object in  $\mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U_{\mathbf{L}})$ . Similarly, one may verify that the liftings are compatible with the morphisms in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Thus, we have the required functor  $T : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U_{\mathbf{L}})$  compatible with the forgetful functors, and it is clearly natural in  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$ .  $\blacksquare$

- A.3.49** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  be a functor. An **algebraically free natural weak factorisation system** on  $\mathcal{C}$  cofibrantly generated by  $U$  is a natural weak factorisation system  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  on  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with a functor  $E : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{I} & \xrightarrow{\quad E \quad} & \mathcal{L} \\ & \searrow U \quad \swarrow U_{\mathbf{L}} & \\ & [2, \mathcal{C}] & \end{array}$$

where  $\mathcal{L}$  is the category of  $\mathbf{L}$ -coalgebras in  $[2, \mathcal{C}]$  and  $U_{\mathbf{L}} : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is the forgetful functor, such that the composite functor shown below is an isomorphism,

$$\mathcal{R} \xrightarrow{T} \mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U_{\mathbf{L}}) \xrightarrow{E^*} \mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U)$$

where  $\mathcal{R}$  is the category of  $\mathbf{R}$ -algebras and  $T : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow \mathbf{LLP}(U_{\mathbf{L}})$  is the canonical functor given in [proposition A.3.48](#).

- A.3.50** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{C}$  admits an algebraically free natural weak factorisation system  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  cofibrantly generated by  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$ , then the forgetful functor  $\mathbf{RLP}_{\mathcal{C}}(U) \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  is monadic, and the induced monad is isomorphic to  $\mathbf{R}$ . Garner's small object argument ([theorem 0.5.24](#)) gives sufficient conditions for the existence of algebraically free natural weak factorisation systems; note that natural weak factorisation systems so constructed also satisfy the distributive law and are therefore algebraic factorisation systems.

- A.3.51** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a subensemble of  $\text{mor } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  be the evident embedding. If  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  is an algebraically free natural weak factorisation system cofibrantly generated by  $U$ , then the underlying weak factorisation system of  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  is cofibrantly generated by  $\mathcal{I}$ .*

*Proof.* This follows from the definitions and [proposition A.3.43](#). ■

- A.3.52** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$  be a functor. A **free algebraic factorisation system** on  $\mathcal{C}$  cofibrantly generated by  $U$  is an algebraic factorisation system  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  equipped with a functor  $E : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{I} & \xrightarrow{\quad E \quad} & \mathcal{L} \\ & \searrow U \quad \swarrow U_{\mathbf{L}} & \\ & [2, \mathcal{C}] & \end{array}$$

where  $\mathcal{L}$  is the category of  $\mathbf{L}$ -algebras in  $[2, C]$  and  $U_{\mathbf{L}} : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow [2, C]$  is the forgetful functor, such that  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  and  $E$  have the following universal property:

- For all algebraic factorisation systems  $(\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}')$  and all functors  $E' : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}'$  where  $\mathcal{L}'$  is the category of  $\mathbf{L}'$ -coalgebras and  $E'$  is compatible with the forgetful functors, there exists a unique morphism  $\theta : (\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{L}', \mathbf{R}')$  such that  $E' = \theta_*^L E$ , where  $\theta_*^L : \mathcal{L} \rightarrow \mathcal{L}'$  is the functor induced by the comonad morphism  $\theta^L : \mathbf{L} \rightarrow \mathbf{L}'$ .

**A.3.53** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  be a category and let  $U : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow [2, C]$  be a functor. If  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  is an algebraic factorisation system on  $C$  and also an algebraically free natural weak factorisation system cofibrantly generated by  $U$ , then  $(\mathbf{L}, \mathbf{R})$  is a free algebraic factorisation system cofibrantly generated by  $U$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem A.1 in [Garner, 2009]. □

REMARK. The cited proof of the theorem above uses the distributive law for algebraic factorisation systems.

## A.4 Relative categories

**Prerequisites.** §0.1.

In this section we use the explicit universe convention.

**A.4.1** DEFINITION. A **relative category**  $C$  consists of a category  $\text{und } C$  and a subcategory  $\text{weq } C$  such that  $\text{ob und } C = \text{ob weq } C$ . We say  $\text{und } C$  is the **underlying category** of  $C$ , and that the morphisms in  $\text{weq } C$  are the **weak equivalences** in  $C$ . A **relative subcategory** of a relative category  $C$  is a relative category  $C'$  such that  $\text{und } C'$  is a subcategory of  $\text{und } C$ , and we further demand that  $\text{weq } C' = \text{weq } C \cap \text{und } C'$ .

**A.4.2** REMARK. The subcategory  $\text{weq } C$  is entirely determined by  $\text{mor weq } C$ , so a relative category may equivalently be defined as a category equipped with a distinguished subset of morphisms closed under composition and containing all the identity morphisms.

For brevity, we will write  $\text{ob } C$  for  $\text{ob und } C$ ,  $\text{mor } C$  for  $\text{mor und } C$ , and we may occasionally abuse notation and write  $\text{weq } C$  instead of  $\text{mor weq } C$ .

**A.4.3** REMARK. Every category  $C$  can be endowed with the structure of a relative category in two ways: we can make it into a **minimal relative category**  $\text{min } C$  by taking  $\text{weq min } C$  to be the set of identity morphisms in  $C$ ; or we could make it into a **maximal relative category**  $\text{max } C$  by taking  $\text{weq max } C = \text{mor } C$ . We may also define the **minimal saturated relative category**  $\text{min}^+ C$  by taking  $\text{weq min}^+ C$  to be the set of all isomorphisms in  $C$ .

**A.4.4** DEFINITION. Given a relative category  $C$ , the **opposite relative category**  $C^{\text{op}}$  is defined by  $\text{und } C^{\text{op}} = (\text{und } C)^{\text{op}}$  and  $\text{weq } C^{\text{op}} = (\text{weq } C)^{\text{op}}$ .

**A.4.5** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  and  $D$  be relative categories. A **relative functor**  $C \rightarrow D$  is a functor  $\text{und } C \rightarrow \text{und } D$  that sends weak equivalences in  $C$  to weak equivalences in  $D$ . The **relative functor category**  $[C, D]_{\text{h}}$  is the full subcategory of  $[\text{und } C, \text{und } D]$  spanned by the relative functors, and the weak equivalences in  $[C, D]_{\text{h}}$  are defined to be the natural transformations that are componentwise weak equivalences in  $D$ .



**A.4.6** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathcal{W} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ . A **localisation of  $C$  at  $\mathcal{W}$**  is a category  $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  equipped with a functor  $\gamma : C \rightarrow C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  with the following universal property:

- Given a functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  such that  $Ff$  is an isomorphism for all  $f$  in  $\mathcal{W}$ , there exists a unique functor  $\bar{F} : C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \rightarrow D$  such that  $\bar{F}\gamma = F$ .

The functor  $\gamma : C \rightarrow \text{Ho } C$  is called the **localising functor**.

**A.4.7** REMARK. The universal property in the above definition is strict; as such,  $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  is unique up to unique isomorphism. Nonetheless,  $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  automatically has a 2-universal property: if  $F, G : C \rightarrow D$  both factor through  $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ , then so do all natural transformations  $F \Rightarrow G$ .

**A.4.8** PROPOSITION. *If  $C$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, then there exists a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category with the universal property of  $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ .*

*Proof.* Use the general adjoint functor theorem. □

**A.4.9** DEFINITION. The **homotopy category** of a relative category  $C$  is a localisation of  $\text{und } C$  at  $\text{weq } C$  and is denoted  $\text{Ho } C$ .

**A.4.10** DEFINITION.

- A **semi-saturated relative category** is a relative category in which every isomorphism is a weak equivalence.
- A **saturated relative category** is a relative category  $C$  such that the weak equivalences in  $C$  are precisely the ones that become isomorphisms in  $\text{Ho } C$ .

**A.4.11** REMARK. Obviously, there is no loss of generality in considering semi-saturated relative categories and their homotopy categories instead of localisations  $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$  for arbitrary subsets  $\mathcal{W} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ .

**A.4.12** REMARK. Clearly, every saturated relative category is semi-saturated, and a minimal saturated relative category is indeed saturated in the sense above.

**A.4.I3** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } C$ . The **2-out-of-3 property** for  $\mathcal{W}$  says:

- Given any two morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $C$ , if any two of  $f$ ,  $g$ , or  $g \circ f$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then all of them are.

The **2-out-of-6 property** for  $\mathcal{W}$  says:

- Given any three morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ ,  $h : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $C$ , if both  $h \circ g$  and  $g \circ f$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then so too are  $f$ ,  $g$ ,  $h$ , and  $h \circ g \circ f$ .

**A.4.I4** LEMMA. Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathcal{W} \subseteq \text{mor } C$ .

- (i) If  $\mathcal{W}$  has the 2-out-of-6 property, then it also has the 2-out-of-3 property.
- (ii) The set of all isomorphisms in  $C$  has the 2-out-of-6 property.
- (iii) If  $F : C' \rightarrow C$  is a functor and  $\mathcal{W}$  has either the 2-out-of-3 property or the 2-out-of-6 property, then  $F^{-1}\mathcal{W}$  has the same property.

*Proof.* (i). Consider the three cases  $f = \text{id}$ ,  $g = \text{id}$ ,  $h = \text{id}$  in turn.

(ii). If  $h \circ g$  and  $g \circ f$  are isomorphisms, then  $g$  must be split epic and split monic; thus  $g$  itself is an isomorphism, hence so too are  $f$  and  $h$ .

(iii). Obvious. ■

**A.4.I5** COROLLARY. If  $C$  is a saturated relative category, then  $\text{weq } C$  has the 2-out-of-6 property. ■

**A.4.I6** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a category and let  $\mathcal{W}$  be a subset of  $\text{mor } C$ . The **2-out-of-4 property** for  $\mathcal{W}$  says:

- Given any two morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $C$ , if  $f \circ g$  and  $g \circ f$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then both  $f$  and  $g$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

The **special 2-out-of-4 property** for  $\mathcal{W}$  says:

- Given any two morphisms  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ ,  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  in  $C$ , if  $f \circ g$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $g \circ f = \text{id}_X$ , then both  $f$  and  $g$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

**A.4.I7** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category.*

- (i) *If  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-4 property, then  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the special 2-out-of-4 property.*
- (ii) *If  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-6 property, then  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-4 property.*
- (iii) *If  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts, then  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  has the special 2-out-of-4 property.*

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). Obvious.

(iii). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f \circ g$  is a weak equivalence and  $g \circ f = \text{id}_X$ . Consider the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y \\ g \downarrow & & f \circ g \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{g} & X \end{array}$$

Since  $g \circ f = \text{id}_X$ , the diagram commutes, so we see that  $g : Y \rightarrow X$  is a retract of  $f \circ g : Y \rightarrow Y$ . We deduce that  $g$  is a weak equivalence in  $\mathcal{C}$  using the fact that  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  is closed under retracts, and then we deduce that  $f$  is a weak equivalence using the 2-out-of-3 property of  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ . ■

**A.4.I8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{RelCat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small relative categories and relative functors, let  $\mathbf{SsRelCat}$  be the full subcategory of semi-saturated relative categories, and let  $\mathbf{Cat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories and functors.*

- (i) **RelCat** is a cartesian closed category, where the product of  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  is the cartesian product  $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{D}$  with weak equivalences taken componentwise, and the exponential of  $\mathcal{E}$  by  $\mathcal{D}$  is the relative functor category  $[\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}]_{\text{h}}$ .
- (ii) **RelCat** is a locally finitely presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category,<sup>[1]</sup> and the two functors  $\text{und}, \text{weq} : \mathbf{RelCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  are  $\aleph_0$ -accessible<sup>[2]</sup> and jointly conservative.
- (iii) **SsRelCat** is a locally finitely presentable  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, and the inclusion  $\mathbf{SsRelCat} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{RelCat}$  is  $\aleph_0$ -accessible and has a left adjoint.

[1] See definition 0.2.36.

[2] See definition 0.2.28.

- (iv) **SsRelCat** is an exponential ideal in **RelCat**.
- (v) The full subcategory spanned by the minimal relative categories is an exponential ideal in **RelCat**.
- (vi) The full subcategory spanned by the minimal saturated relative categories is an exponential ideal in **SsRelCat**.

*Proof.* (i). This is straightforward from the definitions.

(ii). Obviously, a relative functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  such that  $\text{und } F : \text{und } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{und } \mathcal{D}$  and  $\text{weq } F : \text{weq } \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{weq } \mathcal{D}$  are both isomorphisms is itself an isomorphism, so  $\text{und}, \text{weq} : \mathbf{RelCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  are indeed jointly conservative.

It is also not hard to check that limits for all **U**-small diagrams and colimits for **U**-small filtered diagrams in **RelCat** exist and can be computed componentwise in **Cat**, so (by [theorem 0.2.40](#)) it is enough to show that **RelCat** is a  $\aleph_0$ -accessible **U**-category. Clearly, a relative category  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $\text{und } \mathcal{C}$  is finitely presentable in **Cat** and  $\text{weq } \mathcal{C}$  is a finitely-generated subcategory of  $\text{und } \mathcal{C}$  is itself finitely presentable in **RelCat**, so **RelCat** is indeed  $\aleph_0$ -accessible.

(Alternatively, one may appeal to the sketchability theorem<sup>[3]</sup> and the fact that a relative category is manifestly a model for a certain finite-limit sketch.)

(iii). It is clear that **SsRelCat** is closed in **RelCat** under limits for all **U**-small diagrams and colimits for all **U**-small filtered diagrams, and we know that **RelCat** is a locally finitely presentable category, so (by [proposition 0.2.31](#)) it is enough to construct a left adjoint for the inclusion  $\mathbf{SsRelCat} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{RelCat}$ . This may be done using the general adjoint functor theorem.

(iv) – (vi). All straightforward. ■

**A.4.19 PROPOSITION.** *Let **RelCat** be the category of **U**-small relative categories and relative functors, let **SsRelCat** be the full subcategory of semi-saturated relative categories and relative functors, and let **Cat** be the category of **U**-small categories and functors. We have the following strings of adjoint functors:*

$$\begin{aligned} \min \dashv \text{und} \dashv \max \dashv \text{weq} : \mathbf{RelCat} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cat} \\ \text{Ho} \dashv \min^+ \dashv \text{und} \dashv \max \dashv \text{weq} : \mathbf{SsRelCat} &\rightarrow \mathbf{Cat} \end{aligned}$$

[3] See Proposition 1.51 in [\[LPAC\]](#), or Proposition 5.6.4 in [\[Borceux, 1994b\]](#), or [theorem 0.5.34](#).

The functors  $\min$ ,  $\min^+$ , and  $\max$  are moreover fully faithful, and  $\text{Ho}$  preserves finite products.

*Proof.* All but the last of the above claims are obvious; for the preservation of finite products under  $\text{Ho}$ , we refer to [proposition A.2.13](#). ■

**A.4.20** COROLLARY.  $\text{Ho} : \mathbf{SsRelCat} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$  is 2-functorial.

*Proof.* Apply [remark A.2.10](#). ■

**A.4.21** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category and let  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  be the localising functor.

- (i) For all categories  $\mathcal{D}$ , the induced functor  $\gamma^* : [\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$  is fully faithful and injective on objects.
- (ii) Any left or right adjoint for  $\gamma : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  is a fully faithful functor.

*Proof.* (i). It is an immediate consequence of the universal property of  $\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}$  that  $\gamma^* : [\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$  is injective on objects. It is moreover fully faithful because we have the following natural isomorphism,

$$[\text{Ho } \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}] \cong \text{und } [\mathcal{C}, \min^+ \mathcal{D}]_{\text{h}}$$

and  $\text{und } [\mathcal{C}, \min^+ \mathcal{D}]_{\text{h}}$  is manifestly a full subcategory of  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}]$ .

(ii). Apply [proposition A.1.5](#). ■

**A.4.22** DEFINITION. A **zigzag type** is a triple  $(n, U, V)$  where  $n$  is a natural number and  $U$  and  $V$  are partial orderings of the set  $\{0, \dots, n, \infty\}$  that satisfy the following axioms:

- $U \cap V$  is the equality relation.
- The partial ordering generated by  $U \cup V$  is the standard linear ordering of  $\{0, \dots, n, \infty\}$ .
- If  $i \leq j \leq k \leq l$  are elements of  $\{0, \dots, n, \infty\}$  and  $(i, l)$  is in  $U$  (resp.  $V$ ), then  $(j, k)$  is also in  $U$  (resp.  $V$ ).

**A.4.23** REMARK. Let  $n$  be a natural number and let  $U$  and  $V$  be partial orderings of the set  $\{0, \dots, n, \infty\}$ . The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $(n, U, V)$  is a zigzag type.
- (ii)  $U$  and  $V$  are partial orderings generated by some subset of the set of consecutive pairs, i.e.  $\{(0, 1), \dots, (n-1, n), (n, \infty)\}$ , and for  $0 \leq i \leq n$ , either  $(i, i+1) \in U$  or  $(i, i+1) \in V$  but not both (provided we interpret  $n+1$  as  $\infty$ ).

Thus, we may think of  $(n, U, V)$  as a planar graph of the form

$$0 \text{ --- } \dots \text{ --- } n \text{ --- } \infty$$

where the edge between  $i$  and  $i+1$  points rightwards (resp. leftwards) if  $(i, i+1) \in U$  (resp.  $(i, i+1) \in V$ ). It will be especially convenient to regard zigzag types as relative categories generated by such graphs, with the leftward-pointing arrows generating the weak equivalences.

**A.4.24** DEFINITION. A **morphism of zigzag types**  $(n', U', V') \rightarrow (n, U, V)$  is a map  $f : \{0, \dots, n', \infty\} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, n, \infty\}$  that satisfies the following axioms:

- $f(0) = 0, f(\infty) = \infty$ .
- $(i, j) \in U'$  implies  $(f(i), f(j)) \in U$ .
- $(i, j) \in V'$  implies  $(f(i), f(j)) \in V$ .

We write  $\mathbf{Z}$  for the category of zigzag types.

REMARK. The category  $\mathbf{Z}$  defined above is the *opposite* of the category  $\mathbf{II}$  defined in [Dwyer and Kan, 1980b, §4] and also the category  $\mathbf{T}$  defined in [DHKS, §34].

**A.4.25** REMARK. Following remark A.4.23, if we regard zigzag types as relative categories, then a morphism of zigzag types is a relative functor that preserves the end-points and *reflects* weak equivalences (in addition to preserving them). Thus  $\mathbf{Z}$  can be embedded as a *non-full* subcategory of  $\mathbf{RelCat}$ .

**A.4.26** REMARK. We have the following concrete description of  $\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}$ :

- The objects are triples  $(n, U_0, V_0)$  where  $n$  is a natural number and  $(U_0, V_0)$  is a partition of the set  $\{0, \dots, n\}$ , i.e.  $U_0 \cap V_0 = \emptyset$  and  $U_0 \cup V_0 = \{0, \dots, n\}$ .
- The morphisms  $(n, U_0, V_0) \rightarrow (n', U'_0, V'_0)$  are the monotone maps  $f : \{0, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{0, \dots, n'\}$  such that  $fU_0 \subseteq U'_0$  and  $fV_0 \subseteq V'_0$ .
- Identities and composition are inherited from **Set**.

In other words,  $\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}$  is isomorphic to the category of positive finite ordinals equipped with a partition into two parts. A zigzag type  $(n, U, V)$  corresponds to the object  $(n, U_0, V_0)$  where  $i \in U_0$  (resp.  $i \in V_0$ ) if  $(i, i+1) \in U$  (resp.  $(i, i+1) \in V$ ), and a morphism  $f : (n', U', V') \rightarrow (n, U, V)$  corresponds to the morphism  $(n, U_0, V_0) \rightarrow (n', U'_0, V'_0)$  that sends  $j$  to the greatest  $i$  such that  $f(i) \leq j$ .

**A.4.27** LEMMA. *Every morphism of zigzag types whose underlying map is injective is a split monomorphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$ .*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**A.4.28** DEFINITION. The **kernel** of a morphism  $f : (n', U', V') \rightarrow (n, U, V)$  in  $\mathbf{Z}$  is the following subset:

$$\ker f = \{i \mid f(i) = f(i+1)\} \subseteq \{1, \dots, n'\}$$

**A.4.29** REMARK. It is clear that a morphism of zigzag types whose underlying map is surjective is uniquely determined by its kernel. Moreover, given a zigzag type  $(n', U', V')$ , every subset of  $\{1, \dots, n'\}$  occurs as the kernel of some (surjective) morphism  $f : (n', U', V') \rightarrow (n, U, V)$ .

**A.4.30** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *The monomorphisms in  $\mathbf{Z}$  are the morphisms of zigzag types whose underlying maps are injective.*
- (ii) *The epimorphisms in  $\mathbf{Z}$  are the morphisms of zigzag types whose underlying maps are surjective.*
- (iii) *Every morphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$  factors as an epimorphism followed by a monomorphism, and this factorisation is unique (in the strict sense).*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**A.4.31** DEFINITION. Let  $T = (n, U, V)$  be a zigzag type.

- An **interior vertex** of  $T$  is an element  $i$  of  $\{1, \dots, n\}$  such that either
  - both  $(i - 1, i) \in U$  and  $(i, i + 1) \in U$ , or
  - both  $(i - 1, i) \in V$  and  $(i, i + 1) \in V$ ,

provided we interpret  $n + 1$  as  $\infty$ .

- An **flex** of  $T$  is an element of  $\{1, \dots, n\}$  that is *not* an interior vertex.

**A.4.32** REMARK. As a matter of convention, 0 and  $\infty$  are neither interior vertices nor flexes.

**A.4.33** LEMMA. Let  $f : S \rightarrow T$  be a morphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$ .

- (i) Every flex of  $T$  is in the image of  $f : S \rightarrow T$ , and if  $f(i)$  is a flex of  $T$ , then  $i$  is a flex of  $S$ .
- (ii) The morphism  $f : S \rightarrow T$  sends flexes of  $S$  to flexes of  $T$  if and only if  $f : S \rightarrow T$  is bijective on flexes.
- (iii) Assuming  $f : S \rightarrow T$  is bijective on flexes,  $f : S \rightarrow T$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$  if and only if  $f : S \rightarrow T$  is a split epimorphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**A.4.34** PROPOSITION.

- (i) Pullbacks of monomorphisms along flex-preserving morphisms (in particular, monomorphisms) exist in  $\mathbf{Z}$ .
- (ii) Pushouts of epimorphisms along arbitrary morphisms (in particular, epimorphisms) exist in  $\mathbf{Z}$ .

*Proof.* (i). By [proposition A.4.30](#) and the pullback pasting lemma, it suffices to prove that pullbacks of monomorphisms along monomorphisms and flex-preserving epimorphisms exist, and this is straightforward.

(ii). Use [remark A.4.29](#). ■



**A.4.35** LEMMA. Let  $T$  be a zigzag type and let  $\partial\mathbf{Z}_{\rightarrow T}$  be the full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathbf{Z}_{/T}$  spanned by the monomorphisms with codomain  $T$  excluding  $\text{id} : T \rightarrow T$ . Then  $\partial\mathbf{Z}_{\rightarrow T}$  has at most one connected component.

*Proof.* Proposition A.4.34 implies that  $\partial\mathbf{Z}_{\rightarrow T}$  is closed under binary products in  $\mathbf{Z}_{/T}$ , so it has at most one connected component. ■

**A.4.36** LEMMA. Let  $T$  be a zigzag type and let  $\partial\mathbf{Z}^{\leftarrow T}$  be the full subcategory of the slice category  $\mathbf{Z}_{/T}$  spanned by the epimorphisms with domain  $T$  excluding  $\text{id} : T \rightarrow T$ . Then  $\partial\mathbf{Z}^{\leftarrow T}$  has binary coproducts.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward corollary of proposition A.4.34. ■

**A.4.37** DEFINITION. Let  $T' = (n', U', V')$  and  $T = (n, U, V)$  be zigzag types. The **concatenation**  $T * T'$  is the zigzag type  $(n + n' + 1, U'', V'')$  where:

- $U''$  is the smallest partial ordering of  $\{0, \dots, n + n' + 1, \infty\}$  where  $(i, i + 1) \in U''$  if  $(i, i + 1) \in U'$  and  $(n' + i + 1, n' + i + 2) \in U''$  if  $(i, i + 1) \in U$ .
- $V''$  is the smallest partial ordering of  $\{0, \dots, n + n' + 1, \infty\}$  where  $(i, i + 1) \in V''$  if  $(i, i + 1) \in V'$  and  $(n' + i + 1, n' + i + 2) \in V''$  if  $(i, i + 1) \in V$ .

**A.4.38** REMARK. Concatenation defines a functor  $* : \mathbf{Z} \times \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$ , and it is associative as a binary operation. However, it is not unital. To repair this, we introduce the **degenerate zigzag type**  $(-1, \emptyset, \emptyset)$ : there are no morphisms  $(n, U, V) \rightarrow (-1, \emptyset, \emptyset)$  when  $n \geq 0$ , and there is a unique morphism  $(-1, \emptyset, \emptyset) \rightarrow (n, U, V)$  for all (possibly degenerate) zigzag types  $(n, U, V)$ . It is clear how to extend  $*$  so that  $(-1, \emptyset, \emptyset)$  is the unit.

**A.4.39** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category, let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $T$  be a zigzag type.

- A **zigzag** in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$  is a relative functor  $T \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  that sends  $0$  to  $X$  and  $\infty$  to  $Y$ .
- A **morphism of zigzags** in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$  is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \text{---} & \bullet & \text{---} & \dots & \text{---} & \bullet & \text{---} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & \parallel \\ X & \text{---} & \bullet & \text{---} & \dots & \text{---} & \bullet & \text{---} & Y \end{array}$$

where the rows are zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$  and the unmarked vertical arrows are weak equivalences; the domain is the top row and the codomain is the bottom row.

We write  $\mathcal{C}^T(X, Y)$  for the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$ .

**A.4.40** REMARK. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a relative category, let  $\mathcal{W} = \text{weq } \mathcal{C}$ , and let  $T$  be a zigzag type. Then:

- If the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points rightwards and the rightmost arrow of  $T$  points rightwards, then we have a functor

$$\mathcal{C}^T(-, -) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

sending each object  $(X, Y)$  to the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$ .

- If the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points leftwards and the rightmost arrow of  $T$  points leftwards, then we have a functor

$$\mathcal{C}^T(-, -) : \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{W}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

sending each object  $(X, Y)$  to the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$ .

- If the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points leftwards and the rightmost arrow of  $T$  points rightwards, then we have a functor

$$\mathcal{C}^T(-, -) : \mathcal{W} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

sending each object  $(X, Y)$  to the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$ .

- If the leftmost arrow of  $T$  points rightwards and the rightmost arrow of  $T$  points leftwards, then we have a functor

$$\mathcal{C}^T(-, -) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{W}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$$

sending each object  $(X, Y)$  to the category of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$  of type  $T$ .

**A.4.41** REMARK. If  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a weak equivalence in a relative category  $\mathcal{C}$ , then we have commutative diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X \\ \parallel & & \downarrow f & & \parallel \\ X & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & Y & \xleftarrow{\quad f \quad} & X \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} Y & \xleftarrow{\quad f \quad} & X & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow f & & \parallel \\ Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y \end{array}$$

and these correspond to morphisms of zigzags in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**A.4.42** REMARK. It is clear that  $\mathcal{C}^T(X, Y)$  is a subcategory of the relative functor category  $[T, \mathcal{C}]_{\text{h}}$ . In fact, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small relative category, precomposition makes the assignment  $T \mapsto \mathcal{C}^T(X, Y)$  into a functor  $\mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Cat}$ , which we denote by  $\mathcal{C}^*(X, Y)$ . A Grothendieck construction applied to this functor yields the following  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}^{(\mathbf{Z})}(X, Y)$ :

- Its objects are pairs  $(T, f)$ , where  $T$  is a zigzag type and  $f$  is a zigzag of type  $T$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  from  $X$  to  $Y$ .
- A morphism  $(T', f') \rightarrow (T, f)$  is a pair  $(\alpha, \beta)$  where  $\alpha : T \rightarrow T'$  is a morphism in  $\mathbf{Z}$  and  $\beta : \alpha^* f' \rightarrow f$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}^T(X, Y)$ .
- The composite of a pair of morphisms  $(\alpha', \beta') : (T'', f'') \rightarrow (T', f')$  and  $(\alpha, \beta) : (T', f') \rightarrow (T, f)$  is given by  $(\alpha' \circ \alpha, \beta \circ \alpha^* \beta')$ .

There is an evident projection functor  $\mathcal{C}^{(\mathbf{Z})}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}^{\text{op}}$ , and by construction it is a Grothendieck opfibration with a canonical splitting.

**A.4.43** LEMMA. *Given a commutative diagram of the form below in a relative category  $\mathcal{C}$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & Y \\ a \downarrow & & \downarrow b \\ X' & \xrightarrow{\quad f' \quad} & Y' \end{array}$$

if  $a$  and  $b$  are weak equivalences in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then we obtain the following morphisms of zigzags:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X & \xlongequal{\quad} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xrightarrow{b} & Y' \\ \parallel & & \downarrow a & & \downarrow b & & \parallel \\ X' & \xrightarrow{a} & X' & \xrightarrow{f'} & Y' & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y' \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} X' & \xleftarrow{a} & X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y & \xlongequal{\quad} & Y \\ \parallel & & \downarrow a & & \downarrow b & & \parallel \\ X' & \xlongequal{\quad} & X' & \xrightarrow{f'} & Y' & \xleftarrow{b} & Y \end{array}$$

In particular,  $X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{b} Y'$  and  $X \xrightarrow{a} X' \xrightarrow{f'} Y'$  are in the same connected component of  $\mathcal{C}^{(\mathbb{Z})}(X, Y')$ ; and  $X' \xleftarrow{a} X \xrightarrow{f} Y$  and  $X' \xrightarrow{f'} Y' \xleftarrow{b} Y$  are in the same connected component of  $\mathcal{C}^{(\mathbb{Z})}(X', Y)$ . ■

**A.4.44** THEOREM. Let  $X$  and  $Y$  be objects in a relative category  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- (i) For each zigzag type  $T$ , the map that sends an object in  $\mathcal{C}^T(X, Y)$  to the corresponding composite in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$  is a functor when the latter is regarded as a discrete category.
- (ii) The functors described above constitute a jointly surjective cocone from the diagram  $\mathcal{C}^*(X, Y)$  to  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$ .
- (iii) The induced functor  $\mathcal{C}^{(\mathbb{Z})}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}(X, Y)$  is surjective, and moreover two objects in  $\mathcal{C}^{(\mathbb{Z})}(X, Y)$  become equal in  $\mathrm{Ho} \mathcal{C}$  if and only if they are in the same connected component.

*Proof.* All obvious except for the last part of claim (iii), for which we refer to paragraphs 33.8 and 33.10 in [DHKS]. □

## A.5 Kan extensions

**Prerequisites.** §§0.I, A.I.

In this section we use the explicit universe convention.

**A.5.1** DEFINITION. Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be two functors. A **left Kan extension** (resp. **right Kan extension**) of  $G$  along  $F$  is an initial (resp. terminal) object of the category  $(G \downarrow F^*)$  (resp.  $(F^* \downarrow G)$ ) described below:

- The objects are pairs  $(H, \alpha)$  where  $H$  is a functor  $\mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  and  $\alpha$  is a natural transformation of type  $G \Rightarrow HF$  (resp.  $HF \Rightarrow G$ ).
- The morphisms  $(H', \alpha') \rightarrow (H, \alpha)$  are those natural transformations  $\beta : H' \Rightarrow H$  such that  $\beta F \bullet \alpha' = \alpha$  (resp.  $\alpha \bullet \beta F = \alpha'$ ).

**A.5.2** REMARK. Clearly, Kan extensions are unique up to unique isomorphism if they exist. We write  $(\text{Lan}_F G, \eta)$  for the left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$  and say  $\eta$  is the **unit** of  $\text{Lan}_F G$ ; dually, we write  $(\text{Ran}_F G, \varepsilon)$  for the right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$  and say  $\varepsilon$  is the **counit** of  $\text{Ran}_F G$ .

**A.5.3** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe and let **Set** be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Given functors  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , if  $H : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the functor defined by the formula below,

$$H(C) = [\mathcal{B}, \mathbf{Set}](\mathcal{C}(C, F-), G-)$$

and  $\varepsilon_B : H(FB) \rightarrow G(B)$  is defined by evaluation at  $\text{id}_{FB}$ , then  $(H, \varepsilon)$  is the right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .

*Proof.* Note that  $H(C)$  so defined is indeed a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set, because  $\mathcal{B}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and  $\mathcal{C}$  is locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small. The claim amounts to saying that  $(H, \varepsilon)$  is a terminal object in the comma category  $(F^* \downarrow G)$ , so that is what we must show.

Let  $\varphi : (X, \alpha) \rightarrow (H, \varepsilon)$  be a morphism in  $(F^* \downarrow G)$ , i.e. a natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow H$  such that  $\varepsilon \bullet \varphi F = \alpha$ . Let  $C$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ , let  $x$  be an element of  $X(C)$ , and consider the element  $\varphi_C(x)$  of  $H(C)$ . By definition, this is a natural transformation  $\mathcal{C}(C, F) \Rightarrow G$ , so we may consider its component at an object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , which will be a map  $\mathcal{C}(C, FB) \rightarrow G(B)$ . Let  $f : C \rightarrow FB$  be an arrow in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By hypothesis,

$$\alpha_C(x) = \varepsilon_C(\varphi_C(x)_B \circ \mathcal{C}(f, FB)) = \varphi_C(x)_B(f)$$

thus the action of  $\varphi$  is entirely determined by  $\alpha$ . Conversely, given any object  $(X, \alpha)$  in the comma category  $(F^* \downarrow G)$ , it is easily verified that the above equation defines a morphism  $\varphi : (X, \alpha) \rightarrow (H, \varepsilon)$ , so  $(H, \varepsilon)$  is indeed a terminal object in  $(F^* \downarrow G)$ . ■

**A.5.4** COROLLARY. *For any two functors  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , if  $\mathcal{B}$  is **U-small** and  $\mathcal{C}$  is locally **U-small**, then the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $(\text{Ran}_F G, \varepsilon)$  is a right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .
- (ii) The maps  $(\text{Ran}_F G)(C) \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}, \mathbf{Set}](C(C, F), G)$  defined by  $x \mapsto \varepsilon \bullet \theta_x F$ , where  $\theta_x : C(C, -) \Rightarrow G$  is the unique natural transformation such that  $(\theta_x)_C(\text{id}_C) = x$ , are bijections that are natural in  $C$ . ■

**A.5.5** DEFINITION. Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be two functors.

- A functor  $L : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  **preserves** left Kan extensions of  $G$  along  $F$  if, given any left Kan extension  $(H, \alpha)$  of  $G$  along  $F$ ,  $(LH, L\alpha)$  is a left Kan extension of  $LG$  along  $F$ .
- A functor  $R : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  **preserves** right Kan extensions of  $G$  along  $F$  if, given any right Kan extension  $(H, \alpha)$  of  $G$  along  $F$ ,  $(RH, R\alpha)$  is a right Kan extension of  $LG$  along  $F$ .

If a Kan extension is preserved by *all* functors, then it is said to be **absolute**.

**A.5.6** DEFINITION. Let **U** be a pre-universe, let **Set** be the category of **U-small** sets, let  $\mathcal{E}$  be a locally **U-small** category, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  be two functors.

- A **pointwise left Kan extension** of  $G$  along  $F$  is one that is preserved by all functors of the form  $\mathcal{E}(-, E) : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^{\text{op}}$ .
- A **pointwise right Kan extension** of  $G$  along  $F$  is one that is preserved by all functors of the form  $\mathcal{E}(E, -) : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .

**A.5.7** DEFINITION. Let  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a functor and let  $C$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- The **tautological cocone** to  $C$  induced by  $F$  is the cocone  $\theta : FP_C \Rightarrow \Delta C$ , where  $P_C : (F \downarrow C) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is the projection functor sending an object  $(B, f)$  in the comma category  $(F \downarrow C)$  to the object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , and  $\theta_{(B, f)} = f$ .

- The **tautological cone** from  $C$  induced by  $F$  is the cone  $\theta : \Delta C \Rightarrow F P^C$ , where  $P^C : (C \downarrow F) \rightarrow C$  is the projection functor sending an object  $(B, f)$  in the comma category  $(C \downarrow F)$  to the object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , and  $\theta_{(B,f)} = f$ .

**A.5.8** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be any category, let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $U : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $V : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and  $Y : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be functors. Consider the following diagram of functors and natural transformations,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (U \downarrow V) & \xrightarrow{Q} & \mathcal{B} \\ P \downarrow & \theta \nearrow & \downarrow V \\ \mathcal{A} & \xrightarrow{U} & \mathcal{C} \end{array}$$

where  $(U \downarrow V)$  is the comma category,  $P : (U \downarrow V) \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  and  $Q : (U \downarrow V) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  are the two projections, and  $\theta : U P \Rightarrow V Q$  is the tautological natural transformation defined by  $\theta_{(A,B,f)} = f$ . If  $(Z, \varepsilon)$  is a right Kan extension of  $Y$  along  $V$ , then  $(ZU, \varepsilon Q \bullet Z\theta)$  is a right Kan extension of  $YQ$  along  $P$ .

*Proof.* By lemma A.5.3, we may take  $Z : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  to be the functor defined by the formula below,

$$Z(C) = [\mathbb{B}, \mathbf{Set}](C(C, F-), Y-)$$

with  $\varepsilon : V^*(Z) \Rightarrow Y$  being the natural transformation obtained by evaluating elements of  $Z(VB)$  at  $\text{id}_{VB}$ .

Let  $\varphi : (X, \alpha) \rightarrow (ZU, \varepsilon Q \bullet Z\theta)$  be a morphism in  $(P^* \downarrow YQ)$ , i.e. a natural transformation  $\varphi : X \Rightarrow ZU$  such that  $\varepsilon Q \bullet Z\theta \bullet \varphi P = \alpha$ . Let  $A$  be an object in  $\mathcal{A}$ , let  $x$  be an element of  $X(A)$ , and consider the element  $\varphi_A(x)$  of  $Z(UA)$ . By definition, this is a natural transformation  $N^V(C) \Rightarrow Y$ , so we may consider its component at an object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , which will be a map  $C(UA, VB) \rightarrow Y(B)$ . Let  $f : UA \rightarrow VB$  be an arrow in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; then  $(A, B, f)$  is an object in the comma category  $(U \downarrow V)$ , and  $\theta_{(A,B,f)} = f$  by definition. By hypothesis,

$$\alpha_{(A,B,f)}(x) = \varepsilon_B(\varphi_A(x)_B \circ C(f, VB)) = \varphi_A(x)_B(f)$$

thus the action of  $\varphi$  is entirely determined by  $\alpha$ . Conversely, given any object  $(X, \alpha)$  in the comma category  $(P^* \downarrow YQ)$ , it is easily verified that the above equation defines a morphism  $\varphi : (X, \alpha) \rightarrow (ZU, \varepsilon Q \bullet Z\theta)$ , so  $(ZU, \varepsilon Q \bullet Z\theta)$  is indeed a terminal object in  $(P^* \downarrow YQ)$ . ■

**A.5.9** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Given functors  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , if  $(H, \epsilon)$  is a right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ , then, for each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the image under  $H$  of the tautological cone from  $C$  induced by  $F$  is a limiting cone in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .*

*Proof.* In the lemma, take  $\mathcal{A}$  to be the terminal category  $\mathbb{1}$ , take  $U : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  to be the functor sending the unique object in  $\mathbb{1}$  to  $C$ , and take  $V = F$ ; then  $(HU, \epsilon_Q \bullet H\theta)$  is a right Kan extension of  $GQ : (\mathcal{C} \downarrow F) \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  along the unique functor  $P : (\mathcal{C} \downarrow F) \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$ , but it is clear that a right Kan extension of  $GQ$  along  $P$  amounts to a limit for the diagram  $GQ$  in  $\mathbf{Set}$ . ■

It is convenient at this juncture to introduce a concept borrowed from enriched category theory. The notation below follows [Kelly, 2005, §3.1].

**A.5.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Given functors  $W : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , a  **$W$ -weighted limit** of  $A$  is an object  $\{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  together with bijections

$$\mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, \{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}) \cong [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}](W, \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, A))$$

that are natural in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We may also write  $\lim_{\leftarrow j:\mathcal{J}}^{W_j} A_j$  instead of  $\{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}$ , if we wish to use an explicit variable  $j$ .

Dually, given functors  $W : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , a  **$W$ -weighted colimit** of  $A$  is an object  $W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  together with bijections

$$\mathcal{C}(W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A, \mathcal{C}) \cong [\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](W, \mathcal{C}(A, \mathcal{C}))$$

that are natural in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We may also write  $\lim_{\rightarrow j:\mathcal{J}}^{W_j} A_j$  instead of  $W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A$ , if we wish to use an explicit variable  $j$ .

**A.5.11** REMARK. Clearly, weighted limits and colimits are unique up to unique isomorphism if they exist.

It is also not hard to spell out the above definition in elementary terms; for example, one notes that to give a natural transformation  $W \Rightarrow \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, A)$ , one must give a morphism  $\lambda_{j,x} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow A_j$  for each object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and each element  $x$  of  $W_j$ , and these are required to make various diagrams commute. This is a  **$W$ -weighted cone** from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $A$ , and  $\{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  is an object equipped with a universal  $W$ -weighted cone to  $A$ . Similarly, one may define the notion of a  **$W$ -weighted cocone** from  $A$  to  $\mathcal{C}$ , and then  $W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A$  is an object equipped with a



universal  $W$ -weighted cocone from  $A$ . In particular, if  $Wj = 1$  for all  $j$ , then  $W$ -weighted limits and colimits reduce to ordinary limits and colimits.

The above discussion also shows that the concept of a weighted limit or colimit (within a fixed category!) does not depend on  $\mathbf{U}$  in any essential way.

**A.5.I2** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Given functors  $F, G : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , the  $F$ -weighted limit of  $G$  exists in  $\mathbf{Set}$ , and we have bijections*

$$\{F, G\}^{\mathcal{J}} \cong [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}](F, G)$$

*that are natural in  $F$  and  $G$ .*

*Proof.* One simply has to check that this works. ◆

**A.5.I3** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be any functor where  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories.*

- (i) *For each weight  $W : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and each diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if the weighted limits  $\{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  and  $\{W, FA\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  both exist, then there is a canonical comparison morphism*

$$F\{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \{W, FA\}^{\mathcal{J}}$$

*corresponding to the natural maps*

$$[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}](W, \mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, A)) \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}](W, \mathcal{D}(F\mathcal{C}, FA))$$

*induced by the functor  $F$ .*

- (ii) *For any object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the functor  $\mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves all weighted limits.*
- (iii) *The functors  $\mathcal{C}(\mathcal{C}, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  jointly reflect weighted limits.*
- (iv) *If  $F$  has a left adjoint, then  $F$  preserves weighted limits.*

*Dually:*

- (i') *For each weight  $W : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and each diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if the weighted colimits  $W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A$  and  $W \star_{\mathcal{J}} FA$  both exist, then there is a canonical comparison morphism*

$$W \star_{\mathcal{J}} FA \rightarrow F(W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A)$$

corresponding to the natural maps

$$[J, \mathbf{Set}](W, C(A, C)) \rightarrow [J, \mathbf{Set}](W, D(FA, FC))$$

induced by the functor  $F$ .

(ii') For any object  $C$  in  $C$ , the functor  $C(-, C) : C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends any weighted colimit in  $C$  to the corresponding weighted limit in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .

(iii') The functors  $C(-, C) : C \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^{\text{op}}$  jointly reflect weighted colimits.

(iv') If  $F$  has a right adjoint, then  $F$  preserves weighted colimits.

*Proof.* All straightforward. ◆

**A.5.14** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $D$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Given a functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$ , the  $F$ -nerve functor  $N^F : D \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is defined by

$$N^F(D)(C) = D(FC, D)$$

i.e.  $N^F = F^* h_\bullet$ , where  $h_\bullet : D \rightarrow [D^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is the usual Yoneda embedding.

**A.5.15** THEOREM. Let  $C$ ,  $D$  and  $\mathcal{E}$  be locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories. Given functors  $F : C \rightarrow D$  and  $G : C \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $(H, \alpha)$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .
- (ii) For each object  $d$  in  $D$ , the weighted limit  $\{N^{F^{\text{op}}}(d), G\}^C$  exists in  $\mathcal{E}$ , and there are isomorphisms

$$Hd \cong \{N^{F^{\text{op}}}(d), G\}^C$$

natural in  $d$ , with  $\alpha_c : HFc \rightarrow Gc$  corresponding to the element  $\text{id}_{Fc}$  of  $N^{F^{\text{op}}}(Fc)(c) = D(Fc, Fc)$ .

- (iii) (Assuming  $C$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.) For each object  $d$  in  $D$ , if  $P^d : (d \downarrow F) \rightarrow C$  is the projection sending  $(c, f)$  in the comma category  $(d \downarrow F)$  to  $c$ , and  $\varphi : \Delta d \Rightarrow FP^d$  is the tautological cone in  $D$ , then the cone  $\alpha P^d \bullet H\varphi : \Delta Hd \Rightarrow GP^d$  is limiting; and for each  $g : d \rightarrow d'$  in  $D$ , the morphism  $Hg : Hd \rightarrow Hd'$  is the one induced by the functor  $(d' \downarrow F) \rightarrow (d \downarrow F)$  sending  $(c', f')$  to  $(c', f' \circ g)$ . In particular,  $\alpha_c : HFc \rightarrow Gc$  must be (equal to) the component of the limiting cone  $\Delta Fc \Rightarrow GP^d$  at the object  $(c, \text{id}_{Fc})$  of  $(Fc \downarrow F)$ .

In particular, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and  $\mathcal{E}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete, then the right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$  exists and is pointwise.

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $(H, \alpha)$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .
- (ii') For each object  $d$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the weighted colimit  $N^F(d) \star_{\mathcal{C}} G$  exists in  $\mathcal{E}$ , and there are isomorphisms

$$Hd \cong N^F(d) \star_{\mathcal{C}} G$$

natural in  $d$ , with  $\alpha_c : Gc \rightarrow HFc$  corresponding to the element  $\text{id}_{Fc}$  of  $N^F(Fc)(c) = D(Fc, Fc)$ .

- (iii') (Assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.) For each object  $d$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , if  $P_d : (F \downarrow d) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is the projection sending  $(c, f)$  in the comma category  $(F \downarrow d)$  to  $c$ , and  $\varphi : FP_d \Rightarrow \Delta d$  is the tautological cocone in  $\mathcal{D}$ , then the cocone  $H\varphi \bullet \alpha P_d : GP_d \Rightarrow \Delta Hd$  is colimiting; and for each  $g : d \rightarrow d'$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the morphism  $Hg : Hd \rightarrow Hd'$  is the one induced by the functor  $(F \downarrow d) \rightarrow (F \downarrow d')$  sending  $(c, f)$  to  $(c, g \circ f)$ . In particular,  $\alpha_c : Gc \rightarrow HFc$  must be (equal to) the component of the colimiting cocone  $GP_d \Rightarrow \Delta Fc$  at the object  $(c, \text{id}_{Fc})$  of  $(F \downarrow Fc)$ .

In particular, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and  $\mathcal{E}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete, then the left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$  exists and is pointwise.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). This is just a matter of unwinding the definitions.

(i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). [Corollary A.5.9](#) implies that the construction in (iii) does indeed define a right Kan extension in the special case  $\mathcal{E} = \mathbf{Set}$ , so we deduce that statements (i) and (iii) are equivalent by applying the Yoneda lemma; see also [\[CWM, Ch. X, §§3 and 5\]](#).  $\square$

**A.5.16** REMARK. It is possible to extract an elementary characterisation of pointwise Kan extensions from the results above, thereby showing that the property of being pointwise does not depend on the choice of universe  $\mathbf{U}$ .

**A.5.17** COROLLARY. Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and  $\mathcal{D}$  is locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, then the functor  $F^* : [\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{Set}]$  has both a left adjoint  $\text{Lan}_F$  and a right adjoint  $\text{Ran}_F$ .  $\blacksquare$

**A.5.18** COROLLARY. *If  $(H, \alpha)$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  along  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , and  $R : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is a functor, then  $(RH, R\alpha)$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $RG$  along  $F$ , provided either:*

- (i)  *$R$  preserves all weighted limits, or*
- (ii)  *$R$  preserves limits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams and  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.*

*If  $(H, \alpha)$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  along  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , and  $L : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is a functor, then  $(LH, L\alpha)$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $LG$  along  $F$ , provided either:*

- (i')  *$L$  preserves all weighted colimits, or*
- (ii')  *$L$  preserves colimits for  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams and  $\mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.* ■

**A.5.19** COROLLARY. *If  $(H, \alpha)$  is a pointwise right (resp. left) Kan extension of  $G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  along a fully faithful functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , then  $\alpha : HF \Rightarrow G$  (resp.  $\alpha : G \Rightarrow HF$ ) is a natural isomorphism.*

*Proof.* If  $F$  is fully faithful, then the comma category  $(Fc \downarrow F)$  (resp.  $(F \downarrow Fc)$ ) has an initial (resp. terminal) object, namely  $(c, \text{id}_{Fc})$ , so the component  $\alpha_c : HFc \rightarrow Gc$  (resp.  $\alpha_c : Gc \rightarrow HFc$ ) must be an isomorphism. ■

**A.5.20** THEOREM. *Let  $F : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $G : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be functors, and let  $i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^+$  and  $j : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^+$  be fully faithful functors. Consider the following (not necessarily commutative) diagram:*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \mathcal{A} & \xrightarrow{G} & \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{j} & \mathcal{D}^+ \\
 F \downarrow & \nearrow H & & \nearrow H^+ & \\
 \mathcal{C} & & & & \\
 i \downarrow & & & & \\
 \mathcal{C}^+ & & & & 
 \end{array}$$

- (i) *If  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ , and  $H^+i \cong jH$ , then  $H$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .*
- (ii) *Suppose  $jH$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $F$ . If  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ , then the counit  $H^+i \Rightarrow jH$  is a natural isomorphism, and  $H^+$  is also a pointwise right Kan extension*

of  $jG$  along  $iF$ ; conversely, if  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ , then it is also a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ .

- (iii) If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a pre-universe such that  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and  $j$  preserves limits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, and  $H$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ , then a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$  can be computed as a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$  (if either one exists).

Dually:

- (i') If  $H^+$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ , and  $H^+i \cong jH$ , then  $H$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .
- (ii') Suppose  $jH$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $F$ . If  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ , then the unit  $jH \Rightarrow H^+i$  is a natural isomorphism, and  $H^+$  is also a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ ; conversely, if  $H^+$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$ , then it is also a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ .
- (iii') If  $\mathbf{U}$  is a pre-universe such that  $\mathcal{A}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and  $j$  preserves colimits for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small diagrams, and  $H$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ , then a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$  can be computed as a pointwise left Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$  (if either one exists).

*Proof.* (i). [Theorem A.5.15](#) gives an explicit description of  $H^+ : C^+ \rightarrow D^+$  as a weighted limit:

$$H^+(C') \cong \{C^+(C', iF), jG\}^{\mathcal{A}}$$

Since  $i$  is fully faithful, the weights  $C(C, F)$  and  $C^+(iC, iF)$  are naturally isomorphic, hence,

$$jH(C) \cong H^+(iC) \cong \{C^+(iC, iF), jG\}^{\mathcal{A}} \cong \{C(C, F), jG\}^{\mathcal{A}}$$

but, since  $j$  is fully faithful,  $j$  reflects *all* weighted limits, therefore  $H$  must be a pointwise right Kan extension of  $G$  along  $F$ .

- (ii). Let  $\mathbf{U}^+$  be a pre-universe such that  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  are  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small categories and  $\mathcal{D}, C^+, D^+$  are locally  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -small categories, and let  $\mathbf{Set}^+$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}^+$ -sets. Using the interchange law ([theorem A.6.17](#)) and propositions [A.6.11](#) and

A.6.18, we obtain the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 D^+(D', H^+(C')) &\cong D^+(D', \{C^+(C', i), jH\}^C) \\
 &\cong \int_{C:C} \mathbf{Set}^+(C^+(C', iC), D^+(D', jHC)) \\
 &\cong \int_{C:C} \mathbf{Set}^+(C^+(C', iC), D^+(D', \{C(C, F), jG\}^A)) \\
 &\cong \int_{C:C} \int_{A:A} \mathbf{Set}^+(C^+(C', iC), \mathbf{Set}^+(C(C, FA), D^+(D', jGA))) \\
 &\cong \int_{C:C} \int_{A:A} \mathbf{Set}^+(C(C, FA), \mathbf{Set}^+(C^+(C', iC), D^+(D', jGA))) \\
 &\cong \int_{A:A} \int_{C:C} \mathbf{Set}^+(C(C, FA), \mathbf{Set}^+(C^+(C', iC), D^+(D', jGA))) \\
 &\cong \int_{A:A} \mathbf{Set}^+(C^+(C', iFA), D^+(D', jGA)) \\
 &\cong D^+(D', \{C^+(C', iF), jG\}^A)
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jG$  along  $iF$  if and only if  $H^+$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $jH$  along  $i$ . The fact that the counit  $H^+i \Rightarrow jH$  is a natural isomorphism is just [corollary A.5.19](#).

(iii). Apply [corollary A.5.18](#) to claim (ii). ■

**A.5.21** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be any two categories, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  and  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be any two functors. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $F \dashv G$ , with unit  $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow GF$  and counit  $\epsilon : FG \Rightarrow \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$ .
- (ii)  $(F, \epsilon)$  is an absolute right Kan extension of  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  along  $G$ .
- (iii)  $(F, \epsilon)$  is a right Kan extension of  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{D}}$  along  $G$  that is preserved by  $F$ .
- (iv)  $(G, \eta)$  is an absolute left Kan extension of  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  along  $F$ .
- (v)  $(G, \eta)$  is a left Kan extension of  $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  along  $F$  that is preserved by  $G$ .

*Proof.* See [[CWM](#), Ch. X, §7]. □

**A.5.22** PROPOSITION.

- *Left adjoints preserve all left Kan extensions.*
- *Right adjoints preserve all right Kan extensions.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 1 in [CWM, Ch. X, §5]. □

**A.5.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. A **dense functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that the  $F$ -nerve functor  $N^F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is fully faithful. A **dense subcategory** of  $\mathcal{C}$  is a subcategory  $\mathcal{B}$  such that the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a dense functor.

Dually, a **codense functor** is a functor  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that the opposite functor  $F^{\text{op}} : \mathcal{B}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}$  is dense, and a **codense subcategory** of  $\mathcal{C}$  is a subcategory  $\mathcal{B}$  such that the inclusion  $\mathcal{B} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a codense functor.

**A.5.24** EXAMPLE. The Yoneda lemma implies  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a dense and codense functor.

One may extract an elementary definition for ‘(co)dense functor’ from the following proposition.

**A.5.25** PROPOSITION. *With notation as in definition A.5.23, the following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a dense functor.
- (ii) For each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the maps

$$\mathcal{C}(C, C') \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](N^F(C), \mathcal{C}(F, C'))$$

*induced by  $N^F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  are natural bijections, exhibiting  $C$  as a weighted colimit  $N^F(C) \star_{\mathcal{B}} F$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- (iii) *For each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the tautological cocone to  $C$  induced by  $F$  is a colimiting cocone.*
- (iv)  $(\text{id}_C, \text{id}_F)$  is a pointwise left Kan extension of  $F$  along  $F$ .

*Dually, the following are equivalent:*

- (i')  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a codense functor.

(ii') For each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the maps

$$\mathcal{C}(C', C) \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}, \mathbf{Set}](N^{F^{\text{op}}}(C), \mathcal{C}(C', F))$$

induced by  $N^{F^{\text{op}}} : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}, \mathbf{Set}]$  are natural bijections, exhibiting  $\mathcal{C}$  as a weighted limit  $\{N^{F^{\text{op}}}(C), F\}^B$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(iii') For each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the tautological cone from  $C$  induced by  $F$  is a limiting cone.

(iv')  $(\text{id}_C, \text{id}_F)$  is a pointwise right Kan extension of  $F$  along  $F$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). The indicated maps are bijections for all  $C$  and  $C'$  if and only if  $N^F$  is fully faithful, by definition.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iv). This is an application of [theorem A.5.15](#). ■

**A.5.26** DEFINITION. Let  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a functor. A **densely-defined partial left adjoint** for  $G$  is a triple  $(F, i, \eta)$ , where  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a functor,  $i : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a dense functor, and  $\eta : i \Rightarrow GF$  is a natural transformation such that the maps

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{D}(FB, D) &\rightarrow \mathcal{C}(iB, GD) \\ g &\mapsto Gg \circ \eta_B \end{aligned}$$

are bijections that are natural in  $B$  and  $D$ .

Dually, given a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , a **codensely-defined partial right adjoint** for  $F$  is a triple  $(G, j, \varepsilon)$ , where  $G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a functor,  $j : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is a codense functor, and  $\varepsilon : FG \Rightarrow j$  is a natural transformation such that the maps

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}(C, GB) &\rightarrow \mathcal{D}(FC, jB) \\ f &\mapsto \varepsilon_B \circ Ff \end{aligned}$$

are bijections that are natural in  $B$  and  $C$ .

**A.5.27** EXAMPLE. The Yoneda embedding  $h_\bullet : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  has a densely-defined partial left adjoint, namely  $(\text{id}_B, h_\bullet, \text{id}_{h_\bullet})$ .

**A.5.28** REMARK.  $(F, \text{id}_C, \eta)$  is a densely-defined partial left adjoint for  $G$  if and only if  $F$  is a left adjoint for  $G$  in the usual sense, with  $\eta$  being the adjunction unit.



**A.5.29** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories. Given functors  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $F : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , and  $i : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the following are equivalent:

(i)  $(F, i, \eta)$  is a densely-defined partial left adjoint for  $G$ .

(ii) The functor  $i : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is dense, and there exists a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & [\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \\ G \downarrow & \swarrow \alpha & \downarrow (F^{\text{op}})^* \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{N^i} & [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

where  $\alpha$  factors through  $\eta^* : N^{GF} \Rightarrow N^i$  and is a natural isomorphism.

(iii) The functor  $i : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is dense, and the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & [\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \\ G \downarrow & & \downarrow (F^{\text{op}})^* \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{N^i} & [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

commutes up to natural isomorphism.

Dually, given functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ ,  $G : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and  $j : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , the following are equivalent:

(i')  $(G, j, \epsilon)$  is a codensely-defined partial right adjoint for  $F$ .

(ii') The functor  $j : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is codense, and there exists a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{f_\bullet} & [\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \\ F^{\text{op}} \downarrow & \swarrow \beta & \downarrow G^* \\ \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{N^{j^{\text{op}}}} & [\mathcal{B}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

where  $\beta$  factors through  $(\epsilon^{\text{op}})^* : N^{F^{\text{op}}G^{\text{op}}} \Rightarrow N^{j^{\text{op}}}$  and is a natural isomorphism.

(iii') The functor  $j : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is codense, and the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{h^*} & [\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \\ F^{\text{op}} \downarrow & & \downarrow G^* \\ \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{N^j{}^{\text{op}}} & [\mathcal{B}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

commutes up to natural isomorphism.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). This immediately follows from the definition.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Obvious.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). The displayed diagram commutes up to natural isomorphism precisely when there are bijections

$$\alpha_{B,D} : \mathcal{D}(FB, D) \rightarrow \mathcal{C}(iB, GD)$$

that are natural in both  $B$  and  $D$ . Taking  $D = FB$ , let  $\eta_B : iB \rightarrow GFB$  be the morphism corresponding to  $\text{id}_{FB} : FB \rightarrow FB$ . Applying the Yoneda lemma, we see that the natural bijection  $\alpha_{B,D}$  must be the map  $g \mapsto Gg \circ \eta_B$ .  $\blacksquare$

**A.5.30** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be any two categories. If a functor  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  has a densely-defined partial left adjoint, then  $G$  preserves:*

- (i) *limits for all diagrams in  $\mathcal{D}$ ,*
- (ii) *weighted limits, and*
- (iii) *pointwise right Kan extensions.*

*Dually, if a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  has a codensely-defined partial right adjoint, then  $F$  preserves:*

- (i') *colimits for all diagrams in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,*
- (ii') *weighted colimits, and*
- (iii') *pointwise left Kan extensions.*

*Proof.* Choose a universe  $\mathbf{U}$  such that the domain of  $i : \mathcal{B} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is  $\mathbf{U}$ -small and both  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, and consider the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{h_\bullet} & [\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \\ G \downarrow & & \downarrow (F^{\text{op}})^* \\ \mathcal{C} & \xrightarrow{N^i} & [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

Since  $i$  is dense, the  $i$ -nerve functor  $N^i : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is fully faithful. [Corollary A.5.17](#) implies  $(F^{\text{op}})^* : [\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  is a right adjoint, and the Yoneda embedding  $h_\bullet : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow [\mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  preserves all limits and weighted limits (see [proposition A.5.13](#)), so we use the fact that  $N^i$  reflects limits and weighted limits to conclude that  $G$  preserves them. We then apply [corollary A.5.18](#).  $\blacksquare$

**A.5.31** DEFINITION. A **cofinal functor** (resp. **coinitial functor**) is a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  such that, for each object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the comma category  $(D \downarrow F)$  (resp.  $(F \downarrow D)$ ) is connected.

**A.5.32** THEOREM. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor between  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a coinitial functor.
- (ii) The commutative diagram of functors shown below satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & [\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Set}] \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow F^* \\ \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & [\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

- (iii) The commutative diagram of functors shown below satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathbf{Set} \\ \Delta \downarrow & & \downarrow \Delta \\ [\mathcal{D}, \mathbf{Set}] & \xrightarrow{F^*} & [\mathcal{C}, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

- (iv) For all locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories  $\mathcal{E}$  and all diagrams  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ ,  $\varprojlim_{\mathcal{C}} GF$  exists if and only if  $\varprojlim_{\mathcal{D}} G$  exists, in which case the canonical comparison morphism  $\varprojlim_{\mathcal{D}} G \rightarrow \varprojlim_{\mathcal{C}} GF$  is an isomorphism.

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a cofinal functor.
- (ii') The commutative diagram of functors shown below satisfies the right Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & [D, \mathbf{Set}] \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow F^* \\ \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow[\Delta]{} & [C, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

- (iii') The commutative diagram of functors shown below satisfies the left Beck–Chevalley condition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & \mathbf{Set} \\ \Delta \downarrow & & \downarrow \Delta \\ [D, \mathbf{Set}] & \xrightarrow[F^*]{} & [C, \mathbf{Set}] \end{array}$$

- (iv') For all locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories  $\mathcal{E}$  and all diagrams  $G : \mathcal{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ ,  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{C}} GF$  exists if and only if  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{D}} G$  exists, in which case the canonical comparison morphism  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{C}} GF \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathcal{D}} G$  is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (ii). Using the colimit formula for  $\text{Lan}_F : [C, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow [D, \mathbf{Set}]$  indicated in [theorem A.5.15](#), it is clear that the comma categories  $(F \downarrow D)$  is connected if and only if the left Beck–Chevalley transformation  $\Delta \Rightarrow \text{Ran}_F(\Delta -)$  is a natural isomorphism.

(ii)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Apply [proposition A.1.13](#).

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). We have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} [C, \mathcal{E}](\Delta E, GF) &\cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{C}} \mathcal{E}(E, GF) \\ &\cong \varinjlim_{\mathcal{D}} \mathcal{E}(E, G) \\ &\cong [D, \mathcal{E}](\Delta E, G) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, there is a natural bijection between cones from  $E$  to  $GF$  and cones from  $E$  to  $G$ ; this implies that limits for  $GF$  exist in  $\mathcal{E}$  if and only if limits for  $G$  exist in  $\mathcal{E}$  and that they are canonically isomorphic.

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Obvious. ■

**A.5.33** DEFINITION. A **sifted category** is a category  $\mathcal{J}$  with the following property:

- For every finite set of objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ , say  $j_1, \dots, j_n$ , there exist an object  $k$  and a cocone  $j_\bullet \rightarrow k$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ .

**A.5.34** REMARK. Every filtered category is sifted.

**A.5.35** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{J}$  is a category with an object  $k$  such that, for every object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , there is a morphism  $j \rightarrow k$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , then  $\mathcal{J}$  is a sifted category.

**A.5.36** THEOREM. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathcal{J}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\mathcal{J}$  is a sifted category.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{J}$  is (inhabited and) connected, and the diagonal functor  $\Delta : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J} \times \mathcal{J}$  is cofinal.
- (iii) The functor  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $\mathcal{J}$  is sifted, then there is an object in  $\mathcal{J}$ . Let  $(j_0, j_1)$  be a pair of objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ . If  $\mathcal{J}$  is sifted, then there exist an object  $k$  and morphisms  $j_0 \rightarrow k$  and  $j_1 \rightarrow k$ , so the comma category  $((j_0, j_1) \downarrow \Delta)$  is inhabited and  $\mathcal{J}$  is connected; repeating this argument, we find that  $((j_0, j_1) \downarrow \Delta)$  itself is connected. Thus  $\Delta : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J} \times \mathcal{J}$  is indeed a cofinal functor.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). If  $\mathcal{J}$  is connected, then  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves terminal objects. Let  $X, Y : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be diagrams and suppose  $\mathcal{J}$  is sifted. Since  $(-) \times (-) : \mathbf{Set} \times \mathbf{Set} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves colimits in each variable (because  $\mathbf{Set}$  is cartesian closed), the canonical map

$$\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J} \times \mathcal{J}} X \boxtimes Y \rightarrow \left( \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} X \right) \times \left( \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} Y \right)$$

is a bijection, where  $X \boxtimes Y : \mathcal{J} \times \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is the diagram defined by  $(X \boxtimes Y)(j_0, j_1) = X j_0 \times Y j_1$ ; and since  $\Delta : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{J} \times \mathcal{J}$  is cofinal, the canonical map

$$\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} X \times Y \rightarrow \varinjlim_{\mathcal{J} \times \mathcal{J}} X \boxtimes Y$$

is also a bijection. We then deduce (by induction) that  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products.

## A. GENERALITIES

---

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $j_0, \dots, j_n$  be objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ . For any object  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , we have  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{J}(j, -) \cong 1$ ; thus, if  $\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves finite products, then

$$\varinjlim_{\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{J}(j_0, -) \times \cdots \times \mathcal{J}(j_n, -) \cong 1$$

and in particular, there must exist an object  $k$  and a cocone  $j_{\bullet} \rightarrow k$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ . ■

## A.6 Ends and coends

**Prerequisites.** §§0.1, A.5

In this section we use the explicit universe convention.

**A.6.1** DEFINITION. Let  $F, G : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be functors. A **dinatural transformation**  $\alpha : F \xrightarrow{\diamond} G$  is a family  $(\alpha_C : F(C, C) \rightarrow G(C, C) \mid C \in \text{ob } \mathcal{C})$  such that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & F(C, C) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_C} & G(C, C) \\
 & \nearrow^{F(\text{id}_C, f)} & & & \searrow^{G(f, \text{id}_C)} \\
 F(C, C') & & & & G(C', C) \\
 & \searrow_{F(f, \text{id}_{C'})} & & & \nearrow_{G(\text{id}_{C'}, f)} \\
 & & F(C', C') & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{C'}} & G(C', C')
 \end{array}$$

commutes for all morphisms  $f : C' \rightarrow C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**A.6.2** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets. Consider the functor  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  that sends a pair of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$  to their hom-set. For each natural number  $n$ , we have a dinatural transformation  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}} \xrightarrow{\diamond} \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}$  defined by  $e \mapsto e^n$ , where  $e^n$  denotes the  $n$ -fold iterate of the endomorphism  $e$ .

**A.6.3** DEFINITION. A **wedge** from an object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  to a functor  $G : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a dinatural transformation  $\Delta D \xrightarrow{\diamond} G$ , where  $\Delta D : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is the constant functor with value  $D$ ; dually, a **cowedge** from a functor  $F : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  to an object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  is a dinatural transformation  $F \xrightarrow{\diamond} \Delta D$ .

**A.6.4** DEFINITION. An **end** for a functor  $G : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is an object  $E$  and a wedge  $\lambda : \Delta E \xrightarrow{\diamond} G$  with the following universal property:

- For each wedge  $\varphi : \Delta D \xrightarrow{\diamond} G$ , there is a unique morphism  $f : D \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  such that  $\varphi_C = \lambda_C \circ f$  for all objects  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

We define the following formula to mean that  $E$  is an end for  $G$ :

$$E = \int_{C:\mathcal{C}} G(C, C)$$

Dually, a **coend** for a functor  $F : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is an object  $E$  and a cowedge  $\lambda : F \xrightarrow{\diamond} \Delta E$  with the following universal property:

- For each cowedge  $\varphi : F \xrightarrow{\diamond} \Delta D$ , there is a unique morphism  $f : E \rightarrow D$  in  $D$  such that  $\varphi_C = f \circ \lambda_C$  for all objects  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

We define the following formula to mean that  $E$  is a coend for  $F$ :

$$E = \int^{C:\mathcal{C}} F(C, C)$$

**A.6.5** REMARK. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. Then, for all functors  $F, G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , we have a bijection

$$[\mathbb{D}, \mathcal{C}](F, G) \cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \mathcal{C}(Fd, Gd)$$

and this is natural in both  $F$  and  $G$ . (The size restriction ensures that the LHS is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.) See also [lemma A.5.12](#).

**A.6.6** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, let  $\mathbb{C}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, let  $F : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a diagram, and let  $G : \mathbb{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  be a weight. Then the coend (in  $\mathbf{Set}$ )

$$\int^{c:\mathbb{C}} G(c) \times F(c)$$

can be identified with the set of connected components of the following category  $\mathbf{G}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$ :

- The objects are triples  $(y, c, x)$  where  $c$  is an object in  $\mathbb{C}$ ,  $x$  is an element of  $F(c)$ , and  $y$  is an element of  $G(c)$ .
- The morphisms  $(y', c', x') \rightarrow (y, c, x)$  are morphisms  $f : c' \rightarrow c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  such that  $F(f)(x') = x$  and  $G(f)(y) = y'$ .
- Identities and composition are inherited from  $\mathbb{C}$ .

*Proof.* Observe that a morphism  $f : c' \rightarrow c$  in  $\mathbb{C}$  defines a morphism  $(y', c', x') \rightarrow (y, c, x)$  in  $\mathbf{G}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  if and only if both of the following conditions hold:

- $G(f) \times \text{id}_{F(c')} : G(c) \times F(c') \rightarrow G(c') \times F(c')$  sends the element  $(y, x')$  to  $(y', x')$ .
- $\text{id}_{G(c)} \times F(f) : G(c) \times F(c') \rightarrow G(c) \times F(c)$  sends the element  $(y, x')$  to  $(y, x)$ .



In particular,  $(y', c', x')$  and  $(y, c, x)$  are in the same connected component of  $\mathbf{G}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  if and only if  $(y', x')$  and  $(y, x)$  are mapped to the same element of the coend  $\int^{c:\mathbb{C}} G(c) \times F(c)$ . Thus, the set of connected components of  $\mathbf{G}(G, \mathbb{C}, F)$  can be identified with  $\int^{c:\mathbb{C}} G(c) \times F(c)$ , as claimed. ■

**A.6.7 DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Cat}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories, and let  $\S$  be the (non-full) subcategory of  $\mathbf{Cat}$  consisting of the two embeddings  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . Given a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathbb{D}$ , the **Mac Lane subdivision category**  $\mathbb{D}^\S$  is the comma category  $(\S \downarrow \mathbb{D})$ , where we regard  $\mathbb{D}$  as an object in  $\mathbf{Cat}$ .

**A.6.8 REMARK.** More explicitly,  $\mathbb{D}^\S$  is the following category:

- The objects are either objects in  $\mathbb{D}$  or morphisms in  $\mathbb{D}$ .
- The non-identity morphisms are of the form  $X \rightarrow f$  or  $Y \rightarrow f$ , where  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  is a morphism in  $\mathbb{D}$ .
- The only composable pairs of morphisms are trivial.

It is clear from this description that  $\mathbb{D}^\S$  is (isomorphic to) a poset regarded as a category. Note also that, for any regular cardinal  $\kappa$ , the category  $\mathbb{D}$  is  $\kappa$ -small if and only if  $\mathbb{D}^\S$  is  $\kappa$ -small.

**A.6.9 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a category and let  $\mathbb{D}^\S$  be the Mac Lane subdivision category. Then there is a natural coinitial functor  $\pi_R : \mathbb{D}^\S \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$ .

*Proof.* We define the functor  $\pi_R : \mathbb{D}^\S \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  as follows: given an object  $X$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , we set  $\pi_R X = X$ , and given a morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $\mathbb{D}$ , we set  $\pi_R f = Y$ ,  $\pi_R(X \rightarrow f) = f$ , and  $\pi_R(Y \rightarrow f) = \text{id}_Y$ . This functor is clearly natural in  $\mathbb{D}$ . It remains to be shown that  $\pi_R : \mathbb{D}^\S \rightarrow \mathbb{D}$  is a cofinal functor. Let  $Y$  be an object in  $\mathbb{D}$  and consider the comma category  $(\pi_R \downarrow Y)$ . It is not hard to see that  $(\pi_R \downarrow Y)$  is isomorphic to the Mac Lane subdivision category  $(\mathbb{D}_{/Y})^\S$ ; but  $\mathbb{D}_{/Y}$  has a terminal object (so is a connected category *a fortiori*), therefore  $(\mathbb{D}_{/Y})^\S$  must be a connected category, as required. ■

**A.6.I0** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe and let  $\mathbb{D}$  be a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete category, then  $\mathcal{C}$  has ends for all functors  $A : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . Dually, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete category, then  $\mathcal{C}$  has coends for all functors  $A : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.* It is clear from the definition that an end is a special kind of limit, and a coend is a special kind of colimit. To make this precise, one can use the Mac Lane subdivision category  $\mathcal{C}^{\S}$ : see [CWM, Ch. IX, §5].  $\square$

**A.6.II** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be any functor where  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories.*

- (i) *For any functor  $A : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if the ends  $\int_{\mathcal{J}} A$  and  $\int_{\mathcal{J}} FA$  both exist, with  $\lambda$  being the universal wedge in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then there is a canonical comparison morphism*

$$F \int_{\mathcal{J}} A \rightarrow \int_{\mathcal{J}} FA$$

*induced by the wedge  $F\lambda$ .*

- (ii) *For any object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the functor  $\mathcal{C}(C, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  preserves all ends.*  
 (iii) *The functors  $\mathcal{C}(C, -)$  jointly reflect ends.*  
 (iv) *If  $F$  has a left adjoint, then  $F$  preserves ends.*

*Dually:*

- (i') *For any functor  $A : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , if the coends  $\int^{\mathcal{J}} A$  and  $\int^{\mathcal{J}} FA$  both exist, with  $\lambda$  being the universal cowedge in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then there is a canonical comparison morphism*

$$\int^{\mathcal{J}} FA \rightarrow F \int^{\mathcal{J}} A$$

*induced by the cowedge  $F\lambda$ .*

- (ii') *For any object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the functor  $\mathcal{C}(-, C) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  sends any coend in  $\mathcal{C}$  to the corresponding end in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .*  
 (iii') *The functors  $\mathcal{C}(-, C) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^{\text{op}}$  jointly reflect coends.*  
 (iv') *If  $F$  has a right adjoint, then  $F$  preserves coends.*

*Proof.* All straightforward.  $\blacklozenge$

**A.6.12** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathbb{1}$  be the trivial category with  $*$  as its only object. A **tensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category** is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}$  such that, for all weights  $W : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and all diagrams  $A : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , a  $W$ -weighted colimit for  $A$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then we write  $X \odot C$  for the weighted colimit  $W \star_1 A$ , where  $X = W(*)$  and  $C = A(*)$ .

Dually, a **cotensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category** is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category  $\mathcal{C}$  such that, for all weights  $W : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and all diagrams  $A : \mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , a  $W$ -weighted limit for  $A$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cotensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then we write  $X \pitchfork C$  for the weighted limit  $\{W, A\}^1$ , where  $X = W(*)$  and  $C = A(*)$ .

**A.6.13** PROPOSITION (Tensor–hom–cotensor adjunction). *Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.*

- (i) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then the assignment  $(X, C) \mapsto X \odot C$  can be extended to a functor  $\mathbf{Set} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that, for each object  $C$ , we have the following adjunction:*

$$- \odot C \dashv C(C, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$$

- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cotensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then the assignment  $(X, C) \mapsto X \pitchfork C$  can be extended to a functor  $\mathbf{Set}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such that, for each object  $C$ , the functors  $- \pitchfork C : \mathbf{Set}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $C(-, C) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  are contravariantly adjoint on the right.*

- (iii) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tensoring and cotensoring  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then for each set  $X$ , we have the following adjunction:*

$$X \odot - \dashv X \pitchfork - : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

*Proof.* Claims (i) and (ii) are formally dual and are straightforward applications of the parametrised adjunction theorem.<sup>[1]</sup> For claim (iii), simply observe that we have bijections

$$C(X \odot A, B) \cong \mathbf{Set}(X, C(A, B)) \cong C(A, X \pitchfork B)$$

and these are natural in  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $X$ . ■

[1] See Theorem 3 in [CWM, Ch. IV, §7].

**A.6.14** THEOREM. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete category.
- (ii)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cotensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and, for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories  $\mathbb{D}$  and all functors  $B : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , an end for  $B$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii) For all weights  $W : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and all diagrams  $A : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ ,  $\mathcal{C}$  has a  $W$ -weighted limit for  $A$ , provided  $\mathbb{D}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.

Dually, the following are equivalent:

- (i')  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -cocomplete category.
- (ii')  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and, for all  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories  $\mathbb{D}$  and all functors  $B : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , a coend for  $B$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (iii') For all weights  $W : \mathbb{D}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and all diagrams  $A : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{C}$  has a  $W$ -weighted colimit for  $A$ , provided  $\mathbb{D}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). It is clear that  $X \pitchfork \mathcal{C}$  is nothing more than an  $X$ -fold product of copies of  $\mathcal{C}$ , so  $\mathcal{C}$  is certainly  $\mathbf{U}$ -cotensored if it is  $\mathbf{U}$ -complete, and [proposition A.6.10](#) says  $\mathcal{C}$  also has the required ends in that case.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). We have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{C}(C, \{W, A\}^{\mathbb{D}}) &\cong [\mathbb{D}, \mathbf{Set}](W, \mathcal{C}(C, A)) \\
 &\cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \mathbf{Set}(Wd, \mathcal{C}(C, Ad)) \\
 &\cong \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} \mathcal{C}(C, Wd \pitchfork Ad) \\
 &\cong \mathcal{C}\left(C, \int_{d:\mathbb{D}} Wd \pitchfork Ad\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, using the Yoneda lemma and assuming  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cotensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, the weighted limit  $\{W, A\}^{\mathbb{D}}$  exists if and only if the end  $\int_{d:\mathbb{D}} Wd \pitchfork Ad$  exists.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Ordinary limits are a special case of weighted limits, as remarked in [A.5.11](#). ■

**A.6.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and let  $\mathcal{J}$  be any category. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and has weighted limits for all weights  $W : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and diagrams  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then:

- (i)  $(W, A) \mapsto \{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}$  extends to a functor  $[\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) For each diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the functors  $\{-, A\}^{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{C}(-, A) : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}]$  are contravariantly adjoint on the right.
- (iii) For each weight  $W : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , we have the following adjunction:

$$W \odot - \dashv \{W, -\}^{\mathcal{J}} : [\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

Here,  $W \odot C : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is the diagram  $j \mapsto W j \odot C$ .

Dually, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a cotensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category and has weighted colimits for all weights  $W : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  and diagrams  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , then:

- (i')  $(W, A) \mapsto W \star_{\mathcal{J}} A$  extends to a functor  $[\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii') For each diagram  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , we have the following adjunction:

$$- \star_{\mathcal{J}} A \dashv \mathcal{C}(A, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$$

- (iii') For each weight  $W : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ , we have the following adjunction:

$$W \star_{\mathcal{J}} - \dashv W \pitchfork - : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}]$$

Here,  $W \pitchfork C : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is the diagram  $j \mapsto W j \pitchfork C$ .

*Proof.* Claim (i) is straightforward, and for claims (ii) and (iii), observe that we have bijections

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}(C, \{W, A\}^{\mathcal{J}}) &\cong [\mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}](W, \mathcal{C}(C, A)) \\ &\cong \int_{j:\mathcal{J}} \mathbf{Set}(W j, \mathcal{C}(C, A j)) \\ &\cong \int_{j:\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}(W j \odot C, A j) \\ &\cong [\mathcal{J}, \mathcal{C}](W \odot C, A) \end{aligned}$$

and these are natural in  $W$ ,  $A$ , and  $C$ . ■

**A.6.16** LEMMA. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $\mathbb{I}$  and  $\mathbb{J}$  be  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories. For all functors  $A : \mathbb{I}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{I} \times \mathbb{J} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ :

- (i) The assignment  $(i', i) \mapsto \int_{j:\mathbb{J}} A(i', j, i, j)$  extends to a functor  $\mathbb{I}^{\text{op}} \times \mathbb{I} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$ .
- (ii) There is a unique morphism  $\theta$  making the diagram below commute for all  $i$  and  $j$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int_{i':\mathbb{I}} \int_{j':\mathbb{J}} A(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \int_{j':\mathbb{J}} A(i, j', i, j') \\ \theta \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_{(i', j'):\mathbb{I} \times \mathbb{J}} A(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & A(i, j, i, j) \end{array}$$

where the unlabelled arrows are the components of the respective universal wedges, and  $\theta$  is moreover an isomorphism.

- (iii) There is a unique morphism  $\sigma$  making the diagram below commute for all  $i$  and  $j$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \int_{i':\mathbb{I}} \int_{j':\mathbb{J}} A(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \int_{j':\mathbb{J}} A(i, j', i, j') & & \\ \sigma \downarrow & & & \searrow & \\ \int_{j':\mathbb{J}} \int_{i':\mathbb{I}} A(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \int_{i':\mathbb{I}} A(i, j', i, j') & \nearrow & A(i, j, i, j) \end{array}$$

where the unmarked arrows are the components of the respective universal wedges, and  $\sigma$  is moreover an isomorphism.

*Proof.* See [CWM, Ch. IX, §8]. □

**A.6.17** THEOREM (Interchange law for ends and coends). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be any category and let  $A : \mathcal{I}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be any functor. If the end  $\int_{i:\mathcal{I}} A(i, j', i, j)$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  for all  $j'$  and  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$ , and the end  $\int_{j:\mathcal{J}} A(i', j, i, j)$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  for all  $i'$  and  $i$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ , then the following are equivalent:

- (i) The end  $\int_{(i,j):\mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{J}} A(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii) The iterated end  $\int_{i:I} \int_{j:J} A(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $C$ .

(iii) The iterated end  $\int_{j:J} \int_{i:I} A(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $C$ .

In this case, we have a canonical isomorphism in  $C$ :

$$\int_{i:I} \int_{j:J} A(i, j, i, j) \cong \int_{(i,j):I \times J} A(i, j, i, j) \cong \int_{j:J} \int_{i:I} A(i, j, i, j)$$

Dually, if the coend  $\int^{i:I} A(i, j', i, j)$  exists in  $C$  for all  $j'$  and  $j$  in  $J$ , and the coend  $\int^{j:J} A(i', j, i, j)$  exists in  $C$  for all  $i'$  and  $i$  in  $I$ , then the following are equivalent:

(i') The coend  $\int^{(i,j):I \times J} A(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $C$ .

(ii') The iterated coend  $\int^{i:I} \int^{j:J} A(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $C$ .

(iii') The iterated coend  $\int^{j:J} \int^{i:I} A(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $C$ .

In this case, we have a canonical isomorphism in  $C$ :

$$\int^{i:I} \int^{j:J} A(i, j, i, j) \cong \int^{(i,j):I \times J} A(i, j, i, j) \cong \int^{j:J} \int^{i:I} A(i, j, i, j)$$

*Proof.* Choose a pre-universe  $\mathbf{U}$  such that  $I$  and  $J$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories and  $C$  is a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category, and use the Yoneda lemma to reduce the claims to [lemma A.6.16](#). ■

**A.6.18 PROPOSITION.** Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe, let  $\mathbf{Set}$  be the category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -sets, and let  $C$  and  $J$  be locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small categories.

(i) For all  $j$  in  $J$  and all functors  $A : J \rightarrow C$ , the Yoneda bijection

$$C(C, Aj) \cong [J, \mathbf{Set}](h^j, C(C, A))$$

exhibits  $Aj$  as the weighted limit  $\{h^j, A\}^J$  in  $C$ .

(ii) If  $C$  is a cotensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then the end  $\int_{j':J} J(j, j') \pitchfork Aj'$  exists in  $C$  and can be canonically identified with  $Aj$ .

(iii) For all functors  $H : J^{\text{op}} \times J \rightarrow C$ , the weighted limit  $\{\text{Hom}_J, H\}^{J^{\text{op}} \times J}$  exists in  $C$  if and only if the end  $\int_{j:J} H(j, j)$  exists in  $C$ , and there is a canonical identification of the two.

*Dually:*

(i') For all  $j$  in  $\mathcal{J}$  and all functors  $A : \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the Yoneda bijection

$$\mathcal{C}(Aj, \mathcal{C}) \cong [\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}](h_j, \mathcal{C}(A, \mathcal{C}))$$

exhibits  $Aj$  as the weighted colimit  $h_j \star_{\mathcal{J}} A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

(ii') If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a tensored  $\mathbf{U}$ -category, then the coend  $\int^{j':\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{J}(j', j) \odot Aj'$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  and can be canonically identified with  $Aj$ .

(iii') For all functors  $H : \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , the weighted colimit  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}} \star_{\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J}} H$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$  if and only if the coend  $\int^{j:\mathcal{J}} H(j, j)$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and there is a canonical identification of the two.

*Proof.* (i). This is an immediate consequence of the Yoneda lemma and the definition of weighted limit.

(ii). Use the identification constructed in the proof of [theorem A.6.14](#).

(iii). For all objects  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , using claim (ii) and the interchange law for ends ([theorem A.6.17](#)), there are bijections

$$\begin{aligned} [\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J}, \mathbf{Set}](\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{J}}, \mathcal{C}(C, H)) &\cong \int_{(j', j): \mathcal{J}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{J}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathcal{J}(j', j), \mathcal{C}(C, H(j', j))) \\ &\cong \int_{j:\mathcal{J}} \int_{j':\mathcal{J}^{\text{op}}} \mathbf{Set}(\mathcal{J}(j', j), \mathcal{C}(C, H(j', j))) \\ &\cong \int_{j:\mathcal{J}} \mathcal{C}(C, H(j, j)) \end{aligned}$$

and these are natural in  $C$ ; now apply propositions [A.5.13](#) and [A.6.11](#). ■



## A.7 Familial regularity and exactness

**Prerequisites.** §A.3.

**A.7.1** DEFINITION. A **strict initial object** in a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is an initial object  $0$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that every morphism  $X \rightarrow 0$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is an isomorphism.

**A.7.2** EXAMPLE. The empty set is a strict initial object in **Set**.

**A.7.3** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with a strict initial object  $0$ .

- (i) For any object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism.
- (ii) For any object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $0 \rightarrow Y$  is a strict initial object in the slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/Y}$ .

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**A.7.4** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a (not necessarily small) regular cardinal. A  **$\kappa$ -ary extensive category** is a category  $\mathcal{E}$  satisfying the following axioms:

- $\mathcal{E}$  has coproducts for  $\kappa$ -small families of objects (including the empty family).
- Given a  $\kappa$ -small family of objects in  $\mathcal{E}$ , say  $(A_i \mid i \in I)$ , a morphism  $f : B \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$ , and commutative diagrams as below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B_j & \longrightarrow & B \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow f \\ A_j & \longrightarrow & \coprod_{i \in I} A_i \end{array}$$

where the morphisms  $A_j \rightarrow \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$  are the coproduct insertions, the family of morphisms  $B_j \rightarrow B$  is a coproduct cocone if and only if each of the above commutative diagrams are pullback squares.

An **extensive category** is an  $\aleph_0$ -ary extensive category, and an **infinitary extensive category** is a  $\kappa$ -ary extensive category where  $\kappa$  is the cardinality of the universe.

**A.7.5** EXAMPLES.

- (a) The category **Set** is an infinitary extensive category.
- (b) More generally, if  $\mathcal{E}$  is a locally cartesian closed category with coproducts for  $\kappa$ -small families of objects, then  $\mathcal{E}$  is a  $\kappa$ -ary extensive category.
- (c) The category **Top** is an infinitary extensive category but is neither cartesian closed nor locally cartesian closed.

**A.7.6** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\kappa$  be a (not necessarily small) regular cardinal. If  $\mathcal{E}$  is a  $\kappa$ -ary extensive category, then for any object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , the slice category  $\mathcal{E}_{/A}$  is also a  $\kappa$ -ary extensive category.*

*Proof.* This is an immediate consequence of the fact that the projection functor  $\mathcal{E}_{/A} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  creates all colimits and pullbacks. ■

**A.7.7** THEOREM. *Let  $\kappa$  be a (not necessarily small) regular cardinal and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with coproducts for  $\kappa$ -small families of objects. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $\mathcal{C}$  is a  $\kappa$ -ary extensive category.
- (ii) For any  $\kappa$ -small family of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say  $(X_i \mid i \in I)$ , the functor

$$\prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{C}_{/X_i} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/\coprod_{i \in I} X_i}$$

*induced by  $\coprod_{i \in I}$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 2.14 in [Carboni, Lack and Walters, 1993]. □

**A.7.8** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category with an initial object  $0$ . The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  $0$  is a strict initial object in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) The slice category  $\mathcal{C}_{/0}$  is equivalent to the terminal category  $\mathbb{1}$ .
- (iii) For any morphism  $f : X \rightarrow Y$ , the following diagram is a pullback square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & 0 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \end{array}$$

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). If  $f : X \rightarrow 0$  is an object in  $C_{/0}$ , then  $f$  is an isomorphism in  $C$ , and  $X$  is also an initial object in  $C$ . Thus, any two objects in  $C_{/0}$  are connected by a unique isomorphism, and the unique functor  $C_{/0} \rightarrow \mathbb{1}$  is fully faithful and surjective on objects, with quasi-inverse the functor  $\mathbb{1} \rightarrow C_{/0}$  sending the unique object in  $\mathbb{1}$  to the object  $\text{id} : 0 \rightarrow 0$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i), (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Obvious.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Take  $Y = 0$ ; then  $0 \rightarrow X$  must be an isomorphism with  $f : X \rightarrow 0$  as its inverse. ■

**A.7.9** COROLLARY. *Initial objects in extensive categories are strict.*

*Proof.* The second axiom in the case where  $I = \emptyset$  says that the initial object is preserved by pullbacks. ■

**A.7.10** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a category.

- An **extremal epimorphism** in  $C$  is an epimorphism  $e$  in  $C$  such that, for any morphisms  $m$  and  $z$  in  $C$ , such that  $e = m \circ z$ , if  $m$  is a monomorphism in  $C$ , then  $m$  is an isomorphism.
- A **regular epimorphism** in  $C$  is a morphism  $e$  in  $C$  for which there exist morphisms  $f_0, f_1$  in  $C$  such that  $e$  is their coequaliser in  $C$ .
- An **effective epimorphism** in  $C$  is a morphism  $e$  in  $C$  such that  $e$  has a kernel pair in  $C$  and is their coequaliser in  $C$ .

**A.7.11** PROPOSITION. *Let  $C$  be a category and let  $e$  be a morphism in  $C$ . Consider the following statements:*

- (i)  *$e$  is an effective epimorphism.*
- (ii)  *$e$  is a regular epimorphism.*
- (iii)  *$e$  is a strong epimorphism.*
- (iv)  *$e$  is an extremal epimorphism.*
- (v)  *$e$  is an epimorphism.*

## A. GENERALITIES

---

We always have the implications (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii), (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii), (iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv), and (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v); if  $\mathcal{C}$  has kernel pairs, then (ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i); and if  $\mathcal{C}$  has pullbacks of monomorphisms, then (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii).

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii), (iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (v). Immediate.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Suppose  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  is a coequaliser for  $f_0, f_1 : T \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and consider a commutative diagram of the form below in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ e \downarrow & & \downarrow m \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

It is clear that  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  is an epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . If  $m : X \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $z \circ f_0 = z \circ f_1$ , so there must exist a unique morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $z = h \circ e$ ; and  $m \circ z = w \circ e$ , so we must have  $m \circ h = w$  as well. Thus  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  has the required orthogonality property.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv). This is the special case where  $w = \text{id}$ ; the existence of  $h$  such that  $m \circ h = \text{id}$  implies  $m$  is both a monomorphism and a split epimorphism, so  $m$  must be an isomorphism in this case.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  is a coequaliser for  $f_0, f_1 : T \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $k_0, k_1 : K \rightarrow Z$  be a kernel pair for  $e : Z \rightarrow W$ . There is then a unique morphism  $r : T \rightarrow K$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $k_0 \circ r = f_0$  and  $k_1 \circ r = f_1$ . Consider any morphism  $z : Z \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $z \circ k_0 = z \circ k_1$ . Then  $z \circ f_0 = z \circ f_1$  as well, so there is a unique morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  such that  $z = h \circ e$ . By definition, we have  $e \circ k_0 = e \circ k_1$ , so it follows that  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  is a coequaliser for  $k_0, k_1 : K \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  as well.

(iv)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Suppose  $e : Z \rightarrow W$  is a strong epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and consider a commutative diagram of the form below in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \xrightarrow{z} & X \\ e \downarrow & & \downarrow m \\ W & \xrightarrow{w} & Y \end{array}$$

There is then a comparison morphism  $Z \rightarrow W \times_Y X$ , and if  $m : X \rightarrow Y$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then so is the projection  $W \times_Y X \rightarrow W$ . Since  $e : Z \rightarrow W$

is a strong epimorphism, the projection  $W \times_Y X \rightarrow W$  must be an isomorphism, so we obtain a (unique) morphism  $h : W \rightarrow X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $h \circ e = z$  and  $m \circ h = w$ , as required.  $\blacksquare$

**A.7.12** DEFINITION. A **regular category** is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  that satisfies the following axioms:

- $\mathcal{C}$  has finite limits.
- $\mathcal{C}$  has coequalisers for kernel pairs.
- The class of regular epimorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under pullbacks.

**A.7.13** EXAMPLE. **Set** is a regular category. More generally, any  $\Sigma\Pi$ -category<sup>[1]</sup> with coequalisers for kernel pairs is a regular category.

**A.7.14** THEOREM. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a regular category.*

- (i) *Every morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  admits a (regular epi, mono)-factorisation.*
- (ii) *Every extremal epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a regular epimorphism.*
- (iii) *The class of regular epimorphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  is closed under composition.*

*Proof.* (i). See Theorem 2.1.3 in [Borceux, 1994b].

(ii). Let  $f$  be an extremal epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and suppose  $f = m \circ e$  where  $m$  is a monomorphism and  $e$  is a regular epimorphism. Then  $m$  must be an isomorphism, so  $f$  is indeed a regular epimorphism.  $\square$

**A.7.15** PROPOSITION. *In a regular category:*

- (i) *The class of regular epimorphisms is closed under composition, pullbacks, and retracts.*
- (ii) *If  $g \circ f$  is a regular epimorphism, then  $g$  is also a regular epimorphism.*
- (iii) *The class of regular epimorphisms is closed under finite products.*

---

[1] See definition A.2.18.

*Proof.* (i). Recalling [proposition A.7.11](#), [theorem A.7.14](#) implies that strong epimorphisms in a regular category are the same as regular epimorphisms, so we may apply [proposition A.3.19](#).

(ii). Similarly, we may apply [proposition A.3.20](#).

(iii). Let  $f : X \rightarrow Y$  and  $g : Z \rightarrow W$  be regular epimorphisms in a regular category. Then  $f \times g = (f \times \text{id}_W) \circ (\text{id}_X \times g)$ , and both  $f \times \text{id}_W$  and  $\text{id}_X \times g$  are regular epimorphisms (because the class of regular epimorphisms is closed under pullbacks), so their composite is a regular epimorphism as well. ■

**A.7.16** DEFINITION. A **weak pullback square** in a regular category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say

$$\begin{array}{ccc} Z & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ W & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

such that the comparison morphism  $Z \rightarrow W \times_Y X$  is a regular epimorphism.

**A.7.17** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a regular category, and consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X'' & \longrightarrow & X' & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y'' & \longrightarrow & Y' & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

- (i) If the two squares are weak pullback squares in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the outer rectangle is a weak pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) If the right square is an ordinary pullback square and outer rectangle is weak pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the left square is a weak pullback square in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* (i). First, form the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T & \longrightarrow & Y'' \times_Y X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X' & \longrightarrow & Y' \times_Y X \end{array}$$

Since  $X' \rightarrow Y' \times_Y X$  is a regular epimorphism, so is  $T \rightarrow Y'' \times_Y X$ . Next, form a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} S & \longrightarrow & T \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X'' & \longrightarrow & Y'' \times_{Y'} X' \end{array}$$

Since  $X'' \rightarrow Y'' \times_{Y'} X'$  is a regular epimorphism, so is  $S \rightarrow T$ . We thus obtain a regular epimorphism  $S \rightarrow Y'' \times_Y X$  that factors through the comparison morphism  $X'' \rightarrow Y'' \times_Y X$ , so we may use [proposition A.7.15](#) to deduce that  $X'' \rightarrow Y'' \times_Y X$  is a regular epimorphism.

(ii). Start by forming the following pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T & \longrightarrow & Y'' \times_{Y'} X' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ X'' & \longrightarrow & Y'' \times_Y X \end{array}$$

Since  $X'' \rightarrow Y'' \times_Y X$  is a regular epimorphism, so is  $T \rightarrow Y'' \times_{Y'} X'$ . On the other hand, we have a commutative diagram of the form below in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Y'' \times_Y X & \longrightarrow & X' & \longrightarrow & X \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ Y'' & \longrightarrow & Y' & \longrightarrow & Y \end{array}$$

so  $T \rightarrow Y'' \times_{Y'} X'$  factors through the comparison morphism  $X'' \rightarrow Y'' \times_{Y'} X'$ . Thus,  $X'' \rightarrow Y'' \times_{Y'} X'$  is a regular epimorphism, as required. ■

**A.7.18** DEFINITION. A **regular functor** (or **Barr-exact functor**) is a functor between regular categories that preserves finite limits and regular epimorphisms.

**A.7.19** REMARK. By [proposition A.7.11](#), a regular functor is the same thing as a functor between regular categories that preserves finite limits and coequalisers of kernel pairs. Thus, a regular functor between abelian categories automatically preserves finite colimits.

**A.7.20** DEFINITION. An **exact fork** in a category  $C$  is a diagram in  $C$  of the form below,

$$X \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{f_0} \\ \xrightarrow{f_1} \end{array} Y \xrightarrow{g} Z$$

where  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  is a coequaliser for  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$  and  $f_0, f_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  is a kernel pair for  $g : Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $C$ .

**A.7.21** THEOREM (Regular embedding theorem). *Let  $C$  be a small regular category and let  $\mathcal{E}$  be the full subcategory of  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  spanned by those presheaves  $C^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  that send exact forks in  $C$  to equaliser diagrams in  $\mathbf{Set}$ .*

- (i)  $\mathcal{E}$  is a reflective subcategory of  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , and the reflector  $[C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}] \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  preserves finite limits.
- (ii) The Yoneda embedding  $h_{\bullet} : C \rightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$  factors through the inclusion  $\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow [C^{\text{op}}, \mathbf{Set}]$ , and the resulting functor  $C \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  is fully faithful, regular, and preserves all limits.

*Proof.* (i). This follows from the fact that  $\mathcal{E}$  is the category of sheaves for a Grothendieck topology on  $C$ : see Lemma 2.7.2 in [Borceux, 1994b] and Theorem 3.3.12 in [Borceux, 1994c].

(ii). See Theorem 2.7.3 in [Borceux, 1994b]. □

**A.7.22** THEOREM (Barr). *For each small regular category  $C$ , there exist a set  $B$  and a conservative regular functor  $C \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^B$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 1.6 in [Barr, 1971, Ch. III] or Corollary 1.5.4 in [Johnstone, 2002b, Part D]. □

**A.7.23** DEFINITION.

- An **effective equivalence relation** in a category  $C$  is an (internal) equivalence relation in  $C$  that appears as part of an exact fork in  $C$ , i.e. is a kernel pair for an effective epimorphism in  $C$ .
- An **effective regular category** (or **Barr-exact category**) is a regular category in which all (internal) equivalence relations are effective.

**A.7.24** REMARK. A regular category with coequalisers for all parallel pairs of morphisms is automatically an effective regular category, but effective regular categories need not have coequalisers in general.



**A.7.25** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be an effective regular category. Given a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ , say  $p_0, p_1 : X \rightarrow Y$ , if the regular image of the morphism  $\langle p_0, p_1 \rangle : X \rightarrow Y \times Y$  defines an equivalence relation  $R$  on  $Y$ , then  $p_0, p_1 : X \rightarrow Y$  have a coequaliser in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and the kernel pair of the coequaliser is the equivalence relation  $R$ .*

*Proof.* By definition of  $R$ , there exist a regular epimorphism  $e : X \rightarrow R$  and two projections  $r_0, r_1 : R \rightarrow Y$  such that  $p_0 = r_0 \circ e$  and  $p_1 = r_1 \circ e$ . Let  $q : Y \rightarrow Z$  be the coequaliser of  $r_0$  and  $r_1$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ; such exists because  $\mathcal{C}$  is an effective regular category. Note that the kernel pair of  $q : Y \rightarrow Z$  is  $r_0, r_1 : R \rightarrow Y$ . Now,  $q \circ r_0 = q \circ r_1$ , so we must have  $q \circ p_0 = q \circ p_1$  as well; but if  $f : Y \rightarrow T$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f \circ p_0 = f \circ p_1$ , then we must have  $f \circ q_0 = f \circ q_1$  (because  $e : X \rightarrow R$  is an epimorphism), and so there is a unique morphism  $\bar{f} : Z \rightarrow T$  such that  $\bar{f} \circ q = f$ . Thus,  $q : Y \rightarrow Z$  is also the coequaliser of  $p_0$  and  $p_1$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . ■

**A.7.26** DEFINITION. Let  $\kappa$  be a (not necessarily small) regular cardinal. A  **$\kappa$ -ary pretopos** is a category that is both  $\kappa$ -ary extensive and effective regular. A  **$\sigma$ -pretopos** is an  $\aleph_1$ -ary pretopos.

**A.7.27** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\kappa$  be a (not necessarily small) regular cardinal. A  $\kappa$ -ary pretopos is a (positive)  $\kappa$ -ary coherent category.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 5.15 in [Shulman, 2012]. □

**A.7.28** REMARK. The above proposition implies that our definition of ‘pretopos’ agrees with the one given by Johnstone [2002a, Part A, § 1.4].

**A.7.29** PROPOSITION. *Any epimorphism in a pretopos is a regular epimorphism.*

*Proof.* See Corollary 1.4.9 in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part A]. □

**A.7.30** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *Every  $\sigma$ -pretopos has coequalisers for all parallel pairs; hence, they have colimits for all countable diagrams.*
- (ii) *Every regular functor between  $\sigma$ -pretoposes that preserves coproducts for countable families also preserves coequalisers.*

*Proof.* (i). See Lemma 1.4.19 in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part A].

(ii). See Lemma 2.5.7 in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part A]. □

**A.7.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\kappa$  be a small regular cardinal. If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a small  $\kappa$ -ary pretopos, then there exist a Grothendieck topos  $\mathcal{E}$  and a fully faithful regular functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  that preserves coproducts for  $\kappa$ -small families of objects. Moreover, if  $\kappa$  is uncountable, then the embedding  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  also preserves coequalisers.*

*Proof.* By Theorem 5.15 in [Shulman, 2012], or Example 2.1.11(b) in [Johnstone, 2002a, Part A], we may take  $\mathcal{E}$  to be the category of sheaves for the  $\kappa$ -ary coherent topology on  $\mathcal{C}$ ; then apply proposition A.7.30.  $\square$

**A.7.32** THEOREM (Deligne). *For each small pretopos  $\mathcal{C}$ , there exist a set  $B$  and a conservative regular functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^B$  that preserves coproducts for finite families of objects.*

*Proof.* See Proposition 9.0 in [SGA 4b, Exposé VI], Corollary 3 in [ML–M, Ch. IX, § 11], or Proposition 3.3.13 in [Johnstone, 2002b, Part D].  $\square$

## A.8 Abelian categories

**Prerequisites.** §§ A.7, B.2, B.3, B.4.

Our primary references are [Freyd, 1964] (reprinted as [Freyd, 2004]) and [Borceux, 1994b]. We briefly recall some definitions, to establish conventions.

**A.8.1** DEFINITION. A **pointed category** is a category with a zero object, i.e. an object  $0$  that is both initial and terminal.

**A.8.2** EXAMPLE. For any category  $C$  with a terminal object  $1$ , the slice category  ${}^1/C$  is a pointed category. In particular,  $\mathbf{Set}_* = {}^1/\mathbf{Set}$  (the category of pointed sets) is a pointed category.

**A.8.3** REMARK. Regarding  $\mathbf{Set}_*$  as a symmetric monoidal category with the smash product  $\wedge$ , every locally small pointed category admits a unique  $\mathbf{Set}_*$ -enrichment: the distinguished morphism  $0$  between a pair of objects in a pointed category must be the unique morphism that factors through the zero object. However, not every  $\mathbf{Set}_*$ -enriched category is pointed.

**A.8.4** DEFINITION. A **pointed functor** is a functor between pointed categories that preserves zero objects.

**A.8.5** REMARK. A functor between locally small pointed categories is pointed if and only if it is compatible with the unique  $\mathbf{Set}_*$ -enrichments.

**A.8.6** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a pointed category.

- A **kernel** for a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  is a monomorphism  $\ker f : \text{Ker } f \rightarrow A$  in  $C$  such that morphisms  $a : X \rightarrow A$  in  $C$  factor through  $\ker f$  if and only if  $f \circ a = 0$ .
- A **cokernel** for a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  is an epimorphism  $\text{coker } f : B \rightarrow \text{Coker } f$  in  $C$  such that morphisms  $b : B \rightarrow Y$  in  $C$  factor through  $\text{coker } f$  if and only if  $b \circ f = 0$ .

**A.8.7** REMARK. It is straightforward to verify that a kernel (resp. cokernel) for  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is the same thing as an equaliser (resp. coequaliser) for  $f$  and  $0$ .

**A.8.8** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be a pointed category.

- A **normal monomorphism** in  $C$  is a morphism that is a kernel for some morphism in  $C$ .
- A **normal epimorphism** in  $C$  is an morphism that is a cokernel for some morphism in  $C$ .

**A.8.9** REMARK. By [remark A.8.7](#), every normal monomorphism (resp. epimorphism) is regular.

**A.8.10** DEFINITION. Let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in a pointed category  $C$ . A **biproduct** for  $A$  and  $B$  consists of

- an object  $A \oplus B$  in  $C$ ,
- morphisms  $i : A \rightarrow A \oplus B$  and  $j : B \rightarrow A \oplus B$  in  $C$ , and
- morphisms  $p : A \oplus B \rightarrow A$  and  $q : A \oplus B \rightarrow B$  in  $C$ ,

such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- The morphisms  $i$  and  $j$  make  $A \oplus B$  a coproduct for  $A$  and  $B$ .
- The morphisms  $p$  and  $q$  make  $A \oplus B$  a product for  $A$  and  $B$ .
- The equations shown below are satisfied:

$$\begin{array}{ll} p \circ i = \text{id}_A & p \circ j = 0 \\ q \circ i = 0 & q \circ j = \text{id}_B \end{array}$$

**A.8.11** REMARK. By the universal properties of coproducts and products, if  $e : A \oplus B \rightarrow A \oplus B$  is any morphism in  $C$  satisfying the equations shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ll} p \circ e \circ i = \text{id}_A & p \circ e \circ j = 0 \\ q \circ e \circ i = 0 & q \circ e \circ j = \text{id}_B \end{array}$$

then we must have  $e = \text{id}_{A \oplus B}$ . Moreover,  $i$  and  $j$  are determined by  $p$  and  $q$  and vice versa.

**A.8.12** DEFINITION. A **semi-additive category** is a category with a zero object and bi-products for all pairs of objects.

**A.8.13** EXAMPLE. **CMon** (the category of commutative monoids) is a semi-additive category.

**A.8.14** ¶ We always regard **CMon** as a symmetric monoidal closed category with the tensor product  $\otimes$  as the monoidal product.

**A.8.15** LEMMA. Let  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  be objects in a **CMon**-enriched category  $\underline{C}$ . The following are equivalent for morphisms  $i : A \rightarrow C$  and  $j : B \rightarrow C$  in  $\underline{C}$ .

- (i) The morphisms  $i : A \rightarrow C$  and  $j : B \rightarrow C$  make  $C$  a coproduct for  $A$  and  $B$ .
- (ii) There exist morphisms  $p : C \rightarrow A$  and  $q : C \rightarrow A$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that the equations shown below are satisfied:

$$\begin{array}{ll} p \circ i = \text{id}_A & p \circ j = 0 \\ q \circ i = 0 & q \circ j = \text{id}_B \end{array}$$

$$i \circ p + j \circ q = \text{id}_C$$

- (iii) There exist morphisms  $p : C \rightarrow A$  and  $q : C \rightarrow A$  such that  $(i, j, p, q)$  make  $C$  a biproduct for  $A$  and  $B$ .

Dually, the following are equivalent for morphisms  $p : C \rightarrow A$  and  $q : C \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$ :

- (i') The morphisms  $p : C \rightarrow A$  and  $q : C \rightarrow B$  make  $C$  a product for  $A$  and  $B$ .
- (ii') There exist morphisms  $i : A \rightarrow C$  and  $j : B \rightarrow C$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that the equations shown below are satisfied:

$$\begin{array}{ll} p \circ i = \text{id}_A & p \circ j = 0 \\ q \circ i = 0 & q \circ j = \text{id}_B \end{array}$$

$$i \circ p + j \circ q = \text{id}_C$$

- (iii') There exist morphisms  $i : A \rightarrow C$  and  $j : B \rightarrow C$  such that  $(i, j, p, q)$  make  $C$  a biproduct for  $A$  and  $B$ .

## A. GENERALITIES

---

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By the universal property of coproducts, there exist unique morphisms  $p : C \rightarrow A$  and  $q : C \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfying the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} p \circ i &= \text{id}_A & p \circ j &= 0 \\ q \circ i &= 0 & q \circ j &= \text{id}_B \end{aligned}$$

Moreover,

$$(i \circ p + j \circ q) \circ i = i \quad (i \circ p + j \circ q) \circ j = j$$

so we deduce that  $i \circ p + j \circ q = \text{id}_C$ , as required.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Let  $T$  be any object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and let  $f : T \rightarrow A$  and  $g : T \rightarrow B$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Clearly,

$$\begin{aligned} p \circ (i \circ f + j \circ g) &= f \\ q \circ (i \circ f + j \circ g) &= g \end{aligned}$$

and if  $h : T \rightarrow C$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $p \circ h = f$  and  $q \circ h = g$ , then

$$h = (i \circ p + j \circ q) \circ h = i \circ f + j \circ g$$

so  $p : C \rightarrow A$  and  $q : C \rightarrow B$  make  $C$  a product for  $A$  and  $B$ . The dual argument shows that  $i : A \rightarrow C$  and  $j : B \rightarrow C$  are coproduct insertions. Thus,  $i, j, p, q$  make  $C$  a biproduct for  $A$  and  $B$ .

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Immediate. ■

**A.8.16** COROLLARY. Any **CMon**-enriched functor preserves zero objects and biproducts (when they exist). ■

**A.8.17** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a **CMon**-enriched category with a zero object and biproducts, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and let  $f, g : A \rightarrow B$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then,

$$f + g = \nabla \circ (f \oplus g) \circ \Delta$$

where  $\Delta : A \rightarrow A \oplus A$  is the diagonal morphism and  $\nabla : B \oplus B \rightarrow B$  is the codiagonal morphism.

*Proof.* Let  $p, q : B \oplus B \rightarrow B$  be the two product projections. Using lemma A.8.15, it is straightforward to verify that  $\nabla = p + q$ . On the other hand,  $(f \oplus g) \circ \Delta = \langle f, g \rangle$ , so

$$\nabla \circ (f \oplus g) \circ \Delta = (p + q) \circ \langle f, g \rangle = f + g$$

as required. ■

**A.8.18** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  be a locally small category. If  $C$  is semi-additive, then it admits a unique **CMon**-enrichment.*

*Proof.* See Exercise 4 in [CWM, Ch. VIII, §2].

□ TODO: Find a proper reference for this.

**A.8.19** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be an semi-additive category, let  $A$  and  $B$  be objects in  $C$ , and let  $i : A \rightarrow A \oplus B$ ,  $j : B \rightarrow A \oplus B$ ,  $p : A \oplus B \rightarrow A$ , and  $q : A \oplus B \rightarrow B$  be the data of a biproduct in  $C$ .*

- *We have  $i = \ker q$  and  $j = \ker p$ .*
- *We have  $p = \operatorname{coker} j$  and  $q = \operatorname{coker} i$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

By definition,  $q \circ i = 0$  and  $p \circ j = 0$ . Let  $x : X \rightarrow A \oplus B$  be a morphism in  $C$ . By lemma A.8.15 (and theorem A.8.18),

$$x = (i \circ p + j \circ q) \circ x$$

so if  $p \circ x = 0$ , then  $x = j \circ (q \circ x)$ , and if  $q \circ x = 0$ , then  $x = i \circ (p \circ x)$ . Thus  $j = \ker p$  and  $i = \ker q$ , as claimed. ■

**A.8.20** DEFINITION. An **additive category** is a semi-additive category  $C$  that satisfies the following additional axiom:

- For every morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$ , there is a (necessarily unique) morphism  $-f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  such that

$$\nabla \circ (-f \oplus f) \circ \Delta = 0$$

where  $\Delta : A \rightarrow A \oplus A$  is the diagonal morphism and  $\nabla : B \oplus B \rightarrow B$  is the codiagonal morphism.

**A.8.21** ¶ We always regard **Ab** as a symmetric monoidal closed category with the tensor product  $\otimes$  as the monoidal product.

**A.8.22** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  be a locally small category. If  $C$  is additive, then it admits a unique **Ab**-enrichment.*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward consequence of theorem A.8.18. ■

**A.8.23** LEMMA. Let  $f_0, f_1 : A \rightarrow B$  be a parallel pair of morphisms in an additive category  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- The kernel of  $f_0 - f_1$  is the equaliser of  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ , in the sense that one exists if and only if the other exists and they are isomorphic when both exist.
- The cokernel of  $f_0 - f_1$  is the coequaliser of  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ , in the sense that one exists if and only if the other exists and they are isomorphic when both exist.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First, suppose  $\ker(f_0 - f_1)$  exists in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $a : X \rightarrow A$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $f_0 \circ a = f_1 \circ a$ . Then  $(f_0 - f_1) \circ a = 0$ , so  $a : X \rightarrow A$  factors (uniquely) through  $\ker(f_0 - f_1)$ , as required.

Conversely, suppose  $e : E \rightarrow A$  is the equaliser of  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $a : X \rightarrow A$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $(f_0 - f_1) \circ a = 0$ . Then  $f_0 \circ a = f_1 \circ a$ , so  $a : X \rightarrow A$  factors (uniquely) through  $e : E \rightarrow A$ , as required. ■

**A.8.24** DEFINITION. An **additive** (resp. **semi-additive**) **functor** is a functor between additive (resp. semi-additive) categories that preserves zero objects and biproducts.

**A.8.25** REMARK. By lemma A.8.15 and theorem A.8.22 (resp. theorem A.8.18), a functor between locally small additive (resp. semi-additive) categories is additive (resp. semi-additive) if and only if it is compatible with the unique **Ab**-enrichments (resp. **CMon**-enrichments).

**A.8.26** DEFINITION. An **abelian category** is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  that satisfies the following axioms:

- $\mathcal{C}$  has a zero object.
- $\mathcal{C}$  has binary products and binary coproducts.
- Every morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  has a kernel and a cokernel.
- Every monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is normal and every epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is normal.

**A.8.27** EXAMPLE. **Ab** (the category of abelian groups) is an abelian category.



**A.8.28** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be an abelian category.*

- *If  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is a monomorphism in  $C$ , then  $f = \ker \operatorname{coker} f$ .*
- *If  $g : B \rightarrow C$  is an epimorphism in  $C$ , then  $g = \operatorname{coker} \ker g$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.11 in [Freyd, 1964]. □

**A.8.29** PROPOSITION. *An abelian category has limits and colimits for all finite diagrams.*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.14 in [Freyd, 1964] or Proposition 1.5.3 in [Borceux, 1994b]. □

**A.8.30** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be an abelian category.*

- *A morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  is a monomorphism if and only if  $\ker f = 0$ .*
- *A morphism  $g : B \rightarrow C$  in  $C$  is an epimorphism if and only if  $\operatorname{coker} g = 0$ .*

*Proof.* See Theorem 2.17 in [Freyd, 1964] or Proposition 1.5.4 in [Borceux, 1994b]. □

**A.8.31** THEOREM. *Let  $C$  be an abelian category.*

- (i)  *$C$  is an additive category.*
- (ii)  *$C$  is a regular category.*

*Proof.* (i). See Theorems 2.35 and 2.39 in [Freyd, 1964] or Theorem 1.6.4 in [Borceux, 1994b].

(ii). See Theorem 2.54 in [Freyd, 1964] or (the dual of) Proposition 1.7.6 in [Borceux, 1994b]. □

**A.8.32** DEFINITION. *Let  $C$  be an abelian category.*

- An **image** for a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  is a monomorphism  $\operatorname{im} f : \operatorname{Im} f \rightarrow B$  for which there exists a (necessarily unique) epimorphism  $e : A \rightarrow \operatorname{Im} f$  such that  $(\operatorname{im} f) \circ e = f$ .
- A **coimage** for a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  is an epimorphism  $\operatorname{coim} f : A \rightarrow \operatorname{Coim} f$  for which there exists a (necessarily unique) monomorphism  $m : \operatorname{Coim} f \rightarrow B$  such that  $m \circ \operatorname{coim} f = f$ .

**A.8.33** REMARK. Thus, if  $f = m \circ e$  for some epimorphism  $e : A \rightarrow I$  and monomorphism  $m : I \rightarrow B$ , then  $e$  is a coimage for  $f$  and  $m$  is an image for  $f$ .

**A.8.34** PROPOSITION. *In an abelian category  $\mathcal{C}$ , images and coimages exist and are unique up to unique isomorphism. Moreover, for any  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,  $\text{im } f = \ker \text{coker } f$  (as subobjects of  $B$ ) and  $\text{coim } f = \text{coker } \ker f$  (as quotients of  $A$ ).*

*Proof.* See Theorems 2.16, 2.18, and 2.19 in [Freyd, 1964] or Theorem 1.5.5 in [Borceux, 1994b].  $\square$

**A.8.35** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be abelian categories and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a pointed functor.*

- *Assuming  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves kernels,  $F$  preserves epimorphisms if and only if  $F$  preserves cokernels.*
- *Assuming  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves cokernels,  $F$  preserves monomorphisms if and only if  $F$  preserves kernels.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First, suppose  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves kernels and epimorphisms. Then, by proposition A.8.34,  $F$  must preserve images and coimages. Let  $f : A \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . By lemma A.8.28,  $\text{coker } f = \text{coker } \ker \text{coker } f$  and  $F(\text{coker } f) = \text{coker } \ker F(\text{coker } f)$ ; but  $\ker F(\text{coker } f) = F(\ker \text{coker } f) = F(\text{coim } f)$ , and we know  $F(\text{coim } f) = \text{coim } Ff$ , so we deduce that  $F(\text{coker } f) = \text{coker } \ker \text{coker } Ff = \text{coker } Ff$ , as required.

Conversely, if  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves cokernels, then it must preserve normal epimorphisms, and every epimorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  is normal.  $\blacksquare$

**A.8.36** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be abelian categories and let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor.*

- *Assuming  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves finite limits,  $F$  preserves epimorphisms if and only if  $F$  preserves finite colimits.*
- *Assuming  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserves finite colimits,  $F$  preserves monomorphisms if and only if  $F$  preserves finite limits.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor that preserves finite limits. Clearly,  $F$  is an additive functor (i.e. preserves zero objects and biproducts). Thus, recalling theorem A.8.22, lemma A.8.23, and theorem A.8.31,  $F$  preserves finite colimits if

and only if  $F$  preserves cokernels. Thus the claim is reduced to [lemma A.8.30](#). ■

**A.8.37** THEOREM. *For each small abelian category  $C$ , there exist a set  $B$  and a conservative regular functor  $C \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}^B$ ; moreover, any such functor also preserves finite colimits.*

*Proof.* By theorems [A.7.22](#) and [A.8.31](#), there exist a set  $B$  and a conservative regular functor  $U : C \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}^B$ . Let  $\mathbf{Ab}(C)$  be the category of internal abelian groups in  $C$ . Since  $U$  preserves finite products, we obtain the following commutative diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Ab}(C) & \longrightarrow & C \\ \downarrow V & & \downarrow U \\ \mathbf{Ab}^B & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Set}^B \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the respective forgetful functors. It is straightforward to verify that the forgetful functor  $\mathbf{Ab}(C) \rightarrow C$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects, so recalling [remark A.8.9](#), it follows that  $V$  preserves regular epimorphisms. Since the forgetful functors are conservative and create finite limits, it follows that  $V$  is conservative and preserves finite limits. Thus we have the required conservative regular functor  $C \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}^B$ , and by [proposition A.8.36](#), it also preserves finite colimits. ■

**A.8.38** COROLLARY. *Every abelian category is an effective regular category.*

*Proof.* Let  $C$  be an abelian category. By enlarging the universe if necessary, we may assume  $C$  is small. Then by [theorem A.8.37](#), we have a set  $B$  and a conservative functor  $V : C \rightarrow \mathbf{Ab}^B$  that preserves both finite limits and finite colimits. Since  $V$  is conservative, it also reflects finite limits and finite colimits. Thus the claim is reduced to the well-known fact that  $\mathbf{Ab}^B$  is an effective regular category. ■

**A.8.39** LEMMA. *Let  $C$  be an abelian category.*

- Consider a commutative diagram in  $C$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathrm{Ker} f & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ker} f} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ \downarrow u & & \downarrow v & & \downarrow w \\ \mathrm{Ker} g & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ker} g} & C & \xrightarrow{g} & D \end{array}$$

If  $w : B \rightarrow D$  is a monomorphism, then the left square is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Conversely, assuming  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is an epimorphism, if the left square is a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $w : B \rightarrow D$  is a monomorphism.

- Consider a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  of the form below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{\text{coker } f} & \text{Coker } f \\ u \downarrow & & v \downarrow & & \downarrow w \\ C & \xrightarrow{g} & D & \xrightarrow{\text{coker } g} & \text{Coker } g \end{array}$$

If  $u : A \rightarrow C$  is an epimorphism, then the right square is a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Conversely, assuming  $g : C \rightarrow D$  is a monomorphism, if the right square is a pushout diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then  $u : A \rightarrow C$  is an epimorphism.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

First, suppose  $w : B \rightarrow D$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $a : X \rightarrow A$  and  $c' : X \rightarrow \text{Ker } g$  be morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $v \circ a = (\text{ker } g) \circ c'$ . Then,

$$w \circ f \circ a = g \circ v \circ a = g \circ (\text{ker } g) \circ c' = 0$$

so  $f \circ a = 0$  and therefore there is a unique  $a' : X \rightarrow \text{Ker } f$  such that  $a = (\text{ker } f) \circ a'$ . Moreover,

$$(\text{ker } g) \circ u \circ a' = v \circ (\text{ker } f) \circ a' = v \circ a = (\text{ker } g) \circ c'$$

so  $u \circ a' = c'$ . Thus we indeed have a pullback diagram.

Conversely, suppose  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is an epimorphism and we have a pullback diagram. Let  $b : Y \rightarrow B$  be a morphism such that  $w \circ b = 0$ . By [theorem A.8.31](#), we can form a pullback diagram in  $\mathcal{C}$  as shown below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{p} & Y \\ a \downarrow & & \downarrow b \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array}$$

where  $p : X \twoheadrightarrow Y$  is an epimorphism. Then,

$$g \circ v \circ a = w \circ f \circ a = w \circ b \circ p = 0$$

so there is a unique morphism  $c' : X \rightarrow \text{Ker } g$  such that  $(\text{ker } g) \circ c' = v \circ a$ , and hence a unique morphism  $a' : X \rightarrow \text{Ker } f$  such that  $(\text{ker } f) \circ a' = a$  and  $u \circ a' = c'$ . Thus,

$$b \circ p = f \circ a = f \circ (\text{ker } f) \circ a' = 0$$

and therefore  $b = 0$ . In particular,  $\text{ker } w = 0$ , so by [lemma A.8.30](#),  $w : C \rightarrow D$  is indeed a monomorphism. ■

**A.8.40** DEFINITION. Let  $C$  be an abelian category.

- $C$  satisfies **axiom AB3** if  $C$  is locally small and has colimits for small diagrams.
- $C$  satisfies **axiom AB4** if  $C$  satisfies axiom AB3 and the full subcategory of  $[2, C]$  spanned by the monomorphisms is closed under coproducts for small families.
- $C$  satisfies **axiom AB5** if  $C$  satisfies axiom AB3 and the full subcategory of  $[2, C]$  spanned by the monomorphisms is closed under colimits for small filtered diagrams.

Dually:

- $C$  satisfies **axiom AB3\*** if  $C$  is locally small and has limits for small diagrams.
- $C$  satisfies **axiom AB4\*** if  $C$  satisfies axiom AB3\* and the full subcategory of  $[2, C]$  spanned by the epimorphisms is closed under products for small families.
- $C$  satisfies **axiom AB5\*** if  $C$  satisfies axiom AB3\* and the full subcategory of  $[2, C]$  spanned by the epimorphisms is closed under limits for small cofiltered diagrams.<sup>[1]</sup>

**A.8.41** EXAMPLE. **Ab** satisfies axioms AB4 and AB4\* as well as axiom AB5.

---

[1] A **cofiltered diagram** is a diagram whose shape is the *opposite* of a filtered diagram.

**A.8.42** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be an abelian category.*

- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfies axiom AB5, then  $\mathcal{C}$  also satisfies axiom AB4.*
- *If  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfies axiom AB5\*, then  $\mathcal{C}$  also satisfies axiom AB4\*.*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $I$  be a set, and for each  $i$  in  $I$ , let  $f_i : A_i \rightarrow B_i$  be a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then, for each finite subset  $J \subseteq I$ , define

$$f_J = \bigoplus_{j \in J} f_j : \bigoplus_{j \in J} A_j \rightarrow \bigoplus_{j \in J} B_j$$

and note that  $f_J$  is a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $\mathcal{J}$  be the poset of finite subsets of  $I$ . It is clear that  $J \mapsto f_J$  is (the object part of) a diagram  $\mathcal{J} \rightarrow [2, \mathcal{C}]$ , and moreover,

$$\bigoplus_{i \in I} f_i \cong \varinjlim_{J \in \mathcal{J}} f_J$$

so if  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfies axiom AB5, then  $\bigoplus_{i \in I} f_i$  is indeed a monomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ . ■

## HIGHER GENERALITIES

### B.I Monoidal categories

Standard references for monoidal categories include [CWM, Ch. VII and Ch. XI] and [Kelly, 2005, Ch. 1]. To fix notation, we will quickly review the main definitions in the theory of monoidal categories.

**B.I.I** DEFINITION. A **strict monoidal category** is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  together with an object  $I$  and a functor  $\otimes : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  satisfying the following axioms:

- (Left unit).  $I \otimes (-) = \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .
- (Right unit).  $(-) \otimes I = \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .
- (Associativity). For all objects  $X, Y$ , and  $Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ ,

$$(X \otimes Y) \otimes Z = X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)$$

and similarly for morphisms in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

$I$  is called the **monoidal unit**, and  $\otimes$  is called the **monoidal product**.

In short, a strict monoidal category is an internal monoid in the metacategory of all categories.

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

**B.I.2** EXAMPLE. For any category  $\mathcal{C}$ , the endofunctor category  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$  is a strict monoidal category with  $\text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$  as the monoidal unit and endofunctor composition as the monoidal product.

Despite the above example, strict monoidal categories turn out to be less useful than one might hope: not even **Set** equipped with the usual cartesian product is a strict monoidal category.<sup>[1]</sup> The problem is in the *equations* we have imposed in the axioms above: in naturally-occurring examples, we do not get *identities* but only natural isomorphisms. This observation led Bénabou [1963] to propose the following notion instead:

**B.I.3** DEFINITION. A **monoidal category** is a category  $\mathcal{C}$  together with an object  $I$ , a functor  $(-) \otimes (-) : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ , and three natural isomorphisms  $\lambda$ ,  $\rho$ , and  $\alpha$ ,<sup>[2]</sup> of type

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda_X &: I \otimes X \xrightarrow{\cong} X \\ \rho_X &: X \otimes I \xrightarrow{\cong} X \\ \alpha_{X,Y,Z} &: (X \otimes Y) \otimes Z \xrightarrow{\cong} X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)\end{aligned}$$

such that the following diagrams commute for all choices of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & (W \otimes (X \otimes Y)) \otimes Z & \\ \alpha_{W,X,Y} \otimes \text{id}_Z \nearrow & & \searrow \alpha_{W,X \otimes Y,Z} \\ ((W \otimes X) \otimes Y) \otimes Z & & (W \otimes ((X \otimes Y) \otimes Z)) \\ \alpha_{W \otimes X,Y,Z} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_W \otimes \alpha_{X,Y,Z} \\ (W \otimes X) \otimes (Y \otimes Z) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{W,X,Y \otimes Z}} & W \otimes (X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)) \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (X \otimes I) \otimes Y & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{X,I,Y}} & X \otimes (I \otimes Y) \\ \rho_X \otimes \text{id}_Y \searrow & & \swarrow \text{id}_X \otimes \lambda_Y \\ & X \otimes Y & \end{array}$$

The natural isomorphisms  $\lambda$ ,  $\rho$ , and  $\alpha$  are called, respectively, the **left unitor**, **right unitor**, and **associator** of the monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ .

[1] In fact, even if we identify all isomorphic objects, there is still a problem: see the closing remarks in [CWM, Ch. VII, § 1].

[2] Beware: Mac Lane [CWM, Ch. VII] uses the opposite convention for  $\alpha$ .



**B.I.4** REMARK. Since  $\lambda$ ,  $\rho$ , and  $\alpha$  are natural *isomorphisms*, a monoidal structure on  $\mathcal{C}$  induces a monoidal structure on  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}$ . Less obviously, we can define a monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{rev}}$  whose underlying category is the same as  $\mathcal{C}$ , but  $X \otimes^{\text{rev}} Y = Y \otimes X$ ,  $\lambda^{\text{rev}} = \rho$ ,  $\rho^{\text{rev}} = \lambda$ , and  $\alpha^{\text{rev}} = \alpha^{-1}$ .

**B.I.5** ¶ A fairly non-trivial theorem of Mac Lane [1963] and Kelly [1964] essentially states that these two axioms are enough to prove that “all diagrams involving only  $\lambda$ ,  $\rho$ , and  $\alpha$  commute”. For example, using the pentagon axiom and the triangle axiom, we may derive

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (I \otimes X) \otimes Y & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{I,X,Y}} & I \otimes (X \otimes Y) \\ & \searrow \lambda_X \otimes \text{id}_Y \quad \swarrow \lambda_{X \otimes Y} & \\ & X \otimes Y & \end{array}$$

from which the equation (!) below can be obtained:

$$\lambda_I = \rho_I$$

**B.I.6** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be monoidal categories.

- A **lax monoidal functor**  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  consists of a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  of the underlying categories, together with a morphism  $\eta : I_{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow FI_{\mathcal{C}}$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  and a natural transformation  $\mu$  of type  $F(-) \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} F(-) \Rightarrow F(- \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} -)$  making these diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} I_{\mathcal{D}} \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FX & \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes \text{id}_{FX}} & FI_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FX \\ \lambda_{FX} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{I_{\mathcal{C}}, X} \\ FX & \xleftarrow{F\lambda_X} & F(I_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} X) \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} I_{\mathcal{D}} & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{FX} \otimes \eta} & FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FI_{\mathcal{C}} \\ \rho_{FX} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{X, I_{\mathcal{C}}} \\ FX & \xleftarrow{F\rho_X} & F(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} I_{\mathcal{C}}) \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FY) \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FZ & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{FX, FY, FZ}} & FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} (FY \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FZ) \\ \mu_{X, Y} \otimes \text{id}_{FZ} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{FX} \otimes \mu_{Y, Z} \\ F(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FZ & & FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} F(Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z) \\ \mu_{X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y, Z} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{X, Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z} \\ F((X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z) & \xrightarrow{F\alpha_{X, Y, Z}} & F(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} (Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z)) \end{array}$$

- An **oplax monoidal functor**  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a lax monoidal functor  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}^{\text{op}}$ .

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

- A **strong monoidal functor** is a lax monoidal functor such that  $\eta$  and  $\mu$  are isomorphisms.
- A **strict monoidal functor** is a lax monoidal functor such that  $\eta$  and  $\mu$  are *identities*.

**B.I.7** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be monoidal categories and let  $F, F' : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be lax monoidal functors. A **monoidal natural transformation**  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  is a natural transformation making the following diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} I_{\mathcal{D}} & \xrightarrow{\eta} & FI_{\mathcal{C}} \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \varphi_{I_{\mathcal{C}}} \\ I_{\mathcal{D}} & \xrightarrow{\eta'} & F'I_{\mathcal{C}} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FY & \xrightarrow{\mu_{X,Y}} & F(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \\ \varphi_X \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} \varphi_Y \downarrow & & \downarrow \varphi_{X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y} \\ F'X \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} F'Y & \xrightarrow{\mu'_{X,Y}} & F'(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \end{array}$$

**B.I.8** REMARK. Note that if  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are both strict monoidal categories, then the diagrams above simplify to more familiar ones:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FX & \xrightarrow{\eta \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} \text{id}_{FX}} & FI_{\mathcal{C}} \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FX \\ & \searrow \text{id}_{FX} & \downarrow \mu_{I_{\mathcal{C}}, X} \\ & & FX \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} FX & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_{FX} \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} \eta} & FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FI_{\mathcal{C}} \\ & \searrow \text{id}_{FX} & \downarrow \mu_{X, I_{\mathcal{C}}} \\ & & FX \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FY \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FZ & \\ \mu_{X,Y} \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} \text{id}_{FZ} \swarrow & & \searrow \text{id}_{FX} \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} \mu_{Y,Z} \\ F(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FZ & & FX \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} F(Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z) \\ \mu_{X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y, Z} \searrow & & \swarrow \mu_{X, Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z} \\ & F(X \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} Z) & \end{array}$$

Thus, we see one reason for defining lax monoidal functors as we have done: if  $\mathbb{1}$  is the terminal category, then a lax monoidal functor  $\mathbb{1} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is the same thing as an internal monoid<sup>[3]</sup> in  $\mathcal{D}$ , and a monoidal natural transformation of such lax monoidal functors is the same thing as a homomorphism of internal monoids.

Many natural examples of monoidal categories have a “commutative” monoidal product. For example, the cartesian product in any category satisfies  $X \times$

[3] — in the monoidal category sense, of course.

$Y \cong Y \times X$ . As usual, to do anything useful, we must demand not only the existence of such isomorphisms but also that they be natural and coherent in the following sense:

**B.I.9** DEFINITION. A **braided monoidal category** is a monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  together with a natural isomorphism  $\gamma$  of type

$$\gamma_{X,Y} : X \otimes Y \xrightarrow{\cong} Y \otimes X$$

such that the following diagrams commute for all choices of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & X \otimes (Y \otimes Z) & & \\
 & \nearrow \alpha_{X,Y,Z} & & \searrow \gamma_{X,Y \otimes Z} & \\
 (X \otimes Y) \otimes Z & & & & (Y \otimes Z) \otimes X \\
 \downarrow \gamma_{X,Y} \otimes \text{id}_Z & & & & \downarrow \alpha_{Y,Z,X} \\
 (Y \otimes X) \otimes Z & & & & Y \otimes (Z \otimes X) \\
 & \searrow \alpha_{Y,X,Z} & & \nearrow \text{id}_Y \otimes \gamma_{X,Z} & \\
 & & Y \otimes (X \otimes Z) & & 
 \end{array} \\
 \\
 \begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & (X \otimes Y) \otimes Z & & \\
 & \nearrow \alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{-1} & & \searrow \gamma_{X \otimes Y,Z} & \\
 X \otimes (Y \otimes Z) & & & & Z \otimes (X \otimes Y) \\
 \downarrow \text{id}_X \otimes \gamma_{Y,Z} & & & & \downarrow \alpha_{Y,Z,X}^{-1} \\
 X \otimes (Z \otimes Y) & & & & (Z \otimes X) \otimes Y \\
 & \searrow \alpha_{Y,X,Z}^{-1} & & \nearrow \gamma_{X,Z} \otimes \text{id}_Y & \\
 & & (X \otimes Z) \otimes Y & & 
 \end{array} \\
 \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 I \otimes X & \xrightarrow{\gamma_{I,X}} & X \otimes I \\
 \searrow \lambda_X & & \swarrow \rho_X \\
 & X & 
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

The natural isomorphism  $\gamma$  is called the **braiding** of  $\mathcal{C}$ . A **symmetric monoidal category** is a braided monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$  satisfying the following additional axiom:

$$\gamma \circ \gamma = \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$$

A **braided / symmetric strict monoidal category** is a braided / symmetric monoidal category that is strict as a monoidal category.

**B.I.10** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be braided monoidal categories. A **lax / oplax / strong / strict braided monoidal functor**  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is a lax / oplax / strong / strict monoidal functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  making the diagram below commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FX \otimes_D FY & \xrightarrow{\mu_{X,Y}} & F(X \otimes_C Y) \\ \gamma_{FX,FY} \downarrow & & \downarrow F\gamma_{X,Y} \\ FY \otimes_D FX & \xrightarrow{\mu_{Y,X}} & F(Y \otimes_C X) \end{array}$$

**B.I.11** REMARK. The appropriate notion of natural transformation for lax braided monoidal functors is precisely that of a monoidal natural transformation: we need not impose any extra conditions.

Here is an example of an equation that does *not* necessarily hold in a braided monoidal category, even though they have the same domain and codomain:

$$\gamma_{X,Y} \stackrel{?}{=} \gamma_{Y,X}^{-1}$$

Indeed, if it were true, then every braided monoidal category would be a symmetric monoidal category! On the other hand, in a symmetric strict monoidal category, it is true that any two composites of braiding operations with the same domain and codomain are equal – provided each object is identified with a different letter, so that we do not get absurdities like this:

$$\gamma_{X,X} \stackrel{?}{=} \text{id}_{X \otimes X}$$

A similar restriction applies to our claim that “all diagrams commute” in a monoidal category, so it is not unreasonable to say the same is true in a symmetric monoidal category.

We pause briefly to indicate an important special case of a symmetric monoidal category.

**B.I.12** DEFINITION. A **cartesian monoidal category** is a category with products for all finite families of objects, and a **cartesian monoidal functor** is a functor between cartesian monoidal categories that preserves all finite products.

**B.I.13** PROPOSITION.

- (i) *A category with all finite products is automatically a symmetric monoidal category, with the terminal object 1 as its monoidal unit and the cartesian product  $\times$  as the monoidal product.*
- (ii) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  are two categories with finite products regarded as symmetric monoidal categories, then every functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  can be equipped with a canonical oplax braided monoidal functor structure.*
- (iii) *A cartesian monoidal functor is canonically equipped with the structure of a strong braided monoidal functor.*

*Proof.* (i). The verification of the axioms is straightforward and left to the reader as an exercise.

(ii). Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor. The universal property of the terminal object gives a unique morphism  $\epsilon : F1 \rightarrow 1$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , and the universal property of binary products gives a canonical morphism  $\delta_{X,Y} : F(X \times Y) \rightarrow FX \times FY$ . It can be shown that the diagrams below commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F(1_{\mathcal{C}} \times_{\mathcal{C}} X) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{1_{\mathcal{C}},X}} & F1_{\mathcal{C}} \times_{\mathcal{D}} FX \\
 F\lambda_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \epsilon \times_D \text{id}_{FX} \\
 FX & \xleftarrow{\lambda_{FX}} & 1_{\mathcal{D}} \times_{\mathcal{D}} FX
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 F(X \times_{\mathcal{C}} 1_{\mathcal{C}}) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{X,1_{\mathcal{C}}}} & FX \times_{\mathcal{D}} F1_{\mathcal{C}} \\
 F\rho_X \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{FX} \times_D \epsilon \\
 FX & \xleftarrow{\rho_{FX}} & FX \times_{\mathcal{D}} 1_{\mathcal{D}}
 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F((X \times_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \times_{\mathcal{C}} Z) & \xrightarrow{F\alpha_{X,Y,Z}} & F(X \times_{\mathcal{C}} (Y \times_{\mathcal{C}} Z)) \\
 \delta_{X \times_{\mathcal{C}} Y, Z} \downarrow & & \downarrow \delta_{X, Y \times_{\mathcal{C}} Z} \\
 F(X \times_{\mathcal{C}} Y) \times_{\mathcal{D}} FZ & & FX \times_{\mathcal{D}} F(Y \times_{\mathcal{C}} Z) \\
 \delta_{X,Y} \times_D \text{id}_{FZ} \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{id}_{FX} \times_D \delta_{Y,Z} \\
 (FX \times_{\mathcal{D}} FY) \times_{\mathcal{D}} FZ & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{FX,FY,FZ}} & FX \times_{\mathcal{D}} (FY \times_{\mathcal{D}} FZ)
 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F(X \times_{\mathcal{C}} Y) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{X,Y}} & FX \times_{\mathcal{D}} FY \\
 F\gamma_{X,Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow \gamma_{FX,FY} \\
 F(Y \otimes_{\mathcal{C}} X) & \xrightarrow{\delta_{Y,X}} & FY \otimes_{\mathcal{D}} FX
 \end{array}$$

making  $F$  into an oplax braided monoidal functor  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ .

(iii). A functor is cartesian monoidal precisely if  $\varepsilon$  and  $\delta$  as defined above are isomorphisms.  $\diamond$

**B.I.I4** DEFINITION. Let  $Y$  and  $Z$  be objects in a monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ .

- A **right internal hom object** for  $Y$  and  $Z$  is an object  $\mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  together with a morphism  $\text{ev}_{Y,Z} : \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z) \otimes Y \rightarrow Z$  having the following universal property: for all morphisms  $f : X \otimes Y \rightarrow Z$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a unique morphism  $\tilde{f} : X \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $\text{ev}_{Y,Z} \circ (\tilde{f} \otimes \text{id}_Y) = f$ ; equivalently,  $\mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  equipped with bijections

$$\mathcal{C}(X \otimes Y, Z) \cong \mathcal{C}(X, \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z))$$

that are natural for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We may also write  $[Y, Z]$  or  $Y \multimap Z$  for a right internal hom object for  $Y$  and  $Z$ .

- A **left internal hom object** for  $Y$  and  $Z$  is a right internal hom object  $Y \multimap Z$  in the reverse monoidal structure on  $\mathcal{C}$ ; equivalently,  $Y \multimap Z$  is an object equipped with bijections

$$\mathcal{C}(Y \otimes X, Z) \cong \mathcal{C}(X, Y \multimap Z)$$

that are natural for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We may also write  $Z^Y$  or  $Z \multimap Y$  for a left internal hom object for  $Y$  and  $Z$ .

- A **right-closed monoidal category** is a monoidal category that has right internal hom object for all pairs of objects.
- A **left-closed monoidal category** is a monoidal category that has left internal hom objects for all pairs of objects.
- A **biclosed monoidal category** is a monoidal category that is both left-closed and right-closed.

Note that in a symmetric monoidal category,  $Y \multimap Z$  and  $\mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)$  are naturally isomorphic if they exist; a **symmetric monoidal closed category** is a symmetric monoidal category that is biclosed.

**B.I.15** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a right-closed monoidal category.*

- (i) *The assignment  $(Y, Z) \mapsto \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)$  extends to a functor  $\mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  making the bijection*

$$\mathcal{C}(X \otimes Y, Z) \cong \mathcal{C}(X, \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z))$$

*natural in  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$ .*

- (ii) *For each object  $Y$ , we have an adjunction*

$$(-) \otimes Y \dashv \mathcal{H}om(Y, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$$

*whose counit is  $\text{ev}_{Y,-} : \mathcal{H}om(Y, -) \otimes Y \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}}$ .*

- (iii) *If  $I$  is the monoidal unit of  $\mathcal{C}$ , then there is a bijection*

$$\mathcal{C}(Y, Z) \cong \mathcal{C}(I, \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z))$$

*that is natural in  $Y$  and  $Z$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This is a straightforward example of an adjunction with a parameter.<sup>[4]</sup>

(ii). This is clear from the definition of  $\mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)$  and  $\text{ev}_{Y,-}$ .

(iii). The left unitor  $\lambda_Y : Y \xrightarrow{\cong} I \otimes Y$  induces the required bijection. ■

**B.I.16** REMARK. A cartesian monoidal category is a closed symmetric monoidal category if and only if it is a cartesian closed category ([definition A.2.3](#)).

---

[4] See [\[CWM, Ch. IV, § 7\]](#).

## B.2 Enriched categories

**Prerequisites.** §O.I, B.I.

In this section, we use the explicit universe convention.

**B.2.I** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category. A  $\mathcal{V}$ -**enriched category**  $\underline{C}$  consists of the following data:

- A set of objects,  $\text{ob } C$ .
- For each pair  $(A, B)$  of elements of  $\text{ob } C$ , an object  $\underline{C}(A, B)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .
- For each element  $A$  of  $\text{ob } C$ , a morphism  $e_A : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, A)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .
- For each triple  $(A, B, C)$  of elements of  $\text{ob } C$ , a morphism

$$c_{C,B,A} : \underline{C}(B, C) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, C)$$

such that the following diagrams in  $\mathcal{V}$  commute,

$$(L) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} I \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{e_B \otimes \text{id}} & \underline{C}(B, B) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \\ & \searrow \lambda & \downarrow c_{B,B,A} \\ & & \underline{C}(B, A) \end{array}$$

$$(R) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes I & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \otimes e_A} & \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes \underline{C}(A, A) \\ & \searrow \rho & \downarrow c_{B,A,A} \\ & & \underline{C}(A, B) \end{array}$$

$$(A) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}(C, D) \otimes \underline{C}(B, C) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\text{id} \otimes c_{C,B,A}} & \underline{C}(C, D) \otimes \underline{C}(A, C) \\ c_{D,C,B} \otimes \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow c_{D,C,A} \\ \underline{C}(B, D) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{c_{D,B,A}} & \underline{C}(A, D) \end{array}$$

where in the last diagram we have suppressed the associator of  $\mathcal{V}$ .



**B.2.2** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe and let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small monoidal category.

- A  **$\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -category  $\underline{C}$  where  $\text{ob } C$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -set.
- A **locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -category where  $\text{ob } C$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -class.

**B.2.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category. The **underlying ordinary category** of  $\underline{C}$  is the category  $C$  where:

- The objects in  $C$  are the objects in  $\underline{C}$ .
- The morphisms  $A \rightarrow B$  in  $C$  are the morphisms  $I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, B)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .
- For each object  $A$ ,  $\text{id}_A : A \rightarrow A$  is  $e_A : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, A)$  regarded as a morphism in  $C$ .
- Given morphisms  $f : A \rightarrow B$  and  $g : B \rightarrow C$  in  $C$  corresponding to morphisms  $f : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, B)$  and  $g : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(B, C)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , the composite  $g \circ f : A \rightarrow C$  is the morphism in  $C$  corresponding to  $c_{C,B,A} \circ (g \otimes f) \circ \lambda_I^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

We refer to  $\underline{C}$  as a  **$\mathcal{V}$ -enrichment** of  $C$  if  $C$  is (isomorphic to) the underlying ordinary category of  $\underline{C}$ .

**B.2.4** REMARK. Given a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{C}$ , there is an evident  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{rev}}$ -enriched category  $\underline{C}^{\text{op}}$  whose underlying ordinary category is  $C^{\text{op}}$ . If we assume  $\mathcal{V}$  is a *symmetric* monoidal category, we can also identify  $\underline{C}^{\text{op}}$  with a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category.

**B.2.5** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category. Then  $\mathcal{V}$  is (isomorphic to) the underlying category of a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}$  where:

- The objects are the objects in  $\mathcal{V}$ .
- We have  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}(A, B) = \mathcal{H}om(A, B)$ .
- For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ ,  $e_A : I \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(A, A)$  is the right adjoint transpose of  $\lambda_A : I \otimes A \rightarrow A$ .

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

- For each triple  $(A, B, C)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{V}$ ,

$$c_{C,B,A} : \underline{\mathcal{V}}(B, C) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(A, C)$$

is the right adjoint transpose of the following morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$ :

$$\text{ev}_{B,C} \circ (\text{id} \otimes \text{ev}_{A,B}) \circ \alpha : (\underline{\mathcal{V}}(B, C) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(A, B)) \otimes A \rightarrow C$$

*Proof.* Straightforward, if tedious. ◆

**B.2.6** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories. A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  consists of the following data:

- A map  $F : \text{ob } C \rightarrow \text{ob } D$ .
- For each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $C$ , a morphism  $\underline{F}_{A,B} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, FB)$ , such that the following diagrams in  $\mathcal{V}$  commute:

$$(U) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} I & \xrightarrow{e_A} & \underline{C}(A, A) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \underline{F}_{A,A} \\ I & \xrightarrow{e_{FA}} & \underline{D}(FA, FA) \end{array}$$

$$(M) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}(B, C) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{c_{C,B,A}} & \underline{C}(A, C) \\ \underline{F}_{B,C} \otimes \underline{F}_{A,B} \downarrow & & \downarrow \underline{F}_{A,C} \\ \underline{D}(FB, FC) \otimes \underline{D}(FA, FB) & \xrightarrow{c_{FC,FB,FA}} & \underline{D}(FA, FC) \end{array}$$

**B.2.7** REMARK. Every  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  defines an **underlying ordinary functor**  $F : C \rightarrow D$  in the obvious way.

**B.2.8** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category. For each object  $A$  in  $C$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C}(A, -) : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  where:

- The map of objects is given by  $B \mapsto \underline{C}(A, B)$ .
- The morphism  $\underline{C}(A, -)_{B,C} : \underline{C}(B, C) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, B), \underline{C}(A, C))$  is the right adjoint transpose of  $c_{C,B,A} : \underline{C}(B, C) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, C)$ .

Dually, assuming  $\mathcal{V}$  is a left-closed monoidal category, for each object  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{rev}}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C}(-, C) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}^{\text{rev}}$  where:

- The map of objects is given by  $B \mapsto \underline{C}(B, C)$ .
- The morphism  $\underline{C}(-, C)_{B,A} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(B, C), \underline{C}(A, C))$  is the right adjoint transpose of  $c_{A,B,C} : \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes^{\text{rev}} \underline{C}(B, C) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, C)$ .

*Proof.* By adjointness, axiom U corresponds to axiom L, and axiom M corresponds to axiom A. ■

**B.2.9** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $\underline{F}, \underline{G} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a parallel pair of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors. A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$  consists of the following data:

- For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , a morphism  $\varphi_A : I \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, GA)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , such that the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  commutes for all pairs  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 I \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_A \otimes F_{A,B}} & \underline{D}(FA, GA) \otimes \underline{D}(FA, FB) \\
 \lambda^{-1} \nearrow & & \searrow c_{FA, FB, GA} \\
 \underline{C}(A, B) & & \underline{D}(FA, GB) \\
 \rho^{-1} \searrow & & \nearrow c_{FA, GA, GB} \\
 \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes I & \xrightarrow{\underline{C}_{A,B} \otimes \varphi_B} & \underline{D}(GA, GB) \otimes \underline{D}(FA, GA)
 \end{array}$$

**B.2.10** REMARK. Every  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$  defines an **underlying ordinary natural transformation**  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow G$  in the obvious way. Furthermore, there is *at most one*  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$  whose underlying ordinary natural transformation is a given natural transformation  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow G$ , so being a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation is really just a property of an ordinary natural transformation. Henceforth, we will identify  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations with their underlying ordinary natural transformations; in particular, we will think of  $\varphi_A$  as a morphism  $FA \rightarrow GA$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , not a morphism  $I \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, GA)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

**B.2.I1** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a locally small monoidal category with unit  $I$ . If  $\mathcal{V}(I, -) : \mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is faithful, then every natural transformation between  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors is automatically  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched.*

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**B.2.I2** DEFINITION. A  **$\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation whose underlying ordinary natural transformation is a natural isomorphism (in the usual sense).

**B.2.I3** REMARK. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe and let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small monoidal category. With the definitions above, there is an evident (locally  $\mathbf{U}$ -small) 2-category  $\mathfrak{Cat}(\mathcal{V})$  where:

- The objects are the  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories.
- The morphisms are the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors.
- The 2-cells are the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations.
- Identities and composition are defined in the obvious way.

This is the **2-category of  $\mathbf{U}$ -small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories**. There is then an evident 2-functor  $\mathfrak{Cat}(\mathcal{V}) \rightarrow \mathfrak{Cat}$  sending each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category (resp. functor, natural transformation) to its underlying ordinary category (resp. functor, natural transformation).

**B.2.I4** REMARK. It is not hard to verify that a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism is the same thing as an invertible 2-cell in  $\mathfrak{Cat}(\mathcal{V})$ .

**B.2.I5** LEMMA (Weak Yoneda lemma). *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category. For each object  $A$  in  $C$  and each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , the map  $\varphi \mapsto \varphi_A \circ e_A$  is a bijection between the set of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\varphi : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  and the set of morphisms  $I \rightarrow FA$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is similar to that of the classical Yoneda lemma.

First, we show existence. Let  $x : I \rightarrow FA$  be given. For each object  $B$  in  $C$ , let  $\varphi_C : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow FB$  be the composite

$$\underline{C}(A, B) \xrightarrow{\rho^{-1}} \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes I \xrightarrow{E_{A,B} \otimes x} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(FA, FB) \otimes FA \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_{FA, FB}} FA$$

and observe that axiom U (plus the definition of  $e_{FA}$ ) guarantees that  $\varphi_A \circ e_A = x$ , while axiom M implies  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality.

For uniqueness, we note that the morphism

$$c \circ (\ulcorner \varphi_B \urcorner \otimes \underline{C}(A, -)_{A,B}) : I \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, A), FB)$$

where  $\ulcorner \varphi_B \urcorner$  denotes the morphism  $I \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, B), FB)$  corresponding to  $\varphi_B : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow FB$ , corresponds under adjunction to the morphism

$$\text{ev} \circ (\text{id} \otimes \text{ev}) \circ (\ulcorner \varphi_B \urcorner \otimes \underline{C}(A, -)_{A,B} \otimes \text{id}) : I \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes \underline{C}(A, A) \rightarrow FB$$

which after a computation is seen to be equal to

$$\varphi_B \circ c \circ (\lambda \otimes \text{id}) : I \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes \underline{C}(A, A) \rightarrow FB$$

but we also have the morphism

$$c \circ (\underline{F} \otimes \ulcorner \varphi_A \urcorner) : \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes I \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, A), FB)$$

corresponding under adjunction to

$$\text{ev} \circ (\text{id} \otimes \text{ev}) \circ (\underline{F} \otimes \ulcorner \varphi_A \urcorner \otimes \text{id}) : \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes I \otimes \underline{C}(A, A) \rightarrow FB$$

which is equal to

$$\text{ev} \circ (\underline{F} \otimes \varphi_A) \circ (\text{id} \otimes \lambda) : \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes I \otimes \underline{C}(A, A) \rightarrow FB$$

and thus  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality of  $\varphi$  implies that  $\varphi_B : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow FB$  must be defined as in the previous paragraph.  $\blacksquare$

**B.2.16** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a *symmetric* monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories. The **tensor product**  $\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D}$  is the following  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category:

- The objects in  $\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D}$  are pairs  $(A, D)$  where  $A$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $D$  is an object in  $\underline{D}$ .
- For each pair  $((A, D), (B, E))$  of objects in  $\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D}$ ,

$$(\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D})((A, D), (B, E)) = \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes \underline{D}(D, E)$$

- For each object  $(A, D)$  in  $\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D}$ :

$$e_{(A,D)} = (e_A \otimes e_D) \circ \rho$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

- For each triple  $((A, D), (B, E), (C, F))$  of objects in  $\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D}$ ,

$$c_{(C,F),(B,E),(A,D)} = (c_{C,B,A} \otimes c_{F,E,D}) \circ (\text{id} \otimes \gamma \otimes \text{id})$$

where we have suppressed the associator of  $\mathcal{V}$ .

We will often abuse notation and write  $C \otimes D$  for the underlying ordinary category of  $\underline{C} \otimes \underline{D}$ .

**B.2.17** REMARK. Using the fact that  $\mathcal{V}(I, -) : \mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a lax monoidal functor, it is not hard to see that there is a canonical functor  $C \times D \rightarrow C \otimes D$ , which is an isomorphism if  $\mathcal{V}$  is a cartesian monoidal category.

**B.2.18** REMARK. If  $\mathcal{V}$  is a symmetric monoidal category, then  $\mathfrak{Cat}(\mathcal{V})$  is also a symmetric monoidal category where the monoidal product is the tensor product defined above and the monoidal unit is the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\mathbb{I}$  with a unique object  $*$  and  $\mathbb{I}(*, *) = I$ . Note also that there is a natural bijection between the set of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\mathbb{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and the set of objects in  $C$ .

**B.2.19** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$ ,  $\underline{D}$ , and  $\underline{E}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories.

- (i) Given a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \otimes \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{E}$ , for each object  $A$  in  $C$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F}(A, -) : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  defined by the following composite,

$$\underline{D} \xrightarrow{\lambda^{-1}} \mathbb{I} \otimes \underline{D} \xrightarrow{\ulcorner A \urcorner \otimes \text{id}} \underline{C} \otimes \underline{D} \xrightarrow{\underline{F}} \underline{E}$$

where  $\ulcorner A \urcorner : \mathbb{I} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  is the unique  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor sending  $*$  in  $\mathbb{I}$  to  $A$  in  $C$ ; and similarly, for each object  $D$  in  $D$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F}(-, D) : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{E}$  defined by the following composite:

$$\underline{C} \xrightarrow{\rho^{-1}} \underline{C} \otimes \mathbb{I} \xrightarrow{\text{id} \otimes \ulcorner D \urcorner} \underline{C} \otimes \underline{D} \xrightarrow{\underline{F}} \underline{E}$$

Moreover, the following diagram commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes \underline{D}(D, E) & \xrightarrow{\underline{F}(-, E) \otimes \underline{F}(A, -)} & \underline{E}(F(A, E), F(B, E)) \otimes \underline{E}(F(A, D), F(A, E)) \\ \downarrow \gamma & \searrow \underline{F} & \downarrow c \\ & & \underline{E}(F(A, D), F(B, E)) \\ & & \uparrow c \\ \underline{D}(D, E) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\underline{F}(B, -) \otimes \underline{F}(-, D)} & \underline{E}(F(B, D), F(B, E)) \otimes \underline{E}(F(A, D), F(A, E)) \end{array}$$

- (ii) Conversely, given  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{G}_A : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{E}}$  and  $\underline{H}_D : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{E}}$  for all objects  $A$  in  $\underline{C}$  and all objects  $D$  in  $\underline{D}$ , if  $\underline{G}_A D = \underline{F}(A, D) = \underline{H}_D A$  for all pairs  $(A, D)$  and the following diagram commutes for all  $(A, D)$  and  $(B, E)$ ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes \underline{D}(D, E) & \xrightarrow{\underline{H}_E \otimes \underline{G}_A} & \underline{\mathcal{E}}(\underline{F}(A, E), \underline{F}(B, E)) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{E}}(\underline{F}(A, D), \underline{F}(B, E)) \\
 \downarrow \gamma & & \downarrow c \\
 & & \underline{\mathcal{E}}(\underline{F}(A, D), \underline{F}(B, E)) \\
 & & \uparrow c \\
 \underline{D}(D, E) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\underline{G}_B \otimes \underline{H}_D} & \underline{\mathcal{E}}(\underline{F}(B, D), \underline{F}(B, E)) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{E}}(\underline{F}(A, D), \underline{F}(A, E))
 \end{array}$$

then there is a unique  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \otimes \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{E}}$  such that  $\underline{G}_A = \underline{F}(A, -)$  and  $\underline{H}_D = \underline{F}(-, D)$ .

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**B.2.20** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category. Then there is a (unique)  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C}(-, -) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  with  $\underline{C}(A, -) : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and  $\underline{C}(-, B) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  as defined previously.

*Proof.* This essentially boils down to axiom A. ■

**B.2.21** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal category and let  $\underline{C}$ ,  $\underline{D}$ , and  $\underline{\mathcal{E}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories. Given two  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{F}, \underline{G} : \underline{C} \otimes \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{E}}$  and a natural transformation  $\varphi : \underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$ , the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\varphi$  is (the underlying ordinary natural transformation of) a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$ .
- (ii)  $\varphi_{A, \bullet}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{F}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{G}(A, -)$  for each object  $A$  in  $\underline{C}$ , and  $\varphi_{\bullet, D}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{F}(-, D) \Rightarrow \underline{G}(-, D)$  for each object  $D$  in  $\underline{D}$ .

*Proof.* Straightforward. ◆

**B.2.22** COROLLARY. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor. Then the morphisms

$$\underline{F}_{A,B} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{C}(FA, FB)$$

constitute a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{C}(-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, \underline{F}-)$ .

*Proof.* By [proposition B.2.21](#) and duality, it suffices to verify that the indicated morphisms constitute a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(F, -) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, \underline{F}-)$$

for each object  $A$  in  $\underline{C}$ ; and by adjointness, this boils down to axiom M. ■

**B.2.23** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category.

- Let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category. A **representation** of a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{V}$  is pair  $(A, x)$ , where  $A$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $x$  is a morphism  $I \rightarrow FA$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  such that the corresponding  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow F$  (as described by the weak Yoneda lemma) is invertible.
- A **representable  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor** is one that admits a representation.

**B.2.24** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category, let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category, and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{V}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor. Given any two representations of  $\underline{F}$ , say  $(A, x)$  and  $(B, y)$ , there is a unique morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$  such that  $Ff \circ x = y$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and it is an isomorphism.

*Proof.* Let  $\varphi : \underline{C}(A, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  and  $\psi : \underline{C}(B, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  be the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms such that  $\varphi_A \circ e_A = x$  and  $\psi_B \circ e_B = y$ ; such exist and are unique by the weak Yoneda lemma ([B.2.15](#)). Consider  $\varphi^{-1} \bullet \psi : \underline{C}(B, -) \Rightarrow \underline{C}(A, -)$ . The weak Yoneda lemma implies this corresponds to a morphism  $\ulcorner f \urcorner : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, B)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , namely  $\ulcorner f \urcorner = \varphi_B^{-1} \circ y$ ; but  $\ulcorner f \urcorner : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, B)$  corresponds to a morphism  $f : A \rightarrow B$  in  $\underline{C}$ , and the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} I & \xrightarrow{e_A} & \underline{C}(A, A) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_A} & FA \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \underline{C}(A, f) & & \downarrow Ff \\ I & \xrightarrow{\ulcorner f \urcorner} & \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_B} & FB \end{array}$$

so we deduce that  $Ff \circ x = y$ , as required. Reversing the argument shows that  $f : A \rightarrow B$  is the unique such morphism in  $\underline{C}$ , and it follows that  $f : A \rightarrow B$



must be an isomorphism: its inverse is the unique morphism  $g : B \rightarrow A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $Fg \circ y = x$ .  $\blacksquare$

**B.2.25** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories, let  $\underline{H} : \underline{\mathcal{C}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor, and for each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and each object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , let  $\varphi_{A,D} : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(FA, D) \rightarrow H(A, D)$  be an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{V}$ . If each  $\varphi_{A,\bullet}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}(FA, -) \Rightarrow \underline{H}(A, -)$ , then there is a unique  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  such that  $\varphi$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}(\underline{F}-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{H}$ .*

*Proof.* See § I.10 in [Kelly, 2005].  $\square$

**B.2.26** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category. An  $\mathcal{V}$ -**enriched adjunction** consists of the following data:

- A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$ , called the **left adjoint**.
- A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , called the **right adjoint**.
- A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\eta : \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}} \Rightarrow \underline{G}\underline{F}$ , called the **unit**.
- A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\varepsilon : \underline{F}\underline{G} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{D}}}$ , called the **counit**.

These are moreover required to satisfy the **triangle identities**:

$$\varepsilon F \bullet F \eta = \text{id}_F \qquad G \varepsilon \bullet \eta G = \text{id}_G$$

If such data exist, we write

$$\underline{F} \dashv \underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$$

and say that  $\underline{F}$  is a left adjoint of  $\underline{G}$ , and  $\underline{G}$  is a right adjoint of  $\underline{F}$ .

**B.2.27** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  and  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors.*

(i) *Given a pair  $(\eta, \varepsilon)$  of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations*

$$\eta : \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}} \Rightarrow \underline{G}\underline{F} \text{ and } \varepsilon : \underline{F}\underline{G} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{D}}}$$

*satisfying the triangle identities, the composites*

$$\underline{\mathcal{D}}(FA, D) \xrightarrow{\underline{G}_{FA,D}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(GFA, GD) \xrightarrow{\underline{\mathcal{C}}(\eta_A, GD)} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(A, GD)$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

$$\underline{C}(A, GD) \xrightarrow{F_{A,GD}} \underline{D}(FA, FGD) \xrightarrow{D(FA, \epsilon_D)} \underline{D}(FA, D)$$

constitute a mutually inverse pair of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms of the following form:

$$\underline{D}(\underline{F}-, -) \cong \underline{C}(-, \underline{G}-)$$

- (ii) Given a mutually inverse pair of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms of the form above, say

$$\varphi : \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{C}(-, \underline{G}-)$$

$$\psi : \underline{C}(-, \underline{G}-) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, -)$$

the morphisms  $\eta_A : A \rightarrow GFA$  (in  $\mathcal{C}$ ) and  $\epsilon_D : FGD \rightarrow D$  (in  $\mathcal{D}$ ) defined (respectively) by

$$\varphi_{A,FA} \circ e_{FA} : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, GFA)$$

$$\psi_{GD,D} \circ e_{GD} : I \rightarrow \underline{D}(FGD, D)$$

constitute a pair  $(\eta, \epsilon)$  of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations satisfying the triangle identities.

- (iii) Moreover, the two constructions described above are mutually inverse.

*Proof.* See the first paragraph of § 1.11 in [Kelly, 2005]. □

**B.2.28** COROLLARY. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category. The following are equivalent for a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ :*

- (i)  $\underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  admits a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched left adjoint.
- (ii) For each object  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ , the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C}(A, \underline{G}-) : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  is representable.

*Dually, the following are equivalent for a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ :*

- (i')  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  admits a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched right adjoint.
- (ii') For each object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ , the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{D}(\underline{F}-, D) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  is representable.

*Proof.* Combine propositions B.2.25 and B.2.27. ■

**B.2.29** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category.*

(i) *There exist a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{\otimes} : \underline{\mathcal{V}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and isomorphisms*

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(X \otimes Y, Z) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, Z))$$

*that constitute a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .*

(ii) *In particular, for each object  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction of the form below:*

$$(-) \underline{\otimes} Y \dashv \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, -) : \underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$$

(iii) *The isomorphisms  $\gamma_{X,Y} : X \otimes Y \rightarrow Y \otimes X$  constitute a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{V}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). By [proposition B.2.25](#), it suffices to show that there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(X \otimes Y, -) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, -))$$

for each pair  $(X, Y)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{V}$ . First, let us show that there is an ordinary natural transformation of the required form. There are bijections

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}(W, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X \otimes Y, Z)) &\cong \mathcal{V}(W \otimes (X \otimes Y), Z) \\ &\cong \mathcal{V}((W \otimes X) \otimes Y, Z) \\ &\cong \mathcal{V}(W \otimes X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, Z)) \\ &\cong \mathcal{V}(W, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, Z))) \end{aligned}$$

that are natural in  $W$ ,  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$ , so by the Yoneda lemma, there are isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(X \otimes Y, Z) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, Z))$$

that are natural in  $X$ ,  $Y$ , and  $Z$ . For  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality, it suffices (by adjointness) to verify that a certain diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  of the form below commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Z, W) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X \otimes Y, Z) & \xrightarrow{c} & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X \otimes Y, W) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Z, W) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, Z)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, W)) \end{array}$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

but this is straightforward, given the definition of  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, -)_{Z, W}$ .

(ii). Apply [proposition B.2.27](#).

(iii). By [proposition B.2.21](#) and adjointness, it suffices to verify the commutativity of certain diagrams in  $\mathcal{V}$  of the forms below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X', X) \otimes X' \otimes Y & \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_{X', X} \otimes \text{id}} & X \otimes Y \\ \text{id} \otimes \gamma_{X', Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow \gamma_{X, Y} \\ \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X', X) \otimes Y \otimes X' & \longrightarrow & Y \otimes X \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y', Y) \otimes X \otimes Y' & \longrightarrow & X \otimes Y \\ \text{id} \otimes \gamma_{X, Y'} \downarrow & & \downarrow \gamma_{X, Y} \\ \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y', Y) \otimes Y' \otimes X & \xrightarrow{\text{ev}_{Y', Y} \otimes \text{id}} & Y \otimes X \end{array}$$

where as usual we have suppressed the associator of  $\mathcal{V}$ ; but this is again straightforward. ■

**B.2.30** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category.

- A **fully faithful  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  such that each  $\underline{F}_{A, B} : \underline{\mathcal{C}}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}(FA, FB)$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{V}$ .
- A  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor is **injective on objects** (resp. **essentially surjective on objects**) if its underlying ordinary functor is injective on objects (resp. essentially surjective on objects).
- A **full  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched subcategory** of a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}'$  equipped with a fully faithful  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}}' \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  that is injective on objects, called the **inclusion**, such that  $FA = A$  for all objects  $A$  in  $\mathcal{C}'$  and  $\underline{F}_{A, B} = \text{id}$  for all pairs  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\mathcal{C}'$ .

**B.2.31** REMARK. If  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  is a fully faithful  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor, then the underlying ordinary functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is also fully faithful. The converse is true when  $\mathcal{V}(I, -) : \mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}$  is a conservative functor.

**B.2.32** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category.

- An **equivalence of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories** consists of a pair of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors, say  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  and  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , together with  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms  $\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}} \cong \underline{GF}$  and  $\underline{FG} \cong \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{D}}}$ .
- Two  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories are **equivalent** if there is an equivalence of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories between them.

**B.2.33** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor. The following are equivalent:

- (i)  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  is a fully faithful  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor and essentially surjective on objects.
- (ii)  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  admits a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched left or right adjoint where the unit and counit are  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms.
- (iii) There exist  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{L}, \underline{R} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms  $\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}} \cong \underline{LF}$  and  $\underline{FR} \cong \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{D}}}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). First, choose for every object  $D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$  an object  $GD$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  and an isomorphism  $\varepsilon_D : FGD \rightarrow D$  in  $\mathcal{D}$ . We may do this because  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is essentially surjective on objects. We then define  $\underline{G}_{D,E} : \underline{\mathcal{D}}(D, E) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(GD, GE)$  as the following composite,

$$\underline{\mathcal{D}}(D, E) \xrightarrow{\cong} \underline{\mathcal{D}}(FGD, FGE) \xrightarrow{(\underline{F}_{GD, GE})^{-1}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(GD, GE)$$

where  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}(D, E) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}(FGD, FGE)$  is the isomorphism in  $\mathcal{V}$  induced by  $\varepsilon_D : FGD \rightarrow D$  and  $\varepsilon_E^{-1} : E \rightarrow FGE$ . It is straightforward to see that  $\underline{G}$  satisfies axioms U and M, so we have a functor  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ . Moreover, the construction ensures that  $\varepsilon$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\underline{GF} \Rightarrow \text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{D}}}$ .

Next, we show that there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}} \Rightarrow \underline{GF}$ . Let  $\eta_A : A \rightarrow GFA$  be the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that  $F\eta_A = \varepsilon_{FA}^{-1}$ . We know that  $\varepsilon^{-1}F$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{FGF}$ , so it follows that  $\eta$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}} \Rightarrow \underline{GF}$ . Moreover, by construction, we have the left triangle identity  $\varepsilon F \bullet F\eta = \text{id}_F$ , and the right triangle identity  $G\varepsilon \bullet \eta G = \text{id}_G$  is then a formal consequence. Thus,  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{D}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched right adjoint for  $\underline{F} : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  where the unit and counit are  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms.

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Observe that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\text{id}_{\underline{C}} \cong \underline{LF}$  gives us a retraction for  $\underline{F}_{A,B} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, FB)$ , namely,

$$\underline{D}(FA, FB) \xrightarrow{\underline{L}_{FA, FB}} \underline{C}(LFA, LFB) \xrightarrow{\cong} \underline{C}(A, B)$$

where  $\underline{C}(LFA, LFB) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, B)$  is the isomorphism in  $\mathcal{V}$  induced by  $\text{id}_{\underline{C}} \cong \underline{LF}$ . The same construction applied to the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $\underline{FR} \cong \text{id}_{\underline{D}}$  yields a section for  $\underline{F}_{A,B} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FA, FB)$ . Thus, we may deduce that  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  is fully faithful. Moreover, the existence of a natural isomorphism  $\underline{FR} \cong \text{id}_{\underline{D}}$  certainly implies that  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is essentially surjective on objects, so we are done. ■

## B.3 Enriched diagrams

**Prerequisites.** §B.2.

**B.3.1** ¶ Throughout this section,  $\mathcal{V}$  is a locally small symmetric monoidal closed category with limits for all small diagrams.

**B.3.2** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories and let  $\underline{F}, \underline{G} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors. The **object of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$**  consists of the following data:

- An object  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ .
- For each object  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$ , a morphism  $\pi_C : [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FC, GC)$ , such that the following equation in  $\mathcal{V}$  is satisfied for every pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ :

$$c_{GB,GA,FA} \circ (\underline{G}_{A,B} \otimes \pi_A) \circ \gamma_{[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}), \underline{C}(A,B)} = c_{GB,FB,FA} \circ (\pi_B \otimes \underline{F}_{A,B})$$

Moreover, the morphisms  $\pi_C : [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) \rightarrow \underline{D}(FC, GC)$  are required to be universal, i.e. for each object  $X$  in  $\underline{C}$ , the map  $\alpha \mapsto (\pi_C \circ \alpha \mid C \in \text{ob } \underline{C})$  is a bijection between the set of morphisms  $X \rightarrow [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  and the ensemble of families of morphisms  $\varphi_C : X \rightarrow \underline{D}(FC, GC)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  satisfying the equations

$$c_{GB,GA,FA} \circ (\underline{G}_{A,B} \otimes \varphi_A) \circ \gamma_{X, \underline{C}(A,B)} = c_{GB,FB,FA} \circ (\varphi_B \otimes \underline{F}_{A,B})$$

for every pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ .

**B.3.3** REMARK. Assuming  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  exists, the universality condition implies that there is a bijection between the set of morphisms  $I \rightarrow [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  and the ensemble of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$ . In particular, the existence of  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  implies that there are not “too many”  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$ .

**B.3.4** REMARK. By adjointness, it is not hard to see that  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  is the limit of the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$ :

- For each object  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$ , there is a vertex with value  $\underline{D}(FC, GC)$ .

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

- For each pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ , we have a vertex and two arrows with values as in the diagram below,

$$\underline{D}(FA, GA) \longrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, B), \underline{D}(FA, GB)) \longleftarrow \underline{D}(FB, GB)$$

where  $\underline{D}(FA, GA) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, B), \underline{D}(FA, GB))$  is the right adjoint transpose of

$$c_{GB, GA, FA} \circ (\underline{G}_{A, B} \otimes \text{id}_{\underline{D}(FA, GA)}) \circ \gamma_{\underline{D}(FB, GB), \underline{C}(A, B)}$$

and  $\underline{D}(FB, GB) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(A, B), \underline{D}(FA, GB))$  is the right adjoint tranpose of

$$c_{GB, FB, FA} \circ (\text{id}_{\underline{D}(FB, GB)} \otimes \underline{F}_{A, B})$$

In particular, this diagram is small if  $\underline{C}$  is, so  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  exists whenever  $\underline{C}$  is a small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category.

More generally, if  $\underline{C}'$  is a small full  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched subcategory of  $\underline{C}$  such that the inclusion  $\underline{C}' \hookrightarrow \underline{C}$  is essentially surjective on objects, then  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  exists and is naturally isomorphic to  $[\underline{C}', \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$ .

**B.3.5** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories. Assuming  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  exists for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{F}, \underline{G} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ , the  **$\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category**  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}]$  is defined as follows:

- The objects are  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ .
- For each pair  $(\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ ,  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  is as defined previously.
- For each  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ ,  $e_{\underline{F}} : I \rightarrow [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{F})$  is the unique morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$  making the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  commute for all objects  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} I & \xrightarrow{e_{\underline{F}}} & [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{F}) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \pi_C \\ I & \xrightarrow{e_{FC}} & \underline{D}(FC, FC) \end{array}$$

- For each triple  $(\underline{F}, \underline{G}, \underline{H})$  of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ ,

$$c_{\underline{H}, \underline{G}, \underline{F}} : [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{G}, \underline{H}) \otimes [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) \rightarrow [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{H})$$



is the unique morphism making the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  commute for all objects  $C$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}](\underline{G}, \underline{H}) \otimes [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) & \xrightarrow{c_{\underline{H}, \underline{G}, \underline{F}}} & [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}](\underline{F}, \underline{H}) \\ \pi_C \otimes \pi_C \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_C \\ \underline{\mathcal{D}}(GC, HC) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{D}}(FC, GC) & \xrightarrow{c_{HC, GC, FC}} & \underline{\mathcal{D}}(FC, HC) \end{array}$$

**B.3.6** REMARK. By [remark B.3.3](#), the underlying ordinary category of  $[\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  is the category whose objects are the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  and whose morphisms are the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations. To avoid confusion, we write  $\mathbf{Fun}_{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}})$  for the ordinary category of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors, and we reserve  $[\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  for the ordinary category of ordinary functors. Note that  $\mathbf{Fun}_{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}})$  always exists, even when  $[\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  does not.

**B.3.7** THEOREM. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  exists.

- (i) For each object  $C$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C}^* : [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  where  $\underline{C}^* \underline{F} = FC$  and  $\underline{C}^*_{\underline{F}, \underline{G}} = \pi_C : [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}(FC, GC)$ .
- (ii) There is a (unique)  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\text{ev}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}} : [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}] \otimes \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  such that  $\text{ev}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}}(-, C) = \underline{C}^*$  and  $\text{ev}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}}(\underline{F}, -) = \underline{F}$ .
- (iii) For each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{A}}$ , there is an isomorphism

$$\mathbf{Fun}_{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}) \cong \mathbf{Fun}_{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{A}}, [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}])$$

that is 2-natural in  $\underline{\mathcal{A}}$  and sends  $\text{ev}_{\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}} : [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}] \otimes \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  to  $\text{id} : [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}] \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}]$ .

*Proof.* (i). The definition of  $e$  and  $c$  in  $[\underline{\mathcal{C}}, \underline{\mathcal{D}}]$  ensures that the announced definition satisfies axioms U and M, respectively.

(ii). By [proposition B.2.19](#), it suffices to verify that the following diagram com-

mates,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\pi_B \otimes \underline{F}_{A,B}} & \underline{D}(FB, GB) \otimes \underline{D}(FA, FB) \\
 \downarrow \gamma & & \downarrow c_{GB, FB, FA} \\
 & & \underline{D}(FA, GB) \\
 \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes [\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G}) & \xrightarrow{\underline{G}_{A,B} \otimes \pi_A} & \underline{D}(GA, GB) \otimes \underline{D}(FA, GA) \\
 & & \uparrow c_{GB, FA, FA}
 \end{array}$$

but this is guaranteed by the definition of  $[\underline{C}, \underline{D}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$ .

(iii). See §2.3 in [Kelly, 2005]. □

**B.3.8** COROLLARY. *The 2-category of small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories is a symmetric monoidal closed 2-category.* ■

**B.3.9** PROPOSITION (Strong Yoneda lemma). *Let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category, let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor, and let  $C$  be an object in  $\underline{C}$ . Then the object of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\underline{C}(C, -) \Rightarrow \underline{F}$  exists: it can be identified with  $FC$ , with  $\pi_A : FC \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(C, A), FA)$  defined to be the right adjoint transpose of  $\underline{F}_{C,A} : \underline{C}(C, A) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(FC, FA)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $X$  be any object in  $\mathcal{V}$ . It is a straightforward exercise in adjointness to see that there is a natural bijection between the ensemble of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\underline{C}(C, -) \Rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{F}-)$  and the ensemble of families of morphisms  $\varphi_A : X \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(C, A), FA)$  satisfying the equations

$$c_{FB, FA, \underline{C}(C, A)} \circ (\underline{F}_{A,B} \otimes \varphi_A) \circ \gamma = c_{FB, \underline{C}(C, B), \underline{C}(C, A)} \circ (\varphi_B \otimes \underline{C}(C, -)_{A,B})$$

for every pair  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ . Thus, by the weak Yoneda lemma (B.2.15), the latter can be identified with the set of morphisms  $I \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, FC)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and hence, with the set of morphisms  $X \rightarrow FC$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ . By tracing the various bijections, one sees that the family  $\pi_A : FC \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(C, A), FA)$  announced above corresponds to  $\text{id} : FC \rightarrow FC$ , and this completes the proof. ■

**B.3.I0** COROLLARY. Let  $\underline{C}$  be a small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category and let  $\underline{h}$  be the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow [\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  defined by  $\underline{h}_C = \underline{C}(C, -)$ . Then there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$[\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{h}_\bullet, -) \Rightarrow \text{ev}_{\underline{C}, \underline{D}}(-, \bullet)$$

*Proof.* The strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9) tells us that there are isomorphisms

$$[\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{h}_C, \underline{F}) \rightarrow FC = \text{ev}_{\underline{C}, \underline{D}}(\underline{F}, C)$$

for each object  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$  and each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ ; it remains to be shown that these constitute  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation, and by proposition B.2.21, it suffices to verify  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality in  $C$  and in  $\underline{F}$  separately. But since the structure of  $[\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  is defined entirely in terms of the universal property of objects of natural transformations, we may as well take  $[\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{h}_C, \underline{F}) = FC$ ; then  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality is clear. ■

**B.3.II** COROLLARY (Enriched Yoneda embedding). Let  $\underline{C}$  be a small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category and let  $\underline{h}$  be the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{C} \rightarrow [\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  defined by  $\underline{h}_C = \underline{C}(C, -)$ . Then  $\underline{h} : \underline{C} \rightarrow [\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  is fully faithful and essentially surjective onto the full  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched subcategory spanned by the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched representable functors  $\underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .

*Proof.* It suffices to prove the following claim: for all pairs  $(A, B)$  of objects in  $\underline{C}$ , the unique morphism  $\underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow [\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{h}_A, \underline{h}_B)$  making the following diagrams in  $\mathcal{V}$  commute

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{C}(A, B) & \dashrightarrow & [\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{h}_A, \underline{h}_B) \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \pi_C \\ \underline{C}(A, B) & \xrightarrow{\underline{C}(C, -)_{A, B}} & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{C}(C, A), \underline{C}(C, B)) \end{array}$$

for all objects  $C$  in  $\underline{C}$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{V}$ . But by the strong Yoneda lemma (proposition B.3.9), we may as well take  $[\underline{C}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{h}_A, \underline{h}_B) = \underline{C}(A, B)$  and  $\pi_C = \underline{C}(C, -)_{A, B}$ , so that the morphism in question is  $\text{id} : \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, B)$ . This proves the claim. ■

**B.3.12** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories.

- Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors, and assume that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. A  **$\underline{W}$ -weighted limit** for  $\underline{F}$  is a pair  $(\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}, \lambda)$  where  $\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda : \underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{C}(\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}, \underline{F})$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation such that  $(\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}, \ulcorner \lambda \urcorner)$  is a representation for the following  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor,

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{F})) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$$

where  $\ulcorner \lambda \urcorner : I \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}, \underline{F}))$  is the morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . We refer to  $\underline{W}$  as the **weight** and  $\underline{F}$  as the **diagram**.

- Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors, and assume that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. A  **$\underline{W}$ -weighted colimit** for  $\underline{F}$  is a pair  $(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, \lambda)$  where  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda : \underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{C}(\underline{F}, \underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F})$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation such that  $(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, \ulcorner \lambda \urcorner)$  is a representation for the following  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor,

$$[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, -)) : \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$$

where  $\ulcorner \lambda \urcorner : I \rightarrow [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, \underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}))$  is the morphism in  $\mathcal{V}$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ . We refer to  $\underline{W}$  as the **weight** and  $\underline{F}$  as the **diagram**.

**B.3.13** REMARK. By lemma B.2.24, weighted limits/colimits for a given weight and diagram are unique up to unique isomorphism.

**B.3.14** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor and let  $\underline{J}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category.

- Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and  $\underline{C} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors, and assume that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. We say  $\underline{F}$  **preserves  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for  $\underline{C}$**  if, for every  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{C}$ , say  $(\underline{L}, \lambda)$ , the pair  $(\underline{F}\underline{L}, \underline{F}_* \lambda)$  is a  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{F}\underline{C}$ , where

$$\underline{F}_* \lambda : \underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{F}\underline{L}, \underline{F}\underline{C})$$

is the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation obtained by vertically composing  $\lambda : \underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{C}(\underline{L}, \underline{C})$  and the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{C}(\underline{L}, \underline{C}) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{F}\underline{L}, \underline{F}\underline{C})$  induced by  $\underline{F} : \underline{C}(-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, \underline{F}-)$ .

- Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and  $\underline{C} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors, and assume that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. We say  $\underline{F}$  **preserves  $\underline{W}$ -weighted colimits for  $\underline{C}$**  if, for every  $\underline{W}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{C}$ , say  $(L, \lambda)$ , the pair  $(FL, \underline{F}_* \lambda)$  is a  $\underline{W}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{FC}$ , where

$$\underline{F}_* \lambda : \underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{FC}, FL)$$

is the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation obtained by vertically composing  $\lambda : \underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{C}(\underline{C}, L)$  and the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{C}(\underline{C}, L) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{FC}, FL)$  induced by  $\underline{F} : \underline{C}(-, -) \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, \underline{F}-)$ .

**B.3.15** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category and let

$$\underline{F} \dashv \underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$$

be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction.

- For any  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , assuming the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists,  $\underline{G} : \underline{D} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  preserves  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$ .
- For any  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , assuming the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists,  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  preserves  $\underline{W}$ -weighted colimits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{D} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagram and suppose  $\underline{D}$  has a  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{D}$ . Proposition B.2.27 implies we have the following  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, \{\underline{W}, \underline{D}\}^{\underline{J}}) &\cong \underline{C}(-, G\{\underline{W}, \underline{D}\}^{\underline{J}}) \\ [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{D}(\underline{F}-, \underline{D})) &\cong [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(-, \underline{GD})) \end{aligned}$$

Thus,  $G\{\underline{W}, \underline{D}\}^{\underline{J}}$  is (the object part of) a  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{GD} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ . To complete the proof, we must verify that the universal  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{D}(\{\underline{W}, \underline{D}\}^{\underline{J}}, \underline{D})$  is sent to a universal  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{W} \Rightarrow \underline{C}(G\{\underline{W}, \underline{D}\}^{\underline{J}}, \underline{GD})$ , but this is a straightforward application of the right triangle identity. ■

**B.3.16** PROPOSITION. Let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories. Assuming the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor categories  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  and  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  exist:

- (i) Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight. If  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exist, then there exist a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\{\underline{W}, -\}^{\underline{J}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{V}$

$$\underline{C}(\underline{C}, \{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}) \cong [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(\underline{C}, \underline{F}))$$

that constitute a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{C}^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .

- (ii) If the above condition holds for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weights  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , then there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\{-, -\}^{\underline{J}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  making the above isomorphisms a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{C}^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .
- (iii) In particular, when  $\{-, -\}^{\underline{J}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists, for each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction of the form below:

$$\underline{C}(-, \underline{F}) \dashv \{-, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{C}$$

Dually, assuming the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor categories  $[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  and  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]$  exist:

- (i') Let  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight. If  $\underline{W}$ -weighted colimits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exist, then there exist a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} (-) : [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and isomorphisms in  $\mathcal{V}$

$$\underline{C}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, \underline{C}) \cong [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{C}(\underline{F}, \underline{C}))$$

that constitute a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $[\underline{J}, \underline{C}]^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .

- (ii') If the above condition holds for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weights  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , then there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $(-) \star_{\underline{J}} (-) : [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  making the above isomorphisms a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}]^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .
- (iii') In particular, when  $(-) \star_{\underline{J}} (-) : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{C}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$  exists, for each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagram  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction of the form below:

$$- \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F} \dashv \underline{C}(\underline{F}, -) : [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \rightarrow \underline{C}$$

*Proof.* (i) and (ii). Apply [proposition B.2.25](#).

(iii). Apply [proposition B.2.27](#). ■

**B.3.17** DEFINITION.

- A **complete  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that, for all small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories  $\underline{J}$ , weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weights  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{V}$  exist in  $\underline{C}$ .
- A **cocomplete  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{C}$  such that, for all small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories  $\underline{J}$ , weighted colimits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  and all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weights  $\underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{V}$  exist in  $\underline{C}$ .

**B.3.18** THEOREM. Let  $\underline{J}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{J}, \underline{V}]$  exists.

- (i) For all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{V}$  and  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{V}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{V}](\underline{W}, \underline{V}(-, \underline{F})) \cong \underline{V}(-, [\underline{J}, \underline{V}](\underline{W}, \underline{F}))$$

In particular, the weighted limit  $\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}}$  exists in  $\underline{V}$ .

- (ii) The above extends to a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism  $[\underline{J}, \underline{V}](-, -) \cong \{-, -\}^{\underline{J}}$ .
- (iii) For each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight  $\underline{W} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{V}$ ,  $\{\underline{W}, -\}^{\underline{J}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{V}] \rightarrow \underline{V}$  has a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched left adjoint, namely the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{V} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{V}]$  that sends an object  $X$  in  $\underline{V}$  to the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagram  $\underline{W} \otimes X : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{V}$ .

*Proof.* (i). First, we must establish that there is an ordinary natural isomorphism of the required form. Let  $X$  be any object in  $\underline{V}$ . By definition,  $\underline{V}(X, -) : \underline{V} \rightarrow \underline{V}$  is a right adjoint, so it preserves all limits; but [remark B.3.4](#) says that objects of natural transformations are certain limits, and by adjointness, the (ordinary) natural isomorphisms

$$\underline{V}(X, \underline{V}(Y, -)) \cong \underline{V}(Y, \underline{V}(X, -))$$

induced by  $\gamma$  make the following diagram in  $\underline{V}$  commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \underline{V}(X, \underline{V}(Wj, Fj)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{V}(X, \underline{V}(\underline{J}(j, k), \underline{V}(Wj, Fk))) & \longleftarrow & \underline{V}(X, \underline{V}(Wk, Fk)) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong & & \downarrow \cong \\ \underline{V}(Wj, \underline{V}(X, Fj)) & \longrightarrow & \underline{V}(\underline{J}(j, k), \underline{V}(Wj, \underline{V}(X, Fk))) & \longleftarrow & \underline{V}(Wk, \underline{V}(X, Fk)) \end{array}$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

so we indeed have an ordinary natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{F})) \cong [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, \underline{F}))$$

as required. For  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality, it suffices (by adjointness) to verify that a certain diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  of the form below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{F})) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{c} & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{F})) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, \underline{F})) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, Y) & \longrightarrow & [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{F})) \end{array}$$

But the universal property of  $[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{F}))$  implies it is enough to check that the above equation is satisfied after composing with every projection  $\pi_j : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{F})) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{F}j))$ , and this is straightforward.

(ii). Since we may take  $\{\underline{W}, \underline{F}\}^{\underline{J}} = [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{F})$ , it suffices to prove that the isomorphisms constructed above already define a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]^{\text{op}} \otimes [\underline{\mathcal{V}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ ; for this, similar arguments work.

(iii). By [proposition B.2.29](#) and [theorem B.3.7](#), there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj \otimes (-), \underline{j}^*(-)) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, \underline{j}^*(-)))$$

and it is straightforward to see that these yield a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$[\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W} \otimes (-), -) \cong [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, -))$$

so by [proposition B.2.27](#), we have a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction

$$\underline{W} \otimes (-) \dashv \{\underline{W}, -\}^{\underline{J}} : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$$

as required. ■

**B.3.19** THEOREM. *If  $\mathcal{V}$  has colimits for all small diagrams, then for any small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{J}$ :*

- (i) *For all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weights  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{F} : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , the weighted colimit  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$  exists in  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , and there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:*

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, -) \cong \{\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, -)\}^{\underline{J}^{\text{op}}}$$



- (ii) *There is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $(-) \star_{\underline{J}} (-) : [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  making the above a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \otimes [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .*
- (iii) *For each  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight  $\underline{W} : \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ ,  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} (-) : [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}] \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  has a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched right adjoint, namely the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow [\underline{J}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  that sends an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  to the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagram  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W}, X) : \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). Recall that a weighted colimit  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$  is (the same thing as) an object equipped with a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, -) \cong [\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, -))$$

But by [theorem B.3.18](#), we have a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$[\underline{J}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, -)) \cong \{\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, -)\}^{\underline{J}^{\text{op}}}$$

so it suffices to construct  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$ . In view of [remark B.3.4](#), we should define  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$  by the dual colimit. More precisely, consider the following (ordinary) diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$ :

- For each object  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , there is a vertex with value  $Wj \otimes Fj$ .
- For each pair  $(j, k)$  of objects in  $\underline{J}$ , we have a vertex and two arrows with values as in the diagram below,

$$Wj \otimes Fj \longleftarrow \underline{J}(j, k) \otimes Wk \otimes Fj \longrightarrow Wk \otimes Fk$$

where  $\underline{J}(j, k) \otimes Wk \otimes Fj \rightarrow Wj \otimes Fj$  is

$$(\text{ev}_{Wj, Wk} \circ (\underline{W}_{k, j} \otimes \text{id}_{Wk})) \otimes \text{id}_{Fj}$$

and  $\underline{J}(j, k) \otimes Wk \otimes Fj \rightarrow Wk \otimes Fk$  is

$$\gamma_{Fk, Wk} \circ ((\text{ev}_{Fj, Fk} \circ (\underline{F}_{j, k} \otimes \text{id}_{Fj})) \otimes \text{id}_{Wk}) \circ (\text{id}_{\underline{J}(j, k)} \otimes \gamma_{Wk, Fj})$$

The above diagram is small, so there is a colimit for it in  $\mathcal{V}$ , say  $\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}$ . By [proposition B.2.29](#), there us a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}((-) \otimes (-), -) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, -))$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

and since  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, X)$  sends colimits in  $\mathcal{V}$  to limits in  $\mathcal{V}$ , we obtain isomorphisms

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, X) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, X))$$

that are natural in  $X$ . For  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched naturality, it suffices (by adjointness) to verify that a certain diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  of the form below commutes:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, Y) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, X) & \xrightarrow{c} & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} \underline{F}, X) \\ \cong \downarrow & & \downarrow \cong \\ \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, Y) \otimes [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, X)) & \longrightarrow & [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, Y)) \end{array}$$

But the universal property of  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, Y))$  implies it is enough to check that the above equation is satisfied after composing with every projection  $\pi_j : [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{F}, Y)) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Fj, Y))$ , and this is straightforward.

(ii). The existence (and uniqueness) of the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $(-) \star_{\underline{J}} (-)$  is an instance of [proposition B.2.25](#).

(iii). By [proposition B.2.29](#) and [theorem B.3.7](#), there are  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{j}^*(-), -)) \\ \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj \otimes \underline{j}^*(-), -) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{j}^*(-) \otimes Wj, -) \\ \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{j}^*(-), \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Wj, -)) \end{aligned}$$

and it is straightforward to see that these yield a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} (-), -) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(-, -)) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](-, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W}, -))$$

so by [proposition B.2.27](#), we have a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction

$$\underline{W} \star_{\underline{J}} (-) \dashv \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{W}, -) : \underline{\mathcal{V}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$$

as required. ■

**B.3.20** DEFINITION. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category and let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists.

- An **end** for a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{T} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\underline{H}$ -weighted limit for  $\underline{T}$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , where  $\underline{H}$  is the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}(-, -) : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ . We write

$$\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{T}(j, j)$$

for the object part of an end for  $\underline{T}$ .

- A **coend** for a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{T} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\underline{H}$ -weighted colimit for  $\underline{T}$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , where  $\underline{H}$  is the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}}(-, -) : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ . We write

$$\int^{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{T}(j, j)$$

for the object part of a coend for  $\underline{T}$ .

**B.3.21** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists, and let  $\underline{T} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor. Then  $\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{T}(j, j)$  is the limit of the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$ :

- For each object  $j$  in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ , there is a vertex with value  $\underline{T}(j, j)$ .
- For each pair  $(j, k)$  of objects in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ , we have a vertex and two arrows with values as in the diagram below,

$$\underline{T}(j, j) \longrightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), \underline{T}(j, k)) \longleftarrow \underline{T}(k, k)$$

where  $\underline{T}(j, j) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), \underline{T}(j, k))$  is the right adjoint transpose of

$$\text{ev}_{\underline{T}(j,j), \underline{T}(j,k)} \circ (\underline{T}(j, -)_{j,k} \otimes \text{id}_{\underline{T}(j,j)}) \circ \gamma_{\underline{T}(j,j), \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j,k)}$$

and  $\underline{T}(k, k) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), \underline{T}(j, k))$  is the right adjoint tranpose of

$$\text{ev}_{\underline{T}(k,k), \underline{T}(j,k)} \circ (\underline{T}(-, k)_{k,j} \otimes \text{id}_{\underline{T}(k,k)}) \circ \gamma_{\underline{T}(k,k), \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j,k)}$$

*Proof.* By [remark B.3.4](#) and [theorem B.3.18](#),  $\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{T}(j, j)$  is the limit of the following diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$ :

- For each pair  $(j, k)$  of objects in  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$ , there is a vertex with value

$$\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), \underline{T}(j, k))$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

- For each quadruple  $(j', j, k, k')$  of objects in  $\mathcal{J}$ , we have a vertex and two arrows with values in the diagram below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j, k)) & & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', k'), T(j', k')) \\ & \searrow \quad \swarrow & \\ & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}(k, k'), \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j', k'))) & \end{array}$$

where the arrow on the left is induced by  $\underline{T} : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  and the arrow on the right is induced by  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}(-, -) : \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .

To prove the claim, it is enough to give a natural bijection between cones over the two diagrams. Observe that there is an evident commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} T(j, j) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j, k)) & \longleftarrow & T(k, k) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j), T(j', j)) & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \longleftarrow & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(k, k'), T(k, k')) \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ T(j', j') & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', k'), T(j', k')) & \longleftarrow & T(k', k') \end{array}$$

where the vertex in the middle is  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j', j) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}(k, k'), \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j', k')))$ . Consideration of this diagram shows that every cone over the first diagram induces a cone over the second diagram.

On the other hand, suppose we are given a cone over the second diagram, say with components  $\varphi_{j,k} : X \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{V}}(j, k), T(j, k))$ . Observe that the morphism

$$T(j, j) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j), T(j, j))$$

appearing in the first diagram admits a retraction, namely

$$r_j = \text{ev}_{\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j), T(j, j)} \circ (\text{id}_{\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j), T(j, j))} \otimes e_j) \circ \rho_{\underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j), T(j, j))}^{-1}$$

which can also be identified with  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}(e_j, T(j, j))$  if we suppress the canonical isomorphism  $T(j, j) \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(I, T(j, j))$ . Moreover, by considering a certain com-

mutative diagram in  $\mathcal{V}$  of the following form,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j), T(j, j)) & & & & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j, k)) \\
 \downarrow r_j & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\
 & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j), T(j, k))) & & & \\
 & \downarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), \underline{\mathcal{V}}(e_j, T(j, k))) & & & \\
 T(j, j) & \longrightarrow & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, j) \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j, k)) & & \\
 & & \downarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}(e_j \otimes \text{id}, T(j, k)) & & \\
 & & \underline{\mathcal{V}}(\underline{\mathcal{J}}(j, k), T(j, k)) & \xleftarrow{\text{id}} & 
 \end{array}$$

where we have suppressed various canonical isomorphisms involving  $I$ , we see that  $r_j \circ \varphi_{j,j} : X \rightarrow T(j, j)$  defines a cone over the first diagram.

It is clear that the two constructions given above are mutually inverse, so we have a natural bijection between cones over the first diagram and cones over the second diagram, as required.  $\blacksquare$

**B.3.22** COROLLARY. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. Then, for any  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and any pair  $(\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , the end*

$$\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{F}j, \underline{G}j)$$

*is (the object part of) an object of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformations  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{G}$ . In particular, the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  exists.*

*Proof.* Simply compare the construction of  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](\underline{F}, \underline{G})$  given in [remark B.3.4](#) with the characterisation of  $\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{F}j, \underline{G}j)$  given in [lemma B.3.21](#).  $\blacksquare$

**B.3.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists.*

- *Let  $\underline{\mathcal{K}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. If  $\underline{W} : \underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight such that  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , then  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  exist in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  and can be computed componentwise.*

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

- Let  $\underline{\mathcal{K}}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor category  $[\underline{\mathcal{K}}^{\text{op}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}]$  exists. If  $\underline{W} : \underline{\mathcal{K}}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched weight such that  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  exist in  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$ , then  $\underline{W}$ -weighted limits for all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagrams  $\underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  exist in  $[\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  and can be computed componentwise.

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\underline{G} : \underline{\mathcal{K}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor, let  $\underline{G}' : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow [\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}]$  be the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor defined by  $\underline{G}'(j)(k) = \underline{G}(k)(j)$ , and let  $\underline{H} : \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  be the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor defined by  $\underline{H}(j) = \{\underline{W}, \underline{G}'(j)\}^{\underline{\mathcal{K}}}$ . We wish to construct a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism of the form below:

$$[\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](-, \underline{G})) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](-, \underline{H})$$

[Proposition B.3.15](#) and [theorem B.3.18](#) imply  $[\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, -)$  preserves weighted limits, and [corollary B.3.22](#) says that objects of natural transformations are ends (hence, weighted limits), so we have the following  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism:

$$[\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](-, \underline{G})) \cong \int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} [\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{j}^*(-), \underline{G}'(j)))$$

On the other hand, by definition, we have a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$[\underline{\mathcal{K}}, \underline{\mathcal{V}}](\underline{W}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{G})) \cong \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, \underline{H})$$

of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ , and

$$\int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{\mathcal{C}}(\underline{j}^*(-), \underline{H}(j)) \cong [\underline{\mathcal{J}}, \underline{\mathcal{C}}](-, \underline{H})$$

so we are done. ■

**B.3.24** LEMMA. Let  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{J}}$  be small  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched categories. For all  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{A} : \underline{\mathcal{I}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{I}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{J}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ :

- (i) The assignment  $(i', i) \mapsto \int_{j:\underline{\mathcal{J}}} \underline{A}(i', j, i, j)$  extends to a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{\mathcal{I}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{I}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .

- (ii) *There is a unique morphism  $\theta$  making the diagram below commute for all  $i$  and  $j$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int_{i':\underline{I}} \int_{j':\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \int_{j':\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j', i, j') \\ \theta \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \int_{(i', j'):\underline{I} \otimes \underline{J}} \underline{A}(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \underline{A}(i, j, i, j) \end{array}$$

where the unlabelled arrows are the components of the respective limiting cones as in [lemma B.3.21](#), and  $\theta$  is moreover an isomorphism.

- (iii) *There is a unique morphism  $\sigma$  making the diagram below commute for all  $i$  and  $j$ ,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \int_{i':\underline{I}} \int_{j':\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \int_{j':\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j', i, j') \\ \sigma \downarrow & & \searrow \\ \int_{j':\underline{J}} \int_{i':\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i', j', i', j') & \longrightarrow & \int_{i':\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j', i, j') \\ & & \nearrow \\ & & \underline{A}(i, j, i, j) \end{array}$$

where the unmarked arrows are the components of the respective limiting cones, and  $\sigma$  is moreover an isomorphism.

*Proof.* (i). This is a special case of [proposition B.3.16](#).

(ii) and (iii). See § 2.1 in [Kelly, 2005]. □

**B.3.25** **THEOREM** (Interchange law for ends and coends). *Let  $\underline{C}$  be any  $\underline{V}$ -enriched category, let  $\underline{I}$  and  $\underline{J}$  be small  $\underline{V}$ -enriched categories, and let  $\underline{A} : \underline{I}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{J}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{I} \otimes \underline{J} \rightarrow \underline{C}$  be any functor. If the end  $\int_{i:\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j', i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all  $j'$  and  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , and the end  $\int_{j:\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i', j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all  $i'$  and  $i$  in  $\underline{I}$ , then the following are equivalent:*

- (i) *The end  $\int_{(i,j):\underline{I} \otimes \underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .*
- (ii) *The iterated end  $\int_{i:\underline{I}} \int_{j:\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .*

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

(iii) The iterated end  $\int_{j:\underline{J}} \int_{i:\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .

In this case, we have a canonical isomorphism in  $\underline{C}$ :

$$\int_{i:\underline{I}} \int_{j:\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j) \cong \int_{(i,j):\underline{I} \otimes \underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j) \cong \int_{j:\underline{J}} \int_{i:\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$$

Dually, if the coend  $\int^{i:\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j', i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all  $j'$  and  $j$  in  $\underline{J}$ , and the coend  $\int^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i', j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$  for all  $i'$  and  $i$  in  $\underline{I}$ , then the following are equivalent:

(i') The coend  $\int^{(i,j):\underline{I} \otimes \underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .

(ii') The iterated coend  $\int^{i:\underline{I}} \int^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .

(iii') The iterated coend  $\int^{j:\underline{J}} \int^{i:\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$  exists in  $\underline{C}$ .

In this case, we have a canonical isomorphism in  $\underline{C}$ :

$$\int^{i:\underline{I}} \int^{j:\underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j) \cong \int^{(i,j):\underline{I} \otimes \underline{J}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j) \cong \int^{j:\underline{J}} \int^{i:\underline{I}} \underline{A}(i, j, i, j)$$

*Proof.* Use the strong Yoneda lemma ([proposition B.3.9](#)) to reduce the claims to [lemma B.3.24](#). ■



## B.4 Categories with actions

**Prerequisites.** §B.1, B.2, B.3.

**B.4.1** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category.

- A **left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action** on a category  $\mathcal{C}$  is a strong monoidal functor  $\mathcal{V} \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$ , where  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$  is regarded as a strict monoidal category under composition.
- A **right  $\mathcal{V}$ -action** on  $\mathcal{C}$  is a strong monoidal functor  $\mathcal{V} \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]^{\text{rev}}$ , where  $[\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$  is regarded as a strict monoidal category under composition.

**B.4.2** REMARK. We can unfold the above definition somewhat by taking the left exponential transpose of the strong monoidal functor  $\mathcal{V} \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$ : let  $\otimes$  be the corresponding functor  $\mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ . Since the original functor was strong monoidal, we get a natural isomorphism  $\eta : \text{id}_{\mathcal{C}} \Rightarrow I \otimes (-)$  and a natural isomorphism  $\mu_{X,Y} : X \otimes (Y \otimes (-)) \Rightarrow (X \otimes Y) \otimes (-)$  for each pair of objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ ; these moreover satisfy the following coherence laws:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \otimes (Y \otimes (-)) & \xrightarrow{\mu_{X,Y}} & (X \otimes Y) \otimes (-) \\
 f \otimes (g \otimes \text{id}) \downarrow & & \downarrow (f \otimes g) \otimes \text{id} \\
 X' \otimes (Y' \otimes (-)) & \xrightarrow{\mu_{X',Y'}} & (X' \otimes Y') \otimes (-)
 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X \otimes (-) & \xrightarrow{\eta(X \otimes (-))} & I \otimes (X \otimes (-)) \\
 \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{I,X} \\
 X \otimes (-) & \xleftarrow{\lambda_X \otimes \text{id}} & (I \otimes X) \otimes (-)
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 X \otimes (-) & \xrightarrow{(X \otimes (-))\eta} & X \otimes (I \otimes (-)) \\
 \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{X,I} \\
 X \otimes (-) & \xleftarrow{\rho_X \otimes \text{id}} & (X \otimes I) \otimes (-)
 \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & W \otimes (X \otimes (Y \otimes (-))) & \\
 \mu_{W,X}(Y \otimes (-)) \swarrow & & \searrow \text{id}_W \otimes \mu_{X,Y} \\
 (W \otimes X) \otimes (Y \otimes (-)) & & W \otimes ((X \otimes Y) \otimes (-)) \\
 \mu_{W \otimes X, Y} \downarrow & & \downarrow \mu_{W, X \otimes Y} \\
 ((W \otimes X) \otimes Y) \otimes (-) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{W,X,Y} \otimes \text{id}} & (W \otimes (X \otimes Y)) \otimes (-)
 \end{array}$$

Conversely, any functor  $\otimes : \mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  equipped with such a collection of natural isomorphisms defines a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$ .

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

**B.4.3** PROPOSITION (Bénabou). *For any monoidal category  $\mathcal{C}$ , there is a faithful strong monoidal functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow [\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}]$  defined by the following data:*

$$\begin{aligned} FX &= X \otimes (-) \\ \eta &= \lambda^{-1} \\ (\mu_{X,Y})_Z &= \alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

*In particular, this defines a left  $\mathcal{C}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$ , called the **left regular representation** of  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

*Proof.*  $F$  is clearly a faithful functor. In this case, the strong monoidal functor axioms become the following diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \otimes Y & \xrightarrow{\lambda_{X \otimes Y}^{-1}} & I \otimes (X \otimes Y) \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{I,X,Y}^{-1} \\ X \otimes Y & \xleftarrow{\lambda_X \otimes \text{id}_Y} & (I \otimes X) \otimes Y \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X \otimes Y & \xrightarrow{\text{id}_X \otimes \lambda_Y^{-1}} & X \otimes (I \otimes Y) \\ \text{id} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{X,I,Y}^{-1} \\ X \otimes Y & \xleftarrow{\rho_X \otimes \text{id}_Y} & (X \otimes I) \otimes Y \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & W \otimes (X \otimes (Y \otimes Z)) & \\ \alpha_{W,X,Y \otimes Z}^{-1} \swarrow & & \searrow \text{id}_W \otimes \alpha_{X,Y,Z}^{-1} \\ (W \otimes X) \otimes (Y \otimes Z) & & W \otimes ((X \otimes Y) \otimes Z) \\ \alpha_{W \otimes X,Y,Z}^{-1} \downarrow & & \downarrow \alpha_{W,X \otimes Y,Z}^{-1} \\ ((W \otimes X) \otimes Y) \otimes Z & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{W,X,Y} \otimes \text{id}_Z} & (W \otimes (X \otimes Y)) \otimes Z \end{array}$$

The left square commutes by the coherence theorem, while the right square and the pentagon are seen to be immediate consequences of the triangle and pentagon axioms, respectively. ■

**B.4.4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category.*

- *If  $\otimes : \mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  defines a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$  such that, for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , the endofunctor  $X \otimes (-)$  has a right adjoint  $(-) \multimap X$ , then the functor  $\multimap : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  defines a right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$ .*
- *If  $\otimes : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{V} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  defines a right  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$  such that, for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , the endofunctor  $(-) \otimes X$  has a right adjoint  $X \multimap (-)$ , then the functor  $\multimap : \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  defines a left  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$ .*

- If  $\multimap : C \times \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$  defines a right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $C$  such that, for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , the endofunctor  $X \multimap (-)$  has a left adjoint  $X \odot (-)$ , then the functor  $\odot : \mathcal{V} \times C \rightarrow C$  defines a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $C$ .
- If  $\multimap : \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow C$  defines a left  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $C$  such that, for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , the endofunctor  $X \multimap (-)$  has a left adjoint  $(-) \odot X$ , then the functor  $\odot : C \times \mathcal{V} \rightarrow C$  defines a right  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $C$ .

*Proof.* The four statements are related by applying  $(-)^{\text{op}}$  and  $(-)^{\text{rev}}$  at the appropriate points, so it suffices to prove the first claim.

First, note that  $\multimap$  is indeed a functor  $C \times \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$ , by the parameter theorem for adjunctions.<sup>[1]</sup> Let  $\text{ev}_{X,A} : X \odot (A \multimap X) \rightarrow A$  denote the component of the counit of the adjunction  $X \odot (-) \dashv (-) \multimap X$  at an object  $A$  in  $C$ . For each pair of objects  $X$  and  $Y$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  and each object  $A$  in  $C$ , we define the morphism  $(\delta_{X,Y})_A : A \multimap (X \otimes Y) \rightarrow (A \multimap X) \multimap Y$  to be the right adjoint transpose of  $\text{ev}_{X \otimes Y, A} \circ (\mu_{X,Y})_{(A \multimap X) \multimap Y}$ , and for each  $A$ , we define  $\varepsilon_A : A \multimap I \rightarrow A$  to be the composite  $\text{ev}_{I,A} \circ \eta_{A \multimap I}$ . These are clearly natural in  $A$ , and it is straightforward to check that  $\delta_{X,Y}$  is also natural in  $X$  and  $Y$ . One may then use the calculus of mates to show that  $\varepsilon$  and  $\delta_{X,Y}$  are natural isomorphisms and that they satisfy the axioms for making the right exponential transpose of  $\multimap : C \times \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C$  into a strong monoidal functor  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow [C, C]^{\text{rev}}$ , i.e. a right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $C$ . ■

- B.4.5** EXAMPLE.  $\mathcal{V}$  is a left-closed (resp. right-closed) monoidal category if and only if the left (resp. right) self-action of  $\mathcal{V}$  has a parametrised right adjoint as in the proposition, and the right adjoint right (resp. left)  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action so obtained is precisely a left (resp. right) internal hom functor.
- B.4.6** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category, let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category, let  $X$  be an object in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and let  $C$  be an object in  $\underline{C}$ .

- Assuming  $\mathcal{V}$  is right-closed with right internal hom functor  $\multimap$ , a **tensor product** of  $X$  and  $C$  is a pair  $(X \odot C, \lambda)$  where  $X \odot C$  is an object in  $\underline{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a morphism  $X \rightarrow \underline{C}(C, X \odot C)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{C}(X \odot C, -) \Rightarrow X \multimap \underline{C}(C, -)$$

induced (as in the weak Yoneda lemma) by the corresponding morphism  $\ulcorner \lambda \urcorner : I \rightarrow X \multimap \underline{C}(C, X \odot C)$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism.

[1] See [CWM, Ch. IV, § 7].

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

- Assuming  $\mathcal{V}$  is left-closed with left internal hom functor  $\multimap$ , a **cotensor product** of  $X$  and  $C$  is a pair  $(X \multimap C, \lambda)$  where  $X \multimap C$  is an object in  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $\lambda$  is a morphism  $X \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X \multimap C, C)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  such that the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation

$$\underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, X \multimap C) \Rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(-, C) \multimap X$$

induced (as in the weak Yoneda lemma) by the corresponding morphism  $\ulcorner \lambda \urcorner : I \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}(X \multimap C, C) \multimap X$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism. We may also write  $C \multimap X$  instead of  $X \multimap C$ .

**B.4.7** REMARK. By [lemma B.2.24](#), cotensor products (resp. tensor products) are unique up to unique isomorphism. Moreover, if  $\mathcal{V}$  is a *symmetric monoidal closed* category, then a cotensor product (resp. tensor product) is just a weighted limit (resp. weighted colimit) for a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched diagram of shape  $\mathbb{I}$ , where  $\mathbb{I}$  is the  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category with only one object  $*$  and  $\mathbb{I}(*, *) = I$ .

**B.4.8** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category.

- Assuming  $\mathcal{V}$  is right-closed, a  **$\mathcal{V}$ -tensored category** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  equipped with a choice of tensor product for each object in  $\mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{C}$ .
- Assuming  $\mathcal{V}$  is left-closed, a  **$\mathcal{V}$ -cotensored category** is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  equipped with a choice of cotensor product for each object in  $\mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{C}$ .

**B.4.9** REMARK. Suppose  $\mathcal{V}$  is a *symmetric monoidal closed* category. By [proposition B.3.16](#), if  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -tensored category (resp.  $\mathcal{V}$ -cotensored category), then there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\odot : \mathcal{V} \otimes \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$  (resp.  $\multimap : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \otimes \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{C}}$ ) sending a pair  $(X, C)$  to their chosen tensor product  $X \odot C$  (resp. cotensor product  $C \multimap X$ ).

**B.4.10** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a *symmetric monoidal closed* category.

- If  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -tensored category, then the functor  $\odot : \mathcal{V} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  defines a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- If  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -cotensored category, then the functor  $\multimap : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  defines a right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Following [remark B.4.2](#), we seek natural isomorphisms  $\eta : \text{id}_C \Rightarrow I \odot (-)$  and  $\mu_{X,Y} : X \odot (Y \odot (-)) \Rightarrow (X \otimes Y) \odot (-)$  satisfying the relevant coherence laws. To that end, observe that we have the following natural bijections:

$$\begin{aligned} C(A, B) &\cong \mathcal{V}(I, \underline{C}(A, B)) \\ &\cong C(I \odot A, B) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} C((X \otimes Y) \odot A, B) &\cong \mathcal{V}(X \otimes Y, \underline{C}(A, B)) \\ &\cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{\mathcal{V}}(Y, \underline{C}(A, B))) \\ &\cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(Y \odot A, B)) \\ &\cong C(X \odot (Y \odot A), B) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, by the Yoneda lemma, we have natural isomorphisms of the required form. The coherence laws remain to be verified: this is straightforward, if tedious. (See also [proposition B.2.5](#).) ■

**B.4.II** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $C$  be a category.

- A **right  $\mathcal{V}$ -hom system** for  $C$  consists of a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action  $\otimes : \mathcal{V} \times C \rightarrow C$ , a functor  $\underline{C} : C^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$ , and a right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action  $\circ - : C \times \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$  together with natural bijections of the types below,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B)) &\cong C(A, B \circ - X) \\ C(X \otimes A, B) &\cong C(A, B \circ - X) \\ C(X \otimes A, B) &\cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B)) \end{aligned}$$

where  $X$  varies over the objects in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $A$  and  $B$  vary over the objects in  $C$ , such that the cyclic composition of the three bijections is the identity.

- A **left  $\mathcal{V}$ -hom system** for  $C$  consists of a right  $\mathcal{V}$ -action  $\otimes : C \times \mathcal{V} \rightarrow C$ , a functor  $\underline{C} : C^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$ , and a left  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action  $\circ - : \mathcal{V}^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$ , together with natural bijections of the types below,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B)) &\cong C(A, X \circ - B) \\ C(A \otimes X, B) &\cong C(A, X \circ - B) \\ C(A \otimes X, B) &\cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B)) \end{aligned}$$

where  $X$  varies over the objects in  $\mathcal{V}$ , and  $A$  and  $B$  vary over the objects in  $C$ , such that the cyclic composition of the three bijections is the identity.

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

**B.4.I2** REMARK. The cyclic composition condition implies it is enough to provide two out of the three natural bijections: the third is then forced to be the inverse of the composite of the other two.

**B.4.I3** EXAMPLE. If  $\mathcal{V}$  is a biclosed monoidal category with right internal hom functor  $\mathcal{H}om$  and left internal hom functor  $\mathfrak{h}$ , then  $(\otimes, \mathfrak{h}, \mathcal{H}om)$  is a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -hom system for  $\mathcal{V}$ :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{V}(Y, X \mathfrak{h} Z) &\cong \mathcal{V}(X, \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)) \\ \mathcal{V}(X \otimes Y, Z) &\cong \mathcal{V}(X, \mathcal{H}om(Y, Z)) \\ \mathcal{V}(X \otimes Y, Z) &\cong \mathcal{V}(Y, X \mathfrak{h} Z)\end{aligned}$$

**B.4.I4** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a symmetric monoidal closed category and let  $\underline{C}$  be a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category that is both  $\mathcal{V}$ -tensored and  $\mathcal{V}$ -cotensored.*

(i) *For each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , there exist  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms*

$$\underline{C}(X \odot (-), -) \cong \underline{\mathcal{V}}(X, \underline{C}(-, -)) \cong \underline{C}(-, (-) \multimap X)$$

*and moreover, these constitute  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{\mathcal{V}}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{C}^{\text{op}} \otimes \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{V}}$ .*

(ii) *In particular, for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$ , there is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched adjunction of the form below:*

$$X \odot (-) \dashv (-) \multimap X : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{C}$$

(iii)  *$(\odot, \underline{C}, \multimap)$  is a right  $\mathcal{V}$ -hom system for  $\underline{C}$ .*

*Proof.* (i). This is a special case of [proposition B.3.16](#).

(ii). Apply [proposition B.2.27](#).

(iii). The  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms have underlying natural bijections

$$C(X \odot A, B) \cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B)) \cong C(A, B \multimap X)$$

as required. ■

**B.4.15** THEOREM. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category and let  $C$  be a category.

- (i) If  $\otimes$  is a left  $\mathcal{V}$ -action on  $C$  and  $\underline{C} : C^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$  is a functor with natural bijections of the form below,

$$C(X \otimes A, B) \cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B))$$

then  $\underline{C}$  is the hom functor of a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{C}$  whose underlying ordinary category is isomorphic to  $C$ .

- (ii) Moreover, if  $\mathcal{V}$  is right-closed, then the hypothesised natural bijection underlies a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$C(X \otimes A, -) \cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, -))$$

for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  and each object  $A$  in  $C$ . In particular,  $\underline{C}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -tensored category.

Dually:

- (i) If  $\multimap$  is a right  $\mathcal{V}^{\text{op}}$ -action on  $C$  and  $\underline{C} : C^{\text{op}} \times C \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$  is a functor with natural bijections of the form below,

$$C(A, B \multimap X) \cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B))$$

then  $\underline{C}$  is the hom functor of a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched category  $\underline{C}$  whose underlying ordinary category is isomorphic to  $C$ .

- (ii) Moreover, if  $\mathcal{V}$  is left-closed, then the hypothesised natural bijection underlies a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphism

$$C(-, B \multimap X) \cong \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(-, X))$$

for each object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  and each object  $B$  in  $C$ . In particular,  $\underline{C}$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -cotensored category.

*Proof.* (i). The natural isomorphism  $A \cong I \otimes A$  induces a family of bijections

$$C(A, B) \cong \mathcal{V}(I, \underline{C}(A, B))$$

natural in  $A$  and  $B$ , so we have a morphism  $e_A : I \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, A)$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  for every object  $A$  in  $C$  corresponding to  $\text{id}_A : A \rightarrow A$  in  $C$ . Let  $\text{ev}_{A,B} : \underline{C}(A, B) \otimes A \rightarrow B$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

be the component at  $B$  of the counit of the adjunction  $(-) \otimes A \dashv \underline{C}(A, -)$ , and define  $c_{A,B,C} : \underline{C}(B, C) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B) \rightarrow \underline{C}(A, C)$  to be the right adjoint transpose of the following morphism in  $C$ :

$$\text{ev}_{B,C} \circ (\text{id}_{\underline{C}(B,C)} \otimes \text{ev}_{A,B}) \circ (\mu_{\underline{C}(B,C), \underline{C}(A,B)})_A^{-1} : (\underline{C}(B, C) \otimes \underline{C}(A, B)) \otimes A \rightarrow C$$

By definition, the left adjoint transpose of  $e_B$  is  $\eta_B^{-1}$ , so the left and right unit axioms are satisfied:

$$\begin{aligned} c_{A,B,B} \circ (e_B \otimes \text{id}_{\underline{C}(A,B)}) &= \lambda_{\underline{C}(A,B)} \\ c_{B,B,C} \circ (\text{id}_{\underline{C}(B,C)} \otimes e_B) &= \rho_{\underline{C}(B,C)} \end{aligned}$$

One may similarly verify the associativity axiom:

$$c_{A,B,D} \circ (c_{B,C,D} \otimes \text{id}_{\underline{C}(A,B)}) = c_{A,C,D} \circ (\text{id}_{\underline{C}(C,D)} \otimes c_{A,B,C}) \circ \alpha_{\underline{C}(C,D), \underline{C}(B,C), \underline{C}(A,B)}$$

(ii). See Lemma 2.1 in [Janelidze and Kelly, 2001]. □

**B.4.16** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category, and let  $C$  and  $D$  be categories with left  $\mathcal{V}$ -actions. A  $\mathcal{V}$ -**strength** for a functor  $F : C \rightarrow D$  is a natural transformation  $\sigma : (-) \otimes F(-) \Rightarrow F(- \otimes -)$  making these diagrams commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & FA & \\ \eta_{FA} \swarrow & & \searrow F\eta_A \\ I \otimes FA & \xrightarrow{\sigma_{I,A}} & F(I \otimes A) \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & X \otimes (Y \otimes FA) & & & \\ \text{id}_X \otimes \sigma_{Y,A} \swarrow & & \searrow (\mu_{X,Y})_A & & \\ X \otimes F(Y \otimes A) & & (X \otimes Y) \otimes FA & & \\ \sigma_{X,Y \otimes A} \downarrow & & \downarrow \sigma_{X \otimes Y, A} & & \\ F(X \otimes (Y \otimes A)) & \xrightarrow{F(\mu_{X,Y})_A} & F((X \otimes Y) \otimes A) & & \end{array}$$

A  $\mathcal{V}$ -**strong functor** is a functor equipped with a  $\mathcal{V}$ -strength.



**B.4.17** THEOREM (Kock). Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category, let  $\underline{C}$  and  $\underline{D}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -tensored categories, and let  $F : C \rightarrow D$  be an ordinary functor.

- (i) Given a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functor  $\underline{F} : \underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  whose underlying ordinary functor is  $F : C \rightarrow D$ , there is a (unique) natural transformation

$$C((-) \odot (-), -) \Rightarrow D((-) \odot F(-), F(-))$$

whose components make the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C(X \odot A, B) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{C}(A, B)) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{F}_{A,B}) \\ D(X \odot FA, FB) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{V}(X, \underline{D}(FA, FB)) \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the components of underlying natural bijections of the canonical  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural isomorphisms. In particular, for any (ordinary) functors  $P : J \rightarrow \mathcal{V}$  and  $Q, R : J \rightarrow C$ , there is an induced map from the ensemble of (ordinary) natural transformations  $P \odot Q \Rightarrow R$  to the ensemble of (ordinary) natural transformations  $P \odot FQ \Rightarrow FR$ .

- (ii) Moreover, the natural transformation  $\sigma : (-) \odot F(-) \Rightarrow F(- \odot -)$  induced by  $\text{id} : (-) \odot (-) \Rightarrow (-) \odot (-)$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -strength for  $F : C \rightarrow D$ .
- (iii) This construction defines a bijection between the ensemble of  $\mathcal{V}$ -strengths for  $F : C \rightarrow D$  and the ensemble of  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors  $\underline{C} \rightarrow \underline{D}$  whose underlying ordinary functor is  $F$ .

*Proof.* (i). Straightforward; but see also [remark A.6.5](#).

(ii) and (iii). See Theorem 1.3 in [Kock, 1972].

□ TODO: Give a proper proof; the cited one is incomplete.

**B.4.18** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a monoidal category, let  $C$  and  $D$  be categories with left  $\mathcal{V}$ -actions, and let  $F, F' : C \rightarrow D$  be functors with  $\mathcal{V}$ -strengths  $\sigma$  and  $\sigma'$  respectively. A  $\mathcal{V}$ -strong natural transformation  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  is a natural transformation making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X \otimes FA & \xrightarrow{\sigma_{X,A}} & F(X \otimes A) \\ \text{id}_X \otimes \varphi_A \downarrow & & \downarrow \varphi_{X \otimes A} \\ X \otimes F'A & \xrightarrow{\sigma'_{X,A}} & F'(X \otimes A) \end{array}$$

**B.4.19** THEOREM (Kock). *Let  $\mathcal{V}$  be a right-closed monoidal category, let  $\underline{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -tensored categories and let  $\underline{F}, \underline{F}' : \underline{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow \underline{\mathcal{D}}$  be  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched functors. The following are equivalent for an ordinary natural transformation  $\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$ :*

- (i)  *$\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  is the underlying ordinary natural transformation of a  $\mathcal{V}$ -enriched natural transformation  $\underline{F} \Rightarrow \underline{F}'$ .*
- (ii)  *$\varphi : F \Rightarrow F'$  is a  $\mathcal{V}$ -strong natural transformation (with respect to the  $\mathcal{V}$ -strengths induced by  $\underline{F}$  and  $\underline{F}'$ ).*

*Proof.* See Remark 1.4 in [Kock, 1972].

□ TODO: Give a proper proof.

## B.5 Indexed categories

**Prerequisites.** §§ A.1, A.2, A.3, A.4.

**B.5.1** **DEFINITION.** Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category. A  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category  $\mathbb{E}$  consists of the following data:

- For each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , a category  $\mathcal{E}^B$ , called the **fibre** of  $\mathbb{E}$  over  $B$ .
- For each morphism  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , a functor  $f^* : \mathcal{E}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{E}^{B'}$ , called the **reindexing functor** along  $f : B' \rightarrow B$ .
- For each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , a natural isomorphism  $\eta_B : \text{id}_{\mathcal{E}^B} \Rightarrow (\text{id}_B)^*$ .
- For each commutative triangle in  $\mathcal{B}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B'' & & \\ & \searrow f' & \searrow f \circ f' \\ & B' & \xrightarrow{f} B \end{array}$$

a natural isomorphism  $\mu_{f,f'} : f'^* f^* \Rightarrow (f \circ f')^*$ .

These data are moreover required to satisfy the equations shown below:

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_{f, \text{id}_{B'}} \bullet \eta_{B'} f^* &= \text{id}_{f^*} \\ \mu_{\text{id}_B, f} \bullet f^* \eta_B &= \text{id}_{f^*} \\ \mu_{f \circ f', f''} \bullet f''^* \mu_{f, f'} &= \mu_{f, f' \circ f''} \bullet \mu_{f', f''} f^* \end{aligned}$$

A **strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category** is a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category where the natural isomorphisms  $\eta_B$  and  $\mu_{f,f'}$  are identities.

**B.5.2** ¶ If  $\mathbb{E}$  is a  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category and  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ , then we will usually write  $\mathcal{E}_B$  for the fibre over  $B$  and either  $f_!$  or  $f_*$  for the reindexing functor  $\mathcal{E}_{B'} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}_B$ , depending on context.

**B.5.3** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category and let  $\mathbb{D}$  and  $\mathbb{E}$  be  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed categories. An **oplax  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor**  $F : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  consists of the following data:

- For each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , a functor  $F^B : \mathcal{D}^B \rightarrow \mathcal{E}^B$ .
- For each morphism  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , a natural transformation  $\theta_f$  as in the diagram below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^B & \xrightarrow{F^B} & \mathcal{E}^B \\ f^* \downarrow & \theta_f \nearrow & \downarrow f^* \\ \mathcal{D}^{B'} & \xrightarrow{F^{B'}} & \mathcal{E}^{B'} \end{array}$$

These data are required to satisfy the equations shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^B \xlongequal{\quad} \mathcal{D}^B \xrightarrow{F^B} \mathcal{E}^B & & \mathcal{D}^B \xrightarrow{F^B} \mathcal{E}^B \xlongequal{\quad} \mathcal{E}^B \\ \text{id} \downarrow \eta_B \nearrow & \downarrow \theta_{\text{id}} \nearrow & \downarrow (\text{id}_B)^* \\ \mathcal{D}^B \xlongequal{\quad} \mathcal{D}^B \xrightarrow{F^B} \mathcal{E}^B & = & \mathcal{D}^B \xrightarrow{F^B} \mathcal{E}^B \xlongequal{\quad} \mathcal{E}^B \end{array}$$
  

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{D}^B \xrightarrow{F^B} \mathcal{E}^B & & \mathcal{D}^B \xrightarrow{F^B} \mathcal{E}^B \\ f^* \swarrow & \theta_f \nearrow & \downarrow f^* \\ \mathcal{D}^{B'} & \xrightarrow{F^{B'}} & \mathcal{E}^{B'} \\ f'^* \swarrow & \theta_{f'} \nearrow & \downarrow f'^* \\ \mathcal{D}^{B''} & \xrightarrow{F^{B''}} & \mathcal{E}^{B''} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \mu_{f,f'} \nearrow \\ \mu_{f',f''} \nearrow \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \downarrow (f \circ f')^* \\ \downarrow (f' \circ f'')^* \end{array}$$

A  **$\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor** (resp. **strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor**) is an oplax  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor such that the natural transformations  $\theta_f$  are natural isomorphisms (resp. identities).

**B.5.4** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category and let  $F, G : \mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be a parallel pair of  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functors. A  **$\mathcal{B}$ -indexed natural transformation**  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  consists of a natural transformation  $\alpha_B : F^B \Rightarrow G^B$  for each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , such that the following equation holds:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 D^B & \xrightarrow{G^B} & \mathcal{E}^B \\
 f^* \downarrow & \theta_f \nearrow & \downarrow f^* \\
 D^{B'} & \xrightarrow{G^{B'}} & \mathcal{E}^{B'} \\
 \parallel & \alpha_{B'} \nearrow & \parallel \\
 D^{B'} & \xrightarrow{F^{B'}} & \mathcal{E}^{B'}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 D^B & \xrightarrow{F^B} & \mathcal{E}^B \\
 \parallel & \alpha_B \nearrow & \parallel \\
 D^B & \xrightarrow{G^B} & \mathcal{E}^B \\
 f^* \downarrow & \theta_f \nearrow & \downarrow f^* \\
 D^{B'} & \xrightarrow{G^{B'}} & \mathcal{E}^{B'}
 \end{array}$$

**B.5.5** REMARK. In other words, a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category is a contravariant pseudofunctor from the category  $\mathcal{B}$  to the meta-2-category of all (not necessarily small) categories, a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor is a pseudonatural transformation between such pseudofunctors, and in turn, a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed natural transformation is a modification between such pseudonatural transformations.

**B.5.6** EXAMPLE. Any contravariant (strict) functor from  $\mathcal{B}$  to the meta-category of all (not necessarily small) categories is a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category in a trivial way. In particular, every presheaf on  $\mathcal{B}$  can be regarded as a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category.

**B.5.7** ¶ Given two  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed categories, say  $\mathbb{D}$  and  $\mathbb{E}$ , we may form a category  $[\mathbb{D}, \mathbb{E}]$  whose objects are  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functors  $\mathbb{D} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  and whose morphisms are  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed natural transformations. Of course, these are the hom-categories of the evident meta-2-category of  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed categories,  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functors, and  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed natural transformations.

**B.5.8** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category, let  $B$  be an object in  $\mathcal{B}$ , and let  $\mathbb{E}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category. Then the following functor is (half of) an equivalence of categories,

$$\begin{aligned}
 [h_B, \mathbb{E}] &\rightarrow \mathcal{E}^B \\
 F &\mapsto F^B(\text{id}_B)
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $h_B$  is the representable presheaf on  $\mathcal{B}$  regarded as a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category.

*Proof.* First, we show that the given functor is fully faithful. Let  $F, G : h_B \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  be two  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functors, and let  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  be a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed natural transformation. Then, for any morphism  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , we have the following

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F^{B'}(f) & \xrightarrow{(\alpha_{B'})_f} & G^{B'}(f) \\ (\theta_f)_{\text{id}} \downarrow & & \downarrow (\theta_f)_{\text{id}} \\ f^* F^B(\text{id}_B) & \xrightarrow{f^*((\alpha_B)_{\text{id}})} & f^* G^B(\text{id}_B) \end{array}$$

Since  $\theta_f : F^{B'} f^* \Rightarrow f^* F^B$  is a natural isomorphism, we may deduce that all the components of  $\alpha$  are uniquely determined by  $(\alpha_B)_{\text{id}} : F^B(\text{id}_B) \rightarrow G^B(\text{id}_B)$ . Conversely, given any morphism  $g : F^B(\text{id}_B) \rightarrow G^B(\text{id}_B)$ , we may define a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed natural transformation  $\alpha : F \Rightarrow G$  such that  $(\alpha_B)_{\text{id}} = g$ : the components of  $\alpha$  are determined as above, and it is straightforward to check that the various axioms are satisfied.

It now suffices to show that the given functor  $[\mathcal{h}_B, \mathbb{E}] \rightarrow \mathcal{E}^B$  is essentially surjective on objects. Let  $E$  be an object in  $\mathcal{E}^B$ . We define a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor  $F : \mathcal{h}_B \rightarrow \mathbb{E}$  as follows: given a morphism  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , set  $F^{B'}(f) = f^* E$ , and given another morphism  $f' : B'' \rightarrow B'$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , set  $(\theta_{f'})_f = (\mu_{f, f'})_E^{-1}$ . It is easy to verify that these data indeed constitute a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor, and by construction, we have a canonical isomorphism  $E \rightarrow F^B(\text{id}_B)$ , namely  $(\eta_B)_E : E \rightarrow (\text{id}_B)^* E$ . ■

**B.5.9** DEFINITION. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor.

- A  **$P$ -vertical morphism** is a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  whose image in  $\mathcal{B}$  is an identity morphism.
- The **fibre** of  $P$  over an object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$  is the subcategory  $P^{-1}\{B\} \subseteq \mathcal{E}$  whose objects are those  $E$  such that  $PE = B$  and whose morphisms are the  $P$ -vertical morphisms.

**B.5.10** REMARK. The fibres of a functor  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  are usually *not* full subcategories of  $\mathcal{E}$ . Moreover, the notion of  $P$ -vertical morphism is *not* stable under equivalence: indeed, a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  may be isomorphic to a  $P$ -vertical morphism without being a  $P$ -vertical morphism.

**B.5.11** LEMMA. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor. The inverse of any  $P$ -vertical morphism is also a  $P$ -vertical morphism.

*Proof.* Obvious. ◆

**B.5.I2** DEFINITION. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor.

- A **weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism** in  $\mathcal{E}$  is a morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  with the following property: for each morphism  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , if  $PE'' = PE'$  and  $Ph = Pg$ , then there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  such that  $h = g \circ g'$ .
- A **weakly  $P$ -cocartesian morphism** in  $\mathcal{E}$  is a morphism  $g : E \rightarrow E'$  with the following property: for each morphism  $h : E \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , if  $PE'' = PE'$  and  $Ph = Pg$ , then there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g' : E' \rightarrow E''$  such that  $h = g' \circ g$ .

REMARK. In the French literature (e.g. [SGA 1, Exposé VI]), weakly cartesian morphisms are simply called ‘morphismes cartésiens’.

**B.5.I3** LEMMA (Chevalley). Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor, let  $E$  be an object in  $\mathcal{E}$ , let  $B = PE$ , let  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ , and let  $Q : P^{-1}\{B'\} \rightarrow (B' \downarrow P)$  be the evident functor sending each object  $E''$  in  $P^{-1}\{B'\}$  to  $(E'', \text{id}_{B'})$  in the comma category  $(B' \downarrow P)$ . The following are equivalent for a morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg = f$ :

- (i) The morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is a weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism.
- (ii) For every object  $E''$  in  $P^{-1}\{B'\}$ , the following map is a bijection:

$$\begin{aligned} P^{-1}\{B'\}(E'', E') &\rightarrow (B' \downarrow P)(QE'', (E, f)) \\ g' &\mapsto g \circ g' \end{aligned}$$

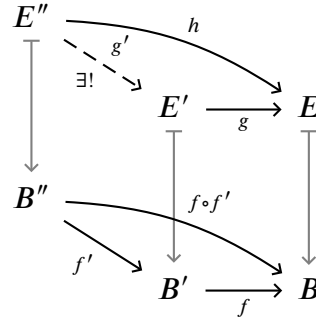
- (iii) The object  $(E', g)$  in the comma category  $(Q \downarrow (E, f))$  is a terminal object.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

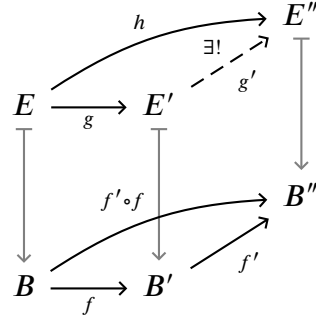
**B.5.I4** COROLLARY. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor. If both  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  and  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  are weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphisms with  $Pg = Pg'$ , then there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  such that  $h = g \circ g'$ , and it is an isomorphism in the fibre over  $PE'$ . ■

**B.5.15** DEFINITION. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor.

- A  **$P$ -prone morphism** is a morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  with the following property: if  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  is the image of  $g$  under  $P$ , and  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Ph = f \circ f'$  for some  $f' : B'' \rightarrow B'$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , then there is a unique morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg' = f'$  and  $h = g \circ g'$ :



- A  **$P$ -supine morphism** is a morphism  $g : E \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  with the following property: if  $f : B \rightarrow B'$  is the image of  $g$  under  $P$ , and  $h : E \rightarrow E''$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Ph = f' \circ f$  for some  $f' : B' \rightarrow B''$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , then there is a unique morphism  $g' : E \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg' = f'$  and  $h = g' \circ g$ :



REMARK. In the French literature (e.g. [Giraud, 1964]), prone morphisms are called ‘morphismes hypercartésiens’, whereas in the English literature (e.g. [Bénabou, 1985]), they are simply called ‘cartesian morphisms’. To avoid confusion, we will avoid the latter term.

**B.5.16** REMARK. Clearly, every  $P$ -prone (resp.  $P$ -supine) morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  is also weakly  $P$ -cartesian (resp. weakly  $P$ -cocartesian).



**B.5.17** EXAMPLE. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category, let  $[2, \mathcal{B}]$  be the arrow category, and let  $P : [2, \mathcal{B}] \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be the evident functor that sends an object in  $[2, \mathcal{B}]$  to its codomain (considered as a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ ). Then a morphism in  $[2, \mathcal{B}]$  is  $P$ -prone if and only if it is a pullback square in  $\mathcal{B}$ . This is the reason why  $P$ -prone morphisms are often called ‘(strongly)  $P$ -cartesian’. However, a morphism in  $[2, \mathcal{B}]$  is  $P$ -supine if and only if the top arrow is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ —not a pushout square, as one might expect!

**B.5.18** LEMMA (Chevalley). Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor, let  $Q : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow (\mathcal{B} \downarrow P)$  be the evident functor sending each object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  to  $(PE, E, \text{id}_{PE})$  in the comma category  $(\mathcal{B} \downarrow P)$ , and let  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ . The following are equivalent for any morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg = f$ :

- (i) The morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .
- (ii) For every object  $E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ , the following map is a bijection:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{E}(E'', E') &\rightarrow (\mathcal{B} \downarrow P)(QE'', (B', E, f)) \\ g' &\mapsto (Pg', g \circ g') \end{aligned}$$

- (iii) The object  $(E', (\text{id}_{B'}, f))$  in the comma category  $(Q \downarrow (B', E, f))$  is a terminal object.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**B.5.19** COROLLARY. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor. If both  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  and  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  are  $P$ -prone morphisms with  $Pg = Pg'$ , then there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  such that  $h = g \circ g'$ , and it is an isomorphism in the fibre of  $PE'$ . ■

**B.5.20** DEFINITION.

- A **Grothendieck prefibration** (resp. **Grothendieck fibration**) is a functor  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  with the following lifting property: for every object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  and every morphism  $f : B' \rightarrow PE$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , there exists a weakly  $P$ -cartesian (resp.  $P$ -prone) morphism  $g : f^*E \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  with  $Pg = f$ .
- A **Grothendieck pre-opfibration** (resp. **Grothendieck opfibration**) is a functor  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  with the following lifting property: for every object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  and every morphism  $f : PE \rightarrow B'$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , there exists a weakly  $P$ -cocartesian (resp.  $P$ -supine) morphism  $g : E \rightarrow f_*E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  with  $Pg = f$ .

**B.5.21** LEMMA. *Let  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{C}$  be categories.*

- *The projection  $\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, and the prone morphisms are precisely the morphisms whose  $\mathcal{C}$ -component is an isomorphism.*
- *The projection  $\mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration, and the supine morphisms are precisely the morphisms whose  $\mathcal{C}$ -component is an isomorphism.*

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**B.5.22** LEMMA. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck prefibration (resp. Grothendieck fibration). Then every morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  can be factored as a  $P$ -vertical morphism followed by a weakly  $P$ -cartesian (resp.  $P$ -prone) morphism, and this factorisation is unique up to unique  $P$ -vertical isomorphism.*

*Proof.* Let  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and let  $f = Ph$ . By hypothesis, there is a weakly  $P$ -cartesian (resp.  $P$ -prone) morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg = f$ ; and since  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is weakly  $P$ -cartesian (resp.  $P$ -prone), there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  such that  $h = g \circ g'$ . [Corollary B.5.14](#) (resp. [corollary B.5.19](#)) then implies that this factorisation is unique up to unique  $P$ -vertical isomorphism. ■

**B.5.23** PROPOSITION. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck prefibration.*
- (ii) *For each object  $B'$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , there exists a right adjoint for the evident functor  $Q : P^{-1}\{B'\} \rightarrow (B' \downarrow P)$  that sends each object  $E'$  in  $P^{-1}\{B'\}$  to the object  $(E', \text{id}_{B'})$  in the comma category  $(B' \downarrow P)$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [lemma B.5.13](#). ■

**B.5.24** PROPOSITION. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration. The following are equivalent for a morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ :*

- (i)  *$g : E' \rightarrow E$  is  $P$ -prone.*
- (ii)  *$g : E' \rightarrow E$  is weakly  $P$ -cartesian.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). See [remark B.5.16](#).

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is weakly  $P$ -cartesian. Let  $f = Pg$ . Since  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, there is a  $P$ -prone morphism  $h : f^*E \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Ph = f$ ; but  $P$ -prone morphisms are also weakly  $P$ -cartesian, so by [corollary B.5.14](#), there is a  $P$ -vertical isomorphism  $g' : f^*E \rightarrow E'$  such that  $h = g \circ g'$ , and therefore  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is also  $P$ -prone.  $\blacksquare$

**B.5.25** LEMMA. *For any functor  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ , the class of  $P$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under retracts.*

*Proof.* Suppose we have a commutative diagram in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & \text{id} & & \\
 A' & \xrightarrow{s'} & E' & \xrightarrow{r'} & A' \\
 a \downarrow & & g \downarrow & & \downarrow a \\
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & E & \xrightarrow{r} & A \\
 & & \text{id} & & 
 \end{array}$$

where  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is a  $P$ -cartesian morphism. Let  $h : A'' \rightarrow A$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and let  $f' : PA'' \rightarrow PA'$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$  such that  $Ph = Pa \circ Pf'$ . There is a unique morphism  $g' : A'' \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $s \circ h = g \circ g'$  and  $Pg' = Ps' \circ f'$ . Let  $a' = r' \circ g'$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
 h &= r \circ s \circ h = r \circ g \circ g' = a \circ r' \circ g' = a \circ a' \\
 Pa' &= Pr' \circ Pg' = Pr' \circ Ps' \circ f' = f'
 \end{aligned}$$

and moreover, for any morphism  $h' : A'' \rightarrow A'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h = a \circ h'$  and  $Ph' = f'$ , we must have

$$\begin{aligned}
 s \circ h &= s \circ a \circ h' = g \circ s' \circ h' \\
 P(s' \circ h') &= Ps' \circ f'
 \end{aligned}$$

so  $s' \circ h' = g'$ , and therefore  $h' = r' \circ s' \circ h' = r' \circ g' = a'$ . Thus  $a : A' \rightarrow A$  is indeed  $P$ -cartesian.  $\blacksquare$

**B.5.26** LEMMA. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor and let  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  be a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ . The following are equivalent for a morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ :

- (i)  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  is  $P$ -prone.
- (ii)  $g \circ g' : E'' \rightarrow E$  is  $P$ -prone.

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Let  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  be a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ , let  $h : E''' \rightarrow E$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and let  $f'' : PE''' \rightarrow PE''$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$  such that  $Ph = Pg \circ Pg' \circ f''$ . We must show that there is a unique morphism  $g'' : E''' \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h = g \circ g' \circ g''$  and  $Pg'' = f''$ . To that end, observe that there is a unique morphism  $h' : E''' \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h = g \circ h'$  and  $Ph' = Pg' \circ f''$ , and thus there is a unique morphism  $g'' : E''' \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h' = g' \circ g''$  and  $Pg'' = f''$ ; in particular,  $h = g \circ g' \circ g''$ . Moreover, if  $h'' : E''' \rightarrow E''$  is any morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h = g \circ g' \circ h''$  and  $Ph'' = f''$ , then we must have  $h' = g' \circ h''$  and hence  $g'' = h''$ . This proves that  $g \circ g' : E'' \rightarrow E$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $g \circ g' : E'' \rightarrow E$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Let  $h' : E''' \rightarrow E'$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and let  $f'' : PE''' \rightarrow PE''$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$  such that  $Ph' = Pg' \circ f''$ . We must show that there is a unique morphism  $g'' : E''' \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h' = g' \circ g''$  and  $Pg'' = f''$ . But since  $g \circ g' : E'' \rightarrow E$  is  $P$ -prone, there is a unique morphism  $g'' : E''' \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $g \circ h' = g \circ g' \circ g''$  and  $Pg'' = f''$ ; and since  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is  $P$ -prone, we must have  $h' = g' \circ g''$ . Thus,  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ . ■

**B.5.27** REMARK. In the special case where  $P$  is  $\text{codom} : [2, \mathcal{B}] \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ , we recover the well-known pullback pasting lemma.

**B.5.28** PROPOSITION. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration. The following are equivalent for a morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$ :

- (i) The morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .
- (ii) The morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is right orthogonal to every  $P$ -vertical morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .
- (iii) The morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  has the right lifting property with respect to every  $P$ -vertical morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Consider a lifting problem in  $\mathcal{E}$  of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A' & \xrightarrow{e'} & E' \\ a \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ A & \xrightarrow{e} & E \end{array}$$

where  $a : A' \rightarrow A$  is a  $P$ -vertical morphism and  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism. Then,  $Pe = P(e \circ a) = Pg \circ Pe'$ , so there is a unique morphism  $h : A \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $e = g \circ h$  and  $Ph = Pe'$ . Thus,  $g \circ e' = g \circ h \circ a$  and  $Pe' = P(h \circ a)$ , so we must have  $e' = h \circ a$  as well. Moreover, if  $l : A \rightarrow E'$  is any morphism such that  $e' = l \circ a$  and  $e = g \circ l$ , then  $Pl = P(l \circ a) = Pe'$ , so we must have  $h = l$ . Thus,  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is right orthogonal to every  $P$ -vertical morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). Immediate.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  with the right lifting property with respect to every  $P$ -vertical morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ . By lemma B.5.22,  $h = g \circ g'$  for some  $P$ -prone morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  and  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$ . Thus, there is a morphism  $r : E' \rightarrow E''$  making the following diagram commute,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E'' & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & E'' \\ g' \downarrow & \nearrow r & \downarrow h \\ E' & \xrightarrow{g} & E \end{array}$$

and thus  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  is a retract of  $g : E' \rightarrow E$ . But proposition B.5.30 says that the class of  $P$ -prone morphisms is closed under retracts, so it follows that  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  is indeed  $P$ -prone.  $\blacksquare$

**B.5.29** COROLLARY. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration. Then there is an orthogonal factorisation system on  $\mathcal{E}$  where:*

- *The left class contains all  $P$ -vertical morphisms.*
- *The right class is the class of  $P$ -prone morphisms.*

*Proof.* Apply the retract argument (proposition A.3.21) to lemma B.5.22 and proposition B.5.28.  $\blacksquare$

**B.5.30** PROPOSITION. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration.*

- (i) *Every isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  is  $P$ -prone.*
- (ii) *The class of  $P$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under composition.*
- (iii) *The class of  $P$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under retracts.*
- (iv) *The class of  $P$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under pullback.*
- (v) *The class of  $P$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under limits in  $[2, \mathcal{E}]$ .*

*Proof.* Apply [proposition A.3.19](#) to [proposition B.5.28](#). ■

**B.5.31** PROPOSITION. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor. The following are equivalent:*

- (i)  *$P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration.*
- (ii)  *$P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck prefibration such that the class of weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under composition.*
- (iii) *There exists a right adjoint  $R$  for the evident functor  $Q : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow (\mathcal{B} \downarrow P)$  that sends an object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  to the object  $(PE, E, \text{id}_{PE})$  in the comma category  $(\mathcal{B} \downarrow P)$ , such that  $P(R(B', E, f)) = B'$  for every object  $(B', E, f)$  in  $(\mathcal{B} \downarrow P)$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). Suppose  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration. [Remark B.5.16](#) then implies  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck prefibration. We then combine [propositions B.5.24](#) and [B.5.30](#) to deduce that the class of weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under composition.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Suppose  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck prefibration such that the class of weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  is closed under composition. To verify that  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, it suffices to show that every weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  is a  $P$ -prone morphism.

Let  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  be a weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ , let  $h : E'' \rightarrow E$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ , and let  $f' : PE'' \rightarrow PE'$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$  such that  $Ph = Pg \circ f'$ . By hypothesis, there is a weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism  $\tilde{f}' : \tilde{E}'' \rightarrow E'$  such that  $P\tilde{f}' = f'$ ; moreover,  $g \circ \tilde{f}'$  is weakly  $P$ -cartesian, so there exists a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $k : E'' \rightarrow \tilde{E}''$  such that  $h = g \circ \tilde{f}' \circ k$ . Let  $g' = \tilde{f}' \circ k$ . Clearly,  $h = g \circ g'$  and  $Pg' = f'$ . Suppose  $h' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$

such that  $h = g \circ h'$  and  $Ph' = f'$ . Then there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $l : E'' \rightarrow \tilde{E}''$  such that  $h' = \tilde{f}' \circ l$ ; but then  $g \circ \tilde{f}' \circ k = g \circ \tilde{f}' \circ l$ , so we must have  $k = l$  and hence  $g' = h'$ . Thus,  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is indeed a  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

(i)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (iii). Apply [lemma B.5.18](#). ■

**B.5.32** PROPOSITION (Bénabou). *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration. The following are equivalent:*

(i) *Every fibre of  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a groupoid.*

(ii) *Every morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  is  $P$ -prone.*

(iii) *The functor  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is conservative.*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). By [lemma B.5.22](#), every morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  factors as a  $P$ -vertical morphism followed by a  $P$ -prone morphism, but since every  $P$ -vertical morphism is an isomorphism, [proposition B.5.30](#) implies every morphism is  $P$ -prone.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii). First, let us observe that [lemma A.3.12](#) and [proposition B.5.28](#) imply that every  $P$ -vertical morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  is an isomorphism. Let  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and suppose  $Pg : PE' \rightarrow PE$  has an inverse in  $\mathcal{B}$ , say  $f^{-1} : B \rightarrow B'$ . Since  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, there must be a  $P$ -prone morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg' = f^{-1}$ , hence also a  $P$ -prone morphism  $g'' : E''' \rightarrow E''$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg'' = f$ . By construction,  $g \circ g'$  and  $g' \circ g''$  are  $P$ -vertical morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ , so they are isomorphisms. We may then apply the 2-out-of-6 property of isomorphisms ([lemma A.4.14](#)) to deduce that  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ , as required.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). If  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is conservative, then every  $P$ -vertical morphism must be an isomorphism. The claim is then a consequence of [lemma B.5.11](#). ■

**B.5.33** LEMMA. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  and  $F : \mathcal{B}' \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be functors and suppose we have a pullback diagram of the form below:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{E}' & \xrightarrow{G} & \mathcal{E} \\ P' \downarrow & & \downarrow P \\ \mathcal{B}' & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

## B. HIGHER GENERALITIES

---

- The  $P'$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}'$  are precisely the ones whose image in  $\mathcal{E}$  are  $P$ -prone morphisms; in particular, if  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, then  $P' : \mathcal{E}' \rightarrow \mathcal{B}'$  is also a Grothendieck fibration.
- The  $P'$ -supine morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}'$  are precisely the ones whose image in  $\mathcal{E}$  are  $P$ -supine morphisms; in particular, if  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration, then  $P' : \mathcal{E}' \rightarrow \mathcal{B}'$  is also a Grothendieck opfibration.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**B.5.34** LEMMA. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor and let  $E$  be an object in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

- The projection  $\mathcal{E}_{/E} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  reflects prone morphisms, and if  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, then the induced functor  $P_E : \mathcal{E}_{/E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_{/PE}$  is a Grothendieck fibration whose fibres have terminal objects.
- The projection  ${}^E\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{E}$  reflects supine morphisms, and if  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration, then the induced functor  $P_E : \mathcal{E}_{/E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}_{/PE}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration whose fibres have initial objects.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise.  $\diamond$

**B.5.35** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category, let  $\mathbb{E}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category, and let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category. The **Grothendieck construction**  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F})$  is the following category:

- The objects are triples  $(E, B, F)$ , where  $B$  is an object in  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $E$  is an object in  $\mathcal{E}^B$ , and  $F$  is an object in  $\mathcal{F}_B$ .
- The morphisms  $(E', B', F') \rightarrow (E, B, F)$  are triples  $(g, f, h)$ , where  $f : B' \rightarrow B$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $g : E' \rightarrow f^*E$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}^{B'}$ , and  $h : f_*F' \rightarrow F$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}_B$ .
- Identities and composition are defined using composition in  $\mathcal{B}$  and the fibres of  $\mathbb{E}$  and  $\mathbb{F}$  as well as the coherence data of  $\mathbb{E}$  and  $\mathbb{F}$ .

Note that there is a canonical projection  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  whose fibre over  $B$  is (isomorphic to)  $\mathcal{E}^B \times \mathcal{F}_B$ .



**B.5.36** REMARK. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe. If  $\mathcal{B}$  is a  $\mathbf{U}$ -small category and the fibres of both  $\mathbb{E}$  and  $\mathbb{F}$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, then the Grothendieck construction  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F})$  is also  $\mathbf{U}$ -small.

**B.5.37** PROPOSITION. *Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category.*

- *For any  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category  $\mathbb{E}$ , the projection  $P : \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, where  $\Delta 1$  is the unique  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category whose fibres are  $1$ . Moreover, the  $P$ -prone morphisms are precisely those  $(g, f)$  where  $g : E' \rightarrow f^*E$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}^{\text{dom } f}$ .*
- *For any  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category  $\mathbb{F}$ , the projection  $Q : \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbb{F}, \mathcal{B}) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck opfibration, where  $\Delta 1$  is the unique  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category whose fibres are  $1$ . Moreover, the  $Q$ -supine morphisms are precisely those  $(f, h)$  where  $h : f_*F \rightarrow F'$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{F}_{\text{codom } f}$ .*

*Proof.* The two claims are formally dual; we will prove the first version.

Let  $\mathcal{E} = \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$ . Suppose  $(g, f) : (E', B') \rightarrow (E, B)$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  where  $g : E' \rightarrow f^*E$  is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}^{B'}$ . Let  $h : E'' \rightarrow f^*E$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{E}^{B'}$ . Then there is a unique morphism  $g' : E'' \rightarrow (id_{B'})^*$  in  $\mathcal{E}^{B'}$  such that

$$g \circ (\eta_{B'})_{E'}^{-1} \circ g' = h$$

i.e. such that  $(g, f) \circ (g', id_{B'}) = (h, f)$  as morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Thus  $(g, f) : (E', B') \rightarrow (E, B)$  is a weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism. In particular,  $(id_{f^*E}, f) : (f^*E, B') \rightarrow (E, B)$  is a weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$ .

Conversely, suppose  $(g, f) : (E', B') \rightarrow (E, B)$  is a weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphism. Then, by [corollary B.5.14](#) and the above observation, there is a unique isomorphism  $g' : E' \rightarrow f^*E$  in  $\mathcal{E}^{B'}$  such that  $g = id_{f^*E} \circ g'$ , i.e.  $g : E' \rightarrow f^*E$  itself is an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{E}^{B'}$ .

It now follows that  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck prefibration where the class of weakly  $P$ -cartesian morphisms is closed under composition, so by [proposition B.5.31](#),  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is indeed a Grothendieck fibration. ■

**B.5.38** LEMMA. Let  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  be categories, let  $\mathbb{E}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category, and let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category.

- We have a natural commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F} \times \Delta \mathcal{A}) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) \times \mathcal{A} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{B} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

where the two vertical arrows are the evident projections and the top horizontal arrow is defined by  $(E, B, (F, A)) \mapsto ((E, B, F), A)$ .

- We have a natural commutative diagram of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta \mathcal{A} \times \mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathcal{A} \times \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{B} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

where the two vertical arrows are the evident projections and the top horizontal arrow is defined by  $((A, E), B, F) \mapsto (A, (E, B, F))$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**B.5.39** LEMMA. Let  $U : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a functor, let  $\mathbb{E}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category, and let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category. Then there is a natural pullback square of the form below,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E} \circ U, \mathcal{A}, \mathbb{F} \circ U) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{A} & \xrightarrow{\quad U \quad} & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

where the vertical arrows are the canonical projections.

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**B.5.40** PROPOSITION. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category, let  $\mathbb{E}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category, and let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a  $\mathcal{B}^{\text{op}}$ -indexed category.

(i) The following diagram is a pullback square,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) & \xrightarrow{V} & \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) \\ U \downarrow & & \downarrow Q \\ \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1) & \xrightarrow{P} & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

where  $U$  and  $V$  are induced by the unique indexed functors  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow \Delta 1$  and  $\mathbb{F} \rightarrow \Delta 1$  (respectively) and  $P$  and  $Q$  are the canonical projections.

(ii) There are natural isomorphisms

$$\mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1), \mathbb{F} \circ P) \cong \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) \cong \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E} \circ Q, \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}), \Delta 1)$$

such that the following diagram commutes,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1), \mathbb{F} \circ P) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{B} \\ \cong \downarrow & \nearrow & & & \parallel \\ \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) & \longrightarrow & & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{B} \\ \cong \uparrow & \searrow & & & \parallel \\ \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E} \circ Q, \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}), \Delta 1) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{G}(\Delta 1, \mathcal{B}, \mathbb{F}) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the canonical projections and the diagonal arrows are induced by the unique indexed functors  $\mathbb{E} \rightarrow \Delta 1$  and  $\mathbb{F} \rightarrow \Delta 1$ .

*Proof.* This is a straightforward exercise. ◇

**B.5.41** DEFINITION. Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be a category.

- A **fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -category** is a category  $\mathcal{E}$  equipped with a Grothendieck fibration  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ . We will often abuse notation by omitting mention of  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ .
- Let  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{F}$  be fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -categories. A **fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functor**  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is a functor that is compatible with the projections and preserves prone morphisms.
- A **fibred natural transformation** between fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functors is a natural transformation whose components are vertical morphisms.

We write  $\mathbf{Fib}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F})$  for the category whose objects are the fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functors  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  and whose morphisms are the fibred natural transformations.

**B.5.42** LEMMA. *Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  and  $Q : \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be Grothendieck fibrations. The following are equivalent for a fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functor  $H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ :*

- (i) *The functor  $H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is faithful (resp. full, essentially surjective on objects).*
- (ii) *For each object  $B$ , the induced functor  $H^B : P^{-1}\{B\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{B\}$  is faithful (resp. full, essentially surjective on objects).*

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii). It is clear that  $H^B : P^{-1}\{B\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{B\}$  is faithful if  $H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is faithful. Since  $QH = P$ , it follows that  $H^B : P^{-1}\{B\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{B\}$  is full if  $H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$  is full. Essential surjectivity remains to be verified, so consider an object  $F$  in  $Q^{-1}\{B\}$ . By assumption, there exist an object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  and an isomorphism  $g : F \rightarrow HE$  in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and by [proposition B.5.30](#),  $g : F \rightarrow HE$  is a  $Q$ -prone morphism. But  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a Grothendieck fibration, so there is a  $P$ -prone morphism  $\tilde{g} : E' \rightarrow E$  such that  $P\tilde{g} = Qg$ , and since  $H\tilde{g} : HE' \rightarrow HE$  is a  $Q$ -prone morphism with  $Q\tilde{g} = Qg$ , we must have a vertical isomorphism  $F \rightarrow HE'$  in  $\mathcal{F}$ , by [corollary B.5.19](#). Thus  $H : P^{-1}\{B\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{B\}$  is essentially surjective on objects if  $H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (i). Let  $E$  and  $E''$  be objects in  $\mathcal{E}$  and consider morphisms  $h_0, h_1 : E'' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$ . Suppose  $Hh_0 = Hh_1$  in  $\mathcal{F}$ . Since  $QH = P$ , we must also have  $Ph_0 = Ph_1$ . Choose a  $P$ -prone morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg = Ph_0 = Ph_1$ . Then there are unique  $P$ -vertical morphisms  $g'_0, g'_1 : E'' \rightarrow E'$  such that  $g \circ g'_0 = g_0$  and  $g \circ g'_1 = g_1$ ; and similarly, since  $Hg : HE' \rightarrow HE$  is a  $Q$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ , we must have  $Qg'_0 = Qg'_1$ . Thus, if  $H^{PE'} : P^{-1}\{PE'\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{PE'\}$  is faithful, we must have  $g'_0 = g'_1$  and hence  $g_0 = g_1$ .

Now, let  $h : HE'' \rightarrow HE$  be a morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$  and choose a  $P$ -prone morphism  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $Pg = Qh$ . Then  $Hg : HE' \rightarrow HE$  is a  $Q$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{F}$ , so there is a unique  $Q$ -vertical morphism  $g' : HE'' \rightarrow HE'$  such that  $h = Hg \circ g'$ ; so if  $H^{PE'} : P^{-1}\{PE'\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{PE'\}$  is full, we must have a  $P$ -vertical morphism  $\tilde{g}' : E'' \rightarrow E'$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $g' = H\tilde{g}'$  and hence a morphism  $\tilde{h} : E'' \rightarrow E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  such that  $h = H\tilde{h}$ .

Finally, we note that it is clear that  $H : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is essentially surjective on objects if every  $H^B : P^{-1}\{B\} \rightarrow Q^{-1}\{B\}$  is essentially surjective on objects. ■

**B.5.43** PROPOSITION. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration, let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a category, and let  $Q : \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be the evident projection.

- (i) Let  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C}$  be a functor and let  $R : \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be the other projection. Assuming  $QF = P$ ,  $F : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C}$  is a fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functor if and only if  $RF : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  sends every  $P$ -prone morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  to an isomorphism in  $\mathcal{C}$ .
- (ii) Let  $\mathcal{A}$  be the category obtained by freely inverting the  $P$ -prone morphisms in  $\mathcal{E}$  and let  $\lambda : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  be the localising functor. Then the evident functor

$$[\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Fib}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{E}, \mathcal{B} \times \mathcal{C})$$

defined on objects by  $G \mapsto \langle P, G\lambda \rangle$  is an isomorphism of categories.

- (iii) Let  $0$  be an initial object in  $\mathcal{B}$ . The restriction of  $\lambda : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  yields a functor  $P^{-1}\{0\} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  that is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

*Proof.* (i). Use lemma B.5.21.

(ii). This is a consequence of (i) and proposition A.4.21.

(iii). Let  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  be any morphism in  $\mathcal{E}$  and choose a  $P$ -prone morphism  $E_0 \rightarrow E$  (resp.  $E'_0 \rightarrow E'$ ) in  $\mathcal{E}$  lying over the unique morphism  $0 \rightarrow PE$  (resp.  $0 \rightarrow PE'$ ) in  $\mathcal{B}$ . Then there is a unique  $P$ -vertical morphism  $g_0 : E'_0 \rightarrow E_0$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E'_0 & \longrightarrow & E' \\ g_0 \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\ E_0 & \longrightarrow & E \end{array}$$

In particular, the functor  $P^{-1}\{0\} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is essentially surjective on objects. Moreover, since  $0$  is an initial object in  $\mathcal{B}$ , every morphism  $E'_0 \rightarrow E_0$  is  $P$ -vertical; but if  $g : E' \rightarrow E$  is  $P$ -prone, then corollary B.5.19 implies that  $g_0 : E'_0 \rightarrow E_0$  is a ( $P$ -vertical) isomorphism. Thus, by considering appropriate representations of morphisms in  $\mathcal{A}$  as zigzags in  $\mathcal{E}$ , we see that the functor  $P^{-1}\{0\} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}$  is indeed fully faithful. ■

**B.5.44** DEFINITION.

- A **cleavage** for a Grothendieck fibration  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is a choice of  $P$ -prone morphism  $g : f^*E \rightarrow E$  for every object  $E$  in  $\mathcal{E}$  and every morphism  $f : B' \rightarrow PE$  such that  $Pg = f$ .
- A **cloven Grothendieck fibration** is a Grothendieck fibration equipped with a cleavage.

**B.5.45** REMARK. For any  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category  $\mathbb{E}$ , the induced Grothendieck fibration  $\mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  has a canonical cleavage; conversely, given a cloven Grothendieck fibration  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ , one can construct a  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category  $\mathbb{E}$  such that there is a fibred isomorphism  $\mathcal{E} \cong \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{E}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$  compatible with the cleavages.

**B.5.46** LEMMA. *Every Grothendieck fibration admits a cleavage.*

*Proof.* Use the axiom of choice. ■

**B.5.47** ¶ Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration. For each object  $B$  in  $\mathcal{B}$ , we have the following pullback diagram,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (B \downarrow P) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{E} \\ {}^B P \downarrow & & \downarrow P \\ {}^B/\mathcal{B} & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{B} \end{array}$$

where the horizontal arrows are the evident projections, so by [lemma B.5.33](#),  ${}^B P : (B \downarrow P) \rightarrow {}^B/\mathcal{B}$  is also a Grothendieck fibration. It is clear that this defines a strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category  $(- \downarrow P)$  whose reindexing functors preserve prone morphisms (in the appropriate sense).

**B.5.48** DEFINITION. The **free strict indexed category** associated with a Grothendieck fibration  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  is the strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category  $\mathbf{St}(P)$  defined below:

- The fibre  $\mathbf{St}(P)^B$  is the category obtained by freely inverting the  ${}^B P$ -prone morphisms in  $(B \downarrow P)$ .
- The reindexing functors  $\mathbf{St}(P)^B \rightarrow \mathbf{St}(P)^{B'}$  are the ones induced by the corresponding reindexing functors  $(B \downarrow P) \rightarrow (B' \downarrow P)$ .

The **canonical embedding**  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{St}(P), \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$  is the evident fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functor defined on objects by  $E \mapsto (PE, (E, \text{id}_{PE}))$  and on morphisms by  $g \mapsto (Pg, g)$ .

**B.5.49** REMARK. Given a cleavage for a Grothendieck fibration  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ , the fibre  $\mathcal{St}(P)^{B'}$  admits the following simplified description:

- The objects are pairs  $(E, f)$  where  $E$  is an object in  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $f : B' \rightarrow PE$  is a morphism in  $\mathcal{B}$ .
- The morphisms  $(E_0, f_0) \rightarrow (E_1, f_1)$  are morphisms  $f_0^* E_0 \rightarrow f_1^* E_1$  in the fibre  $P^{-1}\{B'\}$ .
- Composition and identities are inherited from  $P^{-1}\{B'\}$ .

**B.5.50** REMARK. Let  $\mathbf{U}$  be a pre-universe. If  $\mathcal{E}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  are  $\mathbf{U}$ -small, then so are the fibres of  $\mathcal{St}(P)$ .

**B.5.51** THEOREM. Let  $P : \mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  be a Grothendieck fibration.

- The canonical embedding  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{G}(\mathcal{St}(P), \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$  is a fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functor and is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.
- Let  $\mathbb{F}$  be a strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed category. Then for each fibred  $\mathcal{B}$ -functor  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{F}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$ , there is a unique strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functor  $\mathcal{St}(P) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$  making the induced diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{E} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \mathbf{G}(\mathcal{St}(P), \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1) \\ & \searrow & \downarrow \\ & & \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{F}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1) \end{array}$$

- Let  $[\mathcal{St}(P), \mathbb{F}]_{\text{strict}}$  be the category of strict  $\mathcal{B}$ -indexed functors  $\mathcal{St}(P) \rightarrow \mathbb{F}$ . Then the functor

$$[\mathcal{St}(P), \mathbb{F}]_{\text{strict}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Fib}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{E}, \mathbf{G}(\mathbb{F}, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1))$$

induced by the Grothendieck construction  $\mathbf{G}(-, \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$  and the canonical embedding  $\mathcal{E} \rightarrow \mathbf{G}(\mathcal{St}(P), \mathcal{B}, \Delta 1)$  is an isomorphism of categories.

*Proof.* (i). The canonical embedding is clearly compatible with the projections, and by [proposition B.5.37](#), it also preserves prone morphisms. We then apply [lemma B.5.42](#) and [proposition B.5.43](#) to deduce that the canonical embedding is fully faithful and essentially surjective on objects.

(ii) and (iii). See Théorème 2.4.2 in [Giraud, 1971, Ch. 1]. □





## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Adámek, Jiří and Jiří Rosický

[LPAC] *Locally presentable and accessible categories*. London Mathematical Society Lecture Note Series 189. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994. xiv+316. ISBN: 0521422612. DOI: [10.1017/CB09780511600579](https://doi.org/10.1017/CB09780511600579).

Artin, Michael, Alexander Grothendieck and Jean-Louis Verdier

[SGA 4a] *Théorie des topos et cohomologie étale des schémas. Tome 1: Théorie des topos*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 269. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1972. xix+525. ISBN: 3540058966.

[SGA 4b] *Théorie des topos et cohomologie étale des schémas. Tome 2*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 270. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1972. iv+418. ISBN: 354006012X.

Awodey, Steve

[2010] *Category theory*. Second. Oxford Logic Guides 52. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2010. xvi+311. ISBN: 9780199237180.

Barnea, Ilan and Tomer M. Schlank

[2011] *A projective model structure on pro simplicial sheaves, and the relative étale homotopy type*. 26th Sept. 2011. arXiv: [1109.5477](https://arxiv.org/abs/1109.5477).

Barr, Michael

[1971] “Exact categories”. In: *Exact categories and categories of sheaves*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 236. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1971, pp. 1–120.

Barwick, Clark

[2007a] *On Reedy model categories*. 21st Aug. 2007. arXiv: [0708.2832v1](https://arxiv.org/abs/0708.2832v1).

[2007b] *On (enriched) left Bousfield localization of model categories*. 29th Nov. 2007. arXiv: [0708.2067v2](https://arxiv.org/abs/0708.2067v2).

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

- [2010] “On left and right model categories and left and right Bousfield localizations”. In: *Homology, Homotopy Appl.* 12.2 (2010), pp. 245–320. ISSN: 1532-0073. DOI: [10.4310/HHA.2010.v12.n2.a9](https://doi.org/10.4310/HHA.2010.v12.n2.a9).

Barwick, Clark and Daniel M. Kan

- [2011] *Partial model categories and their simplicial nerves*. 12th Feb. 2011. arXiv: [1102.2512](https://arxiv.org/abs/1102.2512).
- [2012] “A characterization of simplicial localization functors and a discussion of DK equivalences”. In: *Indag. Math. (N.S.)* 23.1-2 (2012), pp. 69–79. ISSN: 0019-3577. DOI: [10.1016/j.indag.2011.10.001](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.indag.2011.10.001).

Beke, Tibor

- [2000] “Sheafifiable homotopy model categories”. In: *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* 129.3 (2000), pp. 447–475. ISSN: 0305-0041. DOI: [10.1017/S0305004100004722](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0305004100004722).

Bénabou, Jean

- [1963] “Catégories avec multiplication”. In: *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris* 256 (1963), pp. 1887–1890.
- [1985] “Fibered categories and the foundations of naive category theory”. In: *J. Symbolic Logic* 50.1 (1985), pp. 10–37. ISSN: 0022-4812. DOI: [10.2307/2273784](https://doi.org/10.2307/2273784).

Bergner, Julia E.

- [2007] “A model category structure on the category of simplicial categories”. In: *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 359.5 (2007), pp. 2043–2058. ISSN: 0002-9947. DOI: [10.1090/S0002-9947-06-03987-0](https://doi.org/10.1090/S0002-9947-06-03987-0).

Bezem, Marc and Thierry Coquand

- [2013] *A Kripke model for simplicial sets*. 2013. URL: <http://www.cse.chalmers.se/~coquand/countermodel.pdf>.

Blander, Benjamin A.

- [2001] “Local projective model structures on simplicial presheaves”. In: *K-Theory* 24.3 (2001), pp. 283–301. ISSN: 0920-3036. DOI: [10.1023/A:1013302313123](https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1013302313123).

Boardman, J. Michael and Rainer M. Vogt

- [BV] *Homotopy invariant algebraic structures on topological spaces*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 347. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1973. x+257.

Borceux, Francis

- [1994a] *Handbook of categorical algebra. 1. Basic category theory*. Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications 50. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994. xvi+345. ISBN: 0521441781. DOI: [10.1017/CB09780511525858](https://doi.org/10.1017/CB09780511525858).
- [1994b] *Handbook of categorical algebra. 2. Categories and structures*. Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications 51. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994. xviii+443. ISBN: 052144179X. DOI: [10.1017/CB09780511525865](https://doi.org/10.1017/CB09780511525865).
- [1994c] *Handbook of categorical algebra. 3. Categories of sheaves*. Encyclopedia of Mathematics and its Applications 52. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994. xviii+522. ISBN: 0521441803. DOI: [10.1017/CB09780511525872](https://doi.org/10.1017/CB09780511525872).

Borceux, Francis and Dominique Bourn

- [2004] *Mal'cev, protomodular, homological and semi-abelian categories*. Vol. 566. Mathematics and its Applications. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 2004. xiv+479. ISBN: 1402019610. DOI: [10.1007/978-1-4020-1962-3](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4020-1962-3).

Bousfield, A. K. and Daniel M. Kan

- [1972] *Homotopy limits, completions and localizations*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 304. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1972. v+348.

Brown, Kenneth S.

- [1973] “Abstract homotopy theory and generalized sheaf cohomology”. In: *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 186 (1973), pp. 419–458. ISSN: 0002-9947.

Carboni, Aurelio, Stephen Lack and Robert F. C. Walters

- [1993] “Introduction to extensive and distributive categories”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 84.2 (1993), pp. 145–158. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/0022-4049\(93\)90035-R](https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-4049(93)90035-R).

Cisinski, Denis-Charles

- [2002] “Théories homotopiques dans les topos”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 174.1 (2002), pp. 43–82. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/S0022-4049\(01\)00176-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-4049(01)00176-1).
- [2003] “Images directes cohomologiques dans les catégories de modèles”. In: *Ann. Math. Blaise Pascal* 10.2 (2003), pp. 195–244. ISSN: 1259-1734.
- [2004] “Le localisateur fondamental minimal”. In: *Cah. Topol. Géom. Différ. Catég.* 45.2 (2004), pp. 109–140. ISSN: 1245-530X.
- [2006] *Les préfaisceaux comme modèles des types d’homotopie*. Astérisque 308. Paris: Société Mathématique de France, 2006. xxiv+390. ISBN: 9782856292259.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

[2010] “Catégories dérivables”. In: *Bull. Soc. Math. France* 138.3 (2010), pp. 317–393. ISSN: 0037-9484.

Cordier, Jean-Marc and Timothy Porter

[1986] “Vogt’s theorem on categories of homotopy coherent diagrams”. In: *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* 100.1 (1986), pp. 65–90. ISSN: 0305-0041. DOI: [10.1017/S0305004100065877](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0305004100065877).

Day, Brian

[1972] “A reflection theorem for closed categories”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 2.1 (1972), pp. 1–11. ISSN: 0022-4049.

Deligne, Pierre

[SGA 4½] *Cohomologie étale*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 569. Séminaire de Géométrie Algébrique du Bois-Marie SGA 4½, Avec la collaboration de J. F. Boutot, A. Grothendieck, L. Illusie et J. L. Verdier. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1977. iv+312.

Dugger, Daniel

[2001a] “Replacing model categories with simplicial ones”. In: *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 353.12 (2001), 5003–5027 (electronic). ISSN: 0002-9947. DOI: [10.1090/S0002-9947-01-02661-7](https://doi.org/10.1090/S0002-9947-01-02661-7).

[2001b] “Universal homotopy theories”. In: *Adv. Math.* 164.1 (2001), pp. 144–176. ISSN: 0001-8708. DOI: [10.1006/aima.2001.2014](https://doi.org/10.1006/aima.2001.2014).

Dugger, Daniel, Sharon Hollander and Daniel C. Isaksen

[2004] “Hypercovers and simplicial presheaves”. In: *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* 136.1 (2004), pp. 9–51. ISSN: 0305-0041. DOI: [10.1017/S0305004103007175](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0305004103007175).

Dugger, Daniel and Daniel C. Isaksen

[2004] “Weak equivalences of simplicial presheaves”. In: *Homotopy theory: relations with algebraic geometry, group cohomology, and algebraic K-theory*. Vol. 346. Contemp. Math. Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2004, pp. 97–113. DOI: [10.1090/conm/346/06292](https://doi.org/10.1090/conm/346/06292).

Dugger, Daniel and David I. Spivak

[2011] “Mapping spaces in quasi-categories”. In: *Algebr. Geom. Topol.* 11.1 (2011), pp. 263–325. ISSN: 1472-2747. DOI: [10.2140/agt.2011.11.263](https://doi.org/10.2140/agt.2011.11.263).

Dwyer, William G., Philip S. Hirschhorn and Daniel M. Kan

- [DHK] “Model categories and more general abstract homotopy theory”. Draft.  
28th Mar. 1997. URL: [http://web.archive.org/web/\\*/http://www-math.mit.edu/~psh/kanmain.dvi](http://web.archive.org/web/*/http://www-math.mit.edu/~psh/kanmain.dvi).

Dwyer, William G., Philip S. Hirschhorn, Daniel M. Kan and Jeffrey H. Smith

- [DHKS] *Homotopy limit functors on model categories and homotopical categories*.  
Mathematical Surveys and Monographs 113. Providence, RI: American  
Mathematical Society, 2004. viii+181. ISBN: 0821837036.

Dwyer, William G. and Daniel M. Kan

- [1980a] “Simplicial localizations of categories”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 17.3 (1980),  
pp. 267–284. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/0022-4049\(80\)90049-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-4049(80)90049-3).  
[1980b] “Calculating simplicial localizations”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 18.1 (1980),  
pp. 17–35. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/0022-4049\(80\)90113-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-4049(80)90113-9).  
[1980c] “Function complexes in homotopical algebra”. In: *Topology* 19.4 (1980),  
pp. 427–440. ISSN: 0040-9383. DOI: [10.1016/0040-9383\(80\)90025-7](https://doi.org/10.1016/0040-9383(80)90025-7).

Dwyer, William G. and Jan Spaliński

- [DS] “Homotopy theories and model categories”. In: *Handbook of algebraic topology*.  
Amsterdam: North-Holland, 1995, pp. 73–126. DOI:  
[10.1016/B978-044481779-2/50003-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-044481779-2/50003-1).

Freyd, Peter J.

- [1964] *Abelian categories. An introduction to the theory of functors*. Harper’s Series in  
Modern Mathematics. Harper & Row, Publishers, New York, 1964. xi+164.  
[1970] “Homotopy is not concrete”. In: *The Steenrod Algebra and its Applications*  
(*Proc. Conf. to Celebrate N. E. Steenrod’s Sixtieth Birthday, Battelle Memorial*  
*Inst., Columbus, Ohio, 1970*). Lecture Notes in Mathematics 168. Berlin: Springer,  
1970, pp. 25–34.  
[2004] “Homotopy is not concrete”. In: *Repr. Theory Appl. Categ.* 6 (2004). Reprint of  
the 1970 original, pp. 1–10.

Gabriel, Peter and Friedrich Ulmer

- [1971] *Lokal präsentierbare Kategorien*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 221. Berlin:  
Springer-Verlag, 1971. v+200.

Gabriel, Peter and Michel Zisman

- [GZ] *Calculus of fractions and homotopy theory*. Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer  
Grenzgebiete 35. Springer-Verlag New York, Inc., New York, 1967. x+168.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

Garner, Richard

- [2009] “Understanding the small object argument”. In: *Appl. Categ. Structures* 17.3 (2009), pp. 247–285. ISSN: 0927-2852. DOI: [10.1007/s10485-008-9137-4](https://doi.org/10.1007/s10485-008-9137-4).

Giraud, Jean

- [1964] “Méthode de la descente”. In: *Bull. Soc. Math. France Mém.* 2 (1964), pp. viii+150.  
[1971] *Cohomologie non abélienne*. Die Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften 179. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1971. ix+467.

Goerss, Paul G. and John F. Jardine

- [GJ] *Simplicial homotopy theory*. Progress in Mathematics 174. Basel: Birkhäuser Verlag, 1999. xvi+510. ISBN: 376436064X. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-0348-8707-6](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-0348-8707-6).

Grandis, Marco and Walter Tholen

- [2006] “Natural weak factorization systems”. In: *Arch. Math. (Brno)* 42.4 (2006), pp. 397–408. ISSN: 0044-8753.

Grothendieck, Alexander

- [1983] “Pursuing stacks”. 1983. URL: <http://www.math.jussieu.fr/~maltsin/ps.html>.  
[1991] “Les dérivateurs”. 1991. URL: <http://www.math.jussieu.fr/~maltsin/groth/Derivateurs.html>.

Grothendieck, Alexander and Michèle Raynaud

- [SGA 1] *Revêtements étales et groupe fondamental*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 224. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1971. xxii+447.

Heller, Alex

- [1988] “Homotopy theories”. In: *Mem. Amer. Math. Soc.* 71.383 (1988), pp. vi+78. ISSN: 0065-9266.

Hirschhorn, Philip S.

- [2003] *Model categories and their localizations*. Mathematical Surveys and Monographs 99. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 2003. xvi+457. ISBN: 0821832794.

Hovey, Mark

- [1999] *Model categories*. Mathematical Surveys and Monographs 63. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1999. xii+209. ISBN: 0821813595.

Janelidze, George and G. Maxwell Kelly

- [2001] “A note on actions of a monoidal category”. In: *Theory Appl. Categ.* 9 (2001). CT2000 Conference (Como), pp. 61–91. ISSN: 1201-561X.

Jardine, John F.

- [1987] “Simplicial presheaves”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 47.1 (1987), pp. 35–87. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/0022-4049\(87\)90100-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-4049(87)90100-9).  
 [2009] “Cocycle categories”. In: *Algebraic topology*. Vol. 4. Abel Symp. Berlin: Springer, 2009, pp. 185–218. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-01200-6\\_8](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-01200-6_8).

Johnstone, Peter T.

- [2002a] *Sketches of an elephant: a topos theory compendium*. Vol. 1. Oxford Logic Guides 43. New York: The Clarendon Press Oxford University Press, 2002. xxii+468+71. ISBN: 0198534256.  
 [2002b] *Sketches of an elephant: a topos theory compendium*. Vol. 2. Oxford Logic Guides 44. Oxford: The Clarendon Press Oxford University Press, 2002. i–xxxii, 469–1089 and I1–I71. ISBN: 0198515987.

Joyal, André

- [TQ1] “The theory of quasi-categories. I”. In preparation.  
 [1984] “Letter to Grothendieck”. 16th Apr. 1984.  
 [2002] “Quasi-categories and Kan complexes”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 175.1-3 (2002). Special volume celebrating the 70th birthday of Professor Max Kelly, pp. 207–222. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/S0022-4049\(02\)00135-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-4049(02)00135-4).  
 [TQA] *The theory of quasi-categories and its applications*. Centre de Recerca Matemàtica, Quadern 45, Volume II. Barcelona, Feb. 2008. URL: <http://mat.uab.cat/~kock/crm/hocat/advanced-course/Quadern45-2.pdf>.  
 [2010] *Model categories*. 21st Mar. 2010. URL: [http://ncatlab.org/joyalcatlab/revision/Model+categories/97#determination\\_79](http://ncatlab.org/joyalcatlab/revision/Model+categories/97#determination_79).

Joyal, André and Myles Tierney

- [2008] *Notes on simplicial homotopy theory*. Centre de Recerca Matemàtica, Quadern 47. Barcelona, Feb. 2008. URL: <http://mat.uab.cat/~kock/crm/hocat/advanced-course/Quadern47.pdf>.

Kan, Daniel M.

- [1955] “Abstract homotopy. I”. In: *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 41 (1955), pp. 1092–1096. ISSN: 0027-8424.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

- [1957] “On c.s.s. complexes”. In: *Amer. J. Math.* 79 (1957), pp. 449–476. ISSN: 0002-9327.
- Kelly, G. Maxwell
- [1964] “On MacLane’s conditions for coherence of natural associativities, commutativities, etc”. In: *J. Algebra* 1 (1964), pp. 397–402. ISSN: 0021-8693. DOI: [10.1016/0021-8693\(64\)90018-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/0021-8693(64)90018-3).
- [1980] “A unified treatment of transfinite constructions for free algebras, free monoids, colimits, associated sheaves, and so on”. In: *Bull. Austral. Math. Soc.* 22.1 (1980), pp. 1–83. ISSN: 0004-9727. DOI: [10.1017/S0004972700006353](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0004972700006353).
- [2005] *Basic concepts of enriched category theory*. Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories 10. Reprint of the 1982 original. 2005. vi+137.
- Kock, Anders
- [1972] “Strong functors and monoidal monads”. In: *Arch. Math. (Basel)* 23 (1972), pp. 113–120. ISSN: 0003-889X.
- Lurie, Jacob
- [HTT] *Higher topos theory*. Annals of Mathematics Studies 170. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2009. xviii+925. ISBN: 978-0-691-14049-0; 0-691-14049-9.
- Mac Lane, Saunders
- [1963] “Natural associativity and commutativity”. In: *Rice Univ. Studies* 49.4 (1963), pp. 28–46. ISSN: 0035-4996.
- [CWM] *Categories for the working mathematician*. Second. Graduate Texts in Mathematics 5. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1998. xii+314. ISBN: 0387984038.
- Mac Lane, Saunders and Ieke Moerdijk
- [ML–M] *Sheaves in geometry and logic. A first introduction to topos theory*. Corrected. Universitext. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1992. xii+629. ISBN: 0387977104.
- Makkai, Michael and Robert Paré
- [1989] *Accessible categories: the foundations of categorical model theory*. Contemporary Mathematics 104. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1989. viii+176. ISBN: 082185111X. DOI: [10.1090/conm/104](https://doi.org/10.1090/conm/104).
- Maltsiniotis, Georges
- [2005] “Structures d’asphéricité, foncteurs lisses, et fibrations”. In: *Ann. Math. Blaise Pascal* 12.1 (2005), pp. 1–39. ISSN: 1259-1734. DOI: [10.5802/ambp.194](https://doi.org/10.5802/ambp.194).



- [2007] “Le théorème de Quillen, d’adjonction des foncteurs dérivés, revisité”. In: *C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Paris* 344.9 (2007), pp. 549–552. ISSN: 1631-073X. DOI: [10.1016/j.crma.2007.03.011](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.crma.2007.03.011).
- Massey, William S.
- [1952] “Exact couples in algebraic topology. I, II”. In: *Ann. of Math. (2)* 56 (1952), pp. 363–396. ISSN: 0003-486X.
- Mathias, Adrian R. D.
- [2001] “The strength of Mac Lane set theory”. In: *Ann. Pure Appl. Logic* 110.1-3 (2001), pp. 107–234. ISSN: 0168-0072. DOI: [10.1016/S0168-0072\(00\)00031-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-0072(00)00031-2).
- May, J. Peter
- [1967] *Simplicial objects in algebraic topology*. Van Nostrand Mathematical Studies, No. 11. Princeton, NJ: D. Van Nostrand Co., Inc., 1967. vi+161.
- May, J. Peter and Kathleen Ponto
- [2012] *More concise algebraic topology. Localization, completion, and model categories*. Chicago Lectures in Mathematics. Chicago, IL: University of Chicago Press, 2012. xxviii+514. ISBN: 978-0-226-51178-8; 0-226-51178-2.
- Meyer, Jean-Pierre
- [1984] “Bar and cobar constructions. I”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 33.2 (1984), pp. 163–207. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/0022-4049\(84\)90005-7](https://doi.org/10.1016/0022-4049(84)90005-7).
- Munkres, James R.
- [2000] *Topology*. English. Second. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2000. xvi+537. ISBN: 0131816292.
- Quillen, Daniel G.
- [1967] *Homotopical algebra*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 43. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1967. iv+156.
- [1969] “Rational homotopy theory”. In: *Ann. of Math. (2)* 90 (1969), pp. 205–295. ISSN: 0003-486X.
- [1973] “Higher algebraic  $K$ -theory. I”. In: *Algebraic K-theory, I: Higher K-theories (Proc. Conf., Battelle Memorial Inst., Seattle, Wash., 1972)*. Lecture Notes in Mathematics 341. Springer, Berlin, 1973, pp. 85–147.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

Rezk, Charles

- [1998] *Fibrations and homotopy colimits of simplicial sheaves*. 9th Nov. 1998. arXiv: [math/9811038v2](#).
- [2001] “A model for the homotopy theory of homotopy theory”. In: *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 353.3 (2001), 973–1007 (electronic). ISSN: 0002-9947. DOI: [10.1090/S0002-9947-00-02653-2](#).
- [2002] “Every homotopy theory of simplicial algebras admits a proper model”. In: *Topology Appl.* 119.1 (2002), pp. 65–94. ISSN: 0166-8641. DOI: [10.1016/S0166-8641\(01\)00057-8](#).
- [2010] “A Cartesian presentation of weak  $n$ -categories”. In: *Geom. Topol.* 14.1 (2010), pp. 521–571. ISSN: 1465-3060. DOI: [10.2140/gt.2010.14.521](#).

Riehl, Emily

- [2011a] “Algebraic model structures”. PhD thesis. University of Chicago, 2011.
- [2011b] “Algebraic model structures”. In: *New York J. Math.* 17 (2011), pp. 173–231. ISSN: 1076-9803.

Riehl, Emily and Dominic Verity

- [2013a] *The 2-category theory of quasi-categories*. 21st June 2013. arXiv: [1306.5144](#).
- [2013b] *Homotopy coherent adjunctions and the formal theory of monads*. 30th Oct. 2013. arXiv: [1310.8279](#).
- [2014] “The theory and practice of Reedy categories”. In: *Theory Appl. Categ.* 29 (2014), pp. 256–301. ISSN: 1201-561X.

Rosický, Jiří and Walter Tholen

- [2002] “Lax factorization algebras”. In: *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 175.1-3 (2002). Special volume celebrating the 70th birthday of Professor Max Kelly, pp. 355–382. ISSN: 0022-4049. DOI: [10.1016/S0022-4049\(02\)00141-X](#).

Shulman, Michael A.

- [2009] *Homotopy limits and colimits and enriched homotopy theory*. 1st July 2009. arXiv: [math/0610194v3](#).
- [2012] “Exact completions and small sheaves”. In: *Theory Appl. Categ.* 27 (2012), pp. 97–173. ISSN: 1201-561X.

Simpson, Carlos

- [2012] *Homotopy theory of higher categories*. New Mathematical Monographs 19. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2012. xviii+634. ISBN: 9780521516952.

Smith, Jeffrey H.

[1998]. Barcelona Conference in Algebraic Topology. 1998.

Thomas, Sebastian

[2011] “On the 3-arrow calculus for homotopy categories”. In: *Homology Homotopy Appl.* 13.1 (2011), pp. 89–119. ISSN: 1532-0073. DOI: [10.4310/HHA.2011.v13.n1.a5](https://doi.org/10.4310/HHA.2011.v13.n1.a5).

Thomason, Robert W.

[1977] “Homotopy colimits in Cat, with applications to algebraic  $K$ -theory and loop space theory”. PhD thesis. Princeton University, 1977. 132 pp.

[1979] “Homotopy colimits in the category of small categories”. In: *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* 85.1 (1979), pp. 91–109. ISSN: 0305-0041. DOI: [10.1017/S0305004100055535](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0305004100055535).

Van Osdol, Donovan H.

[1977] “Simplicial homotopy in an exact category”. In: *Amer. J. Math.* 99.6 (1977), pp. 1193–1204. ISSN: 0002-9327.

Verdier, Jean-Louis

[1963] “Catégories dérivées, quelques résultats (Etat 0)”. Mimeographed notes, Institute des Hautes Études Scientifiques. Published in (SGA 4½). 1963.

[1996] *Des catégories dérivées des catégories abéliennes*. Astérisque 239. With a preface by Luc Illusie. Edited and with a note by Georges Maltsiniotis. Paris: Société Mathématique de France, 1996. xii+253.

Waterhouse, William C.

[1975] “Basically bounded functors and flat sheaves”. In: *Pacific J. Math.* 57.2 (1975), pp. 597–610. ISSN: 0030-8730.

Weibel, Charles A.

[1994] *An introduction to homological algebra*. Cambridge Studies in Advanced Mathematics 38. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1994. xiv+450. ISBN: 0521435005.

Whitehead, J. H. C.

[1949] “Combinatorial homotopy. I”. In: *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.* 55 (1949), pp. 213–245. ISSN: 0002-9904.



# INDEX

- 2-out-of-3 property, [1026](#)
- 2-out-of-4 property, [1026](#)
  - special —, [1026](#)
- 2-out-of-6 property, [1026](#)
- abelian category, [1080](#)
  - axiom AB3, [1085](#)
  - axiom AB4, [1085](#)
  - axiom AB5, [1085](#)
  - monoidal —, *see* monoidal category, abelian
- abelian cosmos, *see* cosmos, abelian
- abundant
  - Kan-enriched category, [410](#)
- accessible category, [17](#)
  - classification theorem, [20](#)
- accessible extension, [53](#), [55](#), [57](#)
- accessible functor, [20](#)
  - strongly —, [34](#)
- accessible subcategory, [42](#)
- action
  - on a category, [1129](#)
- additive category, [1079](#)
  - monoidal —, *see* monoidal category, additive
- additive functor, [1080](#)
- adjoint
  - densely-defined partial —, [1048](#)
- adjoint functor theorem
  - accessible —, [27](#), [56](#)
- adjunction, [973](#)
  - of quasicategories, [797](#)
  - derived —, *see* derived adjunction
  - Frobenius —, [985](#)
- $\aleph$ -number, [7](#)
- ample
  - diagram, [356](#)
  - relative to a simplicially enriched functor, [369](#)
  - replacement, [362](#)
  - relative to a simplicially enriched functor, [370](#)
  - replacement functor, [368](#)
- anodyne extension
  - of simplicial sets, [116](#), [121](#)
  - with respect to an elementary Cisinski homotopy structure, [763](#)
  - inner — of simplicial sets, [800](#)
- arity class, [8](#)
  - classification theorem, [8](#)
- aspherical
  - category, [249](#)
  - functor, [253](#)
  - morphism, [835](#)
  - object, [834](#)

- bar complex, 173, 178
  - for simplicially enriched functors, 333
  - of sets, 171
  - Hochschild —, 350
- bar construction
  - for simplicially enriched functors, 336
  - in simplicial sets, 185
  - Hochschild —, 352
- bar resolution, 197
- basic localiser, 834
  - of a derivator, 834
  - minimal —, 840
- Beck–Chevalley condition, 977
  - derived —, 476
- Bergner cofibration, 394
  - trivial —, 396
  - special —, 395
- Bergner interval, 396
- biproduct, 1076
- bisimplicial set, 147
- boundary
  - of a direct category, 567
  - of a representable functor, 569, 638
  - of a standard simplex, 101
  - of an inverse category, 567
- boundary object, 844
- Bousfield localisation, 787
- Bousfield–Kan colimit
  - in simplicial sets, 202
- Bousfield–Kan extension, 230
  - simplicially enriched —, 360
- Bousfield–Kan limit
  - in simplicial sets, 202
- bridge
  - in a Kan-enriched category, 400
- enough — in a Kan-enriched category, 401
- calculus of cocycles, 491
  - functorial —, 499
- calculus of cospans, *see* calculus of spans
  - fundamental theorem of —, *see* calculus of spans, fundamental theorem of —
- calculus of cycles, *see* calculus of cocycles
- calculus of fractions, 503
- calculus of spans, 490
  - fundamental theorem of —, 495
- cardinal, 7
  - classification theorem, 7
  - regular —, 8
  - strongly inaccessible —, 9
- cartesian closed category, 982
- cartesian closed functor, 983
- cartesian morphism, *see also* prone morphism
  - weakly —, 1143
- categorical suspension
  - of a simplicial set, 393
- category
  - over a set of objects, 378
  - fibred —, *see* fibred category
  - finite —, 9
  - locally small —, 2
  - small —, 2, 9
  - strongly finite —, 92
- category of fibrant objects, 535
- category of simplices
  - of a category, 719
  - of a simplicial set, 265
  - projection functor, 265, 719, 722
- category with weak equivalences, 449
- Čech nerve, 942
- cell complex, 60

- 
- Reedy —, 647
    - finite —, 569
    - finite relative —, 569
    - relative —, 647
  - relative —, 60
  - chain, 12
  - chain complex, 841
    - acyclic —, 853
    - bounded —, 852
    - bounded-above —, 852
    - bounded-below —, 852
    - coconnective —, 850
    - connective —, 850
    - double —, 874
      - bounded —, 875
      - first-quadrant —, 875
    - filtered —, 902
      - canonically bounded —, 902
      - canonically bounded-above —, 902
      - canonically bounded-below —, 902
    - morphism of —, 845
    - total —, 875
      - filtration by columns, 903
      - filtration by rows, 903
  - chain map
    - see chain complex, morphism of —, 845
  - Cisinski homotopy structure, 764
    - elementary —, 762
  - class, 2
  - classification theorem
    - for accessible categories, 20
    - for arity classes, 8
    - for cardinalities, 7
    - for compactly generated categories, 32
    - for locally presentable categories, 23
    - for well-ordered sets, 5
  - classifying diagram
    - of a category, 274
  - closed object, *see* local object in a relative category
  - cobar complex, 173, 178
    - for simplicially enriched functors, 333
    - of sets, 171
    - Hochschild —, 350
  - cobar construction
    - for simplicially enriched functors, 336
    - in simplicial sets, 185
    - Hochschild —, 352
  - cobar resolution, 197
  - coboundary object, 844
  - cobridge
    - in a Kan-enriched category, 400
    - enough — in a Kan-enriched category, 401
  - cocartesian morphism, *see also* supine morphism
    - weakly —, 1143
  - cochain complex, 841
    - acyclic —, 853
    - bounded —, 852
    - bounded-above —, 852
    - bounded-below —, 852
    - coconnective —, 850
    - connective —, 850
    - double —, 874
      - bounded —, 875
      - first-quadrant —, 875
    - morphism of —, 845
    - total —, 875
      - filtration by columns, 903
      - filtration by rows, 903
  - cochain map

- seecochain complex, morphism of
  - , 845
- cocomplete category, 3
  - enriched —, 1119
  - simplicially enriched —, 282
- cocycle
  - in a relative category, 490
- cocycle object, 844
- codegeneracy operator, 84
- codense functor, 1047
- coend, 1055
  - enriched —, 1123
- coface operator, 84
- cofibrant
  - object, 590
  - Reedy —, 657
  - replacement, 600
  - replacement functor, 601
- cofibration, 62, 590
  - in the Bergner model structure, *see* Bergner cofibration
  - in the Dwyer–Kan model structure, 384
  - of categories, *see* isocofibration
  - of groupoids, *see* isocofibration
  - of simplicial sets, 102
  - injective — of chain complexes, 857
  - injective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, 208
  - injective — of simplicial sheaves, 954
  - $K$ -cofibration, *see*  $K$ -cofibration
  - projective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, 208
  - projective — of simplicial presheaves, 962
  - Reedy —, 657
  - split-injective — of chain complexes, 857
- cofibre
  - of a morphism of chain complexes, 863
- cofinal
  - functor, 1051
  - subset of a poset, 8
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy cofinal
- cohomology object, 844
- coimage
  - in an abelian category, 1081
- coinitial
  - functor, 1051
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy coinitial
- cokernel, 1075
- colimit
  - Bousfield Kan —, *see* Bousfield–Kan colimit
  - conical —, *see* conical colimit
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy colimit
  - weighted —, *see* weighted colimit
- colocal equivalence
  - in a model category, 784
- colocal object
  - in a model category, 783
  - in a relative category, 508
- colocal replacement
  - in a model category, 785
- compact object, 15
- compact–open topology, 992
- compactly defined functor, 32
- compactly generated category, 30
- compactly generated Hausdorff space, 90, 992
- compactness rank, 30
- complete category, 3
  - enriched —, 1119
  - simplicially enriched —, 282



- complex, 842
  - chain —, *see* chain complex
  - cochain —, *see* cochain complex
- cone
  - on a simplicial set, 106
- conical colimit
  - in a simplicially enriched category, 281
- conical limit
  - in a simplicially enriched category, 281
- conjugate pair, 977
  - pasting lemma, 979
- connected components, 95
- contractible simplicial set, 106
  - weakly —, 137
- contracting homotopy, 108, 294
- correspondence
  - in a Cisinski fibration category, 580
  - functional —, 581
  - invertible —, 581
- cosimplicial identities, 84
- cosimplicial simplicial set, 151
- coskeleton
  - of a simplicial set, 97
- cosmos
  - abelian —, 887
- cotensor product
  - in an enriched category, 1131
- cotensored category, 1059, 1132
- cowedge, 1055
- cycle
  - in a relative category, *see* cocycle
  - in a relative category
- cycle object, 844
- cylinder
  - relative —, 117
- cylinder cofibration, *see also* cylinder object
  - in a simplicially enriched category, 329
- cylinder functor
  - Cisinski —, 758
- cylinder object
  - in a model category, 611
- deformable adjunction, 473
- deformable functor, 460
  - functorially —, 481
- deformation retract
  - for a composable pair of functors, 467
  - for a functor, 460, 623
  - of a relative category, 460
  - 2-category of —, 471
  - functorial — for a functor, 481
  - Quillen —, 622
  - right Cisinski —, 526
- degeneracy operator, 85
- dense functor, 1047
- dependent product, 990
- dependent sum, 990
- derivable category, 591
  - Reedy-admissible —, 660
  - saturated —, 604
  - simplicial —, 297
- derivator, 819
  - of a DHK model category, 825
  - of a model category, 825
  - strong, 819
- derivator domain, 809
- derived adjunction, 459, 624
- derived category
  - of an abelian category, 871
  - bounded —, 871
  - bounded-above —, 871

- bounded-below —, 871
- derived functor
  - total —, 488, 623
- derived hom-space
  - in a resolvable category, 691, 701
  - in a simplicial derivable category, 301
  - in a simplicial model category, 302
- derived pullback, 735
  - diagram, 737
- derived pullback diagram
  - homotopy —, 259
- derived pushout, 735
  - diagram, 737
- descent condition
  - for simplicial presheaves, 944
- dinatural transformation, 1055
- direct category, 565
  - locally finite —, 568
- directed preorder, 11
- Dold–Kan object, 909
- Dwyer–Kan adjunction
  - of simplicially enriched categories, 315
- Dwyer–Kan contractible category, 315
- Dwyer–Kan equivalence
  - of relative categories, 428
  - of simplicially enriched categories, 310
- Dwyer–Kan isofibration
  - of simplicially enriched categories, 393
- Dwyer–Kan pre-adjoint functor, 316
- edge
  - of a simplicial set, 88
  - principal —, 270
- end, 1055
  - enriched —, 1123
- endofunctor
  - algebra for an —, 48
  - pointed —, 48
- enriched adjunction, 1105
- enriched category, 1096
  - locally small —, 1096
  - small —, 1096
  - 2-category of —, 1100
- enriched functor, 1098
  - enriched category of —, 1112
  - essentially surjective on objects, 1108
  - fully faithful —, 1108
  - injective on objects, 1108
  - ordinary category of —, 1113
  - representable —, 1104
- enriched natural isomorphism, 1100, *see also* enriched natural transformation
- enriched natural transformation, 1099
  - object of —, 1111
- epimorphism, 1067
  - effective —, 1067
  - extremal —, 1067
  - normal —, 1076
  - regular —, 1067
  - strong —, 999
- equivalence
  - in a model category, 629
  - in a quasicategory, 795
  - in a relative category, 451
  - of enriched categories, 1109
  - of quasicategories, 797
  - with respect to a basic localiser, 834
  - with respect to a derivator, 834
  - with respect to a prederivator, 826
- equivalence relation
  - effective —, 1072

- 
- $\mathrm{Ex}^\infty$  functor, 162, 343
  - exact couple, 893
    - bounded —, 900
    - bounded above —, 900
    - bounded below —, 900
    - derived couple of —, 893
    - regular —, 897
    - weakly convergent —, 897
  - exact fork, 1072
  - exact sequence, 842
    - left —, 842
    - right —, 842
    - short —, 842
  - exact square, 815
    - pasting lemma, 816
  - exponential ideal, 987
  - exponential object, 982, *see also* cartesian
    - closed category
  - extension
    - of a simplicial object, 924
    - of a simplicial set, 157
  - extensive category, 1065
  - face operator, 85
  - factorisation system
    - algebraic —, 75, 1019
    - free —, 1022
    - cofibrantly generated —, 65, 1007
    - extension of —, 70, 1007
    - fibrantly generated —, 1007
    - functorial —, 66, 1009
    - natural weak —, 1016
      - free —, 75, 1022
    - orthogonal —, 1000, 1010, 1011
    - proper —, 1001
    - weak —, 1000, 1014
  - fibrant
    - object, 590
    - Reedy —, 573, 657
    - replacement, 520, 600
    - replacement functor, 601
  - fibrant object
    - with respect to a Cisinski homotopy structure, 764
  - category of —, *see* category of fibrant objects
  - fibrantly representable functor, 313
  - fibration, 535, 590
    - in the Bergner model structure, *see* Dwyer–Kan isofibration
    - in the Dwyer–Kan model structure, 381
    - of Reedy categories, *see* Reedy category, fibration of —
    - of categories, *see* isofibration
    - of groupoids, *see* isofibration
    - of simplicial sets, *see* Kan fibration
    - with respect to a Cisinski homotopy structure, 765
  - Grothendieck —, *see* Grothendieck fibration
  - injective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, 208
  - injective — of simplicial sheaves, 954
  - inner —, 799
  - $K$ -fibration, *see*  $K$ -fibration
  - local — of simplicially enriched categories, 319
  - local injective — of simplicial pre-sheaves, 958
  - local Kan —, *see* Kan fibration, local —
  - local projective — of simplicial pre-sheaves, 962
  - projective — of chain complexes, 857

- projective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, 208
- Reedy —, 575, 657
- split-projective — of chain complexes, 857
- fibration category
  - basic —, 519
  - Cisinski —, 527
  - relative —, 533
  - right proper —, 554
- fibre
  - of a functor, 1142
  - of a morphism of chain complexes, 863
  - of an indexed category, 1139
- fibred category, 1155
- fibred functor, 1155
- fibred natural transformation, 1155
- filtered category, 11
- filtration, 891
  - exhaustive —, 891
  - layer of —, 892
  - separated —, 891
- flattening, 428
- flex
  - of a zigzag type, 1032
- frame, 674
- functor
  - between quasicategories, 791, 794
  - fibred —, *see* fibred functor
  - locally weakly constant —, 258
- fundamental category, 92
  - of a Kan complex, 119
  - of a graph, 270
- fundamental groupoid, 96
  - of a Kan complex, 120
- geometric realisation
  - of a simplicial set, 90
- graded object, 892
  - associated with a filtration, 892
  - morphism of —, 892
- Grothendieck construction, 1152
- Grothendieck fibration, 1145
  - cloven —, 1158
- Grothendieck opfibration, 1145
- Grothendieck pre-opfibration, 1145
- Grothendieck prefibration, 1145
- hammock, 421
  - localisation, *see* localisation, hammock —
  - reduced —, 422
- height
  - of a category, 565
- hom system, 1133
- homology object, 844
- homotopical approximation
  - for a functor, 483, 488
  - for a natural transformation, 485
- homotopical calculus of fractions, 445
  - fundamental theorem of —, 447
- homotopical category, 449
  - saturated —, *see* relative category, saturated —
  - slice —, 450
- homotopical equivalence, 453
  - adjoint —, 453
- homotopical functor, 449
- homotopical Kan extension, 458
  - absolute —, 458
- homotopical three-arrow calculus, 430
  - fundamental theorem of —, 433
- homotopically contractible category, 454
- homotopically coquadrable morphism, 540
- homotopically initial object
  - in a homotopical category, 455
- homotopically quadrable morphism, 540

- homotopically replete subcategory, [451](#)
- homotopically representable functor, [313](#)
- homotopically terminal object
  - in a homotopical category, [455](#)
- homotopy
  - in a category of fibrant objects, [559](#)
  - in a simplicially enriched category, [306](#)
- intrinsic —, [103](#)
- left —
  - in a model category, [611](#)
  - in a quasicategory, [792](#)
- right —
  - in a Cisinski fibration category, [557](#)
  - in a model category, [611](#)
  - in a quasicategory, [792](#)
- weak —, [451](#)
- homotopy 2-category
  - of quasicategories, [796](#)
- homotopy category, [1025](#)
  - of Kan complexes, [128](#)
  - of a basic fibration category, [525](#)
  - of a cartesian model category, [776](#)
  - of a category of fibrant objects primitive —, [560](#)
  - of a derivable category, [604](#)
  - of a model category, [604](#), [612](#), [629](#)
  - of a quasicategory, [793](#)
  - of a simplicially enriched functor category, [365](#)
  - of simplicial sets, [145](#)
  - with respect to a Cisinski cylinder functor, [759](#)
- intrinsic —, [104](#)
- Quillen —, *see* homotopy category, — of a model category simplicial —, [308](#)
- homotopy codescent object
  - in Kan-enriched categories, [344](#)
- homotopy coend
  - in a Kan-enriched category, [354](#)
- homotopy cofinal
  - functor, [243](#), [253](#), *see also* aspherical, — functor
  - morphism, [825](#), [836](#)
- homotopy coinital
  - functor, [243](#), [253](#), *see also* aspherical, — functor
  - morphism, [825](#), [836](#)
- homotopy colimit, *see also* Bousfield–Kan colimit
  - functor for a Kan-enriched category, [341](#)
  - in a Kan-enriched category, [341](#)
  - in a prederivator, [824](#)
  - in simplicial sets, [217](#)
- homotopy copower
  - in a Kan-enriched category, [347](#)
- homotopy descent object
  - in Kan-enriched categories, [344](#)
- homotopy end
  - in a Kan-enriched category, [354](#)
- homotopy equivalence
  - in a model category, [612](#), [629](#)
  - in a simplicially enriched category, [306](#)
  - of simplicial sets, [105](#)
  - half-adjoint —, [320](#)
- homotopy extension property, [112](#)
- homotopy function complex, [690](#)
- homotopy inverse
  - in a model category, [612](#), [617](#)
  - in simplicial sets, [105](#)

- homotopy Kan extension, *see also* Bousfield–Kan extension, 233
  - in a prederivator, 814
- homotopy lifting property, 112
- homotopy limit, *see also* Bousfield–Kan limit
  - functor for a Kan-enriched category, 341
  - in a Kan-enriched category, 341
  - in a prederivator, 824
  - in simplicial sets, 217
- homotopy power
  - in a Kan-enriched category, 347
- homotopy pullback, 546
  - diagram, 549
- homotopy type
  - weak —, 145
- homotopy weighted colimit
  - in simplicial sets, 217
- homotopy weighted limit
  - in simplicial sets, 217
- homotopy-coherent equivalence
  - in a quasicategory, 795
- horn, 114
  - inner —, 93
- hypercover, 935
  - bounded —, 941
  - category of —, 967
  - refinement of —, 938
- hypersheaf, 948
- image
  - in an abelian category, 1081
- ind-completion, 17
- ind-object, 17
- indexed category, 1139
  - free strict —, 1158
- indexed functor, 1140
  - oplax —, 1140
- indexed natural transformation, 1141
- $\infty$ -category, *see* quasicategory
- $\infty$ -connected morphism, *see*  $n$ -connected morphism
- initial object
  - strict —, 1065
- injective model structure, 626
  - for hypersheaves, *see* model structure, — for hypersheaves
  - for stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids, *see* model structure, — for stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids
  - on bisimplicial sets, 147
  - on simplicial sheaves, *see* model structure, Heller–Joyal — combinatorial —, 748
  - Reedy —, 663
- injective morphism, 62
- injective object, 998
- internal hom object, 1094
- intrinsic homotopy
  - relative —, 117, 118
- inverse category, 565
  - locally finite —, 568
- isocofibration
  - of categories or groupoids, 778
- isofibration
  - of categories or groupoids, 778
  - of quasicategories, 804
  - Dwyer–Kan —, *see* Dwyer–Kan isofibration
- $K$ -cofibrant
  - cospan, 328
- $K$ -cofibration, 326
- $K$ -fibrant
  - span, 328
- $K$ -fibration, 326
- Kan complex, 119

- internal —, 914
  - weak —, *see* quasicategory
- Kan extension, 1037
  - absolute —, 1038
  - homotopical —, *see* homotopical Kan extension
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy Kan extension
  - pointwise —, 1038, 1042
- Kan fibration, 119, 124
  - internal —, 913
  - local —, 933
  - local trivial —, 933
  - trivial —, 122, 142
- Kan–Quillen model structure, 138, 757
  - and bisimplicial sets, 149
  - and cosimplicial simplicial sets, 156
- Kan-enriched category, 318, *see also* simplicially enriched category, fibrant —
  - over a set of objects, 378, *see also* simplicially enriched category, — over a set of objects, fibrant —
- kernel, 1075
- Koszul hom-complex, 888
- Koszul product
  - of chain complexes, 882
- latching
  - category, 568, 637
  - morphism, 571, 639
  - object, 571, 639
  - relative — morphism, 572, 639
  - relative — object, 572, 639
- Lawvere cylinder, 760
- left-derivable category, *see* fibration category, Cisinski —
- lifting property, 994
  - homotopical —, 118
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy lifting property
- limit
  - Bousfield Kan —, *see* Bousfield–Kan limit
  - conical —, *see* conical limit
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy limit
  - weighted —, *see* weighted limit
- local epimorphism, 932
- local equivalence
  - in a model category, 784
- local isomorphism
  - of simplicial presheaves, 932
- local object
  - in a model category, 783
  - in a relative category, 508
- local replacement
  - in a model category, 785
- localisation
  - of a relative category, 1025
  - of a simplicially enriched category, 306
  - hammock —, 422
  - of a resolvable category, 718
  - standard simplicial —, 416
- locally presentable category, 22
  - classification theorem, 23
- loop object
  - in chain complexes, 865
- mapping cylinder object
  - in chain complexes, 859, 882
- mapping path object
  - in chain complexes, 859, 889
- matching
  - category, 568, 637
  - morphism, 571, 639

- object, [571](#), [639](#)
- relative — morphism, [572](#), [639](#)
- relative — object, [572](#), [639](#)
- mate, *see* conjugate pair
- maximal augmentation
  - of a cosimplicial simplicial set, [152](#)
- maximal object
  - in a direct category, [567](#)
  - in an inverse category, [567](#)
- minimal object
  - in a direct category, [567](#)
  - in an inverse category, [567](#)
- model category, [591](#)
  - algebraic —, [754](#)
  - strongly —, [755](#)
  - cartesian —, [774](#)
  - Cisinski —, [757](#), [765](#)
  - cofibrantly generated —, [744](#)
  - combinatorial —, [748](#)
  - strongly —, [749](#)
  - compact —, [752](#)
  - DHK —, [591](#)
  - framed —, [675](#)
  - monoidal —, [772](#)
  - simplicial —, [297](#)
- model structure, [589](#)
  - for hypersheaves, [950](#)
  - injective —, *see also* model structure, local Jardine —
  - projective —, *see also* model structure, local Blander —
  - for stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids, [945](#)
  - for strong stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids
    - injective —, [947](#)
    - projective —, [947](#)
  - algebraic —, [754](#)
  - Blander —, [964](#)
  - Bousfield–Kan —, [208](#)
  - canonical — for categories, [778](#), [806](#)
  - canonical — for groupoids, [782](#)
  - cosimplicial resolution —, [695](#)
  - discrete —, [592](#)
  - Dwyer–Kan —, [381](#)
  - Heller —, [209](#)
  - Heller–Joyal —, [957](#)
  - injective —, *see also* model structure, Heller —, *see* injective model structure
  - Joyal — for quasicategories, [805](#)
  - Kan–Quillen —, *see* Kan–Quillen model structure, [807](#)
  - left proper —, [733](#)
  - local Blander —, [963](#)
  - local Jardine —, [960](#)
  - mono–epi —, [592](#)
  - opposite —, [298](#), [592](#)
  - product —, [599](#)
  - projective —, *see also* model structure, Bousfield–Kan —, *see* projective model structure
  - proper —, [733](#)
  - Reedy —, *see* Reedy model structure
  - right proper —, [733](#)
  - simplicial —, [297](#)
  - simplicial resolution —, [695](#)
  - slice —, [598](#)
  - sub-Reedy —, [659](#)
- monad
  - accessible —, [47](#)
  - strongly accessible —, [47](#)
- monoidal category, [1088](#)
  - abelian —, [882](#)
  - additive —, [882](#)
  - braided —, [1091](#)
  - cartesian —, [1092](#)
  - closed —, [1094](#)



- abelian —, 887
- additive —, 887
- self-enrichment of —, 1097
- strict —, 1087
- symmetric —, 1091
- monoidal functor, 1089
  - braided —, 1092
  - cartesian —, 1092
- monoidal natural transformation, 1090
- monomorphism
  - normal —, 1076
  - strong —, 999
- Moore complex
  - normalised —, 908
  - unnormalised —, 906
- $n$ -connected morphism
  - of Kan complexes, 130
- natural equivalence
  - of functors between quasicategories, 796
- natural transformation
  - of functors between quasicategories, 794
  - fibred —, *see* fibred natural transformation
- nerve
  - functor, 1042
  - of a category, 91
  - bisimplicial —, 274, 312
- opposite
  - of a quasicategory, 792
  - of a simplicial object, 86
- opposite category
  - enriched —, 1097
- ordinal, 5
- orthogonality, 994
- orthogonality-reflecting functor, 996
- path fibration, *see also* path object
  - in a simplicially enriched category, 329
- path object
  - in a Cisinski fibration category, 532
  - in a category of fibrant objects functorial —, 536
  - in a model category, 611
  - weak —, 522
- pointed category, 1075
- pointed functor, 1075
- pre-universe, 1
- prederivator, 810
  - of a model category, 824
  - of a relative category, 810, 813
  - representable —, 810
- pretopos, 1073
- projective model structure, 626
  - for hypersheaves, *see* model structure, — for hypersheaves
  - for stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids, *see* model structure, — for stacks of  $\infty$ -groupoids
  - on simplicial sheaves, *see* model structure, Blander —
  - cofibrantly generated —, 747
  - Reedy —, 663
- projective object, 998
- prone morphism, 1143
- pullback
  - derived —, *see* derived pullback
  - homotopy —, *see* homotopy pullback
  - weak —, 1070
- pushout
  - derived —, *see* derived pushout
- quasi-inverse, 451

- in a quasicategory, 795
- quasi-isomorphism, 855
- quasicategory, 791
  - small —, 793
- Quillen adjunction, 619, 624, 701
  - of two variables, 770
- Quillen equivalence, 624
  - condition for relative categories, 480
  - of derivable categories, 619
  - of model categories, 619
- Quillen functor, 619
- rank
  - of a functor, 30
  - of a set, 6
- realisation
  - in a simplicially enriched category, 290
  - of a bisimplicial set, 147
  - of a simplicial simplicially enriched category over a set of objects, 386
- rectification
  - of homotopy coherent diagrams
    - strong —, 405
    - weak —, 405
- Reedy category, 636
  - with cofibrant constants, 665
  - with fibrant constants, 665
  - fibration of —, 668
  - locally finite —, 638
  - morphism of —, 668
- Reedy lifting property, 641
- Reedy model structure, 663
  - on bisimplicial sets, 147
  - on cosimplicial simplicial sets, 152
- Reedy-acyclic morphism, 638
- Reedy-injective, 645
- Reedy-projective, 645
- reflexive graph, 378
  - simplicially enriched —, 378
- regular category, 1069
  - effective —, 1072
- regular functor, 1071
- reindexing
  - in an indexed category, 1139
- relative category, 1024
  - maximal —, 1024
  - minimal —, 1024
  - opposite —, 1024
  - saturated —, 449, 1025
  - semi-saturated —, 1025
- relative equivalence, *see* homotopical equivalence
- relative functor, 1024
- resolution, 671, 681
- resolvable category, 671
- semi-additive category, 1076
- semi-additive functor, 1080
- semiderivator, 810
  - cocomplete —, 818
  - complete —, 818
  - strong —, 811
- semisimplicial object, 86
- set, 2
- sharply less than, 21
- sifted category, 1053
- $\Sigma\Pi$ -category, 990
- simplex
  - of a simplicial set, 88
  - degenerate —, 88
- simplex category, 83
- simplicial category, 273
  - locally small —, 274
  - small —, 274

- simplicial functor, 273
- simplicial homotopy, 307
- simplicial identities, 85
- simplicial natural transformation, 274
- simplicial object, 83
  - constant —, 285
  - weakly constant —, 680
- simplicial presheaf
  - cellular —, 931
  - locally fibrant —, 933
- simplicial set, 87
  - with free degeneracies, 98
  - concrete —, 98
  - discrete —, 95
  - finite —, 89
  - locally polyhedral —, 98
  - $n$ -coskeletal, 97
  - $n$ -skeletal, 97
  - polyhedral —, 98
  - simplicial category of —, 277
- simplicially enriched category, 275
  - over a set of objects, 378
  - discrete —, 277
  - fibrant —, 318, *see also* Kan-enriched category
  - locally small —, 276
  - slice —, 277
  - small —, 276
- simplicially enriched functor, 276, *see also* simplicial functor
  - category, 278
  - homotopically essentially surjective on objects —, 310
  - homotopically fully faithful —, 310
- simplicially enriched natural transformation, 276, *see also* simplicial natural transformation
- simplicially enriched natural weak homotopy equivalence, 312, *see also* simplicially enriched natural transformation
- singular set, 90
- skeleton
  - of a simplicial set, 97
- small object argument
  - admissible for —, 65
  - Garner's —, 75
  - Quillen's —, 66
- spine, 270
- stability under universe enlargement
  - of accessible adjunctions, 56
  - of cofibrantly generated factorisation systems, 70
  - of combinatorial model categories, 753
  - of weak homotopy types, 145
- stack
  - of  $\infty$ -groupoids, 944
  - strong —, 946
- standard cofibration
  - of simplicially enriched categories over a set of objects, 383
- standard resolution
  - of a category, 386
  - of a relative category, 416
  - of a simplicially enriched category, 387
  - with respect to a comonad, 294
- standard simplex
  - as a simplicial set, 87
  - as a topological space, 90
- strong functor, 1136
- strong natural transformation, 1137
- subdivision
  - of a category, 1057
  - of a simplicial set, 157
  - Quillen —, 265
- supine morphism, 1144

- suspension object
  - in chain complexes, [865](#)
- tautological cocone, [1038](#), [1047](#)
- tautological cone, [1038](#), [1047](#)
- tensor product
  - in an enriched category, [1131](#)
  - of enriched categories, [1101](#)
- tensoring category, [1059](#), [1132](#)
- three-arrow calculus, [513](#)
  - functorial —, [514](#)
  - fundamental theorem of —, [517](#)
  - homotopical —, *see* homotopical three-arrow calculus
- totalisation
  - in a simplicially enriched category, [290](#)
  - of a cosimplicial simplicial set, [153](#)
- transitive set, [6](#)
- trivial cofibration
  - injective — of chain complexes, [857](#)
  - injective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, [208](#)
  - injective — of simplicial sheaves, [954](#)
  - local injective — of simplicial pre-sheaves, [958](#)
  - local projective — of simplicial pre-sheaves, [962](#)
  - projective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, [208](#)
  - split-injective — of chain complexes, [857](#)
- trivial fibration
  - in a Cisinski model category, [759](#)
  - of simplicial sets, *see* Kan fibration, trivial —
- injective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, [208](#)
- injective — of simplicial sheaves, [954](#)
- local Kan —, *see* Kan fibration, local trivial —
- projective — of chain complexes, [857](#)
- projective — of diagrams of simplicial sets, [208](#)
- projective — of simplicial presheaves, [962](#)
- split-projective — of chain complexes, [857](#)
- truncation
  - of a simplicial set, [96](#)
- underlying ordinary
  - category, [1097](#)
  - functor, [1098](#)
  - natural transformation, [1099](#)
- uni-fractionable category, [513](#)
- universe, [1](#)
- universe convention
  - explicit —, [4](#)
  - one —, [4](#)
  - two —, [4](#)
- vertex
  - of a simplicial set, [88](#)
  - interior — of a zigzag type, [1032](#)
- vertical morphism, [1142](#)
- virtually cofibrant diagram, [725](#)
- virtually fibrant diagram, [725](#)
- weak categorical equivalence, [798](#)
- weak equivalence, [451](#), [535](#), [590](#), [594](#)
  - in a combinatorial model category, [751](#)

- in the Joyal model structure for quasicategories, *see* weak categorical equivalence
- in the Kan–Quillen model structure, *see* weak homotopy equivalence, — of simplicial sets
- of bisimplicial sets, [147](#)
- of cosimplicial simplicial sets, [152](#)
- with respect to a Cisinski homotopy structure, [764](#)
- Dugger–Isaksen —, [918](#)
- natural —, [453](#)
- Reedy —, [657](#)
- weak homotopy equivalence
  - of categories, [247](#)
  - of simplicial sets, [135](#), [143](#)
  - of simplicial sheaves, [954](#)
  - internal — of simplicial objects, [928](#)
  - local — of simplicial presheaves, [932](#), *see also* weak hypersheaf equivalence
  - natural —, [207](#)
- weak hypersheaf equivalence, [948](#), *see also* weak homotopy equivalence, local — of simplicial presheaves
- weak stack equivalence, [945](#)
- wedge, [1055](#)
- weighted colimit, [1040](#)
  - enriched —, [1115](#)
- weighted homotopy colimit
  - in a Kan-enriched category, *see* homotopy colimit, — in a Kan-enriched category
- weighted homotopy limit
  - in a Kan-enriched category, *see* homotopy limit, — in a Kan-enriched category
- weighted limit, [1040](#)
  - enriched —, [1115](#)
- well-ordered set
  - classification theorem, [5](#)
- Whitehead property, [452](#)
- zigzag, *see also* hammock, [1033](#)
- zigzag type, [423](#), [1029](#)
  - concatenation of —, [1033](#)
  - degenerate —, [1033](#)
  - flex of —, *see* flex, — of a zigzag type
  - interior vertex of —, *see* vertex, interior — of a zigzag type
  - marked —, [703](#)
  - morphism of —, [1030](#)
  - kernel of —, [1031](#)